

Table of Contents

Manufacture

 Desktop manufacturing

 Deployment guides and walkthroughs

 Windows 10 S

 Deployment Options

 DISM - Deployment Image Servicing and Management

 Sysprep

 Windows PE (WinPE)

 Windows Recovery Environment (Windows RE)

 Windows Setup

 Deployment Command-Line Tools

Mobile manufacturing

 Mobile deployment and imaging

 Manufacturing Mode

 Microsoft Manufacturing OS

 Flashing tools

 Using a host PC to reboot a device to flashing mode and get version information

 Disabling the initial setup process

 Reset protection

 Building and flashing mobile images

IoT Core manufacturing

 IoT Core manufacturing guide

 IoT Core feature list

 IoT Core Add-ons

 IoT Core Add-ons command-line options

 Update the time server

 Create Windows Universal OEM Packages

Manufacture

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Purpose

Use the manufacturing tools to deploy your Windows [customizations](#) to new Windows 10 devices. Learn how to:

- Combine your customizations, plus languages, drivers, apps and more, into new Windows images.
- Modify these images either from a manufacturing mode for a familiar Windows experience, or from a command line for quicker changes that can be automated and scripted.
- Install images onto new devices. Choose whether to use compression to balance disk space versus device performance. Use flashing tools to speed up the final manufacturing processes
- Capture your customizations into the recovery tools, helping your customers get back up to speed quickly.

TOPIC	DESCRIPTION
OEM deployment of Windows 10 for desktop editions	This guide is intended for OEMs, and applies to Windows 10 for desktop editions (Home, Pro, Enterprise, and Education). IT professionals using this guide should have prior knowledge of Windows basic administration and troubleshooting.
System builder deployment of Windows 10 for desktop editions	Learn how to deploy Windows 10 desktop, including online and offline customizations, and optional steps for specific scenarios. This guide is intended to help system builders with both 64-bit and 32-bit configurations.
OEM Windows Desktop Deployment and Imaging Lab	Building your first devices with Windows 10 for desktop editions (Home, Pro, Enterprise, and Education)? Want to learn strategies to save time on the factory floor? This walkthrough shows two ways of creating custom images with languages, apps, and drivers, and modifying them when new designs become available.
What's new in Windows manufacturing	Learn what new features are available.
Desktop manufacturing	Technical reference for Windows 10 for desktop editions
Mobile manufacturing	Technical reference for Windows 10 Mobile
IoT Core manufacturing	Technical reference for Windows 10 IoT Core

Desktop manufacturing

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

After you've learned how to design, develop, and customize Windows images, you can use the tools in the Windows ADK to manufacture and deploy Windows images to new PCs and devices.

In This Section

CONTENT TYPE	REFERENCES
Getting started	Download the Windows ADK Desktop manufacturing guide Manufacturing Windows Engineering Guide (WEG)
Deployment options	UEFI Firmware Hard Drives and Partitions VHD (Native Boot) Secure Boot Device Drivers Language Packs Features On Demand V2 (Capabilities) More deployment options
Tools	Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) System Preparation (SysPrep) Windows PE (WinPE) Windows Recovery Environment (Windows RE) Windows Setup More command-line tools

OEM deployment guides and walkthroughs for Windows 10

9/18/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

In this section

GUIDE	DESCRIPTION
OEM deployment of Windows 10 for desktop editions	End-to-end desktop manufacturing lab for OEMs
System builder deployment of Windows 10 for desktop editions	End-to-end lab for system builders
OEM Windows Desktop Deployment and Imaging Lab	Collection of walkthroughs for OEM deployments
Manufacturing Windows Engineering Guide	Roadmap for OEMs and ODMs of the ideal manufacturing process for Windows 10 devices, with guidance for potential pitfalls and opportunities to streamline the process.

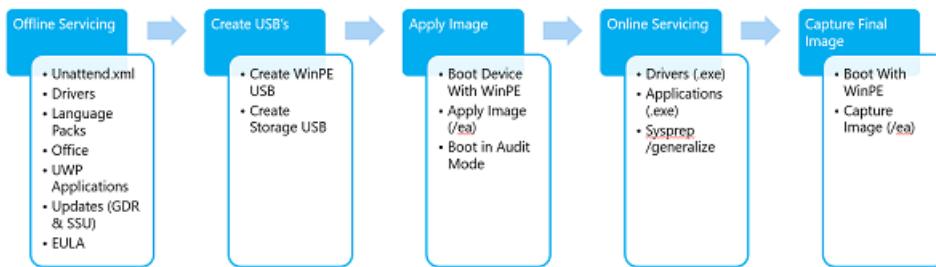
OEM Deployment of Windows 10 for desktop editions

10/17/2017 • 57 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Getting ready to build and test Windows 10 desktop PCs? This lab shows you the steps to take to make and deploy Windows images. We'll show you the tools to use and the commands to run to setup an end-to-end deployment. The commands can be scripted, helping you quickly customize new images for specific markets to meet your customers' needs.

If you're an OEM, you can also use the [Express Deployment Tool](#) (EDT) to build a custom Windows deployment. The EDT simplifies the process of installing and configuring Windows for a consistent brand and customized end-user experience.

We'll walk you through the process of building a customized Windows deployment. Here's what we'll cover:



We'll start by giving an overview of the deployment process, and show you what to consider when planning your deployment.

Then we'll [build a customized bootable WinPE drive](#). We'll cover the steps for:

- Preparing and mounting a WinPE image
- Adding packages
- Adding drivers
- Creating WinPE media

Next we'll move onto customizing your Windows image. We'll start with [offline customizations](#) to a mounted Windows image, where we'll cover:

- Adding Drivers
- Adding Languages
- Adding Updates
- Reinstalling inbox apps
- Preinstalling Microsoft Office
- Adding tiles to the Start Layout
- Setup OOB to display a custom EULA
- Configuring and using answer files to customize Windows Setup

We'll finish customizing the Windows image by [deploying your image to a PC and then booting into Audit mode](#) and finish making changes, including:

- Making changes in Audit mode
- Preparing Push Button Reset

Finally, we'll [Finalize and Capture your image, verify everything works, and prepare your image for deployment](#).

- Finalizing the image

Let's get started!

Planning: Customizing reference images for different audiences

Instead of having one device design that tries to fit everyone, Windows image management tools help you tailor device designs to meet the specific needs of various customers.

To get started, we recommend choosing a hardware design that targets a specific audience, market, or price point. Build base images for this design and test it. Next, modify the base images to create designs for different audiences, include branding, logos, languages, and apps.

Device types

Consider creating separate designs for different device types, such as low-cost or performance laptops, or low-cost or performance desktops. Each of these styles has different sets of critical differentiators, such as battery life or graphics performance.

Although Windows includes base drivers for many common devices, some hardware requires specialized device drivers that must be installed and occasionally updated.

Many drivers are designed to be installed offline without booting the Windows image.

Use Windows Assessment tools to make sure that the apps and hardware that you're installing can perform well in a variety of circumstances.

OA 3.0

This document is intended for OEMs deploying systems with OEM Activation 3.0 (OA 3.0) enabled. For OEMs deploying systems without OEM activation, pay attention to the samples marked as non-OA.

Architecture

If you plan to build devices with both 64-bit and 32-bit (x86) chipsets and architectures, you'll need separate base images. You'll also need different versions of drivers, packages, and updates.

Retail customers and business customers

If you're building designs for both retail and business customers, you can start with a single base edition such as Windows 10 Home or Windows 10 Pro, and then later upgrade it to a higher edition such as Windows 10 Enterprise, as needed. Once you've built a higher edition, however, you can't downgrade it to the lower edition. For more info, see [Windows Upgrade Paths](#).

If you're building devices to sell to retail customers, you'll need to meet a set of minimum requirements. For info, see the Licensing and Policy guidance on the [Device Partner Center](#).

If you're building devices for businesses, you'll have fewer restrictions. IT professionals can customize their devices in all sorts of ways. However, you should consider the implications of IT policies, as well as customer needs such as migrating data, activating security tools, and managing volume license agreements and product keys.

Regions

Consider creating different base images for different regions.

The resource files for Windows and other apps like Microsoft Office can be large - some resources like localized handwriting and speech recognition resources are several hundred megabytes.

To save drive space, we've split up the language packs. This can help you preload more languages for your customers or save space on your image. For example, to target a large region, you may preload the basic language components such as text and user interface files for many areas within the region, but only include the handwriting

recognition for devices with pens, or only include voice and speech tools for Cortana on devices with integrated microphones. Users can download these components later as needed.

Sample plan

This lab uses the following three sample hardware configurations.

HARDWARE CONFIGURATION:	1	1B	2
Form factor	Small tablet	2-in-1	Notebook
Architecture	x86	x86	x64
RAM	1 GB	2 GB	4 GB
Disk capacity and type	16 GB eMMC	32 GB eMMC	500 GB HDD
Disk compression used	Yes	No	No
Display size	8"	10"	14"
Windows SKU	Home	Pro	Home
Region/Language(s)	EN-US	EN-US, FR-FR, ES-ES	EN-GB, DE-DE, FR-FR, ES-ES, ZH-CN
Cortana	Yes	Yes	Yes
Inbox apps (Universal)	Yes	Yes	Yes
Pen	No	Yes	No
Office (Universal)	Yes	Yes	Yes
Windows desktop applications	No	Yes	Yes
Office 2016	No	Yes	Yes
Compact OS	Yes	Yes	No

Notes:

- We can build an image for Hardware Configuration 1B by using Hardware Configuration 1 as a base image.
- We can't build Hardware Configuration 2 from either Hardware Configuration 1 or 1B, because they use a different architecture.

Get the tools needed to customize Windows

Here's what you'll need to start testing and deploying devices:

PCs

Here's how we'll refer to them:

- **Technician PC:** Your work PC. This PC should have at least 15GB of free space for installing the [Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit \(Windows ADK\)](#) and working with Windows images.

We recommend using Windows 10 for this PC. The minimum requirement is Windows 7 SP1, though this requires additional tools or workarounds for tasks such as running PowerShell scripts and mounting .ISO images.

For most tasks, you can use either an x86 or x64 PC. If you're creating x86 images, you'll need an x86-based PC (or virtual machine) for a one-time task of [generating a catalog file](#) when you modify your answer file with Windows SIM.

- **Reference PC:** A test PC or tablet that represents all of the devices in a single model line; for example, the *Fabrikam Notebook PC Series 1*. This device must meet the Windows 10 minimum hardware requirements.

You'll reformat this device as part of the walkthrough.

Storage

- **WinPE USB key:** We'll refer to this as *WinPE*. Must be at least 512MB and at most 32GB. This drive will be formatted, so save your data off of it first. It shouldn't be a Windows-to-Go key or a key marked as a non-removable drive.
- **Storage USB key:** We'll refer to this as *USB-B*. A second USB key or an external USB hard drive for storing files. Minimum free space: 8GB, using NTFS, ExFAT, or any other file system that allows files over 4GB. If your hardware allows it, use USB 3.0 keys/drives and USB 3.0 ports to speed up file copy procedures. Note, some USB 3.0 keys don't work with some USB 2.0 ports. We won't be reformatting this drive, so as long as you have enough free space, you can reuse an existing storage drive.

Software

Copy the following source files to the technician PC, rather than using external sources like network shares or removable drives. This reduces the risk of interrupting the build process from a temporary network issue or from disconnecting the USB device.

To complete this guide, get the recommended downloads in this section from <https://www.microsoft.com>.

The version numbers of the Windows ADK, the Windows image you're deploying, and the languages and features you're adding must match.

If you're building a 64-bit image, make sure that you're following the steps that are marked for 64-bit. If you're working with a 32-bit image, follow the steps for 32-bit.

Most recent version of Windows 10

Windows Home 10, 32/64 bit English OPK

Windows Home SL 10, 32/64 bit English OPK

Windows Pro 10, 32/64 bit English OPK

Customizations: Windows updates, languages, features, apps, and Microsoft Office

Win 10 32/64 MultiLang OPK LangPackAll/LIP

Win 10 32/64 MultiLang OPK Feat on Demand

Win 10 32/64 MultiLang OPK App Update

X20-98485 Office Mobile MultiLang v1.3 OPK

X21-32422 Office 2016 v16.3 Deployment Tool for OEM OPK

X21-05414 Office 2016 v16.3 English OPK

X21-32392 Office v16.3 English OPK

X21-32396 Office v16.3 German OPK

Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (ADK) for Windows 10

Download the version of [Windows ADK for Windows 10](#) that matches the version of Windows 10 you are working with.

Drivers

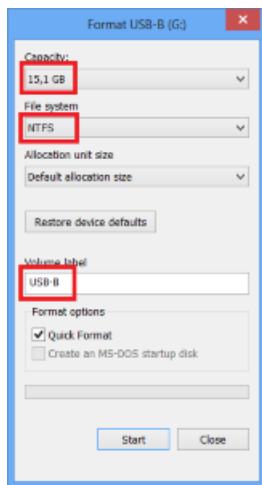
We also discuss how to add hardware drivers and other Windows apps in this guide. If you need to add additional drivers to your image, you'll need to contact your hardware or software manufacturers.

Sample files

Download the lab samples from [USB-B.zip](#), and extract the files to the *USB-B* drive.

- The deployment steps in this guide depend on the sample configuration files included in USB-B. You can download USB-B.zip from the Microsoft Download Center.
- The contents of the configuration files included in USB-B are examples that you may change according to your branding and manufacturing choices. However, file names and hierarchy of the folders and files must be the same as demonstrated below in order to align your deployment procedure with this guide.

Note: *USB-B* has to be an NTFS-formatted drive.



Product keys

Get the default product keys for each Windows version from the Kit Guide Windows 10 Default Manufacturing Key OEM PDF, which is on the ISO with the Windows image.

Get the distribution product keys that match the Windows 10 image.

Prepare your lab environment

You have your tools ready to go. Now we'll setup your lab.

Install the Windows ADK for Windows 10

The Windows ADK is a collection of tools and documentation that OEMs, ODMs, and IT Professionals use to customize, assess, and deploy Windows operating systems to new computers. Deployment tools enable you to

customize, manage, and deploy Windows images. Deployment tools can be used to automate Windows deployments, eliminating the need for user interaction during Windows setup.

Important: OEM must use the matching version of ADK for the images being customized. For example, if you're working with Windows 10, version 1703, use the ADK for Windows 10, version 1703.

1. If you have a previous version of the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (ADK), uninstall it.
2. Download the version of the [Windows ADK](#) that matches the version of Windows that you're installing. **Run** the installer.
3. Click **Next > Next > Accept** to accept the defaults and to join the Customer Experience Improvement Program.
4. Select the following tools:
 - **Deployment Tools**
 - **Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE)**
 - **User State Migration Tool (USMT)**For these labs, you won't need any of the other options installed. You can clear those check boxes.
5. Click **Install**, and then click **Yes** to confirm. This may take a few minutes.
6. When the installation is finished, click **Close**.

Install and customize Windows PE

Windows Preinstallation Environment (WinPE) is a small, command-line based operating system. You can use it to capture, update, and optimize Windows images, which you'll do in later sections. In this section, you'll prepare a basic WinPE image on a bootable USB flash drive and try it out.

The Windows PE USB must be at least 512MB and at most 32GB. Don't use a Windows-to-Go key or a key marked as a non-removable drive.

Prepare WinPE

1. On your technician PC, start the **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** as an administrator:
 - Click **Start**, type **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and select **Run as administrator**.
2. Copy the base WinPE files into a new folder:

```
copype amd64 C:\winpe_amd64
```

Repeat if you're also deploying x86 devices:

```
copype x86 C:\winpe_x86
```

Troubleshooting: If this doesn't work, make sure you're in the Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment, and not the standard command prompt.

Add components to WinPE

You can customize a WinPE image (boot.wim) by adding additional packages and languages, called [optional components \(OCs\)](#). Optional components are available as part of the ADK.

Here are some examples of what you can add to your WinPE image with OCs:

- **Add a video or network driver.** (WinPE includes generic video and network drivers, but in some cases, additional drivers are needed to show the screen or connect to the network.). To learn more, see [WinPE: Add drivers](#).
- **Add PowerShell scripting support.** To learn more, see [WinPE: Adding Windows PowerShell support to Windows PE](#). PowerShell scripts are not included in this lab.
- **Set the power scheme to high-performance.** Speeds deployment. Note, our sample deployment scripts already set this scheme automatically. See [WinPE: Mount and Customize: High Performance](#).
- **Optimize WinPE:** Recommended for devices with limited RAM and storage (for example, 1GB RAM/16GB storage). After you add drivers or other customizations to Windows PE, see [WinPE: Optimize and shrink the image](#) to help reduce the boot time.

Mount your WinPE image

To customize your WinPE image, you have to mount your image before you can work with it. Mounting an image extracts the contents of an image file to a location where it can be viewed and modified. Throughout this lab we'll use DISM to mount and modify images. DISM comes with Windows, but we'll be using the version that is installed by the ADK, which we'll access through the Deployment and imaging tools environment.

You can find boot.wim in the files that you copies with copype.cmd.

Let's mount the image:

1. On your technician PC, open the **Deployment and imaging tools environment** as an administrator. You can find this in the Start menu under Windows Kits. If you don't see it, make sure you've installed the Windows ADK.
2. If you're using an x64 Windows 10 image, mount the image:

```
Dism /mount-image /imagefile:c:\WinPE_amd64\media\sources\boot.wim /index:1 /mountdir:c:\winpe_amd64\mount
```

If you're using an x86 Windows 10 image:

```
Dism /mount-image /imagefile:c:\WinPE_x86\media\sources\boot.wim /index:1 /mountdir:c:\winpe_x86\mount
```

Add packages, dependencies, and language packs to WinPE (optional)

Use `Dism /Add-Package` to add packages to your WinPE image. Some packages have dependencies and require other packages to be installed. For these packages, you'll have to install the dependencies before you add the a package. For example, if you want to use Powershell in WinPE, you have to install the NetFx as well as the language-specific OCs. You can find OC CABs in

```
C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\<arch>\WinPE_OCs\
```

. Here's how to add Powershell support for en-us:

Note: Only add additional packages when necessary. The more packages you add, the greater the impact to boot time and performance.

If you're using an x64 Windows 10 image:

```
dism /image:C:\winpe_amd64\mount /Add-Package /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\WinPE-NetFx.cab"
dism /image:C:\winpe_amd64\mount /Add-Package /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\en-us\WinPE-NetFx_en-us.cab"
```

If you're using an x86 Windows 10 image:

```
dism /image:C:\winpe_x86\mount /Add-Package /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x86\WinPE_OCs\WinPE-NetFx.cab"
dism /image:C:\winpe_x86\mount /Add-Package /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x86\WinPE_OCs\en-us\WinPE-NetFx_en-us.cab"
```

Add drivers to WinPE (Optional)

If you need to add drivers to WinPE, you'll use `Dism /Add-Driver`. You'll only need to do this if WinPE doesn't have the drivers available for your hardware.

Here's how to add drivers to WinPE:

Note: This method requires inf-based drivers. We recommend getting INF based drivers from your hardware Vendor.

If you're working with an x64 Windows 10 image:

```
dism /image:C:\winpe_amd64\mount /Add-Driver /driver:"C:\Out-of-Box Drivers\mydriver.inf"
```

If you're using an x86 Windows 10 image:

```
dism /image:C:\winpe_x86\mount /Add-Driver /driver:"C:\Out-of-Box Drivers\mydriver.inf"
```

Note: To install all of the drivers in a folder and all its subfolders use the /recurse option. For example:

For an x64 Windows 10 image:

```
Dism /Image:C:\Winpe_amd64 /Add-Driver /Driver:c:\drivers /Recurse
```

If you're using an x86 Windows 10 image:

```
Dism /Image:C:\Winpe_x86 /Add-Driver /Driver:c:\drivers /Recurse
```

Cleanup your WinPE image

Run `dism /cleanup-image` to reduce the disk and memory footprint of WinPE and increase compatibility with a wide range of devices:

For x64 Windows 10:

```
DISM /image:c:\winpe_amd64\mount /Cleanup-image /StartComponentCleanup /ResetBase
```

For x86 Windows 10 images:

```
DISM /image:c:\winpe_x86\mount /Cleanup-image /StartComponentCleanup /ResetBase
```

Commit your changes and unmount your image

If you've added extra files in your WinPE image, you can delete them to reduce your image size and improve performance. When you're done working with your image, you can commit your changes and unmount your image. Then copy your image back into your WinPE folder:

For x64 Windows 10 images:

```
dism /unmount-image /mountdir:c:\winpe_amd64\mount /commit  
dism /export-image /sourceimagefile:c:\winpe_amd64\media\sources\boot.wim /sourceindex:1  
/DestinationImageFile:c:\winpe_amd64\mount\boot2.wim  
Del c:\winpe_amd64\media\sources\boot.wim  
Copy c:\winpe_amd64\mount\boot2.wim c:\winpe_amd64\media\sources\boot.wim
```

For x86 Windows 10 images:

```
dism /unmount-image /mountdir:c:\winpe_x86\mount /commit  
dism /export-image /sourceimagefile:c:\winpe_x86\media\sources\boot.wim /sourceindex:1  
/DestinationImageFile:c:\winpe_x86\mount\boot2.wim  
Del c:\winpe_x86\media\sources\boot.wim  
Copy c:\winpe_x86\mount\boot2.wim c:\winpe_x86\media\sources\boot.wim
```

Create a bootable WinPE drive

Now that you've updated your WinPE image to have everything it needs to work with the PCs in your environment, you can make a bootable WinPE drive. From the Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment:

1. Connect *WinPE* to your technician PC.
2. Copy WinPE to the USB drive:

For x64 WinPE:

```
MakeWinPEMedia /UFD C:\winpe_amd64 D:
```

Where D: is the letter of the *WinPE* drive.

When prompted, press **Y** to format the drive and install WinPE.

For x86 WinPE:

```
MakeWinPEMedia /UFD C:\winpe_x86 D:
```

Where D: is the letter of the USB drive.

When prompted, press **Y** to format the drive and install WinPE.

3. In File Explorer, right-click the drive and select **Eject**.

Boot your reference PC to WinPE

1. Connect the *WinPE* USB drive to your reference device.
2. Turn off the reference device, and then boot to the USB drive. You usually do this by powering on the device and quickly pressing a key (for example, the **Esc** key or the **Volume up** key).

Note On some devices, you might need to go into the boot menus to choose the USB drive. If you're given a choice between booting in UEFI mode or BIOS mode, choose UEFI mode. To learn more, see [Boot to UEFI Mode or Legacy BIOS mode](#). If the device does not boot from the USB drive, see the troubleshooting tips in [WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#).

WinPE starts at a command line, and runs **wpeinit** to set up the system. This can take a few minutes.

Leave this PC booted to Windows PE for now.

Customize your Windows image

Now that you have your WinPE image customized for your deployment, we'll get into how to get your Windows image ready for deployment. The process is similar to how we changed our WinPE image, but Windows has many additional customization options.

Mount a Windows image

In this section we'll cover how to mount Windows images on your technician PC. Mounting a Windows image is the same process that we used to mount the WinPE image earlier. When we mount our Windows image (*install.wim*), we'll be able to access a second image, *WinRE.wim*, which is the image that supports recovery scenarios. Updating *install.wim* and *WinRE.wim* at the same time helps you keep the two images in sync, which ensures that recovery goes as expected.

Before we continue, make sure that you've created your *USB-B* drive. We showed you how to set it up in the [Get the tools you need](#) section.

Start working with your images:

First copy the *install.wim* from your Windows installation media to *USB-B*. *Install.wim* includes both Home and Professional images. We'll export the Home image from *install.wim*, and then work with that image during this lab.

1. Insert *USB-B* into your technician computer.
2. Mount the Windows 10 Home .img from the Win Home 10 32-BIT/X64 English OPK.
3. From the mounted image, copy D:\sources\install.wim to *USB-B*:images. (Where D: is the drive letter of the mounted image.)
4. From the Start menu, open Windows Kits, open the Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment.
5. Right click on the Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment and run as Administrator.
6. Export the Home edition (index 2) from the *install.wim* as *basicimage.wim* and delete the original *USB-B\images\install.wim*:

```
Dism /export-image /sourceimagefile:e:\images\install.wim /sourceindex:2  
/destinationimagefile:e:\images\basicimage.wim  
Del e:\images\install.wim
```

Now that you have your image exported, you can mount it.

7. Mount *BasicImage.wim*.

```
Md C:\mount\windows  
Dism /Mount-Wim /WimFile:E:\images\basicimage.wim /index:1 /MountDir:C:\mount\windows
```

(where E:\ is the drive letter of *USB-B*)

8. Mount the Windows RE Image file from your mounted image.

```
Md c:\mount\winre  
Dism /Mount-Wim /WimFile:C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\Recovery\winre.wim /index:1  
/MountDir:C:\mount\winre
```

Troubleshoot: If *winre.wim* cannot be seen under the specified directory, use the following command to set the file visible:

```
attrib -h -a -s C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\Recovery\winre.wim
```

Troubleshoot: If the mounting operation fails, make sure you're using DISM from the Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment. Do not mount images to protected folders, such as the User\Documents folder.

If DISM processes are interrupted, consider temporarily disconnecting from the network and disabling virus protection.

Add drivers and languages to a mounted image

In the following sections we'll cover some ways that you can modify your mounted Windows image. First, we'll show you how to add drivers and language packs.

Drivers

Add drivers to an image to ensure that all hardware in a PC is setup properly when Windows boots for the first time.

Note: When creating several devices with identical hardware configurations, you can speed up installation time and first boot-up time by maintaining driver configurations when capturing a Windows image.

1. Add a single driver that includes an .inf file. In this example, we're using a driver named media1.inf:

```
Dism /Add-Driver /Image:"C:\mount\windows" /Driver:"C:\Drivers\PnP.Media.V1\media1.inf"
```

Where "C:\Drivers\PnP.Media.V1\media1.inf" is the base .inf file in your driver package.

2. If you want to add an entire folder of drivers, you can use the /Recurse option. This adds all .inf drivers in the folder and all its subfolders.

WARNING

While /Recurse can be handy, it's easy to bloat your image with it. Some driver packages include multiple .inf driver packages, which often share payload files from the same folder. During installation, each .inf driver package is expanded into a separate folder, each with a copy of the payload files. We've seen cases where a popular driver in a 900MB folder added 10GB to images when added with the /Recurse option.

```
Dism /Add-Driver /Image:"C:\mount\windows" /Driver:c:\drivers /Recurse
```

3. Verify that the drivers are part of the image:

```
Dism /Get-Drivers /Image:"C:\mount\windows"
```

Check the list of packages and verify that the list contains the drivers you added.

Languages

Notes

- **Add languages before major updates.** Major updates include hotfixes, general distribution releases, or service packs. If you add a language later, you'll need to reinstall the updates.
- **Add major updates before apps.** These apps include universal Windows apps and desktop applications. If you add an update later, you'll need to reinstall the apps. We'll show you how to add these later in Lab 6: Add universal Windows apps
- **Add your languages to your recovery image, too:** Many common languages can be added to your recovery image. We'll show you how to add these later in Lab 12: Update the recovery image.

Always use language packs and Features-On-Demand (FOD) packages that match the language and platform of the Windows image.

Features on demand (FODs) are Windows feature packages that can be added at any time. When a user needs a new feature, they can request the feature package from Windows Update. OEMs can preinstall these features to enable them on their devices out of the box.

Common features include language resources like handwriting recognition. Some of these features are required to enable full Cortana functionality.

The following table shows the types of language packages and components available for Windows 10:

COMPONENT	SAMPLE FILE NAME	DEPENDENCIES	DESCRIPTION
Language pack	Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Pack_x64_es-es	None	UI text, including basic Cortana capabilities.
Language interface pack	Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Interface-Pack_x64_ca-es	Requires a specific fully-localized or partially-localized language pack. Example: ca-ES requires es-ES.	UI text, including basic Cortana capabilities. To learn more, see Available Language Packs for Windows.
Basic	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Basic-fr-fr-Package	None	Spell checking, text prediction, word breaking, and hyphenation if available for the language. You must add this component before adding any of the following components.
Fonts	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Thai-Package	None	Fonts required for some regions. Example, th-TH requires the Thai font pack.
Optical character recognition	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-OCR-fr-fr-Package	Basic	Recognizes and outputs text in an image.
Handwriting recognition	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Handwriting-fr-fr-Package	Basic	Enables handwriting recognition for devices with pen input.
Text-to-speech	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-TextToSpeech-fr-fr-Package	Basic	Enables text to speech, used by Cortana and Narrator.
Speech recognition	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Speech-fr-fr-Package	Basic, Text-To-Speech recognition	Recognizes voice input, used by Cortana and Windows Speech
Retail Demo experience	Microsoft-Windows-RetailDemo-OfflineContent-Content-fr-fr-Package	Basic	Retail Demo Experience (RDX)

Add or change languages

In this section, we'll add languages and Features On Demand to your Windows image. We'll add the German (de-de) language pack, then we'll add the Japanese (ja-jp) language. Japanese is an example of a language that requires additional font support.

Important: If you install an update (hotfix, general distribution release [GDR], or service pack [SP]) that contains language-dependent resources prior to installing a language pack, the language-specific changes in the update won't be applied when you add the language pack. You need to reinstall the update to apply language-specific changes. To avoid reinstalling updates, install language packs before installing updates.

Language updates have a specific order they need to be installed in. For example, to enable Cortana, install, in order: **Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Pack**, then **-Basic**, then **-Fonts**, then **-TextToSpeech**, and then **-Speech**. If you're not sure of the dependencies, it's OK to put them all in the same folder, and then add them all using `DISM /Add-Package`.

Make sure that you are using language packs and features on demand that match the architecture of the image you are working with. Below we'll give examples of using both 64-bit and 32-bit, but you only have to install the Lps and FODs that match the architecture that you're using.

1. Add German language package and Feature on Demand language packages.

For 64-bit Windows, use the language packs and features on demand from the 64-bit ISOs:

```
Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\windows /PackagePath:E:\LanguagePacks\x64\Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Pack_x64_de-de.cab /PackagePath:E:\LanguageFeaturePacks\x64\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Basic-de-de-Package.cab /PackagePath:E:\LanguageFeaturePacks\x64\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-OCR-de-de-Package.cab /PackagePath:E:\LanguageFeaturePacks\x64\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Handwriting-de-de-Package.cab /PackagePath:E:\LanguageFeaturePacks\x64\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-TextToSpeech-de-de-Package.cab /PackagePath:E:\LanguageFeaturePacks\x64\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Speech-de-de-Package.cab /packagepath:e:\LanguageFeaturePacks\x64\Microsoft-Windows-RetailDemo-OfflineContent-Content-de-de-Package.cab
```

Where E: is the drive letter of the mounted ISO.

For 32-bit Windows, use the language packs and features on demand from the 32-bit ISOs:

```
Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\windows /PackagePath:E:\LanguagePacks\x86\Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Pack_x86_de-de.cab /PackagePath:E:\LanguageFeaturePacks\x86\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Basic-de-de-Package.cab /PackagePath:E:\LanguageFeaturePacks\x86\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-OCR-de-de-Package.cab /PackagePath:E:\LanguageFeaturePacks\x86\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Handwriting-de-de-Package.cab /PackagePath:E:\LanguageFeaturePacks\x86\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-TextToSpeech-de-de-Package.cab /PackagePath:E:\LanguageFeaturePacks\x86\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Speech-de-de-Package.cab /packagepath:E:\LanguageFeaturePacks\x86\Microsoft-Windows-RetailDemo-OfflineContent-Content-de-de-Package.cab
```

2. (Optional) Add Japanese language packs and features on demand.

In Windows 10, some language-specific fonts were separated out into different canguage .cab files. In this section, we'll add the ja-JP language along with support for Japanese fonts.

For 64-bit Windows, use the language packs and features on demand from the 64-bit ISOs:

```
Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\windows /PackagePath:E:\LanguagePacks\x64\Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Pack_x64_ja-jp.cab /PackagePath:E:\LanguageFeaturePacks\x64\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Basic-ja-jp-Package.cab /PackagePath:E:\LanguageFeaturePacks\x64\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-OCR-ja-jp-Package.cab /PackagePath:E:\LanguageFeaturePacks\x64\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Handwriting-ja-jp-Package.cab /PackagePath:E:\LanguageFeaturePacks\x64\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-TextToSpeech-ja-jp-Package.cab /PackagePath:E:\LanguageFeaturePacks\x64\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Speech-ja-jp-Package.cab /PackagePath:E:\LanguageFeaturePacks\x64\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Jpan-Package.cab /packagepath:E:\LanguageFeaturePacks\x64\Microsoft-Windows-RetailDemo-OfflineContent-Content-ja-jp-Package.cab
```

For 32-bit Windows, use the language packs and features on demand from the 32-bit ISOs:

```
Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\windows /PackagePath:E:\LanguagePacks\x86\Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Pack_x86_ja-jp.cab /PackagePath:E:\LanguageFeaturePacks\x86\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Basic-jp-Package.cab /PackagePath:E:\LanguageFeaturePacks\x86\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-OCR-jp-Package.cab /PackagePath:E:\LanguageFeaturePacks\x86\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Handwriting-jp-Package.cab /PackagePath:E:\LanguageFeaturePacks\x86\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-TextToSpeech-jp-Package.cab /PackagePath:E:\LanguageFeaturePacks\x86\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Speech-jp-Package.cab /PackagePath:E:\LanguageFeaturePacks\x86\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Jpan-Package.cab /packagepath:E:\LanguageFeaturePacks\x86\Microsoft-Windows-RetailDemo-OfflineContent-Content-jp-Package.cab
```

Add languages to Windows RE

Here we'll show you how to add languages to WinRE. Adding languages to WinRE ensures that the language that a customer expects is available in recovery scenarios.

WinRE uses the same language packs as WinPE. You can find these language packs on the language pack ISOs.

1. Add German language packages

For 64-bit Windows, use the language packs and features on demand from the 64-bit ISOs:

```
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x64\de-de\lp.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x64\de-de\WinPE-Rejuv_de-de.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x64\de-de\WinPE-EnhancedStorage_de-de.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x64\de-de\WinPE-Scripting_de-de.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x64\de-de\WinPE-SecureStartup_de-de.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x64\de-de\WinPE-SRT_de-de.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x64\de-de\WinPE-WDS-Tools_de-de.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x64\de-de\WinPE-WMI_de-de.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x64\de-de\WinPE-StorageWMI_de-de.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x64\de-de\WinPE-HTA_de-de.cab"
```

For 32-bit Windows, use the language packs and features on demand from the 32-bit ISOs:

```
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x86\de-de\lp.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x86\de-de\WinPE-Rejuv_de-de.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x86\de-de\WinPE-EnhancedStorage_de-de.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x86\de-de\WinPE-Scripting_de-de.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x86\de-de\WinPE-SecureStartup_de-de.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x86\de-de\WinPE-SRT_de-de.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x86\de-de\WinPE-WDS-Tools_de-de.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x86\de-de\WinPE-WMI_de-de.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x86\de-de\WinPE-StorageWMI_de-de.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x86\de-de\WinPE-HTA_de-de.cab"
```

2. (Optional) Add Japanese language packs and font support to WinRE. Note that for Japanese, we will add an additional cab that is for font support.

For 64-bit Windows, use the language packs and features on demand from the 64-bit ISOs:

```
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x64\ja-jp\lp.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x64\ja-jp\WinPE-Rejuv_ja-jp.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x64\ja-jp\WinPE-EnhancedStorage_ja-jp.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x64\ja-jp\WinPE-Scripting_ja-jp.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x64\ja-jp\WinPE-SecureStartup_ja-jp.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x64\ja-jp\WinPE-SRT_ja-jp.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x64\ja-jp\WinPE-WDS-Tools_ja-jp.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x64\ja-jp\WinPE-WMI_ja-jp.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x64\ja-jp\WinPE-StorageWMI_ja-jp.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x64\ja-jp\WinPE-HTA_ja-jp.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x64\ja-jp\WinPE-FontSupport-JA-JP.cab"
```

For 32-bit Windows, use the language packs and features on demand from the 32-bit ISOs:

```
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x86\ja-jp\lp.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x86\ja-jp\WinPE-Rejuv_ja-jp.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x86\ja-jp\WinPE-EnhancedStorage_ja-jp.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x86\ja-jp\WinPE-Scripting_ja-jp.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x86\ja-jp\WinPE-SecureStartup_ja-jp.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x86\ja-jp\WinPE-SRT_ja-jp.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x86\ja-jp\WinPE-WDS-Tools_ja-jp.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x86\ja-jp\WinPE-WMI_ja-jp.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x86\ja-jp\WinPE-StorageWMI_ja-jp.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x86\ja-jp\WinPE-HTA_ja-jp.cab"
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\LanguagePacks\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x86\ja-jp\WinPE-FontSupport-JA-JP.cab"
```

Configure language settings

This section covers how to change the default language and timezone of your mounted Windows image.

1. Use Dism to set the default language of the image. We'll set the default language to German, since we added it into our image in the previous steps.:

```
Dism /Image:C:\mount\windows /Set-AllIntl:de-DE
Dism /Image:C:\mount\winre /Set-AllIntl:de-DE
```

2. Verify your changes

```
Dism /Image:C:\mount\windows /Get-Intl
```

3. Set the timezone for the region of the default language applied

```
Dism /Image:C:\mount\windows /set-timezone:"W. Europe Standard Time"
```

Remove the base language from the image

This section covers removing a language from the Windows image.

Now that our image has been set to use German as the default language, we can remove the English language features from it and make it a non-English image. To remove en-US completely from the image, you'll have to remove several components.

Note: Don't remove the English base language if you're shipping a PC in English.

For removing the language components from a 64-bit image:

```
dism /image:"c:\mount\windows" /remove-package /packagename:Microsoft-Windows-Client-LanguagePack-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Basic-en-us-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Handwriting-en-us-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-OCR-en-us-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Speech-en-us-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-TextToSpeech-en-us-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:Microsoft-Windows-RetailDemo-OfflineContent-Content-en-us-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~10.0.15063.0
```

For removing language components from a 32-bit image:

```
dism /image:"c:\mount\windows" /remove-package /packagename:Microsoft-Windows-Client-LanguagePack-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~x86~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Basic-en-us-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~x86~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Handwriting-en-us-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~x86~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-OCR-en-us-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~x86~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Speech-en-us-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~x86~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-TextToSpeech-en-us-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~x86~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:Microsoft-Windows-RetailDemo-OfflineContent-Content-en-us-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~x86~10.0.15063.0
```

Troubleshooting: If an error occurs when running these commands, try the command again on the package that failed.

Example:

```
Error: 0x800f0825
Package Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Basic-en-us-Package may have failed due to pending updates to servicing components in the image.
```

If the command completes with errors, check the DISM log file at C:\windows\Logs\DISM\dism.log.

Remove the base languages from WinRE (Optional)

Similar to removing the base language in install.wim, we can remove the base language from WinRE as well.

For removing language components from a 64-bit image:

```
Dism /image:"c:\mount\winre" /remove-package /packagename:Microsoft-Windows-WinPE-LanguagePack-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:WinPE-EnhancedStorage-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:WinPE-HTA-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:WinPE-Rejuv-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:WinPE-Scripting-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:WinPE-SecureStartup-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:WinPE-SRT-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:WinPE-StorageWMI-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:WinPE-WDS-Tools-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:WinPE-WMI-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.15063.0
```

For removing language components from a 32-bit image:

```
Dism /image:"c:\mount\winre" /remove-package /packagename:Microsoft-Windows-WinPE-LanguagePack-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~x86~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:WinPE-EnhancedStorage-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~x86~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:WinPE-HTA-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~x86~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:WinPE-Rejuv-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~x86~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:WinPE-Scripting-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~x86~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:WinPE-SecureStartup-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~x86~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:WinPE-SRT-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~x86~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:WinPE-StorageWMI-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~x86~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:WinPE-WDS-Tools-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~x86~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /packagename:WinPE-WMI-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~x86~en-US~10.0.15063.0
```

Add updates to your image

While your image is mounted, you can add Windows updates. The process is similar to the one we used to add drivers earlier.

Notes:

- **Add languages before major updates.** Major updates include hotfixes, general distribution releases, or service packs. If you add a language later, you'll need to re-add the updates.
- **Add major updates before apps.** These apps include universal Windows apps and desktop applications. If you add an update later, you'll need to re-add the apps.
- **For major updates, update the recovery image too:** These may include hotfixes, general distribution releases, service packs, or other pre-release updates. We'll show you how to update these later in Lab 12: Update the recovery image.
- If a **Servicing Stack Update (SSU) is required**, you'll have to apply it before applying the most recent General Distribution Release or any future GDRs.

Add a Windows update package

Use Dism to apply the latest servicing stack update (SSU) and general distribution release (GDR) as well as any prerequisite KB updates. You can find KB updates in the following locations:

GDR: <http://aka.ms/win10releaseinfo>

SSU: <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/windows/hardware/commercialize/manufacture/whats-new-in-windows-manufacturing>

KB Files: <http://catalog.update.microsoft.com>

IMPORTANT

If you install an update (hotfix, general distribution release [GDR], or service pack [SP]) that contains language-dependent resources prior to installing a language pack, the language-specific changes in the update won't be applied when you add the language pack. You need to reinstall the update to apply language-specific changes. To avoid reinstalling updates, install language packs before installing updates.

1. Get a Windows update package. For example, grab the [latest cumulative update listed in Windows 10 update history from the Microsoft Update catalog](#). Extract the .msu file update to a folder, for example, E:\updates\windows10.0-kb4016240-x64_0e60aebeb151d4b3598e4cfa9b4ccb1fc80e6e4d.msu. Make sure that your update matches the architecture of the image you are working with.

To learn more, see <https://myoem.microsoft.com/oem/myoem/en/product/winemb/pages/comm-ms-updt-ctlg-trnstn.aspx>.

2. Add the msu to your mounted image using `dism /add-package`.

For 64-bit images:

```
Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\windows /PackagePath:"E:\updates\windows10.0-kb4016871-x64_27dfce9dbd92670711822de2f5f5ce0151551b7d.msu"
```

For 32-bit images:

```
Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\windows /PackagePath:"E:\updates\windows10.0-kb4016240-x86_7c7fcf0d4018e4244561cde531c3fb583d9f3051.msu"
```

Note: Each package is typically a new KB that increases the build revision number of Windows. You can find the revision number of windows in the following registry key:

```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows NT\CurrentVersion\UBR
```

Add Update packages to WinRE

In this section, we cover how to add updates to the WinRE image.

Important: You have to apply cumulative updates to your WinRE image in addition to your Windows image. Because updates are cumulative, when a new update is installed, old updates can be removed. The WinRE optimization that we cover later in the lab will remove unnecessary updates which will keep the WinRE image from growing in size.

To apply the update that you downloaded in the previous section to your WinRE image, you have to run `dism /add-package` to apply the update to the mounted WinRE image.

For 64-bit Windows:

```
Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"E:\updates\windows10.0-kb4016871-x64_27dfce9dbd92670711822de2f5f5ce0151551b7d.msu"
```

For 32-bit Windows:

```
Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\windows /PackagePath:"E:\updates\windows10.0-kb4016240-x86_7c7fcf0d4018e4244561cde531c3fb583d9f3051.msu"
```

Service inbox apps

In this section we'll show you how to service Windows 10 inbox apps in your mounted image. You'll need to reinstall inbox apps after you install language packs.

Note: Starting with Windows 10, version 1703, app bundles contain only dependency packages that pertain to the app. You don't have to check the prov.xml to see which dependencies to install. Install all dependency packages found in the app's folder.

Starting with Windows 10, version 1703, inbox apps won't get monthly updates. Go to <https://microsoftoem.com> and get the App Update OPK. This package includes the Windows 10 inbox apps for the most current Windows release.

1. Extract the App Update OPK to a folder, for example, E:\apps\amd64.
2. For Windows 10, version 1709, add the HEVC codec from the App Update OPK. Note that the HEVC codec is currently not available as an .appxbundle package, so you'll have to use the .appx packages.

For 64-bit Windows:

```
DISM /image:c:\mount\windows /add-ProvisionedAppxPackage  
/packagepath:"E:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.HEVCVideoExtension_8wekyb3d8bbwe.x64.appx"  
/licensepath:"E:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.HEVCVideoExtension_8wekyb3d8bbwe.x64.xml"  
/dependencypackagepath:"E:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx"
```

For 32-bit Windows:

```
DISM /image:c:\mount\windows /add-ProvisionedAppxPackage  
/packagepath:"E:\apps\x86\Microsoft.HEVCVideoExtension_8wekyb3d8bbwe.x86.appx"  
/licensepath:"E:\apps\x86\Microsoft.HEVCVideoExtension_8wekyb3d8bbwe.x86.xml"  
/dependencypackagepath:"E:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx"
```

3. Use DISM to reinstall inbox apps. You no longer have to uninstall inbox apps prior to reinstalling them. You'll have to run reinstallation commands for each inbox app. Here is an example of how to reinstall one inbox app, the 3D Builder app:

For 64-bit Windows:

```
DISM /image:c:\mount\windows /add-ProvisionedAppxPackage  
/packagepath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.3DBuilder_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle  
/licensepath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.3DBuilder_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml  
/dependencypackagepath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx  
/dependencypackagepath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
```

For 32-bit Windows:

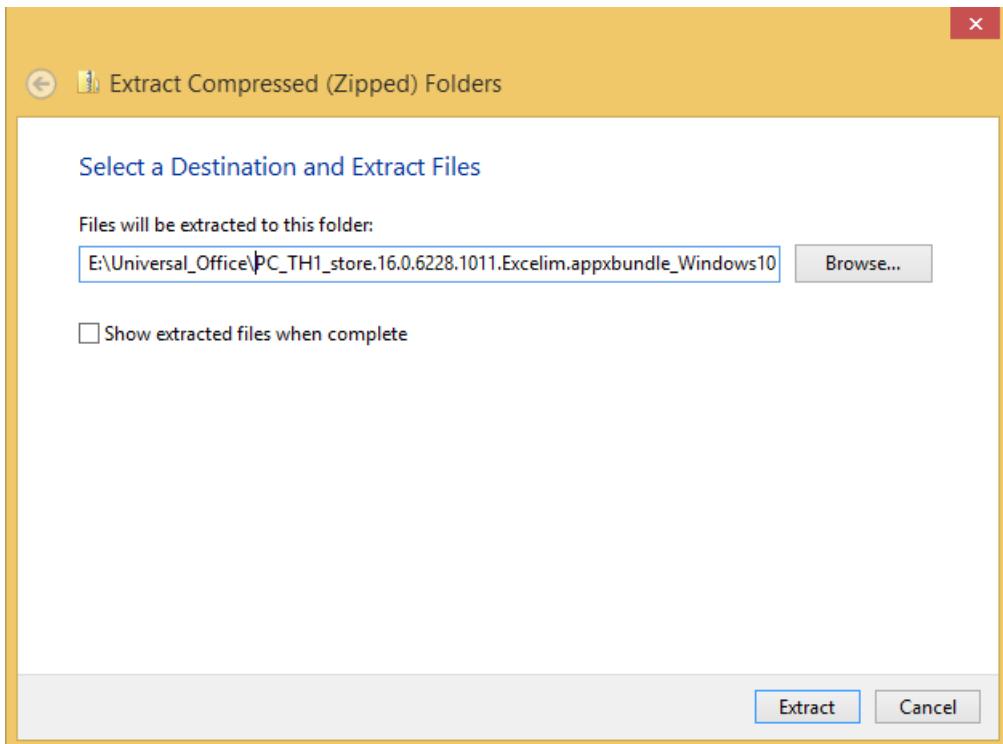
```
DISM /image:c:\mount\windows /add-ProvisionedAppxPackage  
/packagepath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.3DBuilder_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle  
/licensepath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.3DBuilder_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml  
/dependencypackagepath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
```

Add Windows Universal Office Mobile (if applicable)

You can preinstall Office single image (with or without perpetual or subscription license) or Office Mobile. Office single image is for devices with screen sizes larger than 10.1". Office Mobile is for devices with screen size of 10.1" and smaller. For devices with a single fixed storage drive and less than 32 GB storage, you can preinstall Office Mobile regardless of the screen size. Only preinstall one version of Office on a PC.

We'll cover how to preinstall Office single image later in the audit mode section. Here's how to add Universal Office Mobile:

1. Download the latest update of the Office Mobile package. Check the Software Order Center at microsoftoem.com for the latest version.
2. Extract the Universal Office file to *USB-B\Unversal_Office*



3. Run the following DISM commands. If you are using a newer version of Office than we use in the examples, make sure that the filenames in the command are accurate:

```
dism /image:"c:\mount\windows" /add-provisionedappxpackage  
/packagepath:"e:\Universal_office\PC_TH1_store.16.0.6228.1011.Excelim.appxbundle_Windows10_PreinstallKit\1b056  
9bd5fbda1d6bf0669beb013073c.appxbundle"  
/dependencypackagepath:"e:\Universal_office\PC_TH1_store.16.0.6228.1011.Excelim.appxbundle_Windows10_Preinstal  
lKit\Microsoft.VCLibs.140.00_14.0.22929.0_x86__8wekyb3d8bbwe.appx"  
/licensepath:"e:\Universal_office\PC_TH1_store.16.0.6228.1011.Excelim.appxbundle_Windows10_PreinstallKit\1b056  
9bd5fbda1d6bf0669beb013073c_License1.xml"  
dism /image:"c:\mount\windows" /add-provisionedappxpackage  
/packagepath:"e:\Universal_office\PC_TH1_store.16.0.6228.1011.Pptim.appxbundle_Windows10_PreinstallKit\7f25506  
2294a415a974b4958961df056.appxbundle"  
/dependencypackagepath:"e:\Universal_office\PC_TH1_store.16.0.6228.1011.Pptim.appxbundle_Windows10_PreinstallK  
it\Microsoft.VCLibs.140.00_14.0.22929.0_x86__8wekyb3d8bbwe.appx"  
/licensepath:"e:\Universal_office\PC_TH1_store.16.0.6228.1011.Pptim.appxbundle_Windows10_PreinstallKit\7f25506  
2294a415a974b4958961df056_License1.xml"  
dism /image:"c:\mount\windows" /add-provisionedappxpackage  
/packagepath:"e:\Universal_office\PC_TH1_store.16.0.6228.1011.Wordim.appxbundle_Windows10_PreinstallKit\532f71  
0ca9d34f0aae6af4abe0af0592.appxbundle"  
/dependencypackagepath:"e:\Universal_office\PC_TH1_store.16.0.6228.1011.Wordim.appxbundle_Windows10_Preinstall  
Kit\Microsoft.VCLibs.140.00_14.0.22929.0_x86__8wekyb3d8bbwe.appx"  
/licensepath:"e:\Universal_office\PC_TH1_store.16.0.6228.1011.Wordim.appxbundle_Windows10_PreinstallKit\532f71  
0ca9d34f0aae6af4abe0af0592_License1.xml"
```

Modify the Start layout

The Start tile layout in Windows 10 provides OEMs the ability to append tiles to the default Start layout to include Web links, secondary tiles, classic Windows applications, and universal Windows apps. OEMs can use this layout to make it applicable to multiple regions or markets without duplicating a lot of the work. In addition, OEMs can add up to three default apps to the frequently used apps section in the system area, which delivers system-driven lists, including important or frequently accessed system locations and recently installed apps.

To take advantage of the new features, and to have the most robust and complete Start customization experience for Windows 10, consider creating a LayoutModification.xml file. This file specifies how the OEM tiles should be laid out in Start. For more information about how to customize the new Start layout, see the topic [Customize the Windows 10 Start screen](#) in the Windows 10 Partner Documentation or on MSDN.

To get you started, we've provided a sample file called layoutmodification.xml in the files you extracted to *Data*. We recommend using this file for this lab. You can find it in *USB-B\StartLayout*.

The Sample LayoutModification.xml shows two groups called "Fabrikam Group 1" and "Fabrikam Group 2", which contain tiles that will be applied if the device country/region matches what's specified in Region (in this case, the regions are Germany and United States). Each group contains three tiles and the various elements you need to use depending on the tile that you want to pin to Start.

Keep the following in mind when creating your LayoutModification.xml file:

- If you are pinning a Classic Windows application using the start:DesktopApplicationTile tag and you don't know the application's application user model ID, you need to create a .lnk file in a legacy Start Menu directory before first boot.
- If you use the start:DesktopApplicationTile tag to pin a legacy .url shortcut to Start, you must create a .url file and add this file to a legacy Start Menu directory before first boot.

For the above scenarios, you can use the following directories to put the .url or .lnk files:

- %APPDATA%\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs\
- %ALLUSERSPROFILE%\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs\

Note: The sample layoutmodification.xml contains Office Mobile apps. If you aren't preinstalling Office Mobile, be sure to remove Office Mobile from the layout by removing the element as well as the start tiles with Office applications.

1. Copy layoutmodification.xml to your mounted Windows image, in the c:\mount\windows\users\default\AppData\Local\Microsoft\Windows\Shell\ folder. If the file already exists, replace the existing file with the new one,
2. If you pinned tiles that require .url or .lnk files, add the files to the following legacy Start Menu directories:
 - %APPDATA%\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs\
 - %ALLUSERSPROFILE%\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs\

```
copy e:\StartLayout\Bing.url "C:\mount\windows\ProgramData\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs"
copy e:\StartLayout\Paint.lnk "c:\mount\windows\ProgramData\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs"
copy E:\StartLayout\Bing.url "c:\mount\windows\users\All Users\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs"
copy E:\StartLayout\Paint.lnk "C:\Mount\Windows\Users\All Users\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs"
```

Note: If you don't create a LayoutModification.xml file and you use the Unattend Start settings, Windows will take the first 12 SquareTiles or DesktoporSquareTiles settings in the Unattend file. Windows will place these tiles automatically in newly-created groups at the end of Start. The first six tiles are placed in the first OEM group and the second set of six tiles are placed in the second OEM group. If OEMName is specified in the Unattend file, OEMName is used to name the OEM groups are created.

Add a license agreement and info file

Add an OEM-specific license

In this section, we'll cover how an OEM can add their own license terms during OOBE.

Note: If the license terms are included, the OEM must include a version of the license terms in each language that is preinstalled onto the PC. A license term text must be an .rtf file, and have an .html file with a matching name in the same folder. See [OEM license terms](#) for more information on license files.

To begin adding license terms, you'll have to create folders for your license files, and then configure OOBE to show the license on first boot.

1. Create folders for your system languages under the following directory:
C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\oobe\info\default\
2. Name each folder under the C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\oobe\info\default\ directory as the Language Decimal Identifier that corresponds to the language. Do this step for each language pack that's in the Windows image.

Note: Please see [this link to see complete list of language decimal identifiers of corresponding languages](#).

For example, if en-us and de-de language packs are added to the Windows image, add a folder named "1033" (representing en-us language) in C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\oobe\info\default. Then add a folder named "1031" (de-de language) under the same C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\oobe\info\default\ directory.

```
MD c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\oobe\info\default\1031
MD c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\oobe\info\default\1033
```

3. Create a license terms .rtf file for each language you have in your image, and copy them to the language-specific oobe folder.

For example: Move the English agreement.rtf file to

C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\oobe\info\default\1033\ directory and move the German agreement.rtf to C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\oobe\info\default\1031.

```
copy E:\resources\english-agreement.rtf
c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\oobe\info\default\1033\agreement.rtf
copy E:\resources\german-agreement.rtf
c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\oobe\info\default\1031\agreement.rtf
```

4. Open a text editor and create .html versions of your license terms. Save the terms to the same folders as the .rtf versions. You can use the [EULA example](#) from [OEM license terms](#) to create sample files. The names of the EULA files should be identical, except for the extension.

```
C:\mount\windows\windows\system32\oobe\info\default\1033\agreement.html (English version)
C:\mount\windows\windows\system32\oobe\info\default\1031\agreement.html (German version)
```

5. Create an oobe.xml file to specify the agreement.rtf file path. Windows will automatically find the accompanying .html file. Below is a sample oobe.xml which is located at *USB-B\ConfigSet\oobe.xml*

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" ?>
- <FirstExperience>
  - <oobe>
    - <oem>
      <eulafilename>agreement.rtf</eulafilename>
    </oem>
  </oobe>
</FirstExperience>
```

6. Copy oobe.xml file to each language folder.

- For example: Copy oobe.xml to C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\oobe\info\default\1033\, which has a file called agreement.rtf in English. To add the German agreement, copy oobe.xml to C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\oobe\info\default\1031\ directory, which has the German agreement.rtf file.

```
copy e:\configset\oobe.xml c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\oobe\info\default\1033  
copy e:\configset\oobe.xml c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\oobe\info\default\1031
```

- Now each language folder has an oobe.xml, agreement.rtf, and agreement.html file in that corresponding language.

When the image first boots into OOBE, it will display the license agreement.

Create an image info file and add it to your image

- Create an csup.txt file to specify when the Windows image was created. This file must include the date that the image was created, in the form of 'MM-DD-YYYY', with no other characters, on a single line at the top of the file.

```
03-17-2017
```

- Copy the image info file into the mounted image.

```
xcopy C:\temp\CSUP.txt c:\mount\windows\windows\csup.txt
```

Work with Answer Files

An "answer file" is an XML-based file that contains setting definitions and values to use during Windows Setup. In an answer file, you specify various setup options, including how to partition disks, the location of the Windows image to install, and the product key to apply. Values that apply to the Windows installation, such as the names of user accounts, display settings, and Internet Explorer Favorites can also be specified. The answer file for Setup is typically called Unattend.xml.

You can create a new answer file (unattend.xml) that has the settings you need to deploy a PC. You can use Windows SIM that was installed as part of the ADK to create and modify unattend files. We recommended using the following answer files because they cover most the required settings in the Windows OEM Policy Document (OPD) Document. Copy the unattend file to the Panther folder so it can be processed during Windows setup:

- For OA 3.0 systems:

```
md c:\mount\windows\windows\panther  
copy /y E:\AnswerFiles\OA3.0\Unattend.xml C:\Mount\Windows\Windows\Panther
```

(where E:\ is USB-B)

- For non-OA 3.0 systems:

```
nd c:\mount\windows\Windows\panther  
copy /y E:\AnswerFiles\Non_OA3.0\Unattend.xml C:\Mount\Windows\Windows\Panther
```

(where E:\ is USB-B)

Add a custom logo and wallpaper

In this section we'll show you how to use an answer file (unattend.xml) to add a custom logo and wallpaper to your Windows image.

To learn about Windows customizations, see the most current Windows 10 OEM Policy Document (OPD).

We've provided some image files for the wallpaper and logo that are referenced in the sample unattend file that

you copied earlier. You can find the sample image files at *USB-B\configset\\$oem\$\system32\OEM*.

1. View the unattend file that you copied to the Panther folder in a text editor. Check the path to the logo and wallpaper files.
2. Copy the files into the mounted image

```
md c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\OEM  
copy E:\configset\$oem$\$system32\OEM c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\OEM
```

Where *E:* is *USB-B*.

Optimize WinRE

1. Increase the scratchspace size of the WinRE image.

```
Dism /image:c:\mount\winre /set-scratchspace:512
```

2. Cleanup unused files and reduce size of *winre.wim*

```
dism /image:"c:\mount\winre" /Cleanup-Image /StartComponentCleanup /Resetbase
```

Unmount your images

1. Close all applications that might be accessing files from the image, including File Explorer.
2. Commit the changes and unmount the Windows RE image:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:"C:\mount\winre" /Commit
```

where *C* is the drive letter of the drive that contains the image.

This process can take a few minutes.

3. Make a backup copy of the updated Windows RE image. We'll use the backup copy of WinRE later in the lab:

```
dism /export-image /sourceimagefile:c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\recovery\winre.wim /sourceindex:1  
/DestinationImageFile:e:\images\winre_bak.wim  
Del c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\recovery\winre.wim  
Copy e:\images\winre_bak.wim c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\recovery\winre.wim
```

When prompted, specify **F** for file

Troubleshoot: If you cannot see *winre.wim* under the specified directory, use the following command to set the file visible:

```
attrib -h -a -s C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\Recovery\winre.wim
```

4. Check the new size of the Windows RE image:

```
Dir "C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\Recovery\winre.wim"
```

Follow the below partition layout size chart to determine the size of your recovery partition in *createpartitions-.txt* files. The amount of free space left is after you copy *winre.wim* to the hidden partition.

See the below disk partition rules for more information.

PARTITION SIZE	FREE SPACE
Less than 500 MB	Minimum 50 MB free
500 MB or larger	Minimum 320 MB free

- If the partition is larger than 1 GB, we recommend that it should have at least 1 GB free.

5. Commit the changes and unmount the Windows image:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:"C:\mount\windows" /Commit
```

Where C is the drive letter of the drive that contains the image. This process may take several minutes.

Deploy your images to a new PC

In this section we'll prepare a PC for deployment by booting into WinPE, creating a partition layout, and then deploying your image.

Boot to WinPE

If you're not already booted into WinPE on the device you're deploying your image to, boot into WinPE:

1. Connect the *WINPE* drive and boot the reference computer.
2. After WinPE has been booted connect *USB-B*.
3. At the X:\Windows\system32> command line, type `diskpart` and press Enter.
4. At the \DISKPART> command line type `list volume`.
5. In the "Label" column, note the letter of the volume under the "Ltr" column. This is the drive letter of your USB key. (example E)
6. Type exit to quit Diskpart

Use a deployment script to apply your image

Run a script to create partitions and apply your image. We'll use walkthrough-deploy.bat in *USB-B\deployment* to do this for us.

Important: As of Windows 10, version 1607, the Recovery partition must be the next partition after the Windows partition. This ensures that winre.wim can be kept up-to-date during life of the device.

On your reference PC:

1. In WinPE, run walkthroughdeploy.bat from the *USB-B\deployment* folder, specifying the image you want to deploy:

```
E:\Deployment\walkthrough-deploy.bat E:\images\basicimage.wim
```

Note: There are several pauses in the script. You will be prompted Y/N for the Apply operation if this is Compact OS deployment.

2. When the script finishes, type exit to reboot the PC into the new Windows installation.
3. The PC will boot into OOBE. Press `Ctrl+Shift+F3` to boot into Audit mode.

Note: Only use compact OS on Flash drive based devices as compact OS performance is heavily dependent on the storage device capabilities. Compact OS is NOT recommending on rotational devices. Please

reference Compact OS for more information.

Make changes from Windows (audit mode)

Now that you have made changes to your offline image, you can apply your image to a PC and use audit mode to customize Windows using the familiar Windows environment. In audit mode, you can add Windows desktop applications, change system settings, add data, and run scripts to get your image ready for to be captured.

To make sure your audit mode changes are included in the recovery image, you'll need to capture these changes into a provisioning package using ScanState. This image gets used by the system recovery tools to restore your changes if things go wrong. You can optionally save drive space by running the applications directly from the compressed recovery files; this is known as single-instancing.

If you want to capture the changes in an image and apply it to other devices, you'll need to use the Sysprep tool to generalize the image.

Apps and Store opportunities

Through Windows 10 and the Windows Store, you have tremendous opportunities for brand and device differentiation, revenue creation, and customer access.

Windows Store apps are at the center of the Windows 10 experience. They are Windows universal apps, so you can build apps for desktops, tablets, or phones that run Windows 10. As an OEM, you can provide an engaging customer experience and increase brand loyalty by providing a great set of value-added software and services along with the high-quality hardware that you build.

For more information please refer to Windows Store Program 2016 Guide - 2016 Final Clean and Apps and Store Windows Engineering Guide (WEG)

Important: The key below must be set in Audit mode.

You have to change a registry setting to add your OEM ID. If you're an OEM Windows Store Program participant, contact PartnerOps@microsoft.com to get your OEM ID.

ITEM	LOCATION IN REGISTRY
OEMID	HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Store, (REG_SZ) OEMID
SCM ID	HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Store, (REG_SZ) StoreContentModifier

OEMID

1. Run regedit.exe from command prompt
2. Navigate to HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Store
3. Right click under (Defalut) -> click new
4. Click String Value
5. Type OEMID
6. Double click OEMID and enter OEM name in Value data: text field

SCMID

1. Run regedit.exe from command prompt
2. Navigate to HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Store
3. Right click under (Defalut) -> click new
4. Click String Value

5. Type StoreContentModifier
6. Double click StoreContentModifier and enter OEM name in Value data: text field

Important: The OEMID registry key is not restored automatically during PBR in Windows 10. Please refer to the scanstate section of this guide on how to restore the OEMID registry key during PBR operation.

Preload Microsoft Office

This section covers pre-loading Office v16.3.

Prepare Microsoft Office v16.3 for installation

This section provides information for licensed OEMs about how to use the Office Deployment Tool to preinstall Office 2016 on Windows PCs.

Note: This guide doesn't cover the PIPC scenarios for OEMs in Japan.

To complete this section, you'll need the Office Deployment Tool (X21-05453 Office 2016 v16.3 Deployment tool for OEM OPK), and Office V16.3 in a specific language. We'll use Enligh X21-05453 for this lab.

On your technician PC:

1. Mount the ISO for the Office deployment tool and copy the files to E:\OfficeV16.3\ (Where E: is *USB-B*).
2. Double click e:\OfficeV16.3\officedeploymenttool.exe
3. Provide folder path to extract files E:\OfficeV16.3

Setup.exe and configuration.xml are extracted to E:\OfficeV16.3

ConfigureHomeBusinessPremium.xml	23/01/2016 00:19	XML Document	1 KB
ConfigureO365Home.xml	14/01/2016 18:33	XML Document	1 KB
oemsetup.cmd	04/03/2016 21:33	Windows Comma...	8 KB
officedeploymenttool.exe	18/11/2016 23:02	Application	2 165 KB
ScheduledTask.xml	05/06/2016 22:48	XML Document	2 KB
ScheduledTaskWOW.xml	05/06/2016 22:48	XML Document	2 KB

1. Mount your language-specific Office ISO, and copy the Office folder to E:\OfficeV16.3 (Where E: is *USB-B*).

Name	Date modified	Type	Size
Office	1/12/2016 5:36 PM	File folder	
configuration.xml	1/12/2016 3:49 PM	XML File	2 KB
ConfigureHomeBusinessPremium.xml	1/22/2016 4:19 PM	XML File	1 KB
ConfigureO365Home.xml	1/14/2016 10:33 AM	XML File	1 KB
oemsetup.cmd	1/22/2016 5:23 PM	Windows Comma...	8 KB
officedeploymenttool.exe	1/12/2016 11:50 PM	Application	1,933 KB
setup.exe	1/12/2016 3:49 PM	Application	3,068 KB

[Optional] if you applied a language interface pack you may want to add the language pack for Office 2016 as well. We'll show you how to add German language support.

- a. Mount "X21-32396 Office v16.3 German OPK". b. Copy the office folder to E:\OfficeV16.3 c. Skip replacing duplicate files in the copy so that only the German languages are copied. d. Run

`Notepad E:\Officev16.3\ConfigureO365Home.xml` . e. Add a language ID and verify SourcePath as in screen shot below

```

<Configuration>

<Add SourcePath="d:\Office16.3" OfficeClientEdition="32" >
  <Product ID="O365HomePremRetail">
    <Language ID="en-us" />
    <Language ID="de-de" />

  </Product>
</Add>

```

1. Save and close ConfigureO365Home.xml
2. Unplug *USB-B* from technician computer

Install Office 2016

On your reference PC:

1. Plug *USB-B* into reference computer which is in Audit mode.
2. Find the drive letter for *USB-B*, We'll use E:
3. Notepad ConfigureO365Home.xml
4. Configure the SourcePath to point to USB-B E:\Officev16.3

Note: the only Product ID that needs to be specified in the configuration.xml file is O365HomePremRetail. If the user enters a key for another product, such as for Office Home & Student 2016, then Office will automatically be configured as the product associated with that key.

5. Close and Save ConfigureO365Home.xml
6. Open command prompt and navigate to d:\Officev16.3
7. Run setup.exe with the /configure option.

```
setup.exe /configure ConfigureO365Home.xml
```

Pin Office tiles to the Start Menu

You'll have to pin Office tiles to the start menu. If you don't pin them, Windows will remove the Office pins during OOB boot phase.

Note: You must be using at least version 10.0.10586.0 of Windows 10. The following steps don't work with earlier versions of Windows 10.

1. Open C:\Users\Default\AppData\Local\Microsoft\Windows\Shell\layoutmodification.xml in notepad.
2. Add to layoutmodification.xml as you see highlighted below:

```

<LayoutModificationTemplate
  xmlns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/Start/2014/LayoutModification"
  xmlns:defaultlayout="http://schemas.microsoft.com/Start/2014/FullDefaultLayout"
  xmlns:start="http://schemas.microsoft.com/Start/2014/StartLayout" Version="1">
  <RequiredStartGroupsCollection>
    <RequiredStartGroups Region="DE|US|JA">
      <AppendGroup Name="Fabrikam Group 1">
        <start:Tile AppUserModelID="Microsoft.Office.Sway_8wekyb3c">
          <start:Tile AppUserModelID="Microsoft.WindowsAlarms_8wekyb3d8bbwe!">
        </AppendGroup>
        <AppendGroup Name="Fabrikam Group 2">
          <start:DesktopApplicationTile DesktopApplicationID="Micros...>
          <start:DesktopApplicationTile DesktopApplicationID="http://...>
          <start:DesktopApplicationTile DesktopApplicationLinkPath='...>
        <start:Tile AppUserModelID="Microsoft.BingSports_8wekyb3d8bbwe!AppexSports">
        </AppendGroup>
      </RequiredStartGroups>
    </RequiredStartGroupsCollection>
    <AppendOfficeSuite/>
    <AppendOfficeSuiteChoice Choice="Desktop2016" />
    <TopMFUApps>
      <Tile AppUserModelID="Microsoft.WindowsCalculator_8wekyb3d8bbwe!App"/>
      <Tile AppUserModelID="Microsoft.BingTranslator_8wekyb3d8bbwe!App"/>
    </TopMFUApps>
  </LayoutModificationTemplate>

```

Note: The Choice attribute is new. This allows different versions of Office to be pinned to the Start screen at the same time. For now, Desktop2016 is the only valid value.

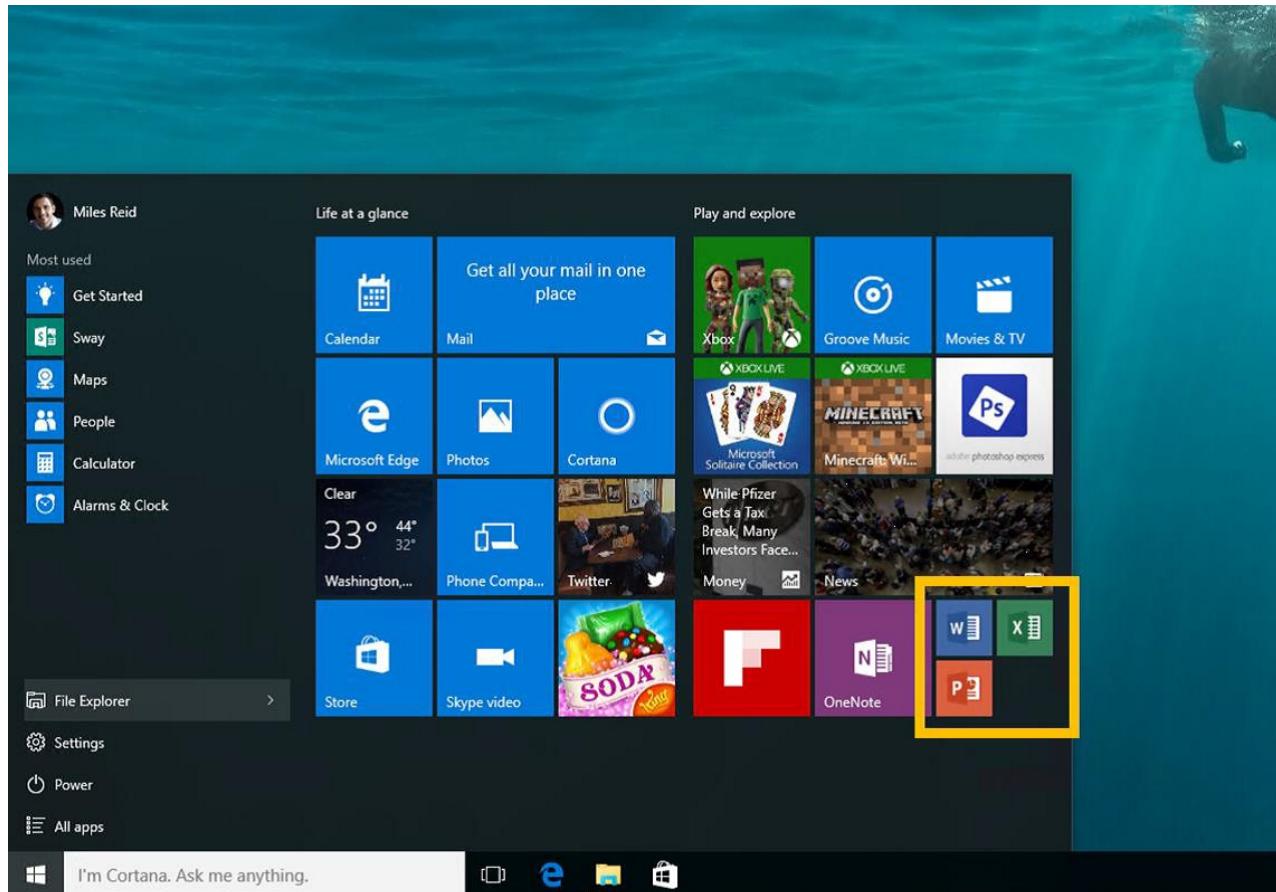
- Save and close layoutmodification.xml.

Note: for recovery, the layoutmodification.xml will need to be copied during recovery. Refer to section 10.3

- Copy to the recovery folder. This will ensure that your taskbar pins will remain through recovery scenarios.

```
C:\Users\Default\AppData\Local\Microsoft\Windows\Shell\layoutmodification.xml c:\recovery\OEM
```

When the PC is finished going through OOBE and is showing the desktop, the start menu will have the 3 tiles appended to start menu in image below:



Microsoft Office 2016: Configure setup experience for the user

After you install Office on the device, you also need to configure the setup experience for the user. This is the experience the user sees when they open an Office app for the first time on the device. This also is intended to ensure that Office is properly licensed and activated.

SETUP MODE	DESCRIPTION
OEM	In this mode, a customer can choose to try, buy, or activate Office with an existing account, PIN, or product key. This mode doesn't support Activation for Office (AFO) or AFO late binding. Therefore, if you choose this mode, you need to provide the customer with an Activation Card (formerly called a product key card or a Microsoft Product Identifier (MPI) card).

SETUP MODE	DESCRIPTION
OEMTA	<p>This mode supports the try, buy, or activate experience of the OEM mode as well as supporting AFO and AFO late binding. This mode supports Office activation through the device's Windows product key, which means the customer wouldn't need to enter a 5x5 product key code.</p>

OEM Mode – Provide user with activation card

1. In command prompt go to drive letter for USB-B\Officev16.2
2. Type and run oemsetup.cmd Mode=OEM Referral=####

OEMTA Mode – Activation is done through the device's Windows product key

Type and run oemsetup.cmd Mode=OEMTA Referral=####

Verify Customizations in Audit Mode

We don't recommend connecting your PC to the internet during manufacturing, and also don't recommend installing updates from Windows Update in audit mode because it will likely generate an error during sysprep.

1. After setup has finished, the computer logs into Windows in Audit mode automatically as an Administrator.
2. Verify the changes from the answer file (see manufacturer name, support phone number and other customizations) are present.

Prepare your image for Push Button Reset

This section provides guidance for setting up the recovery environment for Push Button Reset (PBR) scenarios.

Please reference Push-button reset and Windows Recovery Environment (Windows RE) and Hard Drives and Partitions for more information.

Push-button reset, is a built-in recovery tool which allows users to recover the OS while preserving their data and important customizations, without having to back-up their data in advance. It reduces the need for custom recovery applications by providing users with more recovery options and the ability to fix their own PCs with confidence.

In Windows 10, the Push-button reset features have been updated to include the following improvements:

The Push-button reset user experience offers customization opportunities. Manufacturers can insert custom scripts, install applications or preserve additional data at available extensibility points. The following Push-button reset features are available to users with Windows 10 PCs:

- Refresh your PC

Fixes software problems by reinstalling the OS while preserving the user data, user accounts, and important settings. All other preinstalled customizations are restored to their factory state. In Windows 10, this feature no longer preserves user-acquired Universal Windows apps.

- Reset your PC

Prepares the PC for recycling or for transfer of ownership by reinstalling the OS, removing all user accounts and contents (e.g. data, Classic Windows applications, and Universal Windows apps), and restoring preinstalled customizations to their factory state.

- Bare metal recovery

Restores the default or preconfigured partition layout on the system disk, and reinstalls the OS and preinstalled customizations from external media.

Prepare ScanState

To start working with Push Button Reset, you'll need to copy ScanState to *Data*.

Use scanstate to capture Classic Windows applications and settings on your image.

Note: You'll use your technician PC to prepare ScanState.

1. On Technician PC Insert USB-B
2. Open Deployment and Imaging tools command prompt as administrator
3. Run the copydandi.cmd script file pointing to USB-B key

OEMs using an x64 Windows 10 image, make x64 Scanstate directory

```
Copydandi.cmd amd64 e:\scanstate_amd64
```

Where E: is the letter of USB-B drive.

If you're using an x86 Windows 10 image, make x86 Scanstate directory:

```
Copydandi.cmd x86 e:\scanstate_x86
```

Where E: is the letter of USB-B drive.

Create a Scanstate migration file

In this section, you'll create a configuration file that will restore files and registry keys during Push-button reset.

Create a migration XML file used to restore registry values manually entered during manufacturing process. The sample below restores the OEMID registry value set earlier in this document.

Note: USB-B\recovery\recoveryimage\regrecover.xml already contains the registry values. You can use this file instead of creating a new file.

1. Open notepad
2. Copy and paste the following xml into Notepad. This tells ScanState to migrate the OEMID registry key:

```
<migration urlid="http://www.microsoft.com/migration/1.0/migxmlext/test">
    <component type="System" context="UserAndSystem">
        <displayName>OEMID</displayName>
        <role role="Settings">
            <rules>
                <include>
                    <objectSet>
                        <pattern type="Registry">HKLM\Software\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Store
[OEMID]</pattern>
                    </objectSet>
                </include>
            </rules>
        </role>
    </component>
</migration>
```

3. Save the file as regrecover.xml.

Create recovery package using Scanstate

On your reference PC:

Use ScanState to capture installed customizations into a provisioning package, and then save it to c:\Recovery\customizations. We'll use samples from *USB-B\Recovery\RecoveryImage* to create the provisioning

package.

Important: For PBR to work properly, packages have to be .ppkg files that are stored in C:\Recovery\Customizations.

1. Create the recovery OEM folder and copy contents of USB-B\Recovery\RecoveryImage

Important: To retain the customized start layout menu during recovery the layoutmodification.xml needs to be copied again during recovery process. We'll copy it here and then use EnableCustomizations.cmd to copy it during recovery.

```
Copy E:\Recovery\recoveryimage c:\recovery\OEM  
Copy E:\StartLayout\layoutmodification.xml c:\recovery\OEM
```

2. Run ScanState to gather app and customizations

For x64 Windows 10 PCs:

```
mkdir c:\recovery\customizations  
E:\ScanState_amd64\scanstate.exe /apps /ppkg C:\Recovery\Customizations\apps.ppkg  
/i:c:\recovery\oem\regrecover.xml /config:E:\scanstate_amd64\Config_AppsAndSettings.xml /o /c /v:13  
/l:C:\ScanState.log
```

Where E: is the drive letter of USB-B

For x86 Windows 10 PCs:

```
E:\ScanState_x86\scanstate.exe /apps /ppkg C:\Recovery\Customizations\apps.ppkg  
/i:c:\recovery\oem\regrecover.xml /config:e:\scanstate_x86\Config_AppsAndSettings.xml /o /c /v:13  
/l:C:\ScanState.log
```

Where E: is the drive letter of USB-B

3. When ScanState completes successfully, delete scanstate.log and miglog.xml files:

```
del c:\scanstate.log  
del c:\miglog.xml
```

Create Extensibility scripts to restore additional settings

You can customize the Push-button reset experience by configuring extensibility points. This enables you to run custom scripts, install additional applications, or preserve additional user, application, or registry data.

During recovery, PBR calls EnableCustomizations.cmd which we'll configure to do 2 things:

1. Copy the unattend.xml file used for initial deployment to the \windows\panther.
2. Copy the layoutmodification.xml to the system.

Note: The Win10DepWhiPapForOEMsv1.01July2015 sample extensibility script used a command which no longer is needed. Please use the extensibility script from USB-B as sample for point for creating a new extensibility script.

This will restore the additional layout settings from these 2 answer files during PBR.

Important: Recovery scripts and unattend.xml must be copied to c:\Recovery\OEM for PBR to pickup and restore settings defined in the unattend.xml.

Copy unattend.xml files for restoring settings

For OA 3.0 systems:

```
Copy e:\AnswerFiles\oa3.0\unattendsysprep.xml c:\Recovery\OEM\unattend.xml
```

For non-OA 3.0 systems:

```
Copy e:\AnswerFiles\non_oa3.0\unattendsysprep.xml c:\Recovery\OEM\unattend.xml
```

Copy winre.wim backup

During the deployment winre.wim file is moved. Before capturing a final image, the backup winre.wim we created must be copied back, or the recovery environment will not work in the final image deployment.

```
Copy e:\images\winre_bak.wim c:\windows\system32\recovery\winre.wim
```

Reseal the image

In this section, we'll use sysprep.exe to reseal our image and get it ready for factory deployment.

1. Delete installation folders and files that have been created of the preloaded applications which are for example, C:\Office-SingleImagev15.4-Setup. These folders can increase the size of a captured .wim file.
2. If the SysPrep Tool is open, close it and open Command Prompt in Administrator mode.
3. Generalize the image by using answer file with additional settings:

```
C:\Windows\System32\Sysprep\sysprep /oobe /generalize /unattend:c:\recovery\oem\Unattend.xml /shutdown
```

Finalize and Capture your image

We'll show you how to finalize and capture a factory image for mass deployment. To start this section, make sure your reference machine is shutdown after running sysprep in the previous section.

1. Connect "USB" and boot the Reference computer into WinPE.
2. After WinPE has been booted connect USB-B

Troubleshooting:

- If the reference PC boots from its internal HDD, Windows will enter the specialize and OOBE passes. You won't be able to capture a stable and generalized image if any of the configuration passes have completed. If either of those passes have completed, you'll need To generalize the image again. You can do with in Audit Mode (<Ctrl> + <Shift> + <F3> during OOBE). In Audit mode, run the Sysprep command from above. Make sure the PC boots to WinPE on the next restart.
 - If the system still boots to the internal HDD, check the PC's boot priority. Make sure that the USB has a higher boot priority than the internal hard drive.
3. Identify Windows Partition Drive letter using diskpart.
 - a. At the X:\windows\system32> prompt, type diskpart and press the key to start Diskpart.
 - b. At the \DISKPART> prompt type `list volume`.
 - c. Under the "Label" column, locate the volume that is labeled "Windows".
 - d. Note what letter it is has been assigned under the "Ltr" column (Example: C). This is the USB key's drive letter.

```

Microsoft Windows [Version 10.0.10240]
(c) 2015 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

C:\Windows\System32>diskpart

Microsoft DiskPart version 10.0.10240

Copyright (C) 1999-2013 Microsoft Corporation.
On computer: COMPNAME

DISKPART> list vol

Volume ### Ltr Label Fs Type Size Status Info
----- -- -- -- -- -- -- -- --
Volume 0 System NTFS Partition 100 MB Healthy System
Volume 1 C Windows NTFS Partition 465 GB Healthy Boot
Volume 2 Recovery NTFS Partition 500 MB Healthy Hidden
Volume 3 D Removable 0 B No Media

```

e. Type exit to quit Diskpart.

(CompactOS Only) Convert installed customizations

This section shows how to reduce the size of ScanState packages.

Important: Only do this step if you are deploying to a device with limited storage. Single instancing impacts the launch performance of some desktop applications.

Please reference Compact OS for more information.

To reduce the size of your ScanState recovery packages, run the following command from WinPE on your reference device:

```
DISM /Apply-CustomDataImage /CustomDataImage:C:\Recovery\Customizations\apps.pkg /ImagePath:C:\ /SingleInstance
```

Optimize your image with DISM

Running Dism with the `/resetbase` option optimizes your image in several ways:

- It marks installed packages (KB Updates) as permanent so that recovery and Push Button Reset is performed, packages are included in a refresh/reset.
- Superseded packages are removed.
- Package updates are compressed to save space.

The `/defer` option is new in Windows 10 version 1703. This switch skips the compression action while running `/resetbase`. The compression is done in a lower-priority thread after a device reaches the desktop. This improves the performance of running `/resetbase` on factory floor, but also means the image will be slightly larger than not running it.

Important: By default, non-major updates (e.g. ZDPs, KB's, LCUs) are not restored. To ensure that updates preinstalled during manufacturing are not discarded after recovery, they should be marked as permanent by using the `/Cleanup-Image` command in DISM with the `/StartComponentCleanup` and `/ResetBase` options. Updates marked as permanent are always restored during recovery.

Run DISM `/resetbase`

Run Dism with the `/resetbase` option to configure your Windows image to include installed packages in recovery:

Option 1: Run `/resetbase` with compression on

```
MD c:\scratchdir  
Dism /Cleanup-Image /Image:C:\ /StartComponentCleanup /resetbase /scratchdir:c:\scratchdir  
RD c:\scratchdir
```

Option 2: Run /resetbase /defer turning compression off

```
MD c:\scratchdir  
Dism /Cleanup-Image /Image:C:\ /StartComponentCleanup /resetbase /defer /scratchdir:c:\scratchdir  
RD c:\scratchdir
```

Capture your image

In this section, we'll tell you how to capture your sysprepped image.

On your reference PC:

1. Identify Windows Partition Drive letter.
 - a. At the X:\windows\system32> prompt, type diskpart and press the key to start Diskpart.
 - b. At the \DISKPART> prompt type list volume
 - c. Under the "Label" column, locate the volume that is labeled "Windows"
 - d. Note what letter it is has been assigned under the "Ltr" column (Example: C). This is the drive letter that needs to be used
 - e. Type exit to quit Diskpart
2. Capture the image of the windows partition to USB-B. This process takes several minutes.

Note: We recommend using a cache directory when running DISM. In this step we'll create scratchdir on the USB-B key for temporary files, but you can choose any hard drive with available space for your scratch directory.

```
MD e:\scratchdir  
Dism /Capture-Image /CaptureDir:C:\ /ImageFile:E:\Images\CustomImage.wim /Name:"CustomImage"  
/scratchdir:e:\scratchdir
```

This captures an image called CustomImage.wim to E:\Images. When the image capture is complete, you can shut down your reference PC.

Verify your final image

In this section, we'll cover how to deploy your captured image for testing and verification.

Deploy your image to the reference device

1. Boot the PC you want to test your image on into WinPE.
2. Run walkthrough-deploy.cmd to deploy the finalimage.wim

```
E:\Deployment\walkthrough-deploy.cmd E:\Images\FinalImage.wim
```

3. Type `exit` to close WinPE and restart the PC.

Validate the configuration

Your PC will restart and boot into Windows for the first time.

1. In OOBE, create a dummy user which will be deleted later.
2. Verify that any applications and offline customizations are still in your image and working properly.

Some things to check are:

- Taskbar
- Pinned Apps
- Desktop Wallpaper is set to display the right image
- OEM Information displays correctly
- OEM App ID registry key is set
- Default Theme is the one you chose
- Store apps start properly
- Desktop applications start ok
- Desktop applications applied via SPP start ok

Verify Recovery

1. Verify that your customizations are restored after recovery, and that they continue to function by running the Refresh your PC and Reset your PC features from the following entry points:
 - Settings a. From the Start Menu, click Settings, b. In the Settings app, click Update & security, and then click Recovery. c. Click the Get Started button under Reset this PC and follow the on-screen instructions.
 - Windows RE a. From the Choose an option screen in Windows RE, click Troubleshoot b. Click Reset this PC and then follow the on-screen instructions
2. Verify that recovery media can be created, and verify its functionality by running the bare metal recovery feature: a. Launch Create a recovery drive from Control Panel b. Follow the on-screen instructions to create the USB recovery drive c. Boot the PC from the USB recovery drive d. From the Choose an option screen, click Troubleshoot e. Click Recover from a drive and then follow the on-screen instructions

Note: The Push-button reset UI has been redesigned in Windows 10. The Keep my files option in the UI now corresponds to the Refresh your PC feature. Remove everything corresponds to the Reset your PC feature.

Optimize final image and set editions

At this point, you have a Windows Home image that is almost ready for deployment. In this section, we'll show you how to put the finishing touches on your image. We'll copy your image, and then upgrade the edition on the copied image. Then we'll optimize your final master images. Then you'll have two images ready for deployment.

1. Export your image so you can upgrade it to Windows Professional. This will export a copy of your image to a new file.

```
dism /export-image /sourceimagefile:e:\images\finalimage.wim /sourceindex:1  
/DestinationImageFile:C:\images\MasterImage_Pro.wim
```

2. Export your home image to cleanup unused packages in the Home image.

```
dism /export-image /sourceimagefile:e:\images\finalimage.wim /sourceindex:1  
/DestinationImageFile:C:\images\MasterImage_Home.wim
```

3. Mount MasterImage_Pro.wim for upgrading the edition

```
Dism /mount-wim /wimfile:e:\images\MasterImage_Pro.wim /mountdir:c:\mount\windows /index:1
```

4. Check for available editions within the mounted WIM with `dism /get-targeteditions`.

```
Dism /image:c:\mount\windows /get-targeteditions
```

Editions that can be upgraded to:

Target Edition : Professional

Target Edition : Education

5. Upgrade your image to Professional Edition.

```
Dism /image:c:\mount\windows /set-edition:Professional
```

6. Cleanup the upgraded image.

```
Dism /image:c:\mount\windows /cleanup-image /startcomponentcleanup /resetbase
```

7. Use notepad to edit the unattend files. Change the product key to the default Professional product key in
c:\mount\windows\recovery\OEM\UnattendSysprep.xml and
c:\mount\windows\Windows\panther\unattend.xml

```
Notepad c:\mount\windows\recovery\oem\unattend.xml  
Notepad c:\mount\windows\windows\panther\unattend.xml
```

8. Unmount the image

```
Dism /unmount-wim /mountdir:c:\mount\windows
```

9. Remove unused packages and create your Master Professional image

```
Dism /export-image /sourceimagefile:e:\images\FinalImage_ProSkus.wim /sourceindex:1  
/destinationimagefile:e:\images\MasterImage_Pro.wim  
Del e:\images\FinalImage.wim  
Copy c:\images\MasterImage_Home.wim e:\images
```

Final shipment

You have to boot a PC at least once to allow the specialize configuration pass of Windows Setup to complete before shipping a PC.

The specialize configuration pass adds hardware-specific information to the PC and is complete when Windows OOB appears.

Reference the OEM Policy Documentation for more details.

Reducing Disk Footprints

Throughout this guide, we have shown a few places where you can reduce the disk footprint:

- Using Dism /cleanup-image /resetbase
- Using Dism /export-image

- Using Compact OS
- Using Compact OS with Single Instancing

This section shows a few more ways you can gain additional free space.

Reducing and turning off Hiberfile

Reducing and turning off hiberfile can return between 400MB to 1.5GB OS space on the deployed OS.

Reducing Hiberfile by 30%

When you run sysprep.exe with unattend.xml, you can add a FirstLogonCommand that will reduce hiberfile:

```
<unattend xmlns="urn:schemas-microsoft-com:unattend">
    <settings pass="oobeSystem">
        <component name="Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup" processorArchitecture=
            <FirstLogonCommands>
                <SynchronousCommand wcm:action="add">
                    <CommandLine>powercfg /h /type reduced</CommandLine>
                    <Description>Reduce hiberfile size</Description>
                    <Order>1</Order>
                    <RequiresUserInput>false</RequiresUserInput>
                </SynchronousCommand>
            </FirstLogonCommands>
        </component>
    </settings>
    <cpi:offlineImage cpi:source="wim:c:/images/" xmlns:cpi="urn:schemas-micro
</unattend>
```

Turn Off Hiberfile

When you run sysprep.exe with unattend.xml, you can add a FirstLogonCommand that will turn off hiberfile:

```
<unattend xmlns="urn:schemas-microsoft-com:unattend">
    <settings pass="oobeSystem">
        <component name="Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup" processorArchitecture=
            <FirstLogonCommands>
                <SynchronousCommand wcm:action="add">
                    <CommandLine>powercfg /h Off</CommandLine>
                    <Description>Reduce hiberfile size</Description>
                    <Order>1</Order>
                    <RequiresUserInput>false</RequiresUserInput>
                </SynchronousCommand>
            </FirstLogonCommands>
        </component>
    </settings>
    <cpi:offlineImage cpi:source="wim:c:/images/" xmlns:cpi="urn:schemas-micro
</unattend>
```

Capture your image with the unattend.xml file that contains these settings.

Disk footprint with optimizations

The table below shows additional space saved by using compact OS, Single instancing, and reducing or turning Off Hiberfile on 2GB (x86) and 4GB (x64).

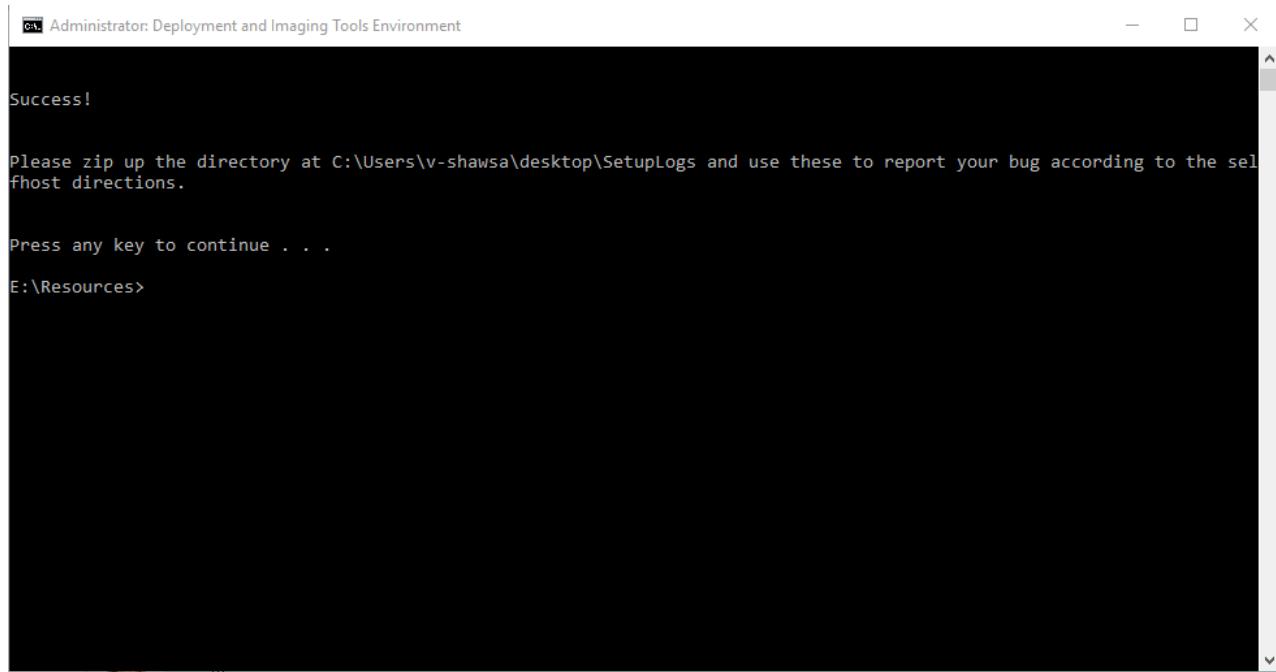
FOOTPRINT TYPE	WINDOWS 10 HOME X86 2GB MEMORY	WINDOWS 10 HOME X64 4GB MEMORY
Base Footprint	11.68GB (Additional Space)	15.06GB (Additional Space)
Compact, no single instancing	8.85GB (>2.75GB)	11.3GB (>3.7GB)
Compact, single instanced	7.66GB (>4GB)	10.09GB (>4.75GB)
Hiberfile off, no compact	10.87GB (>825MB)	13.48GB (>1.5GB)
Hiberfile reduced, no compact	11.27GB (>400MB)	14.15GB (>930MB)

Troubleshooting deployment issues

Windows deployment generates many logs. To diagnose deployment issues, a script that gathers logs is included on USB-B. This script copies all relevant logs, which can then be sent to OTSQR when reporting a deployment issue. To run the log:

1. Insert USB-B into the device with the deployment issue
2. Open command prompt in Administrator mode
3. Navigate to drive letter of USB-B (ex. E:) in command prompt
4. CD to E:\Resources
5. Run script GatherLogs.cmd

The script should return Success message and give a path to the folder to .zip.



```
Administrator: Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment
Success!
Please zip up the directory at C:\Users\v-shawsa\Desktop\SetupLogs and use these to report your bug according to the selfhost directions.

Press any key to continue . . .
E:\Resources>
```

System builder deployment of Windows 10 for desktop editions

10/12/2017 • 29 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use this guide to deploy Windows 10 to a line of computers. It provides prescriptive guidance for Windows 10 deployment, including online and offline customizations, and optional steps for specific scenarios. It is intended to help system builders (level 200 technicians) with both 64-bit and 32-bit configurations, and applies to Windows 10 for desktop editions (Home, Pro, Enterprise, and Education).

If you're a system builder, you can also use the [Express Deployment Tool](#) (EDT) to build a custom Windows deployment. The EDT simplifies the process of installing and configuring Windows for a consistent brand and customized end-user experience.

Prepare your lab environment

The first step is to set up your lab environment, which includes installing the latest Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (Windows ADK) tools onto your designated Technician computer. The Technician computer must run Windows 10 x64 if you are going to deploy x64 images, or run Windows 10 x86 for x86 image deployment. Incorrect configurations may result in supported architecture mismatch while using deployment tools in the Windows ADK. Where noted, follow the appropriate guidelines for either a 64-bit vs 32-bit deployment.

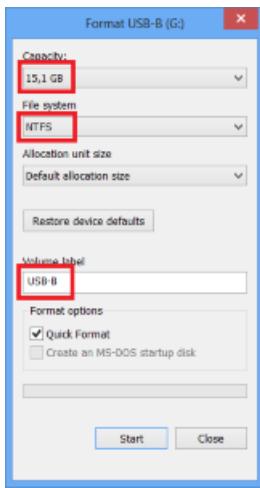
Before starting the deployment procedure, you need to download the kits that will be used throughout the guide. Go to the [Device Partner Center](#) > **Downloads and Installation** > **Understanding ADKs and OPKs**. For a list of resources and kits that will be used and where to obtain them, see [What you will need and where to get it](#).

You will need two USB drives. USB-A will be used to boot the system in Windows Preinstallation Environment (WinPE). USB-B will be used to move files between computers, store deployment and recovery scripts, and store and apply created images.

USB HARD DRIVE NAME	FORMAT	MINIMUM SIZE
USB-A	FAT32	~4GB
USB-B	NTFS	~16GB x86 ~32GB amd64

Creating my USB-B

1. Format your USB drive and name it as follows:



2. Then download [USB-B.zip](#) from the Microsoft Download Center. Save the .zip file to USB-B and extract the contents there. The contents of the configuration files included in USB-B are examples that you may change according to your branding and manufacturing choices. However, file names and hierarchy of the folders and files must be the same as demonstrated below in order to align your deployment procedure with this guide.

Customizations throughout the document

PASS	SETTING	ACTION
WinPE	Setup UI Language	EN-US
	User Data	Preinstallation Product Key for ODR - Defined
Specialize	Internet Explorer Home Page	in the answer file
	OEM Name	Defined in the answer file
	OEM Logo	Defined in the answer file
	Model	Defined in the answer file
	Support Info	Defined in the answer file
OOBE System	Reseal	Audit/OOBE
	StartTiles	Square Tiles / SquareOrDesktopTiles set to pin only desktop apps
	TaskbarLinks (up to 6 pinned .lnk files)	Paint and Control Panel shortcuts have been set
	Themes	Custom Theme with the OEM logo as the desktop background has been set
	Visual Effects	SystemDefaultBackground set

Additional customizations

Product deployment

- Office Single Image v16.3 OPK preloaded

Image customization

- Adding language interface packs to Windows
- Adding drivers and update packages
- Adding OEM-specific logo and background files to Windows
- Image size optimization
- Pinning desktop applications to start screen

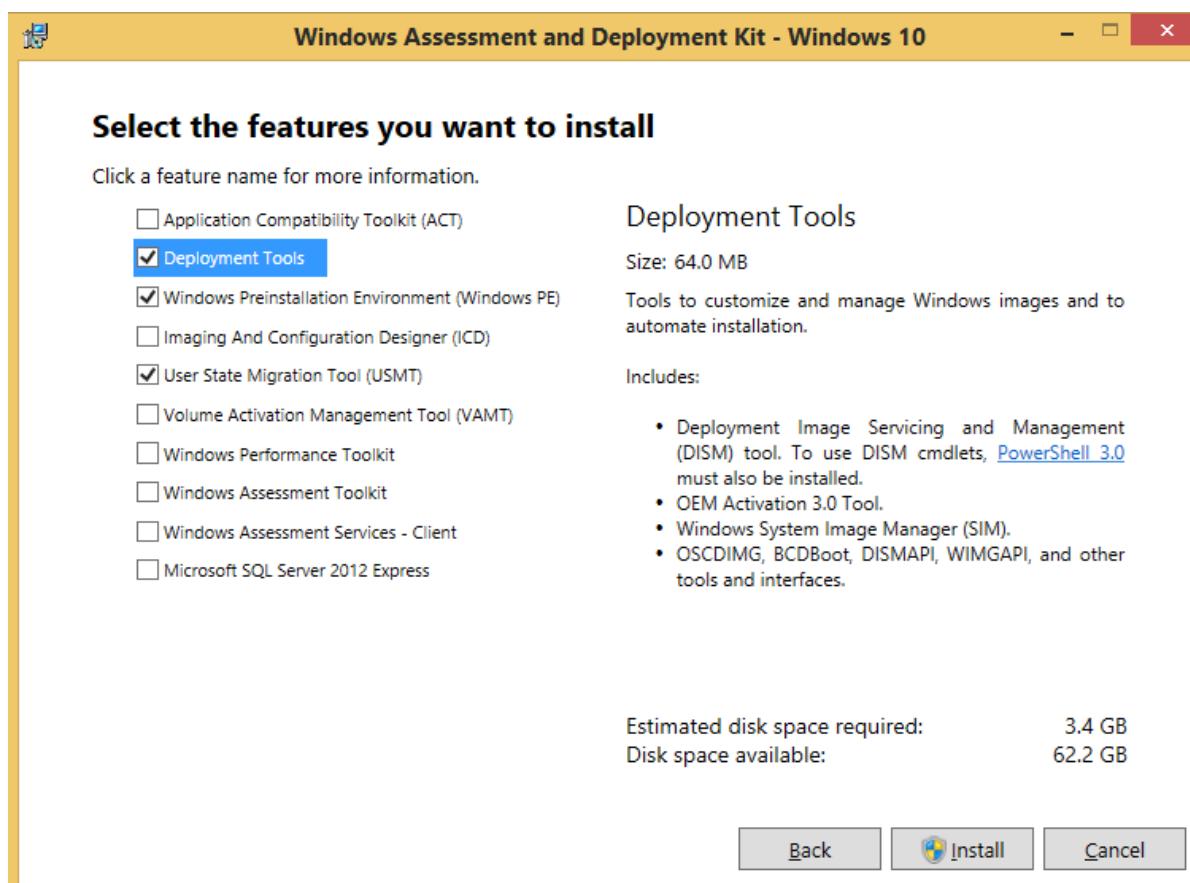
Create a USB drive that can boot to WinPE

You must use the matching version of Windows ADK for the images being customized. For example, if you're building an image for Windows 10, version 1703, use the Windows ADK for Windows 10, version 1703. For more details about the Windows ADK, see the [Windows 10 ADK Documentation Homepage](#).

Visit [Download the Windows ADK](#) to download the ADK.

- Follow the on-screen instructions to install the Windows ADK, including the **Deployment Tools**, **Windows Preinstallation Environment**, and **Windows Assessment Toolkit** features.

Note: If you have Secure Boot enabled, disable it before installing the ADK.



- Press the Windows key to display the **Start** menu. Type:

Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment

Right-click the name of the tool, and then click **Run as administrator**.

3. Windows ADK allows you to create **Windows PreInstallation Environment**. Copy base WinPE to new folder.

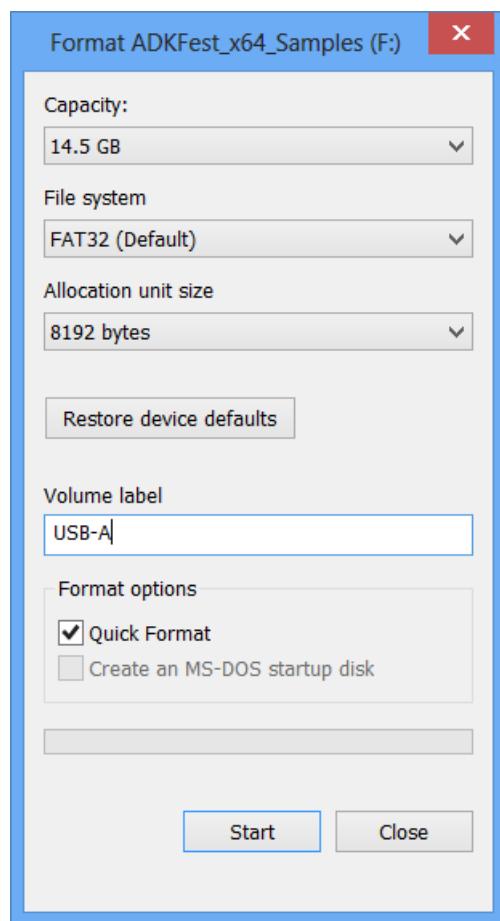
If you use an **x64** Windows 10 image, copy the x64 WinPE folder structure:

```
Copype amd64 C:\winpe_amd64
```

If you use an **x86** Windows 10 image, copy the x86 WinPE folder structure:

```
Copype x86 C:\winpe_x86
```

4. You may add packages and/or drivers to WinPE here.
5. Connect a USB drive that is at least 4 GB. Format it as shown in this diagram:



6. Make the inserted USB a new WinPE bootable USB.

If you use an **x64** Windows 10 image, make an x64 WinPE USB:

```
MakeWinPEMedia /UFD C:\winpe_amd64 F:
```

If you use an **x86** Windows 10 image, make an x86 WinPE USB:

```
MakeWinPEMedia /UFD C:\winpe_x86 F:
```

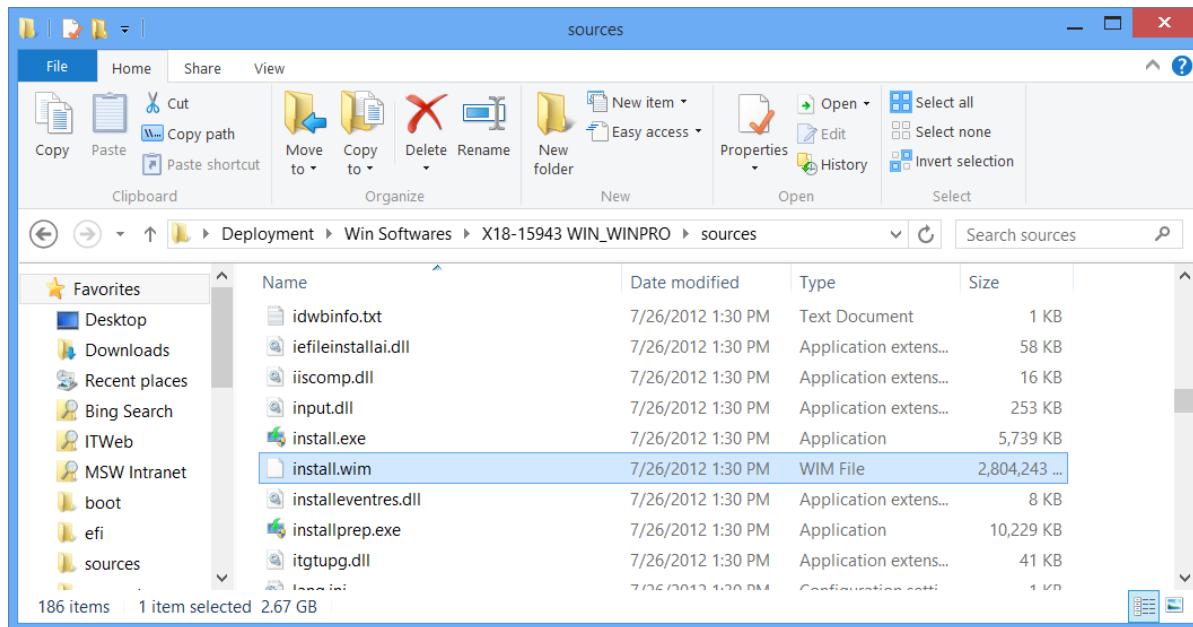
(Where F: is the drive letter of USB)

Install Windows with basic customizations

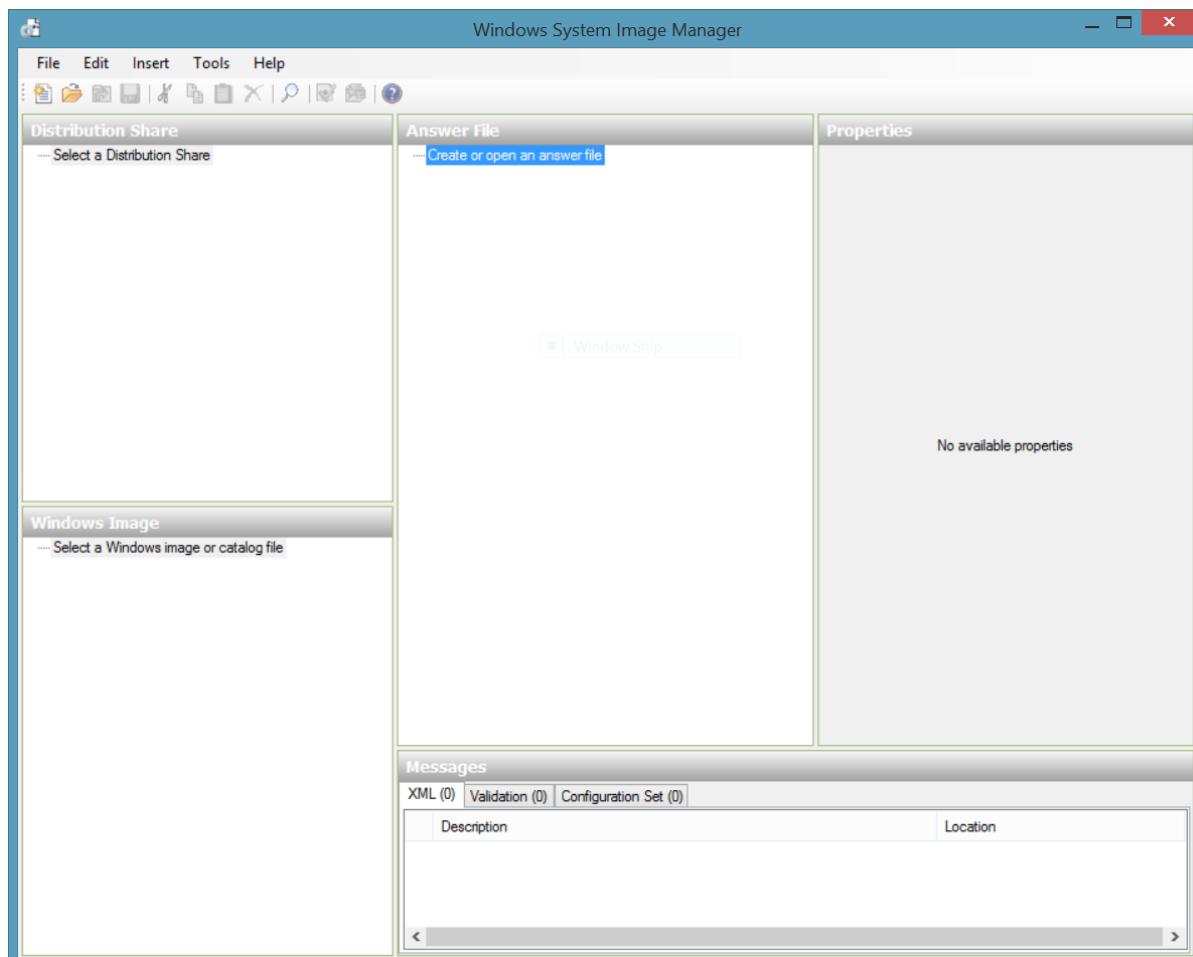
Use Windows 10 x86/x64 DVD media from a Microsoft Authorized Distributor.

See the [Windows Guidelines for System Builders](#) and [Windows Policy for System Builders](#) for information on how to tailor the customizations in your unattend.xml file.

1. Copy the sources\Install.wim file from the directory in the Windows 10 media that you will be deploying to your local Desktop (~3gb).



2. Run **Windows System Image Manager** to start creating an answer file from scratch. This tool allows you to create or manage your answer files in an easy and organized manner.



3. Navigate to **File > Select Windows Image**. Browse to your local desktop and select **Install.wim**. A catalog file (.clg) will be created for the specified wim.

Troubleshoot: Catalog creation may fail due to several reasons. Please make sure install.wim has read/write permissions. If you continue getting error, make sure correct architecture (x86 or x64) Windows 10 is installed on technician computer. If you are creating catalog for x64 Windows 10 image, you are required to use x64 Windows 10 installed on x64 Windows 10 computer. Install.wim image and Windows 10 ADK versions must be the same.

4. Open a sample answer file or create a new one. `USB-B\AnswerFiles\Unattend.xml` is the sample answer file included on USB-B.
5. Click **OK** to associate the answer file with the Windows Image.
6. To add a driver to Windows PE, click **Insert** select **Driver Path** and select pass **1 windowsPE** and then browse to the driver. Note: This step is optional and only required if a third-party driver is needed for use in the Windows Preinstallation Environment.
7. To add a package, click **Insert**, select **Package**, and then browse to the package you want to add. This step is optional.

Customize the answer file

Troubleshoot: A blank character in **specialize | Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup | Computer Name** will result in Windows installation failure.

1. See `USB-B\AnswerFiles\Unattend.xml` for an example of an answer file that has basic customizations. -

You may use the sample answer file and modify relevant parts or start from scratch by specifying some basic customizations.

Please see and use the Windows 10 default product key from [Device Partner Center](#) listed under **Default product keys** tab.

2. Add a product key that matches the Windows edition. This key isn't used to activate Windows, so you can reuse the same key for multiple installations:

- In the **Answer File** pane, select **Components\1 windowsPE\amd64_Microsoft-Windows-Setup_neutral\UserData\ProductKey**. In the **ProductKey Properties** pane, under **Settings**, enter the value next to Key.

Important: These product keys *cannot* be used for activation. You will need to type a software product key during the installation process for activation. These keys will be removed when sysprep generalize is run. The end user will be required to type the unique product key from the Certificate of Authenticity (COA) label when first booting Windows 10.

3. Add your support information:

In the **Answer File** pane, select **Components\4 specialize\amd64_Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup_neutral\OEMInformation**.

In the **OEMInformation Properties** pane, in the **Settings** section, update the following values: company name (Manufacturer), hours (SupportHours), phone number (SupportPhone), and website (SupportURL).

4. Prepare your computer to boot to audit mode after the Windows installation is complete:

In the **Windows Image** pane, expand **Components**, right-click **amd64_Microsoft-Windows-Deployment**, and then select **Add Setting to Pass 7 oobeSystem**.

In the **Answer File** pane, select **Components\7 oobeSystem\amd64_Microsoft-Windows-Deployment_neutral\Reseal**.

In the **Reseal Properties** pane, in the **Settings** section, add the following value: Mode = Audit.

5. Set the Internet Explorer home page:

In the **Windows Image** pane, right-click **amd64_Microsoft-Windows-IE-InternetExplorer**, and then select **Add Setting to Pass 4 specialize**.

In the **Answer File** pane, select **Components\4 specialize\amd64_Microsoft-Windows-Microsoft-Windows-IE-InternetExplorer_neutral**.

In the **IE-InternetExplorer Properties** pane, in the **Settings** section, select **Home_page**, and add the URL of your website.

6. OEMs can specify **Disk Configuration** which is used to create/modify disk partitions and set image installation partition. This step is optional and configuration is included in the sample answer file **USB-B\AnswerFiles\Unattend.xml**.

Save the answer file to **USB-B\AnswerFiles\Unattend.xml** and close Windows SIM.

Update images for each model: offline servicing

Before mounting and editing the image please take a backup copy in the same directory and rename the image which will be modified as **ModelSpecificImage.wim**.

```
Dism /export-image /sourceimagefile:e:\images\install.wim /sourceindex:2  
/destinationimagefile:e:\images\modelspecificimage.wim
```

Mount images

1. Mount Windows image (**ModelSpecificImage.wim**). This process extracts the contents of the image file to a location where you can view and modify the mounted image.

```
Md C:\mount\windows  
Dism /Mount-Wim /WimFile:E:\Images\ModelSpecificImage.wim /index:1 /MountDir:C:\mount\windows
```

Where E:\ is the drive letter of USB-B.

2. Mount Windows RE Image file.

```
Md c:\mount\winre  
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\Recovery\winre.wim /index:1  
/MountDir:C:\mount\winre
```

Troubleshoot: If mounting operation fails, make sure that you are using the Windows 10 version of DISM that is installed with the Windows ADK and not an older version from your technician computer. Don't mount images to protected folders, such as your User\Documents folder. If DISM processes are interrupted, consider temporarily disconnecting from the network and disabling virus protection.

► Computer ► OSDisk (C:) ► mount

Name	Date modified	Type
windows	9/10/2012 1:05 PM	File folder
winre	8/27/2012 4:47 PM	File folder

Name	Date modified	Type
PerfLogs	7/26/2012 10:33 AM	File folder
Program Files	7/26/2012 1:06 PM	File folder
Program Files (x86)	7/26/2012 11:13 AM	File folder
sources	8/16/2012 11:37 AM	File folder
Users	9/10/2012 2:15 PM	File folder
Windows	9/10/2012 2:19 PM	File folder

Modify images

Add drivers

If you use an x64 Windows 10 image, add x64 drivers; if you use an x86 Windows 10 image, add x86 drivers.

1. Adding driver packages one by one. (.inf files) SampleDriver\driver.inf is a **sample** driver package that is specific to the computer model. Type your own specific driver path. If you have multiple driver packages, skip to the next step.

```
Dism /Add-Driver /Image:C:\mount\windows /Driver:"C:\SampleDriver\driver.inf"
Dism /Add-Driver /Image:C:\mount\winre /Driver:"C:\SampleDriver\driver.inf"
```

2. Multiple drivers can be added on one command line if you specify a folder instead of an .inf file. To install all of the drivers in a folder and all its subfolders, use the **/recurse** option.

```
Dism /Image:C:\mount\windows /Add-Driver /Driver:c:\drivers /Recurse
```

3. Review the contents of the %WINDIR%\Inf\ (C:\mount\windows\Windows\Inf) directory in the mounted Windows image to ensure that the .inf files were installed. Drivers added to the Windows image are named Oem*.inf. This is to ensure unique naming for new drivers added to the computer. For example, the files MyDriver1.inf and MyDriver2.inf are renamed Oem0.inf and Oem1.inf.
4. Verify your driver has been installed for both images.

```
Dism /Image:C:\mount\windows /Get-Drivers
Dism /Image:C:\mount\winre /Get-Drivers
```

Important: If the driver contains only the installer package and doesn't have an .inf file, you may choose to install the driver in AUDIT mode by double-clicking the corresponding installer package. Some drivers may be incompatible with Sysprep tool; they will be removed after sysprep generalize even if they have been injected offline.

In this case, you need to add an extra parameter to USB-B\AnswerFiles\UnattendSysprep.xml in order to persist the drivers in the image when the image will be generalized.

```
<PersistAllDeviceInstalls>true</PersistAllDeviceInstalls>
```

This property must be added to USB-B\AnswerFiles\UnattendSysprep.xml during generalize pass in order to persist the drivers in the image. For more information about the details of this property and how to add it to an answer file, see [PersistAllDeviceInstalls](#).

Add language interface packs

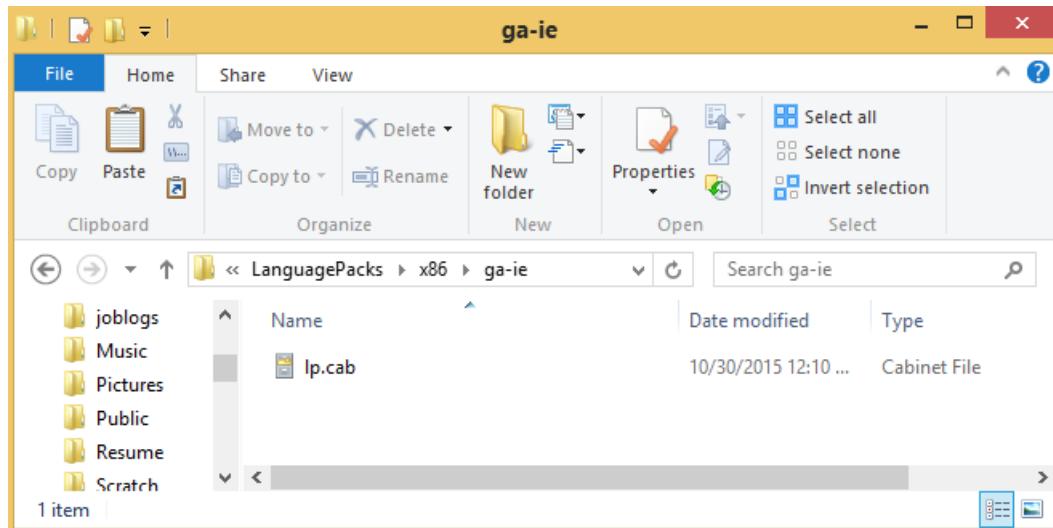
Obtain the Windows 10 Language Interface Packs from [Device Partner Center](#) under the **LIPs** tab.

For more information about LIPs, see [Add Language Interface Packs to Windows 10](#).

Important: LIP Versions must match other Windows component versions, for both the image and the ADK.

If you use an x64 Windows 10 image, install x64 LIPs; if you use an x86 Windows 10 image, install x86 LIPs.

1. Copy the LIP folder to the USB-B\LanguagePack\x64 or USB-B\LanguagePack\x86 folder:



2. Apply the LIP to mounted image.

Amd64 architecture

```
Dism /image:C:\mount\windows /add-package /packagepath:e:\LanguagePacks\x64\Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Interface-Pack_x64_as-in.cab
```

X86 architecture

```
Dism /image:C:\mount\windows /add-package /packagepath:e:\LanguagePacks\x86\Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Interface-Pack_x86_as-in.cab
```

IMPORTANT

If you install an update (hotfix, general distribution release [GDR], or service pack [SP]) that contains language-dependent resources prior to installing a language pack, the language-specific changes in the update won't be applied when you add the language pack. You need to reinstall the update to apply language-specific changes. To avoid reinstalling updates, install language packs before installing updates.

Add update packages

If you use an x64 Windows 10 image, add x64 update packages; if you use an x86 Windows 10 image, add x86 update packages.

To obtain update packages, download them from [Microsoft Update Catalog](#).

1. Run Internet Explorer and navigate to the [Microsoft Update Catalog](#) webpage. See [What you will need and where to get it](#) for more information about which packages you should obtain from Microsoft Update Catalog.
2. Type every single update package one by one into the search box and click **Search**.



3. After search completes, click **Add** next to the version and architecture of the package you wish to download.

The screenshot shows the Microsoft Update Catalog search results for "KB4016871". The title "Search results for 'KB4016871'" is displayed. Below it, a table lists four update entries:

Title	Products	Classification	Last Updated
2017-05 Delta Update for Windows 10 Version 1703 for x64-based Systems (KB4016871)	Windows 10	Security Updates	5/6/2017
2017-05 Delta Update for Windows 10 Version 1703 for x86-based Systems (KB4016871)	Windows 10	Security Updates	5/6/2017
2017-05 Cumulative Update for Windows 10 Version 1703 for x64-based Systems (KB4016871)	Windows 10	Security Updates	5/5/2017
2017-05 Cumulative Update for Windows 10 Version 1703 for x86-based Systems (KB4016871)	Windows 10	Security Updates	5/5/2017

The footer includes a copyright notice: "© 2017 Microsoft Corporation. All Rights Reserved. | privacy | terms of use | help".

4. After you add all of the following updates, click **view basket** and then **Download**.

The screenshot shows the Microsoft Update Catalog search results for "KB2859675". The title "Search results for 'KB2859675'" is displayed. Below it, a table lists two update entries:

Title	Products	Classification	Last Updated	Version	Size	Remove All
Update for Microsoft Camera Codec Pack for Windows 8.1 (KB2859675)	Windows 8.1	Updates	9/23/2013	n/a	5.9 MB	Remove
Update for Microsoft Camera Codec Pack for Windows 8.1 for x64-based Systems (KB2859675)	Windows 8.1	Updates	9/23/2013	n/a	6.7 MB	Add

A red box highlights the "view basket (13)" button, which is located at the top right of the table. The footer includes a copyright notice: "© 2017 Microsoft Corporation. All Rights Reserved. | privacy | terms of use | help".

Microsoft® Update Catalog

FAQ | help view basket (13)

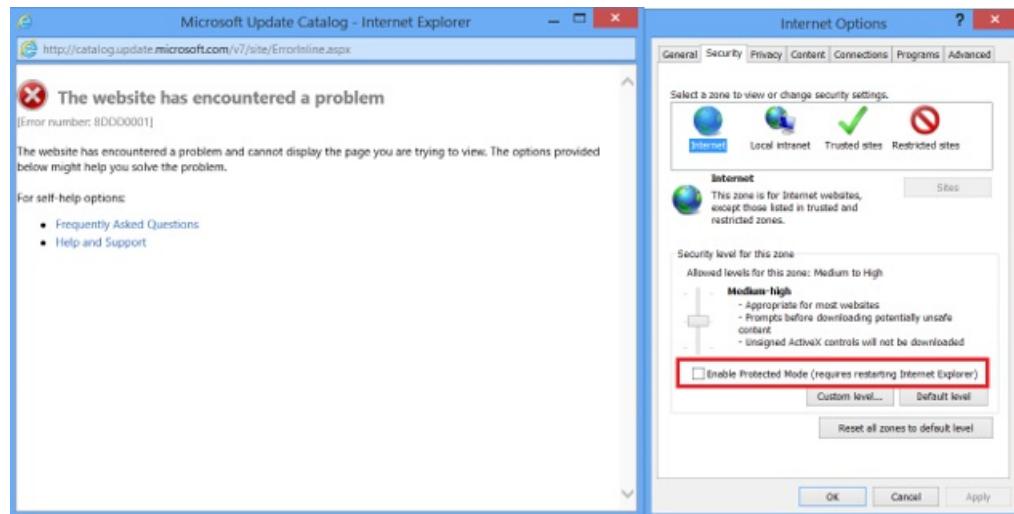
Updates in your basket

Updates: 13 Size: 508.1 MB

	Title	Products	Classification	Last Updated	Size	Remove All
	Update for Windows Server 2012 R2 (KB2883200)	Windows Server 2012 R2	Critical Updates	10/17/2013	230.3 MB	Remove
	Windows Malicious Software Removal Tool - November 2013 (KB890830)	Windows 7,Windows Server 2003,Windows Server 2003, Datacenter Edition,Windows Server 2008,Windows Vista,Windows XP	Update Rollups	11/12/2013	25.7 MB	Remove
	Microsoft Browser Choice Screen Update					

[Download](#)

Troubleshoot: IF you encounter an error as "The website has encountered a problem" after clicking "Download", try turning off the pop-up blocker in IE or disabling Protected Mode in IE temporarily



- After downloading all the listed essential updates, add **update packages** (KB packages) to the image one by one by using the following command:

Amd64 architecture

```
Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\windows /PackagePath:"C:\windows10.0-kb4016871-x64_27dfce9dbd92670711822de2f5f5ce0151551b7d.msu"
```

X86 architecture

```
Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\windows /PackagePath:"C:\windows10.0-kb4016871-x86_5901409e58d1c6c9440e420d99c42b08f227356e.msu"
```

- Add updates to winre.wim (where they apply; not all updates apply to winre.wim)

Amd64 architecture

```
Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\windows10.0-kb4016871-x64_27dfce9dbd92670711822de2f5f5ce0151551b7d.msu"
```

X86 architecture

```
Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\ windows10.0-kb4016871-x86_5901409e58d1c6c9440e420d99c42b08f227356e.msu"
```

Add OEM specific visual customizations

1. Create OEM folder under C:\mount\windows\Windows\system32\ directory.
2. Copy the OEM logo to C:\mount\windows\Windows\system32\OEM**FabrikamLogo.bmp** directory which will be mapped in unattend file in **OEM Information | Logo** property.

See the following image to add OEM logo in an answer file.

- %windir%\system32\OEM\FabrikamLogo.bmp

REFERENCE: OEM Logo file must be in .bmp format and in 120px x 120px size. Please see Windows Guidelines for System Builders for OEM Logo details.

```
<OEMInformation>
  <Manufacturer>Fabrikam</Manufacturer>
  <SupportHours>08:30 - 21:30</SupportHours>
  <SupportPhone>12345678</SupportPhone>
  <SupportURL>http://www.fabrikam.com</SupportURL>
  <Model>FabrikamFabrikam</Model>
  <Logo>%windir%\system32\OEM\<b>FabrikamLogo.bmp</b></Logo>
</OEMInformation>
```

3. To display an OEM specific desktop background picture, the image file must be placed in %windir%\system32\OEM**Fabrikam.bmp** directory. Verify that the path is same in answer file corresponding to oobeSystem > Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup > Themes > DesktopBackground property. See the below image to add desktop background in an answer file.

```
<settings pass="oobeSystem">
  - <component language="neutral" xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance" xmlns:wcm="http://schemas.microsoft.com/WMIConfig/2002/State" versionScope="nonSxS">
    <publicKeyToken="31bf3856ad364e35" processorArchitecture="amd64" name="Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup">
      - <Themes>
        <DesktopBackground>%windir%\system32\OEM\Fabrikam.bmp</DesktopBackground>
        <ThemeName>OEM Theme</ThemeName>
        <DefaultThemesOff>false</DefaultThemesOff>
      </Themes>
    </component>
  </settings>
```

Modify Start layout

The Start tile layout in Windows 10 provides OEMs the ability to append tiles to the default Start layout to include Web links, secondary tiles, Windows desktop applications, and universal Windows apps. OEMs can use this layout to make it applicable to multiple regions or markets without duplicating a lot of the work. In addition, OEMs can add up to three default apps to the frequently used apps section in the system area, which delivers system-driven lists to the user including important or frequently accessed system locations and recently installed apps.

1. Create Layoutmodification.xml.

Note: It is recommended to start with the sample on **USB-B\StartLayout\layoutModification.xml** as it conforms to the samples in this guide (Example Only).

The Sample LayoutModification.xml shows two groups called "Fabrikam Group 1" and "Fabrikam Group 2", which contain tiles that will be applied if the device country/region matches what's specified in Region (in this case, the regions are Germany and United States). Each group contains three tiles and the various elements you need to use depending on the tile that you want to pin to Start.

Keep the following in mind when creating your LayoutModification.xml file:

- If you are pinning a Windows desktop application using the **start:DesktopApplicationTile** tag and you don't know the application's application user model ID, you need to create a .lnk file in a legacy Start Menu directory before first boot.
- If you use the **start:DesktopApplicationTile** tag to pin a legacy .url shortcut to Start, you must create a .url file and add this file to a legacy Start Menu directory before first boot.

For the above scenarios, you can use the following directories to put the .url or .lnk files:

- %APPDATA%\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs\
 - %ALLUSERSPROFILE%\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs\
2. Save the LayoutModification.xml file.
3. Add your LayoutModification.xml file to the Windows image. You'll need to put the file in the following specific location before first boot. If the file exists, you should replace the LayoutModification.XML that is already included in the image.

```
Copy E:\StartLayout\layoutmodification.xml  
c:\mount\windows\users\default\AppData\Local\Microsoft\Windows\Shell\
```

Where E: is the drive letter of USB-B.

4. If you pinned tiles that require .url or .lnk files, add the files to the following legacy Start Menu directories:
- a. %APPDATA%\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs\
 - b. %ALLUSERSPROFILE%\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs\

```
Copy e:\StartLayout\Bing.url "C:\mount\windows\ProgramData\Microsoft\Windows\Start  
Menu\Programs\"  
Copy e:\StartLayout\Paint.lnk "C:\mount\windows\ProgramData\Microsoft\Windows\Start  
Menu\Programs\"  
Copy E:\StartLayout\Bing.url "C:\mount\windows\users\All Users\Microsoft\Windows\Start  
Menu\Programs\"  
Copy E:\StartLayout\Paint.lnk "C:\Mount\Windows\Users\All Users\Microsoft\Windows\Start  
Menu\Programs\"
```

Note: If you don't create a LayoutModification.xml file and you continue to use the Start Unattend settings, the OS will use the Unattend answer file and take the first 12 SquareTiles or DesktoporSquareTiles settings specified in the Unattend file. The system then places these tiles automatically within the newly-created groups at the end of Start. The first six tiles are placed in the first OEM group, and the second set of six tiles are placed in the second OEM group. If OEMName is specified in the Unattend file, the value for this element is used to name the OEM groups that will be created.

Copy the answer file

A system builder may want to make additional customizations through an unattend file. The sample unattend file on USB-B contains additional common customizations.

```
Copy /y E:\AnswerFiles\Unattend.xml C:\Mount\Windows\Windows\Panther
```

Where E:\ is USB-B.

Optimize WinRE

1. Increase scratchspace size.

```
Dism /image:c:\mount\winre /set-scratchspace:512
```

2. Cleanup unused files and reduce size of winre.wim

```
Dism /image:"c:\mount\winre" /Cleanup-Image /StartComponentCleanup /Resetbase
```

Unmount images

3. Close all applications that might access files from the image
4. Commit the changes and unmount the Windows RE image:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:"C:\mount\winre" /Commit
```

where C is the drive letter of the drive that contains the image.

This process can take a few minutes.

5. Make a backup copy of the updated Windows RE image.

Troubleshoot: If you cannot see winre.wim under the specified directory, use the following command to set the file visible:

```
attrib -h -a -s C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\Recovery\winre.wim
Dism /export-image /sourceimagefile:c:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\Recovery\winre.wim /sourceindex:1
/DestinationImageFile:e:\images\winre_bak.wim
Del c:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\Recovery\winre.wim
Copy e:\images\winre_bak.wim c:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\Recovery\winre.wim
```

When prompted, specify **F** for file

6. Check the new size of the Windows RE image.

```
Dir "C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\Recovery\winre.wim"
```

Use the following partition layout size guidance to determine the size of your recovery partition in createpartitions-<firmware>.txt files. The amount of free space left is after you copy winre.wim to the hidden partition.

Please reference [Disk Partition rules](#) for more information.

- If the partition is less than 500 MB, it must have at least 50 MB of free space.
- If the partition is 500 MB or larger, it must have at least 320 MB of free space.
- If the partition is larger than 1 GB, we recommend that it should have at least 1 GB free.

```
rem == Windows RE tools partition =====
create partition primary size=500
```

Optional: This section assumes you'd rather keep winre.wim inside of install.wim to keep your languages and drivers in sync. If you'd like to save a bit of time on the factory floor, and if you're OK managing these images separately, you may prefer to pull winre.wim from the image and apply it separately.

7. Commit the changes and unmount the Windows image:

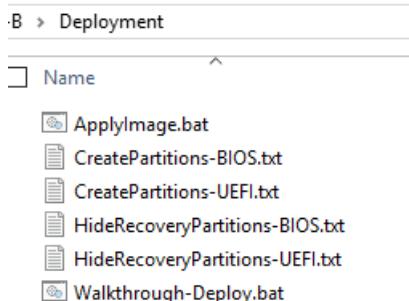
```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:"C:\mount\windows" /Commit
```

Where C is the drive letter of the drive that contains the image.

This process may take several minutes.

Deploy the image to new computers (Windows installation)

1. On the technician computer, locate the following files in USB-B/Deployment. Please see [Creating My USB-B](#) to create and place the files in correct paths.



2. Boot the reference computer and connect USB-A.
3. After WinPE starts, connect USB-B.
4. Type *diskpart* and hit enter to start Diskpart. Then type *list volume* to identify volume label of USB-B (For example: E:).

```
E:\Deployment\Walkthrough-Deploy.bat E:\Images\ModelSpecificImage.wim
```

Note: There are several pauses in the script. You will be prompted Y/N for the Apply operation if this is a Compact OS deployment.

Note: Only use Compact OS on Flash drive based devices because Compact OS performance depends on the storage device capabilities. Compact OS is NOT recommended on rotational devices. For more information, see [Compact OS](#).

1. Remove USB-A and USB-B, and then type:

```
Exit
```

Update images manually by using AUDIT MODE (online servicing)

Important: Connecting the computer to internet is not recommended during manufacturing stages. We don't recommend getting updates from Windows Update in audit mode, as it will likely generate errors when you generalize + sysprep the machine from audit mode.

Preload Microsoft Office 2016

This guide provides information for licensed original equipment manufacturers (OEMs) about how to use the Office Deployment Tool to preinstall Office 2016 on to devices that are running the Windows operating system.

Note: This guide doesn't cover the PIPC scenarios for OEMs in Japan.

Prepare Office files on Technician PC

Obtain Office Deployment Tool from X21-32422 Office 2016 Deployment Tool for OEM OPK v16.3.

1. Mount X21-32422 Office 2016 v16 Deployment Tool for OEM OPK v16.3\Software - DVD\X21-32464 SW DVD5 Office v16.3 Deployment Tool for OEM\X21-32464.img.
2. Copy files from mounted the drive to USB-B (where E:\ is driver letter for USB-B) E:\OfficeV16.
3. Double click e:\Officev16\officedeploymenttool.exe.

4. Provide folder path to extract files E:\Officev16.

Setup.exe and configuration.xml are extracted to E:\Officev16.

Name	Date modified	Type	Size
configuration.xml	1/12/2016 3:49 PM	XML File	2 KB
ConfigureHomeBusinessPremium.xml	1/22/2016 4:19 PM	XML File	1 KB
ConfigureO365Home.xml	1/14/2016 10:33 AM	XML File	1 KB
oemsetup.cmd	1/22/2016 5:23 PM	Windows Comma...	8 KB
officedeploymenttool.exe	1/12/2016 11:50 PM	Application	1,933 KB
setup.exe	1/12/2016 3:49 PM	Application	3,068 KB

Obtain Office v16 in the desired language; this sample uses English X21-05414 Office 2016 v16 32-BIT X64 English OPK.

5. Copy the folder Office from mounted drive X21-32392 Office v16.3 English OPK\Software – DVD\X21-32434 SW DVD5 Office Pro 2016 32 64 English C2ROPK Pro HS HB OEM v16.3\X21-32434.img to USB-B (where E:\ is drive letter for USB-B) E:\OfficeV16.

Name	Date modified	Type	Size
Office	1/12/2016 5:36 PM	File folder	
configuration.xml	1/12/2016 3:49 PM	XML File	2 KB
ConfigureHomeBusinessPremium.xml	1/22/2016 4:19 PM	XML File	1 KB
ConfigureO365Home.xml	1/14/2016 10:33 AM	XML File	1 KB
oemsetup.cmd	1/22/2016 5:23 PM	Windows Comma...	8 KB
officedeploymenttool.exe	1/12/2016 11:50 PM	Application	1,933 KB
setup.exe	1/12/2016 3:49 PM	Application	3,068 KB

[Optional] If you applied a language interface pack, you may want to add the language interface pack for Office 2016 as well. The below samples will show with the Language interface pack applied.

6. Notepad E:\Officev16\ConfigureO365Home.xml

7. Add language ID and verify SourcePath as in the following screenshot.

```
<Configuration>
  <Add SourcePath="d:\officev16" OfficeClientEdition="32" >
    <Product ID="O365HomePremRetail">
      <Language ID="en-us" />
      <Language ID="de-de" />
      <Language ID="ja-jp" />
    </Product>
  </Add>
  <Display Level="None" />
</Configuration>
```

8. Close and save ConfigureO365Home.xml.

9. Open an elevated command prompt as administrator.

10. From E:\Officev16, type and run setup.exe /download ConfigureO365Home.xml:

```
CD E:\Officev16
Setup.exe /download ConfigureO365Home.xml
```

This will download the language packs for German and Japanese.

11. Type and run echo %errorlevel% and verify return code is 0.

12. Unplug USB-B from the technician computer.

Install Office 2016 on Reference PC

1. Plug USB-B into the reference computer, which is in Audit mode.
2. Find the drive letter for USB-B; for this example USB-B is E:.
3. Notepad ConfigureO365Home.xml.
4. Configure the SourcePath to point to USB-B E:\Officev16.

```
<Configuration>
  <Add SourcePath="e:\officev16" OfficeClientEdition="32" >
    <Product ID="O365HomePremRetail">
      <Language ID="en-us" />
    </Product>
  </Add>
  <Display Level="None" />
</Configuration>
```

Note: the only Product ID that needs to be specified in the configuration.xml file is O365HomePremRetail. If the user enters a key for another product, such as for Office Home & Student 2016, then Office will automatically be configured as the product associated with that key.

5. Close and Save ConfigureO365Home.xml.
6. Open a command prompt and navigate to d:\Officev16.
7. Type:

```
Setup.exe /configure ConfigureO365Home.xml
```

Pin Office tiles to the Start menu

You must pin the Office tiles to the Start menu, otherwise Windows will remove the Office files during OOBE boot phase.

Note: You must be using at least version Windows 10, version 1607.

1. Open a command prompt and type:

```
notepad C:\Users\Default\AppData\Local\Microsoft\Windows\Shell\layoutmodification.xml.
```

2. Add <AppendOfficeSuiteChoice Choice="Desktop2016" /> to layoutmodification as you see highlighted in the following example:

```
<LayoutModificationTemplate
  xmlns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/Start/2014/LayoutModification"
  xmlns:defaultlayout="http://schemas.microsoft.com/Start/2014/FullDefaultLayout"
  xmlns:start="http://schemas.microsoft.com/Start/2014/StartLayout" Version="1">
  <RequiredStartGroupsCollection>
    <RequiredStartGroups Region="DE|US|JA">
      <AppendGroup Name="Fabrikam Group 1">
        <start:Tile AppUserModelID="Microsoft.Office.Sway_8wekyb3c
        <start:Tile AppUserModelID="Microsoft.WindowsAlarms_8wekyb3d8bbwe!
      </AppendGroup>
      <AppendGroup Name="Fabrikam Group 2">
        <start:DesktopApplicationTile DesktopApplicationID="Micros
        <start:DesktopApplicationTile DesktopApplicationID="http://
        <start:DesktopApplicationTile DesktopApplicationLinkPath='
      <start:Tile AppUserModelID="Microsoft.BingSports_8wekyb3d8bbwe!AppexSports
      </AppendGroup>
    </RequiredStartGroups>
  </RequiredStartGroupsCollection>
  <AppendOfficeSuite/>
  <AppendOfficeSuiteChoice Choice="Desktop2016" />
  <TopMFUApps>
    <Tile AppUserModelID="Microsoft.WindowsCalculator_8wekyb3d8bbwe!App"/>
    <Tile AppUserModelID="Microsoft.BingTranslator_8wekyb3d8bbwe!App"/>
  </TopMFUApps>
</LayoutModificationTemplate>
```

Note: The Choice attribute is new. This allows different versions of Office to be pinned to the Start screen at the same time. For now, Desktop2016 is the only valid value. Other values will be available in the future.

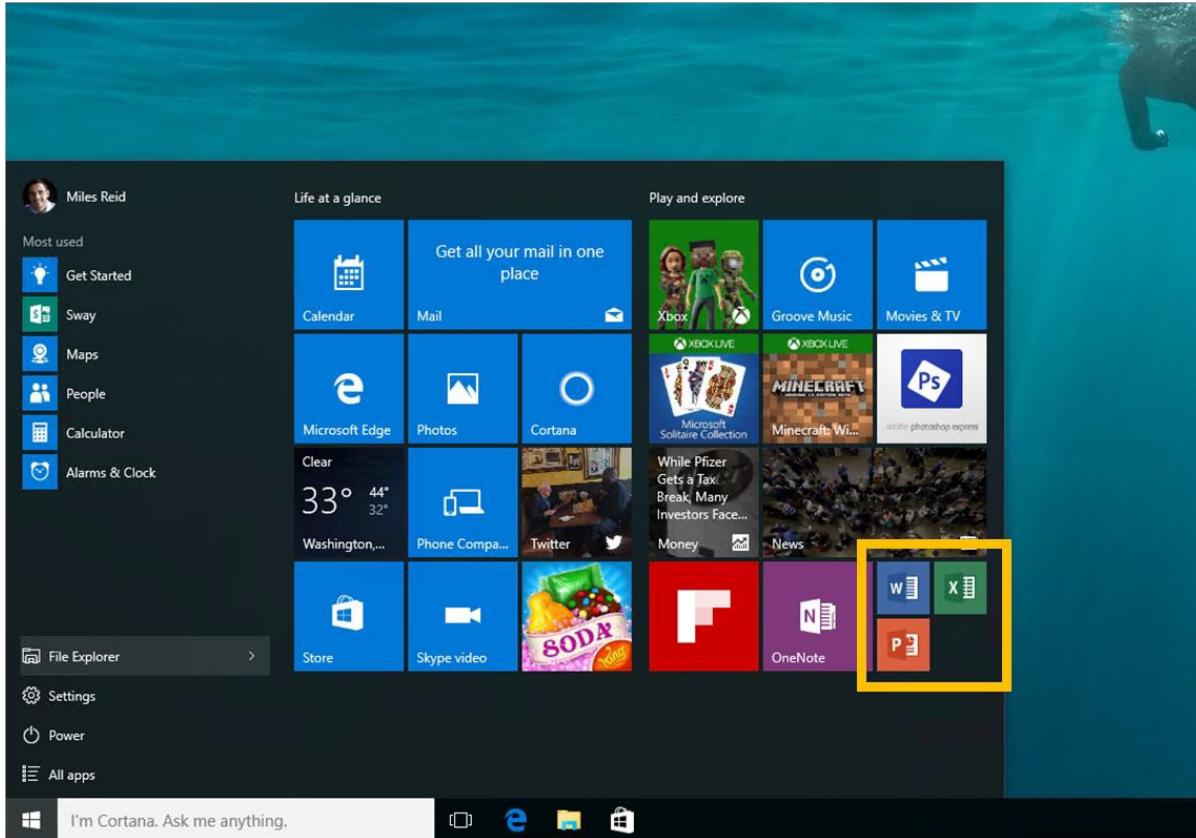
3. Close and save layoutmodification.xml.

Note: for recovery purposes the layoutmodification.xml will need to be copied during recovery.

4. Open a command prompt and type:

```
copy C:\Users\Default\AppData\Local\Microsoft\Windows\Shell\layoutmodification.xml c:\recovery\OEM
```

Once the machine is booted to desktop after going through OOBE, the Start menu will have these three tiles appended as shown in the following diagram:



Prepare the system for Push Button Reset

This section provides guidance for setting up the recovery environment for Push Button Reset (PBR) scenarios.

Please reference Push-button reset and Windows Recovery Environment (Windows RE) and Hard Drives and Partitions for more information.

Push-button reset, is a built-in recovery tool which allows users to recover the OS while preserving their data and important customizations, without having to back-up their data in advance. It reduces the need for custom recovery applications by providing users with more recovery options and the ability to fix their own PCs with confidence.

In Windows 10, the Push-button reset features have been updated to include the following improvements:

The Push-button reset user experience offers customization opportunities. Manufacturers can insert custom scripts, install applications or preserve additional data at available extensibility points. The following Push-button reset features are available to users with Windows 10 PCs:

- Refresh your PC

Fixes software problems by reinstalling the OS while preserving the user data, user accounts, and important

settings. All other preinstalled customizations are restored to their factory state. In Windows 10, this feature no longer preserves user-acquired Universal Windows apps.

- Reset your PC

Prepares the PC for recycling or for transfer of ownership by reinstalling the OS, removing all user accounts and contents (e.g. data, Classic Windows applications, and Universal Windows apps), and restoring preinstalled customizations to their factory state.

- Bare metal recovery

Restores the default or preconfigured partition layout on the system disk, and reinstalls the OS and preinstalled customizations from external media.

Prepare ScanState

To start working with Push Button Reset, you'll need to copy ScanState to *Data*.

Use scanstate to capture Classic Windows applications and settings on your image.

Note: You'll use your technician PC to prepare ScanState.

1. On Technician PC Insert USB-B
2. Open Deployment and Imaging tools command prompt as administrator
3. Run the copydandi.cmd script file pointing to USB-B key

OEMs using an x64 Windows 10 image, make x64 Scanstate directory

```
Copydandi.cmd amd64 e:\scanstate_amd64
```

Where E: is the letter of USB-B drive.

If you're using an x86 Windows 10 image, make x86 Scanstate directory:

```
Copydandi.cmd x86 e:\scanstate_x86
```

Where E: is the letter of USB-B drive.

Create recovery package using Scanstate

On your reference PC:

Use ScanState to capture installed customizations into a provisioning package, and then save it to c:\Recovery\customizations. We'll use samples from *USB-B\Recovery\RecoveryImage* to create the provisioning package.

Important: For PBR to work properly, packages have to be .ppkg files that are stored in C:\Recovery\Customizations.

1. Create the recovery OEM folder and copy contents of *USB-B\Recovery\RecoveryImage*

Important: To retain the customized start layout menu during recovery the layoutmodification.xml needs to be copied again during recovery process. We'll copy it here and then use EnableCustomizations.cmd to copy it during recovery.

```
Copy E:\Recovery\recoveryimage c:\recovery\OEM
Copy E:\StartLayout\layoutmodification.xml c:\recovery\OEM
```

2. Run ScanState to gather app and customizations

For x64 Windows 10 PCs:

```
mkdir c:\recovery\customizations
E:\ScanState_amd64\scanstate.exe /apps /ppkg C:\Recovery\Customizations\apps.ppkg
/i:c:\recovery\oem\regrecover.xml /config:E:\scanstate_amd64\Config_AppsAndSettings.xml /o /c /v:13
/l:C:\ScanState.log
```

Where E: is the drive letter of USB-B

For x86 Windows 10 PCs:

```
E:\ScanState_x86\scanstate.exe /apps /ppkg C:\Recovery\Customizations\apps.ppkg
/i:c:\recovery\oem\regrecover.xml /config:e:\scanstate_x86\Config_AppsAndSettings.xml /o /c /v:13
/l:C:\ScanState.log
```

Where E: is the drive letter of USB-B

3. When ScanState completes successfully, delete scanstate.log and miglog.xml files:

```
del c:\scanstate.log
del c:\miglog.xml
```

Create Extensibility scripts to restore additional settings

You can customize the Push-button reset experience by configuring extensibility points. This enables you to run custom scripts, install additional applications, or preserve additional user, application, or registry data.

During recovery, PBR calls EnableCustomizations.cmd which we'll configure to do 2 things:

1. Copy the unattend.xml file used for initial deployment to the \windows\panther.
2. Copy the layoutmodification.xml to the system.

Note: The Win10DepWhiPapForOEMsv1.01July2015 sample extensibility script used a command which no longer is needed. Please use the extensibility script from USB-B as sample for point for creating a new extensibility script.

This will restore the additional layout settings from these 2 answer files during PBR.

Important: Recovery scripts and unattend.xml must be copied to c:\Recovery\OEM for PBR to pickup and restore settings defined in the unattend.xml.

Copy a backup of WinRE

During a PC deployment, winre gets moved. Before you capture a final image, you have to copy the backup of winre.wim back into Windows.

```
Copy e:\images\winre_bak.wim c:\windows\system32\recovery\winre.wim
```

Reseal the image

1. Delete the installation folders and files you have created for the preloaded applications. Extra folders may increase the size of the .wim when the Windows image gets captured.
2. If Sysprep is open, close it and open an elevated command prompt.
3. Copy unattend.xml to the recovery folder to enable recovery of unattend settings during Push Button Reset.

```
copy USB-B\answerfiles\unattendsysprep.xml c:\Recovery\OEM\unattend.xml
```

4. Generalize the image by using the answer file which reflects the changes made in the section [Update images manually by using AUDIT MODE \(online servicing\)](#).

These changes include Microsoft Office tile component pinned to the Start screen.

```
Cmd /c C:\Windows\System32\Sysprep\sysprep /unattend:c:\Recovery\OEM\Unattend.xml /generalize /oobe /shutdown
```

5. Boot reference computer and connect USB-A.
6. After WinPE has been booted connect USB-B.
7. Type *diskpart* and hit enter to start Diskpart. Then type *list volume* to identify volume label of Windows Installation volume labelled "Windows" (For example: E:). Finally type *exit* to quit Diskpart.
8. Start cleanup of the image.

Important: By default, non-major updates (such as ZDPs, or LCUs) are not restored. To ensure that updates preinstalled during manufacturing are not discarded after recovery, they should be marked as permanent by using the */Cleanup-Image* command in DISM with the */StartComponentCleanup* and */ResetBase* options. Updates marked as permanent are always restored during recovery.

```
MD e:\scratchdir  
dism /Cleanup-Image /Image:e:\ /StartComponentCleanup /resetbase /scratchdir:e:\scratchdir
```

9. Capture the image of the windows partition. This process takes several minutes.

```
dism /Capture-Image /CaptureDir:E:\ /ImageFile:F:\Images\ModelSpecificImage.wim  
/Name:"myWinImageWithMSIUpdated" /scratchdir:e:\scratchdir
```

Where E: is the volume label of Windows and F is the volume label of USB-B.

This will overwrite the image created in the section [Deploy the image to new computers](#).

Deploy the image

Use the deployment script to layout the partitions on the device and apply the image. The *walkthrough-deploy.bat* in *USB-B\deployment* folder will partition the device based on device mode.

Important: The Recovery partition must be the partition after the Windows partition to ensure winre.wim can be kept up-to-date during the life of the device.

In Windows 10 Version 1703, we are changing our recommendation to have the WinRE partition placed after the OS partition. This allows future growth of the WinRE partition during updates. Today with the WinRE partition at the front of the disk, the size of it can never be changed, making it difficult to update WinRE when needed. We will continue to support having the WinRE partition located in different parts of the disk, but we encouraging you to follow the new recommendation.

Run the following command to deploy your image to the reference PC:

```
E:\Deployment\walkthrough-deploy.bat E:\Images\modelspecificimage.wim
```

Note: There are several pauses in the script. You will be prompted Y/N for the Apply operation if this is a Compact OS deployment.

Note: Only use Compact OS on high end storage devices because Compact OS performance depends on the storage device capabilities. Compact OS is NOT recommended on rotational devices or storage greater than 32 GB. For more information, see [Compact OS](#).

Remove USB-A and USB-B and type `exit` to reboot your computer with Windows 10.

Finalize deployment

1. Upon deploying your model specific image to destination computers, boot the computer with master image for the first time in AUDIT mode

Important: In order to minimize the first boot time, (Boot > Specialize > OOBE > Start screen) specialize pass must be completed in the factory. Specialize pass will configure hardware specific information which Windows will run on.

For more information about the first boot time requirements, see [Windows Policy for System Builders](#).

2. Please note that at the end of the section [Update images manually by using AUDIT MODE \(online servicing\)](#), the system was sealed with OOBE mode. Please proceed with Audit. If the system boots in OOBE, press `Ctrl+Shift+F3` in order to pass OOBE and boot in audit mode.
3. If you want to apply additional steps, such as executing OEM diagnostics tests and so on, apply them here.
4. Finally, run the Sysprep tool (C:\Windows\System32\Sysprep\sysprep.exe) and seal the system back to **OOBE** and **Shutdown** but *without Generalize*.
5. The system is ready to ship.

Important: If you are manufacturing a small amount of devices without using an image managing tool such as disk duplicators or Windows Deployment Service, you can choose to use the following practice:

- a. You can manufacture those devices by first booting in WinPE - inserting USB-A.
- b. Then insert USB-B where final manufacturing image is contained.
- c. Run Walkthrough-Deploy script to apply the image.
- d. After you applied the image, follow the steps in this Finalize deployment section.
- e. Now the device is ready to be shipped with your final manufacturing image and PBR feature implemented.
- f. Finally, replicate the same procedure with the other devices.

Appendix

Differences between 64-bit and 32-bit deployment

It is recommended to consider 64-bit deployment versus 32-bit deployment disk footprint according to the storage of the device you are manufacturing.

The overall deployment flow mentioned in this guide doesn't differ between 64-bit and 32-bit deployment. Only some of the resource versions and the way those resources are created differs. The following table covers the x64/x86 distinctions.

DISTINCTION	DESCRIPTION	RELATED SECTION
-------------	-------------	-----------------

DISTINCTION	DESCRIPTION	RELATED SECTION
Windows installed on Technician Computer	When Windows ADK gets installed on a technician computer the deployment tools in the ADK would be installed according to the architecture of the Windows on technician computer. In short if ADK is installed on Windows x64, the tools would be installed 64-bit version, or vice-versa.	Prepare your lab environment
Creating WinPE folder structure	WinPE differs between x64 and x86 architecture, so you have to use different commands to create a different WinPE folder for each architecture.	Create WinPE bootable USB
Drivers	Driver versions differ between different architectures. If you are manufacturing a 64-bit Windows image, please use x64 drivers, and vice-versa for 32-bit Windows.	Add drivers
Update Packages for Windows Image	Update package versions differ between different architectures. If you are manufacturing a 64-bit Windows image please use x64 update packages, and vice-versa for 32-bit Windows.	Add update packages
Language Interface Packs	If you will be using x64 Windows 10 image, install x64 LIPs or if you will be using x86 Windows 10 image install x86 LIPs.	Prepare the system for recovery with Push-button reset

What you will need and where to get it

Before starting the deployment procedure OEM requires to download certain kits which will be used throughout the guide, such as Microsoft Office Single Image v15.4, update packages, language interface packs etc... Below is the complete list of resources/kits an OEM requires to download and where they download them.

RESOURCE/KIT	AVAILABLE AT	RELATED SECTION
Windows 10 ADK	Download the Windows ADK	Create WinPE bootable USB
Windows 10 x64/x86 DVD Media (desired language)	Obtain Windows 10 media which you will be customizing from Microsoft Authorized Distributor	Install Windows with basic customizations
Windows 10 Default Product Keys	Default Product Keys are located at Device Partner Center listed under Default product keys tab	Customize the answer file
Language interface packs	LIPs are located at Device Partner Center listed under LIPs tab	Prepare the system for recovery with Push Button Reset

RESOURCE/KIT	AVAILABLE AT	RELATED SECTION
Update Packages	Obtain update packages by downloading from Microsoft Update Catalog . The detailed procedure downloading update packages is mentioned in the releated section.	Add language interface packs
Microsoft Office v16.3	Obtain Microsoft Office v15.4 by downloading from Device Partner Center	Preload Microsoft Office single image v15.4 OPK

References

[Windows Guidelines for System Builders](#)

[Windows Policy for System Builders](#)

OEM Windows Desktop Deployment and Imaging Lab

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Getting ready to build and test Windows 10 desktop PCs? This lab provides strategies for designing base images and updating them with command-line tools. The commands can be scripted, helping you quickly customize new images for specific markets to meet your customers' needs.

Let's get started!

Preparation

- [Planning: Customizing reference images for different audiences](#)

Deploy images

- [Get the tools needed to customize Windows](#)
- [Get the sample scripts](#)
- [Lab 1: Install Windows PE](#)
- [Lab 2: Deploy Windows using a script](#)

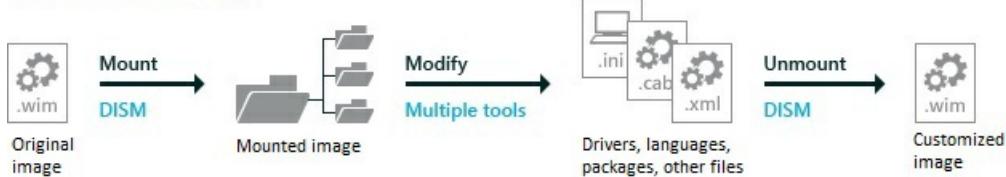
Customize Window images

In these labs, you'll modify the Windows image (install.wim). While you can perform most of these tasks in any order, a few have dependencies:

- **Add languages before major updates.** Major updates include hotfixes, general distribution releases, or service packs. If you add a language later, you'll need to reinstall the updates.
- **Add major updates before apps.** These apps include universal Windows apps and desktop applications. If you add an update later, you'll need to reinstall the apps.

To make the changes, you'll mount the image contents into a temporary folder, and use tools like DISM to make the changes. Unmount the images and redeploy.

Customize an image:



- [Lab 3: Add device drivers \(.inf-style\)](#) (includes basics on mounting images)
- [Lab 4: Add languages](#)
- [Lab 5: Add updates and upgrade the edition](#)
- [Lab 6: Add universal Windows apps](#) (includes Microsoft Universal Office Apps)
- [Lab 7: Change settings, enter product keys, and run scripts with an answer file \(unattend.xml\)](#)
- [Lab 8: Add branding and license agreements \(OOBE.xml\)](#)

Add desktop applications, tiles, and pins

For Windows desktop applications, you can add them in audit mode, or apply them separately after you've applied a Windows image.

- [Lab 9: Make changes from Windows \(audit mode\)](#) (includes Microsoft Office 2016)
- [Lab 10: Add desktop applications and settings with siloed provisioning packages \(SPPs\)](#) (includes Windows Store settings, Microsoft Office)
- [Lab 11: Add Start tiles and taskbar pins](#) (used for universal apps and desktop applications)

Final tasks Make sure your customizations are included in the recovery image, and optimize the images for quick and easy deployment.

- [Lab 12: Update the recovery image](#)
- [Lab 13: Shrink your image size](#)

Planning: Customizing reference images for different audiences

10/12/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Instead of having one device design that tries to fit everyone, Windows image management tools help you tailor device designs to meet the specific needs of various customers.

To get started, we recommend choosing a hardware design that targets a specific audience, market, or price point. Build base images for this design and test it. Next, modify the base images to create designs for different audiences, include branding, logos, languages, and apps.

Device types

Consider creating separate designs for different device types, such as low-cost or performance laptops, or low-cost or performance desktops. Each of these styles has different sets of critical differentiators, such as battery life or graphics performance.

Although Windows includes base drivers for many common devices, some hardware requires specialized device drivers that must be installed and occasionally updated.

Many drivers are designed to be installed offline without booting the Windows image.

Use Windows Assessment tools to make sure that the apps and hardware that you're installing can perform well in a variety of circumstances.

Architecture

If you plan to build devices with both 64-bit and 32-bit (x86) chipsets and architectures, you'll need separate base images. You'll also need different versions of drivers, packages, and updates.

Retail customers and business customers

If you're building designs for both retail and business customers, you can start with a single base edition such as Windows 10 Home or Windows 10 Pro, and then later upgrade it to a higher edition such as Windows 10 Enterprise, as needed. Once you've built a higher edition, however, you can't downgrade it to the lower edition. For more info, see [DISM Windows Edition-Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

If you're building devices to sell to retail customers, you'll need to meet a set of minimum requirements. For info, see the Licensing and Policy guidance on the [OEM Partner Center](#).

If you're building devices for businesses, you'll have fewer restrictions. IT professionals can customize their devices in all sorts of ways. However, you should consider the implications of IT policies, as well as customer needs such as migrating data, activating security tools, and managing volume license agreements and product keys.

Regions

Consider creating different base images for different regions.

The resource files for Windows and other apps like Microsoft Office can be large - some resources like localized handwriting and speech recognition resources are several hundred megabytes.

To save drive space, we've split up the language packs. This can help you preload more languages for your

customers or save space on your image. For example, to target a large region, you may preload the basic language components such as text and user interface files for many areas within the region, but only include the handwriting recognition for devices with pens, or only include voice and speech tools for Cortana on devices with integrated microphones. Users can download these components later as needed.

Sample plan

This lab uses the following three sample hardware configurations.

HARDWARE CONFIGURATION:	1	1B	2
Form factor	Small tablet	2-in-1	Notebook
Architecture	x86	x86	x64
RAM	1 GB	2 GB	4 GB
Disk capacity and type	16 GB eMMC	32 GB eMMC	500 GB HDD
Disk compression used	Yes	No	No
Display size	8"	10"	14"
Windows SKU	Home	Pro	Home
Region/Language(s)	EN-US	EN-US, FR-FR, ES-ES	EN-GB, DE-DE, FR-FR, ES-ES, ZH-CN
Cortana	Yes	Yes	Yes
Inbox apps (Universal)	Yes	Yes	Yes
Pen	No	Yes	No
Office (Universal)	Yes	Yes	Yes
Windows desktop applications	No	Yes	Yes
Office 2016	No	Yes	Yes
Compact OS	Yes	Yes	No

Notes:

- We can build an image for Hardware Configuration 1B by using Hardware Configuration 1 as a base image.
- We can't build Hardware Configuration 2 from either Hardware Configuration 1 or 1B, because they use a different architecture.

[Get the tools needed to customize Windows](#)

Get the tools needed to customize Windows

10/12/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Here's what you'll need to start testing and deploying devices:

PCs

Here's how we'll refer to them:

- **Technician PC:** Your work PC. This PC should have at least 15GB of free space for installing the [Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit \(Windows ADK\)](#) and for modifying Windows images.

We recommend using Windows 10 for this PC. The minimum requirement is Windows 7 SP1, though this requires additional tools or workarounds for tasks such as running PowerShell scripts and mounting .ISO images.

For most tasks, you can use either an x86 or x64 PC. If you're creating x86 images, you'll need an x86-based PC (or virtual machine) for a one-time task of [generating a catalog file](#).

- **Reference device:** A test PC or tablet that represents all of the devices in a single model line; for example, the *Fabrikam Notebook PC Series 1*. This device must meet the Windows 10 minimum hardware requirements.

You'll reformat this device as part of the walkthrough.

Storage

- **WinPE USB key:** Must be at least 512MB and at most 32GB. This drive will be reformatted, so save your data off of it first. It should not be a Windows-to-Go key or a key marked as a non-removable drive.
- **Storage USB key (USB-B):** A second USB key or an external USB hard drive for storing files. Minimum free space: 8GB, using NTFS, ExFAT, or any other file system that allows files over 4GB. If your hardware allows it, use USB 3.0 keys/drives and USB 3.0 ports to speed up file copy procedures. Note, some USB 3.0 keys don't work with some USB 2.0 ports. We won't be reformatting this drive, so as long as you have enough free space, you can reuse an existing storage drive.

To use a single storage drive, see [WinPE: Store or split images to deploy Windows using a single USB drive](#)

Software

Copy the following source files to the technician PC, rather than using external sources like network shares or removable drives. This reduces the risk of interrupting the build process from a temporary network issue or from disconnecting the USB device.

To complete this guide, get the recommended downloads in this section from <https://www.microsoftoem.com>.

The version numbers of the Windows ADK, the Windows image you're deploying, and the languages and features you're adding must match.

This lab assumes the 64-bit architecture, so if you're using the 32-bit version, change all mentions of x64 to x86.

Windows 10 (install.wim)

Windows Home 10, 32/64 English OPK

Windows Home SL 10, 32/64 English OPK

Windows Pro 10, 32/64 English OPK

- Mount the ISO file to a drive, and note the drive letter, for example, D.
- Copy the D:\sources\install.wim file, and save it to the local drive, in the folder: **C:\Images\Win10_x64**.

Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (ADK) for Windows 10

[Windows ADK for Windows 10](#) or the most recent Windows 10 32/64 OPK ADK.

Customizations: Windows updates, languages, features, apps, and Microsoft Office

Win 10 32/64 MultiLang OPK LangPackAll/LIP

Win 10 32/64 MultiLang OPK Feat on Demand

Win 10 32/64 MultiLang OPK App Update

X20-98485 Office Mobile MultiLang v1.3 OPK

X21-05453 Office 2016 v16.2 Deployment Tool for OEM OPK

X21-05414 Office 2016 v16.2 English OPK

X21-05508 Office v16.2 German OPK

We also discuss how to add hardware drivers and other Windows apps in this guide, get those from the hardware/software manufacturers.

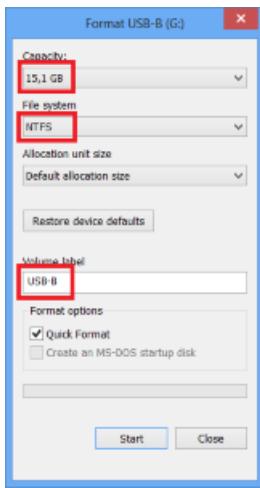
Product keys

Get the default product keys for each Windows version from the Kit Guide Windows 10 Default Manufacturing Key OEM PDF, which is on the ISO with the Windows image.

Get the distribution product keys that match the Windows 10 image.

Sample files: Create a deployment USB drive

1. Format a USB Drive with the NTFS file format, name it USB-B.



2. Download most of the lab samples from [USB-B.zip](#), and extract the files to the drive.

Add to this the [newer version of the deployment sample scripts](#).

Prepare your technician PC

Here's how to set up your PC.

Copy the Windows image to the local drive

1. Mount the Windows ISO file that you downloaded (Right-click the file > **Mount**), and note the drive letter, for example, D.
2. In File Explorer, create a new folder (example: C:\Images\Win10_x64), and copy the Windows image (D:\sources\install.wim) file into the folder. This will help speed file creation procedures later on.

Install the Windows ADK for Windows 10

1. If you have a previous version of the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (ADK), uninstall it.
2. Download the version of the [Windows ADK](#) that matches the version of Windows that you're installing. **Run** the installer.
3. Click **Next** > **Next** > **Accept** to accept the defaults and to join the Customer Experience Improvement Program.
4. Select the following tools:

- **Deployment Tools**
- **Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE)**
- **User State Migration Tool (USMT)**

For these labs, you won't need the **Windows Performance Toolkit** or the **Windows Assessment Toolkit**. You can clear those check boxes.

5. Click **Install**, and then click **Yes** to confirm. This may take a few minutes.
6. When the installation is finished, click **Close**.

[Get the sample scripts](#)

Sample scripts

10/17/2017 • 16 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

[Download the sample scripts used in this lab](#)

Copy these scripts to the root of your storage USB drive. Refer to this page to understand what's in the scripts.

To keep moving with the labs, it's OK to skip the rest of this topic. Come back later when you want to understand what's going on or to make changes: we designed these scripts so that you can modify them to fit your needs.

[Install Windows PE](#)

Image deployment scripts

The following scripts set up Windows devices by using an image file, and configure push-button reset features.

CreatePartitions-(firmware).txt

Use these scripts together with DiskPart to format and set up the hard disk partitions for Windows, including recovery tools. Adjust the partition sizes to fill the drive as necessary.

ApplyImage.bat

Use this script apply a Windows image to a new device.

```
@echo Apply-Image.bat
@echo      Run from the reference device in the WinPE environment
@echo      This script erases the primary hard drive and applies a new image
@echo.
@echo      Note: This script uses separate scripts to configure the drive partitions:
@echo      CreatePartitions-BIOS.txt or CreatePartitions-UEFI.txt
@echo      These scripts must be in the same folder as ApplyImage.bat.
@echo.
@echo UPDATE (NOVEMBER 2016):
@echo * This script now prompts for an image index number if one isn't given.
@echo.
@echo UPDATE (JULY 2016):
@echo * This script stops just after applying the image.
@echo      This gives you an opportunity to add siloed provisioning packages (SPPs)
@echo      so that you can include them in your recovery tools.
@echo.
@echo      After the script is complete, use apply-recovery.bat to finish
@echo      setting up the recovery tools.
@echo.
@echo * This script creates a now includes support for the /EA variables for quicker
@echo      image capture and recovery.
@echo.
@echo * This script now includes support for the /EA variables for quicker
@echo      image capture and recovery.
@echo.
@echo * This script now checks to see if you're booted into Windows PE.
@echo.
@if not exist X:\Windows\System32 echo ERROR: This script is built to run in Windows PE.
@if not exist X:\Windows\System32 goto END
@if %1==. echo ERROR: To run this script, add a path to a Windows image file.
@if %1==. echo Example: ApplyImage D:\WindowsWithFrench.wim
@if %1==. goto END
@echo ****
if not %2==. goto INDEXSELECTED
:WHICHIMAGE
```

```

@echo Which Windows image should we apply?
@echo (Default is image index 1)
@SET /P INDEX=Type an image index number, or press L to list the images:
@if %INDEX%==. set INDEX=1
@if %INDEX%==L set INDEX=L
@if %INDEX%==L Dism /Get-ImageInfo /ImageFile:%1
@if %INDEX%==L goto WHICHIMAGE
:INDEXSELECTED
@echo ****
@echo Checking to see if the PC is booted in BIOS or UEFI mode.
wpeutil UpdateBootInfo
for /f "tokens=2* delims= " %%A in ('reg query HKLM\System\CurrentControlSet\Control /v PEFirmwareType') DO
SET Firmware=%B
@echo Note: delims is a TAB followed by a space.
@if %Firmware%==. echo ERROR: Can't figure out which firmware we're on.
@if %Firmware%==. echo Common fix: In the command above:
@if %Firmware%==. echo for /f "tokens=2* delims= "
@if %Firmware%==. echo ...replace the spaces with a TAB character followed by a space.
@if %Firmware%== goto END
@if %Firmware%==0x1 echo The PC is booted in BIOS mode.
@if %Firmware%==0x2 echo The PC is booted in UEFI mode.
@echo ****
@echo Formatting the primary disk...
@if %Firmware%==0x1 echo ...using BIOS (MBR) format and partitions.
@if %Firmware%==0x2 echo ...using UEFI (GPT) format and partitions.
@echo CAUTION: All the data on the disk will be DELETED.
@SET /P READY=Erase all data and continue? (Y or N):
@if %READY%==y. set READY=Y
@if not %READY%==Y. goto END
if %Firmware%==0x1 diskpart /s %~dp0CreatePartitions-BIOS.txt
if %Firmware%==0x2 diskpart /s %~dp0CreatePartitions-UEFI.txt
@echo ****
@echo == Set high-performance power scheme to speed deployment ==
call powercfg /s 8c5e7fd-a-e8bf-4a96-9a85-a6e23a8c635c
@echo ****
@echo == Apply the image to the Windows partition ==
@SET /P COMPACTOS=Deploy as Compact OS? (Y or N):
@if %COMPACTOS%==y. set COMPACTOS=Y
if %COMPACTOS%==Y. dism /Apply-Image /ImageFile:%1 /Index:%INDEX% /ApplyDir:W:\ /Compact /EA
if not %COMPACTOS%==Y. dism /Apply-Image /ImageFile:%1 /Index:%INDEX% /ApplyDir:W:\ /EA
@echo ****
@echo == Copy boot files to the System partition ==
W:\Windows\System32\bcdboot W:\Windows /s S:
@echo ****
@echo Next steps:
@echo * Add Windows desktop applications (optional):
@echo DISM /Apply-SiloedPackage /ImagePath:W:\ 
@echo /PackagePath:"D:\App1.spp" /PackagePath:"D:\App2.spp" ...
@echo * Add the recovery image:
@echo ApplyRecovery.bat
@echo * Reboot:
@echo exit
:END

```

This script relies on the following two DiskPart scripts, CreatePartitions-UEFI.txt and CreatePartitions-BIOS.txt, which must be placed in the same folder:

CreatePartitions-UEFI.txt

Creates the System, MSR, Windows, and recovery tools partitions for UEFI-based PCs.

This script temporarily assigns these drive letters: System=S, Windows=W, and Recovery=R. The MSR partition doesn't get a letter. The letter W is used to avoid potential drive letter conflicts. After the device reboots, the Windows partition is assigned the letter C, and the other partitions don't receive drive letters.

The Recovery partition must be the partition after the Windows partition to ensure winre.wim can be kept up-to-

date during life of the device.

The following diagram shows the resulting partition configuration:

Disk 0 default partition layout (UEFI-based PCs)

System

MSR

Windows

Recovery

```
rem == CreatePartitions-UEFI.txt ==
rem == These commands are used with DiskPart to
rem     create four partitions
rem     for a UEFI/GPT-based PC.
rem     Adjust the partition sizes to fill the drive
rem     as necessary. ==
select disk 0
clean
convert gpt
rem == 1. System partition =====
create partition efi size=100
rem     ** NOTE: For Advanced Format 4Kn drives,
rem             change this value to size = 260 **
format quick fs=fat32 label="System"
assign letter="S"
rem == 2. Microsoft Reserved (MSR) partition =====
create partition msr size=16
rem == 3. Windows partition =====
rem ==     a. Create the Windows partition =====
create partition primary
rem ==     b. Create space for the recovery tools ===
shrink minimum=500
rem         ** NOTE: Update this size to match the
rem             size of the recovery tools
rem             (winre.wim)
rem ==     c. Prepare the Windows partition =====
format quick fs=ntfs label="Windows"
assign letter="W"
rem == 4. Recovery partition =====
create partition primary
format quick fs=ntfs label="Recovery"
assign letter="R"
set id="de94bba4-06d1-4d40-a16a-bfd50179d6ac"
gpt attributes=0x8000000000000001
list volume
exit
```

CreatePartitions-BIOS.txt

Creates the System, Windows, and recovery tools partitions for BIOS-based PCs.

This script temporarily assigns these drive letters: System=S, Windows=W, and Recovery=R. The letter W is used to avoid potential drive letter conflicts. After the device reboots, the Windows partition is assigned the letter C, and the other partitions don't receive drive letters.

The Recovery partition must be the partition after the Windows partition to ensure winre.wim can be kept up-to-date during life of the device.

The following diagram shows the resulting partition configuration:

Disk 0 default partition layout (BIOS-based PCs)

System

Windows

Recovery

```
rem == CreatePartitions-BIOS.txt ==
rem == These commands are used with DiskPart to
rem     create three partitions
rem     for a BIOS/MBR-based computer.
rem     Adjust the partition sizes to fill the drive
rem     as necessary. ==
select disk 0
clean
rem == 1. System partition =====
create partition primary size=100
format quick fs=ntfs label="System"
assign letter="S"
active
rem == 2. Windows partition =====
rem ==     a. Create the Windows partition =====
create partition primary
rem ==     b. Create space for the recovery tools
shrink minimum=500
rem         ** NOTE: Update this size to match the
rem             size of the recovery tools
rem             (winre.wim) **
rem ==     c. Prepare the Windows partition =====
format quick fs=ntfs label="Windows"
assign letter="W"
rem == 3. Recovery partition =====
create partition primary
format quick fs=ntfs label="Recovery image"
assign letter="R"
set id=27
list volume
exit
```

ApplyRecovery.bat

Use this script to prepare the Windows recovery partition.

```

@echo == ApplyRecovery.bat ==
@echo ****
@echo == Copy the Windows RE image to the Windows RE Tools partition ==
md R:\Recovery\WindowsRE
xcopy /h W:\Windows\System32\Recovery\Winre.wim R:\Recovery\WindowsRE\
@echo ****
@echo == Register the location of the recovery tools ==
W:\Windows\System32\Reagentsc /Setreimage /Path R:\Recovery\WindowsRE /Target W:\Windows
@echo ****
@echo == If Compact OS, single-instance the recovery provisioning package ==
@echo Options: N: No
@echo          Y: Yes
@echo          D: Yes, but defer cleanup steps to first boot.
@echo          Use this if the cleanup steps take more than 30 minutes.
@echo          defer the cleanup steps to the first boot.
@SET /P COMPACTOS=Deploy as Compact OS? (Y, N, or D):
@if %COMPACTOS%==y set COMPACTOS=Y
@if %COMPACTOS%==d set COMPACTOS=D
if %COMPACTOS%==Y. dism /Apply-CustomDataImage /CustomDataImage:W:\Recovery\Customizations\USMT.ppkg
/ImagePath:W:\ /SingleInstance
if %COMPACTOS%==D. dism /Apply-CustomDataImage /CustomDataImage:W:\Recovery\Customizations\USMT.ppkg
/ImagePath:W:\ /SingleInstance /Defer
@rem ****
@echo Checking to see if the PC is booted in BIOS or UEFI mode.
wpeutil UpdateBootInfo
for /f "tokens=2* delims= " %%A in ('reg query HKLM\System\CurrentControlSet\Control /v PEFirmwareType') DO
SET Firmware=%%B
@echo          Note: delims is a TAB followed by a space.
@if x%Firmware%==x echo ERROR: Can't figure out which firmware we're on.
@if x%Firmware%==x echo          Common fix: In the command above:
@if x%Firmware%==x echo          for /f "tokens=2* delims= "
@if x%Firmware%==x echo          ...replace the spaces with a TAB character followed by a space.
@if x%Firmware%==x goto END
@if %Firmware%==0x1 echo The PC is booted in BIOS mode.
@if %Firmware%==0x2 echo The PC is booted in UEFI mode.
@echo ****
@echo == Hiding the recovery tools partition
if %Firmware%==0x1 diskpart /s %~dp0HideRecoveryPartitions-BIOS.txt
if %Firmware%==0x2 diskpart /s %~dp0HideRecoveryPartitions-UEFI.txt
@echo ****
@echo == Verify the configuration status of the images. ==
W:\Windows\System32\Reagentsc /Info /Target W:\Windows
@echo      (Note: Windows RE status may appear as Disabled, this is OK.)
@echo ****
@echo      All done!
@echo      Disconnect the USB drive from the reference device.
@echo      Type exit to reboot.
@echo.
:END

```

This script relies on the following two DiskPart scripts, HideRecoveryPartitions-UEFI.txt and HideRecoveryPartitions-BIOS.txt, which must be placed in the same folder:

HideRecoveryPartitions-UEFI.txt

```

rem === HideRecoveryPartitions-UEFI.txt ===
select disk 0
select partition 4
set id=de94bba4-06d1-4d40-a16a-bfd50179d6ac
gpt attributes=0x8000000000000001
remove
list volume

```

HideRecoveryPartitions-BIOS.txt

```
rem === HideRecoveryPartitions-BIOS.txt ===  
select disk 0  
select partition 3  
set id=27  
remove  
list volume
```

Start layout (LayoutModification.xml)

The Start tile layout in Windows 10 provides OEMs the ability to append tiles to the default Start layout to include Web links, secondary tiles, Windows apps, and Windows desktop applications. OEMs can use this layout to make it applicable to multiple regions or markets without duplicating a lot of the work. In addition, OEMs can add up to three default apps to the frequently used apps section in the system area, which delivers system-driven lists to the user including important or frequently accessed system locations and recently installed apps.

To take advantage of all these new features and have the most robust and complete Start customization experience for Windows 10, consider creating a LayoutModification.xml file. This file specifies how the OEM tiles should be laid out in Start. For more information about how to customize the new Start layout, see the topic [Customize the Windows 10 Start screen](#) in the Windows 10 Partner Documentation.

Sample **LayoutModification.xml**:

```
<LayoutModificationTemplate
  xmlns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/Start/2014/LayoutModification"
  xmlns:defaultlayout="http://schemas.microsoft.com/Start/2014/FullDefaultLayout"
  xmlns:start="http://schemas.microsoft.com/Start/2014/StartLayout"
  Version="1">
<RequiredStartGroupsCollection>
  <RequiredStartGroups
    Region="DE|ES|FR|GB|IT|US">
    <AppendGroup
      Name="Fabrikam Group 1">
      <start:Tile
        AppUserModelID="Microsoft.Office.Word_8wekyb3d8bbwe!microsoft.word"
        Size="2x2"
        Row="0"
        Column="0"/>
      <start:DesktopApplicationTile
        DesktopApplicationID="Microsoft.Windows.Explorer"
        Size="2x2"
        Row="0"
        Column="2"/>
      <start:Tile
        AppUserModelID="Microsoft.Office.Excel_8wekyb3d8bbwe!microsoft.excel"
        Size="2x2"
        Row="0"
        Column="4"/>
    </AppendGroup>
    <AppendGroup
      Name="Fabrikam Group 2">
      <start:Tile
        AppUserModelID="Microsoft.Reader_8wekyb3d8bbwe!Microsoft.Reader"
        Size="2x2"
        Row="0"
        Column="0"/>
      <start:DesktopApplicationTile
        DesktopApplicationID="http://www.bing.com/"
        Size="2x2"
        Row="0"
        Column="2"/>
      <start:DesktopApplicationTile
        DesktopApplicationLinkPath="%ALLUSERSPROFILE%\Microsoft\Windows\Start
Menu\Programs\Accessories\Paint.lnk">
    </AppendGroup>
  </RequiredStartGroups>
</RequiredStartGroupsCollection>
```

```

    Size="2x2"
    Row="0"
    Column="4"/>
  </AppendGroup>
</RequiredStartGroups>
<RequiredStartGroups>
  <AppendGroup
    Name="Fabrikam Group 1">
    <start:Tile
      AppUserModelID="Microsoft.Office.Word_8wekyb3d8bbwe!microsoft.word"
      Size="2x2"
      Row="0"
      Column="0"/>
    <start:SecondaryTile
      AppUserModelID="Microsoft.Windows.Spartan_cw5n1h2txyewy!Microsoft.Spartan.Spartan"
      TileID="FabrikamWeblinkTile"
      Arguments="http://www.fabrikam.com"
      DisplayName="Fabrikam"
      Square150x150LogoUri="ms-appx:///Assets/SpartanMedium.png"
      ShowNameOnSquare150x150Logo="true"
      BackgroundColor="#FF112233"
      Size="2x2"
      Row="0"
      Column="2"/>
  </AppendGroup>
</RequiredStartGroups>
</RequiredStartGroupsCollection>
<TopMFUApps>
  <Tile AppUserModelID="Microsoft.WindowsCalculator_8wekyb3d8bbwe!App" />
</TopMFUApps>
</LayoutModificationTemplate>

```

Microphone settings (SpeechSetting.cmd)

Use this script to tune your device's microphone to help maximize speech accuracy for features like Cortana. To learn how to test for the appropriate values for your device, see [Cortana Device Test Setup](#) in the Hardware WEG.

SpeechSetting.cmd

```

@echo off
@echo.
@echo This script will set the Device.SpeechRecognition.DefaultMicGain values.
@echo.

setlocal
setlocal ENABLEDELAYEDEXPANSION

if "%1"=="" goto :InputPrompt
call :tohex %1
@echo %_DECVAL% == 0x%_HEXVAL%
set /a Percentage=%_DECVAL%/100

set RegPath=HKLM\Software\Microsoft\Speech_OneCore\AudioInput\MicWiz
set RegKey=DefaultDefaultMicGain
set RegValue=0x%_HEXVAL%

@echo reg add %RegPath% /v %RegKey% /t REG_DWORD /d %RegValue% /f
reg add %RegPath% /v %RegKey% /t REG_DWORD /d %RegValue% /f
if %errorlevel% NEQ 0 echo Reg Add function failed. && goto :Error
@echo.
@echo Successfully set the MicGain value to %Percentage% percent.
@echo.
goto :end

:ToHex
  set _DECVAL=%1

```

```

set _DLCVAL=%1
set _HEXVAL=
set _VAL=%1
if %1 LSS 0 (
    REM break the number into two parts so that we can output the
    REM full value within the bounds of a 32 bit signed value
    set /A _offset="-(-2147483647 - !_VAL!) + 2"
    set /A _VAL="!_offset! / 16 + 0xFFFFFFFF"
    set /A _P="!_offset! %% 16 + 0xF"

    if !_P! GEQ 16 (
        set /A _VAL="!_VAL! + 1"
        set /A _P="!_P! %% 16"
    )
    if !_P! LEQ 9 set _HEXVAL=!_P!!_HEXVAL!
    if "!_P!" == "10" set _HEXVAL=A !_HEXVAL!
    if "!_P!" == "11" set _HEXVAL=B !_HEXVAL!
    if "!_P!" == "12" set _HEXVAL=C !_HEXVAL!
    if "!_P!" == "13" set _HEXVAL=D !_HEXVAL!
    if "!_P!" == "14" set _HEXVAL=E !_HEXVAL!
    if "!_P!" == "15" set _HEXVAL=F !_HEXVAL!
)

:hexloop
set /A _P="%_VAL% %% 16"
if %_P% LEQ 9 set _HEXVAL=%_P%%_HEXVAL%
if "%_P%" == "10" set _HEXVAL=A%_HEXVAL%
if "%_P%" == "11" set _HEXVAL=B%_HEXVAL%
if "%_P%" == "12" set _HEXVAL=C%_HEXVAL%
if "%_P%" == "13" set _HEXVAL=D%_HEXVAL%
if "%_P%" == "14" set _HEXVAL=E%_HEXVAL%
if "%_P%" == "15" set _HEXVAL=F%_HEXVAL%
set /A _VAL="%_VAL% / 16"
if "%_VAL%" == "0" goto :endloop
goto :hexloop

:InputPrompt
@echo.
@echo Incorrect Usage.
@echo.
@echo Please input a decimal value as a parameter.
@echo.
@echo Example:
@echo SpeechSetting.cmd 4200
@echo.
@echo This example sets the MicGain as 42 percent which is 0x1068.
@echo.
goto :end

:Error
@echo.
@echo Error occurred.
@echo.
goto :end

:endloop
    set _offset=
    set _P=
    set _VAL=
goto :eof

:end

```

Remove Windows apps

When you add language packs to an image, you'll need to remove and reinstall each of your Windows apps to make sure they include the language assets.

Here's two scripts, one which can be used to remove the apps from an offline image, and another that can be used in audit mode to remove apps from a running image:

Remove_apps_in_offline_image.cmd

This script assumes the file name is install.wim, that the script is being run from the same folder as install.wim, that the index being modified is #1, and that there are no other Windows images in other index locations (#2, #3) that need to be preserved.

```
@echo off
@rem Run this script from the same folder that includes install.wim
cls
md mount
dism /mount-image /mountdir:mount /imagefile:install.wim /index:1
if exist appx.txt del appx.txt
if exist applist.txt del applist.txt
if exist appremove.cmd del appremove.cmd
dism /image:mount /get-provisionedappxpackages > appx.txt
findstr /c:"PackageName" appx.txt > applist.txt
setlocal enabledelayedexpansion
set INTEXTFILE=applist.txt
set OUTTEXTFILE=appremove.cmd
set SEARCHTEXT=PackageName :
set REPLACETEXT=dism /image:mount /remove-provisionedappxpackage /packagename:
set OUTPUTLINE=

for /f "tokens=1,* delims=¶" %%A in ('"type %INTEXTFILE%"') do (
SET string=%A
SET modified=!string:%SEARCHTEXT%=%REPLACETEXT%!

echo !modified! >> %OUTTEXTFILE%
)
del appx.txt
del applist.txt
call appremove.cmd
dism /unmount-image /mountdir:mount /commit
echo "Check to make sure operations completed successfully. If not, press Ctrl+C."
pause
ren install.wim install-temp.wim
dism /export-image /sourceimagefile:install-temp.wim /sourceindex:1 /destinationimagefile:install.wim
del install-temp.wim
```

Remove_apps_in_audit_mode.cmd

This script assumes you're running in audit mode on the reference PC.

```

@echo off
@rem Use MOUNT folder in folder where script is run
cls
dism /mount-image /mountdir:mount /imagefile:install.wim /index:1
if exist appx.txt del appx.txt
if exist applist.txt del applist.txt
if exist appremove.cmd del appremove.cmd
dism /image:mount /get-provisionedappxpackages > appx.txt
findstr /c:"PackageName" appx.txt > applist.txt
setlocal enabledelayedexpansion
set INTEXTFILE=applist.txt
set OUTTEXTFILE=appremove.cmd
set SEARCHTEXT=PackageName :
set REPLACETEXT=dism /image:mount /remove-provisionedappxpackage /packagename:
set OUTPUTLINE=

for /f "tokens=1,* delims=¶" %%A in ('"type %INTEXTFILE%"') do (
SET string=%%A
SET modified=!string:%SEARCHTEXT%=%REPLACETEXT%!

echo !modified! >> %OUTTEXTFILE%
)
del appx.txt
del applist.txt
call appremove.cmd
dism /unmount-image /mountdir:mount /commit
ren install.wim install-temp.wim
dism /export-image /sourceimagefile:install-temp.wim /sourceindex:1 /destinationimagefile:install.wim
del install-temp.wim

```

BootToAudit

Add an answer file to the Windows image in C:\mount\windows\Windows\Panther\unattend.xml to instruct it to boot into audit mode. You can create this answer file in Windows System Image Manager.

BootToAudit-x64

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<unattend xmlns="urn:schemas-microsoft-com:unattend">
<!-- BootToAudit-x64.xml -->
<settings pass="oobeSystem">
    <component name="Microsoft-Windows-Deployment" processorArchitecture="amd64"
publicKeyToken="31bf3856ad364e35" language="neutral" versionScope="nonSxS"
xmlns:wcm="http://schemas.microsoft.com/WMIConfig/2002/State" xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-
instance">
        <Reseal>
            <Mode>Audit</Mode>
        </Reseal>
    </component>
</settings>
</unattend>

```

BootToAudit-x86

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<unattend xmlns="urn:schemas-microsoft-com:unattend">
<!-- BootToAudit-x86.xml -->
<settings pass="oobeSystem">
    <component name="Microsoft-Windows-Deployment" processorArchitecture="x86"
publickeyToken="31bf3856ad364e35" language="neutral" versionScope="nonSxS"
xmlns:wcm="http://schemas.microsoft.com/WMIConfig/2002/State" xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-
instance">
        <Reseal>
            <Mode>Audit</Mode>
        </Reseal>
    </component>
</settings>
</unattend>

```

Keeping Windows settings through a recovery

Windows doesn't automatically save settings created through unattend.xml setup files, nor Windows Start Menu customizations created with LayoutModification.xml during a full-system reset, nor first-login info from oobe.xml.

To make sure your customizations are saved, that includes steps to put the unattend.xml, LayoutModification.xml, and oobe.xml files back into place. Here's some sample scripts that show how to retain these settings and put them back into the right spots. Save copies of unattend.xml, LayoutModification.xml, oobe.xml, plus these two text files: ResetConfig.xml and EnableCustomizations.cmd, in C:\Recovery\OEM\:

ResetConfig.xml

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<!-- ResetConfig.xml -->
<Reset>
    <Run Phase="BasicReset_AfterImageApply">
        <Path>EnableCustomizations.cmd</Path>
        <Duration>2</Duration>
    </Run>
    <Run Phase="FactoryReset_AfterImageApply">
        <Path>EnableCustomizations.cmd</Path>
        <Duration>2</Duration>
    </Run>
</Reset>

```

EnableCustomizations.cmd

```

rem EnableCustomizations.cmd

rem Set the variable %TARGETOS%      (Typically this is C:\Windows)
for /F "tokens=1,2,3 delims= " %%A in ('reg query "HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\RecoveryEnvironment"
/v TargetOS') DO SET TARGETOS=%C

rem Set the variable %TARGETOSDRIVE% (Typically this is C:)
for /F "tokens=1 delims=\" %%A in ('Echo %TARGETOS%') DO SET TARGETOSDRIVE=%A

rem Add back Windows settings, Start menu, and OOBE.xml customizations
copy "%TARGETOSDRIVE%\Recovery\OEM\Unattend.xml" "%TARGETOS%\Panther\Unattend.xml" /y
copy "%TARGETOSDRIVE%\Recovery\OEM\LayoutModification.xml"
"%TARGETOSDRIVE%\Users\Default\AppData\Local\Microsoft\Windows\Shell\LayoutModification.xml" /y
xcopy "%TARGETOSDRIVE%\Recovery\OEM\OOBE\Info" "%TARGETOS%\System32\Info\" /s

rem Recommended: Create a pagefile for devices with 1GB or less of RAM.
wpeutil CreatePageFile /path=%TARGETOSDRIVE%\PageFile.sys /size=256

```

To learn more about using extensibility points for push-button reset, see [Add a script to push-button reset](#)

features.

Reinstall Windows inbox apps (Windows 10, version 1607)

Reinstall Windows apps after adding a new language. You can reinstall the apps without removing them first.

ReinstallInboxApps-x64.cmd

```
DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.3DBuilder_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.3DBuilder_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.WindowsAlarms_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.WindowsAlarms_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.BingWeather_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.BingWeather_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x64.1.3.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x64.1.3.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.WindowsCalculator_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.WindowsCalculator_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.WindowsCamera_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.WindowsCamera_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x64.1.3.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x64.1.3.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.WindowsFeedbackHub_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.WindowsFeedbackHub_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x64.1.3.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x64.1.3.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.Getstarted_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.Getstarted_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x64.1.3.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x64.1.3.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
```

```
/PackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.WindowsMaps_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle  
/LicensePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.WindowsMaps_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x64.1.3.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x64.1.3.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx
```

```
DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows  
/PackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.Messaging_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle  
/LicensePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.Messaging_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x64.1.3.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x64.1.3.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx
```

```
DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows  
/PackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.MicrosoftOfficeHub_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle  
/LicensePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.MicrosoftOfficeHub_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx  
DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows  
/PackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.Office.OneNote_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle  
/LicensePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.Office.OneNote_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
```

```
DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows  
/PackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.WindowsCommunicationsApps_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle  
/LicensePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.WindowsCommunicationsApps_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
```

```
DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows  
/PackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.People_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle  
/LicensePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.People_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x64.1.3.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x64.1.3.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx
```

```
DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows  
/PackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.Windows.Photos_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle  
/LicensePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.Windows.Photos_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x64.1.3.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x64.1.3.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx
```

```
DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows  
/PackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.StorePurchaseApp_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle  
/LicensePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.StorePurchaseApp_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
```

```
DISM /add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /image:c:\mount\windows  
/packagepath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.MicrosoftSolitaireCollection_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle  
/licensepath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.MicrosoftSolitaireCollection_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x64.1.6.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.6.appx
```

```
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x64.1.6.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.6.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.Advertising.Xaml.x64.10.0.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.Advertising.Xaml.x86.10.0.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.Services.Store.Engagement.x64.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.Services.Store.Engagement.x86.appx
```

```
DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows  
/PackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.WindowsSoundRecorder_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle  
/LicensePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.WindowsSoundRecorder_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
```

```
DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows  
/PackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.MicrosoftStickyNotes_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle  
/LicensePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.MicrosoftStickyNotes_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x64.1.3.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x64.1.3.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx
```

```
DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows  
/PackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.WindowsStore_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle  
/LicensePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.WindowsStore_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x64.1.3.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x64.1.3.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx
```

```
DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows  
/PackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.XboxApp_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle  
/LicensePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.XboxApp_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x64.1.3.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x64.1.3.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx
```

```
DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows  
/PackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.XboxIdentityProvider_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle  
/LicensePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.XboxIdentityProvider_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x64.1.3.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x64.1.3.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx
```

```
DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows  
/PackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.ZuneMusic_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle  
/LicensePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.ZuneMusic_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
```

```
DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows  
/PackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.ZuneVideo_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle  
/LicensePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.ZuneVideo_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
```

```
DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows  
/PackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.SkypeApp_kzf8qxf38zg5c.appxbundle  
/LicensePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.SkypeApp_kzf8qxf38zg5c.xml  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx
```

```

/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x64.1.3.appx
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x64.1.3.appx
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.OneConnect_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.OneConnect_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x64.1.3.appx
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x64.1.3.appx
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.DesktopAppInstaller_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.DesktopAppInstaller_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx

```

ReinstallInboxApps-x86.cmd

```

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.3DBuilder_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.3DBuilder_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.WindowsAlarms_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.WindowsAlarms_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.BingWeather_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.BingWeather_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.WindowsCalculator_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.WindowsCalculator_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.WindowsCamera_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.WindowsCamera_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.WindowsFeedbackHub_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.WindowsFeedbackHub_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.Getstarted_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.Getstarted_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx
/DependecyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx

```

```
DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.WindowsMaps_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.WindowsMaps_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.Messaging_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.Messaging_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.MicrosoftOfficeHub_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.MicrosoftOfficeHub_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.Office.OneNote_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.Office.OneNote_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.WindowsCommunicationsApps_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.WindowsCommunicationsApps_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.People_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.People_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.Windows.Photos_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.Windows.Photos_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.StorePurchaseApp_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.StorePurchaseApp_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.MicrosoftSolitaireCollection_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.MicrosoftSolitaireCollection_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.Advertising.Xaml.x86.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.WindowsSoundRecorder_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.WindowsSoundRecorder_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.MicrosoftStickyNotes_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.MicrosoftStickyNotes_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
```

```
/PackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.WindowsStore_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.WindowsStore_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.XboxApp_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.XboxApp_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.XboxIdentityProvider_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.XboxIdentityProvider_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.ZuneMusic_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.ZuneMusic_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.ZuneVideo_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.ZuneVideo_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.SkypeApp_kzf8qxf38zg5c.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.SkypeApp_kzf8qxf38zg5c.xml
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.OneConnect_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.OneConnect_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Framework.x86.1.3.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.NET.Native.Runtime.x86.1.3.appx

DISM /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows
/PackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.DesktopAppInstaller_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle
/LicensePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.DesktopAppInstaller_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\x86\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
```

Lab 1: Install Windows PE

10/4/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Windows Preinstallation Environment (WinPE) is a small, command-line based operating system. You can use it to capture, update, and optimize Windows images, which you'll do in later sections. In this section, you'll prepare a basic WinPE image on a bootable USB flash drive and try it out.

The Windows PE USB must be at least 512MB and at most 32GB. It should not be a Windows-to-Go key or a key marked as a non-removable drive.

Prepare the WinPE files

1. On your technician PC, start the **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** as an administrator:
 - Click **Start**, type **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and select **Run as administrator**.
2. Copy the base WinPE files into a new folder:

```
copype amd64 C:\winpe_amd64
```

Repeat if you're also deploying x86 devices:

```
copype x86 C:\winpe_x86
```

Troubleshooting: If this doesn't work, make sure you're in the Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment, and not the standard command prompt.

Add to WinPE (Usually not needed)

Note, when you add more packages to WinPE, it slows WinPE performance and boot time. Only add additional packages when necessary.

Common customizations:

- **Add a video or network driver.** (WinPE includes generic video and network drivers, but in some cases, additional drivers are needed to show the screen or connect to the network.). To learn more, see [WinPE: Add drivers](#).
- **Add PowerShell scripting support.** To learn more, see [WinPE: Adding Windows PowerShell support to Windows PE](#). PowerShell scripts are not included in this lab.
- **Set the power scheme to high-performance.** Speeds deployment. Note, our sample deployment scripts already set this scheme automatically. See [WinPE: Mount and Customize: High Performance](#).
- **Optimize WinPE:** Recommended for devices with limited RAM and storage (for example, 1GB RAM/16GB storage). After you add drivers or other customizations to Windows PE, see [WinPE: Optimize and shrink the image](#) to help reduce the boot time.

Create a bootable drive

1. Plug in a USB key that you don't mind formatting. Note the drive letter it uses, for example, D.

2. Install WinPE to an empty USB drive:

```
MakeWinPEMedia /UFD C:\winpe_amd64 D:
```

When prompted, press **Y** to format the drive and install WinPE.

Repeat if necessary, plugging in a separate USB key for use when deploying x86 devices:

```
MakeWinPEMedia /UFD C:\winpe_x86 E:
```

When prompted, press **Y** to format the drive and install WinPE.

3. In File Explorer, right-click the drive and select **Eject**.

Try it out

1. Connect the WinPE USB drive to your reference device.
2. Turn off the device, and then boot to the USB drive. You usually do this by powering on the device and quickly pressing a key (for example, the **Esc** key or the **Volume up** key).

Note On some devices, you might need to go into the boot menus to choose the USB drive. If you're given a choice between booting in UEFI mode or BIOS mode, choose UEFI mode. To learn more, see [Boot to UEFI Mode or Legacy BIOS mode](#). If the device does not boot from the USB drive, see the troubleshooting tips in [WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#).

WinPE starts at a command line, and runs **wpeinit** to set up the system. This can take a few minutes.

Leave this PC booted to Windows PE for now.

[Lab 2: Deploy Windows using a script](#)

Lab 2: Deploy Windows using a script

10/12/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use scripts to take a Windows image and deploy Windows onto new PCs quickly. You can modify these scripts to change the size of the drive partitions, or to completely automate deployment.

Step 1: Mount the image

1. On your technician PC, right-click the .img file for Windows 10 Home from the Windows Home 10 32/64 English OPK DVD, and select **Mount**. This loads the files to a temporary drive letter (example, D:).
2. Extract the Home edition. The Windows Home 10 English OPK image includes both Professional and Home editions. (Index 1=Professional, Index 2=Home). We recommend starting with the Home edition, because you can upgrade your images later from Home to Professional using DISM commands, but you can't downgrade.

```
Dism /Get-ImageInfo /ImageFile:"D:\sources\install.wim"  
  
md E:\images  
  
Dism /Export-Image /SourceImageFile:"D:\sources\install.wim" /SourceIndex:2  
/DestinationImageFile:"E:\Images\install.wim"
```

where D: is the drive from the Windows ISO and E: is the USB storage drive.

Step 2: Copy the deployment scripts to the root of the USB storage drive

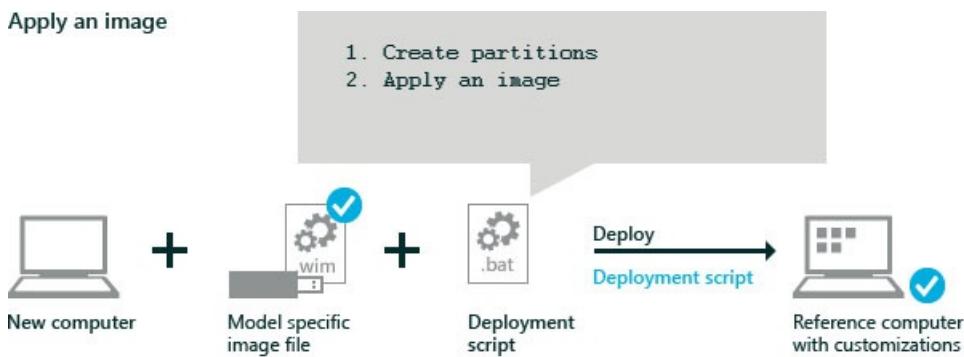
Copy the [sample scripts](#) to the root of the USB storage drive. [Download a copy here](#)

Step 3: Apply the Windows image using a script

Use deployment scripts to apply the image onto a test device. These scripts set up the hard drive partitions and add the files from the Windows image to the partitions.

The sample scripts include steps that detect the firmware type (the newer UEFI-based BIOS, or the legacy BIOS). Some UEFI-based devices include support for the older legacy BIOS. For more info, see [UEFI Firmware](#).

Apply an image



1. Boot the reference device to Windows PE using the Windows PE USB key.
2. Take out the Windows PE USB key and put in the Storage USB key.

- Find the drive letters of the USB key by using diskpart:

```
diskpart
DISKPART> list volume
DISKPART> exit
```

For example, the drives can be lettered like this: C = Windows; D = USB storage drive.

- Format the primary hard drive, create the partitions, and apply the image by using the pre-made [sample scripts](#).

The script **ApplyImage.bat** uses the diskpart scripts: CreatePartitions-UEFI.txt and CreatePartitions-BIOS.txt to create the partitions and define the partition layout. These scripts must be placed in the same folder. You can update these scripts to change the partition sizes.

```
D:
D:\ApplyImage.bat D:\Images\install.wim
```

When prompted by the script:

- Select an image index number. For the Home/Pro edition, the Pro edition is index 1, the Home edition is index 2.
- Press Y to format the drive.
- Press Y to select **Compact OS**, or N to select a non-compact OS:
 - Y**: Applies the image using Compact OS. This is best for devices with solid-state drives and drives with limited free space.
 - N**: Applies the image as a fully-uncompressed image. This is best for high-performance devices or devices that use traditional hard drives with rotational media.
- Press N to indicate the image does not include extended attributes (EA).

The scripts apply the image to the drive, and then finishes.

Step 4: Apply desktop applications

Skip this step until you've completed [Lab 10: Add desktop applications and settings with siloed provisioning packages \(SPPs\)](#). This step adds Windows desktop applications to your images. This must be done before adding the recovery image.

- Apply desktop applications.

```
D:\ADKTools\amd64\WimMountAdkSetupAmd64.exe /Install /q
D:\ADKTools\amd64\DISM.exe /ImagePath:C:\ /Apply-SiloedPackage /PackagePath:E:\SPPs\office16_base.spp
/PackagePath:E:\SPPs\office16_fr-fr.spp /PackagePath:E:\SPPs\office16_de-de.spp
```

Step 5: Set up the system recovery tools

Optional: skip this step until you've completed [Lab 12: Update the recovery image](#).

Include a recovery image for your final images, but it's not required for these early testing steps.

- Apply the Windows Recovery Environment (Windows RE) image. These tools help repair common causes of unbootable operating systems. The image is stored in a separate drive partition. The script **ApplyRecovery.bat** uses the diskpart scripts: HidePartitions-UEFI.txt and HidePartitions-BIOS.txt to set up this partition. These scripts must be placed in the same folder as ApplyRecovery.bat.

```
D:\ApplyRecovery.bat
```

Step 6: Reboot

Disconnect the drives, then reboot (`exit`).

The PC should reboot into Windows. While you're waiting for the preparation phase to complete, go back to your technician PC and continue with the lab.

Troubleshooting: If the device does not boot, turn on the device, and press the key that opens the boot-device selection menu (for example, the **Esc** key). Select the hard drive as your boot device, and continue.

Optional: Test the recovery image

1. Complete the first logon experience like a regular user.
2. Select **Start > Settings > Update & security > Recovery** > under **Reset this PC**, click **Get started** > **Remove everything** > **Just remove my files** > **Next**.
3. After Windows completes the reset, Windows should go back to the original welcome screens as if there were no user account on the device.

[Lab 3: Add device drivers \(.inf-style\)](#)

Lab 3: Add device drivers

10/4/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

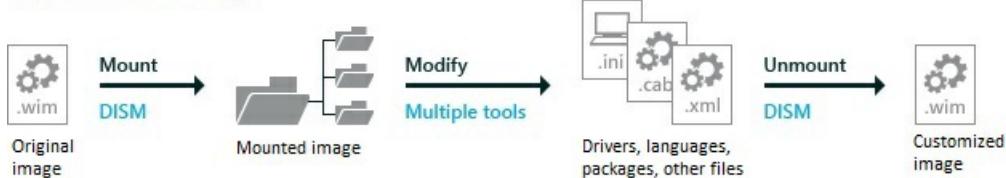
Add device drivers to your images to support your hardware. Some have different installation procedures:

- **.inf-style drivers:** Many drivers include an information file (with an .inf extension) to help install the driver. These can be installed using tools described in this topic.
- **.exe-style drivers:** Drivers without an .inf file often must be installed like typical Windows desktop applications. We'll show you how to add those in [Lab 10: Add desktop applications and settings with siloed provisioning packages \(SPPs\)](#).
- **Boot-critical drivers:** Graphics and storage drivers may sometimes need to be added to the Windows image (as shown in this topic), as well as the Windows PE image (as shown earlier in [Lab 1: Install Windows PE](#)), and in the Windows recovery image. We'll show you how to update the recovery image later in [Lab 12: Update the recovery image](#).

Prepare and mount the image

To make the changes to a Windows image, you'll mount the image contents into a temporary folder, and use tools like DISM to make the changes. Unmount the images to save the changes, and use your deployment scripts to test the images.

Customize an image:



Step 1: Backup your Windows image file (recommended while testing new designs)

1. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
2. Make a backup of the image file:

```
copy "C:\Images\Win10_x64\sources\install.wim" C:\Images\install-backup.wim
```

Step 2: Mount the Windows image file

Create a temporary folder to mount the files, and mount the image into it:

```
md C:\mount\windows  
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:"C:\Images\install.wim" /Index:1 /MountDir:"C:\mount\windows" /Optimize
```

Where /Index:1 refers to the image you want to mount. For the Windows 10 Home/Pro edition, use /Index:2 to select the Home edition.

This step can take several minutes.

Troubleshooting:

- Don't mount images to protected folders, such as your User\Documents folder.
- If DISM processes are interrupted, consider temporarily disconnecting from the public network and disabling virus protection.
- If you've mounted an image to the folder before, try cleaning up the resources associated with the mounted image:

```
Dism /Cleanup-Mountpoints
```

- For some DISM commands, you'll need to make sure that you are using the **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** rather than the standard command prompt.

Add customizations to the image

These are just examples - you don't have to add all of these.

Step 3: Add drivers

1. Add a single driver that includes an .inf file:

```
Dism /Add-Driver /Image:"C:\mount\windows" /Driver:"C:\Drivers\PnP.Media.V1\media1.inf"
```

where "C:\Drivers\PnP.Media.V1\media1.inf" is the base .inf file in your driver package.

Troubleshooting: For many DISM commands, you can get detailed information about the error by adding the /LogPath option. For example:

```
Dism /Add-Driver /Image:"C:\mount\windows" /Driver:"C:\Drivers\PnP.Media.V1\media1.inf"
/LogPath=C:\mount\dism.log
```

2. Install a group of drivers by using the /Recurse option. This adds all drivers with a .inf file in that folder and all its subfolders.

Warning: While /Recurse can be handy, it's easy to bloat your image with it. Some driver packages include multiple .inf driver packages, which often share payload files from the same folder. During installation, each .inf driver package is expanded into a separate folder, each with a copy of the payload files. We've seen cases where a popular driver in a 900MB folder added 10GB to images when added with the /Recurse option.

```
Dism /Add-Driver /Image:"C:\mount\windows" /Driver:c:\drivers /Recurse
```

3. Verify that the drivers are part of the image:

```
Dism /Get-Drivers /Image:"C:\mount\windows"
```

Review the resulting list of packages and verify that the list contains the driver.

Unmount the image

Step 4: Unmount the images

1. Close all applications that might access files from the image.

2. Commit the changes and unmount the Windows image:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:"C:\mount\windows" /Commit
```

Try it out

Step 5: Apply the image to a new PC Use the steps from [Lab 2: Deploy Windows using a script](#) to copy the image to the storage USB drive, apply the image, and boot it up. The short version:

1. Copy the image file to the storage drive.
2. [Boot the reference device to Windows PE using the Windows PE USB key](#).
3. Find the drive letter of the storage drive (`diskpart, list volume, exit`).
4. Apply the image: `D:\ApplyImage.bat D:\Images\install.wim`.
5. Disconnect the drives, then reboot (`exit`).

Step 6: Verify drivers

1. After the PC boots, either create a new user account, or else press Ctrl+Shift+F3 to reboot into the built-in administrator account (This is also known as audit mode).
2. Right-click the **Start** button, and select **Command Prompt (Admin)**.
3. Verify that the drivers appear correctly:

```
Dism /Get-Drivers /Online
```

Review the resulting list of drivers. For example:

```
Deployment Image Servicing and Management tool
Version: 10.0.15063.0

Image Version: 10.0.15063.0

Obtaining list of 3rd party drivers from the driver store...

Driver packages listing:

Published Name : oem0.inf
Original File Name : contoso.graphicsdriver.inf
Inbox : No
Class Name : Graphics
Provider Name : Contoso
Date : 05/19/2017
Version : 10.0.0.1

The operation completed successfully.
```

Learn more

- When creating several devices with the identical hardware configuration, you can speed up installation time and first boot-up time by [maintaining driver configurations when capturing a Windows image](#).

[Lab 4: Add languages](#)

Lab 4: Add languages

10/4/2017 • 5 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Notes

- **Add languages before major updates.** Major updates include hotfixes, general distribution releases, or service packs. If you add a language later, you'll need to [reinstall the updates](#).
- **Add major updates before apps.** These apps include universal Windows apps and desktop applications. If you add an update later, you'll need to reinstall the apps. We'll show you how to add these later in [Lab 6: Add universal Windows apps](#)
- **Add your languages to your recovery image, too:** Many common languages can be added to your recovery image. We'll show you how to add these later in [Lab 12: Update the recovery image](#).

Mount the image

Step 1: Mount the image

Use the steps from [Lab 3: Add device drivers \(.inf-style\)](#) to mount the image. The short version:

1. Open the command line as an administrator (**Start** > type **deployment** > right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** > **Run as administrator**.)
2. Make a backup of the file (`copy "C:\Images\Win10_x64\sources\install.wim" C:\Images\install-backup.wim`)
3. Mount the image (`md C:\mount\windows` , then
`Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:"C:\Images\install.wim" /Index:1 /MountDir:"C:\mount\windows" /Optimize`)

Add languages to the image

Always use language packs and Features-On-Demand (FOD) packages that match the language and platform of the Windows image.

Features on demand (FODs) are Windows feature packages that can be added at any time. When a user needs a new feature, they can request the feature package from Windows Update. OEMs can preinstall these features to enable them on their devices out of the box.

Common features include language resources like handwriting recognition. Some of these features are required to enable full Cortana functionality.

The following table shows the types of language packages and components available for Windows 10:

COMPONENT	SAMPLE FILE NAME	DEPENDENCIES	DESCRIPTION
Language pack	<code>Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Pack_x64_es-es</code>	None	UI text, including basic Cortana capabilities.
Language interface pack	<code>Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Interface-Pack_x64_ca-es</code>	Requires a specific fully-localized or partially-localized language pack. Example: ca-ES requires es-ES.	UI text, including basic Cortana capabilities. To learn more, see Available Language Packs for Windows .

COMPONENT	SAMPLE FILE NAME	DEPENDENCIES	DESCRIPTION
Basic	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Basic-fr-fr-Package	None	Spell checking, text prediction, word breaking, and hyphenation if available for the language. You must add this component before adding any of the following components.
Fonts	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Thai-Package	None	Fonts required for some regions . Example, th-TH requires the Thai font pack.
Optical character recognition	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-OCR-fr-fr-Package	Basic	Recognizes and outputs text in an image.
Handwriting recognition	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Handwriting-fr-fr-Package	Basic	Enables handwriting recognition for devices with pen input.
Text-to-speech	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-TextToSpeech-fr-fr-Package	Basic	Enables text to speech, used by Cortana and Narrator.
Speech recognition	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Speech-fr-fr-Package	Basic, Text-To-Speech recognition	Recognizes voice input, used by Cortana and Windows Speech Recognition.
Retail Demo experience	Microsoft-Windows-RetailDemo-OfflineContent-Content-fr-fr-Package	Basic	Retail Demo Experience (RDX)

Step 2: Add or change languages

1. Add languages and Features On Demand to the Windows image.

Language updates have a specific order they need to be installed in. For example, to enable Cortana, install: **Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Pack**, then **-Basic**, then **-Fonts**, then **-TextToSpeech**, and then **-Speech**, in this order. If you're not sure of the dependencies, it's OK to put them all in the same folder, and then add them all using the same DISM /Add-Package command.

Example for adding French, x64:

```
Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\mount\windows" /PackagePath="C:\Languages\fr-fr x64\Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Pack_x64_fr-fr" /PackagePath="C:\Languages\fr-fr x64\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Basic-fr-fr-Package.cab" /PackagePath="C:\Languages\fr-fr x64\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-OCR-fr-fr-Package.cab" /PackagePath="C:\Languages\fr-fr x64\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Handwriting-fr-fr-Package.cab" /PackagePath="C:\Languages\fr-fr x64\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-TextToSpeech-fr-fr-Package.cab" /PackagePath="C:\Languages\fr-fr x64\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Speech-fr-fr-Package.cab" /LogPath=C:\mount\dism.log
```

Example for adding Japanese, x64. Note, Japanese requires a font pack.

```
Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\mount\windows" /PackagePath="C:\Languages\ja-jp x64\Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Pack_x64_ja-jp" /PackagePath="C:\Languages\ja-jp x64\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Basic-ja-jp-Package.cab" /PackagePath="C:\Languages\ja-jp x64\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-OCR-ja-jp-Package.cab" /PackagePath="C:\Languages\ja-jp x64\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Handwriting-ja-jp-Package.cab" /PackagePath="C:\Languages\ja-jp x64\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-TextToSpeech-ja-jp-Package.cab" /PackagePath="C:\Languages\ja-jp x64\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Speech-ja-jp-Package.cab" /PackagePath="C:\Languages\ja-jp x64\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Jpan-Package.cab" /LogPath=C:\mount\dism.log
```

Not every region has fonts or capability packs for every feature.

2. Verify that the language package is part of the image:

```
Dism /Get-Packages /Image:"C:\mount\windows"
```

where C is the drive letter of the drive that contains the image.

Review the resulting list of packages and verify that the list contains the package. For example:

```
Package Identity : Microsoft-Windows-Client-LanguagePack ... fr-FR~10.0.15063.0
State : Installed
```

3. Verify that the language components are part of the image:

```
Dism /Get-Capabilities /Image:"C:\mount\windows"
```

where C is the drive letter of the drive that contains the image.

Review the resulting list of packages and verify that the list contains the packages. For example:

```
Capability Identity : Language.Basic~~~fr-fr~0.0.1.0
State : Installed
...
Capability Identity : Language.Handwriting~~~fr-fr~0.0.1.0
State : Installed
```

4. Change the default language to match the preferred language for your customers.

```
Dism /Set-AllIntl:fr-fr /Image:"C:\mount\windows"
```

5. Change the default timezone to match the timezone for your customers. See [List of timezones](#).

```
Dism /Set-TimeZone:"W. Europe Standard Time" /Image:"C:\mount\windows"
```

Step 3: Remove the base language (only needed for non-English regions)

- To save space, you can remove English language components when deploying to non-English regions. You can either uninstall them in the reverse order from how you add them, or remove them all at once in the same DISM /remove-package command.

```
dism /Remove-Package /Image:"c:\mount\windows" /PackageName:Microsoft-Windows-Client-LanguagePack-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /PackageName:Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Basic-en-us-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~10.0.15063.0 /PackageName:Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Handwriting-en-us-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~10.0.15063.0 /PackageName:Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-OCR-en-us-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~10.0.15063.0 /PackageName:Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Speech-en-us-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~10.0.15063.0 /PackageName:Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-TextToSpeech-en-us-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~10.0.15063.0 /LogPath=C:\mount\dism.fod2.log
```

where C is the drive letter of the drive.

Troubleshooting If removing the package fails due to pending updates, try the command again.

2. Verify that the language package is no longer part of the image:

```
Dism /Get-Packages /Image:"C:\mount\windows"
```

where C is the drive letter of the drive that contains the image.

3. Verify that the language components are no longer part of the image:

```
Dism /Get-Capabilities /Image:"C:\mount\windows"
```

where C is the drive letter of the drive that contains the image.

Unmount the images

Step 4: Unmount the images

1. Close all applications that might access files from the image.
2. Commit the changes and unmount the Windows image:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:"C:\mount\windows" /Commit
```

Try it out

Step 5: Apply the image to a new PC

Use the steps from [Lab 2: Deploy Windows using a script](#) to copy the image to the storage USB drive, apply the image, and boot it up. The short version:

1. Copy the image file to the storage drive.
2. [Boot the reference device to Windows PE using the Windows PE USB key](#).
3. Find the drive letter of the storage drive (`diskpart, list volume, exit`).
4. Apply the image: `D:\ApplyImage.bat D:\Images\install.wim`.
5. Disconnect the drives, then reboot (`exit`).

Step 6: Verify updates

1. After the PC boots, if you have multiple languages installed, you should receive a list of languages during the out-of-box experience.
2. Either create a new user account, or else press Ctrl+Shift+F3 to reboot into the built-in administrator account (This is also known as audit mode).

3. Right-click the **Start** button, and select **Command Prompt (Admin)**.

4. Verify that the language packages appear correctly:

```
C:\Windows\System32\DISM /Get-Packages /Online
```

Review the resulting list of packages and verify that the list contains the package. For example:

```
Package Identity : Microsoft-Windows-Client-LanguagePack ... fr-FR~10.0.15063.0
State : Installed
```

[Lab 5: Add updates and upgrade the edition](#)

Lab 5: Add updates and upgrade the edition

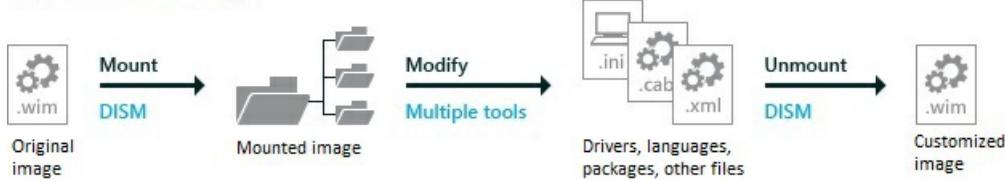
10/12/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

For many customizations, like adding .inf-style drivers, Windows updates or upgrading the edition, you can mount and edit the Windows image. Mounting an image maps the contents of a file to a temporary location where you can edit the files or use DISM to perform common deployment tasks.

Notes

- **Add languages before major updates.** Major updates include hotfixes, general distribution releases, or service packs. If you add a language later, you'll need to re-add the updates.
- **Add major updates before apps.** These apps include universal Windows apps and desktop applications. If you add an update later, you'll need to re-add the apps.
- **For major updates, update the recovery image too:** These may include hotfixes, general distribution releases, service packs, or other pre-release updates. We'll show you how to update these later in [Lab 12: Update the recovery image](#).
- **If a Servicing Stack Update (SSU) is available, you must install it** before applying the most recent General Distribution Release (GDR) or any future GDRs. See [Windows 10 update history](#) to see the most recent GDR.

Customize an image:



Note: To add drivers that include an installation package, see [Lab 10: Add desktop applications and settings with siloed provisioning packages \(SPPs\)](#)

Mount the image

Step 1: Mount the image

Use the steps from [Lab 3: Add device drivers \(.inf-style\)](#) to mount the image. The short version:

1. Open the command line as an administrator (**Start** > type **deployment** > right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** > **Run as administrator**.)
2. Make a backup of the file (`copy "C:\Images\Win10_x64\sources\install.wim" C:\Images\install-backup.wim`)
3. Mount the image (`md C:\mount\windows` , then
`Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:"C:\Images\install.wim" /Index:1 /MountDir:"C:\mount\windows" /Optimize`)

Add customizations to the image

Step 2: Upgrade the edition from Home to Pro

Use this procedure to upgrade the edition. You cannot set a Windows image to a lower edition. You should not use this procedure on an image that has already been changed to a higher edition.

1. Determine what images you can upgrade the image to: Note the edition IDs available.

```
Dism /Get-TargetEditions /Image:C:\mount\windows
```

2. Upgrade the edition.

```
Dism /Set-Edition:Professional /Image:C:\mount\windows
```

Step 3: Add a Windows update package

1. Get a Windows update package. For example, grab the latest cumulative update listed in [Windows 10 update history](#) from the [Microsoft Update catalog](#). Extract the .msu file update to a folder, for example, C:\WindowsUpdates\windows10.0-kb4016871-x64_27dfce9dbd92670711822de2f5f5ce0151551b7d.msu.

To learn more, see <https://myoem.microsoft.com/oem/myoem/en/product/winemb/pages/comm-ms-updt-ctlg-trnstn.aspx>.

2. Add the updates to the image. For packages with dependencies, make sure you install the packages in order. If you're not sure of the dependencies, it's OK to put them all in the same folder, and then add them all using the same DISM /Add-Package command by adding multiple /PackagePath items.

Example: adding a cumulative update:

```
Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\mount\windows" /PackagePath="windows10.0-kb4016871-x64_27dfce9dbd92670711822de2f5f5ce0151551b7d.msu" /LogPath=C:\mount\dism.log
```

Example: adding multiple updates:

```
Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\mount\windows" /PackagePath="C:\WindowsUpdates\windows10.0-kb00001-x64.msu" /PackagePath="C:\WindowsUpdates\windows10.0-kb00002-x64.msu" /PackagePath="C:\WindowsUpdates\windows10.0-kb00003-x64.msu" /LogPath=C:\mount\dism.log
```

3. Lock in the updates, so that they are restored during a recovery.

```
DISM /Cleanup-Image /Image=C:\ /StartComponentCleanup /ResetBase /ScratchDir:C:\Temp
```

Unmount the image

Step 4: Unmount the images

1. Close all applications that might access files from the image.
2. Commit the changes and unmount the Windows image:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:"C:\mount\windows" /Commit
```

Try it out

Step 5: Apply the image to a new PC

Use the steps from [Lab 2: Deploy Windows using a script](#) to copy the image to the storage USB drive, apply the image, and boot it up. The short version:

1. Copy the image file to the storage drive.
2. [Boot the reference device to Windows PE using the Windows PE USB key.](#)
3. Find the drive letter of the storage drive (`diskpart, list volume, exit`).
4. Apply the image: `D:\ApplyImage.bat D:\Images\install.wim`.
5. Disconnect the drives, then reboot (`exit`).

Step 6: Verify updates

1. After the PC boots, either create a new user account, or else press **Ctrl+Shift+F3** to reboot into the built-in administrator account (This is also known as audit mode).
2. Right-click the **Start** button, and select **Command Prompt (Admin)**.
3. Verify that the edition is correct:

```
dism /online /get-currentedition
```

Make sure it's the right edition. For example:

```
Current edition is:  
Current Edition : Professional  
The operation completed successfully.
```

4. Verify that the packages appear correctly:

```
Dism /Get-Packages /Online
```

Review the resulting list of packages and verify that the list contains the package. For example:

```
Package Identity : Package_for_RollupFix~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~~15063.250.1.1  
State : Installed  
Release Type : Security Update  
Install Time : 04/29/2017 6:26 PM  
  
The operation completed successfully.
```

5. Each package will usually be a new KB, and will increase the build revision number of Windows on the device. The revision number of windows a device can be found in the following registry key:

`HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows NT\CurrentVersion\UBR`.

Lab 6: Add universal Windows apps

Lab 6: Add universal Windows apps, Lab 6: Add universal Windows apps, and taskbar pins

10/17/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Add apps to your images to support different customer needs. Some have different installation procedures:

- **Windows universal platform apps (UWP apps):** These can be added or re-installed using tools described in this topic.
- **Windows desktop applications:** We'll show you how to add those in [Lab 10: Add desktop applications and settings with siloed provisioning packages \(SPPs\)](#).

Notes

- **Add languages before major updates.** Major updates include hotfixes, general distribution releases, or service packs. If you add a language later, you'll need to [reinstall the updates](#).
- **Add major updates before apps.** These apps include universal Windows apps and desktop applications. If you add an update later, you'll need to [reinstall the apps](#).
- **There's no longer monthly updates of the inbox apps.** This process changed for Windows 10, version 1607. See the [communication on the MyOEM Portal](#):
 - In the future, Microsoft will release updated versions of the apps only when Microsoft releases full updated versions of Windows.
 - OEMs will need to incorporate the updated apps at the same time they incorporate the broader Windows release.
- **When adding 3rd party apps, follow the Windows Store OEM Program Guide.** You must comply with all Store Program terms and conditions, and related documents.

Mount the image

Step 1: Mount the image

Use the steps from [Lab 3: Add device drivers \(.inf-style\)](#) to mount the image. The short version:

1. Open the command line as an administrator (**Start** > type **deployment** > right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** > **Run as administrator**.)
2. Make a backup of the file (`copy "C:\Images\Win10_x64\sources\install.wim" C:\Images\install-backup.wim`)
3. Mount the image (`md C:\mount\windows`, then
`Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:"C:\Images\install.wim" /Index:1 /MountDir:"C:\mount\windows" /Optimize`)

Add/reinstall apps

Step 2: Add/reinstall inbox apps (required whenever adding languages)

NOTE

In previous versions of Windows, it was required to first remove inbox apps. This is no longer required, and if you do, the commands may fail.

1. Go to <https://microsoftoem.com> and get the App Update OPK. This package includes the Windows 10 inbox apps for the most current Windows release.
2. Extract the package to a folder, for example, E:\apps\amd64.
3. Add/reinstall the inbox apps. The following example shows you how to reinstall the 3D Builder inbox app. Repeat these steps for each of the inbox apps (with the exception of AppConnector) by substituting the appropriate package.

Partial example:

```
Dism /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:c:\mount\windows  
/PackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.3DBuilder_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appxbundle  
/LicensePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.3DBuilder_8wekyb3d8bbwe.xml  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx  
/DependencyPackagePath:e:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x86.14.00.appx
```

For full examples, see [sample scripts](#).

Step 3: Add the HEVC Codec

For Windows 10, version 1709 add the HEVC codec and its dependencies from the App Update OPK. Note that the HEVC codec is not currently available as an .appxbundle package, so you'll have to use the .appx packages.

```
DISM /image:c:\mount\windows /add-ProvisionedAppxPackage  
/packagepath:"E:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.HEVCVideoExtension_8wekyb3d8bbwe.x64.appx"  
/licensepath:"E:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.HEVCVideoExtension_8wekyb3d8bbwe.x64.xml"  
/dependencypackagepath:"E:\apps\amd64\Microsoft.VCLibs.x64.14.00.appx"
```

Step 4: Add/reinstall other apps, example: Microsoft Universal Office Apps

Get the latest version of the app. In our example, we install Microsoft Universal Office Apps, though you can install any UWP app using this procedure.

1. Go to <https://microsoftoem.com> and get the latest version of the Office Mobile supplemental OPK. This guide uses Office Mobile Multilang v1.3 OPK.

Note: Install either Office Single Image (either with or without perpetual or subscription license) or Office Mobile (not both). Office Mobile must be used on devices with screen size of 10.1" and below, and Office Single Image must be used on devices with screen sizes above 10.1". For devices that have a single fixed storage drive with less than 32 GB, OEMs may preinstall Office Mobile, regardless of the screen size. To learn more, see [Office Mobile Communication](#).

2. Extract the package to a folder, for example, e:\Universal_Office.
3. Add/reinstall Microsoft Universal Office Apps:

```

Dism /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:"c:\mount\windows"
/packagepath:"e:\Universal_Office\PC_TH1_store.16.0.6228.1011.Excelim.appxbundle_Windows10_PreinstallKit\1b0569bd5fbd41d6bf0669beb013073c.appxbundle"
/dependencypackagepath:"e:\Universal_Office\PC_TH1_store.16.0.6228.1011.Excelim.appxbundle_Windows10_PreinstallKit\Microsoft.VCLibs.140.00_14.0.22929.0_x86_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appx"
/licensepath:"e:\Universal_Office\PC_TH1_store.16.0.6228.1011.Excelim.appxbundle_Windows10_PreinstallKit\1b0569bd5fbd41d6bf0669beb013073c_License1.xml"

Dism /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:"c:\mount\windows"
/packagepath:"e:\Universal_Office\PC_TH1_store.16.0.6228.1011.Pptim.appxbundle_Windows10_PreinstallKit\7f255062294a415a974b4958961df056.appxbundle"
/dependencypackagepath:"e:\Universal_Office\PC_TH1_store.16.0.6228.1011.Pptim.appxbundle_Windows10_PreinstallKit\Microsoft.VCLibs.140.00_14.0.22929.0_x86_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appx"
/licensepath:"e:\Universal_Office\PC_TH1_store.16.0.6228.1011.Pptim.appxbundle_Windows10_PreinstallKit\7f255062294a415a974b4958961df056_License1.xml"

Dism /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /Image:"c:\mount\windows"
/packagepath:"e:\Universal_Office\PC_TH1_store.16.0.6228.1011.Wordim.appxbundle_Windows10_PreinstallKit\532f710ca9d34f0aae6af4abe0af0592.appxbundle"
/dependencypackagepath:"e:\Universal_Office\PC_TH1_store.16.0.6228.1011.Wordim.appxbundle_Windows10_PreinstallKit\Microsoft.VCLibs.140.00_14.0.22929.0_x86_8wekyb3d8bbwe.appx"
/licensepath:"e:\Universal_Office\PC_TH1_store.16.0.6228.1011.Wordim.appxbundle_Windows10_PreinstallKit\532f710ca9d34f0aae6af4abe0af0592_License1.xml"

```

Where the PackagePath points to the app bundle package.

Step 5: Start Menu

Note the app IDs, you'll need these later in [Lab 13: Add universal Windows apps and taskbar pins](#).

Step 6: Unmount the images

1. Close all applications that might access files from the image.
2. Commit the changes and unmount the Windows image:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:"C:\mount\windows" /Commit
```

where C is the drive letter of the drive that contains the image.

This process may take several minutes.

Try it out

Step 7: Apply the image to a new PC

Use the steps from [Lab 2: Deploy Windows using a script](#) to copy the image to the storage USB drive, apply the Windows image and the recovery image, and boot it up. The short version:

1. Copy the image file to the storage drive.
2. [Boot the reference device to Windows PE using the Windows PE USB key](#).
3. Find the drive letter of the storage drive (`diskpart, list volume, exit`).
4. Apply the image: `D:\ApplyImage.bat D:\Images\install.wim`.
5. Disconnect the drives, then reboot (`exit`).

Step 8: Verify apps

1. After the PC boots, either create a new user account, or else press Ctrl+Shift+F3 to reboot into the built-in administrator account (This is also known as audit mode).
2. Check the Start Menu to make sure the apps are available.

Lab 7: Change settings, enter product keys, and run scripts with an answer file (unattend.xml)

Lab 7: Change settings, enter product keys, and run scripts with an answer file (unattend.xml)

10/12/2017 • 8 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Answer files (or Unattend files) can be used to modify Windows settings in your images during Setup. You can also create settings that trigger scripts in your images that run after the first user creates their account and picks their default language.

To learn about Windows customizations, see the most recent OEM Policy Document (OPD).

As an example, we'll add a setting that shows you how to automatically boot to a maintenance mode called audit mode. This mode allows you to perform additional tests, and capture changes. We'll use audit mode in the next few labs.

Create an answer file



Windows settings overview

While you can set many Windows settings in audit mode, some settings can only be set by using an answer file or Windows Configuration Designer, such as adding manufacturer's support information. A full list of answer file settings (also known as Unattend settings) is in the [Unattended Windows Setup Reference](#).

Enterprises can control other settings by using Group Policy. For more info, see [Group Policy](#).

We'll show you more ways to add settings later in [Lab 10: Add desktop applications and settings with siloed provisioning packages \(SPPs\)](#).

Answer file settings

You can specify which configuration pass to add new settings:

- **1 windowsPE:** These settings are used by the Windows Setup installation program. If you're modifying existing images, you can usually ignore these settings.
- **4 specialize:** Most settings should be added here. These settings are triggered both at the beginning of audit mode and at the beginning of OOBE. If you need to make multiple updates or test settings, generalize the device again and add another batch of settings in the Specialize Configuration pass.
- **6 auditUser:** Runs as soon as you start audit mode.

This is a great time to run a system test script - we'll add [Microsoft-Windows-Deployment\RunAsynchronousCommand](#) as our example. To learn more, see [Add a Custom Script to Windows Setup](#).

- **7 oobeSystem:** Use sparingly. Most of these settings run after the user completes OOBE. The exception is the Microsoft-Windows-Deployment\Reseal\Mode = Audit setting, which we'll use to bypass OOBE and boot the PC into audit mode.

If your script relies on knowing which language the user selects during OOBE, you'd add it to the

oobeSystem pass.

- To learn more, see [Windows Setup Configuration Passes](#).

Note These settings could be lost if the user resets their PC with the built-in recovery tools. To see how to make sure these settings stay on the device during a reset, see [Sample scripts: Keeping Windows settings through a recovery](#).

Create and modify an answer file

Step 1: Create a catalog file

1. Start **Windows System Image Manager**.
2. Click **File > Select Windows Image**.
3. In **Select a Windows Image**, browse to and select the image file (D:\install.wim). Next, select an edition of Windows, for example, Windows 10 Pro, and click **OK**. Click **Yes** to create the catalog file. Windows SIM creates the file based on the image file, and saves it to the same folder as the image file. This process can take several minutes.

The catalog file appears in the **Windows Image** pane. Windows SIM lists the configurable components and packages in that image.

Troubleshooting: If Windows SIM does not create the catalog file, try the following steps:

- To create a catalog file for either 32-bit or ARM-based devices, use a 32-bit device.
- Make sure the Windows base-image file (**\Sources\Install.wim**) is in a folder that has read-write privileges, such as a USB flash drive or on your hard drive.

Step 2: Create an answer file

- Click **File > New Answer File**.

The new answer file appears in the **Answer File** pane.

Note If you open an existing answer file, you might be prompted to associate the answer file with the image. Click **Yes**.

Step 3: Add new answer file settings

1. Add OEM info:

In the **Windows Image** pane, expand **Components**, right-click **amd64_Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup_(version)**, and then select **Add Setting to Pass 4 specialize**.

In the **Answer File** pane, select **Components\4 specialize\amd64_Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup_neutral\OEMInformation**.

In the **OEMInformation Properties** pane, in the **Settings** section, select:

- Manufacturer= `Fabrikam`
- Model= `Notebook Model 1`
- Logo= `C:\Fabrikam\Fabrikam.bmp`

Create a 32-bit color with a maximum size of 120x120 pixels, save it as C:\AnswerFiles\Fabrikam.bmp file on your local PC, or use the sample from the USB-B key:

`C:\USB-B\ConfigSet\OEM\$System32\OEM\Fabrikam.bmp`.

We'll copy the logo into the Windows image in a few steps.

- Set the device to automatically [boot to audit mode](#):

In the **Windows Image** pane, expand **Components**, right-click **amd64_Microsoft-Windows-Deployment_(version)**, and then select **Add Setting to Pass 7 oobeSystem**.

In the **Answer File** pane, select **Components\7_oobeSystem\amd64_Microsoft-Windows-Deployment_neutral\Reseal**.

In the **Reseal Properties** pane, in the **Settings** section, select Mode= [Audit](#).

- Prepare a [script](#) to run after Audit mode begins.

In the **Windows Image** pane, right-click **amd64_Microsoft-Windows-Deployment_(version)** and then click **Add Setting to Pass 6 auditUser**.

In the **Answer File** pane, expand **Components\6_auditUser\amd64_Microsoft-Windows-Deployment_neutral\RunAsynchronous**. Right-click **RunAsynchronousCommand Properties** and click **Insert New AsynchronousCommand**.

In the **AsynchronousCommand Properties** pane, in the **Settings** section, add the following values:

Path = C:\Fabrikam\SampleCommand.cmd

Description = Sample command to run a system diagnostic check.

Order = 1 (Determines the order that commands are run, starting with 1.)

- Add a registry key. In this example, we add keys for the OEM Windows Store program. Use the same process as adding a script, using [CMD /c REG ADD](#).

For Windows 10 Customer Systems, you may use the OEM Store ID alone or in combination with a Store Content Modifier (SCM) to identify an OEM brand for the OEM Store. By adding a SCM, you can target Customer Systems at a more granular level. For example, you may choose to target commercial devices separately from consumer devices by inserting unique SCMs for consumer and commercial brands into those devices.

Add RunAsynchronousCommands for each registry key to add. (Right-click **RunAsynchronousCommand Properties** and click **Insert New AsynchronousCommand**).

```
Path = CMD /c REG ADD HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\OEM /v Value /t REG_SZ ABCD
Description = Adds a OEM registry key
Order = 2
RequiredUserInput = false
```

More common Windows settings:

- Activate Windows by [adding a product key](#): [Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup\ProductKey](#). Please refer to the Kit Guide Win 10 Default Manufacturing Key OEM PDF to find default product keys for OA3.0 and Non-OA3.0 keys:

OPK X21-08790 Win Home 10 1607 32 64 English OPK\Print Content\x20-09791 Kit Guide Win 10 Default Manufacturing Key OEM\X2009791GDE.pdf

- Speed up first boot by [maintaining driver configurations when capturing an image](#):
[Microsoft-Windows-PnpSysprep/DoNotCleanUpNonPresentDevices](#) ,
[Microsoft-Windows-PnpSysprep/PersistAllDeviceInstalls](#) .
- Set the Internet Explorer default search engine: Create a [RunAsynchronous](#) command as shown above to

add a registry key:

```
Path = `CMD /c REG.exe add  
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\InternetSettings\Configuration m /v  
PartnerSearchCode /t REG_DWORD /d "https://search.fabrikam.com/search?p={searchTerms}" /f`  
Description = Changes the Internet Explorer default browser to Fabrikam Search  
Order = 3  
RequiredUserInput = false
```

- Set the Internet Explorer search scopes: See [Scope](#)

Example:

```
<component name="Microsoft-Windows-IE-InternetExplorer" processorArchitecture="x86"  
publicToken="31bf3856ad364e35" language="neutral" versionScope="nonSxS"  
xmlns:wcm="http://schemas.microsoft.com/WMICConfig/2002/State"  
xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">  
<SearchScopes>  
    <Scope wcm:action="add">          <SuggestionsURL>http://api.bing.com/qsm1.aspx?query=  
    {searchTerms}&src={referrer:source?}&maxwidth={ie:maxWidth}&rowheight=  
    {ie:rowHeight}&sectionHeight={ie:sectionHeight}&FORM=IE8SSC&market={Language}  
    </SuggestionsURL>  
    <FaviconURL>http://www.bing.com/favicon.ico</FaviconURL>  
    <ScopeKey>Bing</ScopeKey>  
    <ScopeDefault>true</ScopeDefault>  
    <ScopeDisplayName>Bing</ScopeDisplayName>  
    <ScopeUrl>http://www.bing.com/search?q=  
    {searchTerms}&form=PRNAM1&src=PRNAM1&pc=NMT</ScopeUrl>  
    </Scope>  
</SearchScopes>  
<Home_Page>http://oem17WIN10.msn.com/?pc=NMT</Home_Page>
```

- Save drive space by reducing or turning off the hiberfile. The hiberfile helps speed up the time after the system powers up or recovers from low-power states. Create a [RunAsynchronous](#) command as shown below. To learn more, see [Compact OS, single-instancing, and image optimization: RAM, Pagefile.sys, and Hiberfil.sys](#)

```
Path = `powercfg /h /type reduced`  
Description = Saves drive space by reducing hiberfile by 30%.  
Order = 4  
RequiredUserInput = false
```

or

```
Path = `powercfg /h /off`  
Description = Turns off the hiberfile.  
Order = 4  
RequiredUserInput = false
```

Step 4: Save the answer file

- Save the answer file, for example: **C:\AnswerFiles\BootToAudit-x64.xml**.

Note Windows SIM will not allow you to save the answer file into the mounted image folders.

Step 5: Create a script

- Copy the following sample script into Notepad, and save it as **C:\AnswerFiles\SampleCommand.cmd**.

```
@rem Scan the integrity of system files  
@rem (Required after removing the base English language from an image)  
sfc.exe /scannow  
  
@rem Check to see if your drivers are digitally signed, and send output to a log file.  
md C:\Fabrikam  
C:\Windows\System32\dxdiag /t C:\Fabrikam\DXDiag-TestLogFiles.txt
```

Add the answer file and script to the image

Mount the image

Step 6: Mount the images

Use the steps from [Lab 3: Add device drivers \(.inf-style\)](#) to mount the image. The short version:

1. Open the command line as an administrator (**Start** > type **deployment** > right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** > **Run as administrator**.)
2. Make a backup of the file (`copy "C:\Images\Win10_x64\sources\install.wim" C:\Images\install-backup.wim`)
3. Mount the image (`md C:\mount\windows` , then
`Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:"C:\Images\install.wim" /Index:1 /MountDir:"C:\mount\windows" /Optimize`)

Add the answer file

Step 7: Add the answer file

1. Copy the answer file into the image into the **\Windows\Panther** folder, and name it unattend.xml. Create the folder if it doesn't exist. If there's an existing answer file, replace it or use Windows System Image Manager to edit/combine settings if necessary.

```
Mkdir c:\mount\windows\Windows\Panther  
Copy C:\AnswerFiles\BootToAudit-x64.xml C:\mount\windows\Windows\Panther\unattend.xml  
Mkdir c:\mount\windows\Fabrikam  
Copy C:\AnswerFiles\Fabrikam.bmp C:\mount\windows\Fabrikam\Fabrikam.bmp  
Copy C:\AnswerFiles\SampleCommand.cmd C:\mount\windows\Fabrikam\SampleCommand.cmd
```

Unmount the images

Step 8: Unmount the images

1. Close all applications that might access files from the image.
2. Commit the changes and unmount the Windows image:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:"C:\mount\windows" /Commit
```

where C is the drive letter of the drive that contains the image.

This process may take several minutes.

Try it out

Step 9: Apply the image to a new PC Use the steps from [Lab 2: Deploy Windows using a script](#) to copy the image to the storage USB drive, apply the Windows image and the recovery image, and boot it up. The short version:

1. Copy the image file to the storage drive.
2. [Boot the reference device to Windows PE using the Windows PE USB key](#).
3. Find the drive letter of the storage drive (`diskpart, list volume, exit`).
4. Apply the image: `D:\ApplyImage.bat D:\Images\install.wim`.
5. Disconnect the drives, then reboot (`exit`).

Step 10: Verify settings and scripts

If your audit mode setting worked, the PC should boot to audit mode automatically. When audit mode starts, your script should start automatically.

1. In File Explorer, check to see if the file: **C:\Fabrikam\DXDiag-TestLogFile.txt** exists. If so, the SampleCommand.cmd sample script ran correctly.

Leave the PC booted into audit mode to continue to the following lab:

[Lab 8: Add branding and license agreements \(OOBE.xml\)](#)

Lab 8: Add branding and license agreements

10/3/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can add your own branding and license terms to Windows.

For multi-region or multi-language images, you can create region specific license terms. These display to the user during the first login experience, based on the region or language that they choose.

Note: If the license terms are included, the OEM must include a version of the license terms in each language that is preinstalled onto the PC. You can read more about creating license terms at [OEM license terms](#).

Use the examples in the [USB-B.zip](#) key.

Mount the image

Use the steps from [Lab 3: Add device drivers \(.inf-style\)](#) to mount the image. The short version:

1. Open the command line as an administrator (**Start** > type **deployment** > right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** > **Run as administrator**.)
2. Make a backup of the file (`copy "C:\Images\Win10_x64\sources\install.wim" C:\Images\install-backup.wim`)
3. Mount the image (`md C:\mount\windows` , then
`Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:"C:\Images\install.wim" /Index:1 /MountDir:"C:\mount\windows" /Optimize`)

Create license files

1. Create folders under a working folder, for example:

```
C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\oobe\info\default\
```

2. Add subfolders for each language using the **Language Decimal Identifier** corresponding the language. Do this step for each language pack added to the Windows image.

For example, if en-us and de-de language packs are added to the Windows image, add a folder named "1033" (representing en-us language) under C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\oobe\info\default. Then add a folder named "1031" (representing de-de language) under the same directory.

```
md c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\oobe\info\default\1033
md c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\oobe\info\default\1031
```

3. Create license terms documents using the .rtf file format for each language specified. Move each license term document to the corresponding language folder. For example:

```
C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\oobe\info\default\1033\agreement.rtf (English version)
C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\oobe\info\default\1031\agreement.rtf (German version)
```

Agreement.rtf EULA samples are in C:\USB-B\resources\

4. Open a text editor and create .html versions of your license terms. Save the terms to the same folders as the .rtf versions. You can use the [EULA example](#) from [OEM license terms](#) to create sample files. The names of the EULA files should be identical, except for the extension.

```
C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\oobe\info\default\1033\agreement.html (English version)
C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\oobe\info\default\1031\agreement.html (German version)
```

5. Create an **oobe.xml** file to specify the agreement.rtf file path. Windows will automatically look for the associated agreement.html file.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<FirstExperience>
  <oobe>
    <oem>
      <eulafilename>agreement.rtf</eulafilename>
    </oem>
  </oobe>
</FirstExperience>
```

6. Copy your **oobe.xml** to each language folder.

```
Copy e:\configset\oobe.xml c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\oobe\info\default\1033
Copy e:\configset\oobe.xml c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\oobe\info\default\1031
```

7. For Chinese Hong Kong, add the following OOBE.xml file. (In Windows 10 version 1607, the Chinese Hong Kong language pack was merged into the Chinese Taiwan language pack, so for this region, these steps are now required).

File: c:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\OOBE\Info\OOBE.xml

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" ?>
<FirstExperience>
  <oobe>
    <defaults>
      <location>104</location>
    </defaults>
  </oobe>
</FirstExperience>
```

8. Verify that each language folder contains an **oobe.xml** file, an **agreement.rtf** file, and an **agreement.html** file in that corresponding language.

Create image info file

1. Create an **csup.txt** file to specify when the Windows image was created. This file must include the date that the image was created, in the form of 'MM-DD-YYYY', with no other characters, on a single line at the top of the file.

```
10-05-2017
```

2. Copy the image info file into the image.

```
xcopy C:\temp\CSUP.txt c:\mount\windows\windows\csup.txt
```

Add a custom logo and wallpaper

Learn how to apply the logo using the [User Experience Windows Engineering Guide \(UX WEG\)](#) and for logo resolution requirements.

1. Copy the logo files into the image into the \Windows\System32\OEM\ folder. Create the folder if it doesn't

exist.

```
MkDir c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\OEM  
Copy C:\OEM c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\OEM
```

Unmount the images

1. Close all applications that might access files from the image.
2. Commit the changes and unmount the Windows image:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:"C:\mount\windows" /Commit
```

where C is the drive letter of the drive that contains the image.

This process may take several minutes.

Try it out

Apply the image to a new PC Use the steps from [Lab 2: Deploy Windows using a script](#) to copy the image to the storage USB drive, apply the Windows image and the recovery image, and boot it up. The short version:

1. Copy the image file to the storage drive.
2. [Boot the reference device to Windows PE using the Windows PE USB key](#).
3. Find the drive letter of the storage drive (`diskpart, list volume, exit`).
4. Apply the image: `D:\ApplyImage.bat D:\Images\install.wim`.
5. Disconnect the drives, then reboot (`exit`).

Verify license terms

Log into the system as if you were a new user. Select your language or region of required. The correct license terms should show up during this first login experience.

[Lab 9: Make changes from Windows \(audit mode\)](#)

Lab 9: Make changes from Windows (audit mode)

10/12/2017 • 8 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use audit mode to customize Windows using the familiar Windows environment. In audit mode, you can add Windows desktop applications, change system settings, add data, and run scripts.

To make sure your audit mode changes are included in the recovery image, you'll need to capture these changes into a provisioning package using ScanState. This image gets used by the system recovery tools to restore your changes if things go wrong. You can optionally save drive space by running the applications directly from the compressed recovery files; this is known as single-instancing.

If you want to capture the changes in an image and apply it to other devices, you'll need to use the Sysprep tool to generalize the image.

Step 1: Prepare a copy of the Deployment and Imaging Tools

- From the technician PC, copy the Deployment and Imaging Tools from the Windows ADK to external storage (for example, a storage USB key with drive letter D:).

```
CopyDandI.cmd amd64 D:\ADKTools\amd64
```

IMPORTANT

Don't overwrite the existing DISM files on the WinPE image.

Step 2: Get into audit mode

- Boot up the reference device, if it's not already booted.
- If the device boots to the **Languages** or the **Get going fast** screen, press **Ctrl+Shift+F3** to enter Audit mode.
- In audit mode, the device reboots to the Desktop, and the System Preparation Tool (Sysprep) appears. Ignore Sysprep for now.

Step 3: Customize the PC in audit mode.

- Install a Windows desktop application. Change system settings. Add data. Run scripts.

Example: Add Microsoft Office 2016

- On your technician PC, prepare a USB key with the Office Deployment Tool:
 - Mount the ISO for the deployment tool from "X21-20432 Office v16.2 Deployment Tool for OEM OPK\Software - DVD\X21-20474 SW DVD5 Office 2016 v16.2.1 Deployment Tool for OEM\X21-20474.img"
 - Copy files from the mounted drive to the USB-B key, for example, (where E:\ is driver letter for USB-B) E:\OfficeV16.2.1
- On your reference PC, open the Office Deployment Tool, for example: E:\Officev16.2.1\officedeploymenttool.exe

3. Provide folder path to extract files E:\Officev16.2.1. Setup.exe and configuration.xml are extracted to E:\Officev16.2.1
- Obtain: Office v16.2.1 in desired language, this sample uses English X21-20393 Office 2016 v16.2.1 English OPK
4. Mount "X21-20393 Office v16.2.1 English OPK\Software - DVD\X21-20435 SW DVD5 Office Pro 2016 32 64-bit English C2ROPK Pro HS HB OEM v16.2.1\X21-20435.img"
5. Copy the Office folder to USB-B (where E:\ is drive letter for USB-B) E:\OfficeV16.2.1

[Optional] if you applied a language pack to your Windows image, you may want to add the language pack for Office 2016 as well for better end user experience. The below samples will show with the Language pack applied

6. Mount "x21-20487 Office v16.2.1 German OPK"
7. Copy the office folder to E:\OfficeV16.2.1
8. Skip replacing duplicate files in the copy so that only the German languages are copied.

Microsoft Office 2016: Install the Home and Student edition

The current OEM recommendation is to install Office Home and Student 2016, rather than Office Home Premium. To do this, you'll need to edit the configuration.xml file used to install Office v16.2.1. To learn more, see [Office 16.2.1 communication](#).

1. Use Notepad to create a configuration file with the edition info: E:\Officev16.2\ConfigureO365Home.xml

Make sure the ProductID is HomeStudentRetail, as follows:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<Configuration>
  <Add OfficeClientEdition="32" SourcePath="\\Server\Share\">
    <Product ID="HomeStudentRetail">
      <Language ID="en-us"/>
    </Product>
  </Add>
  <Display Level="None"/>
</Configuration>
```

2. On the reference computer, install Office 2016 using the configuration file:

```
D:\Officev16.2\Setup.exe /configure D:\Officev16.2\ConfigureO365Home.xml
```

Microsoft Office 2016: Pin tiles to the Start Menu layout

You must pin the Office tiles to the Start menu. Not doing so Windows will remove the Office files during OOBE boot phase. To learn more, see [Lab 11: Add Start tiles and taskbar pins](#).

Microsoft Office 2016: Configure setup experience for the user

After you install Office on the device, you also need to configure the setup experience for the user. This is the experience the user sees when they open an Office app for the first time on the device. This also is intended to ensure that Office is properly licensed and activated.

SETUP MODE	DESCRIPTION
------------	-------------

SETUP MODE	DESCRIPTION
OEM	In this mode, a customer can choose to try, buy, or activate Office with an existing account, PIN, or product key. This mode doesn't support Activation for Office (AFO) or AFO late binding. Therefore, if you choose this mode, you need to provide the customer with an Activation Card (formerly called a product key card or a Microsoft Product Identifier (MPI) card).
OEMTA	This mode supports the try, buy, or activate experience of the OEM mode as well as supporting AFO and AFO late binding. This mode supports Office activation through the device's Windows product key, which means the customer wouldn't need to enter a 5x5 product key code.

OEM Mode – Provide user with activation card

1. In command prompt go to drive letter for USB-B\Officev16.2
2. Type and run oemsetup.cmd Mode=OEM Referral=####

OEMTA Mode – Activation is done through the device's Windows product key

Type and run oemsetup.cmd Mode=OEMTA Referral=####

NOTE: "Referral" switch is optional, If OEM partner is participating in office Incentive program For OEM referral ID information please refer to [Office Incentive Program Operations Guide 2017](#).

Step 4: Capture your changes for the recovery tools

1. Connect to your external storage (for example, a storage USB key with the drive letter D:)
2. Capture the changes into a provisioning package. This creates a compressed copy of the desktop applications and drivers that you added in audit mode that can be used by the recovery tools.

```
D:\ADKTools\amd64\scanstate.exe /apps /ppkg C:\Recovery\Customizations\usmt.ppkg /o /c /v:13
/1:C:\Recovery\ScanState.log
```

Note Optional: Delete the ScanState logfile: `del C:\Recovery\Scanstate.log`.

Step 5: Prepare for image capture

This step is required when you're capturing images to apply to other PCs.

1. Prepare the device for the end user: Right-click **Start**, select **Command Prompt (Admin)**, and from the command prompt, run the following command:

```
C:\Windows\System32\Sysprep\sysprep /oobe /generalize /shutdown
```

The Sysprep tool reseals the device. This process can take several minutes. After the process completes, the device shuts down automatically.

Warning: If you're using [siloed provisioning packages \(SPPs\)](#), do not set the image to boot to audit mode again (sysprep /audit). There's a known bug in Windows 10, version 1607 that makes the image unbootable if you do this. Instead, set it to boot to OOBE, and if you need to boot to audit again, [add an answer file with the Mode:Audit setting](#). This will be fixed in future versions.

2. Boot the device into Windows PE. To do this, you may need to press the key that opens the boot-device selection menu for the device (for example, the **Esc** key or **Volume Up** key).

Select the option in the firmware menus to boot to the USB flash drive.

Warning If Windows begins booting instead of Windows PE, you must generalize the device again before capturing the image: After Windows boots, press **Ctrl+Shift+F3** to enter audit mode. The device will reboot. Generalize the device again: `C:\Windows\System32\Sysprep\sysprep /oobe /generalize /shutdown`.

3. Optional: speed up the optimization and image capture processes by setting the power scheme to High performance:

```
powercfg /s 8c5e7fda-e8bf-4a96-9a85-a6e23a8c635c
```

4. Find the drive letters by using DiskPart:

```
diskpart
DISKPART> list volume
DISKPART> exit
```

For example, the drives can be lettered like this: *C* = Windows; *D* is the lab USB key, and *E* is an external hard drive.

Note that some partitions might not receive a drive letter.

Step 6: Optimize the image to take up less drive space (optional)

1. Save space by single-instancing the image. This removes the original copy of the desktop applications, and adds pointer files so that these applications can run from the recovery provisioning package you created earlier.

```
DISM /Apply-CustomDataImage /CustomDataImage:C:\Recovery\Customizations\USMT.ppkg /ImagePath:C:\ /SingleInstance
```

where *C* is the drive letter of the Windows partition.

Warning Do not put quotes with the `/ImagePath:C:\` option.

2. Cleanup the Windows files:

```
md c:\temp

DISM /Cleanup-Image /Image=C:\ /StartComponentCleanup /ResetBase /ScratchDir:C:\Temp
```

where *C* is the drive letter of the Windows partition. Beginning with Windows 10, version 1607, you can specify the `/Defer` parameter with `/Resetbase` to defer any long-running cleanup operations to the next automatic maintenance. But we highly recommend you **only** use `/Defer` as an option in the factory where DISM `/Resetbase` requires more than 30 minutes to complete.

Step 7: Capture the image

- Capture the image of the Windows partition.

```
dism /Capture-Image /CaptureDir:C:\ /ImageFile:"C:\WindowsWithFinalChanges.wim" /Name:"Final changes"
```

where C is the drive letter of the Windows partition and *Final changes* is the image name.

The DISM tool captures the Windows partition into a new image file. This process can take several minutes.

Troubleshooting: If you receive an: "A parameter is incorrect" error message when you try to capture or copy the file to the USB key, the file might be too large for the destination file system. Copy the file to a different drive that is formatted as NTFS.

1. Copy the image to a network share. Example:

```
net use N: \\server\share copy C:\WindowsWithFinalChanges.wim N:\Images\WindowsWithFinalChanges.wim
```

Try it out

Step 6: Apply the image to a new PC Use the steps from [Lab 2: Deploy Windows using a script](#) to copy the image to the storage USB drive, apply the Windows image and the recovery image, and boot it up. The short version:

1. Copy the image file to the storage drive.
2. [Boot the reference device to Windows PE using the Windows PE USB key](#).
3. Find the drive letter of the storage drive (`diskpart, list volume, exit`).
4. Apply the image: `D:\ApplyImage.bat D:\Images\install.wim`.
5. Disconnect the drives, then reboot (`exit`).

Step 7: Verify customizations

1. After the PC boots, either create a new user account, or else press Ctrl+Shift+F3 to reboot into the built-in administrator account (This is also known as audit mode).
2. See that the changes you made in audit mode are there.

[Lab 10: Add desktop apps with siloed provisioning packages](#)

Lab 10: Add desktop applications and settings with siloed provisioning packages (SPPs)

10/12/2017 • 5 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Install Windows desktop applications and system settings by capturing them into siloed provisioning packages (SPPs).

SPPs are a new type of provisioning package that is available starting with Windows 10, version 1607. In previous versions of Windows 10, to capture these applications, you'd capture them all at once into a single provisioning package.

With SPPs, you can capture individual Windows desktop applications, .exe-style drivers, and Windows settings. You can then apply these to your PCs after you've applied the Windows image. This provides more flexibility for the manufacturing process and helps reduce the time required to build PCs that run Windows.

SPPs also support capturing add-on packs for apps that include optional components, like application language packs.

After you apply the SPPs, they'll be automatically included in the recovery tools.

When you apply SPPs to a Compact OS system, the applications in that SPP are single-instanced automatically to save space.

See [Siloed provisioning packages](#) to learn more about capturing different types of settings, drivers, and applications.

Notes

- To add these apps to the taskbar and start menu, you'll need to update the LayoutModification.xml and TaskbarLayoutModification.xml files, we'll show you this in [Lab 11: Add Start tiles and taskbar pins](#). New versions of these files can simply be copied into the image or to the destination device directly.

For Microsoft Office, this is required: you must [add Start tiles and taskbar pins](#). if you don't add it to the Start menu, Windows will remove the Office files during the OOB boot phase.

Best practices while capturing applications: use clean installations

We recommend that each time you capture a new Windows desktop application, you start with a clean, freshly-installed Windows image, in audit mode.

You can do this by:

- Using the techniques you learned in the labs to quickly apply images to a device
- Using virtual machines (VMs). With Hyper-V, you can create a clean, freshly-installed Windows image, and then create a checkpoint. You can use checkpoints to quickly bounce back to the clean, freshly-reinstalled state.

Step 1: Prepare a copy of the Deployment and Imaging Tools

You'll need the most recent version of the Deployment and Imaging Tools from the ADK. This includes the ScanState tool and the latest version of DISM.

Important Don't overwrite the existing DISM files on the WinPE image.

1. Start the Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment as an administrator.
2. From the technician PC, copy the Deployment and Imaging Tools from the Windows ADK to the storage USB key.

```
CopyDandI.cmd amd64 E:\ADKTools\amd64
```

Step 2: Prepare a device for image capture

Get into audit mode

1. Boot up the reference device (or VM), if it's not already booted.
2. If the device boots to the **Languages** or the **Get going fast** screen, press **Ctrl+Shift+F3** to enter Audit mode.
3. In audit mode, the device reboots to the Desktop, and the System Preparation Tool (Sysprep) appears. Ignore Sysprep for now.
4. For VMs, create a checkpoint for this clean, freshly-installed Windows image.

Step 3: Capture a setting

You can add registry keys, for example, an OEM key, or a Windows Store identifier. To learn more, see the [Windows Store Program 2016 Guide](#) and the [Apps and Store Windows Engineering Guide \(WEG\)](#).

1. Add a setting. For example, add a registry key:
 - a. Start 'regedit'.
 - b. Navigate to 'HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\OEM\Fabrikam'.
 - c. Click **Edit > New > String Value**.
 - d. Type `FabrikamID`.
 - e. Double-click OEMID, and in **Value**, type "Fabrikam-1".
2. Capture the changes into the siloed provisioning package, and save it on the hard drive:

```
E:\ADKTools\amd64\ScanState.exe /config:E:\ADKTools\amd64\Config_SettingsOnly.xml /o /v:13 /ppkg e:\SPPs\Fabrikam-ID.spp /l:C:\ScanState.log
```

where *E* is the drive letter of the USB drive with ScanState.

Recommended: Delete these logs to save disk space: `del C:\ScanState.log` `del c:\miglog.xml`.

ScanState creates two log files, ScanState.log and miglog.xml. The `/l` option can be used to specify where the logs are saved. The above command writes the logs to c:.

To see more about ScanState command-line options, see [Siloed Provisioning Packages](#).

Step 4: Install and capture a Windows desktop application (Microsoft Office)

1. Install a Windows desktop application. For example, to install Office 2016.
 - a. On your technician PC, mount ISO for the deployment tool from " X21-05453 Office v16.2 Deployment

Tool for OEM OPK\Software - DVD\x21-05495 SW DVD5 Office 2016 v16.2 Deployment Tool for OEM\x21-05495.img"

b. Copy files from mounted drive to USB-B (where E:\ is driver letter for USB-B) E:\OfficeV16.2

c. Double click e:\Officev16.2\officedeploymenttool.exe

2. Start a command prompt.

3. Capture the changes into the siloed provisioning package, and save it on the hard drive:

```
E:\ADKTools\amd64\ScanState.exe /apps:-sysdrive /o /v:13 /config:E:\ADKTools\amd64\Config_AppsOnly.xml  
/ppkg e:\SPPs\office16_base.spp /l:C:\ScanState.log
```

where E is the drive letter of the USB drive with ScanState.

Recommended: Delete the ScanState log files: `del C:\Scanstate.log` `del C:\miglog.xml`.

4. To capture an add-on package, repeat the process. Example: add Office 2016 language packs. Get these from the Office OPK Update image from the Office OPK Connect site.

a. Install the fr-fr language pack.

b. Capture the combined files as an add-on pack.

```
E:\ADKTools\amd64\ScanState.exe /apps:-sysdrive /o /v:13  
/config:E:\ADKTools\amd64\Config_AppsOnly.xml /diff:e:\SPPs\office16_base.spp /ppkg  
e:\SPPs\office16_fr-fr.spp /l:C:\ScanState.log
```

The Sysprep tool reseals the device. This process can take several minutes. After the process completes, the device shuts down automatically.

c. To capture more add-on packs:

- Reinstall Windows and the Office base app, and capture the next add-on pack. or
- For VMs, revert back to the checkpoint, apply the base package, then capture the next add-on pack.

Recommended: Delete the ScanState log files: `del C:\ScanState.log` `del C:\miglog.xml`

5. To capture more apps:

- Reinstall Windows, then capture the next app or
- For VMs, revert back to the checkpoint, then capture the next app.

Step 5: Try it out

Apply the image

Use the steps from [Lab 2: Deploy Windows using a script](#) to copy the image to the storage USB drive, apply the image, and boot it up.

The short version:

1. Boot the reference PC to Windows PE.
2. Find the drive letter of the storage drive (`diskpart, list volume, exit`).
3. Apply the image: `D:\ApplyImage.bat D:\Images\install-updated.wim`.

Apply the SPPs

1. Copy the ADK tools to a non-removable file location, such as the primary hard drive, which is assigned to W after the ApplyImage command. Copying the file to a non-removable location avoids an error associated with installing DISM from removable drives.

```
xcopy D:\ADKTools\ W:\ADKTools\ /s
```

2. Install the ADK Tools by using either **WimMountAdkSetupAmd64.exe /Install /q** or **WimMountAdkSetupX86.exe /Install /q**.

```
W:\ADKTools\amd64\WimMountAdkSetupAmd64.exe /Install /q
```

3. Apply the SPPs. This example applies the Office base pack, plus two language packs: fr-fr and de-de.

```
W:\ADKTools\amd64\DISM.exe /Apply-SiloedPackage /ImagePath:W:\ /PackagePath:"e:\SPPs\fabrikam-id.spp"
/PackagePath:"D:\SPPs\office16_base.spp" /PackagePath:"D:\SPPs\office16_fr-fr.spp"
/PackagePath:"D:\SPPs\office16_de-de.spp"
```

To learn more, see [Siloed provisioning packages](#). For syntax, see [DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#).

Apply the recovery image

1. Apply the recovery image after applying the SPPs: `D:\ApplyRecovery.bat`
2. Disconnect the drives, then reboot (`exit`).

Verify apps

1. After the PC boots, either create a new user account, or else press Ctrl+Shift+F3 to reboot into the built-in administrator account (This is also known as audit mode).
2. See if your Windows desktop applications and add-ons are installed.
3. Use Regedit to check to see if the registry key is installed.

Lab 11: Add Start tiles and taskbar pins

Lab 11: Add Start tiles and taskbar pins

10/4/2017 • 5 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Add Start tiles and taskbar pins.

Notes:

- **Start menu**: If you don't create a LayoutModification.xml file and you continue to use the Start Unattend settings, the OS will use the Unattend answer file and take the first 12 SquareTiles or DesktoporSquareTiles settings specified in the Unattend file. The system then places these tiles automatically within the newly-created groups at the end of Start—the first six tiles are placed in the first OEM group and the second set of six tiles are placed in the second OEM group. If OEMName is specified in the Unattend file, the value for this element is used to name the OEM groups that will be created.
- **The Start layout and taskbar pins can be lost** if the user resets their PC with the built-in recovery tools. To make sure these settings stay on the device, see [Lab 12: Update the recovery image](#).
- **When adding 3rd party apps, follow the Windows Store OEM Program Guide**. You must comply with all Store Program terms and conditions, and related documents.

Step 1: Mount the image

Use the steps from [Lab 3: Add device drivers \(.inf-style\)](#) to mount the image. The short version:

1. Open the command line as an administrator (**Start** > type **deployment** > right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** > **Run as administrator**.)
2. Make a backup of the file (`copy "C:\Images\Win10_x64\sources\install.wim" C:\Images\install-backup.wim`)
3. Mount the image (`md C:\mount\windows` , then
`Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:"C:\Images\install.wim" /Index:1 /MountDir:"C:\mount\windows" /Optimize`)

Step 2: Create the Start layout

1. If you don't already have one, create a file called **LayoutModification.xml**. You can start by editing a sample from USB-B or [sample LayoutModification.xml](#).
2. To use different layouts for different regions, use the optional **Region** attribute in the **RequiredStartGroups** element. The Region value must be equal to two-letter country/region codes. Use a pipe "|" delimiter if you need to specify multiple countries/regions.

```
<RequiredStartGroups  
Region="DE|ES|FR|GB|IT|US">
```

3. Specify the tiles you want to add within an **AppendGroup**. OEMs can add a maximum of two **AppendGroup**. The following example shows two groups called "Fabrikam Group 1" and "Fabrikam Group 2", which contain tiles that will be applied if the device country/region matches what's specified in **Region** (in this case, the regions are Germany, Spain, France, United Kingdom, Italy, and United States). Each group contains three tiles and the various elements you need to use depending on the tile that you want to pin to Start.

```

<RequiredStartGroups
    Region="DE|ES|FR|GB|IT|US">

    <!-- OEMs can add a maximum of two AppendGroup. Each AppendGroup specifies a group of
        tiles that will be appended to Start. -->
    <AppendGroup
        Name="Fabrikam Group 1">
        <!-- Add the News Universal Windows app to Start -->
        <start:Tile
            AppUserModelID="Microsoft.Office.Word_8wekyb3d8bbwe!microsoft.word"
            Size="2x2"
            Row="0"
            Column="0"/>
        <!-- Add a Windows desktop application with a known AppUserModelID -->
        <start:DesktopApplicationTile
            DesktopApplicationID="Microsoft.Windows.Explorer"
            Size="2x2"
            Row="0"
            Column="2"/>
        <!-- Add the Excel Preview Universal Windows app -->
        <start:Tile
            AppUserModelID="Microsoft.Office.Excel_8wekyb3d8bbwe!microsoft.excel"
            Size="2x2"
            Row="0"
            Column="4"/>
    </AppendGroup>

    <AppendGroup
        Name="Fabrikam Group 2">
        <!-- Add a Windows 8.1 app -->
        <start:Tile
            AppUserModelID="Microsoft.Reader_8wekyb3d8bbwe!Microsoft.Reader"
            Size="2x2"
            Row="0"
            Column="0"/>
        <!-- Web link tile with associated .url file is in legacy Start Menu folder. This requires
            a shortcut or .url file to be added in one of several legacy Start Menu directories, such
            as
                "%APPDATA%\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs\">
                or the all users profile "%ALLUSERSPROFILE%\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs\" -->
        <start:DesktopApplicationTile
            DesktopApplicationID="http://www.bing.com/"
            Size="2x2"
            Row="0"
            Column="2"/>
        <!-- Add a Windows desktop application link in a legacy Start Menu folder. You must add the
            .lnk file
                in the specified location when the device first boots. -->
        <start:DesktopApplicationTile
            DesktopApplicationLinkPath="%ALLUSERSPROFILE%\Microsoft\Windows\Start
            Menu\Programs\Accessories\Paint.lnk"
            Size="2x2"
            Row="0"
            Column="4"/>
    </AppendGroup>
</RequiredStartGroups>

```

The following example shows one group called "Fabrikam Group 1", which will be applied if the device country/region doesn't match any of the ones specified in the previous RequiredStartGroups.

```

<!-- Non-region specific group -->
<RequiredStartGroups>
  <AppendGroup
    Name="Fabrikam Group 1">
    <!-- Add the Word Preview Universal Windows app -->
    <start:Tile
      AppUserModelID="Microsoft.Office.Word_8wekyb3d8bbwe!microsoft.word"
      Size="2x2"
      Row="0"
      Column="0"/>
    <!-- Add the Excel Preview Universal Windows app -->
    <start:Tile
      AppUserModelID="Microsoft.Office.Excel_8wekyb3d8bbwe!microsoft.excel"
      Size="2x2"
      Row="0"
      Column="2"/>
  </AppendGroup>
</RequiredStartGroups>

```

4. Desktop apps: use the start:DesktopApplicationTile tag.

If you know the application user model ID for the app, use that to identify it.

Otherwise, if you pinned tiles that require .url or .lnk files, add the files to the following legacy Start Menu directories:

- %APPDATA%\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs\
- %ALLUSERSPROFILE%\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs\

Example:

```

Copy E:\StartLayout\Bing.url "C:\mount\Windows\ProgramData\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs"
Copy E:\StartLayout\Paint.lnk "C:\mount\Windows\ProgramData\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs"
Copy E:\StartLayout\Bing.url "C:\mount\Windows\Users\All Users\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs"
Copy E:\StartLayout\Paint.lnk "C:\mount\Windows\Users\All Users\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs"

```

5. Optionally, you can add up to 3 apps to the frequently used section of the system area. The following example shows how to add the calculator app to the frequently used system area.

```

<!-- Add the calculator app to the frequently used system area -->
<TopMFUApps>
  <Tile AppUserModelID="Microsoft.WindowsCalculator_8wekyb3d8bbwe!App" />
</TopMFUApps>

```

6. Save the LayoutModification.xml file.

Step 3: Microsoft Office: Add choice to AppendOfficeSuite

You must pin the Office tiles to the Start menu. Not doing so Windows will remove the Office files during OOBE boot phase. Note: You must be using at least version 10.0.10586.0 of Windows 10. The following steps don't work with earlier versions of Windows 10.

Note: The Choice attribute is new. This allows different versions of Office to be pinned to the Start menu at the same time. For now, Desktop2016 is the only valid value. Other values will be available in the future.

In **layoutmodification.xml**:

1. Add to the tile:

```
<LayoutModificationTemplate xmlns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/Start/2014/LayoutModification"
    xmlns:defaultlayout="http://schemas.microsoft.com/Start/2014/FullDefaultLayout"
    xmlns:start="http://schemas.microsoft.com/Start/2014/StartLayout">
    <AppendOfficeSuite/>
    <AppendOfficeSuiteChoice Choice="Desktop2016" />
</LayoutModificationTemplate>
```

2. Save the LayoutModification.xml file.

Step 4: Add the layout to the image

1. Add your LayoutModification.xml file to the Windows image. You'll need to put the file in the following specific location before first boot. If the file already exists in the image, replace it with your new file.

```
C:\Mount\Windows\Users\Default\AppData\Local\Microsoft\Windows\Shell\
```

2. To add a taskbar layout in Windows 10, version 1607, you can either add a similar [taskbar layout modification file \(see additional steps here\)](#), or use [traditional unattend settings](#).

Add or change languages and Cortana features on demand (Optional)

Step 5: Unmount the images

1. Close all applications that might access files from the image.
2. Commit the changes and unmount the Windows image:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:"C:\mount\windows" /Commit
```

where C is the drive letter of the drive that contains the image.

This process may take several minutes.

Step 6: Try it out

Apply the image to a new PC

Use the steps from [Lab 2: Deploy Windows using a script](#) to copy the image to the storage USB drive, apply the Windows image and the recovery image, and boot it up. The short version:

1. Copy the image file to the storage drive.
2. [Boot the reference device to Windows PE using the Windows PE USB key](#).
3. Find the drive letter of the storage drive (`diskpart, list volume, exit`).
4. Apply the image: `D:\ApplyImage.bat D:\Images\install.wim`.
5. Disconnect the drives, then reboot (`exit`).

Verify apps

1. After the PC boots, either create a new user account, or else press Ctrl+Shift+F3 to reboot into the built-in administrator account (This is also known as audit mode).
2. Check the Start Menu to make sure the apps are available.
3. Check the Start Menu and taskbar and make sure the apps you selected are pinned correctly.

Lab 12: Update the recovery image

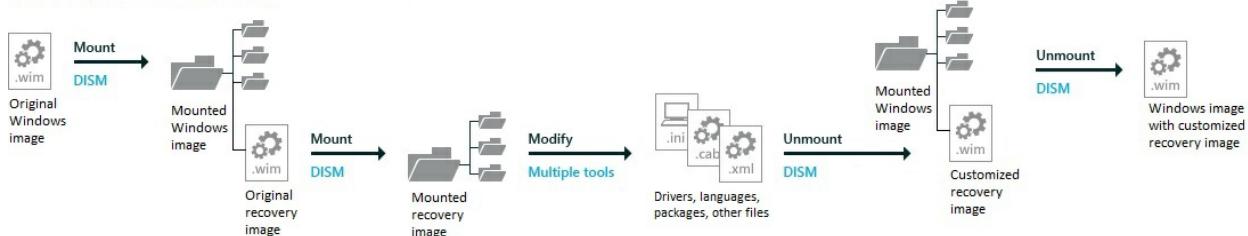
Lab 12: Update the recovery image

10/12/2017 • 7 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

If the system can't boot to the Windows image, it will fail over to the Windows Recovery Environment (WinRE). WinRE can repair common causes of unbootable operating systems. WinRE is based on Windows Preinstallation Environment (WinPE), and to make it work for your customers, you can add drivers, languages, Windows PE Optional Components, and other troubleshooting and diagnostic tools.

The WinRE image is included inside the Windows 10 and Windows Server 2016 images, and is eventually copied to the Windows RE tools partition on the destination PC or device. To modify it, you'll mount the Windows image, then mount the WinRE image inside it. Make your changes, unmount the WinRE image, then unmount the Windows image.

Customize the recovery image



You should update your recovery image to ensure a consistent recovery experience whenever you:

- Add boot-critical .inf-style drivers, such as the graphics and storage drivers for [Lab 1: Install Windows PE](#).
- Add major updates to Windows, like general distribution releases ([Lab 5: Add updates and upgrade the edition](#)).
- Add new languages, like you did in [Lab 4: Add languages](#). (This isn't always possible, as not all languages have Windows RE equivalents.)

Notes

- This lab assumes you'd rather keep winre.wim inside of install.wim to keep your languages and drivers in sync. If you'd like to save a bit of time on the factory floor, and if you're OK managing these images separately, you may prefer to remove winre.wim from the image and apply it separately.
- If a Servicing Stack Update (SSU) is available, you'll have to install it before applying the most recent General Distribution Release or any future GDRs. See [Windows 10 update history](#) for information about the most recent GDR.

Step 1: Mount the Windows image

Use the steps from [Lab 3: Add device drivers \(.inf-style\)](#) to mount the Windows image. The short version:

1. Open the command line as an administrator (**Start** > type **deployment** > right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** > **Run as administrator**.)
2. Make a backup of the file (`copy "C:\Images\Win10_x64\sources\install.wim" "C:\Images\install-backup.wim"`)
3. Mount the image (`md C:\mount\windows` , then
`Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:"C:\Images\install.wim" /Index:1 /MountDir:"C:\mount\windows" /Optimize`)

Step 2: Mount the recovery image

- Mount the Windows RE image file.

```
md C:\mount\winre
```

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:"C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\Recovery\winre.wim" /Index:1  
/MountDir:"C:\mount\winre"
```

Where C is the drive letter of the drive that contains the image.

This step can take several minutes.

Troubleshooting: If winre.wim cannot be seen under the specified directory, use the following command to set the file visible:

```
attrib -h -a -s C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\Recovery\winre.wim
```

Step 3: Add boot-critical drivers to WinRE

1. Add any .inf-style drivers needed for your hardware.

```
Dism /Add-Driver /Image:"C:\mount\winre" /Driver:"C:\Drivers\PnP.Media.V1\media1.inf"  
/LogPath=C:\mount\dism.log
```

Example: Add a collection of drivers from a folder and its subfolders, use the /Recurse option:

```
Dism /Add-Driver /Image:"C:\mount\winre" /Driver:"C:\Drivers\SampleDrivers" /Recurse  
/LogPath=C:\mount\dism.log
```

Step 4: Add updates to the image

1. Get a Windows update package. Use the same update package that you used for Windows in [Lab 5: Add updates and upgrade the edition](#). For example, grab the latest cumulative update listed in [Windows 10 update history](#) from the [Microsoft Update catalog](#). Extract the .msu file update to a folder, for example, C:\WindowsUpdates\windows10.0-kb3194798-x64_8bc6befc7b3c51f94ae70b8d1d9a249bb4b5e108.msu.
2. Add the updates to the image. For packages with dependencies, make sure you install the packages in order. If you're not sure of the dependencies, it's OK to put them all in the same folder, and then add them all using the same DISM /Add-Package command by adding multiple /PackagePath items.

Example: adding a cumulative update:

```
Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\mount\winre" /PackagePath="C:\WindowsUpdates\windows10.0-kb3194798-x64_8bc6befc7b3c51f94ae70b8d1d9a249bb4b5e108.msu" /LogPath=C:\mount\dism.log
```

Example: adding multiple updates:

```
Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\mount\winre" /PackagePath="C:\WindowsUpdates\windows10.0-kb00001-x64.msu"  
/PackagePath="C:\WindowsUpdates\windows10.0-kb00002-x64.msu"  
/PackagePath="C:\WindowsUpdates\windows10.0-kb00003-x64.msu" /LogPath=C:\mount\dism.log
```

Step 5: Add languages to the image

If the PC runs into trouble, your users may not be able to read/understand the recovery screens unless you add the appropriate language resources into WinRE.

1. Add languages. These languages are included with the Windows ADK. You must use a matching version of the Windows ADK to service the Windows RE image.

Note Windows RE now requires the WinPE-HTA package, this is new for Windows 10.

Note The WinPE-WiFi-Package is not language-specific and does not need to be added when adding other languages. This is new for Windows 10.

```
Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\lp.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-Rejuv_fr-fr.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-EnhancedStorage_fr-fr.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-Scripting_fr-fr.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-SecureStartup_fr-fr.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-SRT_fr-fr.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-WDS-Tools_fr-fr.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-WMI_fr-fr.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-StorageWMI_fr-fr.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-HTA_fr-fr.cab"
```

2. Set the default recovery language to match the preferred language for your customers.

```
Dism /Set-AllIntl:fr-fr /Image:C:\mount\winre
```

3. Optional: Remove languages from Windows RE (only needed for non-English regions)

When you remove languages from Windows, remove them from Windows RE to save space.

You can either use the /PackagePath switch (which requires a matching version of Windows and the Windows ADK) or the /PackageName switch (which requires identifying the package including the version

number).

Example:

```
Dism /Remove-Package /Image:"C:\mount\winre" /PackageName:WinPE-Rejuv-
Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /LogPath=C:\mount\dism.fod2.log
Dism /Remove-Package /Image:"C:\mount\winre" /PackageName:WinPE-HTA-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-
US~10.0.15063.0 /LogPath=C:\mount\dism.fod2.log
Dism /Remove-Package /Image:"C:\mount\winre" /PackageName:WinPE-StorageWMI-
Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /LogPath=C:\mount\dism.fod2.log
Dism /Remove-Package /Image:"C:\mount\winre" /PackageName:WinPE-WMI-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-
US~10.0.15063.0 /LogPath=C:\mount\dism.fod2.log
Dism /Remove-Package /Image:"C:\mount\winre" /PackageName:WinPE-WDS-Tools-
Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /LogPath=C:\mount\dism.fod2.log
Dism /Remove-Package /Image:"C:\mount\winre" /PackageName:WinPE-SRT-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-
US~10.0.15063.0 /LogPath=C:\mount\dism.fod2.log
Dism /Remove-Package /Image:"C:\mount\winre" /PackageName:WinPE-SecureStartup-
Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /LogPath=C:\mount\dism.fod2.log
Dism /Remove-Package /Image:"C:\mount\winre" /PackageName:WinPE-Scripting-
Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /LogPath=C:\mount\dism.fod2.log
Dism /Remove-Package /Image:"C:\mount\winre" /PackageName:WinPE-EnhancedStorage-
Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /LogPath=C:\mount\dism.fod2.log
Dism /Remove-Package /Image:"C:\mount\winre" /PackageName:Microsoft-Windows-WinPE-LanguagePack-
Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.15063.0 /LogPath=C:\mount\dism.fod2.log
```

4. Verify that the language packages are part of the image:

```
Dism /Get-Packages /Image:"C:\mount\winre"
```

where C is the drive letter of the drive that contains the image.

5. Review the resulting list of packages and verify that the list contains the package. For example:

```
Package Identity : Microsoft-Windows-WinPE-Rejuv_fr-fr ... fr-FR~10.0.15063.0
State : Installed
```

Keeping Windows settings through a recovery

Windows doesn't automatically save settings created through unattend.xml setup files, nor Windows Start Menu customizations created with LayoutModification.xml during a full-system reset, nor first-login info from oobe.xml.

To make sure your customizations are saved:

1. Save copies of unattend.xml, LayoutModification.xml, plus your Windows\System32\Info\OOBE folder, in C:\Recovery\OEM\.
2. Add scripts that restore these settings: ResetConfig.xml and EnableCustomizations.cmd, in C:\Recovery\OEM\. Get these from [Sample scripts: Keeping Windows settings through a recovery](#).

Step 6: Optimizing the image, part 1 (optional)

After adding a language or Windows update package, you can reduce the size of the final Windows RE package by checking for duplicate files and marking the older versions as superseded.

1. Optimize the image:

```
Dism /Cleanup-Image /Image:c:\mount\winre /StartComponentCleanup /ResetBase
```

Later, you'll export the image to remove the superseded files.

2. Increase scratch space size to speed up recovery:

```
Dism /Set-ScratchSpace:512 /Image:c:\mount\winre
```

Step 7: Unmount the WinRE image

- Unmount and save the image:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\mount\winre /Commit
```

Step 8: Optimizing the image, part 2 (optional)

If you've optimized the image, you'll need to export the image in order to see a change in the file size. During the export process, DISM removes files that were superseded.

1. Export the Windows RE image into a new Windows image file.

```
Dism /Export-Image /SourceImageFile:c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\recovery\winre.wim  
/SourceIndex:1 /DestinationImageFile:c:\mount\winre-optimized.wim
```

2. Replace the old Windows RE image with the newly-optimized image.

```
del c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\recovery\winre.wim  
copy c:\mount\winre-optimized.wim c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\recovery\winre.wim
```

3. Check the new size of the Windows RE image.

```
Dir "C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\Recovery\winre.wim"
```

Adjust the size of the deployment scripts so they includes enough room for winre.wim plus some free space.

Note If WinRE.wim is more than 470,000,000 bytes, this step is required.

a. Convert the file size into megabytes (size in bytes ÷ 1048576 = size in MB).

b. Calculate free space needed for the WinRE partition based on the [Disk partition rules](#). WinRE.wim file size:

- Up to 450MB: You'll need 50MB free space. (450MB used + 50 free = 500MB)
- 450MB-680MB: You'll need 320MB free space.
- Over 680MB: You'll need 1024MB free space.

c. Modify the deployment scripts: [CreatePartitions-UEFI.txt](#) and [CreatePartitions-BIOS.txt](#) with the new values. Example:

```
rem == 3. Windows RE tools partition =====  
create partition primary size=465
```

4. Commit the changes and unmount the Windows image:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:"C:\mount\windows" /Commit
```

where C is the drive letter of the drive that contains the image.

This process may take several minutes.

Try it out

Step 9: Apply the image to a new PC Use the steps from [Lab 2: Deploy Windows using a script](#) to copy the image to the storage USB drive, apply the Windows image and the recovery image, and boot it up.

Note, you'll now include the steps to add the recovery image:

The short version:

1. Copy the image file to the storage drive.
2. [Boot the reference device to Windows PE using the Windows PE USB key](#).
3. Find the drive letter of the storage drive (`diskpart, list volume, exit`).
4. Apply the image: `D:\ApplyImage.bat D:\Images\install.wim`.
5. Apply the recovery image: `D:\ApplyRecovery.bat`

Note: To test a different recovery image, add it the same way, specifying the recovery image:

```
D:\ApplyRecovery.bat D:\Images\winre_custom.wim
```

6. Disconnect the drives, then reboot (`exit`).

Step 10: Verify drivers and packages

1. After the PC boots, either create a new user account, or else press Ctrl+Shift+F3 to reboot into the built-in administrator account (This is also known as audit mode).
2. Click the **Start** button, click the Power icon, then hold down the **Shift key** and select **Restart**.

If the boot-critical drivers have been successfully applied, you should see the Windows recovery environment.

If languages have been successfully added, you'll either see the new language (for a single language image) or be prompted for your language (for a multi-language image).

[Lab 13: Shrink your image size](#)

Lab 13: Shrink your image size

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Optimize your Windows image to save space on the PC, to speed up transfers to new devices, and to make it easier to store.

To do this, we'll use DISM tools that check for duplicate files. We'll mark the files for removal. These files won't be removed until we export the image.

Optimize an image



Mount the images

Step 1: Mount the Windows image

Use the steps from [Lab 3: Add device drivers \(.inf-style\)](#) to mount the Windows image. The short version:

1. Open the command line as an administrator (**Start** > type **deployment** > right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** > **Run as administrator**.)
2. Make a backup of the file (`copy "C:\Images\Win10_x64\sources\install.wim" C:\Images\install-backup.wim`)
3. Mount the image (`md C:\mount\windows` , then
`Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:"C:\Images\install.wim" /Index:1 /MountDir:"C:\mount\windows" /Optimize`)

Step 2: Optimizing the image, part 1 (optional)

After adding a language or Windows update package, you can reduce the size of the image size by checking for duplicate files and marking the older versions as superseded.

1. Optimize the image:

```
Dism /Image:c:\mount\windows /Cleanup-Image /StartComponentCleanup /ResetBase
```

2. Later, you'll export the image to remove the superseded files.

Step 3: Unmount the Windows image

- Unmount and save the image:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\mount\windows /Commit
```

Step 4: Optimizing the image, part 2 (optional)

If you've optimized the image, you'll need to export the image in order to see a change in the file size. During the export process, DISM removes files that were superseded.

1. Export the Windows image into a new image file.

```
Dism /Export-Image /SourceImageFile:"C:\Images\Win10_x64\sources\install.wim" /SourceIndex:1  
/DestinationImageFile:"C:\Images\Win10_x64\sources\install-optimized.wim"
```

Next steps

- When you're managing multiple Windows images, you can save even more space by combining them together. Learn how: [Append a Volume Image to an Existing Image Using DISM](#).

Manufacturing Windows Engineering Guide (WEG)

7/12/2017 • 24 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

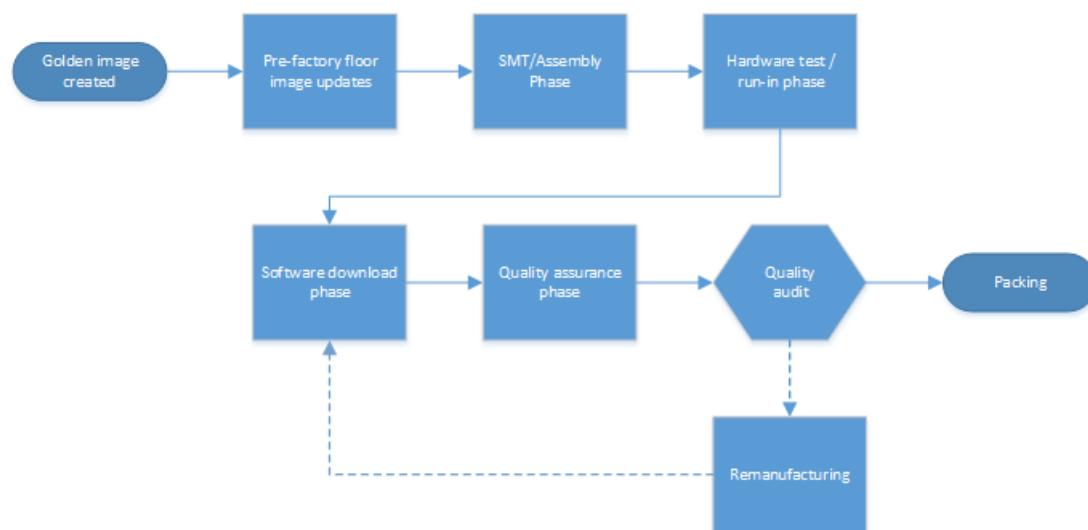
The Manufacturing WEG provides original equipment manufacturer (OEM) and ODM partners with a roadmap of the ideal manufacturing process for Windows 10 devices, with guidance for potential pitfalls and opportunities to streamline the process.

Manufacturing overview

Many decisions that affect manufacturability are made early in the engineering effort of a new device, so careful consideration should be made to ensure the lowest overhead production process is selected. Every extra minute spent on the manufacturing floor equates to extra cost for the final product. The Manufacturing WEG is intended to provide OEM and ODM partners with a roadmap of the ideal manufacturing process that brings together software and hardware on the factory floor. This WEG also provides opportunities to streamline the process and guidance for how to plan for and avoid common problems. Our manufacturing and deployment recommendations are meant to help you:

- Optimize the image disk footprint on desktops
- Enable Windows deployment on small capacity disks on desktops
- Shorten image deployment time
- Simplify the imaging process
- Simplify OEM Activation (OA3) injection/reporting process on desktops. Mobile devices do not require activation.
- Test and calibrate the device on the assembly line
- Support other key scenarios to build great devices

For this document, a generic version of the desktop manufacturing process would look like this:



The manufacturing process for mobile devices would look like this:



The Manufacturing WEG is not intended to communicate the [Windows Minimum Hardware Requirements](#) or OEM Policy Document (OPD). The WHCR and OPD documents take precedence over any information in the Manufacturing WEG. You must comply with WHCR and OPD.

Overall considerations

Manufacturing path

There are two general manufacturing paths you can take depending on your business—Build to Stock (BTS) and Build to Order (BTO). As you review the guidelines in this document, consider the manufacturing path for the device in order to prioritize investments in each phase and save as much time as possible for your customized process.

For a walkthrough using desktop devices, see our [manufacturing end-to-end lab](#).

For mobile devices, you must use the BTS manufacturing path.

Build to order (BTO)

BTO devices start with a basic image and then receive the majority of their customizations during the manufacturing process.

The primary advantage is the flexible software bill of materials, which allows for late-breaking changes. The drawbacks include a more complex image creation and manufacturing process, extra time on the factory floor, and growing image sizes.

Build to stock (BTS)

BTS devices have images that are customized almost entirely in the lab. BTS processes are simpler to plan and produce, are faster on the factory floor, have higher quality control, and have a controlled disk size. BTS devices still need to allow for late breaking changes on the factory floor. For desktop editions of Windows 10, many of these changes can be done using offline servicing.

Push-button reset

The push-button reset tools no longer require a separate full-system recovery image on a separate partition. This can save several gigabytes of space. When users need to refresh or reset the device, they'll be able to keep their installed Windows updates, rather than downloading and installing them all again. They'll also keep all of the customizations that you've provided.

The new partition layout resembles the traditional partition layouts from Windows 8.1, except the Windows RE partition is now moved to the end of the drive, and there is no longer a need for a separate full-system recovery partition.

Disk 0 default partition layout (UEFI-based PCs)



For more information, see [Push-button reset](#)

Push-button reset is not supported on mobile devices. Instead, you should do a factory reset.

Compact OS

You can now run the entire operating system, including your preloaded Windows desktop applications, using compressed files, by using the Compact OS and single-instancing features. These features replace the WIM Boot feature from Windows 8.1 Update 1, and can help maintain a smaller disk footprint over time.

Although the Compact OS is supported for all devices, we recommend using Compact OS only on devices with solid-state drives, because of the slower performance of rotational drives.

For more information, see [Compact OS, single-instancing, and image optimization](#).

Compact OS is not supported on mobile devices.

Provisioning packages

To save time while building images, you can now capture and apply desktop Windows applications during image deployment by using provisioning packages. This saves the time-consuming steps of generalizing and recapturing the entire image, and allows you to quickly deploy BTO devices.

Language packs

Instead of adding full language packs, save space by adding the resources you need for the desktop device by choosing individual packages for display strings, handwriting, speech, and text-to-speech. Later, if your user needs additional language capabilities, Windows can download the packages as needed.

Language and regional SKU decisions can greatly impact the disk footprint and complexity of the image creation system. Care should be taken to limit the amount and types of language packs included with each image.

Mobile devices use a worldwide image so all languages are included in every image.

Driver co-installers

Drivers are generally a very small portion of the disk footprint, however, the co-installers or desktop device apps that accompany the drivers can add hundreds of megabytes. Carefully consider if the device(s) require the accompanying Classic Windows application to be fully functional.

Hardware components

Hardware decisions can also affect the manufacturing process. Besides the challenges to the physical assembly of the hardware, the inclusion or exclusion of certain devices can make the factory process more difficult. For example, if touch screens and sensors are included they must be calibrated on each device. If you exclude devices such as ethernet ports, you can't use PXE boot, which can mean extra costs.

Antimalware apps

Recommendation: Configure your devices to avoid full scan of the disk during first sign-in. Please work with your Antimalware vendor to determine best practices for limiting this scan.

We have seen several instances where antimalware tools are doing a full disk scan during the user's first sign-in. The scanning competes with critical tasks occurring during the first sign-in process, resulting in very slow first sign-in, a degraded Start experience and slow system performance.

For Windows Defender, this can be configured by adding unique identifiers to your images. To learn more, see [Configure a Trusted Image Identifier for Windows Defender](#).

Windows Defender

Pre-factory floor image updates

Golden images are generally handed off to the ODM from the OEM before production begins. These images almost always require some updating. When you update the golden image, you won't have to perform the updates on each device. This leads to less time on the factory floor for each device and increases quality.

Updates to the image can include drivers, Windows Updates, software, OEM customizations, and app packages (.appx).

Considerations

If you update images using offline servicing, you'll need to periodically maintain the images. The time saved on the factory floor should make it worthwhile.

Goals

Reduce time spent per unit on the factory floor and decrease the amounts of errata on production devices.

Implementation

On a BTO system, some optional drivers and some optional apps may need to be applied at the software download station to accommodate the device. These modifications should be minimized in order to decrease the likelihood of error and to improve manufacturing time.

Image creation

The overall golden desktop image creation process in OEM image labs is similar to the existing process.



To avoid compatibility issues, use the new version of Windows PE when working on the reference device in the image creation lab.

Region-specific policy for Skype removal on desktop

Windows-provided apps are included in all Windows images by default. These apps cannot be modified except where explicitly stated in the Windows OEM Policy Document (OPD).

If you are required to remove the inbox Skype app due to policy requirements, you can use the DISM.exe tool or the DISM Windows PowerShell cmdlets to remove the app. For more information about this policy requirement, see the most recent OEM Policy Document.

To remove Skype online in audit mode from Windows PowerShell:

```
get-provisionedappxpackage -online | where-object {$_ .displayname -eq "Microsoft.SkypeApp"} | Remove-ProvisionedAppxPackage -online
```

To remove Skype offline with Windows PowerShell:

```
get-provisionedappxpackage -path c:\mount | where-object {$_ .displayname -eq "Microsoft.SkypeApp"} | Remove-ProvisionedAppxPackage
```

To remove Skype offline using Dism.exe:

1. Get the full package name:

```
Dism.exe /image:<Windows_volume> /get-provisionedappxpackages
```

2. Remove the package, using the from the Microsoft.SkypeApp listing:

```
Dism.exe /image:<Windows_volume> /remove-provisionedappxpackage /PackageName:<PackageName>
```

We recommend using the Windows 10 version of Windows Preinstallation Environment (WinPE).

Note: If you use the Windows 8 version of WinPE, then after any servicing operation, you must update the timestamps of the files; otherwise you may not be able to activate the image using the OEM Activation 3.0 licensing method. In addition, the in-box licensing diagnostic tool, licensingdiag.exe, will report that the image has been tampered with.

To resolve this problem, after any servicing operation run from the Windows 8 version of WinPE, the OEM must run:

```
dir %windir%\System32\catroot\{F750E6C3-38EE-11D1-85E5-00C04FC295EE}
```

Language pack updates

After installing a new language, you must reinstall any APPX bundles and inbox Windows apps to support the new languages. Otherwise, the APPX bundles won't include support for the new languages.

Apps in Audit mode

After installing a new language, you must reinstall any APPX bundles and inbox Windows apps to support the new languages. Otherwise, the APPX bundles won't include support for the new languages.

To disable the app readiness service offline:

1. Create a .reg file where HKLM\Software\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\AppReadiness
DisableInAuditMode is set to a value of 1.
2. Mount the Windows image. For example:

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:"C:\Images\ModelSpecificImage.wim" /Name:"Fabrikam"  
/MountDir:"C:\mount\windows" /Optimize
```

3. Load the registry hive. For example:

```
reg load hklm\LoadedHive C:\mount\Windows\System32\config\SYSTEM
```

4. Add the registry value. For example, using a .reg file from your USB stick:

```
regedit /s e:\registry\regFile.reg
```

5. Unload the hive.

```
reg unload hklm\LoadedHive
```

6. Unmount the Windows image, committing changes. For example:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:"C:\mount\windows" /Commit
```

It is recommended that you disable the service offline before entering audit mode. But you can also disable it online in audit mode. You must generalize the image after you disable the service. To disable the app readiness service online:

1. In audit mode, start `regedit`.
2. Navigate to `HKLM\Software\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\AppReadiness DisableInAuditMode`.
3. Set the value of the key to 1.

Run Sysprep generalize before continuing.

SMT / Assembly phase

Devices need to be calibrated for the best customer experience and to pass the Windows Hardware Lab Kit tests.

Implementation

- Calibrations
 - Sensors
 - Touchpad
 - Touchscreen
 - RF
 - Camera

Set the time to UTC and implement ACPI changes detailed below.

Hardware test and run-in phase

We recommend testing on a full version of Windows. This lets you test final hardware/software interactions as the user will see them.

Considerations

Using the full version of Windows that you will be shipping with allows testing and validation in the exact same environment that the end user will be seeing. Windows PE is not a supported operating system for test – it is designed to be used only as a deployment vehicle.

Goals

Deliver the highest quality product possible, while keeping manufacturing times at the absolute minimum.

Implementation

The installation of the test OS can be handled a variety of ways. Since the test OS has less churn than the shipping OS the image can be laid down on the disk at any time, which can reduce the amount of time spent applying the image on the factory floor. Options include having the image pre-flashed from the IHV, or using disk duplication on site.

Important: Disable TPM (Trusted Platform Module) auto-provisioning when booting into a test OS to ensure both good performance and to make sure the user's OS has ownership of the module. To do this in Windows, you need to set the following registry keys:

```
[HKLM\System\CurrentControlSet\Services\Tpm\WMI\NoAutoProvision] (REG_DWORD) to 1  
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\TPM\WMI]  
"NoAutoProvision"=dword:00000001
```

Software download phase

Considerations

Care should be taken to minimize the amount of time spent on this phase. While some long durations are unavoidable (such as BTO customizations), we encourage our partners to calculate the costs vs. benefits of streamlining as much as possible.

Goals

Create an efficient and resilient imaging system with a minimum amount of overhead. Move as many steps as possible to the Pre-Factory Floor Image Updates.

Implementation

1. Boot the machine to WinPE. To deploy Compact OS, you'll need to use the Windows 10 version of WinPE. You can boot WinPE in a variety of ways:

- Using PXE
- Using a USB stick
- Preinstalling WinPE on the hard disk

2. Create the hard drive partition structure using diskpart.

```
diskpart /s F:\CreatePartitions-UEFI.txt
```

For more information, see [UEFI/GPT-based hard drive partitions](#)

3. Apply the images that you created using DISM to the Windows partitions.

```
ApplyImage F:\Images\ThinImage.wim
```

For more information, see [Capture and Apply Windows, System, and Recovery Partitions](#).

Optional: Use the same image as a recovery image on a separate USB flash drive. This USB disk no longer needs to be sourced from an authorized replicator. For more info, see [Create media to run push-button reset features](#).

4. Boot the device into audit mode.

- Make any final image modifications. This is where many BTO modifications are made.
- If APPX apps were installed before additional language packs were added, reinstall the apps so they can support the new languages. This includes inbox applications.
- Microsoft strongly advises that OEMs run DISM with the /StartComponentCleanup /resetbase flags to gain additional free disk space.
- Ensure .NET Framework apps are compiled by running the following commands

```
C:\Windows\Microsoft.NET\Framework\v4.0.30319\ngen.exe update /queue  
C:\Windows\Microsoft.NET\Framework\v4.0.30319\ngen.exe eqi
```

On 64-bit machines, do the same for 64-bit CLR:

```
C:\Windows\Microsoft.NET\Framework64\v4.0.30319\ngen.exe update /queue  
C:\Windows\Microsoft.NET\Framework64\v4.0.30319\ngen.exe eqi
```

- Create the OA3 computer build report (CBR) using OAtool.exe, inject the key into firmware, and validate the provisioning.
- If you're using Windows Preinstallation Environment (WinPE) 5.x, fix the timestamps. (This step is not necessary if you're using WinPE for Windows 10).

```
dir %windir%\System32\catroot\{F750E6C3-38EE-11D1-85E5-00C04FC295EE}
```

- Run Sysprep /oobe to prepare the system for the end user.
- Enable Secure Boot (if implemented).

Quality assurance phase

Quality assurance should be run on a sample of machines throughout the production run to ensure all customizations have been successfully installed. This QA pass should also be used to validate the OA3 implementation.

Considerations

Once the system has gone through OOBE for this QA pass, it will need to be reset in order to assure the end-user experience is excellent.

Goals

Assure a good customer experience and reduce time spent rebuilding machine.

Implementation

The device should return to the production line to be re-imaged.

Remanufacturing

Once the device has passed through OOBE (for any reason) the device needs to be reimaged. In the factory, the device can simply be added back onto the Software Download Station after the TPM has been cleared (if equipped).

If the device needs to be serviced in the field by a 3rd party, then Push Button Reset should be used. This will guarantee the machine is returned back to the full factory configuration while still remaining simple to execute.

Considerations

While PBR has all the functions needed for factory remanufacturing, it does not provide the ability to script the actions and does not provide actionable error codes needed for automation that would be necessary in large scale production.

Goals

Ensure a good customer experience, while protecting the user data.

Implementation

To clear the TPM use the following commands:

```
$Tpm = Get-WmiObject -class Win32_Tpm -namespace "root\CMV2\Security\MicrosoftTpm"
$Tpm.SetPhysicalPresenceRequest(22)
```

To use Windows PE, you'll need a customized Windows PE image with:

- SOC-specific drivers for ftppm.
- Optional components: SecureStartup, WMI, PowerShell, and .NET Framework.

Manufacturing checklist

Windows 10 manufacturing task timeline

You can use this checklist to plan your manufacturing tasks.

Task	Pre-EV Phase	EV Phase	DV Phase	PV Phase
Prerequisite manufacturing work:	Pre-EV	EV	DV	PV
ODM chosen?	✓	-	-	-
OEM access to Windows 10?	✓	-	-	-
ODM access to Windows 10?	✓	-	-	-
OEM access to Manufacturing WEG?	✓	-	-	-
ODM access to Manufacturing WEG?	✓	-	-	-
ODM points of contact identified?	✓	-	-	-
OEM points of contact identified?	✓	-	-	-
ODM kick-off?	✓	-	-	-
OEM kick-off?	✓	-	-	-
Regular manufacturing call?	-	✓	-	-
Deployment:	Pre-EV	EV	DV	PV
OEM understanding of deployment concepts	✓	-	-	-
ODM understanding of deployment concepts	✓	-	-	-
Using Windows 10 DISM	-	✓	-	-
Using Windows 10 Windows PE	-	✓	-	-
Extended attributes applied via DISM	-	✓	-	-

Task	Pre-EV Phase	EV Phase	DV Phase	PV Phase
WinSxS check being run? /AnalyzeComponentStore	-	✓	-	-
Image is cleaned up? (DISM /Cleanup-Image /StartComponentCleanup /ResetBase)	-	✓	-	-
Push-button reset	Pre-EV	EV	DV	PV
OEM understanding of push-button reset concepts	-	✓	-	-
ODM understanding of push-button reset concepts	-	✓	-	-
Recommended partition layout to use for Windows RE and push-button reset?	-	-	✓	-
If a non-standard partition layout is used, is bare-metal recovery configured?	-	-	✓	-
Recovery image ACL settings correct?	-	-	✓	-
Refresh/reset time is within guidelines?	-	-	-	✓
Windows RE:	Pre-EV	EV	DV	PV
OEM understanding of Windows RE concepts	-	✓	-	-
ODM understanding of Windows RE concepts	-	✓	-	-
Windows RE is enabled	-	-	✓	-
Windows RE location is correct	-	-	✓	-

Task	Pre-EV Phase	EV Phase	DV Phase	PV Phase
BCD GUID for Windows RE matches Windows RE GUID entry in Reagent.xml	-	-	✓	-
Image index is correct	-	-	✓	-
Manufacturing:				
Windows RE partition size (MB) and position on selected disk	-	✓	-	-
Test partition uses full Windows	-	-	✓	-
Image deployment via [NIC] or [duplication]	-	✓	-	-
OPM key provisioning plan done?	-	✓	-	-
Language packs per SKU	-	-	✓	-
Secure boot:				
OEM understanding of security concepts	✓	-	-	-
ODM understanding of security concepts	✓	-	-	-
Secure boot process tested with preproduction signing?	-	-	✓	-
Watermark off?	-	-	-	✓
Drivers signed from IHV/ISV?	-	-	-	✓
Drivers signed by Microsoft?	-	-	-	✓
Re-manufacturing process complete [factory]	-	-	✓	-
Re-manufacturing process complete [field service]	-	-	✓	-

Task	Pre-EV Phase	EV Phase	DV Phase	PV Phase
Secure boot and debug policy plans vetted by FT	-	✓	-	-
OA 3.0:	Pre-EV	EV	DV	PV
Using updated OA3tool.exe	-	-	✓	-
Validate image/key offline	-	-	✓	-
Injection done in [Windows PE] [Windows] Refer to the OEM Activation 3.0 section.	-	-	✓	-

Appendix

Small disk footprint optimization

The basic disk footprint of Windows 10 x86 with Office and 2GB of RAM will contain:

Windows (w/Office), Page file, hiberfile, swapfile, and two language packs	11.7GB
WinRE	500MB
System Partitions (MSR, ESP)	428MB
Total	~23GB
Available space for OEM customizations on a 32GB (29GB usable) device	~6GB

Assumptions:

- Disk footprint calculated using GetDiskFreeSpaceEx()
- Data is collected immediately after OS setup, prior to NGEN running, prior to Idle Tasks.
- Measurement includes pagefiles
- Windows Update is disabled
- Build has multiple runs; the max footprint is used in this report
- Drive capacity is converted into Base-2 sizes: 32GB == 32,000,000,000 bytes == 30518MiB (or 29GiB).

Language packs

Language packs comprise some of the largest disk space additions an OEM is likely to make. A language with all its optional components included can be estimated at 275MB each (size varies based on language) while Office language packs can be estimated at 300MB (also depending on language).

Windows will trim unused language packs once the end-user selects a primary language during OOBE. After they're removed, these languages won't be available through push-button reset.

In order to maintain a smaller disk footprint, consider reducing the amount of languages installed on each shipping SKU.

Servicing

Adding Windows Update KB packages can add significantly to the size of the disk. To reduce the footprint of an image after adding updates:

1. Install KB and reboot if prompted
2. From an elevated command prompt, run the following commands:

```
dism.exe /online /cleanup-image /startcomponent
```

3. Restart the device.

Real Time Clock (RTC)

The RTC is a battery-backed time source that stores and maintains system time when a device is powered off. ACPI 5.0 defines the Time & Alarm device which abstracts the underlying hardware device which maintains platform time. The ACPI Time & Alarm device is the preferred way to set and query platform time in Windows, even on a system with a traditional CMOS based RTC. The ACPI interface provides the time zone bias for the time value obtained from or written to the RTC. This extra field of information addresses a longstanding issue with the CMOS based RTC, where an operating system does not know how to interpret the time read from the hardware clock.

Factory floor considerations

Windows queries RTC to update the system time when:

- No time synchronization service is available.
- The machine enters sleep (S3) or hibernate (S4) power state.
- Kernel Debugger is enabled.

OEMs typically provision the RTC in Local Time (LT) for devices shipped with Windows 7. Windows 7 exclusively uses the CMOS time interface to get RTC time, which is interpreted as LT. In Windows 8, we added support for the ACPI Time & Alarm device, but Windows 8 also uses the CMOS RTC, if it is available, and treats the time returned from it as LT. This behavior (related to the CMOS RTC interface) is incompatible with most non-Windows operating systems. Also, hosting providers like Azure want to use UTC time in their virtualized hardware to simplify management and migration of guests that might have a number of different time zones.

To address these concerns, Microsoft will be transitioning away from using the CMOS RTC interface and primarily relying on the ACPI Time & Alarm device.

For OEMs, the guidance is:

- Implement the ACPI Time & Alarm device.
- Set "CMOS RTC Not Present" flag in Fixed ACPI Description Table (FADT). The underlying hardware can still be the CMOS backed RTC, however Windows will only use the ACPI Time & Alarm Device if this flag is set.
- It is not recommended for the platform firmware to update the RTC across a daylight saving boundary. If it does, however, the firmware needs to ensure coordinated universal time (UTC) can always be calculated by adding the time zone bias to the time value, i.e., $UTC = LT + TZ$. Windows will ignore the DST field received from the _GRT control method.
- Invalidate TZ (set to 0x7FF) through firmware if RTC time is ever updated through CMOS RTC interface.

Ensuring a good first sign-in experience

The Windows team has seen a number of issues blocking good performance of user's first experience with Windows, and the following guidance should address common issues when preparing OS Images for your customers.

Antimalware tools scanning disk during first sign-in

We have seen several instances where antimalware tools are doing a full disk scan during the user's first sign-in. The scanning competes with critical tasks occurring during the first sign-in process, resulting in very slow first sign-in, a degraded Start experience and slow system performance.

Recommendation: Devices should be configured to avoid full scan of the disk during first sign-in. Specific guidance for AV solutions should be provided by the AV Vendor.

Windows Defender

Add unique identifiers to your images to prevent Windows Defender from re-scanning all of the files you provided in the original disk image. To learn more, see [Configure a Trusted Image Identifier for Windows Defender](#).

Running NGEN commands

Native image GENeration is a task compiling .NET framework's MSIL (virtual machine code) into native images (platform specific executables). Generally it improves CLR application startup time by more than an order of magnitude. See [The Performance Benefits of NGen](#) for more details.

Recommendation: Follow these instructions to ensure .NET Framework apps are compiled. Please run the following commands after installing all OS updates:

On 32-bit, x86 ,or ARM devices:

```
C:\Windows\Microsoft.NET\Framework\v4.0.30319\ngen.exe update /queue  
C:\Windows\Microsoft.NET\Framework\v4.0.30319\ngen.exe eqi
```

On 64-bit devices, do this for both versions of the .NET framework:

```
C:\Windows\Microsoft.NET\Framework\v4.0.30319\ngen.exe update /queue  
C:\Windows\Microsoft.NET\Framework\v4.0.30319\ngen.exe eqi  
C:\Windows\Microsoft.NET\Framework64\v4.0.30319\ngen.exe update /queue  
C:\Windows\Microsoft.NET\Framework64\v4.0.30319\ngen.exe eqi
```

Graphics drivers

A Windows device should ship with the correct DirectX Graphics Driver for the system hardware. Failing to install the correct driver results in a fallback to a software-based graphics driver. This results in degraded experiences with Windows, including slower first sign-in performance.

Recommendation: Install the correct graphics driver for your hardware while in audit mode.

Frequently asked questions

Windows PE

- **Question:** Can I use the new WinPE to deploy, maintain and service previous Windows versions?

Answer: Updates to WinPE will not affect the currently supported Windows versions. You can use the updated WinPE to deploy previous Windows versions including Windows 7.

- **Question:** Do I have to migrate to the new deployment tools available as part of Windows 10?

Answer: No you don't. You only need to update to the newer version of the deployment tools (WinPE, DISM) if you want to implement Compact OS.

- **Question:** How does disk footprint optimization impact my PXE environment?

Answer: You only need to update your PXE environment to the newer version of the deployment tools (WinPE, DISM) if you are executing an "apply" while in your PXE environment. If you are only executing a download (file copy from server to client), you don't have to update your PXE environment.

Push-button recovery (PBR) and Windows Recovery Environment (WinRE)

- **Question:** Will WinRE also be updated?

Answer: Yes, a new WinRE.wim is needed.

- **Question:** Can the user still create a PBR USB key?

Answer: Yes. If the default partition layout is used, then no additional setup is required by the OEM to enable this.

Storage

- **Question:** Do you only support solid state disks?

Answer: No, we now support solid-state and traditional rotational media. We recommend that single-instancing is only used on solid-state disks, due to performance issues.

- **Question:** Can I use single-instancing of provisioning packages on a dual disk configuration (HDD + SSD)?

Answer: Single-instancing can only be implemented on the same disk.

Disk footprint

- **Question:** How will you delete the language packs that the user does not choose during OOBE?

Answer: The language packs are deleted from the device, and will no longer be available during push-button recovery operations.

- **Question:** How are you calculating disk size? For example, you report a disk size of 14.8 GB on a 16 GB disk.

Answer: The disk capacity is converted into Base-2. For example, 16,000,000,000 (billion bytes) is equal to ~14.8 GB.

- **Question:** Can I only use Compact OS on small devices, such as those with 1 GB RAM and 16 GB disk?

Answer: Compact OS can be applied to any 32-bit or 64-bit platform with >=16GB of solid state storage.

- **Question:** Do you recommend using 16 GB disk on a 64-bit platform running 64-bit Windows?

Answer: We recommend a minimum disk capacity of 32 GB for 64-bit Windows.

Imaging and deployment

- **Question:** What are the changes to the DISM command to support Compact OS?

Answer: You can use DISM /Apply-Image ... /Compact and /Apply-CustomDataImage. For more info, see [DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#).

- **Question:** Does Compact OS support both GPT and MBR partition layout?

Answer: Yes.

- **Question:** Is an updated OA3 tool required with Windows 10?

Answer: Yes.

- **Question:** Can I still use Windows SIM, unattend answer files and settings with Windows 10?

Answer: Yes, though some settings may have changed. See [Changed answer file settings from Windows 8.1 and Windows Server 2012 R2](#).

Language Packs and apps

- **Question:** Can we use multiple language packs?

Answer: Yes, however, we strongly recommend that you validate the disk footprint impact of the number of languages (Windows, Office, drivers and apps) per image.

- **Question:** Is there a change in how I install language packs?

Answer: Yes, you'll apply the base lp.cab in the same way as you did before in order to get multiple UI options, but to be able to enter text or get support, you'll need to add optional language components. For more info, see [Add Language Packs to Windows](#).

- **Question:** Is there a change in how I install desktop or Windows Store apps?

Answer: There is no change in how you install desktop or Windows Store apps from Windows 8.1.

- **Question:** What is the user experience on a multi-language configuration or when a user adds an additional language pack?

Answer: Language packs will continue to work the same way they do in previous versions of Windows.

- **Question:** Are there compatibility concerns with desktop apps?

Answer: The type of apps listed below will need to be carefully validated.

- Full volume encryption tools should not encrypt WIM images to limit performance impact. Such tools should check integrity of the unencrypted WIM to prevent tampering.
- Any tool that writes system files can be affected:
 - Imaging applications should perform block-level backup and restore of ALL volumes.
 - Faulty/Incomplete restore-operations can render a system unbootable.
 - Encryption/Back-Up/Defrag tools may unintentionally inflate system files.

- **Question:** Is Compact OS also applicable to Windows Embedded?

Answer: The Compact OS implementation and feature design we shared is limited to Windows 10 for desktop editions (Home, Pro, and Enterprise) . However, you should contact your Windows Embedded representative and ask about their disk footprint optimization plan.

Policy

- **Question:** Is there a change to the existing 10 GB free disk space policy requirement?

Answer: Refer to the updated Windows Hardware Compatibility Requirements.

Servicing

- **Question:** How will upgrade work especially on the recovery image with disk footprint optimization?

Answer: Upgrade will continue to work.

Windows 10 S manufacturing overview

7/28/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Windows 10 S is a specific configuration of Windows 10 Pro that offers a familiar, productive Windows experience that's streamlined for security and performance. By exclusively using apps in the Windows Store and ensuring that you browse safely with Microsoft Edge, Windows 10 S keeps you running fast and secure day in and day out. The same technology that makes Windows 10 S secure also creates some differences when creating software images for Windows 10 devices.

When you plan your Windows 10 S image and deployment, you'll have to ensure that your customizations will work with Windows 10 S, as well as the manufacturing environment.

While the overall process is similar to building other Windows 10 devices, Windows 10 S has some additional considerations.

In this section

Planning a Windows 10 S image	Gives an overview of what to consider when planning a Windows 10 S image.
Manufacturing environment	Describes how the manufacturing environment behaves with Windows 10 S.
Manufacturing mode	Explains how to enable and disable manufacturing mode.
Windows 10 S deployment lab	Provides step by step instructions on how to create a Windows 10 S deployment.

Planning a Windows 10 S deployment

7/28/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Building a Windows 10 S image is like building an image for any other desktop edition of Windows, with some key differences to consider when planning your deployment. You can add apps, drivers, and customizations to Windows 10 S, but you'll have to make sure they are supported in Windows 10 S.

Executables

When planning a deployment, make sure you understand what runs, and what is blocked in Windows 10 S. Choose and test customizations that work with Windows 10 S and won't interrupt your deployment. If you need to run unsigned code, you can [enable the manufacturing mode registry key](#) which allows you to run unsigned code, but once the PC ships the unsigned code will be blocked.

What runs on Windows 10 S?

Windows 10 S will only run executable code that is signed with a **Windows**, **WHQL**, **ELAM**, or **Store** certificate from the [Windows Hardware Developer Center Dashboard](#). This includes companion apps for drivers.

Any apps not signed with one of the certificates mentioned, including companion apps, are blocked. When a blocked app is run, the user is notified that the app cannot run.

What is blocked in Windows 10 S?

The following components are blocked from running in Windows 10 S. Any script or application that calls one of these blocked components will be blocked. If your manufacturing process uses scripts or applications that rely on blocked components, you can temporarily [enable manufacturing mode](#) for configuring and testing, but you can't ship a PC with manufacturing mode enabled.

- bash.exe
- cdb.exe
- cmd.exe
- cscript.exe
- csi.exe
- dnx.exe
- kd.exe
- lxsmanager.dll
- msbuild.exe
- ntsd.exe
- powershell.exe
- powershell_ise.exe
- rcsi.exe
- reg.exe
- regedt32.exe
- windbg.exe
- wmic.exe
- wscript.exe

Testing your app

For information on how to test your app, see [Test your Windows app for Windows 10 S](#).

Drivers

For Windows 10 S driver guidelines and requirements, see [Windows 10 S Driver Requirements](#).

Customizations

Not all customizations are supported in Windows 10 S. This section shows which customizations are supported, which customizations are not supported, and how to enable manufacturing mode that allows you to perform customizations in audit mode.

Supported customizations

The following table shows customizations in Windows 10 S, the mechanism to deploy the customizations, and the environment where you can deploy the customizations.

CUSTOMIZATION OR TASK	MECHANISM	ENVIRONMENT
Language Packs	DISM	Offline, WinPE, Audit Mode
Features on Demand	DISM	Offline, WinPE, Audit Mode
Start Menu Layout	layoutmodification.xml	N/A
OEM Taskbar tiles	taskbarlayoutmodification.xml	N/A
InkWorkstationTiles	InkWorkstationLayoutModification.xml	N/A
OOBE customizations	OOBE.xml, OOBE folder structure	OOBESystem pass
UWP apps	DISM	Offline, WinPE, Audit mode
Bridge apps	DISM	Offline, WinPE, Audit Mode
Drivers with no unsigned or win32 scripts/exe/binaries	DISM	Offline, WinPE, Audit Mode
Wallpaper	unattend.xml	N/A
Command prompt from OOBE using <Shift + F10>	Manufacturing reg key	OOBE

Unsupported customizations

The following tables shows customizations that are not supported in Windows 10 S.

CUSTOMIZATION OR TASK	MECHANISM	ENVIRONMENT
Driver installation with setup.exe	Unsupported	Unsupported
Drivers with co-installers or dependent on scripts or cmd execution	Unsupported	Unsupported
Win32 apps	Unsupported	Unsupported
First logon commands	Unsupported	Unsupported

Enable customizations in audit mode

To enable customizations in audit mode, you have to enable manufacturing mode by adding a registry key to your offline image. Manufacturing mode allows you to run unsigned code that is normally blocked. For instructions on how to add or remove the manufacturing registry key, see [Manufacturing registry key](#).

You'll also have to configure ScanState to exclude the registry key when capturing your recovery package. This ensures that the registry key doesn't get restored during reset or recovery scenarios. We'll cover how to exclude the key from recovery in the [Windows 10 S deployment lab](#)

IMPORTANT

Don't ship your Windows 10 S PC with the registry in place. You'll have to remove the registry key prior to shipping the device.

Upgrade paths

Windows 10 S allows the following upgrade paths:

UPGRADE PATHS

Windows 10 S to Professional

Windows 10 S N to Professional N

Windows 10 S to Enterprise

Windows 10 S N to Enterprise N

Windows 10 S to Education

Windows 10 S N to Education N

Windows 10 S to Professional Education

Windows 10 S N to Professional Education N

For information on using DISM to change the a Windows image to a different edition, see [Change the windows image to a higher edition using dism](#).

Recovery

Built-in recovery

Windows 10 S includes a recovery solution that enables a user to restore, refresh, or troubleshoot their PC. Recovery in Windows 10 S has some differences from other editions of Windows. These differences are:

- Third party recovery solutions are NOT supported
- Extensibility points for customizations documented in this section is supported
 - OEM tools in WinRE is not supported
 - CMD prompt in WinRE will be enabled but only allow execution of inbox WinRE binaries
 - Extensibility script must be in the form of a *.CMD
 - Does not call any of the blocked inbox components except reg.exe and wmic.exe

Validating recovery in your deployment

After you configure your Windows 10 S PC for recovery scenarios, validate that it is working properly by verifying that these scenarios run successfully:

- Run refresh recovery and validate the user files are preserved and your factory desktop customizations are restored.
- Run reset recovery and validate the user files and profile are removed and your factory desktop customizations are restored.
- Validate extensibility scripts in the simulated RS3 enforcement level using the provided policy file.
- If you created a recovery package with ScanState, ensure that the manufacturing key was excluded from capture.

Retail Demo eXperience (RDX)

Microsoft will provide updated content for RDX that will need to be deployed during Manufacturing. This updated content includes new content packages with Windows 10 Pro in S mode (Windows 10 S) specific marketing messages for Windows and Office.

The Updated RDX supersedes previously released RDX included in the RS2 Features on Demand. The updated RDX which includes Windows 10 Pro in S mode (Windows 10 S) specific content can be used on all SKUs. The RDX will detect the Windows edition to display the corresponding RDX content.

Manufacturing environment

7/28/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Overview

This topic covers the differences in the Windows 10 S manufacturing environment from the manufacturing environments of other versions of Windows.

Code integrity policy

The code integrity policy (CI) blocks the execution of unsigned or improperly signed binaries. Using unsupported binaries is only recommended when performing lab or factory image customization, or during deployment where the execution environment is either WinPE or Audit Mode.

Once the CI policy is enabled on a system, it is enabled in two places:

1. Windows 10 S, enforced at boot.
2. EFI firmware policy, enforced during firmware load and OS boot.

WinPE

The Windows Preinstallation Environment (WinPE) behaves the same for Windows 10 S as it does for Windows Home or Windows Professional until the CI policy is enabled and Secure Boot is turned on. Once the policy is enabled and Secure Boot is turned on, WinPE (EFI\Boot folder) needs the CI policy (winsipolicy.p7b) to boot, or you must turn off Secure Boot.

The winsipolicy.p7b file is in the Windows 10 S install.wim in the `Windows\Boot\EFI\` folder and should be copied to the WinPE Boot location (EFI\Boot) on the WinPE media.

For more information about WinPE, see [Windows PE](#).

DISM

Adding a Windows 10 S image to a WIM

If you want a single WIM that includes multiple Windows editions including Windows 10 S, you can add/append your Windows 10 S image to an existing WIM, which allows you to specify the Windows 10 S image index during DISM /apply.

To see more about adding/appending images to an existing WIM, see [Append, apply, and export volume images with a Windows Image \(.wim\) file](#).

Detect Windows 10 S with DISM

You can use DISM to detect Windows 10 S (offline in WinPE or in Audit mode). In Audit mode, use

`DISM /online /get-currentedition`. If an image is Windows 10 S, the command should return S. In WinPE, use
`DISM /image:c:\ /get-currentedition`.

See [DISM Windows edition-servicing command-line options](#) to see additional commands for working with Windows editions.

Audit mode

Audit mode is available when manufacturing a Windows 10 S PC. By default, the [blocked inbox components](#) are

blocked in audit mode. If you need to use blocked inbox components during the manufacturing process, you can [enable manufacturing mode](#). If you enable manufacturing mode, you'll have to make sure to [disable manufacturing mode](#) prior to shipping your PC.

To learn more about Audit Mode, see [Audit Mode overview](#).

Factory device diagnostics

During factory testing, Win32-based diagnostic tools can be run by using one of the following options:

1. Windows 10 S in Audit Mode with the manufacturing registry key in place. If you've previously booted the PC without the manufacturing registry key in place, you'll have to turn off Secure Boot before you can use Win32-based diagnostic tools.

or

2. In a separate non-Windows 10 S test operating system.

Manufacturing mode

10/3/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Overview

To run scripts, installers, and diagnostic tools on the factory floor, Windows 10 S has a manufacturing mode. This mode allows you to run unsigned code in Audit Mode. Enable manufacturing mode by adding a registry key to an offline image. Disable manufacturing mode by removing the registry key when booted into audit mode.

IMPORTANT

Don't ship a Windows 10 S PC with the registry in place. Remove the registry key prior to shipping the device.

Before shipping a Windows 10 S PC, remove the manufacturing registry key and exclude it from recovery packages.

Enable manufacturing mode

Here's how to enable manufacturing mode.

On your technician PC:

1. Mount your Windows 10 S image.

```
Dism /Mount-Wim /WimFile:D:\sources\install.wim /index:1 /MountDir:C:\mount\windows
```

Where D: is your Windows 10 S installation media.

2. Load the SYSTEM registry hive from your mounted image into regedit on your technician PC. We'll use a temporary hive called HKLM\Windows10S.

```
reg load HKLM\Windows10S C:\Mount\Windows\Windows\System32\Config\System
```

3. Add the manufacturing registry key.

```
reg add HKLM\Windows10S\ControlSet001\Control\CI\Policy /v ManufacturingMode /t REG_DWORD /d 1
```

4. Unload the registry hive from your technician PC.

```
reg unload HKLM\Windows10S
```

5. Unmount the image and commit changes.

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:"C:\mount\windows" /Commit
```

The Windows 10 S image now has the manufacturing key that will allow you to make changes in audit mode.

Remove the manufacturing registry key

When you're finished making changes to your PC in audit mode, you'll remove the manufacturing registry key.

While still booted into audit mode:

1. Open Command Prompt.
2. Remove the registry key.

```
reg delete HKLM\SYSTEM\ControlSet001\Control\CI\Policy /v ManufacturingMode
```

The manufacturing registry key is now removed. You can check the Registry Editor to double check that the key has been removed.

On your Windows 10 S PC in audit mode:

1. Open Registry Editor by clicking on the start menu and typing `regedit` and press enter.
2. Use the registry browser in the left pane to navigate to `Computer\HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\ControlSet001\Control\CI\Policy`.
3. Under *policy*, you should not see a key called *manufacturingmode*.

Exclude the manufacturing registry key from recovery

When you create a recovery package, exclude the manufacturing registry key. Create an exclusion file that tells scanstate to skip the registry key when it captures a recovery package.

1. Create an .xml file in a text editor.
2. Copy and paste the following code. This tells ScanState to not capture the registry key in the recovery package that it creates:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<migration urlid="http://www.microsoft.com/migration/1.0/migxml/ext/ExcludeManufacturingMode">
<component type="System">
    <displayName>Exclude manufacturing regkey</displayName>
    <role role="Settings">
        <rules context="System">
            <unconditionalExclude>
                <objectSet>
                    <pattern type="Registry">HKLM\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Control\CI\Policy
[ManufacturingMode]</pattern>
                </objectSet>
            </unconditionalExclude>
        </rules>
    </role>
</component>
</migration>
```

3. Save the file as exclusion.xml.
4. When you use scanstate to generate a recovery package, add `/i:exclusion.xml` to the scanstate command to exclude the manufacturing key from the capture. This command creates a recovery package that excludes the manufacturing registry key, and places it into the recovery folder.

```
Scanstate.exe /config:T:\deploymenttools\Config_SettingsOnly.xml /o /v:13 /ppkg
C:\Recovery\Customizations\usmt.ppkg /i:exclusion.xml /l:C:\Scanstate.log
```

Windows 10 S deployment lab

7/28/2017 • 10 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Creating a deployment of Windows 10 S has some differences when compared to other versions of Windows.

When [planning your deployment](#), you have to make sure that your [drivers](#) and [apps](#) are supported by Windows 10 S.

This lab walks you through the process of configuring a Windows 10 S image for deployment. We'll customize an image, add the manufacturing registry key in WinPE, and then remove the registry key in Audit Mode. Then we'll configure recovery and prepare the image for shipment.

Let's get started.

Get the tools you need

To start building a Windows 10 S image for deployment, here's what you'll need:

- Windows 10 S image
- Technician PC running Windows 10, Version 1703 or later
- Reference PC where you can deploy your image
- The [latest version of the ADK](#) installed on your technician PC
- A USB key that you can format
- [Deployment scripts](#)
- Customizations such as drivers or language packs
- The latest General Distribution Release update from [the Microsoft Update Catalog](#)

Format your USB key

To prepare your USB drive, you'll create separate FAT32 and NTFS partitions. The following creates two partitions on a USB drive; one 2GB FAT32 partition, and one NTFS partition that uses the rest of the available space on the drive. You want to make sure that your USB drive has enough free space for the 2GB WinPE partition and to hold large images on the NTFS partition:

1. On your technician PC, start the **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** as an administrator:
 - Click **Start**, type **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and select **Run as administrator**.
2. Open diskpart.

```
diskpart
```

3. Select your your USB key's disk number, and run the `clean` command. This command will make any data on your USB key inaccessible. Make sure you've backed up any data that you want to keep.

```
list disk
select <disk number>
clean
```

Where `<disk number>` is the number of your USB drive

4. Create the FAT32 partition for WinPE, label it "Windows PE" and mark it active.

```
create partition primary size=2000
format quick fs=fat32 label="Windows PE"
assign letter=P
active
```

5. Create the NTFS partition where you'll store your images and customizations.

```
create partition primary
format fs=ntfs quick label="Data"
assign letter=T
list vol
exit
```

Make a bootable WinPE partition on your USB key

On your technician PC:

1. Open the Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment as administrator.
2. Copy the base WinPE files into a new folder:

```
copype amd64 C:\winpe_amd64
```

3. Copy the WinPE files to your FAT32 partition.

```
MakeWinPEMedia /UFD C:\winpe_amd64 P:
```

When prompted, press **Y** to format the drive and install WinPE.

For more information about how to create a WinPE drive, see [WinPE: Create USB bootable drive](#).

Create Data USB partition

1. In File Explorer, open the deployment scripts zip and copy the scripts folder to the Data partition of your USB drive.
2. From the Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment use copydandi.cmd to copy deployment and imaging tools to your USB drive

```
copydandi amd64 T:\deploymenttools
```

3. Copy any other customizations you need for Audit mode.

Mount install.wim and winre.wim

Mounting a Windows image is the same process that we used to mount the WinPE image earlier. When you mount your Windows image (install.wim), you'll be able to access a second image, WinRe.wim, which is the image that supports recovery scenarios. Updating install.wim and WinRE.wim at the same time helps you keep the two images in sync, which ensures that recovery goes as expected.

1. Mount the Windows 10 S iso in File Explorer.
2. Create a temporary folder (c:\temp) and then copy install.wim from D:\Sources (Where D: is the drive letter

of the mounted image) to the temporary folder.

```
md c:\temp  
copy d:\sources\install.wim c:\temp
```

3. Open the Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment as an administrator.

4. Create a folder for mounting images, and then mount install.wim.

```
Md C:\mount\windows  
Dism /Mount-Wim /WimFile:C:\temp\install.wim /index:1 /MountDir:C:\mount\windows
```

5. Create a mount folder for the Windows RE Image file from your mounted image, and then mount the WinRE image.

```
Md c:\mount\winre  
Dism /Mount-Wim /WimFile:C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\Recovery\winre.wim /index:1  
/MountDir:C:\mount\winre
```

Troubleshoot: If winre.wim cannot be seen under the specified directory, use the following command to set the file visible:

```
attrib -h -a -s C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\Recovery\winre.wim
```

Troubleshoot: If mounting operation fails, make sure the Windows 10 version of DISM is the one installed with the Windows ADK is being used and not an older version that might be on the Technician Computer. Don't mount images to protected folders, such as the User\Documents folder. If DISM processes are interrupted, consider temporarily disconnecting from the network and disabling virus protection.

For more information about mounting a Windows image, see [Mount and Modify a Windows Image Using DISM](#).

To learn about customizing WinRE, see [Customize Windows RE](#).

Enable customizations

Add the manufacturing registry key

Enabling manufacturing mode is a new step you'll have to do when working with Windows 10 S. To enable customizations during the manufacturing process, you'll have to add a registry key that gives you the ability to run unsigned code when booted into audit mode. This can help you build and test your image when getting a PC ready to ship.

We'll add the customization registry key to the mounted image by loading the mounted image's SYSTEM registry hive, and then adding a key. Then we'll configure ScanState to exclude the registry key when capturing your recovery package to ensure that the registry key doesn't get restored during reset or recovery scenarios.

IMPORTANT

Don't ship your Windows 10 S PC with the registry in place. You'll have to remove the registry key prior to shipping the device.

1. Load the SYSTEM registry hive from your mounted image into regedit on your technician PC. We'll use a temporary hive called HKLM\Windows10S.

```
reg load HKLM\Windows10S C:\Mount\Windows\System32\Config\System
```

2. Add the following key to the registry have that you just mounted.

```
reg add HKLM\Windows10S\ControlSet001\Control\CI\Policy /v ManufacturingMode /t REG_DWORD /d 1
```

3. Unload the registry hive from your technician PC.

```
reg unload HKLM\Windows10S
```

The mounted image now has the manufacturing key that will allow you to make changes in audit mode. You'll have to remove it before shipping the PC.

To learn about the Windows 10 S manufacturing registry key, see [Windows 10 S manufacturing mode](#).

Create exclusion.xml

Now we'll create a file that automates the exclusion of the customizations registry key when you capture settings for recovery. This ensures that your PC doesn't restore the customization registry key during the recovery process.

1. Create an xml file in a text editor.
2. Copy and paste the following code. This tells ScanState to not capture the registry key in the recovery package that it creates:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<migration urlid="http://www.microsoft.com/migration/1.0/migxmlext/ExcludeManufacturingMode">
<component type="System">
<displayName>Exclude manufacturing regkey</displayName>
<role role="Settings">
<rules context="System">
<unconditionalExclude>
<objectSet>
<pattern type="Registry">HKLM\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Control\CI\Policy
[ManufacturingMode]</pattern>
</objectSet>
</unconditionalExclude>
</rules>
</role>
</component>
</migration>
```

3. Save the file as exclusion.xml.

We'll use this config file when we capture a ScanState package for recovery later in the lab.

You can learn about excluding files and settings from a ScanState package at [Exclude Files and Settings](#).

Add drivers

Like other versions of Windows, you can add drivers to a Windows 10 S image to ensure that hardware is setup and working the first time a user boots into Windows. Make sure that the drivers you add to your Windows 10 S are compatible with Windows 10 S and won't be blocked.

1. Add a single driver to your Windows and WinRE images from an .inf file. In this example, we're using a driver named media1.inf:

```
Dism /Add-Driver /Image:"C:\mount\windows" /Driver:"C:\Drivers\PnP.Media.V1\media1.inf"
Dism /Add-Driver /Image:"C:\mount\winre" /Driver:"C:\Drivers\PnP.Media.V1\media1.inf"
```

Where "C:\Drivers\PnP.Media.V1\media1.inf" is the .inf file for the driver you're adding.

```
Dism /Add-Driver /Image:"C:\mount\windows" /Driver:c:\drivers /Recurse
```

2. Verify that the drivers are part of the images:

```
Dism /Get-Drivers /Image:"C:\mount\windows"
Dism /Get-Drivers /Image:"C:\mount\winre"
```

Check the list of packages and verify that the list contains the drivers you added.

For more information about adding drivers to an offline Windows image, see [Add and Remove Drivers to an Offline Windows Image](#).

Add a language (optional)

In this section, we'll add the German (de-de) language pack to the mounted Windows and WinRE images.

1. Add German language package to the Windows image.

Use the language packs from the 64-bit ISO:

```
Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\windows /PackagePath:"E:\x64\langpacks\Microsoft-Windows-Client-
Language-Pack_x64_de-de.cab"
```

Where E: is the drive letter of the mounted language pack ISO.

2. Add the German language pack to Windows RE. Language packs are available as part of the ADK, and ensure that a user's language is available during recovery scenarios.

```
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"E:\Windows Preinstallation
Environment\x64\WinPE_0Cs\de-de\lp.cab"
```

See [Add and remove language packs offline using DISM](#) for more information.

Add the latest General Distribution Release (GDR)

Install the latest GDR package that include the latest bug fixes and OS changes.

Important: Install GDR packages **after** you install language packs, AppX packages, and Features on Demand. If you install a GDR prior to adding these, you'll have to reinstall the GDR.

1. Download the GDR (KB 4020102) from the [Microsoft Update Catalog](#).
2. Use DISM /add package to add the GDR to the mounted images

```
dism /image:"C:\mount\windows" /add-package /packagepath:C:\temp\windows10.0-kb4020102-x64_9d406340d67caa80a55bc056e50cf87a2e7647ce.msu  
dism /image:"C:\mount\winre" /add-package /packagepath:C:\temp\windows10.0-kb4020102-x64_9d406340d67caa80a55bc056e50cf87a2e7647ce.msu
```

3. Use DISM to cleanup your image and lock in the updates so they are restored during recovery.

```
DISM /Cleanup-Image /Image=C:\mount\winre /StartComponentCleanup /ResetBase /ScratchDir:C:\Temp
```

See [Add or remove packages offline using DISM](#) for more information about adding packages to your Windows image.

Unmount WinRE Image and make a copy

Now that you have made all of your offline customizations, you can unmount your images.

1. Close all applications that might access files from the images.
2. Commit the changes and unmount the WinRE and Windows images:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:"C:\mount\winre" /Commit  
Dism /Export-Image /SourceImageFile:c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\recovery\winre.wim /SourceIndex:1  
/DestinationImageFile:c:\mount\winre-optimized.wim  
del c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\recovery\winre.wim  
copy c:\mount\winre-optimized.wim c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\recovery\winre.wim
```

Unmount install.wim

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:"C:\mount\windows" /Commit
```

Copy install.wim and winre.wim to your USB drive

```
copy c:\temp\install.wim t:\  
copy c:\temp\winre-optimized.wim t:\
```

Deploy the image to reference PC

1. Boot your reference PC to WinPE.
2. Use the deployment scripts to apply your modified install.wim image.

```
T:\Deployment\walkthrough-deploy.bat t:\install.wim
```

Boot to audit mode and make changes

1. Boot your reference PC if it's not already booted.
2. When the device boots to OOBE, press Ctrl+Shift+F3 to enter Audit mode.
3. The PC will restart into audit mode.
4. Make changes to the PC. See the table on [Planning a Windows 10 S image](#) to see which customizations are available in audit mode.

To learn about audit mode, see [Audit mode overview](#). To learn about Audit mode's behavior with Windows 10 S, see [Audit mode in Windows 10 S manufacturing environment](#).

Capture your audit mode changes for the recovery tools

Now that you've customized your image in Audit mode, you can use ScanState to capture the package so the customizations are available in recovery scenarios.

1. Use ScanState that you copied to your USB key to capture customizations into a provisioning package. Use the exclusion.xml file that you created earlier to ensure that the manufacturing registry key is not restored during recovery.

```
md c:\Recovery\Customizations
T:\deploymenttools\scanstate /config:T:\deploymenttools\Config_SettingsOnly.xml /o /v:13 /ppkg
c:\recovery\customizations\usmt.pkg /i:exclusion.xml /l:C:\Scanstate.log
```

2. When the capture completes successfully, delete the ScanState logfile: `del c:\scanstate.log`.

Remove the manufacturing registry key

When you're finished customizing your PC in audit mode, you have to remove the manufacturing registry key that allows you to run unsigned code on Windows 10 S.

To remove the registry key, run the following command as administrator when booted into audit mode on the reference PC:

```
reg delete HKLM\system\ControlSet001\Control\CI\Policy /v ManufacturingMode
```

Add WinRE back into your captured image

To ensure that your WinRE image is captured for your final deployment, copy your exported WinRE-optimized.wim image to your Windows 10 S image.

```
xcopy t:\winre-optimized.wim c:\windows\system32\recovery\winre.wim
```

Sysprep and shut down the PC

1. Open Command Prompt.
2. Run sysprep to reseal the PC and make it ready for capture.

```
c:\windows\system32\sysprep\sysprep /generalize /oobe /shutdown
```

Capture the image

1. Boot the reference PC into WinPE.
2. Identify the drive letter of the Windows partition in diskpart:

```
diskpart
list volume
exit
```

3. Use DISM to capture the Windows partition.

```
dism.exe /capture-image /ImageFile:"T:\Images\Windows10S.wim" /capturedir:C:\ /Name:"Windows10S"
```

Where C:\ is the Windows partition.

See [Capture and apply Windows system and recovery partitions](#) for more information.

Deploy your image and verify customizations and recovery

Apply your image

1. Boot your reference PC into WinPE.
2. Apply your Windows 10 S image (Windows10S.wim) to the PC. This will overwrite any existing Windows installations.

```
T:\Deployment\Walkthrough-deploy.bat T:\images\Windows10S.wim
```

Verify customizations

1. Boot the reference PC. This is the first time booting the PC with your new Windows image.
2. If you installed additional languages, verify that these preinstalled languages appear and can be selected by the user during OOB.
3. Validate the desktop customizations you made correctly after OOB is complete.

Verify recovery

To verify recovery is working as expected, perform the following validation tasks:

- Run refresh recovery and validate the user files are preserved and your factory desktop customizations are restored.
- Run reset recovery and validate the user files and profile are removed and your factory desktop customizations are restored.
- Validate extensibility scripts in the simulated RS3 enforcement level using the provided policy file.
- If you created a recovery package with ScanState, ensure that the manufacturing key was excluded when the package was captured.

Ship the PC

Now that you have an image, you are ready to build and ship Windows 10 S PCs. Make sure that the manufacturing registry key is removed and Secure Boot is enabled on shipped PCs.

Windows Deployment Options

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

These topics describe additional Windows deployment options and customization scenarios.

In This Section

UEFI Firmware	Describes considerations for deploying to computers that are based on the Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI).
Hard Drives and Partitions	Describes methods to deploy different drive configurations, including hard drives, solid-state drives (SSDs), and virtual hard drives (VHDs).
Deploy Windows on a VHD (Native Boot)	Create and deploy Windows using virtual hard disks (VHDs).
Configure Network Settings in an Unattended Installation	Common networking scenarios and how to implement them in unattended installations.
Siloed provisioning packages (SPPs)	Capture individual Windows desktop applications and apply them to your images.
Device Drivers and Deployment Overview	Add and configure device drivers.
Language Packs	Add language packs and language interface packs (LIPs).
Configure Oobe.xml	Describes Oobe.xml, which is a content file that is used to collect text and images for customizing Out-Of-Box Experience (OOBE).
Work with Product Keys and Activation	Enter a product key and how to activate Windows.
Battery Life	Manage battery life on different hardware and software platforms.
Understanding Servicing Strategies	Servicing strategies, including customization during installation, offline servicing, and online servicing (audit mode).

Audit Mode Overview	Describes audit mode, which enables you to customize a Windows installation without configuring the user interface pages of OOBE.
Enable and Disable the Built-in Administrator Account	Enable and disable the built-in Administrator account, which helps you run programs and apps as an administrator.
Windows Server Deployment Options	Considerations when deploying Windows Server editions.
Configure a Trusted Image Identifier for Windows Defender	You can speed up the initial performance of your computer for the end user by adding a trusted image identifier to Windows Defender. Windows Defender is a Microsoft application that can help to prevent, remove, and quarantine malware and spyware.
High DPI Support for IT Professionals	Windows includes features that improve the user experience with premium high density display panels such as 1920x1080 displays that have about 200 DPI and 150% scaling, and 2560x1440 and 3200x1800 displays that have 225-275DPI and 200% scaling.
PAE/NX/SSE2 Support Requirement Guide for Windows 8	Describes the PAE/NX/SSE2 processor requirements.
Microsoft .NET Framework 3.5 Deployment Considerations	Describes how IT Professionals can deploy .NET Framework 3.5 .

Related topics

[Windows Deployment Tools Technical Reference](#)

UEFI Firmware

4 min to read •

Here's some considerations when deploying Windows on Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI)-based devices.

What is UEFI?

When the device starts, the firmware interface controls the booting process of the PC, and then passes control to Windows or another operating system.

UEFI is a replacement for the older BIOS firmware interface and the Extensible Firmware Interface (EFI) 1.10 specifications.

More than 140 leading technology companies participate in the Unified EFI Forum, including AMD, AMI, Apple, Dell, HP, IBM, Insyde, Intel, Lenovo, Microsoft, and Phoenix Technologies.

Benefits of UEFI

Firmware that meets the UEFI 2.3.1 specifications provides the following benefits:

- Faster boot and resume times.
- Ability to use security features such as Secure Boot and factory encrypted drives that help prevent untrusted code from running before the operating system is loaded. For more information, see [Secure Boot Overview](#) and [Factory Encrypted Drives](#).
- Ability to more easily support large hard drives (more than 2 terabytes) and drives with more than four partitions.
- Compatibility with legacy BIOS. Some UEFI-based PCs contain a Compatibility Support Module (CSM) that emulates earlier BIOS, providing more flexibility and compatibility for end users. To use the CSM, Secure Boot must be disabled.
- Support for multicast deployment, which allows PC manufacturers to broadcast a PC image that can be received by multiple PCs without overwhelming the network or image server.
- Support for UEFI firmware drivers, applications, and option ROMs.

Additional advantages are described in the [Intel EFI and UEFI Overview and Specifications](#).

Windows support of UEFI

The following Windows editions include support for UEFI:

- Windows 10 for desktop editions (Home, Pro, Enterprise, and Education), Windows Server 2016 Technical Preview, Windows 8.1, and Windows 8 support native UEFI 2.0 or later on 32-bit (x86), 64-bit (x64), and ARM-based PCs. They also support BIOS-based PCs, and UEFI-based PCs running in legacy BIOS-compatibility mode.

Some features such as Secure Boot require UEFI 2.3.1 Errata C or higher.

- Windows Server 2012 R2 and Windows Server® 2012 support native UEFI 2.0 or later on 64-bit systems. Some features such as Secure Boot require UEFI 2.3.1.

- Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2:
 - Support UEFI 2.0 or later on 64-bit systems. They also support BIOS-based PCs, and UEFI-based PCs running in legacy BIOS-compatibility mode.
 - Support on Class 2 systems running in legacy BIOS-compatibility mode by using a CSM, so they can use the legacy BIOS INT10 features.
 - Are not supported on Class 3 systems, because these operating systems assume the presence of legacy BIOS INT10 support in the firmware, which is not available in a Class-3 UEFI implementation.
 - Windows Server 2008 R2 also supports EFI 1.10 on Itanium-based systems.

Note

- While in UEFI mode, the Windows version must match the PC architecture. A 64-bit UEFI PC can only boot 64-bit versions of Windows. A 32-bit PC can only boot 32-bit versions of Windows. In some cases, while in legacy BIOS mode, you may be able to run 32-bit Windows on a 64-bit PC, assuming the manufacturer supports 32-bit legacy BIOS mode on the PC.
- Windows supports a subset of the functionality that is defined in the UEFI specification. Windows implementations do not explicitly check against higher revisions of the firmware
- For additional UEFI requirements, see [UEFI Installation Media Format and default boot behavior](#) and [UEFI Requirements: Boot time, Runtime, Hibernation State \(S4\)](#).

Before You Begin

Before you install Windows on a UEFI-based PC, note the following:

- For some platforms or hardware configurations, you may need to perform additional steps to make sure that Windows is installed in UEFI mode or in legacy BIOS-compatibility mode. For more information, see [Boot to UEFI Mode or Legacy BIOS mode](#).
- UEFI hard disks require the GUID partition table (GPT) partition structure, instead of the master boot record (MBR) partition structure that is used in BIOS.

When you install Windows by using the Windows product DVD, Windows Setup detects whether the PC was booted in UEFI mode or BIOS-compatibility mode, and it configures Windows based on this selection.

- Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE) can be configured to support both UEFI mode and BIOS-compatibility mode.

Note

While the PC is in UEFI mode, the Windows PE version must match the PC architecture. A PC in 64-bit UEFI firmware mode can only boot 64-bit versions of Windows PE. A PC in 32-bit UEFI firmware mode can only boot 32-bit versions of Windows PE. On PCs that support both UEFI mode and legacy BIOS mode, you may be able to run 32-bit Windows PE on a 64-bit PC by changing BIOS menu settings from "UEFI mode" to "BIOS mode", assuming the manufacturer supports legacy BIOS mode.

For instructions, see [WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#) or [WinPE: Install on a Hard Drive \(Flat Boot or Non-RAM\)](#).

- Note to firmware manufacturers: Do not use tools or applications to alter Windows-specific boot files, including files in the C:\boot and C:\EFI folders. Altering these files could interfere with the PC's ability to boot up, to resume from hibernation, or to run system recovery tools. Instead, use tools such as BCDboot to set the boot order. For more info, see [BCDboot Command-Line Options](#).

See Also

UEFI Requirements	UEFI Installation Media Format and default boot behavior UEFI Requirements: Boot time, Runtime, Hibernation State (S4)
UEFI Features	Microsoft Hardware Developer Central: Firmware and Boot Environment Secure Boot Overview Factory Encrypted Drives
Booting a PC into UEFI or legacy BIOS mode	Boot to UEFI Mode or Legacy BIOS mode WinPE: Boot in UEFI or legacy BIOS mode
Managing UEFI hard drives and boot configuration data	Hard Drives and Partitions Configure UEFI/GPT-Based Hard Drive Partitions BCD System Store Settings for UEFI UEFI Validation Option ROM Guidance Windows UEFI Firmware Update Platform Validating Windows UEFI Firmware Update Platform Functionality
Forums	Unified Extensible Firmware Interface Forum (UEFI Forum)

UEFI Installation Media Format and default boot behavior

2 min to read •

This section describes the installation media formats and default boot behavior for UEFI platforms.

Installation media guidelines

- Windows installation media supports boot on both BIOS and UEFI platforms by taking advantage of multi-entry El Torito boot catalog support.
- The default El Torito boot entry is a BIOS entry that includes the 80x86 Platform ID, which is defined as "0x00" in hexadecimal.
- The second El Torito boot entry is an EFI entry that includes the Platform ID as "0xEF" in hexadecimal. The entry references a FAT partition that contains the bootable EFI application at \EFI\BOOT\BOOTX64.EFI.

Default boot behavior

Firmware vendors must ensure that the following conditions exist:

- The BIOS ignores boot entries that do not have the 80x86 Platform ID, which is defined as "0x00" in hexadecimal. Failure to ignore other boot entries results in the display of a confusing boot menu to the end user.
- The BIOS boots based on the BIOS entry without prompt.
- The UEFI boot manager ignores boot entries that do not have the "0xEF" Platform ID.
- The UEFI boot manager boots based on the EFI entry without prompt.

To support the ability to boot from DVD media, the Windows installation DVD contains many El Torito boot entries that enable boot from either BIOS or UEFI. The default El Torito boot entry is for BIOS.

Windows supports the "Non-removable Media Boot Behavior" section from the UEFI 2.3 specification. During Windows installation and when updates are required for bootmgfw.efi, Windows copies the Windows boot application from \efi\microsoft\boot\bootmgfw.efi to \efi\boot\boot{arch}.efi on the EFI system partition. This copy enables a default boot option for Windows if a nonvolatile RAM (NVRAM) boot entry is not available, such as when a hard disk is moved from one platform to another.

When upgrading Windows, Windows preserves the existing boot order. When you perform a clean install of Windows, Windows updates the boot order so that it's the first boot entry in the list.

Other media information

The following additional guidelines apply for boot media:

- Windows supports both CD and DVD boot from the Universal Disk Format (UDF) file system. Windows installation media also uses El Torito and is built by using the UDF bridge format to support both ISO 9660 and UDF version 1.02 file systems.
- The Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (Windows ADK) includes an updated version of Oscdimg.exe that supports the creation of a multi-entry El Torito boot catalog.

Related topics

[UEFI Firmware](#)

[BCDBoot Command-Line Options](#)

[Boot to UEFI Mode or Legacy BIOS mode](#)

[WinPE: Boot in UEFI or legacy BIOS mode](#)

UEFI Requirements: Boot time, Runtime, Hibernation State (S4)

4 min to read •

This section describes UEFI and firmware requirements, including:

- Boot time requirements
- Runtime requirements
- Hibernation State (S4) requirements
- Requirements to Enable UEFI Platforms without CSM

Boot time requirements

This section describes UEFI boot time requirements.

Display at Boot Time

For a platform that has a console device, the UEFI 2.0 specification requires the firmware to implement the Simple Text Output Protocol. Optionally, the firmware can also support a graphical protocol. UEFI 2.0 defines the Graphic Output Protocol (GOP), and EFI 1.1 defines the Universal Graphics Adapter (UGA) Protocol. Windows supports all three protocols, but the user experience with each protocol is different. For the best experience, if the firmware implements a graphical protocol, Windows recommends and prefers the GOP.

Windows requires a graphical protocol to render glyphs for non-English message resources. To do so, the firmware must support the following:

1. A graphical protocol—either GOP or UGA.
2. Either 1024x768 display resolution with 32-bit pixel color or 800x600 display resolution with 24-bit pixel color.

If the firmware does not support any of these graphics modes, Windows still functions, but all boot display reverts to text mode and English.

Windows 8.1, Windows Server 2012 R2, Windows 7, Windows Server 2008 R2, and Windows Server 2008 require GOP to display a high-resolution, animated image during boot. If GOP is not available, Windows uses the video graphics array (VGA) standard to display a lower resolution image and a simple progress indicator. For an optimal boot experience with these versions of Windows, sealed platforms without expansion card slots can safely boot with graphics mode enabled and eliminate transitions to text mode.

Whenever the firmware boot manager hands off execution to a Windows EFI application, platform firmware and the firmware boot manager must not use the frame buffer for any purpose.

Input at Boot Time

For a platform that has a console device, the UEFI 2.0 specification requires the firmware to implement the Simple Input Protocol. Windows supports this protocol for local keyboard input during boot.

Network Boot

Windows implements support for the EFI Preboot eXecution Environment (PXE) Base Code Protocol. Windows uses this protocol to boot over the network and support Windows Deployment Services (WDS).

Disk Boot

Windows requires Block I/O Protocol and Device Path Protocol support for the disk that contains the EFI system partition and the Windows OS partition.

Other Firmware Boot Requirements

To ensure proper operation, Windows requires EFI firmware to comply with its indicated specification version. EFI firmware must fully implement the appropriate version of the EFI System Table, EFI Boot Services, and EFI Runtime Services. Other specific required protocols and specifications include the following:

- **Trusted Computing Group (TCG) EFI Specifications.** All UEFI platforms that have a Trusted Platform Module (TPM) must implement the TCG EFI Platform and Protocol specifications.
- **EFI_PCI_ROOT_BRIDGE_IO_PROTOCOL.** Windows uses this protocol if Windows Boot Configuration Data (BCD) specifies IEEE 1394 boot debugging.

Runtime Requirements

Windows minimizes its use of UEFI services during operating system runtime and, wherever possible, relies on runtime firmware such as ACPI and Windows drivers. Windows uses the following UEFI Runtime Services to manage NVRAM boot entries and hardware error records after ExitBootServices() is called.

- GetVariable
- GetNextVariableName
- SetVariable
- QueryVariableInfo

Hibernation State (S4) Transition Requirements

This section describes requirements for system and firmware memory that are related to transitions to the hibernation power state (S4).

System Memory Requirements

Platform firmware must ensure that operating system physical memory is consistent across S4 sleep state transitions, in both size and location.

Operating system physical memory is defined according to the ACPI 3.0 specification as any memory that is described by the firmware system address map interface with a memory type other than **AddressRangeReserved** [2], **AddressRangeUnusable** [5], or **Undefined** [any value greater than 5].

Firmware Memory Requirements

On a UEFI platform, firmware runtime memory must be consistent across S4 sleep state transitions, in both size and location. Runtime memory is defined according to the UEFI specification as any memory that is described by the GetMemoryMap() boot service, with the attribute **EFI_MEMORY_RUNTIME**.

Requirements to Enable UEFI Platforms without CSM

First-generation 64-bit UEFI platforms typically contain some form of limited BIOS emulation such as a CSM to preserve the ability to run 32-bit operating systems and operating systems that do not support UEFI. Existing Windows dependencies on INT 10 video BIOS functions also require a CSM.

To reduce the need for a CSM and improve boot times in the future, we are collaborating with the industry to eliminate this dependency and encourage changes to system firmware.

Firmware requirements:

GOP. Windows uses the GOP to obtain a frame buffer pointer at boot time for use during operating system runtime. GOP support is essential to replace VGA support and avoid the requirement for a CSM in future versions of Windows.

EFI Capsule Services. Windows can use the EFI UpdateCapsule() service to persist information across a system restart and pass that information to the firmware. This would potentially let the system report and/or respond to certain error conditions if the boot device or operating system were damaged or otherwise unavailable.

Firmware recommendations

Note to firmware manufacturers: We recommend that when Secure Boot is disabled, then the firmware should trigger the following actions, to provide a better support experience for previous versions of Windows:

- Enable the CSM for VGA support, though not BIOS mode emulation.
- Enable messages during the POST process to show which keys open the boot menus.

Boot to UEFI Mode or legacy BIOS mode

8/30/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Choose UEFI or legacy BIOS modes while installing Windows. After Windows is installed, if you need to switch firmware modes, you may be able to use the [MBR2GPT](#) tool.

In general, [we recommend installing Windows using the newer UEFI mode](#), as it includes more security features than the legacy BIOS mode. If you're booting from a network that only supports BIOS, you'll need to boot to legacy BIOS mode.

After Windows is installed, the device boots automatically using the same mode it was installed with.

To boot to UEFI or BIOS:

1. Open the firmware menus. You can use any of these methods:

- Boot the PC, and press the manufacturer's key to open the menus. Common keys used: **Esc, Delete, F1, F2, F10, F11, or F12**. On tablets, common buttons are **Volume up or Volume down** ([find more common keys and buttons](#)). During startup, there's often a screen that mentions the key. If there's not one, or if the screen goes by too fast to see it, check your manufacturer's site.
- Or, if Windows is already installed, from either the Sign on screen or the Start menu, select **Power** () > hold **Shift** while selecting **Restart**. Select **Troubleshoot > Advanced options > UEFI Firmware settings**.

2. From the firmware menus, boot to drive or network while in UEFI or BIOS mode:

On the boot device menu, select the command that identifies both the firmware mode and the device. For example, select **UEFI: USB Drive** or **BIOS: Network/LAN**.

You might see separate commands for the same device. For example, you might see **UEFI USB Drive** and **BIOS USB Drive**. Each command uses the same device and media, but boots the PC in a different firmware mode.

Some devices only support one mode (either UEFI or BIOS). Other devices will only allow you to boot to BIOS mode by manually disabling the UEFI security features. To disable the security features, go to **Security > Secure Boot** and disable the feature.

Some older PCs (Windows 7-era or earlier) support UEFI, but require you to browse to the boot file. From the firmware menus, look for the option: "Boot from file", then browse to \EFI\BOOT\BOOTX64.EFI on Windows PE or Windows Setup media.

Detect UEFI or BIOS mode on a factory floor

Before installing Windows, check to make sure your firmware is booted to the right mode using any of these methods:

- **Use a script to check.** Windows PE: create a script that checks which mode the device is booted in before installing. See [WinPE: Boot in UEFI or legacy BIOS mode](#).
- **Use preformatted hard drives, and use a method that doesn't automatically format the drive.** Use drives that have been preformatted using the GPT file format for UEFI mode, or the MBR file format for BIOS mode. When the installation starts, if the PC is booted to the wrong mode, Windows will fail to install,

and the technician can restart the PC in the correct firmware mode.

- **Remove the UEFI or BIOS boot files:** Windows PE or Windows Setup: remove the files that Windows PE or Windows Setup to boot in UEFI or BIOS mode. When the device is booted in the wrong mode, it will immediately fail to boot, and you can begin troubleshooting right away.
 - **Boot only when in UEFI mode:** Remove the **bootmgr** file from the root of the Windows PE or Windows Setup media. This prevents the device from starting in BIOS mode.
 - **Boot only when in BIOS mode:** Remove the **efi** folder from the root of the Windows PE or Windows Setup media. This prevents the device from starting in UEFI mode.

Related topics

[WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#)

Windows Setup: Installing using the MBR or GPT partition style

9/5/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

When installing Windows on UEFI-based PCs using Windows Setup, your hard drive partition style must be set up to support either UEFI mode or legacy BIOS-compatibility mode.

For example, if you receive the error message: "Windows cannot be installed to this disk. The selected disk is not of the GPT partition style", it's because your PC is booted in UEFI mode, but your hard drive is not configured for UEFI mode. You've got a few options:

1. Reboot the PC in legacy BIOS-compatibility mode. This option lets you keep the existing partition style. For more info, see [Boot to UEFI Mode or Legacy BIOS mode](#).
2. Configure your drive for UEFI by using the GPT partition style. This option lets you use the PC's UEFI firmware features.

You can preserve your data and convert the drive using the [MBR2GPT tool](#). You can also choose to reformat the drive using the instructions below. Reformatting will erase all the data on the drive.

Why should I convert my drive?

Many PCs now include the ability to use the UEFI version of BIOS, which can speed up boot and shutdown times and can provide additional security advantages. To boot your PC in UEFI mode, you'll need to use a drive formatted using the GPT drive format.

Many PCs are ready to use UEFI, but include a compatibility support module (CSM) that is set up to use the legacy version of BIOS. This version of BIOS was developed in the 1970s and provides compatibility to a variety of older equipment and network configurations, and requires a drive that uses the MBR drive format.

However, the basic MBR drive format does not support drives over 4TB. It's also difficult to set up more than four partitions. The GPT drive format lets you set up drives that are larger than 4 terabytes (TB), and lets you easily set up as many partitions as you need.

Reformatting the drive using a different partition style

To wipe and convert the drive by using Windows Setup

1. Turn off the PC, and put in the Windows installation DVD or USB key.
2. Boot the PC to the DVD or USB key in UEFI mode. For more info, see [Boot to UEFI Mode or Legacy BIOS mode](#).
3. When choosing an installation type, select **Custom**.
4. On the **Where do you want to install Windows?** screen, select each of the partitions on the drive, and select **Delete**. The drive will show a single area of unallocated space.
5. Select the unallocated space and click **Next**. Windows detects that the PC was booted into UEFI mode, and reformats the drive using the GPT drive format, and begins the installation.

To manually wipe a drive and convert it to GPT:

1. Turn off the PC, and put in the Windows installation DVD or USB key.

2. Boot the PC to the DVD or USB key in UEFI mode. For more info, see [Boot to UEFI Mode or Legacy BIOS mode](#).
3. From inside Windows Setup, press **Shift+F10** to open a command prompt window.
4. Open the diskpart tool:

```
diskpart
```

5. Identify the drive to reformat:

```
list disk
```

6. Select the drive, and reformat it:

```
select disk <disk number>
clean
convert gpt
exit
```

7. Close the command prompt window.

8. Continue the Windows Setup installation.

When choosing an installation type, select **Custom**. The drive will appear as a single area of unallocated space.

Select the unallocated space and click **Next**. Windows begins the installation.

Make sure Windows Setup boots to the correct firmware mode

To automate this process, you'll need to run Windows Setup through Windows PE, and use a script to detect which mode you're in before installing Windows. For more info, see [WinPE: Boot in UEFI or legacy BIOS mode](#).

Related topics

[Boot to UEFI Mode or Legacy BIOS mode](#)

BCD System Store Settings for UEFI

7/13/2017 • 6 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

For a typical deployment scenario, you do not need to modify the BCD store. This topic discusses the various BCD settings in the BCD store that you can modify. On UEFI systems, this includes settings for the following boot applications:

1. [Windows Boot Manager](#)
2. [Windows Boot Loader](#)
3. [Windows Memory Tester](#)

The following sections describe the available settings for each of these boot applications in detail and how to modify each application for UEFI systems.

For simplicity, the BCDEdit examples in this section modify the BCD system store. To modify another store, such as a copy of the BCD-template, include the store name in the command line.

Windows Boot Manager Settings for UEFI

Windows Boot Manager (`{bootmgr}`) manages the boot process. UEFI-based systems contain a firmware boot manager, `Bootmgfw.efi`, that loads an EFI application that is based on variables that are stored in NVRAM.

The BCD settings for the `device` and `path` elements in Windows Boot Manager indicate the firmware boot manager. The template that is named BCD-template for Windows includes the following settings for Windows Boot Manager.

```
## Windows Boot Manager

identifier      {bootmgr}
device          partition=\Device\HarddiskVolume1
path            \EFI\Microsoft\Boot\bootmgfw.efi
description    Windows Boot Manager
```

Device Setting

The `device` element specifies the volume that contains Windows Boot Manager. For UEFI systems, the `device` element for Windows Boot Manager is set to the system partition volume letter. To determine the correct volume letter, use the Diskpart tool to view the disk partitions. The following example assumes that the system has a single hard drive that has multiple partitions, including a system partition that has been assigned a drive letter of S.

The following Diskpart commands select disk 0 and then list the details of the volumes on that disk, including their drive letters. It shows volume 2 as the system partition.

```
DISKPART> select disk 0
DISKPART> list volume

Volume ###  Ltr  Label        Fs  Type        Size     Status      Info
-----  ----  -----  ----  -----  -----  -----
Volume 0      D              NTFS  Partition   103 GB  Healthy
Volume 1      C              NTFS  Partition    49 GB  Healthy   Boot
Volume 2      S              FAT32 Partition  200 MB  Healthy  System
```

If the system partition does not have an assigned drive letter, assign one by using the **Diskpart assign** command. The following example assumes that the system partition is volume 2 and assigns it S as the drive letter.

```
Diskpart
select disk 0
list volume
select volume 2 // assuming volume 2 is the system partition
assign letter=s
```

After you have determined the system partition volume, set the **device** element for Windows Boot Manager to the corresponding drive letter. The following example sets **device** to drive S.

```
Bcdedit /set {bootmgr} device partition=s:// system partition
```

Path Setting

The **path** element specifies the location of the Windows Boot Manager application on that volume. For UEFI systems, **path** indicates the firmware boot manager, whose path is \EFI\Microsoft\Boot\Bootmgfw.efi.

You can confirm that BCD-template has the correct path by enumerating the values in the store, as follows:

```
bcdedit /store bcd-template /enum all
```

To explicitly set **path** to \EFI\Microsoft\Boot\Bootmgfw.efi, use the following command.

```
Bcdedit /set {bootmgr} path \efi\microsoft\boot\bootmgfw.efi
```

Other Settings

You should set Windows Boot Manager to be the first item in the display order of the UEFI firmware, as shown in the following example.

```
Bcdedit /set {fwbootmgr} displayorder {bootmgr} /addfirst
```

You should also specify the topmost Windows boot loader application in the Windows Boot Manager display order. The following example shows how to put a specified Windows boot loader at the top of the display order.

```
Bcdedit /set {bootmgr} displayorder {<GUID>} /addfirst
```

In the preceding example, <GUID> is the identifier for the specified Windows boot loader object. The next section discusses this identifier in greater detail.

Note

A multiboot system that has multiple installed operating systems has multiple instances of the Windows boot loader. Each instance of the Windows boot loader has its own identifier. You can set the default Windows boot loader (**{default}**) to any of these identifiers.

Windows Boot Loader Settings

A BCD store has at least one instance, and optionally multiple instances, of the Windows boot loader. A separate BCD object represents each instance. Each instance loads one of the installed versions of Windows that has a configuration that the object's elements have specified. Each Windows boot loader object has its own identifier, and the object's **device** and **path** settings indicate the correct partition and boot application.

BCD-template for Windows has a single Windows boot loader object that has the following settings.

```
## Windows Boot Loader

identifier      {9f25ee7a-e7b7-11db-94b5-f7e662935912}
device          partition=C:
path            \Windows\system32\winload.efi
description    Microsoft Windows Server
locale          en-US
inherit         {bootloadersettings}
osdevice        partition=C:
systemroot     \Windows
```

The identifier for this Windows boot loader is {9f25ee7a-e7b7-11db-94b5-f7e662935912}. You can use this GUID on your system or let the BCDEdit tool generate a new GUID for you.

To simplify BCDEdit commands, you can specify one of the Windows boot loaders in the BCD system store as the default loader. You can then use the standard identifier (`{default}`) in place of the full GUID. The following example specifies the Windows boot loader for EFI as the default boot loader, assuming that it uses the identifier GUID from BCD-template.

```
Bcdedit /default {9f25ee7a-e7b7-11db-94b5-f7e662935912}
```

Device and OSDevice Settings

The following elements specify key locations:

The `device` element specifies the partition that contains the boot application.

The `osdevice` element specifies the partition that contains the system root.

For the Windows boot loader for EFI, both elements are usually set to the drive letter of the Windows system partition. However, if BitLocker is enabled or a computer has multiple installed versions of Windows, `osdevice` and `device` might be set to different partitions. BCD-template sets both elements to drive C, which is the typical value. You can also explicitly set the `osdevice` and `device` values, as shown in the following example. The example also assumes that you have specified the Windows boot loader for EFI as the default boot-loader object.

```
Bcdedit /set {default} device partition=c:
Bcdedit /set {default} osdevice partition=c:
```

Path Setting

The `path` element of a Windows boot loader specifies the location of the boot loader on that volume. For UEFI systems, `path` indicates the Windows boot loader for EFI, whose path is \Windows\System32\Winload.efi.

You can confirm that BCD-template has the correct `path` value by enumerating the values in the store. You can also explicitly set the `path` value, as shown in the following example.

```
Bcdedit /set {default} path \windows\system32\winload.efi
```

Windows Memory Tester Settings

The Windows memory tester (`{memdiag}`) runs memory diagnostics at boot time. The BCD settings for the application's `device` and `path` elements indicate the correct application.

Note

Note: Intel Itanium computers do not include a Windows memory tester and do not require `{memdiag}` settings.

BCD-template for Windows has the following settings.

```
## Windows Memory Tester

identifier      {memdiag}
device          partition=\Device\HarddiskVolume1
path            \boot\memtest.exe
description    Windows Memory Diagnostic
```

Device Setting

For UEFI systems, the `device` element for the Windows memory tester is set to the system partition drive letter. The following example assumes that the system partition is drive S, as used in earlier examples.

```
Bcdedit /set {bootmgr} device partition=s: // system partition
```

Path Setting

The `path` element specifies the location of Windows Test Manager on the volume that the `device` element has specified. For UEFI systems, `path` indicates the EFI version of the application (\EFI\Microsoft\Boot\Memtest.efi).

You can confirm that BCD-template has the correct `path` value by enumerating the values in the store. You can also use the BCDEdit tool to explicitly set the `path` value, as shown in the following example.

```
Bcdedit /set {memdiag} path \efi\microsoft\boot\memtest.efi
```

Validating Windows UEFI Firmware Update Platform Functionality

6/6/2017 • 9 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

This document lists the basic validation scenarios that are required to pass before signing-off on the Windows UEFI Firmware Update Platform functionality. Specification can be downloaded from [here](#).

Prerequisites

- For each EFI System Resource Table (ESRT) entry, you need a capsule for the latest firmware version. The scenarios will refer to the latest version as X. Each ESRT entry is identified using a unique GUID.
- For each ESRT entry exposed, create a capsule package that its version is incremented above the package created in step 1. These capsules will be referred to as X+1.
- Capsules that aid in simulating failure conditions such as a capsule for which the payload is not signed or signed with an invalid PK.
- Make sure all capsules to be used are signed appropriately from the OS perspective, catalog signed, and firmware signed, PK signed. Unless, you are specifically testing the negative PK signing cases. See "Signing the Firmware driver Package" in the specification for details on how to sign a capsule or firmware driver package.

How To

Install a new capsule or reinstall a previously installed capsule

1. Open up device manager.
2. Find the device node that represents your firmware, it is usually under the "Firmware" devices.
3. Right click on the firmware device you wish to update.
4. Select **Update driver software**. You will get a popup that states "Update Driver Software - <Firmware>".
5. Select **Browse my computer for driver software**.
6. On the next window, select **Let me pick from a list of device drivers on my computer**.
7. If the driver has been installed before, select it from the **Show compatible hardware** box. If it does not exist, select **Have disk** and continue on. Otherwise, select **OK** and reboot the system.
8. If you select **Have Disk**, you will get a popup labeled **Install From Disk**.
9. Use **Browse** to go to the directory that has the capsule of the firmware you wish to install.
10. Select the INF file in that directory and hit **OK** to install.
11. During installation, if you get a popup saying the driver is not signed, go ahead and accept this driver.
12. The system asks you to reboot.
13. After you installed the capsule for the firmware, you need to reboot. If you wish to install multiple capsule packages, then wait to reboot until all capsules are installed and then reboot on the final capsule.

Query the version and status details:

- Run the QueryVersionAndStatus.ps1 PowerShell (PS) script to query the current firmware version, last attempt firmware version and last attempt status.

To run the script:

1. Run PowerShell as administrator.
2. `Set-ExecutionPolicy -ExecutionPolicy Unrestricted -Force` (This only has to be done once.)

3. Display the version and status details for the given GUID. For example:

```
. \QueryVersionAndStatus.ps1 6bd2efb9-23ab-4b4c-bc37-016517413e9a
```

4. Check if firmware update was successful: Refer to the section "Validating the status of the firmware update" in the specification document. Make sure that the Last Attempt Status and the Current Version matches the expected version.
5. Recommended: Check to make sure that the devices you are updating are also still functioning.
6. Set the rollback policy: Some of the scenarios might require rolling back firmware. Rollback is not a production scenario. In order to be able to rollback, a registry policy key has to be created. Create a REG_DWORD key with the name "Policy" under the node HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Control\FirmwareResources\{<GUID>} and set the value of the Policy key to 1. Note that the GUID should be replaced with the actual GUID from the ESRT.

Scenarios

S1: Each ESRT entry is successfully updatable through capsule

The following steps should be completed for each ESRT entry that is supported by the platform. Or in other words, for System firmware and each device firmware that supports updating firmware through UpdateCapsule.

Steps

1. For each ESRT entry, install the capsule for firmware version X.
2. Make sure all the above capsules are installed, prior to rebooting.

Expected Result

Firmware update should be successful for each ESRT entry that was updated. For all ESRT entries, for which the update was attempted, validate that:

- Current Firmware Version = X
- Last Attempt Version = X
- Last Attempt Status = 0 (STATUS_SUCCESS)

S2: The latest firmware version X is also updatable to X+1

The following steps should be completed for each ESRT entry that is supported by the platform. Or in other words, for System firmware and each device firmware that supports updating firmware through UpdateCapsule.

Steps

1. Complete scenario S1 above.
2. For each ESRT entry, install the capsule for firmware version X+1.

Expected Result

Firmware update should be successful for each ESRT entry that was updated. For all ESRT entries, for which the update was attempted, validate that:

- Current Firmware Version = X+1
- Last Attempt Version = X+1
- Last Attempt Status = 0 (STATUS_SUCCESS)

S3: On failure, firmware update returns the right status code as defined in the specification

The Status codes are defined in the section named "UEFI System Resource Table Definition", in the table with the title "ESRT Last Attempt Status Field Values".

S3.1 Insufficient Battery and UEFI System Firmware update

Steps

1. Drain the battery charge to less than 25% and then plug-in the AC power.
2. Install the capsule for UEFI System Firmware version X+1. Let's assume that the current version is X.
3. Before rebooting, make sure that the battery charge is less than 25%

Expected Result

Firmware update should fail. For ESRT entry corresponding to the System Firmware, validate that:

- Current Firmware Version = X
- Last Attempt Version = X+1
- Last Attempt Status = 0xc00002de (STATUS_INSUFFICIENT_POWER)

S3.2 Insufficient Battery and Device Firmware update

Steps

1. Drain the battery charge to less than 25% and then plug-in the AC power.
2. Install the capsules for ALL supported devices in the system with firmware version X+1. Let's assume that the current firmware version for the given device is X.
3. Before rebooting, make sure that the battery charge is less than 25% .

Expected Result

Firmware update should fail. For all ESRT entries, for which the update was attempted, validate that:

- Current Firmware Version = X
- Last Attempt Version = X+1
- Last Attempt Status = 0xc00002de (STATUS_INSUFFICIENT_POWER)

S3.3 Insufficient Battery, UEFI System and Device Firmware update at the same time

Steps

1. Drain the battery charge to less than 25% and then plug-in the AC power.
2. Install the capsules for UEFI System Firmware and all Device Firmware with version X+1.
3. Before rebooting, make sure that the battery charge is less than 25%.

Expected Result

Firmware update should fail for the System firmware and for all the device firmware for which the update was attempted. For all ESRT entries, for which the update was attempted, validate that:

- Current Firmware Version = X
- Last Attempt Version = X+1
- Last Attempt Status = 0xc00002de (STATUS_INSUFFICIENT_POWER)

S3.4 Firmware update should fail when the capsule is not PK signed

The following steps should be completed for each ESRT entry that is supported by the platform. Or in other words, for System firmware and each device firmware that supports updating firmware through UpdateCapsule.

Steps

1. For each ESRT entry, create a capsule X+2, the payload for which is not signed.
2. Install the capsules X+2. Let's assume that the current version is X.

Expected Result

Firmware update should fail for all the ESRT entries for which the update was attempted. For all ESRT entries, for which the update was attempted, validate that:

- Current Firmware Version = X
- Last Attempt Version = X+2
- Last Attempt Status = 0xC0000022 (STATUS_ACCESS_DENIED)

S3.5 Firmware update should fail when the capsule is signed with the wrong PK certificate

The following steps should be completed for each ESRT entry that is supported by the platform. Or in other words, for System firmware and each device firmware that supports updating firmware through UpdateCapsule.

Steps

1. For each ESRT entry, create a capsule X+2, sign the payload with a wrong key or certificate (for example use a debug signed capsule on a production device).
2. Install the capsules X+2. Let's assume that the current version is X.

Expected Result

Firmware update should fail for all the ESRT entries for which the update was attempted. For all ESRT entries, for which the update was attempted, validate that:

- Current Firmware Version = X
- Last Attempt Version = X+2
- Last Attempt Status = 0xC0000022 (STATUS_ACCESS_DENIED)

S3.6 Firmware update should fail when the capsule payload is tampered with

The following steps should be completed for each ESRT entry that is supported by the platform. Or in other words, for System firmware and each device firmware that supports updating firmware through UpdateCapsule.

Steps

1. For each ESRT entry, create a capsule X+2, sign the payload with the right key or certificate. Then open the firmware bin file and flip 1 or more bits in the file and save the file back.
2. Regenerate the catalog for the bin file and the INF file.
3. Install the capsules X+2. Let's assume that the current version is X.

Expected Result

Firmware update should fail for all the ESRT entries for which the update was attempted. For all ESRT entries, for which the update was attempted, validate that:

- Current Firmware Version = X
- Last Attempt Version = X+2
- Last Attempt Status = 0xC0000022 (STATUS_ACCESS_DENIED) or 0xC000007B (STATUS_INVALID_IMAGE_FORMAT)

S3.7: Firmware does not allow rollback beyond the LowestSupportedFirmwareVersion

The following steps should also be carried out for other device firmware (lower priority).

Steps

1. For UEFI System Firmware, create a capsule X+1 such that the "LowestSupportedFirmwareVersion" in the ESRT entry for the system firmware is set to X+1.
2. Install the capsule X+1 and make sure that the update succeeds.
3. Create a UEFI System firmware update capsules, such that the version in the INF is X+2 but the actual firmware binary file is of version X.
4. Install the capsule X+2 and reboot the system.

Expected Result

Firmware update should fail. For ESRT entry corresponding to the System Firmware, validate that:

- Current Firmware Version = X+1
- Last Attempt Version = X+2
- Last Attempt Status = 0xC0000059 (STATUS_REVISION_MISMATCH)

S4: Seamless recovery and firmware update (if implemented)

This scenario varies from platform to platform depending on the implementation of the seamless recovery. Based on the implementation, the validation might require creating bad capsules that forces the system into recovery or disconnecting the power in the middle of an update or through any other means of exercising the recovery flows.

Expected Result

The system should boot into the OS and the firmware update should be marked as failed. The version reported by the UEFI firmware resource device should not have changed.

S5: Firmware Update adheres to the User Experience (UX) requirement

Steps

- This scenario can be validated while executing any of the above scenarios that lead to a successful firmware update.

Expected Result

The user experience is in accordance to the specification, see section on "User Experience".

- The only text that is displayed on the screen is "Please wait while we install a system update". The text is displayed at the right co-ordinates on the screen as called out in the specification.
- OEM Logo is displayed as described in the specification.

Related topics

[Windows UEFI Firmware Update Platform](#)

[UEFI Validation Option ROM Validation Guidance](#)

Hard Drives and Partitions

6/6/2017 • 7 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

In this section, you will learn methods to deploy Windows to different drives, including hard drives, solid-state drives (SSDs), or virtual hard drives (VHDs). You will also learn about factors that you must consider when you deploy Windows.

What's new in Windows 10

- Use Compact OS and single-sourcing to save more space on the hard drive: [Compact OS, single-sourcing, and image optimization](#).
- Use the FFU image format to apply images faster to your devices: [Deploy Windows using Full Flash Update \(FFU\)](#)
- In Windows 10 for desktop editions (Home, Pro, Enterprise, and Education), we've changed the partition layout. While we still use a separate recovery tools image, Windows no longer needs a separate full-system recovery image to use push-button reset features. This can save several GB of drive space.

We now recommend that you place the Windows recovery tools partition immediately after the Windows partition. This allows Windows to modify and recreate the partition later if future updates require a larger recovery image.

If you use scripts to deploy Windows, check out the new sample scripts we've created for different device firmware types (the newer UEFI-based BIOS, or the legacy BIOS). To learn more, see [UEFI/GPT-based hard drive partitions](#) and [BIOS/MBR-based hard drive partitions](#).

- It's no longer necessary to run the Windows System Assessment Tests (WinSAT) on SSD drives. Windows detects SSD drives and tunes itself accordingly.
- On [UEFI/GPT-based drives](#), we've reduced the recommended size of the MSR partition from 128MB to 16MB.

Drive types

You can install Windows to a hard drive, such as a hard disk drive or a solid-state drive. For additional security, you can use hard drives that the factory has pre-encrypted. A single computer may contain multiple drives.

Solid-state drives

A solid-state drive (SSD) is a hard drive that uses solid-state memory to store persistent data. An SSD must have a minimum of 16 gigabytes (GB) of space to install Windows. For more information about drive space and RAM considerations, see [Compact OS, single-sourcing, and image optimization](#).

Note It's no longer necessary to run the Windows System Assessment Tests (WinSAT) on SSD drives. Windows now detects SSD drives and will tune itself accordingly.

Advanced format drives

You can use some Advanced Format Drives to provide additional drive space.

Advanced Format 512 emulation (512e) drives are supported on either BIOS-based or UEFI-based computers.

Advanced Format 4K Native (4Kn) drives are supported on UEFI-based computers only.

Warning

For Advanced Format 4K Native drives (4-KB-per-sector) drives, the minimum partition size is 260 MB, due to a limitation of the FAT32 file format. The minimum partition size of FAT32 drives is calculated as sector size (4KB) x

65527 = 256 MB. For more information, see [Configure UEFI/GPT-Based Hard Drive Partitions](#).

Factory-encrypted hard drives

To help protect your deployment environment, you can use a factory pre-encrypted hard drive to prevent unauthorized access before you install Windows or any other software. For more information, see [Factory Encrypted Drives](#).

Multiple hard drives

If you install Windows on a device that has multiple hard drives, you can use the disk location path to make sure that your images are applied to the intended drives.

To do this, use the `diskpart SELECT DISK=<disk location path>` command to select each drive. For example:

```
SELECT DISK=PCIROOT(0)#PCI(0100)#ATA(C00T00L00)
```

Note

The system drive might not appear as disk 0 in the DiskPart tool. The system might assign different numbers to drives when you reboot. Different computers that have the same drive configuration can have different disk numbers.

To learn more, see [Configure Multiple Hard Drives](#) and [Hard Disk Location Path Format](#).

Partitions

You can divide your hard drive into multiple partitions. You can create separate system, recovery, Windows, or data partitions.

To enhance the security of the Windows partition or a data partition, you can use BitLocker to encrypt the partition. For more information, see [BitLocker Drive Encryption](#).

The partition types must match the firmware of the computer. You can install Windows on hard drives that are based on any of the following types of firmware:

- **Basic Input/Output System (BIOS)**: Uses the Master Boot Record (MBR) partition structure.
- **Extensible Firmware Interface (EFI) (Class 1)**: Uses the GUID Partition Table (GPT) partition structure.
- **Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI) Class 2**: Uses the GPT partition structure. Also includes a compatibility support module (CSM) that enables you to use BIOS functions, including the MBR partition structure. This module can be enabled or disabled in the firmware.
- **Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI) Class 3**: Uses the GPT partition structure.

To determine your system type, consult your hardware manufacturer.

System and utility partitions

A *system partition* is a partition that contains the hardware-specific files that are needed to load Windows.

By default, during Windows Setup, Windows stores these hardware-specific files in a separate partition. This enables the computer to use the following:

- **Security tools**. Some security tools, such as BitLocker, require a separate system partition.
- **Recovery tools**. Some recovery tools, such as Windows Recovery Environment (Windows RE), require a separate system partition.
- **Multiple operating systems**. If a computer has multiple operating systems, such as Windows 10 for desktop editions and Windows 7, the computer displays a list of operating systems. The user can then select which operating system to boot. When the system boot files are on a separate partition, it is easier to

remove a Windows partition or replace the partition with a new copy of Windows.

We recommend adding system utility partitions before the Windows partition, because in the event that a full-system recovery is needed, this partition order helps to prevent the recovery tools from overwriting the system and utility partitions.

For information about how to configure system partitions while you apply images, see [Capture and Apply Windows, System, and Recovery Partitions](#).

Microsoft reserved partition (MSR)

The MSR is used on UEFI/GPT systems, to support software components that formerly used hidden sectors.

For more information about configuring MSR partitions, see [Configure UEFI/GPT-Based Hard Drive Partitions](#).

For more information about MSR partitions, see [Windows and GPT FAQ](#)

Recovery partitions

We recommend adding a separate partition for the Windows Recovery Environment (Windows RE) at the end of the hard drive. With this partition order, if future updates require adding to or replacing the Windows RE tools partition, Windows will be able to manage the partition size automatically.

For BIOS/MBR-based systems, it's still possible to combine the Windows RE tools partition with the system partition. To save drive space, consider creating logical partitions to get around the four-partition limit. For more info, see [Configure more than four partitions on a BIOS/MBR-based hard disk](#).

For Windows 10 for desktop editions, it's no longer necessary to create and maintain a separate full-system recovery image. Windows can perform a refresh or reset using built-in tools.

Data partitions

A data partition is a partition that stores user data. A separate data partition can enable easier maintenance for situations where either the primary operating system is likely to be replaced, or when multiple operating systems exist on the same device, such as Windows 10 and Windows 7. When a device has multiple hard drives, a data partition may be stored on another drive.

Warning

For typical single-drive configurations, we do not recommend that you use a separate data partition. There are two main reasons:

- The partition may not automatically protect data that is stored outside the user profile folders. For example, a guest user might have access to files in an unprotected data partition.
- If you change the default location of the user profile folders to any volume other than the system volume, you cannot service your image. The computer may not apply updates, fixes, or service packs to the installation. For a list of known issues related to changing the default folder locations, see [Description of known issues with the FolderLocation settings](#).

See also

CONTENT TYPE	REFERENCES
Deployment	Configure UEFI/GPT-Based Hard Drive Partitions Configure BIOS/MBR-Based Hard Drive Partitions Configure More than Four Partitions on a BIOS/MBR-Based Hard Disk

CONTENT TYPE	REFERENCES
Multiple drives	Configure Multiple Hard Drives Hard Disk Location Path Format Internal and External SATA Port Configuration Configuring Disk Mirroring
Using smaller drives	Compact OS , single-sourcing, and image optimization
Operations	Capture and Apply Windows, System, and Recovery Partitions Deploy Windows using Full Flash Update (FFU) Deploy Windows on a VHD (Native Boot) Factory Encrypted Drives BitLocker Drive Encryption
Troubleshooting	Repair the boot menu on a dual-boot PC
Tools and settings	UEFI Firmware The Windows and GPT FAQ BCDboot Command-Line Options DiskPart Command line syntax WIM vs. VHD vs. FFU: comparing image file formats

UEFI/GPT-based hard drive partitions

7/13/2017 • 7 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Create custom partition layouts for your hard disk drives (HDDs), solid-state drives (SSDs), and other drives when deploying Windows to Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI)-based devices.

Note If you use a custom partition layout on Windows 10 for desktop editions (Home, Pro, Enterprise, and Education), update the push-button recovery script so the recovery tools can recreate the custom partition layout when needed.

In this topic:

- [Drive partition rules](#)
- [Default layout](#)
- [Sample Diskpart script](#)

Drive Partition Rules

When you deploy Windows to a UEFI-based device, you must format the hard drive that includes the Windows partition by using a GUID partition table (GPT) file system. Additional drives may use either the GPT or the master boot record (MBR) file format.

A GPT drive may have up to 128 partitions.

Each partition can have a maximum of 18 exabytes (~18.8 million terabytes) of space.

Windows partition requirements:

- **System partition**

The device must contain a system partition. On GPT drives, this is known as the EFI System Partition, or the ESP. This partition is usually stored on the primary hard drive. The device boots to this partition.

The minimum size of this partition is 100 MB, and must be formatted using the FAT32 file format.

This partition is managed by the operating system, and should not contain any other files, including Windows RE tools.

Note

For Advanced Format 4K Native drives (4-KB-per-sector) drives, the minimum size is 260 MB, due to a limitation of the FAT32 file format. The minimum partition size of FAT32 drives is calculated as sector size (4KB) x 65527 = 256 MB.

Advanced Format 512e drives are not affected by this limitation, because their emulated sector size is 512 bytes. 512 bytes x 65527 = 32 MB, which is less than the 100 MB minimum size for this partition.

- **Microsoft® reserved partition (MSR)**

Beginning in Windows 10, the size of the MSR is 16 MB.

Add an MSR to each GPT drive to help with partition management. The MSR is a reserved partition that does not receive a partition ID. It cannot store user data.

- **Other utility partitions**

Any other utility partitions not managed by Windows must be located before the Windows, data, and

recovery image partitions. This allows end users to perform actions such as resizing the Windows partition without affecting system utilities.

Protect end users from accidentally modifying utility partitions by identifying them using a GPT attribute. This prevents these partitions from appearing in File Explorer.

To set partitions as utility partitions

- When you are deploying Windows by using the **DiskPart** tool, use the **attributes volume set GPT_ATTRIBUTE_PLATFORM_REQUIRED** command after you create the partition to identify the partition as a utility partition. For more information, see the MSDN topic: [PARTITION_INFORMATION_GPT structure](#).

To verify that system and utility partitions exist

1. Click **Start**, right-click **This PC**, and then click **Manage**. The **Computer Management** window opens.
2. Click **Disk Management**. The list of available drives and partitions appears.
3. In the list of drives and partitions, confirm that the system and utility partitions are present and are not assigned a drive letter.

● Windows partition

- The partition must have at least 20 gigabytes (GB) of drive space for 64-bit versions, or 16 GB for 32-bit versions.
- The Windows partition must be formatted using the NTFS file format.
- The Windows partition must have enough 10 GB of free space after the user has completed the Out Of Box Experience (OOBE).

● Recovery tools partition

This partition must be at least 300 MB.

This partition must have enough space for the Windows Recovery Environment tools image (winre.wim, typically between 250-300MB, depending on base language and customizations added), plus enough free space so that the partition can be captured by backup utilities:

- If the partition is less than 500 MB, it must have at least 50 MB of free space.
- If the partition is 500 MB or larger, it must have at least 320 MB of free space.
- If the partition is larger than 1 GB, we recommend that it should have at least 1 GB free.
- This partition must use the Type ID: DE94BBA4-06D1-4D40-A16A-BFD50179D6AC.
- The recovery tools should be in a separate partition than the Windows partition to support automatic failover and to support booting partitions encrypted with Windows BitLocker Drive Encryption.

We recommend that you place this partition immediately after the Windows partition. This allows Windows to modify and recreate the partition later if future updates require a larger recovery image.

● Data partitions

The recommended partition layout for Windows 10 does not include data partitions. However, if data partitions are required, they should be placed after the Windows RE partition. This allows future updates to Windows RE to grow the Windows RE partition by shrinking the Windows partition.

This layout makes it more difficult for end users to remove the data partition and merge the space with the Windows partition. To do so, the Windows RE partition must be moved to the end of the unused space reclaimed from the data partition, so that the Windows partition can be extended.

Windows 10 does not include functionality or utility to facilitate this process. However, manufacturers can develop and provide such a utility if PCs are shipped with data partitions.

Partition layout

The default partition layout for UEFI-based PCs is: a system partition, an MSR, a Windows partition, and a recovery tools partition.

Disk 0 default partition layout (UEFI-based PCs)



This layout lets you use Windows BitLocker Drive Encryption through both Windows and through the Windows Recovery Environment.

Sample files: configure drive partitions by using Windows PE and DiskPart scripts

For image-based deployment, boot the PC to [Windows PE](#), and then use the **DiskPart** tool to create the partition structures on your destination PCs.

Note

In these **DiskPart** examples, the partitions are assigned the letters: System=S, Windows=W, and Recovery=R. The MSR partition does not receive a drive letter.

We recommend changing the Windows drive letter to a letter that's near the end of the alphabet, such as W, to avoid drive letter conflicts. Do not use X, because this drive letter is reserved for Windows PE. After the device reboots, the Windows partition is assigned the letter C, and the other partitions don't receive drive letters.

If you reboot, Windows PE reassigns disk letters alphabetically, starting with the letter C, without regard to the configuration in Windows Setup. This configuration can change based on the presence of different drives, such as USB flash drives.

The following steps describe how to partition your hard drives and prepare to apply images. You can use the code in the sections that follow to complete these steps.

To partition hard drives and prepare to apply images

1. Save the following code in the as a text file (CreatePartitions-UEFI.txt) on a USB flash drive.

```

rem == CreatePartitions-UEFI.txt ==
rem == These commands are used with DiskPart to
rem     create four partitions
rem     for a UEFI/GPT-based PC.
rem     Adjust the partition sizes to fill the drive
rem     as necessary. ==
select disk 0
clean
convert gpt
rem == 1. System partition =====
create partition efi size=100
rem     ** NOTE: For Advanced Format 4Kn drives,
rem             change this value to size = 260 **
format quick fs=fat32 label="System"
assign letter="S"
rem == 2. Microsoft Reserved (MSR) partition =====
create partition msr size=16
rem == 3. Windows partition =====
rem ==     a. Create the Windows partition =====
create partition primary
rem ==     b. Create space for the recovery tools ===
shrink minimum=500
rem     ** NOTE: Update this size to match the
rem             size of the recovery tools
rem             (winre.wim) plus free space
rem ==     c. Prepare the Windows partition =====
format quick fs=ntfs label="Windows"
assign letter="W"
rem == 4. Recovery tools partition =====
create partition primary
format quick fs=ntfs label="Recovery tools"
assign letter="R"
set id="de94bba4-06d1-4d40-a16a-bfd50179d6ac"
gpt attributes=0x8000000000000001
list volume
exit

```

2. Use Windows PE to boot the destination PC.
3. Clean and partition the drive. In this example, *F* is the letter of the USB flash drive.

```
DiskPart /s F:\CreatePartitions-UEFI.txt
```

4. If you use a custom partition layout on Windows 10 for desktop editions, update the push-button recovery script so the recovery tools can recreate the custom partition layout when needed.

Next steps

Use a deployment script to apply the Windows images on the newly created partitions. For more information, see [Capture and Apply Windows, System, and Recovery Partitions](#).

Related topics

[Configure BIOS/MBR-Based Hard Drive Partitions](#)

[BitLocker Drive Encryption](#)

[WinPE: Install on a Hard Drive \(Flat Boot or Non-RAM\)](#)

[Configuring Disk Mirroring](#)

[The Windows and GPT FAQ](#)

BIOS/MBR-based hard drive partitions

7/13/2017 • 6 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Create custom partition layouts for your hard disk drives (HDDs), solid-state drives (SSDs), and other drives when deploying Windows to BIOS-based devices.

Note If you use a custom partition layout on Windows 10 for desktop editions (Home, Pro, Enterprise, and Education), update the push-button recovery script so the recovery tools can recreate the custom partition layout when needed.

Drive partition rules

When you deploy Windows to a BIOS-based device, you must format hard drives by using an MBR file system. Windows does not support the GUID partition table (GPT) file system on BIOS-based computers.

An MBR drive can have up to four standard partitions. Typically, these standard partitions are designated as *primary partitions*. For information about how to create additional partitions beyond this limit, see [Configure More than Four Partitions on a BIOS/MBR-Based Hard Disk](#).

Windows partition requirements:

- **System partition**

Each bootable drive must contain a system partition. The system partition must be configured as the active partition.

The minimum size of this partition is 100 MB.

- **Windows partition**

- This partition must have at least 20 gigabytes (GB) of drive space for 64-bit versions, or 16 GB for 32-bit versions.
- This partition must be formatted using the NTFS file format.
- This partition must have enough 10 GB of free space after the user has completed the Out Of Box Experience (OOBE).
- This partition can have a maximum of 2 terabytes (TB) of space. Software tools to extend the visible partition space beyond 2 TB are not supported on BIOS because they can interfere with software solutions for application compatibility and recovery.

- **Recovery tools partition**

The Windows Recovery Environment (Windows RE) tools image (winre.wim) should be in a separate partition than the Windows partition to support automatic failover and to support booting Windows BitLocker Drive Encryption-encrypted partitions.

While this image can be included on the same partition as the system partition, we recommend that you place this partition in a separate partition, immediately after the Windows partition. This allows Windows to modify and recreate the partition later if future updates require a larger recovery image.

This partition must have enough space for the Windows Recovery Environment tools image (winre.wim, typically between 250-300MB, depending on base language and customizations added), plus enough free space so that the partition can be captured by backup utilities:

- If the partition is less than 500 MB, it must have at least 50 MB of free space.

- If the partition is 500 MB or larger, it must have at least 320 MB of free space.
- If the partition is larger than 1 GB, we recommend that it should have at least 1 GB free.
- It must have at least 320 MB of free space.
- We recommend that it should have at least 1 GB free.

- **Data partitions**

The recommended partition layout for Windows 10 does not include utility or data partitions.

However, if utility or data partitions are required, they should be placed either before the Windows partition or after the Windows RE partition. By keeping the Windows and recovery partitions together, then when future updates of Windows RE area available, Windows will be able to grow the Windows RE partition by shrinking the Windows partition.

This layout makes it more difficult for end users to remove the data partition and merge the space with the Windows partition. For example, the Windows RE partition may need to be moved to the end of the unused space reclaimed from the data partition, so that the Windows partition can be extended. Windows 10 does not include functionality or utility to facilitate this process. However, manufacturers can develop and provide such a utility if PCs are shipped with data partitions.

Each partition can have a maximum of 2 terabytes (TB) of space.

If you're going to be adding more than four total partitions to the disk, see [Configure More than Four Partitions on a BIOS/MBR-Based Hard Disk](#) for more info.

Partition layout

If you install Windows using a bootable USB key made by Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer (ICD), it creates the following layout by default: a system partition, a Windows partition, and a recovery tools partition.

Disk 0 default partition layout (BIOS-based PCs)



System and utility partitions

By default, system partitions do not appear in File Explorer. This helps protect end users from accidentally modifying a partition.

To set partitions as utility partitions

1. When you are deploying Windows by using Windows ICD, the partition type will be set automatically.
2. When you are deploying Windows by using the **DiskPart** tool, use the **set id=27** command after you create the partition.

To verify that system and utility partitions exist

1. Click **Start**, right-click **This PC**, and then click **Manage**. The **Computer Management** window opens.
2. Click **Disk Management**. The list of available drives and partitions appears.
3. In the list of drives and partitions, confirm that the system and utility partitions are present and are not assigned a drive letter.

Sample files: configuring disk layout by using Windows PE and DiskPart scripts

For image-based deployment, boot the PC to [Windows PE](#), and then use the **DiskPart** tool to create the partition

structures on your destination PCs.

Note

In these **DiskPart** examples, the partitions are assigned the letters: System=S, Windows=W, and Recovery=R.

We recommend changing the Windows drive letter to a letter that's near the end of the alphabet, such as W, to avoid drive letter conflicts. Do not use X, because this drive letter is reserved for Windows PE. After the device reboots, the Windows partition is assigned the letter C, and the other partitions don't receive drive letters.

If you reboot, Windows PE reassigns disk letters alphabetically, starting with the letter C, without regard to the configuration in Windows Setup. This configuration can change based on the presence of different drives, such as USB flash drives.

The following steps describe how to partition your hard drives and prepare to apply images. You can use the code in the sections that follow to complete these steps.

To partition hard drives and prepare to apply images

1. Save the following code as a text file (CreatePartitions-BIOS.txt) on a USB flash drive.

```
rem == CreatePartitions-BIOS.txt ==
rem == These commands are used with DiskPart to
rem     create three partitions
rem     for a BIOS/MBR-based computer.
rem     Adjust the partition sizes to fill the drive
rem     as necessary. ==
select disk 0
clean
rem == 1. System partition =====
create partition primary size=100
format quick fs=ntfs label="System"
assign letter="S"
active
rem == 2. Windows partition =====
rem ==     a. Create the Windows partition =====
create partition primary
rem ==     b. Create space for the recovery tools
shrink minimum=500
rem         ** NOTE: Update this size to match the
rem             size of the recovery tools
rem             (winre.wim)
rem ==     c. Prepare the Windows partition =====
format quick fs=ntfs label="Windows"
assign letter="W"
rem == 3. Recovery tools partition =====
create partition primary
format quick fs=ntfs label="Recovery"
assign letter="R"
set id=27
list volume
exit
```

2. Use Windows PE to boot the destination computer.
3. Clean and partition the drive. In this example, *F* is the letter of the USB flash drive.

```
DiskPart /s F:\CreatePartitions-BIOS.txt
```

4. If you use a custom partition layout on Windows 10 for desktop editions, update the push-button recovery script so the recovery tools can recreate the custom partition layout when needed.

Next steps

Use a deployment script to apply the Windows images on the newly created partitions. For more information, see [Capture and Apply Windows, System, and Recovery Partitions](#).

Related topics

[Configure More than Four Partitions on a BIOS/MBR-Based Hard Disk](#)

[Configure UEFI/GPT-Based Hard Drive Partitions](#)

[BitLocker Drive Encryption](#)

[Configuring Disk Mirroring](#)

Windows and GPT FAQ

6/14/2017 • 21 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Answers to frequently asked questions about the GUID Partition Table (GPT).

This version of the Windows and GPT FAQ applies to Windows 10 and Windows Server 2016. For a previous version of this FAQ, see [Windows and GPT FAQ on MSDN](#).

Since the introduction of the personal computer, the data storage area on a hard disk has been divided into smaller areas called sectors. These sectors are grouped into partitions creating separate volumes, or 'drives' on a disk. The partitions were organized using a scheme called the Master Boot Record (MBR). The MBR is a table of disk locations, or addresses, along with a certain length, of each of the partitions present on the disk. The MBR itself occupies a small amount of the disk and is read during the boot phase to determine where to locate the operating system to boot into. The MBR information is also used by the operating system as a map of the volumes present on the disk.

Eventually, data density for disks became too large for the MBR scheme to account for all the available data locations. Also, the layout, or format, of the MBR was designed for early computers and not flexible enough to accommodate newer disk configurations. A new partitioning method was needed so the GUID Partition Table (GPT) partitioning scheme was created.

GPT

What is a GPT disk?

The GUID Partition Table (GPT) was introduced as part of the Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI) initiative. GPT provides a more flexible mechanism for partitioning disks than the older Master Boot Record (MBR) partitioning scheme that was common to PCs.

A partition is a contiguous space of storage on a physical or logical disk that functions as if it were a physically separate disk. Partitions are visible to the system firmware and the installed operating systems. Access to a partition is controlled by the system firmware before the system boots the operating system, and then by the operating system after it is started.

What is wrong with MBR partitioning?

MBR disks support only four partition table entries. For more than four partitions, a secondary structure known as an extended partition is necessary. Extended partitions can then be subdivided into one or more logical disks.

Windows creates MBR disk partitions and logical drives on cylinder boundaries based on the reported geometry, although this information no longer has any relationship to the physical characteristics of the hardware (disk driver or RAID controller). Starting with Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008, more logical boundaries are selected when the hardware provides better hints at the true cache or physical alignment. Because this partition information is stored on the drive itself, the operating system is not dependent on the alignment.

MBR partitioning rules are complex and poorly specified. For example, does cylinder alignment mean that each partition must be at least one cylinder in length? An MBR partition is identified by a two-byte field, and coordination is necessary to avoid collision. IBM originally provided that coordination, but today there is no single authoritative list of partition identifiers.

Another common practice is using partitioned or "hidden" sectors to hold specific information by using undocumented processes and results in problems that are difficult to debug. In the past, vendor-specific implementations and tools were released to the public, which made support difficult.

Why do we need GPT?

GPT disks allow for growth. The number of partitions on a GPT disk isn't constrained by temporary schemes such as container partitions as defined by the MBR Extended Boot Record (EBR). The GPT disk partition format is well defined and fully self-identifying. Data critical to platform operation is located in partitions and not in unpartitioned or "hidden" sectors. GPT disks use primary and backup partition tables for redundancy and CRC32 fields for improved partition data structure integrity. The GPT partition format uses version number and size fields for future expansion.

Each GPT partition has a unique identification GUID and a partition content type, so no coordination is necessary to prevent partition identifier collision. Each GPT partition has a 36-character Unicode name. This means that any software can present a human-readable name for the partition without any additional understanding of the partition.

Where can I find the specification for GPT disk partitioning?

Chapter 5 of the Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI) specification (version 2.3) defines the GPT format. This specification is available at <http://www.uefi.org/specifications>.

What is the GPT format for basic disks?

Basic disks are the most commonly used storage types with Windows. "Basic disk" refers to a disk that contains partitions, such as primary partitions and logical drives, usually formatted with a file system to become a volume for file storage.

The protective MBR area on a GPT partition table exists for backward compatibility with disk management utilities that operate on MBR. The GPT header defines the range of logical block addresses that are usable by partition entries. The GPT header also defines its location on the disk, its GUID, and a 32-bit cyclic redundancy check (CRC32) checksum that is used to verify the integrity of the GPT header. Each entry in the GUID partition table begins with a partition type GUID. The 16-byte partition type GUID, which is similar to a System ID in the partition table of an MBR disk, identifies the type of data that the partition contains and identifies how the partition is used, for example, whether it is a basic disk or a dynamic disk. Note that each GUID partition entry has a backup copy.

For more information about basic disks, see [Basic and Dynamic Disks](#).

What is the GPT format for dynamic disks?

Dynamic disks were first introduced with Windows 2000 and provide features that basic disks don't, such as the ability to create volumes that span multiple disks (spanned and striped volumes) and the ability to create fault-tolerant volumes (mirrored and RAID-5 volumes). Dynamic disks can use the MBR or GPT partition styles on systems that support both. For more information about dynamic disks, see [Basic and Dynamic Disks](#).

Is UEFI required for a GPT disk?

No. GPT disks are self-identifying. All the information needed to interpret the partitioning scheme of a GPT disk is completely contained in structures in specified locations on the physical media.

How big can a GPT disk be?

In theory, a GPT disk can be up to 2^{64} logical blocks in length. Logical blocks are commonly 512 bytes in size.

The maximum partition (and disk) size depends on the operating system version. Windows XP and the original release of Windows Server 2003 have a limit of 2TB per physical disk, including all partitions. For Windows Server 2003 SP1, Windows XP x64 edition, and later versions, the maximum raw partition of 18 exabytes can be supported. (Windows file systems currently are limited to 256 terabytes each.)

How many partitions can a GPT disk have?

The specification allows an almost unlimited number of partitions. However, the Windows implementation restricts this to 128 partitions. The number of partitions is limited by the amount of space reserved for partition entries in the GPT.

Can a disk be both GPT and MBR?

No. However, all GPT disks contain a Protective MBR.

What is a Protective MBR?

The Protective MBR, beginning in sector 0, precedes the GPT partition table on the disk. The MBR contains one type 0xEE partition that spans the disk.

Why does the GPT have a Protective MBR?

The Protective MBR protects GPT disks from previously released MBR disk tools such as Microsoft MS-DOS FDISK or Microsoft Windows NT Disk Administrator. These tools are not aware of GPT and don't know how to properly access a GPT disk. Legacy software that does not know about GPT interprets only the Protected MBR when it accesses a GPT disk. These tools will view a GPT disk as having a single encompassing (possibly unrecognized) partition by interpreting the Protected MBR, rather than mistaking the disk for one that is unpartitioned.

Why would a GPT-partitioned disk appear to have an MBR on it?

This occurs when you use an MBR-only-aware disk tool to access the GPT disk. For more information, see the following questions:

- Can a disk be both GPT and MBR?
- What is a Protective MBR?
- Why does the GPT have a Protective MBR?

Windows disk support

Can Windows XP x64 read, write, and boot from GPT disks?

Windows XP x64 Edition can use GPT disks for data only.

Can the 32-bit version of Windows XP read, write, and boot from GPT disks?

No. The 32-bit version will see only the Protective MBR. The EE partition will not be mounted or otherwise exposed to application software.

Can the 32- and 64-bit versions of Windows Server 2003 read, write, and boot from GPT disks?

Starting with Windows Server 2003 Service Pack 1, all versions of Windows Server can use GPT partitioned disks for data. Booting is only supported for 64-bit editions on Itanium-based systems.

Can Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, and later read, write, and boot from GPT disks?

Yes, all versions can use GPT partitioned disks for data. Booting is only supported for 64-bit editions on UEFI-based systems.

Can Windows 2000, Windows NT 4, or Windows 95/98 read, write, and boot from GPT?

No. Again, legacy software will see only the Protective MBR.

Is it possible to move a GPT disk to another computer?

You can move, or migrate, data-only GPT disks to other systems that are running Windows XP (64-bit edition only) or later versions of the operating system (32- or 64-bit editions). You can migrate data-only GPT disks after the system has been shutdown or after the safe removal of the disk.

What about mixing and matching GPT and MBR disks on the same system?

GPT and MBR disks can be mixed on systems that support GPT, as described earlier. However, you must be aware of the following restrictions:

- Systems that support UEFI require that boot partition must reside on a GPT disk. Other hard disks can be either MBR or GPT.
- Both MBR and GPT disks can be present in a single dynamic disk group. Volume sets can span both MBR and

GPT disks.

What about removable media?

Removable media must be MBR, GPT, or "superfloppy."

What is a superfloppy?

Removable media without either GPT or MBR formatting is considered a "superfloppy". The entire media is treated as a single partition.

The media manufacturer performs any MBR partitioning of removable media. If the media has an MBR, only one partition is supported. There is little user-discernible difference between MBR-partitioned media and superfloppies.

Examples of removable media include floppy disk drives, JAZ disk cartridges, magneto-optical media, DVD-ROM, and CD-ROM. Hard disk drives on external buses such as SCSI or IEEE 1394 are not considered removable.

What is the default behavior of Windows XP 64-Bit Edition Version 2003 when partitioning media?

For Windows XP 64-Bit Edition Version 2003 only (for Itanium-based systems), fixed disks are partitioned by using GPT partitioning. GPT disks can be converted to MBR disks only if all existing partitioning is first deleted, with associated loss of data.

What is the default behavior of the 32-bit version of Windows XP, Windows Server 2003 and Windows XP x64 when partitioning media?

Only MBR disks can be used.

How can a drive letter in the operating system be mapped to a partition in UEFI firmware?

There is no inherent mapping between drive letter and partition that can be used to determine one from the other. A basic data partition must be identified by its partition GUID.

How can an ESP partition be created?

ESP partitions can be created by using the UEFI firmware utility Diskpart.efi or the Windows command line utility Diskpart.exe.

What can be changed on a partition?

You shouldn't directly change any partition header entry. Don't use disk tools or utilities to make alterations or changes.

What partitioning does Windows support on detachable disks?

Detachable disks are typically expected to migrate between computers or simply to be unavailable to the operating system at times. Examples of detachable disks are USB disks, which can be easily disconnected by the end-user.

Windows XP supports only MBR partitioning on detachable disks. Later versions of Windows support GPT partitions on detachable disks.

For more about removable media, see the following questions:

- What about removable media?
- What is a superfloppy?

Windows GPT required partitions: EFI System Partition

What is the Extensible Firmware Interface System Partition (ESP)?

The ESP contains the NTLDR, HAL, Boot.txt, and other files that are needed to boot the system, such as drivers. The Partition GUID defines the ESP:

```
DEFINE_GUID (PARTITION_SYSTEM_GUID, 0xC12A7328L, 0xF81F, 0x11D2, 0xBA, 0x4B, 0x00, 0xA0, 0xC9, 0x3E, 0xC9, 0x3B)
```

Do only GPT Disks have ESPs?

No, MBR disks can also have ESPs. UEFI specifies booting from either GPT or MBR. The ESP on an MBR disk is identified by partition type 0xEF. However, Windows does not support booting UEFI from MBR disks or 0xEF partitions.

How big is the ESP?

The ESP is approximately 100MBs.

Can there be two ESPs on a single disk?

Such a configuration shouldn't be created, and is not supported in Windows.

What about two ESPs on two different disks?

ESP partitions can be replicated for high-availability configurations. Replication must be done manually and the contents must be synchronized manually when using software volumes. Hardware vendors may provide additional solutions for high availability. ESP partitions cannot be mirrored.

What does Microsoft place in the ESP?

Microsoft places the HAL, loader, and other files that are needed to boot the operating system in the ESP.

Where should the ESP be placed on the disk?

The ESP should be first on the disk. The primary benefit to placing the ESP first, is that it is impossible to span volumes when the ESP is logically between the two data partitions that you are attempting to span.

What should a system or device manufacturer place in the ESP?

The ESP should only include files that are required for booting an operating system, platform tools that run before operating system boot, or files that must be accessed before operating system boot. For example, files that are required for performing pre-boot system maintenance must be placed in the ESP.

Other value-add files or diagnostics used while the operating system is running should not be placed in the ESP. It is important to note that the space in the ESP is a limited system resource; its primary purpose is to provide storage for the files that are needed to boot the operating system.

Where should a system manufacturer place files such as platform diagnostics or other value-added files?

The preferred option is for system manufacturers to place value-add contents in an OEM-specific partition. Just like MBR OEM partitions, the contents of GPT OEM (or other unrecognized) partitions are not exposed (given drive letters or returned in volume lists). Users are warned that deleting the partition can cause the system to fail to operate. An OEM-specific partition should be placed before the MSR and after any ESP on the disk. Although not architectural, this placement has the same benefits as placing the ESP first. For example, it is also impossible to span volumes when an OEM-specific partition is logically between the two data partitions that you are attempting to span.

Placement in the ESP is an option for applications or files that execute in the pre-operating system boot environment. However, the ESP is architecturally shared space and represents a limited resource. Consuming space in the ESP should be considered carefully. Files that are not relevant to the pre-operating system boot environment should not be placed in the ESP.

What is a Microsoft Reserved Partition (MSR)?

The Microsoft Reserved Partition (MSR) reserves space on each disk drive for subsequent use by operating system software. GPT disks do not allow hidden sectors. Software components that formerly used hidden sectors now allocate portions of the MSR for component-specific partitions. For example, converting a basic disk to a dynamic disk causes the MSR on that disk to be reduced in size and a newly created partition holds the dynamic disk database. The MSR has the Partition GUID:

```
DEFINE_GUID (PARTITION_MSFT_RESERVED_GUID, 0xE3C9E316L, 0x0B5C, 0x4DB8, 0x81, 0x7D, 0xF9, 0x2D, 0xF0, 0x02, 0x15, 0xAE)
```

What disks require an MSR?

Every GPT disk must contain an MSR. The order of partitions on the disk should be ESP (if any), OEM (if any) and MSR followed by primary data partition(s). It is particularly important that the MSR be created before other primary data partitions.

Who creates the MSR?

The MSR must be created when disk-partitioning information is first written to the drive. If the manufacturer partitions the disk, the manufacturer must create the MSR at the same time. If Windows partitions the disk during setup, Windows creates the MSR.

Why must the MSR be created when the disk is first partitioned?

After the disk is partitioned, there will be no free space left to create an MSR.

How big is the MSR?

When initially created, the size of the MSR depends on the size of the disk drive:

- On drives less than 16GB in size, the MSR is 32MB.
- On drives greater than or equal two 16GB, the MSR is 128 MB.

As the MSR is divided into other partitions, it becomes smaller.

Windows GPT ESP implementation

What partitions are required by Windows?

For UEFI systems, the boot drive must contain an ESP, an MSR, and at least one basic data partition that contains the operating system. Only one ESP should exist on a system even if multiple operating systems are installed on that system. In a mirrored boot configuration there may actually be two drives with an ESP but they are considered to be a redundant copy of the same ESP. Each data drive must contain at least an MSR and one basic data partition.

All basic data partitions on the drive should be contiguous. As noted above, placing an OEM-specific or other unrecognized partition between data partitions imposes limitations on later volume spanning.

What is a basic data partition?

Basic data partitions correspond to primary MBR partitions 0x6 (FAT), 0x7 (NTFS), or 0xB (FAT32). Each basic partition can be mounted using a drive letter or mount point, other volume device object, or both. Each basic data partition is represented in Windows as a volume device object, and optionally as a mount point or a drive letter.

How is a basic data partition identified?

It has the following partition type GUID:

```
DEFINE_GUID (PARTITION_BASIC_DATA_GUID, 0xEB0A0A2L, 0xB9E5, 0x4433, 0x87, 0xC0, 0x68, 0xB6, 0xB7, 0x26, 0x99, 0xC7);
```

Will end-users see the ESP partition?

The ESP partition isn't hidden, but also doesn't have an assigned drive letter. It will not appear in Explorer unless a drive letter gets assigned to it, but some tools will be able to list it.

Will end-users see the MSR and OEM-specific partitions?

Users will not see these partitions exposed in Windows Explorer, nor is any recognized file system exposed to legacy programs such as Context Indexing. The OEM-specific and other unrecognized partitions will be visible only in the Disk Management MMC snap-in since they will not have a recognizable file system.

What partitions are mounted by default by Windows?

Windows exposes only basic data partitions. Other partitions with FAT file systems may be mounted, but not exposed only programmatically. Only basic data partitions are assigned drive letters or mount points.

The ESP FAT file system is mounted, but not exposed. This allows programs running under Windows to update the

contents of the ESP. Assigning a drive letter to the ESP using `mountvol /s` will allow access to the partition. Access to the ESP requires admin privilege. Although the MSR, and any partitions created from the MSR, could have recognizable file systems, none are exposed.

Any OEM-specific partitions or partitions associated with other operating systems are not recognized by Windows. Unrecognized partitions with recognizable file systems are treated like the ESP. They will be mounted, but not exposed. Unlike MBR disks, there is no practical difference between OEM-specific partitions and other operating system partitions; all are "unrecognized."

How can the user see the ESP, OEM, and other unrecognized partitions?

The user can use disk management tools such as the Disk Management utility or the `diskpart.exe` Windows command line. The MSR and any partitions created from the MSR are only visible from the command line.

What about dynamic disks?

Dynamic disks use two different GPT partitions?

- A data container partition that corresponds to the MBR partition 0x42, with the following GUID:

```
DEFINE_GUID (PARTITION_LDM_DATA_GUID, 0xAF9B60A0L, 0x1431, 0x4F62, 0xBC, 0x68, 0x33, 0x11, 0x71, 0x4A,  
0x69, 0xAD)
```

```
;
```

- A partition to contain the dynamic configuration database, with the following GUID:

```
DEFINE_GUID(PARTITION_LDM_METADATA_GUID, 0x5808C8AAL, 0x7E8F, 0x42E0, 0x85, 0xD2, 0xE1, 0xE9, 0x04, 0x34,  
0xCF, 0xB3)
```

```
);
```

Volumes are created in the data container and mounted by default. Again, this is exactly the same as the contents of 0x42 MBR partitions.

What happens when a basic disk is converted to dynamic?

For a drive to be eligible for conversion to dynamic, all basic data partitions on the drive must be contiguous. If other unrecognized partitions separate basic data partitions, the disk can't be converted. This is one of the reasons that the MSR must be created before any basic data partitions. The first step in conversion is to separate a portion of the MSR to create the configuration database partition. All non-bootable basic partitions are then combined into a single data container partition. Boot partitions are retained as separate data container partitions. This is analogous to conversion of primary partitions.

Windows XP and later versions of Windows differ from Windows 2000 in that basic and extended partitions are preferentially converted to a single 0x42 partition, rather than being retained as multiple distinct 0x42 partitions as on Windows 2000.

Can a system contain a mix of GPT and MBR dynamic disks?

Yes. For more information, see What about mixing and matching GPT and MBR disks on the same system?

How can a specific partition be mounted?

You can access the GPT disk partitions of different types using the tools that are listed in the following table.

TOOL	WINDOWS	FIRMWARE
Diskpart.efi Disk Partition Tool		ESP MSR Data
Diskpart.exe Disk Partition Tool	ESP MSR Data	
Diskmgmt.msc Logical Disk Manager	ESP Data	
Explorer.exe File Explorer	Data	

By using the Microsoft Platform SDK APIs, you can also develop your own tools to access the GPT disk partitions at their primitive levels.

How are GPT disks managed in Windows?

GPT and MBR disks are managed the same way. Disks can be formatted as GPT or MBR by using the Diskpart.exe command prompt utility or by using the Disk Administrator snap-in. Volumes can be created on both GPT and MBR disks, and both kinds of disks can be mixed in the same dynamic disk group.

What about FTdisk sets?

Starting with Windows XP, there is no FTdisk set support on Windows for MBR or GPT disks. The only support for logical volumes is through dynamic disks.

Can a disk be converted from GPT to MBR, and vice versa?

Yes, Microsoft offers [MBR2GPT.exe](#) which converts disks from MBR to GPT.

What file systems are supported on GPT disks?

NTFS is recommended on all basic data partitions and all dynamic volumes. Windows Setup and the Disk Management snap-in offer only NTFS. To circumvent that, the partition or volume must be formatted explicitly via the Format command-line tool.

manipulating GPT disks and their contents

How do I create a GPT disk?

You can create a GPT disk only on an empty, unpartitioned disk (raw disk or empty MBR disk). For more information about creating GPT disks, see [Using GPT Drives](#).

How do I convert an MBR or GPT disk?

You can convert an existing partition format to another format. For more information, see the following TechNet articles:

- [Change a Master Boot Record Disk into a GUID Partition Table Disk](#)
- [Change a GUID Partition Table Disk into a Master Boot Record Disk](#)

Is it possible to make a sector-by-sector copy of a GPT disk?

No. The Disk and Partition GUIDs will no longer be unique. This must never happen. You can make a sector-by-sector copy of the contents of ESP or basic data partitions.

Is there any way to copy a whole GPT disk using the OPK imaging tools?

Yes. However, there are some key caveats. The OEM Preinstallation Kit (OPK) initializes the Disk and Partition GUIDs to zero. On first boot of Windows, the operating system generates unique GUIDs. The OPK only supports generation of ESP, MSR, and basic data partitions.

If an application has recorded any Disk or Partition GUIDs it may break. Any applications, drivers, utilities, or firmware implementations supplied by system manufacturers or application vendors that rely on GUIDs should be capable of handling GUIDs that change from the OPK initialization values to those generated by the operating system.

What is the Diskpart.efi MAKE command?

It is a way for OEMs to simplify operating system preinstallation and system recovery. This command can easily be extended to create a "default" disk configuration for the platform. For example, the system manufacturer could extend the MAKE command to automatically partition the boot drive with an ESP, MSR, an OEM-specific partition, and one basic data partition.

For example, consider a possible disk configuration called BOOT_DISK. In the event of business failure recovery, MAKE BOOT_DISK would allow the customer to completely repartition a boot disk to the original factory defaults.

What happens if a duplicate Disk or Partition GUID is detected?

Windows will generate new GUIDs for any duplicate Disk GUID, MSR Partition GUID, or MSR basic data GUID upon detection. This is similar to the duplicate MBR signature handling in Windows 2000. Duplicate GUIDs on a dynamic container or database partition cause unpredictable results.

Configure More than Four Partitions on a BIOS/MBR-Based Hard Disk

7/13/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

This topic describes how to configure more than four disk partitions when you deploy Windows on BIOS and master boot record (MBR)-based devices.

Disk partition rules

- On BIOS-based systems, you can designate one of the four standard partitions as an *extended partition*.
An extended partition is a special partition that can be divided into additional partitions that are called *logical partitions*. An extended partition cannot store files. An extended partition does not receive a partition ID.
- You can include as many logical partitions as your disk can hold.
Logical partitions can store files. You can use a logical partition as the Windows partition.

For additional disk partition rules for BIOS-based systems, see [Configure BIOS/MBR-Based Hard Drive Partitions](#).

Recommendations

- Add system and utility partitions before you add the Windows partition.
- Add the recovery tools partition immediately after the Windows partition. When you use this partition order, then when future updates to the recovery tools are needed, the partition can be resized automatically.

Sample partition layout:

Sample partition layout for BIOS-based PCs with more than 4 partitions



Configuring disk partitions by using a DiskPart script in Windows PE

For image-based deployment, boot the device by using Windows PE, and then use the DiskPart tool to create the partition structures on your destination devices. For more information, see [Apply Images Using DISM](#).

Note

Windows PE reassigns disk letters alphabetically, beginning with the letter "C", without regard to the configuration in Windows Setup. This configuration can change based on the presence of different drives, including USB flash drives.

In these DiskPart examples, the partitions are assigned the letters "U", "V", "S", "W", and "R" to avoid drive-letter conflicts. After the device reboots, Windows PE automatically assigns the letter "C" to the Windows partition. The Utility1, Utility2, system, and recovery image partitions do not receive drive letters.

The following steps describe how to partition your hard drives and prepare to apply images. You can use the code in the sections that follow to complete these steps.

To partition hard drives and prepare to apply images

1. Save the code in the following sections as a text file (PrepareMyPartitions.txt) on a USB flash drive.
2. Use Windows PE to boot the destination device.
3. Use the `DiskPart /s F:\PrepareMyPartitions.txt` command, where *F* is the letter of the USB flash drive, to partition the drives.

Sample code

Save the following code as "PrepareMyPartitions.txt", and then run the script by using the DiskPart tool to automate the configuration of the Utility1, Utility2, system, extended, Windows, and recovery tools partitions:

```
select disk 0
clean
rem == 1. System partition =====
create partition primary size=100
format quick fs=ntfs label="System"
assign letter="S"
active
rem == 2. Utility partition =====
create partition primary size=100
format quick fs=ntfs label="Utility1"
assign letter="U"
set id=27
rem == 3. Utility partition =====
create partition primary size=200
format quick fs=ntfs label="Utility2"
assign letter="V"
set id=27
rem == 4. Extended partition =====
create partition extended
rem == 4a. Windows partition =====
rem ==   a. Create the Windows partition =====
create partition logical
rem ==   b. Create space for the recovery tools
shrink minimum=500
rem      ** NOTE: Update this size to match the
rem      size of the recovery tools
rem      (winre.wim)      **
rem ==   c. Prepare the Windows partition =====
format quick fs=ntfs label="Windows"
assign letter="C"
rem == 4b. Recovery tools partition =====
create partition logical
format quick fs=ntfs label="Recovery"
assign letter="R"
set id=27
list volume
exit
```

Next Steps

After you create the partitions, you can use a deployment script to apply the Windows images on the newly created partitions. For more information, see [Capture and Apply Windows, System, and Recovery Partitions](#).

Related topics

[Configure BIOS/MBR-Based Hard Drive Partitions](#)

Configure multiple hard drives

7/13/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

If you are deploying Windows to a computer that has multiple hard drives, you can verify that the image is applied to a specific hard drive by using hardware-specific identifiers such as the location path or the hardware interrupt value.

The location path is a string that specifies the physical location that each drive is connected to the computer, for example: `PCIROOT(0)#PCI(0100)#ATA(C00T00L00)`. When manufacturing a computer, use a consistent physical location when connecting your drives, and then use the location path string to identify each hard drive.

For BIOS-based computers or a computer that is running Virtual Disk Service (VDS), you can use the **SELECT DISK=SYSTEM** and **SELECT DISK=NEXT** commands to select the appropriate hard drive.

Identifying a drive location path

- Use the DiskPart commands: **list disk** and **select disk <disk number>** (Example: **select disk 1**) to navigate between the drives on your computer.

To show the location path of a selected drive, use the DiskPart command `detail disk`.

In the following example, the location path of the selected drive is `PCIROOT(0)#PCI(0100)#ATA(C00T00L00)`.

```
DISKPART> detail disk

HITACHI HTS722016K9SA00
Disk ID: 5E27161A
Type     : ATA
Bus      : 0
Target   : 0
LUN ID   : 0
Location Path : PCIROOT(0)#PCI(0100)#ATA(C00T00L00)
Read-only  : No
Boot Disk  : Yes
PagefileDisk : Yes
Hibernation File Disk : No
CrashdumpDisk : Yes
Clustered Disk : No

Volume ### Ltr Label        Fs     Type        Size     Status     Info
-----  ---  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----
Volume 1      C               NTFS   Partition   149 GB  Healthy   System

DISKPART>
```

Selecting Drives

Selecting the system drive

1. **BIOS-based computers:** Use the command **SELECT DISK=SYSTEM** to select the default system drive.

This command selects the drive that has an interrupt 13h value of 80h. If the value 80h is assigned to a USB flash drive, this command selects a hard drive that has a value of 81h.

2. **UEFI-based computers:** To select a drive, use the DiskPart command **SELECT DISK=<location path>**.

Note

Do not use the **SELECT DISK=SYSTEM** command or the GetSystemDiskNTPath API on Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI)-based computers to select the system drive. The **SELECT DISK=SYSTEM** command and the GetSystemDiskNTPath API identify the drive that the operating system was booted from as the system drive. If you boot from Windows® PE, this command selects the Windows PE drive as the system drive. If you boot from a system that has multiple drives that include an EFI system partition (ESP), this command may select the wrong drive.

Selecting a non-system drive

1. **Select the drive by location path.** To select a drive, use the DiskPart command **SELECT DISK=<location path>**, where <location path> is the location path of your drive. This command helps specify a drive by location.

Example:

```
SELECT DISK=PCIROOT(0)#PCI(0100)#ATA(C00T00L00)
```

2. **Select the drive by using the "NEXT" drive.** Use the DiskPart command **SELECT DISK=NEXT**. This command helps specify any remaining hard drives, regardless of location. To select more drives, repeat the **SELECT DISK=NEXT** command to select each drive in order. If there are no more drives to select, DiskPart returns an error.

Note

The computer maintains the context for the **SELECT DISK=NEXT** command as long as DiskPart continues running. If DISKPART exits, the computer loses this context.

```

UEFI-based example:

```
SELECT DISK=PCIROOT(0)#PCI(0100)#ATA(C00T00L00)
clean
convert gpt
rem == 1. System partition =====
create partition efi size=100
rem ** NOTE: For Advanced Format 4Kn drives,
rem change this value to size = 260 **
format quick fs=fat32 label="System"
assign letter="S"
rem == 2. Microsoft Reserved (MSR) partition =====
create partition msr size=16
rem == 3. Windows partition =====
rem == a. Create the Windows partition =====
create partition primary
rem == b. Create space for the recovery tools ===
shrink minimum=500
rem ** NOTE: Update this size to match the
rem size of the recovery tools
rem (winre.wim) **
rem == c. Prepare the Windows partition =====
format quick fs=ntfs label="Windows"
assign letter="W"
rem == 4. Recovery tools partition =====
create partition primary
format quick fs=ntfs label="Recovery tools"
assign letter="R"
set id="de94bba4-06d1-4d40-a16a-bfd50179d6ac"
gpt attributes=0x8000000000000001
rem NON-SYSTEM DRIVE =====
SELECT DISK=NEXT
clean
convert gpt
rem == 1. Microsoft Reserved (MSR) partition =====
create partition msr size=16
rem == 2. Data partition =====
create partition primary
format quick fs=ntfs label="Data"
assign letter=z
```
```

```

## Identifying the system drive after a reboot

After you reboot, drive lettering may change. You can use the following example script to select the system drive and then reassign letters to the ESP, recovery, and Windows partitions.

```

SELECT DISK=PCIROOT(0)#PCI(0100)#ATA(C01T01L00)
select partition=1
assign letter=s
select partition=2
assign letter=t
select partition=3
assign letter=w

```

## Formatting non-system drives

This example script selects the system drive and then skips past the drive without modifying the contents of the drive. The script then selects two non-system drives and creates a single, formatted, empty partition on each drive. The partitions do not receive an image, so it is not necessary to specifically identify them.

UEFI-based example:

```
SELECT DISK=PCIROOT(0)#PCI(0100)#ATA(C01T01L00)
SELECT DISK=NEXT
clean
convert gpt
create partition msr size=16
create partition primary
format quick fs=ntfs label="DataDrive1"
SELECT DISK=NEXT
clean
convert gpt
create partition primary
format quick fs=ntfs label="DataDrive2"
```

## Related topics

[Hard Disk Location Path Format](#)

[DiskPart Command line syntax](#)

# Capture and Apply Windows, System, and Recovery Partitions

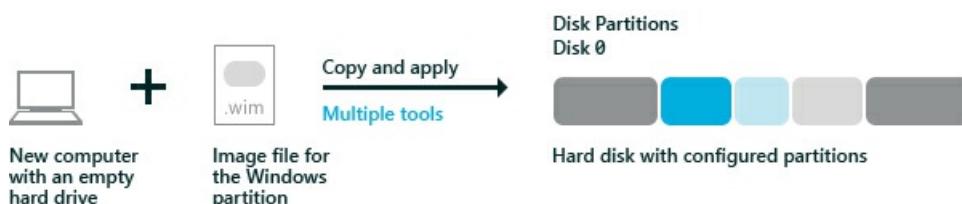
7/13/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Capture a Windows image (.WIM) file and use it to deploy Windows to new devices.

Rather than capturing each partition, you can capture just the Windows partition into an image, and then use the files from that image to set up the rest of the partitions on the drive.

The following diagram illustrates this process:

**Capture only the Windows image, and configure other partitions during deployment**



## Prepare to capture the image

- Generalize the Windows image, so it can be deployed to other devices. For more information, see [Sysprep \(Generalize\) a Windows installation](#).

## Capture the image

- Boot the device using [Windows PE](#).
- Optional: speed up the image capture by setting the power scheme to High performance:

```
powercfg /s 8c5e7fda-e8bf-4a96-9a85-a6e23a8c635c
```

- Capture the Windows partition. For example:

```
Dism /Capture-Image /ImageFile:"D:\fabrikam.wim" /CaptureDir:C:\ /Name:Fabrikam
```

Where D: is a USB flash drive or other file storage location.

## Applying the image

Here's a few ways to apply the image:

### Apply the image manually

- On the destination device, use a DiskPart script to configure and format your hard drive partitions. For more information, see [Configure UEFI/GPT-Based Hard Drive Partitions](#) or [Configure BIOS/MBR-Based Hard Drive Partitions](#).

#### Note

If you apply an image to a volume that has an existing Windows installation, files from the previous installation may not be deleted. Format the volume by using a tool such as DiskPart before you apply the new image. For example:

```
diskpart /s D:\CreatePartitions-UEFI.txt
```

Where D: is a USB flash drive or other file storage location.

In these **DiskPart** examples, the partitions are assigned the letters: System=S, Windows=W, and Recovery=R.

We recommend changing the Windows drive letter to a letter that's near the end of the alphabet, such as W, to avoid drive letter conflicts. Do not use X, because this drive letter is reserved for Windows PE. After the device reboots, the Windows partition is assigned the letter C, and the other partitions don't receive drive letters.

If you reboot, Windows PE reassigns disk letters alphabetically, starting with the letter C, without regard to the configuration in Windows Setup. This configuration can change based on the presence of different drives, such as USB flash drives.

2. Optional: speed up the image capture by setting the power scheme to High performance:

```
powercfg /s 8c5e7fd-a8bf-4a96-9a85-a6e23a8c635c
```

3. Apply the image to the Windows partition:

```
dism /Apply-Image /ImageFile:D:\install.wim /Index:1 /ApplyDir:W:\
```

where W: is the Windows partition.

4. Configure the system partition by using the BCDBoot tool. This tool copies and configures system partition files by using files from the Windows partition. For example:

```
W:\Windows\System32\bcdboot W:\Windows /s S:
```

5. Copy the Windows Recovery Environment (RE) tools into the recovery tools partition.

```
md R:\Recovery\WindowsRE
copy W:\Windows\System32\Recovery\winre.wim R:\Recovery\WindowsRE\winre.wim
```

Where R: is the recovery partition

6. Register the location of the WindowsRE tools by using REAgentC.

```
W:\Windows\System32\reagentc /setreimage /path R:\Recovery\WindowsRE /target W:\Windows
```

## Apply the image using a script

1. Prerequisite: Create DiskPart scripts to deploy your images. For samples, get: [CreatePartitions-UEFI.txt](#) or [CreatePartitions-BIOS.txt](#).
2. Copy the following script into Notepad, and then save the file as ApplyImage.bat:

```

rem == ApplyImage.bat ==

rem == These commands deploy a specified Windows
rem image file to the Windows partition, and configure
rem the system partition.

rem Usage: ApplyImage WimFileName
rem Example: ApplyImage E:\Images\ThinImage.wim ==

rem == Set high-performance power scheme to speed deployment ==
call powercfg /s 8c5e7fda-e8bf-4a96-9a85-a6e23a8c635c

rem == Apply the image to the Windows partition ==
dism /Apply-Image /ImageFile:%1 /Index:1 /ApplyDir:W:\

rem == Copy boot files to the System partition ==
W:\Windows\System32\bcdboot W:\Windows /s S:

:rem == Copy the Windows RE image to the
:rem Windows RE Tools partition ==
md R:\Recovery\WindowsRE
xcopy /h W:\Windows\System32\Recovery\Winre.wim R:\Recovery\WindowsRE\

:rem == Register the location of the recovery tools ==
W:\Windows\System32\Reagents /Setreimage /Path R:\Recovery\WindowsRE /Target W:\Windows

:rem == Verify the configuration status of the images. ==
W:\Windows\System32\Reagents /Info /Target W:\Windows

```

3. On the destination computer, run the Diskpart and ApplyImage scripts to apply the image to the computer and set up the system, Windows, and recovery partitions. For example:

```

diskpart /s D:\CreatePartitions-UEFI.txt
ApplyImage E:\Images\ThinImage.wim

```

where D:\Images\ThinImage.wim is the name of your Windows image file.

**Note** If the DISM /Apply-Image command fails, make sure you're using a [supported version of DISM](#) for that Windows image. For example, to apply a Windows 10 image, you'll need the Windows 10 version of DISM.

### Capture and apply individual partitions (BIOS devices only)

1. On your reference device, capture each of the partitions individually using DISM /Capture-Image and then apply them to your destination devices using DISM /Apply-Image.

This method allows you flexibility in setting up your system partition. Note, for UEFI-based devices, do not capture and apply the EFI system partition or the MSR partition – these are managed by the device.

2. Use the BCDBoot command to set up the system partition.

```

bcdboot C:\Windows

```

### Capture and apply the entire drive

- \*\*\*\* You can use the Full Flash Update (FFU) file format to capture and apply the entire drive. To learn more, see [Deploy Windows using Full Flash Update \(FFU\)](#).

## Related topics

[Configure UEFI/GPT-Based Hard Drive Partitions](#)

[Configure BIOS/MBR-Based Hard Drive Partitions](#)

[BCDboot Command-Line Options](#)

[REAgentC Command-Line Options](#)

# Windows Full Flash Update (FFU) images

10/17/2017 • 6 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Deploy Windows faster on the factory floor by using the Full Flash Update (FFU) image format. FFU images allow you to apply an image of a physical drive, including Windows, recovery, and system partition information all at once directly to a different drive.

Unlike the file-based WIM format, FFU is a sector-based file container that stores one or more partitions. Sector-based imaging means that FFUs take less time to deploy, but have larger files sizes than WIMs. See [WIM vs. VHD vs. FFU: comparing image file formats](#) for information about the differences between image formats.

Starting with Windows 10, version 1709, DISM has the ability to capture, deploy, and service FFUs, with the following limitations:

- The drive that an FFU is applied to has to be the same or larger than the drive it is captured from
- FFU captures of encrypted disks are not supported
- Captures of disks that have [Volume Shadow Copy Service \(VSS\)](#) enabled are not supported
- Splitting compressed FFUs is not supported

## What you need to work with FFUs in Windows

To capture, deploy, and mount FFU images with DISM, you'll need to work in a Windows 10, Version 1709 or later, or WinPE for Windows 10, version 1709 or later environment. You can also [use the latest version of DISM in a previous version of Windows 10 or WinPE](#).

To capture and deploy FFUs using the instructions below, you'll also need:

- A Windows PC that has been [generalized with Sysprep](#). We'll refer to this as the reference PC. For a walkthrough on how to create an image that's ready for deployment, see the [Windows OEM deployment lab](#).
- A PC to deploy the FFU image to. We'll refer to this as the destination PC. The hard drive on this PC will be overwritten, so make sure you're using a PC that doesn't have any information you want to keep.
- The latest version of the ADK, from [Download the Windows ADK](#)
- Bootable WinPE media for Windows 10, version 1709 or later. See [WinPE: Create USB bootable drive](#) for instructions on how to create WinPE Media.
- Storage
  - USB storage, formatted as NTFS with enough space to save the FFU. 16 GB is enough space to store an FFU of a basic Windows image. You can use the same USB drive for WinPE and storage if you follow the [instructions for creating a multipartiton USB drive](#). For best performance, you want to maximize I/O between where your FFU is stored and the destination PC. For best performance use a USB 3.0 drive to store the image, and an internal SSD for the destination device.

or

- Network storage where you can keep your FFU image. For optimal performance, use a 1 Gb or faster network.

## Capture an FFU

1. Boot the reference PC using WinPE bootable media.
2. Identify the drive to which you'll be capturing the image from. You can use diskpart, or [add Windows](#)

PowerShell support to WinPE and use [Get-Disk](#) for scriptability and more complex setups such as a server with multiple disks.

```
diskpart
list disk
exit
```

The output will list your drives. Make a note of the disk number in the `Disk ###` column. This is the value that you'll use when capturing your image.

```
DISKPART> list disk

Disk ### Status Size Free Dyn Gpt
----- -----
Disk 0 Online 238 GB 0 B *
Disk 1 Online 28 GB 0 B

DISKPART>
```

3. Use DISM to capture an image of all the partitions on the physical drive. For *disk X*; the string used with `/capturedrive` will look like this: `\.\PhysicalDriveX`, where *X* is the disk number that diskpart provides. For example, to capture Disk 0, you'd use `/CaptureDrive:\.\PhysicalDrive0`.

For more information about PhysicalDriveX, see [CreateFile function](#).

To see command line options for capturing FFUs, run `dism /capture-ffu /?` or see [DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#). Note that you shouldn't have to specify a PlatformID when capturing a desktop image.

The following command captures an FFU image of PhysicalDrive0 called WinOEM.ffu. The `/name` and `/description` arguments allow you to set information about your image. This information is displayed when you use `dism /get-imageinfo`. `/name` is required, `/description` is optional.

```
DISM.exe /capture-ffu /imagefile=e:\WinOEM.ffu /capturedrive=\.\PhysicalDrive0 /name:disk0
/description:"Windows 10 FFU"
```

This command also gives a name and description to the FFU image. Name is required when capturing

## Deploy Windows from WinPE using an FFU

1. Boot your destination PC to WinPE.
2. Connect a storage drive or map the network location that has your FFU file and note the drive letter, for example, N.
3. Identify the drive to which you'll be applying the image:

```
diskpart
list disk
exit
```

Note the drive number in the `Disk ###` column.

4. Apply the image to the cleaned drive. Here, we're applying n:\WinOEM.ffu to Disk 0.

```
DISM /apply-ffu /ImageFile=N:\WinOEM.ffu /ApplyDrive:\\.\PhysicalDrive0
```

To see the commands available with /apply-ffu, run `dism /apply-ffu /?` or see [DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#).

## 5. Optional. Run diskpart to resize the drive on the destination PC.

If the reference PC and the destination PC have different sized hard drives, you'll have to resize the destination PCs drive. The applied FFU will have the same partition sizes as the reference PC, so you'll need to expand the volume to take advantage of the additional space on the reference PC.

- In WinPE on your destination PC, identify the volume of the Windows partition that you have applied.

```
diskpart
list volume
```

- Select the volume of the Windows partition. We'll use `Volume 0` in our example.

```
select volume 0
```

- Extend the partition to fill the unused space, and exit Diskpart.

```
extend
exit
```

## Mount an FFU for servicing

You can use DISM to mount FFU images for servicing. Like with other image formats, you can mount and modify an FFU before committing changes and unmounting. Mounting an FFU for servicing uses the same `/mount-image` command that you use for mounting other image types. When mounting an FFU, you'll always use `/index:1` when mounting.

Unlike WIM images, FFU images get mounted as virtual hard disks. Files appear in the specified mount folder, but since FFUs can contain more than one partition but only have one index, DISM maps only the Windows partition from the mounted FFU to the mount folder.

To mount an FFU

- Open a Command Prompt as administrator.
- Mount the image using `dism /mount-image`. This example mounts D:\WinOEM.ffu to C:\ffumount:

```
dism /mount-image /imagefile:"D:\WinOEM.ffu" /mountdir:"C:\ffumount" /index:1
```

To see available command line options for `/mount-image` run `dism /mount-image /?` or see [DISM image management command line options](#).

- Service your image. For example, to enable the legacy components feature:

```
dism /image:"C:\ffumount" /enable-feature:legacycomponents
```

To see available options, run `dism /image:<path to mounted image> /?` or

4. Unmount your FFU image and commit or discard changes. If you use /commit, your changes will be saved to your FFU file.

To unmount your FFU and commit changes, you'd use `/unmount-image` with the `/commit` option:

```
dism /unmount-image /mountdir:"C:\ffumount" /commit
```

If you decide to not keep the changes you've made to the FFU, you can use `/unmount-image` with the `/discard` option:

```
dism /unmount-image /mountdir:"C:\ffumount" /discard
```

## Related topics

[Download and install the Windows ADK](#)

[FFU image format](#)

[WIM vs. VHD vs. FFU: comparing image file formats](#)

[Planning a Multicast Strategy in Configuration Manager](#)

[Capture and Apply Windows, System, and Recovery Partitions](#)

[DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#)

[CreateFile function](#)

# WIM vs. VHD vs. FFU: comparing image file formats

10/17/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Comparing .WIM, .VHD/.VHDX, and .FFU: These file formats are all used to deploy Windows to new devices. Here's how they compare:

|                                                 | Windows image (.WIM)                                                                                                                                                       | Virtual Hard Disk (.VHD/VHDX)                                                                                        | Full Flash Update (FFU)                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Common uses                                     | Fastest for testing and modifying Windows images.<br><br>Quickly mounting and modifying images.                                                                            | Easiest for deploying Windows to virtual PCs.<br><br>You can boot a new device directly from a single VHD/VHDX file. | Fastest for capturing and deploying Windows on a factory floor.              |
| Imaging style                                   | File-based                                                                                                                                                                 | Sector-based                                                                                                         | Sector-based                                                                 |
| Compression                                     | Supports multiple types of compression                                                                                                                                     | None                                                                                                                 | Xpress-Huffman is used by default when an FFU is captured with DISM          |
| What does it capture?                           | A set of files, up to an entire partition.                                                                                                                                 | Captures the full set of drive information, including partitions.                                                    | Captures the full set of drive information, including partitions.            |
| When I apply the image, what happens?           | Adds the files and folders to the partition.<br><br>If there are existing files and folders with the same names, they're replaced. Otherwise, the existing files are kept. | Cleans the entire drive.                                                                                             | Cleans the entire drive.                                                     |
| Can I deploy to different sizes of hard drives? | Yes.                                                                                                                                                                       | Yes, though the new drive must be the same size or larger than the original.                                         | Yes, though the new drive must be the same size or larger than the original. |
| Can I modify the images?                        | Yes. With tools like DISM, you can mount, modify, and unmount the image.                                                                                                   | Yes, you can mount a VHD/VHDX as if it were removable media, and modify the files.                                   | Yes. With tools like DISM, you can mount, modify, and unmount the image.     |

|             |  |  |                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------|--|--|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Reliability |  |  | Includes a catalog and hash table to validate a signature upfront before flashing onto a device. The hash table is generated during capture, and validated when applying the image. |
|-------------|--|--|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

To learn more, see [/Apply-Image](#) in DISM Image Management Command-Line Options.

## Related topics

[DISM Deployment Image Servicing and Management \(DISM\) Command-Line Options](#)

[VHD/VHDX Boot to VHD \(Native Boot\): Add a Virtual Hard Disk to the Boot Menu](#)

[Deploy Windows on a VHD \(Native Boot\)](#)

[FFU Deploy Windows using Full Flash Update \(FFU\)](#)

[DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#)

[FFU image format](#)

# Compact OS, single-instancing, and image optimization

7/13/2017 • 8 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Windows 10 includes tools to help you use less drive space. You can now compress the files for the entire operating system, including your preloaded desktop applications. Compact OS lets you run the operating system from compressed files (similar to WIMBoot in Windows 8.1 Update 1), and single-instancing helps you run your pre-loaded Windows desktop applications in compressed files. The new processes helps maintain a small footprint over time by using individual files, rather than combining them in a WIM file.

Here's some ways to shrink the image, optimize the image, and some considerations when deploying to low-cost devices.

## Deployment tools that help save space

### Compact OS

Compact OS installs the operating system files as compressed files. Compact OS is supported on both UEFI-based and BIOS-based devices. See the [size comparison table](#) below.

Unlike WIMBoot, because the files are no longer combined into a single WIM file, Windows update can replace or remove individual files as needed to help maintain the drive footprint size over time.

#### To deploy Compact OS using a WIM file

1. Boot your destination device with the Windows 10 version of Windows PE. (To use a previous version of Windows PE, make sure you use the Windows 10 version of DISM. To learn more, see [Copy DISM to Another Computer](#).)
2. Create a pagefile equal to 256 MB.

```
Wpeutil createpagefile C:\pagefile /size=256
```

Where "C" is the Windows partition.

3. Format and prepare the partitions, and then apply the image to a partition using the DISM /Apply-Image /Compact option:

```
DISM /Apply-Image /ImageFile:install.wim /Index:1 /ApplyDir:D:\ /compact
```

This is usually done by running a deployment script. To learn more, see [Apply Images Using DISM](#).

**Note:** If you're applying an image in compact mode and using the /ScratchDir option, make sure your ScratchDir folder is not on a FAT32-formatted partition. Using a FAT32 partition could result in unexpected reboots during OOBE.

#### To deploy Compact OS from Windows Setup

- Use an unattend.xml file with the setting: Microsoft-Windows-Setup\ImageInstall\OSImage\Compact.

#### To deploy Compact OS with a USB bootable drive

For Windows 10, Version 1607 and earlier

1. On your technician PC, open Windows ICD and create your project.

2. Plug in a USB flash drive and note the drive letter (example: D:).
3. Click **Create > Production Media > WIM > Enable OS File Compression: Yes > Next > USB Bootable drive** > drive letter (D:) > **Next > Build**.
4. Boot the destination PC using the USB flash drive. Windows installs automatically.

**Note** When running Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer (ICD) on a PC running a previous version of Windows, such as Windows 8.1, you'll need to install the [Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit \(ADK\)](#) with both the Windows ICD and **Deployment Tools** features. This installs the latest versions of the drivers required by DISM (wimmount.sys and adkwof.sys) used to create Compact OS images.

#### To deploy Compact OS from an FFU image

For Windows 10, Version 1607 and earlier

1. To deploy an FFU image as compressed, the original FFU image must be created as a compressed image.

From Windows ICD, click **Create > Production Media > FFU > Enable OS File Compression: Yes > name the file, for example, D:\flash.ffu > Build**.

2. You can deploy the FFU image directly to a drive from Windows ICD or from Windows Preinstallation Environment (WinPE). To learn more, see [Deploy Windows using Full Flash Update \(FFU\)](#).

**Note** When running Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer (ICD) on a PC running a previous version of Windows, such as Windows 8.1, you'll need to install the [Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit \(ADK\)](#) with both the Windows ICD and **Deployment Tools** features. This installs the latest versions of the drivers required by DISM (wimmount.sys and adkwof.sys) used to create Compact OS images.

#### Command-line support

You can query whether the operating system is running Compact OS, and change it at any time, using the [Compact.exe](#) command.

#### From Windows PE, determine if the OS is compacted:

```
Compact.exe /CompactOS:Query /WinDir:E:\Windows
```

Where E:\Windows is the folder where Windows has been installed.

#### From an online installation, change from non-compacted to compacted OS:

```
Compact.exe /CompactOS:always
```

#### Single-instancing of provisioning packages

For Windows 10, when you add new Windows desktop applications to a device, you'll capture these changes into a compressed provisioning package for use by the automatic recovery tools. Rather than maintaining both the original files and the provisioning package, you can use DISM to remove the original files, and run from directly from the compressed provisioning package instead. This is known as single-instancing the image. See the [size comparison table](#) below.

While single-instancing is supported on both solid-state drives and rotational drives, for performance reasons, we recommend that single-instancing is only used on devices with solid-state drives.

Example:

```
DISM /Apply-CustomDataImage /CustomDataImage:C:\Recovery\Customizations\USMT.ppkg /ImagePath:C:\ /SingleInstance
```

where C is the drive letter of the Windows partition.

**Warning** Do not put quotes with the /ImagePath:C:\ option.

You can determine whether a provisioning package (.ppkg) is single-instanced by using fsutil.exe:

```
fsutil.exe wim enumwims C:
```

where C is the drive that contains the provisioning package. Any single-instanced provisioning package on the drive will be listed in the command output. If there are none, the command will return "Error: The system cannot find the file specified."

## Image optimization

After applying updates to a Windows image, cleanup the image and then export it to a new file:

```
md c:\mount\Windows
md C:\mount\temp

Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:"C:\Images\install.wim" /Index:1 /MountDir:C:\mount\Windows

Dism /Cleanup-Image /Image=C:\mount\Windows /StartComponentCleanup /ResetBase /ScratchDir:C:\mount\temp

Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\mount\Windows /Commit

Dism /Export-Image /SourceImageFile:C:\Images\install.wim /SourceIndex:1
/DestinationImageFile:C:\Images\install_cleaned.wim
```

where C:\Images\install.wim is a Windows image file that you want to update. Beginning with Windows 10, version 1607, you can optionally specify the /Defer parameter with /ResetBase to defer any long-running cleanup operations to the next automatic maintenance, but we highly recommend that **only** use /Defer as an option in the factory where DISM /ResetBase requires more than 30 minutes to complete.

## Size requirements and considerations

You'll still need to meet minimum size requirements for the hard drive, RAM, application resource usage, and data storage.

### Hard Drive

Windows 10 requires a minimum of 16 gigabytes (GB) of space on 32-bit devices, and 20 GB on 64-bit devices.

Although some configurations of Windows may appear to fit on smaller drives when Windows is first installed, 8 GB SSDs are not large enough. Even if a user pairs an 8 GB hard drive with a second drive that is 4 GB or larger for application and data file storage, 8 GB hard drives do not allow for the increase in the Windows memory footprint that is expected to occur as users work on their computer.

Some of the primary reasons for the increase over time in the memory footprint include the following:

- **Servicing.** Hard disk space must be reserved for software patches to the operating system and for service pack releases.
- **System Restore Points.** Windows automatically generate restore points. The amount of space that is required by default is relative to the size of the hard drive. For more information about restore points, see the [Restore Points](#) topic on MSDN. **Note** Users can adjust the amount of space used on the computer for System Restore by using the **System Protection** user interface in the **System Properties** dialog box (Sysdm.cpl). Users can also use system image backups that are stored on an external hard disk to restore a system.
- **Logs and Caches.** The operating system stores files such as event logs and error logs on the drive.

## RAM, Pagefile.sys, and Hiberfil.sys

The Pagefile.sys and Hiberfil.sys files increase in size in direct proportion to the amount of RAM on the computer. Windows installations on 16 GB drives have a smaller memory footprint when the computer is limited to 1 GB of RAM. An increase of RAM to a size that is greater than 1 GB will result in increased size of the system files and less space on the hard drive for other applications and files. Increasing the size of the hard drive, however, does not affect the size of these system files. Learn more about [On/Off Transition Performance](#)

To save space on the drive, you can remove or reduce the size of the hiberfil.sys. See the [size comparison table](#) below. To learn more, see [Lab 7: Change settings, enter product keys, and run scripts with an answer file \(unattend.xml\)](#).

- `powercfg /h /type reduced` : Reduces the file by 30%
- `powercfg /h /off` : Removes the file.

## Language packs and features on demand

Installed language packs (LPs) can take more space than just the size of the LP itself. When you preinstall FODs and UWP apps on a Windows installation that contains multiple LPs, resource files based on preinstalled LPs are also installed. When unused languages are automatically removed after OOBE, corresponding UWP and feature on demand (FOD) resource files are not removed. Preinstalling fewer LPs saves disk space by limiting the number of resource files that remain on a system after removing unused language packs.

Features on demand are distributed in compressed CAB files so the size of an installed FOD is larger than the size of the original CAB. You can use `/Get-CapabilityInfo` in DISM to view an FOD's download and install sizes. See [Features on demand](#) for how to get information about FODs.

## Applications

Software applications that are installed on the computer may require additional space for caches, logs, and updates. Disk space must also be available on the drive to account for temporary increases in resource usage during installation of applications, patches, and updates.

## User Data

On computers that support removable media such as an SD card or USB flash drive, users can easily expand personal data file storage for user documents by using this removable media. However, we recommend that users reserve some space on the hard drive for these types of files.

## Size comparisons

The table below shows the additional space saved by using compact OS, Single instancing, and reducing or turning Off Hiberfile on 2GB (x86 processor architecture) and 4GB (x64 processor architecture), on Windows 10, version 1607:

| IMAGE                                 | WINDOWS 10 HOME X86, 2GB MEMORY | WINDOWS 10 HOME X64, 4GB MEMORY |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Base Footprint                        | 11.68GB                         | 15.06GB                         |
| Compact OS, with no single instancing | 8.85GB (>2.75GB savings)        | 11.3GB (>3.7GB)                 |
| Compact OS, single instanced          | 7.66GB (>4GB)                   | 10.09GB (>4.75GB)               |
| Hiberfile off, no compact OS          | 10.87GB (>825MB)                | 13.48GB (>1.5GB)                |
| Hiberfile reduced, no compact OS      | 11.27GB (>400MB)                | 14.15GB (>930MB)                |

## Related topics

[Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer](#)

[Capture and Apply Windows, System, and Recovery Partitions](#)

[DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#)

# Factory Encrypted Drives

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can install Windows on factory-encrypted drives, also known as encrypted hard disk drives (eHDD). A *factory-encrypted drive* is a drive that is capable of full-disk encryption.

By default, when you install Windows on a factory-encrypted drive, Windows automatically encrypts the drive by using Trusted Computing Group (TCG) and IEEE 1667 transport encryption standards.

## Requirements

To install Windows onto a factory-encrypted drive, use the following:

1. Firmware: UEFI version 2.3.1 that has been configured to use the EFI storage security protocol.
2. Hardware: a hard disk drive that is capable of using TCG and IEEE 1667 transport encryption standards.

## Using other encryption standards

To use another encryption standard on your drive, you must first disable the automatic drive provisioning that Windows provides. To do this on a new installation, set the Microsoft-Windows-EnhancedStorage-Adm/TCGSecurityActivationDisabled Unattend setting to **true**. For more information, see the [Unattended Windows Setup Reference](#).

## Related topics

[Hard Drives and Partitions](#)

# BitLocker Drive Encryption

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

This topic highlights the requirements for deploying a Windows BitLocker Drive Encryption solution. For more information about BitLocker, see [BitLocker Drive Encryption](#) on the TechNet website.

## What Is BitLocker Drive Encryption?

BitLocker provides offline-data and operating-system protection for your computer. BitLocker helps ensure that data that is stored on a computer that is running Windows® is not revealed if the computer is tampered with when the installed operating system is offline. BitLocker uses a microchip that is called a Trusted Platform Module (TPM) to provide enhanced protection for your data and to preserve early boot-component integrity. The TPM can help protect your data from theft or unauthorized viewing by encrypting the entire Windows volume.

BitLocker is designed to offer the most seamless end-user experience with computers that have a compatible TPM microchip and BIOS. A compatible TPM is defined as a version 1.2 TPM that has the BIOS modifications that are required to support the Static Root of Trust Measurement, as defined by the Trusted Computing Group. The TPM interacts with BitLocker to help provide seamless protection when the computer restarts.

The path to the TPM driver file is %WINDIR%\Inf\Tpm.inf. For information about how to add the TPM driver to Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE), see [WinPE: Mount and Customize](#).

## BitLocker Drive Encryption Partitioning Requirements

BitLocker must use a system partition that is separate from the Windows partition. The system partition:

- Must be configured as the active partition.
- Must not be encrypted or used to store user files.
- Must have at least 100 megabytes (MB) of space.
- Must have at least 50 MB of free space.
- May be shared with a recovery partition.

For more information about BitLocker partitioning requirements, see [Hard Drives and Partitions Overview](#).

## Related topics

[Hard Drives and Partitions Overview](#)

# Hard Disk Location Path Format

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

This topic describes the hard disk location-path format. This format is used to identify each disk in the DiskPart tool by using the location path. The location-path format is based on the physical connection to the computer.

For instructions that describe how to configure Windows® to identify a drive based on the location-path format, see [Configure Multiple Hard Drives](#).

## Location-Path Format

The basic syntax for the location path for disks that have a Small Computer System Interface (SCSI), Serial Attached SCSI (SAS), or Redundant Array of Independent Disks (RAID) bus type is as follows:

*<PnP location path of the adapter>#<Bus Type>(P<Path ID>T<Target ID>L<LUN ID>)*

The basic syntax for the location path for disks that have an Advanced Technology Attachment (ATA) or Serial ATA (SATA) bus type is as follows:

*<PnP location path of the adapter>#<Bus Type>(C<Channel ID>T<Target ID>L<LUN ID>)*

The following table defines the elements in the location path.

| ELEMENT                                         | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>&lt;PnP location path of the adapter&gt;</i> | Path of the adapter. Retrieve the path by calling the SetupDiGetDeviceProperty with the DEVPKEY_Device_LocationPaths property.                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <i>#&lt;Bus Type&gt;</i>                        | One of the following types: ATA, SCSI, SAS, or RAID.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <i>P&lt;Path ID&gt;</i>                         | PathId field of SCSI_ADDRESS. Retrieve the PathID by calling IOCTL_SCSI_GET_ADDRESS.                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <i>C&lt;Channel ID&gt;</i>                      | PathId field of SCSI_ADDRESS. Retrieve the PathID by calling IOCTL_SCSI_GET_ADDRESS.<br><div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"><b>Note</b><p>For disks that use the ATA/SATA bus type, the Channel ID refers to the same field as PathID. The prefix C is still used.</p></div> |
| <i>T&lt;Target ID&gt;</i>                       | TargetId field of SCSI_ADDRESS. Retrieve the TargetId by calling IOCTL_SCSI_GET_ADDRESS.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <i>L&lt;LUN ID&gt;</i>                          | Logical Unit Number (LUN) field of SCSI_ADDRESS. Retrieve the LUN by calling IOCTL_SCSI_GET_ADDRESS.                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

## Examples

The following table gives an example of a location path for each bus or disk type:

| BUS OR DISK TYPE                                                            | LOCATION PATH                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| Integrated Development Environment (IDE), ATA, Parallel ATA (PATA), or SATA | PCIROOT(0)#PCI(0100)#ATA(C01T03L00)                      |
| SCSI                                                                        | PCIROOT(0)#PCI(1C00)#PCI(0000)#SCSI(P00T01L01)           |
| SAS                                                                         | PCIROOT(1)#PCI(0300)#SAS(P00T03L00)                      |
| Peripheral Component Interconnect (PCI) RAID                                | PCIROOT(0)#PCI(0200)#PCI(0003)#PCI(0100)#RAID(P02T00L00) |

## Related topics

[Configure Multiple Hard Drives](#)

[DiskPart Command-Line Syntax](#)

# Repair the boot menu on a dual-boot PC

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

When setting up a PC to boot more than one operating system, you may sometimes lose the ability to boot into one of the operating systems. The BCDBoot option allows you to quickly add boot options for a Windows-based operating system.

## Repairing a Windows partition on a dual-boot PC

1. Install a separate hard drive or prepare a separate partition for each operating system.
2. Install the operating systems. For example, if your PC has Windows 8.1, install Windows 10 onto the other hard drive or partition.
3. Reboot the PC. The boot menus should appear with both operating systems listed.

If both operating systems aren't listed:

- a. Open a command line, either as an administrator from inside Windows, or by booting to a command line using the Windows installation disk and presssing Shift+F10, or by booting to Windows PE ([WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#)).
- b. Add boot options for a Windows operating system.

```
Bcdboot D:\Windows
```

- c. Reboot the PC. Now, the boot menu will show both menu options.

## Repair another operating system partition

You can manually add create partitions using BCDEdit, or you can use a third-party tool such as [EasyBCD](#) to set up the boot partitions.

## Related topics

[BCDboot Command-Line Options](#)

# Deploy Windows on a VHD (Native Boot)

6/6/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Create and deploy virtual hard disks (VHDs) with native-boot capabilities to test devices or to manage multiple operating systems on a device without repartitioning the drive.

## Creating VHDs

You can create virtual hard disks (.vhd or .vhdx files) using the DiskPart tool or the Disk Management Microsoft Management Console (MMC). You can create .vhdx files from PowerShell when you have the Hyper-V Manager Role installed.

You can attach the VHD so that it appears as a system drive that you can partition, format, and apply your operating system to.

## Deploying VHDs

You can deploy a supported Windows image to an attached VHD using disk-imaging software such as the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) tool. The VHD can then be copied to one or more systems either to run in a virtual machine or for native boot.

For more information, see [Download and install Windows PE \(WinPE\) so you can boot from a USB flash drive or an external USB hard drive](#).

On first native boot, the **specialize** configuration pass runs and computer-specific information is applied to the Windows operating system on the VHD. The instance of the VHD cannot be copied onto another system or run in a virtual machine after the specialize configuration pass is completed. The original VHD that has a Windows image can continue to be copied and deployed to multiple computers, if the image has already been prepared for installation using the Sysprep tool with the **/specialize** option. You can also use an answer file to prepare the image for installation by using the Microsoft-Windows-Deployment | Generalize setting. For more information about the **specialize** and **generalize** configuration passes, see [Windows Setup Configuration Passes](#). For more information about how to use the Generalize setting in an answer file, see the Windows® Unattended Setup Reference.

The Windows Deployment Server role supports deployment of VHD image files in addition to .wim files. Windows Deployment Server automates the network deployment of VHD images for native-boot usage. Windows Deployment Server can be used to copy the VHD image to a local partition, and to configure the local Boot Configuration Data (BCD) for native boot from the VHD.

## In This Section

|                                                                                     |                                                                                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <a href="#">Understanding Virtual Hard Disks with Native Boot</a>                   | Includes common scenarios, requirements, and recommendations for installing Windows to a VHD with native boot. |
| <a href="#">Boot to VHD (Native Boot): Add a Virtual Hard Disk to the Boot Menu</a> | Create and deploy a VHD on a destination computer.                                                             |

[Download and install Windows PE \(WinPE\) so you can boot from a USB flash drive or an external USB hard drive](#)

[Update a computer that has a Windows 7 or Windows 8 boot environment and add a VHD to the BCD configuration.](#)

## Related topics

[BCDboot Command-Line Options](#)

# Understanding Virtual Hard Disks with Native Boot

6/6/2017 • 7 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Native boot enables virtual hard disks (VHDs) to run on a computer without a virtual machine or *hypervisor*. A hypervisor is a layer of software under the operating system that runs virtual machines.

## What Is VHD with Native Boot?

A virtual hard disk can be used as the running operating system on designated hardware without any other parent operating system, virtual machine, or hypervisor. Windows disk-management tools, the DiskPart tool and the Disk Management Microsoft® Management Console (Diskmgmt.msc), can be used to create a VHD file. A supported Windows image (.wim) file can be applied to a VHD, and the VHD can be copied to multiple systems. The Windows boot manager can be configured to boot directly into the VHD.

The VHD can also be connected to a virtual machine for use with the Hyper-V Role in Windows Server.

Native-boot VHDs are not designed or intended to replace full image deployment on all client or server systems. Enterprise environments already managing and using .vhd files for virtual machine deployment will get the most benefit from the native-boot VHD capabilities. Using the .vhd file as a common image container format for virtual machines and designated hardware simplifies image management and deployment in an enterprise environment.

For more information about virtualization in Windows, see [this Microsoft Web site](#). For more information about how to use VHDs with native boot, see [this Microsoft Web site](#).

## Common Scenarios

VHDs with native boot are frequently used in the following scenarios:

- Using disk-management tools to create and *attach* a VHD for offline image management. You can attach a VHD by using the **Attach vdisk** command which activates the VHD so that it appears on the host as a disk drive instead of as a .vhd file.
- Mounting reference VHD images on remote shares for image servicing.
- Maintaining and deploying a common reference VHD image to execute in either virtual or physical computers.
- Configuring VHD files for native boot without requiring a full parent installation.
- Configuring a computer to boot multiple local VHD files that contain different application workloads, without requiring separate disk partitions.
- Using Windows Deployment Services (WDS) for network deployment of VHD images to target computers for native boot.
- Managing desktop image deployment.

## Requirements

Native VHD boot has the following dependencies:

- The local disk must have at least two partitions: a system partition that contains the Windows 8 boot-environment files and Boot Configuration Data (BCD) store, and a partition to store the VHD file. The .vhd file format is supported for native boot on a computer with a Windows® 7 boot environment, but you will

have to update the system partition to a Windows 8 environment to use the .vhdx file format. For more information about how to add a Windows 8 boot environment for native VHD boot, see [Download and install Windows PE \(WinPE\) so you can boot from a USB flash drive or an external USB hard drive](#).

- The local disk partition that contains the VHD file must have enough free disk space for expanding a dynamic VHD to its maximum size and for the page file created when booting the VHD. The page file is created outside the VHD file, unlike with a virtual machine where the page file is contained inside the VHD.

## Benefits

The benefits of native boot capabilities for VHDs include the following:

- Using the same image-management tools for creating, deploying, and maintaining system images to be installed on designated hardware or on a virtual machine.
- Deploying an image on a virtual machine or a designated computer, depending on capacity planning and availability.
- Deploying Windows for multiple boot scenarios without requiring separate disk partitions.
- Deploying supported Windows images in a VHD container file for faster deployment of reusable development and testing environments.
- Replacing VHD images for server redeployment or recovery.

## Limitations

Native VHD support has the following limitations:

- Native VHD disk management support can attach approximately 512 VHD files concurrently.
- Native VHD boot does not support hibernation of the system, although sleep mode is supported.
- VHD files cannot be nested.
- Native VHD boot is not supported over Server Message Block (SMB) shares.
- Windows BitLocker Drive Encryption cannot be used to encrypt the host volume that contains VHD files that are used for native VHD boot, and BitLocker cannot be used on volumes that are contained inside a VHD.
- The parent partition of a VHD file cannot be part of a volume snapshot.
- An attached VHD cannot be configured as a *dynamic disk*. A dynamic disk provides features that basic disks do not, such as the ability to create volumes that span multiple disks (spanned and striped volumes), and the ability to create fault-tolerant volumes (mirrored and RAID-5 volumes). All volumes on dynamic disks are known as dynamic volumes.
- The parent volume of the VHD cannot be configured as a dynamic disk.

## Recommended Precautions

The following are recommended precautions for using VHDs with native boot:

- Use Fixed VHD disk types for production servers, to increase performance and help protect user data. Use Dynamic or Differencing VHD disk types only in non-production environments, such as for development and testing.
- When using Dynamic VHDs, store critical application or user data on disk partitions that are outside the VHD file, when it is possible. This reduces the size requirements of the VHD. It also makes it easier to recover application or user data if the VHD image is no longer usable due to a catastrophic system shutdown such

as a power outage.

## Types of Virtual Hard Disks

Three types of VHD files can be created by using the disk-management tools:

- **Fixed hard-disk image.** A fixed hard-disk image is a file that is allocated to the size of the virtual disk. For example, if you create a virtual hard disk that is 2 gigabytes (GB) in size, the system will create a host file approximately 2 GB in size. Fixed hard-disk images are recommended for production servers and working with customer data.
- **Dynamic hard-disk image.** A dynamic hard-disk image is a file that is as large as the actual data written to it at any given time. As more data is written, the file dynamically increases in size. For example, the size of a file backing a virtual 2 GB hard disk is initially around 2 megabytes (MB) on the host file system. As data is written to this image, it grows with a maximum size of 2 GB.

Dynamic hard-disk images are recommended for development and testing environments. Dynamic VHD files are smaller, easier to copy, and will expand once mounted.

- **Differencing hard-disk image.** A differencing hard-disk image describes a modification of a parent image. This type of hard-disk image is not independent; it depends on another hard-disk image to be fully functional. The parent hard-disk image can be any of the mentioned hard-disk image types, including another differencing hard-disk image.

## Technologies Related to VHDs with Native Boot

VHDs with native boot generally use the following technologies:

### BCDboot

The BCDboot tool is used for initializing the BCD store and copying boot-environment files to the system partition during image deployment. BCD files describe boot applications and boot application settings. The objects and elements in the store effectively replace the Boot.ini file. When installing a native-boot VHD on designated hardware, you may have to update to a Windows 8 BCD store. For more information about the BCDboot tool, see [BCDboot Command-Line Options](#).

### BCDedit

BCDedit is a command-line tool for managing BCD stores. It can be used for a variety of purposes such as creating new stores, modifying existing stores, and adding boot menu parameters. For more information about the BCDedit tool, see [this Microsoft Web site](#).

### DiskPart

DiskPart is a command-line tool in Windows that enables you to manage objects such as disks, partitions, or volumes, by using scripts or direct input at a command prompt. In Windows 8, the DiskPart tool can be used to create, partition, and attach VHDs. For more information about the DiskPart tool, see [this Microsoft Web site](#).

### Windows Deployment Services

Windows Deployment Services is a network-based installation server that enables corporations to remotely administer and deploy the latest operating system by using Windows PE and Windows Deployment Services server. Windows Deployment Services supports deployment of VHD image files in addition to .wim files. Using Windows Deployment Services automates the network deployment of VHD images for native boot. Windows Deployment Services handles copying the VHD image to a local partition, and configuring the local BCD for native boot from the VHD.

## Related topics

[Deploy Windows on a VHD \(Native Boot\)](#)

[Boot to VHD \(Native Boot\): Add a Virtual Hard Disk to the Boot Menu](#)

[Download and install Windows PE \(WinPE\) so you can boot from a USB flash drive or an external USB hard drive](#)

# Boot to VHD (Native Boot): Add a Virtual Hard Disk to the Boot Menu

7/13/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Native Boot allows you to create a virtual hard disk (VHD), install Windows to it, and then boot it up, either on your PC side-by-side with your existing installation, or on a new device.

A native-boot VHD can be used as the running operating system on designated hardware without any other parent operating system. This differs from a scenario where a VHD is connected to a virtual machine on a computer that has a parent operating system.

VHDs can be applied to PCs or devices that have no other installations of Windows, without a virtual machine or hypervisor. (A hypervisor is a layer of software under the operating system that runs virtual computers.) This enables greater flexibility in workload distribution because a single set of tools can be used to manage images for virtual machines and designated hardware.

You can also deploy the VHD to a PC that already has Windows installed on it, and use a boot menu to select between the existing version of Windows, or the version on the VHD.

To learn more about using VHDs in an enterprise environment, see [Understanding Virtual Hard Disks with Native Boot](#).

## Prerequisites

- A technician PC with the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (Windows ADK) tools installed on it.
- A generalized Windows image (.WIM file). To learn more, see [Sysprep \(Generalize\) a Windows installation](#).
- A bootable Windows PE drive. To learn more, see [WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#).
- A destination PC or device on which to install the VHD. This device requires 30 gigabytes (GB) or more of free disk space. You can install the VHD to a device already running other operating system installations, or as the only operating system on a device.

## Step 1: Create a VHD from diskpart

On the technician PC:

1. From the Command Prompt, open Diskpart.

```
diskpart
```

2. Create and prepare a new VHD. In this example, we create a 25 GB fixed-type VHD.

```
create vdisk file=C:\windows.vhd maximum=25600 type=fixed
```

3. Attach the VHD. This adds the VHD as a disk to the storage controller on the host.

```
attach vdisk
```

4. Create a partition for the Windows files, format it, and assign it a drive letter. This drive letter will appear in File Explorer.

```
create partition primary
format quick label=vhd
assign letter=v
```

5. Exit Diskpart

```
exit
```

## Step 2: Apply a Windows image to the VHD

On your technician PC, apply a generalized Windows image to the primary partition of the VHD that you created and attached in [Step 1](#).

```
Dism /Apply-Image /ImageFile:install.wim /index:1 /ApplyDir:V:\
```

## Step 3: Detach the VHD, copy it to a new device, and attach it (optional)

You can deploy the VHD to a device that already has a copy of Windows installed on it, or you can clean and prepare the destination PC's hard drive to use the VHD.

### **Detach the VHD and save it to a network share or storage drive**

1. Use diskpart to detach the virtual disk from your technician PC.

```
diskpart
select vdisk file=C:\windows.vhd
detach vdisk
exit
```

2. Copy the VHD to a network share or removable storage drive. The following maps a drive letter to a network share, creates a directory for the VHD, and then copies the VHD.

```
net use n: \\server\share\
md N:\VHDs
copy C:\windows.vhd n:\VHDs\
```

### **Clean and prepare a new device for native boot**

On your destination PC:

1. Use your bootable WinPE key to [boot the destination PC to WinPE](#).
2. Clean and prepare the destination PC's hard drive. Create a system partition (S), and a main partition (M) where the VHD will be stored.

BIOS:

```
diskpart
select disk 0
clean
rem == 1. System partition =====
create partition primary size=100
format quick fs=ntfs label="System"
assign letter="S"
active
rem == 2. Main partition =====
create partition primary
format quick fs=ntfs label="Main"
assign letter="M"
exit
```

UEFI:

```
diskpart
select disk 0
clean
convert gpt
rem == 1. System partition =====
create partition efi size=100
format quick fs=fat32 label="System"
assign letter="S"
rem == 2. Microsoft Reserved (MSR) partition =====
create partition msr size=128
rem == 3. Main partition =====
create partition primary
format quick fs=ntfs label="Main"
assign letter="M"
exit
```

3. Connect to the network drive or storage location where you copied the VHD in [step 3.2](#).

```
net use N: \\server\share
```

4. Copy the VHD from the network drive or storage location to the destination PC's main partition.

```
copy N:\VHDs\Windows.vhd M:
```

## Attach the VHD

1. While still booted into WinPE, attach your VHD to the destination PC.

```
diskpart
select vdisk file=M:\windows.vhd
attach vdisk
```

2. Identify the attached VHD's volume letter. (Optional: Change it to another letter that makes more sense, for example V, and leave the diskpart command line open for the next step).

```
list volume
select volume 3
assign letter=v
```

## Step 4: Add a boot entry

1. From your destination PC, open Diskpart (if necessary) and identify the drive letters of the VHD and the system partition, for example, V and S.

```
diskpart
list volume
exit
```

2. Add a boot entry to the device. You can add multiple VHD files using this method.

BIOS:

```
V:
cd v:\windows\system32
bcdboot v:\windows /s S: /f BIOS
```

UEFI:

```
V:\
cd v:\windows\system32
bcdboot v:\windows /s S: /f UEFI
```

3. Remove the Windows PE USB key.

4. Restart the destination PC.

If there's only one boot entry, the device immediately boots to Windows. If there's more than one boot entry, you'll see a boot menu where you can choose between the available versions of Windows on the device.

## Related topics

[Understanding Virtual Hard Disks with Native Boot](#)

[BCDboot Command-Line Options](#)

# Download and install Windows PE (WinPE) so you can boot from a USB flash drive or an external USB hard drive

7/13/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Boot your PC to a VHD file ("native boot") by using the BCDEdit tool. If you are adding the VHD to a computer that already has a Windows 10 or Windows 8 installation, you will have to add a boot entry to the menu. If you are adding the VHD to a computer that is running an older version of Windows, for example Windows Server 2008, you will have to update the system partition using the BCDboot tool and then modify the boot menu using the BCDEDit tool.

Native boot for Windows 10 requires the **.vhdx** format, not the .vhd format.

## Update the Boot Menu to Add a VHD

### To update a BIOS-based computer to include a Windows 8 boot menu

1. Copy the .vhdx file to the destination computer. For example, at a command prompt, type:

```
copy N:\VHDs\windows.vhdx C:
```

2. Use the DiskPart tool in Windows PE to attach the VHD on the destination computer. You can attach a VHD by using the **Attach vdisk** command. This enables the VHD so that it appears on the host as a disk drive instead of as a .vhdx file. At a command prompt, type:

```
diskpart
select vdisk file=c:\windows.vhdx
attach vdisk
list volume
select volume <volume_number_of_attached_VHD>
assign letter=
exit
```

3. Use the BCDboot tool, located in the **\System32** directory of the VHD image or in Windows PE to copy the boot environment files and Boot Configuration Data (BCD) configuration from the **\Windows** directory in the VHD to the system partition. On a computer that has BIOS firmware, the system partition is the active partition of the first hard disk. For example, to use BCDboot from the VHD image, at a command prompt, type:

```
cd v:\windows\system32
bcdboot v:\windows
```

The BCDboot tool automatically imports information from the existing installation when updating the BCD. The computer is now updated to include a Windows 8 boot environment. You can now follow the steps in the section "To add a native-boot VHD to an existing Windows 8 boot menu" later in this topic.

### To update a UEFI-based computer to include a Windows 8 boot menu

1. Copy the .vhdx file to the destination computer. For example, at a command prompt, type:

```
copy N:\VHDs\windows.vhdx C:
```

2. Use the DiskPart tool in Windows PE to attach the VHD on the destination computer. You can attach a VHD by using the **Attach vdisk** command. This enables the VHD so that it appears on the host as a disk drive instead of as a .vhdx file. At a command prompt, type:

```
diskpart
select vdisk file=C:\windows.vhdx
attach vdisk
list volume
select volume <volume_number_of_attached_VHD>
assign letter=v
exit
```

3. On a UEFI-based computer, the system partition is hidden by default and must be assigned a drive letter before you run the BCDboot tool. Use the DiskPart tool to locate the EFI system partition and assign a drive letter to it. At a command prompt, type:

```
diskpart
select disk 0
list partition
select partition <x>
assign letter=s
exit
```

Where <x> is the 100 megabyte (MB) EFI system partition that is formatted with FAT.

4. Use the BCDboot tool, located in the \System32 directory of the VHD image or in Windows PE to copy the boot environment files and BCD configuration from the \Windows directory in the VHD to the system partition. For example, to use BCDboot from the VHD image, at a command prompt, type:

```
cd v:\windows\system32
bcdboot v:\windows
```

The BCDboot tool automatically imports information from the existing installation when updating the BCD. The computer is now updated with a Windows 10 boot environment. You can now follow the steps to add a native-boot VHD to an existing boot menu.

### To add a native-boot VHD to an existing Windows 8 boot menu

1. Back up your BCD store using the BCDEDIT tool with the **/export** option. For example, at a command prompt, type: `bcdedit /export c:\bcdbackup`
2. Copy an existing boot entry for a Windows installation. You will then modify the copy for use as the VHD boot entry. At a command prompt, type:

```
bcdedit /copy {default} /d "vhd boot (locate)"
```

When the BCDEDIT command is completed successfully, it returns a {GUID} as output in the **Command Prompt** window.

3. Locate the {GUID} in the command-prompt output for the previous command. Copy the GUID, including the braces, to use in the following steps.
4. Set the **device** and **osdevice** options for the VHD boot entry. At a command prompt, type:

```
bcdeedit /set {guid} device vhd=[locate]\windows.vhdx
bcdeedit /set {guid} osdevice vhd=[locate]\windows.vhdx
```

5. Set the boot entry for the VHD as the default boot entry. When the computer restarts, the boot menu will display all of the Windows installations on the computer and boot into the VHD after the operating-system selection countdown is completed. At a command prompt, type:

```
bcdeedit /default {guid}
```

6. Some x86-based systems require a boot configuration option for the kernel in order to detect certain hardware information and successfully native-boot from a VHD. At a command prompt, type:

```
bcdeedit /set {guid} detecthal on
```

For more information about how to use the BCDEDIT tool, see [this Microsoft Web site](#).

## Related topics

[BCDboot Command-Line Options](#)

[Boot to VHD \(Native Boot\): Add a Virtual Hard Disk to the Boot Menu](#)

[Understanding Virtual Hard Disks with Native Boot](#)

# Secure Boot

5 min to read •

Secure Boot is a security standard developed by members of the PC industry to help make sure that your PC boots using only software that is trusted by the PC manufacturer. Support for Secure Boot was introduced in Windows 8.

When the PC starts, the firmware checks the signature of each piece of boot software, including firmware drivers (Option ROMs), EFI applications, and the operating system. If the signatures are good, the PC boots, and the firmware gives control to the operating system.

## Frequently asked questions:

- **Do I need Secure Boot in order to upgrade to the latest version of Windows?**

No. There are no additional hardware or firmware requirements from Windows Vista or Windows 7 to upgrade to the latest version of Windows.

- **What happens if my new hardware isn't trusted by my PC manufacturer?**

Your PC may not be able to boot. There are two kinds of problems that can occur:

- The firmware may not trust the operating system, option ROM, driver, or app because it is not trusted by the Secure Boot database.
- Some hardware requires kernel-mode drivers that must be signed. Note: many older 32-bit (x86) drivers are not signed, because kernel-mode driver signing is a recent requirement for Secure Boot.  
For more info, see [Secure boot feature signing requirements for kernel-mode drivers](#).

For more info, see [Windows 8 with Secure Boot enabled may no longer boot after installing new hardware](#).

- **How can I add hardware or run software or operating systems that haven't been trusted by my PC manufacturer?**

- Most software and hardware should work seamlessly on Windows because they are signed by a trusted Microsoft certificate to support UEFI Secure Boot.
- You can check for software updates from Microsoft and/or the PC manufacturer.
- You can contact your manufacturer to request new hardware or software to be added to the Secure Boot database.
- For most PCs, you can disable Secure Boot through the PC's BIOS. For more info, see [Disabling Secure Boot](#).
- You can customize which certificates are trusted by Secure Boot through the PC's BIOS, in the customize Secure Boot menu.

- **How do I edit my PC's Secure Boot database?**

This can only be done by the PC manufacturer.

## Manufacturing Requirements

Secure Boot requires a PC that meets the UEFI Specifications Version 2.3.1, Errata C or higher.

Secure Boot is supported for UEFI Class 2 and Class 3 PCs. For UEFI Class 2 PCs, when Secure Boot is enabled, the compatibility support module (CSM) must be disabled so that the PC can only boot authorized, UEFI-based operating systems.

Secure Boot does not require a Trusted Platform Module (TPM).

To enable kernel-mode debugging, enable TESTSIGNING, or to disable NX, you must disable Secure Boot. For detailed info for OEMs, see [Windows 8.1 Secure Boot Key Creation and Management Guidance](#).

## How it works

The OEM uses instructions from the firmware manufacturer to create Secure Boot keys and to store them in the PC firmware. For info, see [Windows 8.1 Secure Boot Key Creation and Management Guidance](#), [Secure Boot Key Generation and Signing Using HSM \(Example\)](#), or contact your hardware manufacturer.

When you add UEFI drivers (also known as Option ROMs), you'll also need to make sure these are signed and included in the Secure Boot database. For info, see [UEFI Validation Option ROM Validation Guidance](#).

When Secure Boot is activated on a PC, the PC checks each piece of software, including the Option ROMs and the operating system, against databases of known-good signatures maintained in the firmware. If each piece of software is valid, the firmware runs the software and the operating system.

### Signature Databases and Keys

Before the PC is deployed, the OEM stores the Secure Boot databases onto the PC. This includes the *signature database* (db), *revoked signatures database* (dbx), and *Key Enrollment Key database* (KEK) onto the PC. These databases are stored on the firmware nonvolatile RAM (NV-RAM) at manufacturing time.

The *signature database* (db) and the *revoked signatures database* (dbx) list the signers or image hashes of UEFI applications, operating system loaders (such as the Microsoft Operating System Loader, or Boot Manager), and UEFI drivers that can be loaded on the individual PC, and the revoked images for items that are no longer trusted and may not be loaded.

The *Key Enrollment Key database* (KEK) is a separate database of signing keys that can be used to update the signature database and revoked signatures database. Microsoft requires a specified key to be included in the KEK database so that in the future Microsoft can add new operating systems to the signature database or add known bad images to the revoked signatures database.

After these databases have been added, and after final firmware validation and testing, the OEM locks the firmware from editing, except for updates that are signed with the correct key or updates by a physically present user who is using firmware menus, and then generates a platform key (PK). The PK can be used to sign updates to the KEK or to turn off Secure Boot.

OEMs should contact their firmware manufacturer for tools and assistance in creating these databases. For more info, see [Windows 8.1 Secure Boot Key Creation and Management Guidance](#).

### Boot Sequence

1. After the PC is turned on, the signature databases are each checked against the platform key.
2. If the firmware is not trusted, the UEFI firmware must initiate OEM-specific recovery to restore trusted firmware.
3. If there is a problem with Windows Boot Manager, the firmware will attempt to boot a backup copy of Windows Boot Manager. If this also fails, the firmware must initiate OEM-specific remediation.
4. After Windows Boot Manager has started running, if there is a problem with the drivers or NTOS kernel, Windows Recovery Environment (Windows RE) is loaded so that these drivers or the kernel image can be recovered.

5. Windows loads antimalware software.
6. Windows loads other kernel drivers and initializes the user mode processes.

For more information, see the whitepaper: [Secured Boot and Measured Boot: Hardening Early Boot Components Against Malware](#).

## Related topics

[Secure Boot isn't configured correctly: troubleshooting](#)

[Secure Boot isn't configured correctly: Determine if the PC is in a manufacturing mode \(info for manufacturers\)](#)

[Secured Boot and Measured Boot: Hardening Early Boot Components Against Malware](#)

[UEFI Firmware](#)

# Windows Secure Boot Key Creation and Management Guidance

7/13/2017 • 40 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

**Vishal Manan, Architect, OEM Consulting,** [vmanan@microsoft.com](mailto:vmanan@microsoft.com)

**Arie van der Hoeven, Architect, OEM Consulting,** [ariev@microsoft.com](mailto:ariev@microsoft.com)

This document helps guide OEMs and ODMs in creation and management of the Secure Boot keys and certificates in a manufacturing environment. It addresses questions related to creation, storage and retrieval of Platform Keys (PKs), secure firmware update keys, and third party Key Exchange Keys (KEKs).

**Note:** These steps are not specific to PC OEMs. Enterprises and customers can also use these steps to configure their servers to support Secure Boot.

Windows requirements for UEFI and Secure Boot can be found in the [Windows Hardware Certification Requirements](#). This paper does not introduce new requirements or represent an official Windows program. It is intended as guidance beyond certification requirements, to assist in building efficient and secure processes for creating and managing Secure Boot Keys. This is important because UEFI Secure Boot is based on the usage of Public Key Infrastructure to authenticate code before allowed to execute.

The reader is expected to know the fundamentals of UEFI, basic understanding of Secure Boot (Chapter 27 of the [UEFI specification](#)), and PKI security model.

Requirements, tests, and tools validating Secure Boot on Windows are available today through the [Windows Hardware Certification Kit \(HCK\)](#). However, these HCK resources do not address creation and management of keys for Windows deployments. This paper addresses key management as a resource to help guide partners through deployment of the keys used by the firmware. It is not intended as prescriptive guidance and does not include any new requirements.

On this page:

- [1. Secure Boot, Windows and Key Management](#) contains information on boot security and PKI architecture as it applies to Windows and Secure Boot.
- [2. Key Management Solutions](#) is intended to help partners design a key management and design solution that fits their needs.
- [3. Summary and Resources](#) includes appendices, checklists, APIs, and other references.

This document serves as a starting point in developing customer ready PCs, factory deployment tools and key security best practices.

## 1. Secure Boot, Windows and Key Management

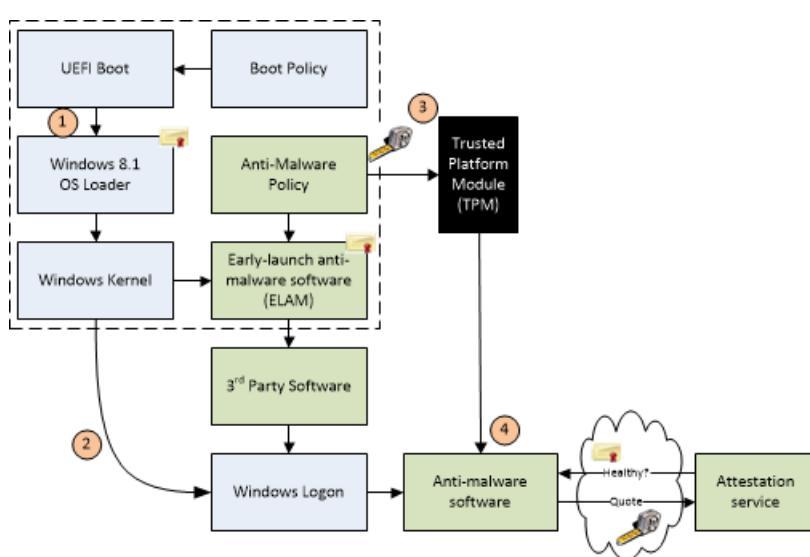
The UEFI (Unified Extensible Firmware Interface) specification defines a firmware execution authentication process called Secure Boot. As an industry standard, Secure Boot defines how platform firmware manages certificates, authenticates firmware, and how the operating system interfaces with this process.

Secure Boot is based on the Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) process to authenticate modules before they are allowed to execute. These modules can include firmware drivers, option ROMs, UEFI drivers on disk, UEFI applications, or UEFI boot loaders. Through image authentication before execution, Secure Boot reduces the risk of pre-boot malware attacks such as rootkits. Microsoft relies on UEFI Secure Boot in Windows 8 and above as part

of its Trusted Boot security architecture to improve platform security for our customers. Secure Boot is required for Windows 8 and above client PCs, and for Windows Server 2016 as defined in the Windows Hardware Compatibility Requirements.

The Secure Boot process works as follows and as shown in Figure 1:

1. **Firmware Boot Components:** The firmware verifies the OS loader is trusted (Windows or another trusted operating system.)
2. **Windows boot components: BootMgr, WinLoad, Windows Kernel Startup.** Windows boot components verify the signature on each component. Any non-trusted components will not be loaded and instead will trigger Secure Boot remediation.
  - **Antivirus and Antimalware Software initialization:** This software is checked for a special signature issued by Microsoft verifying that it is a trusted boot critical driver, and will launch early in the boot process.
  - **Boot Critical Driver initialization:** The signatures on all Boot-critical drivers are checked as part of Secure Boot verification in WinLoad.
3. **Additional OS Initialization**
4. **Windows Logon Screen**



*Figure 1: Windows Trusted Boot Architecture*

Implementation of UEFI Secure Boot is part of Microsoft's Trusted Boot Architecture, introduced in Windows 8.1. A growing trend in the evolution of malware exploits is targeting the boot path as a preferred attack vector. This class of attack has been difficult to guard against, since antimalware products can be disabled by malicious software that prevents them from loading entirely. With Windows Trusted Boot architecture and its establishment of a root of trust with Secure Boot, the customer is protected from malicious code executing in the boot path by ensuring that only signed, certified "known good" code and boot loaders can execute before the operating system itself loads.

### 1.1 Public-Key Infrastructure (PKI) and Secure Boot

The PKI establishes authenticity and trust in a system. Secure Boot leverages PKI for two high-level purposes:

1. During boot to determine if early boot modules are trusted for execution.
2. To authenticate requests to service requests include modification of Secure Boot databases and updates to platform firmware.

A PKI consists of:

- A certificate authority (CA) that issues the digital certificates.
- A registration authority which verifies the identity of users requesting a certificate from the CA.
- A central directory in which to store and index keys.
- A certificate management system.

## **1.2 Public Key Cryptography**

Public key cryptography uses a pair of mathematically related cryptographic keys, known as the public and private key. If you know one of the keys, you cannot easily calculate what the other one is. If one key is used to encrypt information, then only the corresponding key can decrypt that information. For Secure Boot, the private key is used to digitally sign code and the public key is used to verify the signature on that code to prove its authenticity. If a private key is compromised, then systems with corresponding public keys are no longer secure. This can lead to boot kit attacks and will damage the reputation of the entity responsible for ensuring the security of the private key.

In a Secure Boot public key system you have the following:

- **1.2.1 RSA 2048 Encryption**

RSA-2048 is an asymmetric cryptographic algorithm. The space needed to store an RSA-2048 modulus in raw form is 2048 bits.

- **1.2.2 Self-signed certificate**

A certificate signed by the private key that matches the public key of the certificate is known as a self-signed certificate. Root certification authority (CA) certificates fall into this category.

- **1.2.3 Certification Authority**

The certification authority (CA) issues signed certificates that affirm the identity of the certificate subject and bind that identity to the public key contained in the certificate. The CA signs the certificate by using its private key. It issues the corresponding public key to all interested parties in a self-signed root CA certificate.

In Secure Boot, Certification Authorities (CAs) include the OEM (or their delegates) and Microsoft. The CAs generate the key pairs that form the root of trust and then use the private keys to sign legitimate operations such as allowed early boot EFI modules and firmware servicing requests. The corresponding public keys are shipped embedded into the UEFI firmware on Secure Boot-enabled PCs and are used to verify these operations.

(More information on usage of CAs and key exchanges is readily available on the internet which relates to the Secure Boot model.)

- **1.2.4 Public Key**

The public Platform Key ships on the PC and is accessible or “public”. In this document we will use the suffix “pub” to denote public key. For example, PKpub denotes the public half of the PK.

- **1.2.5 Private Key**

For PKI to work the private key needs to be securely managed. It should be accessible to a few highly trusted individuals in an organization and located in a physically secure location with strong access policy restrictions in place. In this document we will use the suffix “priv” to denote private key. For example, the PKpriv indicates private half of the PK.

- **1.2.6 Certificates**

The primary use for digital certificates is to verify the origin of signed data, such as binaries etc. A common

use of certificates is for internet message security using Transport Layer Security (TLS) or Secure Sockets Layer (SSL). Verifying the signed data with a certificate lets the recipient know the origin of the data and if it has been altered in transit.

A digital certificate in general contains, at a high level, a distinguished name (DN), a public key, and a signature. The DN identifies an entity -- a company, for example -- that holds the private key that matches the public key of the certificate. Signing the certificate with a private key and placing the signature in the certificate ties the private key to the public key.

Certificates can contain some other types of data. For example, an X.509 certificate includes the format of the certificate, the serial number of the certificate, the algorithm used to sign the certificate, the name of the CA that issued the certificate, the name and public key of the entity requesting the certificate, and the CA's signature.

- **1.2.7 Chaining certificates**

From: [Certificate chains](#):



Figure 2: Three-certificate chain

User certificates are often signed by a different private key, such as a private key of the CA. This constitutes a two-certificate chain. Verifying that a user certificate is genuine involves verifying its signature, which requires the public key of the CA, from its certificate. But before the public key of the CA can be used, the enclosing CA certificate needs to be verified. Because the CA certificate is self-signed, the CA public key is used to verify the certificate.

A user certificate need not be signed by the private key of the root CA. It could be signed by the private key of an intermediary whose certificate is signed by the private key of the CA. This is an instance of a three-certificate chain: user certificate, intermediary certificate, and CA certificate. But more than one intermediary can be part of the chain, so certificate chains can be of any length.

- **1.3 Secure Boot PKI requirements**

The UEFI-defined root of trust consists of the Platform Key and any keys an OEM or ODM includes in the firmware core. Pre-UEFI security and a root of trust are not addressed by the UEFI Secure Boot process, but instead by National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), and Trusted Computing Group (TCG) publications referenced in this paper.

- **1.3.1 Secure Boot requirements**

You'll need to consider the following parameters for implementing Secure Boot:

- Customer requirements
- Windows Hardware Compatibility requirements
- Key generation and management requirements.

You would need to pick hardware for Secure Boot key management like Hardware Security Modules (HSMs), consider special requirements on PCs to ship to governments and other agencies and finally the process of creating, populating and managing the life cycle of various Secure Boot keys.

- **1.3.2 Secure Boot related keys**

The keys used for Secure Boot are below:

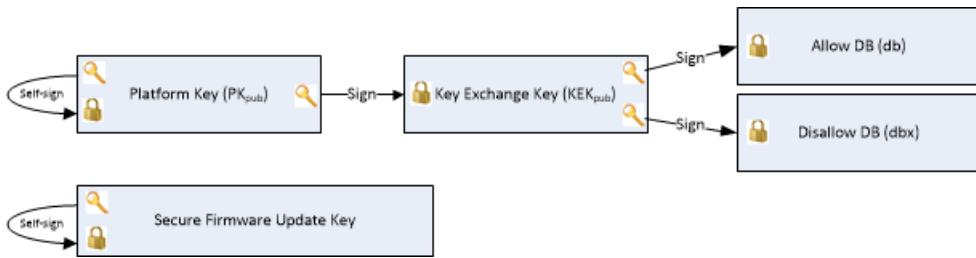


Figure 3: Keys related to Secure Boot

Figure 3 above represents the signatures and keys in a PC with Secure Boot. The platform is secured through a platform key that the OEM installs in firmware during manufacturing. Other keys are used by Secure Boot to protect access to databases that store keys to allow or disallow execution of firmware.

The authorized database (db) contains public keys and certificates that represent trusted firmware components and operating system loaders. The forbidden signature database (dbx) contains hashes of malicious and vulnerable components as well as compromised keys and certificates and blocks execution of those malicious components. The strength of these policies is based on signing firmware using Authenticode and Public Key Infrastructure (PKI). PKI is a well-established process for creating, managing, and revoking certificates that establish trust during information exchange. PKI is at the core of the security model for Secure Boot.

Below are more details on these keys.

- **1.3.3 Platform Key (PK)**

As per section 27.5.1 of the UEFI 2.3.1 Errata C, the platform key establishes a trust relationship between the platform owner and the platform firmware. The platform owner enrolls the public half of the key (PK<sub>pub</sub>) into the platform firmware as specified in **Section 7.2.1 of the UEFI 2.3.1 Errata C**. This step moves the platform into user mode from setup mode. Microsoft recommends that the Platform Key be of type **EFI\_CERT\_X509\_GUID** with public key algorithm RSA, public key length of 2048 bits, and signature algorithm sha256RSA. The platform owner may use type **EFI\_CERT\_RSA2048\_GUID** if storage space is a concern. Public keys are used to check signatures as described earlier in this document. The platform owner can later use the private half of the key (PK<sub>priv</sub>):

- To change platform ownership you must put the firmware into UEFI defined **setup mode** which disables Secure Boot. We recommend reverting to setup mode only if there is a need to do this during manufacturing.
- For desktop PC, OEMs manage PK and necessary PKI associated with it. For Servers, OEMs by default manage PK and necessary PKI. Enterprise customers or Server customers can also customize PK, replacing the OEM-trusted PK with a custom-proprietary PK to lock down the trust in UEFI Secure Boot firmware to itself.

#### **1.3.3.1 To enroll or update a Key Exchange Key (KEK) Enrolling the Platform Key**

The platform owner enrolls the public half of the Platform Key (**PK<sub>pub</sub>**) by calling the UEFI Boot Service SetVariable() as specified in Section 7.2.1 of UEFI Spec 2.3.1 errata C, and resetting the platform. If the platform is in setup mode, then the new **PK<sub>pub</sub>** shall be signed with its **PK<sub>priv</sub>** counterpart. If the platform is in user mode, then the new **PK<sub>pub</sub>** must be signed with the current **PK<sub>priv</sub>**. If the PK is of type **EFI\_CERT\_X509\_GUID**, then this must be signed by the immediate **PK<sub>priv</sub>**, not a private key of any certificate issued under the PK.

#### **1.3.3.2 Clearing the Platform Key**

The platform owner clears the public half of the Platform Key (**PK<sub>pub</sub>**) by calling the UEFI Boot Service SetVariable() with a variable size of 0 and resetting the platform. If the platform is in setup mode, then the empty variable does not need to be authenticated. If the platform is in user mode, then the empty variable

must be signed with the current **PKpriv**; see Section 7.2(Variable Services) under [UEFI specification 2.3.1 Errata C](#) for details. It is strongly recommended that the production PKpriv never be used to sign a package to reset the platform since this allows Secure Boot to be disabled programmatically. This is primarily a pre-production test scenario.

The platform key may also be cleared using a secure platform-specific method. In this case, the global variable Setup Mode must also be updated to 1.

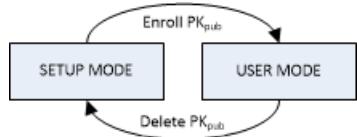


Figure 4: Platform Key State diagram

### 1.3.3.3 PK generation

As per UEFI recommendations, the public key must be stored in non-volatile storage which is tamper and delete resistant on the PC. The Private keys stay secure at Partner or in the OEM's Security Office and only the public key is loaded onto the platform. There are more details under section 2.2.1 and 2.3.

The number of PK generated is at the discretion of the Platform owner (OEM). These keys could be:

1. **One per PC.** Having one unique key for each device. This may be required for government agencies, financial institutions, or other server customers with high-security needs. It may require additional storage and crypto processing power to generate private and public keys for large numbers of PCs. This adds the complexity of mapping devices with their corresponding PK when pushing out firmware updates to the devices in the future. There are a few different HSM solutions available to manage large number of keys based on the HSM vendor. For more info, see [Secure Boot Key Generation Using HSM](#).
2. **One per model.** Having one key per PC model. The tradeoff here is that if a key is compromised all the machines within the same model would be vulnerable. This is recommended by Microsoft for desktop PCs.
3. **One per product line.** If a key is compromised a whole product line would be vulnerable.
4. **One per OEM.** While this may be the simplest to set up, if the key is compromised, every PC you manufacture would be vulnerable. To speed up operation on the factory floor, the PK and potentially other keys could be pre-generated and stored in a safe location. These could be later retrieved and used in the assembly line. Chapters 2 and 3 have more details.

### 1.3.3.4 Rekeying the PK

This may be needed if the PK gets compromised or as a requirement by a customer that for security reasons may decide to enroll their own PK.

Rekeying could be done either for a model or PC based on what method was selected to create PK. All the newer PCs will get signed with the newly created PK.

Updating the PK on a production PC would require either a variable update signed with the existing PK that replaces the PK or a firmware update package. An OEM could also create a SetVariable() package and distribute that with a simple application such as PowerShell that just changes the PK. The firmware update package would be signed by the secure firmware update key and verified by firmware. If doing a firmware update to update the PK, care should be taken to ensure the KEK, db, and dbx are preserved.

On all PCs, it is recommended to not use the PK as the secure firmware update key. If the PKpriv is compromised then so is the secure firmware update key (since they are the same). In this case the update to enroll a new PKpub might not be possible since the process of updating has also been compromised.

On SOCs PCs, there is another reason to not use the PK as the secure firmware update key. This is because the secure firmware update key is permanently burnt into fuses on PCs that meet Windows Hardware Certification requirements.

- **1.3.4 Key Exchange Key (KEK)** Key exchange keys establish a trust relationship between the operating system and the platform firmware. Each operating system (and potentially, each 3rd party application which need to communicate with platform firmware) enrolls a public key (**KEKpub**) into the platform firmware.

#### 1.3.4.1 Enrolling Key Exchange Keys

Key exchange keys are stored in a signature database as described in [1.4 Signature Databases \(Db and Dbx\)](#). The signature database is stored as an authenticated UEFI variable.

The platform owner enrolls the key exchange keys by either calling SetVariable() as specified in Section 7.2(Variable Services) under [UEFI specification](#) 2.3.1 Errata C. with the EFI\_VARIABLE\_APPEND\_WRITE attribute set and the Data parameter containing the new key(s), or by reading the database using GetVariable(), appending the new key exchange key to the existing keys and then writing the database using SetVariable() as specified in Section 7.2(Variable Services) under [UEFI specification](#) 2.3.1 Errata C without the EFI\_VARIABLE\_APPEND\_WRITE attribute set.

If the platform is in setup mode, the signature database variable does not need to be signed but the parameters to the SetVariable() call shall still be prepared as specified for authenticated variables in Section 7.2.1. If the platform is in user mode, the signature database must be signed with the current PKpriv

#### 1.3.4.2 Clearing the KEK

It is possible to "clear" (delete) the KEK. Note that if the PK is not installed on the platform, "clear" requests are not required to be signed. If they are signed, then to clear the KEK requires a PK-signed package, and to clear either db or dbx requires a package signed by any entity present in the KEK.

#### 1.3.4.3 Microsoft KEK

The Microsoft KEK is required to enable revocation of bad images by updating the dbx and potentially for updating db to prepare for newer Windows signed images.

Include the Microsoft Corporation KEK CA 2011 in the KEK database, with the following values:

- SHA-1 cert hash: `31 59 0b fd 89 c9 d7 4e d0 87 df ac 66 33 4b 39 31 25 4b 30`.
- SignatureOwner GUID: `{77fa9abd-0359-4d32-bd60-28f4e78f784b}`.
- Microsoft will provide the certificate to partners and it can be added either as an **EFI\_CERT\_X509\_GUID** or an **EFI\_CERT\_RSA2048\_GUID** type signature.

The Microsoft KEK certificate can be downloaded from: <http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=321185>.

**1.3.4.4 KEKDefault** The platform vendor may provide a default set of Key Exchange Keys in the KEKDefault variable. Please reference [UEFI specification](#) section 27.3.3 for more information.

#### 1.3.4.5 OEM/3rd party KEK - adding multiple KEK

Customers and Platform Owners don't need to have their own KEK. On non-Windows RT PCs the OEM may have additional KEKs to allow additional OEM or a trusted 3rd party control of the db and dbx.

- **1.3.5 Secure Boot firmware update key** The Secure firmware update key is used to sign the firmware when it needs to be updated. This key has to have a minimum key strength of RSA-2048. All firmware updates must be signed securely by the OEM, their trusted delegate such as the ODM or IBV (Independent BIOS Vendor), or by a secure signing service.

As per [NIST publication 800-147 Field Firmware Update](#) must support all elements of guidelines:

Any update to the firmware flash store must be signed by creator.

Firmware must check signature of the update.

- **1.3.6 Creation of keys for Secure Firmware Update**

The same key will be used to sign all firmware updates since the public half will be residing on the PC. You could also sign the firmware update with a key which chains to Secure Firmware update key.

There could be one key per PC like PK or one per model or one per product line. If there is one key per PC that would mean that millions of unique update packages will need to be generated. Please consider based on resource availability what method would work for you. Having a key per model or product line is a good compromise.

The Secure Firmware Update public key (or its hash to save space) would be stored in some protected storage on the platform – generally protected flash (PC) or one-time-programmable fuses (SOC).

If only the hash of this key is stored (to save space), then the firmware update will include the key, and the first stage of the update process will be verifying that the public key in the update matches the hash stored on the platform.

Capsules are a means by which the OS can pass data to UEFI environment across a reboot. Windows calls the UEFI UpdateCapsule() to deliver system and PC firmware updates. At boot time prior to calling ExitBootServices(), Windows will pass in any new firmware updates found in the Windows Driver Store into UpdateCapsule(). UEFI system firmware can use this process to update system and PC firmware. By leveraging this Windows firmware support an OEM can rely on the same common format and process for updating firmware for both system and PC firmware. Firmware must implement the ACPI ESRT table in order to support UEFI UpdateCapsule() for Windows.

For details on implementing support for the Windows UEFI Firmware Update Platform consult the following documentation: Windows UEFI Firmware Update Platform.

Update capsules can be in memory or on the disk. Windows supports in memory updates.

- **1.3.6.1 Capsule (Capsule-in-Memory)**

Following is the flow of events for an In-memory update capsule to work.

1. A capsule is put in memory by an application in the OS
2. Mailbox event is set to inform BIOS of pending update
3. PC reboots, verifies the capsule image and update is performed by the BIOS

- **1.3.7 Workflow of a typical firmware update**

1. Download and install the firmware driver.
2. Reboot.
3. OS Loader detects and verifies the firmware.
4. OS Loader passes a binary blob to UEFI.
5. UEFI performs the firmware update (This process is owned by the silicon vendor).
6. OS Loader detection completes successfully.
7. OS finishes booting.

## 1.4 Signature Databases (Db and Dbx)

- **1.4.1 Allowed Signature database (db)**

The contents of the EFI\_IMAGE\_SECURITY\_DATABASE db control what images are trusted when verifying loaded images. The database may contain multiple certificates, keys, and hashes in order to identify allowed images.

The **Microsoft Windows Production PCA 2011** with a SHA-1 Cert Hash of

58 0a 6f 4c c4 e4 b6 69 b9 eb dc 1b 2b 3e 08 7b 80 d0 67 8d must be included in db in order to allow the

Windows OS Loader to load. The Windows CA can be downloaded from here:

<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=321192>.

On non-Windows RT PCs the OEM should consider including the **Microsoft Corporation UEFI CA 2011** with a SHA-1 Certificate Hash of 46 de f6 3b 5c e6 1c f8 ba 0d e2 e6 63 9c 10 19 d0 ed 14 f3. Signing UEFI drivers and applications with this certificate will allow UEFI drivers and applications from 3rd parties to run on the PC without requiring additional steps for the user. The UEFI CA can be downloaded from here: <http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=321194>.

On non-Windows RT PCs the OEM may also have additional items in the db to allow other operating systems or OEM-approved UEFI drivers or apps, but these images must not compromise the security of the PC in any way.

- **1.4.2 DbDefault:** The platform vendor may provide a default set of entries for the Signature Database in the dbDefault variable. For more information see section 27.5.3 in the UEFI specification.

- **1.4.3 Forbidden Signature Database (dbx)**

The contents of **EFI\_IMAGE\_SIGNATURE\_DATABASE1** dbx must be checked when verifying images before checking db and any matches must prevent the image from executing. The database may contain multiple certificates, keys, and hashes in order to identify forbidden images. The Windows Hardware Certification Requirements state that a dbx must be present, so any dummy value, such as the SHA-256 hash of 0, may be used as a safe placeholder until such time as Microsoft begins delivering dbx updates. [Click Here](#) to download the latest UEFI revocation list from Microsoft.

- **1.4.4 DbxDefault:** The platform vendor may provide a default set of entries for the Signature Database in the dbxDefault variable. For more information see section 27.5.3 in the UEFI specification.

## 1.5 Keys Required for Secure Boot on all PCs

| KEY/DB NAME                          | VARIABLE | OWNER     | NOTES                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------|----------|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PKpub                                | PK       | OEM       | PK – 1 only. Must be RSA 2048 or stronger.                                                                                                                                    |
| Microsoft Corporation KEK CA 2011    | KEK      | Microsoft | Allows updates to db and dbx:<br><a href="http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=321195">http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=321195</a> .                                  |
| Microsoft Windows Production CA 2011 | db       | Microsoft | This CA in the Signature Database (db) allows Windows to boot:<br><a href="http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=321192">http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=321192</a> . |

| KEY/DB NAME                  | VARIABLE | OWNER     | NOTES                                                   |
|------------------------------|----------|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| Forbidden Signature Database | dbx      | Microsoft | List of known bad Keys, CAs or images from Microsoft    |
| Secure firmware update key   |          | OEM       | Recommendation is to have this key be different from PK |

Table 1: Keys/db needed for Secure Boot

## 2. Key Management Solutions

Below are given some of the metrics we used for comparison.

### 2.1 Metrics used

The following metrics can help you select a HSM PC based on the requirements of [UEFI specification](#) 2.3.1 Errata C and your needs.

#### Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) related

- Does it support RSA 2048 or higher? - The [UEFI specification](#) 2.3.1 Errata C recommends the keys to be RSA-2048 or better.
- Does it have the ability to generate keys and sign?
- How many keys can it store? Does it store keys on HSM or an attached server?
- Authentication method for key retrieval.

Some PCs support multiple authentication entities to be present for key retrieval.

#### Pricing

- What is the price point? HSMs can range in price from \$1,500 to \$70,000 depending on available features.

#### Manufacturing environment

- Speed of operation on factory floor. Crypto processors can speed up key creation and access.
- Ease of setup, deployment, maintenance.
- Skillset and training required?
- Network access for backup and High Availability

#### Standards and Compliance

- What level of FIPS compliance does it have? Is it tamper resistant?
- Support for other standards, for example, MS crypto APIs.
- Does it meet government and other agency requirements?

#### Reliability and disaster recovery

- Does it allow for Key Backup?

Backups can be stored both onsite in a safe location that is a different physical location than the CA

computer and HSM and /or at an offsite location.

- Does it allow for High Availability for disaster recovery?

## 2.2 Key Management Options

- **2.2.1 Hardware Security Module (HSM)**

Based on the above criteria this is probably the most suitable and secure solution. Most HSM have FIPS 140-2 level 3 compliance. FIPS 140-2 level 3 compliance is strict on authentication and requires that keys are not exported or imported from the HSM.

They support multiple ways of key storage. They could be stored either locally on the HSM itself or on the server attached to the HSM. On the server the keys are encrypted and stored and is preferable for solutions which requires lots of keys to be stored.

The cryptographic module security policy shall specify a physical security policy, including physical security mechanisms that are implemented in a cryptographic module such as, tamper-evident seals, locks, tamper response and zeroization switches, and alarms. It also allows specifying actions required by the operator(s) to ensure that physical security is maintained such as periodic inspection of tamper-evident seals or testing of tamper response and zeroization switches.

### 2.2.1.1 Network HSM

This solution is the best in its class in terms of security, adherence to standards, key generation, storage and retrieval. Most of these PCs support high availability and have ability to backup keys.

The costs of these products can be in tens of thousands of dollars based on the extra services they offer.

### 2.2.1.2 Standalone HSM

These work great with standalone servers. One can use Microsoft CAPI and CNG or any other secure API supported by HSM. These HSMs come in variety of form factors supporting USB, PCIe and PCMCIA buses.

They optionally support key backup and high availability.

- **2.2.2 Custom solutions providers**

Public Key cryptography can be challenging and require understanding of cryptographic concepts which maybe new. There are custom solution providers who could help with the getting Secure Boot to work in the manufacturing environment.

There are varieties of custom solutions offered by BIOS vendors, HSM companies and PKI consulting companies to get Secure Boot PKI working in the manufacturing environment.

Some of the providers are listed below:

#### 2.2.2.1 BIOS vendors

There are some BIOS vendors which may be able to provide custom solutions.

#### 2.2.2.2 HSM vendors

Some HSM vendors may be able to provide custom consulting. For more info, see [Secure Boot Key Generation and Signing Using HSM \(Example\)](#).

- **2.2.3 Trusted Platform Module (TPM)**

A Trusted Platform Module (TPM) is a hardware chip on the motherboard that stores cryptographic keys used for encryption. Many computers include a TPM, but if the PC doesn't include it, it is not feasible to add one. Once enabled, the Trusted Platform Module can help secure full disk encryption products such as Microsoft BitLocker capabilities. It keeps hard drives locked, or sealed, until the PC completes a system

verification or authentication process.

The TPM can generate, store, and protect keys used in the encryption and decryption process.

The drawbacks of TPMs are that it may not have fast crypto processors to speed up processing in the manufacturing environment. They also are not suitable for storing large number of keys. Backup and high availability and standards compliance to FIPS 140-2 level 3 may not be available.

- **2.2.4 Smart Cards**

A smart card can generate and store keys. They do share some features which HSM support like authentication and tamper proofing, but they don't include much key storage or backup. They require manual intervention and may not be suitable for automation and use in production environment as the performance maybe low.

The drawbacks of Smart cards are similar to TPMs. They may not have fast crypto processors to speed up processing in the manufacturing environment. They also are not suitable for storing large number of keys. Backup and high availability and standards compliance to FIPS 140-2 level 3 may not be available.

- **2.2.5 Extended Validation Certificate**

EV Certificates are high assurance certificates whose private keys are stored in hardware tokens. This helps establish stronger key management practices. EV certificates have the same drawbacks as Smart cards.

- **2.2.6 Software-centric approaches (NOT RECOMMENDED)**

Use crypto APIs for key management. This may involve storing a key in a key container on an encrypted hard drive and possible for additional sandboxing and security use a Virtual machine.

These solutions are not as secure as using an HSM and expose a higher attack vector.

#### **2.2.6.1 Makecert (NOT RECOMMENDED)**

Makecert is a Microsoft tool and can be used as follows for key generation. To make sure that the attack surface is minimized you may need to "air gap" the PC. The PC that has the PKpriv on should not be connected to the network. It should be in a secure location and ideally should at least use a smart card reader if not a real HSM.

```
makecert -pe -ss MY -$ individual -n "CN=your name here" -len 2048 -r
```

For more info, see [Certificate Creation Tool \(Makecert.exe\)](#).

This solution is not recommended.

### **2.3 HSM Key generation and storage for Secure Boot keys**

- **2.3.1 Storing Private keys**

The space requirement for each RSA-2048 key is 2048 bits. The actual location of the storage of the keys depends on the solution chosen. HSM are a good way of storing keys.

The physical location of the PCs on the factory floor would need to be a protected area with limited user access like a secure cage.

Depending on your requirements these keys could also be stored in a diverse geographical location or backed up in a different location.

The rekeying requirements for these keys could vary based on the customer (see Appendix A for Federal bridge certificate authority rekeying guidelines).

These could be done once per year. You may need to have access to these keys for up to 30 years

(depending on the rekeying requirements etc.).

- **2.3.2 Retrieving the private Keys**

The keys may need to be retrieved for many reasons.

1. The PK may need to be retrieved to issue an updated PK due to it being compromised or to adhere to government /other agency regulations.
2. KEKpri will be used to update the db and dbx.
3. Secure firmware update key –pri will be used to sign newer updates.

- **2.3.3 Authentication**

As per FIPS 140-2 authentication is based on level of access.

### **Level 2**

Security Level 2 requires, at a minimum, role-based authentication in which a cryptographic module authenticates the authorization of an operator to assume a specific role and perform a corresponding set of services.

### **Level 3**

Security Level 3 requires identity-based authentication mechanisms, enhancing the security provided by the role-based authentication mechanisms specified for Security Level 2. A cryptographic module authenticates the identity of an operator and verifies that the identified operator is authorized to assume a specific role and perform a corresponding set of services.

PCs like HSM's support Security Level 3, which requires identity-based "k of m authentication". This means k entities are given access to the HSM with a token but at a given point at least k out of the m tokens need to be present for authentication to work to get access to private keys from HSM.

For example, you could have 3 out of 5 tokens should be authenticated to access HSM. Those members could be the security officers, transaction authorizer and/or members from Executive Management.

### **HSM Tokens**

You could have a policy on the HSM which require the token to be present:

- Locally
- Remotely
- Configured to be automated

As a good practice, please use a combination of token and per token password.

## **2.4 Secure Boot and 3rd party signing**

- **2.4.1 UEFI driver signing**

UEFI Drivers must be signed by a CA or key in the db as described elsewhere in the document, or have the hash of the driver image included in db. Microsoft will be providing a UEFI driver signing service similar to the WHQL driver signing service using the **Microsoft Corporation UEFI CA 2011**. Any drivers signed by this will run seamlessly on any PCs that include the Microsoft UEFI CA. It is also possible for an OEM to sign trusted drivers and include the OEM CA in the db, or to include hashes of the drivers in the db. In all cases a UEFI driver (Option ROM) shall not execute if it is not trusted in the db.

Any drivers that are included in the system firmware image do not need to be re-verified. Being part of the overall system image provides sufficient assurance that the driver is trusted on the PC.

Microsoft has this made available to anyone who wants to sign UEFI drivers. This certificate is part of the Windows HCK Secure Boot tests. Follow [this blog] ([https://blogs.msdn.microsoft.com/windows\\_hardware\\_certification/2013/12/03/microsoft-uefi-ca-signing-policy-updates/](https://blogs.msdn.microsoft.com/windows_hardware_certification/2013/12/03/microsoft-uefi-ca-signing-policy-updates/)) to read more about UEFI CA signing policy and updates.

- **2.4.2 Boot loaders**

The Microsoft UEFI driver signing certificate can be used for signing other OSs. For example, Fedora's Linux boot loader will be signed by it.

This solution doesn't require any more certificates to be added to the key Db. In addition to being cost effective, it can be used for any Linux distribution. This solution would work for any hardware which supports Windows so it is useful for a wide range of hardware.

The UEFI-CA can be downloaded from here: <http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/p/?LinkId=321194>. The following links have more information on Windows HCK UEFI signing and submission:

- [Windows Dev Center Hardware Dashboard](#)
- [Windows Certification Dashboard Administration](#)
- [UEFI Firmware Signing](#)
- [Windows Hardware Certification blog: UEFI signing CA update](#)

### 3. Summary and Resources

This section intends to summarize the above sections and show a step by step approach:

1. **Establish a secure CA or identify a partner to securely generate and store keys**

If you are not using a 3rd party solution:

- a. **Install and configure the HSM software on the HSM server.** Check your HSM reference manual for installation instructions. The server will either be connected to a standalone or network HSM.

For info about HSM configuration, see Section 2.2.1, 2.3 and Appendix C.

Most HSMs offer FIPS 140-2 level 2 and 3 compliance. Configure the HSM for either level 2 or level 3 compliance. Level 3 compliance has stricter requirements around authentication and key access and hence is more secure. Level 3 is recommended.

- b. **Configure HSM for High Availability, Backup and Authentication.** Check your HSM reference manual.

Follow HSM provider guidelines on setting up HSM for High Availability and backup.

Also, Network HSMs typically have multiple network ports to segregate traffic; allowing a server to communicate with network HSMs on a network separate from the regular production network.

Once team members who are part of the security team have been identified and tokens assigned to them. You will need to setup HSM hardware for k-of-m authentication.

- c. **Secure Boot Keys and certificate pre-generation.** See Sections 1.3 to 1.5

Use HSM APIs to pre-generate (generate in advance) the PK and Firmware Update Key and certificates.

Required - PK (recommend 1 per model), Firmware Update key (recommend 1 per model), Microsoft KEK, Db, DbxNOTE: The Microsoft KEK, db, and dbx don't have to be generated by the OEM and are mentioned for completeness.Optional - OEM/3rd party KEK db, dbx and any other keys

which would go into OEM Db.

2. **Apply a Windows image to the PC.**
  3. **Install Microsoft db and dbx.** See Section 1.3.6 and [Appendix B – Secure Boot APIs](#).
    - a. Install the **Microsoft Windows Production PCA 2011** into db.
    - b. Install an empty dbx if Microsoft does not provide one. Windows will automatically update DBX to the latest DBX through Windows Update on first reboot.
- Note**  
Use PowerShell cmdlets which are part of the Windows HCK tests or use methods provided by BIOS vendor.
4. **Install Microsoft KEK.** See Section 1.3.3.  
Install Microsoft KEK into the UEFI KEK database

**Caution**  
Use PowerShell cmdlets which are part of the Windows HCK tests or use methods provided by BIOS vendor.

  5. **Optional step - OEM/3rd party secure boot components.** See Section 1.3.4 and 1.4.
    - a. Identify if you have need for creating a OEM/3rd party KEK, db and dbx.
    - b. Sign OEM/3rd party db and dbx with OEM/3rd party KEK(generated earlier) using HSM API.
    - c. Install OEM/3rd party KEK, db and dbx.
  6. **UEFI driver signing** – See Section 2.4.  
If supporting add-in cards or other UEFI drivers/apps/bootloaders, install **Microsoft Corporation UEFI CA 2011** into UEFI db.
  7. **Secure boot firmware update key** - See Section 1.3.5.
    - a. Non-Windows RT PCs only: Install the Secure firmware update public key or its hash to save space.
    - b. On SoC only, you may need to do something different, for example, burn Secure firmware update key: public or its hash.
  8. **Enabling Secure Boot.** See [Appendix B – Secure Boot APIs](#).
    - a. Install the OEM/ODM PKpub (certificate preferred, but key is okay) into the UEFI PK.
    - b. Enroll the PK using Secure Boot API. The PC should be now enabled for Secure Boot.
- Note**  
If you install the PK at the end, the MS KEK, db, dbx don't need to be signed – no SignerInfo must be present. This is a shortcut.
9. **Testing Secure Boot:** Execute any proprietary tests and Windows HCK tests as per instructions. See [Appendix B – Secure Boot APIs](#).
  10. **Ship platform:** The PKpriv will likely never be used again, keep it safe.
  11. **Servicing:** Future firmware updates are securely signed with the Secure Firmware Update "private" key using the signing service.

### 3.1 Resources

Security Strategies White Paper - <http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/p/?linkid=321288>

## Appendix A – Secure Boot PKI checklist for manufacturing

Below is a high-level checklist summarizing the steps needed for enabling Secure Boot on non-Windows RT PCs.

### Setting up Secure Boot

1. Define security strategy (identify threats, define proactive and reactive strategy) as per the white paper in section 4.
2. Identify security team as per the white paper in section 4.
3. Establish a secure CA or identify a partner (recommended solution) to securely generate and store keys.
4. Identify policy for how frequently you will be rekeying keys. This may depend on if you have any special customer requirements like governments or other agencies.
5. Have a contingency plan in case the Secure Boot Key is compromised.
6. Identify how many PK and other keys will you be generating as per section 1.3.3 and 1.5.

This will be based on customer base, key storage solution and security of PCs.

You can skip steps 7-8 if you are using the recommended solution of using a 3rd party for key management.

7. Procure server and hardware for key management. – network or standalone HSM per section 2.2.1.  
Consider whether you will need one or several HSMs for high availability and your key back up strategy.
8. Identify at least 3-4 team members who will have an authentication token for authentication on HSM.
9. Use HSM or 3rd party to pre-generate Secure Boot-related keys and certificates. The keys will depend on the PC type: SoC, Windows RT or non-Windows RT. For more info, see Sections 1.3 through 1.5.
10. Populate the firmware with the appropriate keys.
11. Enroll the Secure Boot Platform Key to enable Secure Boot. See Appendix B for more details.
12. Execute any proprietary tests and HCK Secure Boot tests as per instructions. See Appendix B for more details.
13. Ship the PC. The PKpriv will likely never be used again, keep it safe.

### Servicing (Updating firmware)

You may need to update firmware for several reasons such as updating an UEFI component or fixing Secure Boot key compromise or periodic rekeying of Secure Boot keys.

For more info, see Section 1.3.5 and section 1.3.6.

## Appendix B – Secure Boot APIs

### 1. Secure Boot API

The following APIs are related to UEFI/Secure Boot:

- a. [GetFirmwareEnvironmentVariableEx](#): Retrieves the value of the specified firmware environment variable.
- b. [SetFirmwareEnvironmentVariableEx](#): Sets the value of the specified firmware environment variable.

c. [GetFirmwareType](#): Retrieves the firmware type.

## 2. Setting PK

Use the Set-SecureBootUEFI cmdlet to turn on Secure Boot. After your code sets the PK, system enforcement of Secure Boot does not take effect until the next reboot. Prior to the reboot, your code could call GetFirmwareEnvironmentVariableEx() or the PowerShell cmdlet: Get-SecureBootUEFI to confirm the contents of the Secure Boot databases.

## 3. Verification

You can use Msinfo32.exe or PowerShell cmdlets to check Secure Boot variable state. There is no WMI interface. You could also test by having someone insert an incorrectly-signed bootable USB stick (for example, from the Windows HCK Secure Boot Manual Logo Test) and verify that it fails to boot.

## 4. Secure Boot Powershell Cmdlets

- **Confirm-SecureBootUEFI**: Is UEFI Secure Boot "ON", True or False?

```
SetupMode == 0 && SecureBoot == 1
```

- **Set-SecureBootUEFI**: Set or Append authenticated SecureBoot UEFI variables
- **Get-SecureBootUEFI**: Get authenticated SecureBoot UEFI variable values
- **Format-SecureBootUEFI**: Creates EFI\_SIGNATURE\_LISTs & EFI\_VARIABLE\_AUTHENTICATION\_2 serializations

## 5. Windows HCK and Secure Boot Instructions

The following steps apply to system tests and non-class driver PC tests.

- a. Disable Secure Boot protections.

Enter your BIOS configuration and disable Secure Boot.

- b. Install the HCK Client software.

- c. Run all of the Windows HCK tests, except for the following:

- BitLocker TPM and Recovery password tests with PCR[7]
- BitLocker TPM and Recovery password tests for ARM PCs with Secure Boot
- Secure Boot Logo Test
- Secure Boot Manual Logo Test

- d. Enter your BIOS configuration, enable Secure Boot, and restore Secure Boot to the Default configuration.

- e. Run the following BitLocker and Secure Boot tests:

- BitLocker TPM and Recovery password tests with PCR[7]
- BitLocker TPM and Recovery password tests for ARM PCs with Secure Boot
- Secure Boot Logo Test (automated)

- f. Enter the BIOS configuration and clear the Secure Boot configuration. This restores the PC to Setup Mode by deleting PK and other keys.

### Note

Support for clearing is required for x86/x64 PCs.

g. Run the Secure Boot Manual Logo Test.

**Note**

Secure Boot requires Windows HCK signed or VeriSign drivers on non-Windows RT PCs

## 6. Windows HCK Secure Boot Logo Test (automated)

This test will check for proper out-of-box Secure Boot configuration. This includes:

- Secure Boot is Enabled.
- The PK is not a known, test PK.
- KEK contains the production Microsoft KEK.
- db contains the production Windows CA.
- dbx present.
- Many 1kB variables are created/deleted.
- A 32kB variable is created/deleted.

## 7. Windows HCK Secure Boot manual test folder layout

The Windows HCK Secure Boot Manual Logo test folder layout is described below:

- “\Test” folder has the following:
  - Manufacturing and Servicing Test
  - Programmatically Enable Secure Boot in test configuration
  - Servicing Tests
  - Append a cert to db, verify function
  - Append a hash to dbx, verify function
  - Append a cert to dbx, verify function
  - Append 600+ hashes to dbx, verify size
  - Programmatically change the PK
- “\Generate” folder has scripts which show the following:
  - How test certificates were created
  - The test certificates and private keys are included
  - How all of the tests were created
  - Turning certificates and hashes into signed packages
  - You can run this yourself, substitute your own certificates
- “\certs” folder has all of the certificates you need to boot Windows:

**Note**

Please don't use the methodology used in “ManualTests\generate\TestCerts” to generate keys and certificates. This is meant for Windows HCK test purposes only. It uses keys which are stored on disk which is very insecure and not recommended. This is not meant for use in a production environment.

- ``ManualTests\example\OutOfBox`` folder has scripts which you can leverage for installation of Secure Boot on production PCs.

The “ManualTests\generate\tests\subcreate\\_outofbox\\_example.ps1” demonstrates how these examples were generated and have “TODO” sections when a partner can substitute their PK and other metadata.

## 1. Windows HCK UEFI signing and submission

The following links have more information:

- [Hardware Developer Center Dashboard](#)
- [UEFI Firmware Signing](#)
- [Windows Certification Dashboard Administration](#)
- [Windows Hardware Certification blog: Microsoft UEFI CA Signing policy updates](#)

# Appendix C – Federal Bridge Certification Authority Certificate Policy Assurance Mappings

## 1. Rudimentary

This level provides the lowest degree of assurance concerning identity of the individual. One of the primary functions of this level is to provide data integrity to the information being signed. This level is relevant to environments in which the risk of malicious activity is considered to be low. It is not suitable for transactions requiring authentication, and is generally insufficient for transactions requiring confidentiality, but may be used for the latter where certificates having higher levels of assurance are unavailable.

## 2. Basic

This level provides a basic level of assurance relevant to environments where there are risks and consequences of data compromise, but they are not considered to be of major significance. This may include access to private information where the likelihood of malicious access is not high. It is assumed at this security level that users are not likely to be malicious.

## 3. Medium

This level is relevant to environments where risks and consequences of data compromise are moderate. This may include transactions having substantial monetary value or risk of fraud, or involving access to private information where the likelihood of malicious access is substantial.

## 4. High

This level is appropriate for use where the threats to data are high, or the consequences of the failure of security services are high. This may include very high value transactions or high levels of fraud risk.

## Related topics

[Secure Boot Key Generation and Signing Using HSM \(Example\)](#)

[UEFI Validation Option ROM Validation Guidance](#)

[Secure Boot Overview](#)

# Secure Boot Key Generation and Signing Using HSM (Example)

7/13/2017 • 12 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Version 1.3

Here's an example of how to generate Secure Boot keys (PK and others) by using a hardware security module (HSM).

You'll need to know the Secure Boot Public Key Infrastructure (PKI). For more info, see [Windows 8.1 Secure Boot Key Creation and Management Guidance](#).

## Requirements

### Tools Needed

- certreq.exe – Available Inbox
- certutil.exe – Available Inbox
- SignTool.exe – Available in the latest Windows SDK

### Hardware Security Module (HSM)

The whitepaper demonstrates the key generation using examples from the nCipher (now Thales) PCI HSM model nC1003P/nC3023P/nC3033P and the SafeNet Luna HSMs. Most of the concepts apply to other HSM vendors as well.

For other HSMs, contact your manufacturer for additional instructions on how to tailor your approach with the HSM Cryptographic Service Provider (CSP).

## Approach

We use the Microsoft certificate creation tool: **certreq.exe** to generate the Secure Boot Platform Key (PK) and other keys needed for Secure Boot.

The certreq tool can be adapted to use an HSM by providing the Cryptographic Service Provider (CSP) to be the HSM.

### Find the Cryptographic Service Provider (CSP)

You can use either the certutil.exe tool or a tool used by the HSM to list the CSPs.

- **This example uses the certutil tool to show the CSPs on the Thales/nCipher HSM:**

```
C:\secureboot_training\certreq> certutil -csplist
Provider Name: Microsoft Base Cryptographic Provider v1.0
Provider Type: 1 - PROV_RSA_FULL

Provider Name: Microsoft Base DSS and Diffie-Hellman Cryptographic Provider
Provider Type: 13 - PROV_DSS_DH

Provider Name: Microsoft Base DSS Cryptographic Provider
Provider Type: 3 - PROV_DSS

Provider Name: Microsoft Base Smart Card Crypto Provider
Provider Type: 1 - PROV_RSA_FULL

Provider Name: Microsoft DH SChannel Cryptographic Provider
Provider Type: 18 - PROV_DH_SCHANNEL

Provider Name: Microsoft Enhanced Cryptographic Provider v1.0
Provider Type: 1 - PROV_RSA_FULL

Provider Name: Microsoft Enhanced DSS and Diffie-Hellman Cryptographic Provider
Provider Type: 13 - PROV_DSS_DH

Provider Name: Microsoft Enhanced RSA and AES Cryptographic Provider
Provider Type: 24 - PROV_RSA_AES

Provider Name: Microsoft RSA SChannel Cryptographic Provider
Provider Type: 12 - PROV_RSA_SCHANNEL

Provider Name: Microsoft Strong Cryptographic Provider
Provider Type: 1 - PROV_RSA_FULL

Provider Name: Microsoft Software Key Storage Provider

Provider Name: nCipher Security World Key Storage Provider

Provider Name: Microsoft Smart Card Key Storage Provider
CertUtil: -csplist command completed successfully.
```

For the SHA-256 digesting algorithm, use the **CNG** provider:

"nCipher Security World Key Storage Provider". Legacy providers do not support SHA-256 and are not suitable for use with Secure Boot.

- **This example uses the built-in Thales/nCipher tool to list the CSP:**

```
C:\Program Files\nCipher\nfast\bin> cnglist --list-providers
Microsoft Primitive Provider
Microsoft Smart Card Key Storage Provider
Microsoft Software Key Storage Provider
Microsoft SSL Protocol Provider
nCipher Primitive Provider
nCipher Security World Key Storage Provider
```

For the SHA-256 digesting algorithm, use the **CNG** provider:

"nCipher Security World Key Storage Provider". Legacy providers do not support SHA-256 and are not suitable for use with Secure Boot.

- **This example uses the SafeNet Luna HSMs tool to list the CSP:**

```
C:\>certutil -csplist

Provider Name: Luna Cryptographic Services for Microsoft Windows
Provider Type: 1 - PROV_RSA_FULL

Provider Name: Luna enhanced RSA and AES provider for Microsoft Windows
Provider Type: 24 - PROV_RSA_AES

Provider Name: Luna SChannel Cryptographic Services for Microsoft Windows
Provider Type: 12 - PROV_RSA_SCHANNEL

Provider Name: Microsoft Base Cryptographic Provider v1.0
Provider Type: 1 - PROV_RSA_FULL

Provider Name: Microsoft Base DSS and Diffie-Hellman Cryptographic Provider
Provider Type: 13 - PROV_DSS_DH

Provider Name: Microsoft Base DSS Cryptographic Provider
Provider Type: 3 - PROV_DSS

Provider Name: Microsoft Base Smart Card Crypto Provider
Provider Type: 1 - PROV_RSA_FULL

Provider Name: Microsoft DH SChannel Cryptographic Provider
Provider Type: 18 - PROV_DH_SCHANNEL

Provider Name: Microsoft Enhanced Cryptographic Provider v1.0
Provider Type: 1 - PROV_RSA_FULL

Provider Name: Microsoft Enhanced DSS and Diffie-Hellman Cryptographic Provider
Provider Type: 13 - PROV_DSS_DH

Provider Name: Microsoft Enhanced RSA and AES Cryptographic Provider
Provider Type: 24 - PROV_RSA_AES

Provider Name: Microsoft RSA SChannel Cryptographic Provider
Provider Type: 12 - PROV_RSA_SCHANNEL

Provider Name: Microsoft Strong Cryptographic Provider
Provider Type: 1 - PROV_RSA_FULL

Provider Name: Microsoft Software Key Storage Provider

Provider Name: Microsoft Smart Card Key Storage Provider

Provider Name: SafeNet Key Storage Provider
CertUtil: -csplist command completed successfully.
```

For SHA-256 digest algorithm you will need to use a CNG provider – “SafeNet Key Storage Provider”.  
Legacy providers do not support SHA-256 and are not suitable for use with Secure Boot.

To generate the key:

```
certreq.exe -new request.inf PK.cer
```

Sample request.inf file:

```

[Version]
Signature= "$Windows NT$"
[NewRequest]
ValidityPeriod = Years
ValidityPeriodUnits = 6
Subject = "CN=Corporation TODO Platform Key,O=TODO Corporation,L=TODO_City,S=TODO_State,C=TODO_Country"
MachineKeySet = true
RequestType=Cert
Exportable = FALSE
HashAlgorithm = SHA256
KeyAlgorithm = RSA
KeyLength = 2048
KeyContainer = "PKContainer"
ProviderName = "nCipher Security World Key Storage Provider"
KeyUsage = 0x0

```

Update the following values:

- **Subject:** Replace the TODO's with real data

"CN=Corporation TODO Platform Key,O=TODO Corporation,L=TODO\_City,S=TODO\_State,C=TODO\_Country".

- **ValidityPeriod, ValidityPeriodUnits:** Use the validity period of 6 years. While a PK may only be valid for 2 years, the 6-year period allows for potential future servicing.
- **KeyContainer:** Enter the container id that you used to create the Key with the HSM. You may be asked to provide the tokens that you have used to create the Security World for the Thales HSM.

#### Validating certificate (self-signed)

Verify that the certificate has been generated correctly:

```
certutil -store -v my "<Certificate_serial_number_or_thumbprint>"
```

For example: `certutil -store -v my "7569d364a2e77b814274c81ae6360ffe"`

Sample output:

```

my
=====
X509 Certificate:
Version: 3
Serial Number: 7569d364a2e77b814274c81ae6360ffe
Signature Algorithm:
 Algorithm ObjectId: 1.2.840.113549.1.1.11 sha256RSA
 Algorithm Parameters:
 05 00
Issuer:
 CN=test self-signed

NotBefore: 1/21/2013 7:25 PM
NotAfter: 1/21/2015 7:35 PM

Subject:
 CN=test self-signed

Public Key Algorithm:
 Algorithm ObjectId: 1.2.840.113549.1.1.1 RSA (RSA_SIGN)
 Algorithm Parameters:
 05 00
Public Key Length: 2048 bits
Public Key: UnusedBits = 0
 0000 30 82 01 0a 02 82 01 01 00 cf e3 83 c7 a4 05 dd
 0010 be 05 76 b6 26 16 ae ba 0f a1 c6 3f 4f 58 11 2a

```

```
0020 4c fe fc 44 f5 d2 11 36 75 c8 c9 90 15 d3 06 94
0030 18 ea 10 d8 4c 77 60 1f 45 75 25 6f 21 08 84 d3
0040 8f 6f 70 07 1b 3e eb 26 94 b8 aa 0d fd 0c 13 f1
0050 7f 76 0c 33 a4 ad b4 7a f3 c1 f1 d8 c9 a0 ba d2
0060 c5 9e 2b ce 36 7e 34 9b 81 26 74 0b 32 47 48 48
0070 08 ab c0 e7 c3 a2 8e e4 1f b8 6f 38 a2 31 84 65
0080 75 67 db 01 fc 41 a8 98 83 ad ba 2f 4e 59 c3 6b
0090 93 84 e0 ab de bd 6f 8f 61 9b b3 42 b3 fb 19 f7
00a0 46 3a ad d7 e9 d1 fa 2b a7 72 8d 76 ac 9f 6d c3
00b0 79 ba 37 e4 6d 72 b1 6f 22 82 80 77 a7 92 3f b7
00c0 e2 1f e0 c6 90 9a 82 ef 40 47 29 fb c3 83 7e 38
00d0 01 35 1f 66 6c 1b 93 0d c2 fc 5c e2 4e bd e1 85
00e0 c3 7e a9 51 6f 57 82 86 37 79 92 63 b2 e0 42 4f
00f0 25 5c 1b 03 50 29 2d ee 40 31 c3 a1 c3 cf 62 31
0100 e0 8c 60 2f d4 34 56 f1 bf 02 03 01 00 01
```

Certificate Extensions: 2

2.5.29.15: Flags = 1(Critical), Length = 4

Key Usage

Digital Signature, Non-Repudiation, Key Encipherment, Data Encipherment (f0)

2.5.29.14: Flags = 0, Length = 16

Subject Key Identifier

5b 3b 53 ed e3 0f a9 48 90 e0 93 09 0f f9 7b 32 3a 8d 89 4f

Signature Algorithm:

Algorithm ObjectId: 1.2.840.113549.1.1.11 sha256RSA

Algorithm Parameters:

05 00

Signature: UnusedBits=0

```
0000 3c 08 5f e0 a7 42 2a bc 58 61 64 43 b6 f4 23 99
0010 ca 58 b1 8c a3 6b eb 9c 31 a0 ce 25 3a d5 b4 74
0020 c2 0c 9c 00 1e c8 0f d2 05 3d fc 5d 6f 17 cd ac
0030 4d 14 9e d4 2b 45 1e ad 5f 5b ee 23 a8 29 65 b3
0040 cd c4 fd 5c e6 6a bd 95 ce f0 f9 be 31 19 87 90
0050 f8 86 c4 31 a8 b3 d5 b3 14 24 5b de f8 c0 f9 9c
0060 96 a2 b5 89 39 41 bd 4b 5f 04 16 10 c0 5c b8 fb
0070 1d 8d 64 b2 87 00 72 46 b9 5e d0 3a 75 8d ea 5a
0080 f6 5d 9c c5 03 cd c8 54 b7 7a ef c8 3e 3f 4b f6
0090 d2 c7 70 67 29 92 70 44 fc c6 2e c9 42 dd 6e 01
00a0 c5 71 27 20 51 ed 34 3c 98 c2 bc 1f 57 16 71 86
00b0 24 e3 0e 41 57 82 ba 41 df b5 6d f9 4d e4 72 80
00c0 6f 8d ab 10 06 cd 69 6b d0 82 ac db 04 da 6b a5
00d0 83 14 1a a0 6d 90 c4 01 5d 24 68 ac 10 ca db 96
00e0 44 8b ef f1 13 7f 22 15 32 93 4e 2d 23 ce 7f fb
00f0 18 9f d0 1c c1 45 2c e6 bb 23 7f 9e 22 ea fc 88
```

Signature matches Public Key

Root Certificate: Subject matches Issuer

Key Id Hash(rfc-sha1): 5b 3b 53 ed e3 0f a9 48 90 e0 93 09 0f f9 7b 32 3a 8d 89 4f

Key Id Hash(sh1): 1e 07 bb 05 ce d2 db 9c 9f ab d1 46 b8 32 20 e3 41 dc 4c 08

Cert Hash(md5): 45 ab 9b e4 6e 91 53 b5 96 81 10 8e 01 45 6c 54

Cert Hash(sh1): 37 ed 7c 3e ee 76 a2 d0 42 3a e3 1a 16 9f 74 d0 3c 7f 34 2c

CERT\_REQUEST\_ORIGINATOR\_PROP\_ID(71):

VM-DESKTEST.ntdev.corp.microsoft.com

CERT\_KEY\_PROV\_INFO\_PROP\_ID(2):

```
Key Container = PKContainer
Provider = nCipher Security World Key Storage Provider
ProviderType = 0
Flags = 20
KeySpec = 0
```

CERT\_SHA1\_HASH\_PROP\_ID(3):

37 ed 7c 3e ee 76 a2 d0 42 3a e3 1a 16 9f 74 d0 3c 7f 34 2c

CERT SUBJECT PUBLIC KEY MD5 HASH PROP ID(25):

12 eb 13 79 64 61 08 e9 a6 75 f2 9a 5c 49 b4 f9

CERT\_KEY\_IDENTIFIER\_PROP\_ID(20):

```

5b 3b 53 ed e3 0f a9 48 90 e0 93 09 0f f9 7b 32 3a 8d 89 4f

CERT_SIGNATURE_HASH_PROP_ID(15):
 0000 38 c4 1b 14 d8 74 95 42 1b fb 7d 72 d2 0b 03 ad
 0010 bd e8 aa 19 14 9e a2 41 30 fe b4 d4 93 b6 9f 3b

CERT_MD5_HASH_PROP_ID(4):
 45 ab 9b e4 6e 91 53 b5 96 81 10 8e 01 45 6c 54
UI Policy = 0
Version: 0

PKContainer

Export Policy = 0
Key Usage = 3
 NCrypt.AllowDecryptFlag -- 1
 NCrypt.AllowSignFlag -- 2

D:AI(A;ID;FA;;;SY)(A;ID;FA;;;BA)(A;ID;0x1200a9;;;BU)

Allow WriteNT AUTHORITY\SYSTEM
Allow WriteBUILTIN\Administrators
Allow WriteBUILTIN\Users

Private key is NOT exportable
Signature test passed
CertUtil: -store command completed successfully.

```

## Backing up the certificate

We recommend backing up your certificates. This way, if either the certificate store or the server goes down, you can add the certificate back to the store. For more info on certreq.exe, see [Advanced Certificate Enrollment and Management: Appendix 3: Certreq.exe Syntax](#)

Note, the PK is a self-signed certificate, and is also used to sign the KEK.

There are 2 parts to PK signing / initial provisioning. Please talk to your Microsoft contact to get these scripts:

- `subcreate_set_PK_example_initial_provisioning_example.ps1`. Used by the signtool to sign the PK comes later in the servicing case.
- `subcreate_set_PK_service_example.ps1`. Since we are dealing with the HSM case, the following line applies in the script applies.

## Signing with PK certificate (servicing scenario)

This section applies to signing with your PK certificate and may not be applicable for initial provisioning of system. However, you can use the method here to test your service scenario.

### Determine the certificate hash (sha1)

Determine the SHA1 hash of the certificate. You can get the SHA1 hash by using either of the following methods:

- In Windows, open the **Certificate** file, select the **Details** tab, and check the value for **Thumbprint**.
- Or use the following command:

```
C:\>certutil -store My PKContainer
```

Sample output:

```
My
=====
Serial Number: 58efcf8f929c5bd41152a8ec413051e
Issuer: CN=test self-signed
NotBefore: 1/30/2013 3:24 PM
NotAfter: 1/30/2019 3:34 PM
Subject: CN=test self-signed
Signature matches Public Key
Root Certificate: Subject matches Issuer
Template:
Cert Hash(sha1): db 31 4d a0 d0 ef 87 d4 2b 42 f7 4b 9c 38 a1 f9 17 3e f7 a2
Key Container = PKContainer
Provider = nCipher Security World Key Storage Provider
Private key is NOT exportable
Signature test passed
CertUtil: -store command completed successfully.
```

### Sign with signtool with the certificate store specified as a reference

Use the SHA1 hash to sign the KEK certificate:

```
C:\> signtool.exe sign /v /fd sha256 /sha1 "db314da0d0ef87d42b42f74b9c38a1f9173ef7a2" /sm /p7 .\ /p7co
1.2.840.113549.1.7.1 /p7ce DetachedSignedData KEK.bin
```

Where KEK.bin is the filename of the binary certificate you want to sign.

Sample output:

```
The following certificate was selected:
Issued to: test self-signed
Issued by: test self-signed
Expires: Fri Jan 30 15:34:32 2019
SHA1 hash: DB314DA0D0EF87D42B42F74B9C38A1F9173EF7A2

Done Adding Additional Store
Successfully signed: KEK.bin

Number of files successfully Signed: 1
Number of warnings: 0
Number of errors: 0
```

For more info, see [Sign Tool \(SignTool.exe\)](#) and [Windows 8.1 Secure Boot Key Creation and Management Guidance](#).

## Appendix A – Using Thales KeySafe for viewing keys

Thales KeySafe is based on a GUI.

To use KeySafe, you must have installed JRE/JDK 1.4.2, 1.5, or 1.6. Install Java before you install the nCipher software.

Configure the hardserver config file under the `%NFAST_KMDATA%\config\` folder:

Edit settings in the `server_startup` section:

**nonpriv\_port**. This field specifies the port on which the hardserver listens for local non-privileged TCP connections.

- Default to connecting to port 9000.
- If the `NFAST_SERVER_PORT` environment variable is set, it overrides any value set for `nonpriv_port`

**priv\_port.** This field specifies the port on which the hardserver listens for local privileged TCP connections.

- Default to connecting to port 9001.
- If the `NFAST_SERVER_PRIVPORT` environment variable is set, it overrides any value set for `priv_port`

The following are screenshots from the Thales KeySafe GUI:

## Key Operations

The buttons on this panel enable you to create new keys for a wide range of applications, to list details of existing keys, or to import an external application key.

You can discard an existing key by clicking the List Keys button below, highlighting the appropriate entry, and then clicking the Discard Key button.

Before you can use a module to generate keys, you must have either:

- initialized a security world using the module
- reprogrammed the module with an existing security world.

Use the options in the Module Operations panel to either initialize a security world or reprogram a module. Click the Modules menu button on the sidebar in order to go to the Module Operations panel.

|              |                                                  |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Generate Key | create a new application key                     |
| List Keys    | list all keys in the current security world      |
| Import Key   | import an application key from an outside source |

The following image is generated by launching the KeySafe utility and then navigating to the KeyList menu.

## Key Listing

Selecting a key from the list below displays that key's parameters.

You can then click the Remove Key button in order to remove the selected key from your security world, or you can make another selection.

| Key List  |                    |                  |       |
|-----------|--------------------|------------------|-------|
| Key Name  | Application        | Protection       | NVRAM |
| PK        | PKCS#11            | Module Protected | No    |
| pk_cert   | PKCS#11            | Module Protected | No    |
| test_pk11 | PKCS#11            | Module Protected | No    |
| vmanan    | Unknown ('mscapi') | No Key           | No    |

For more info, see the nCipher/Thales Users Guide.

## Appendix B: Using SafeNet CMU Utility to view keys

For more details, please consult the SafeNet Luna HSM documentation.

## Related topics

Windows 8.1 Secure Boot Key Creation and Management Guidance

## Secure Boot Overview

# UEFI Validation Option ROM Guidance

7/13/2017 • 18 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Vishal Manan, Architect, OEM Consulting, [vmanan@microsoft.com](mailto:vmanan@microsoft.com)

Jeremiah Cox, Sr. SDET, Windows Security & Identity Team, [jerecox@microsoft.com](mailto:jerecox@microsoft.com)

Tony Lin, Engineering Service Engineer, TW-WIN Plan Ecosystem, [tolin@microsoft.com](mailto:tolin@microsoft.com)

Version 1.3

This document helps OEMs and ODMs validate that their firmware checks the signatures of its option ROM as part of the Secure Boot chain of trust.

This guide assumes you know the fundamentals of UEFI, basic understanding of Secure Boot (Chapters 1, 2, 13, 20 and 27 of the UEFI specification), and PKI security model.

On this page:

- [Introduction](#)
- [1. UEFI and Option ROMs](#)
- [2. Problem statement](#)
- [3. Who is affected?](#)
- [4. How to test for it?](#)
- [5. How to fix it](#)
- [6. Resources](#)
- [Appendix A: Alternate approach to testing using unsigned option ROM drivers](#)
- [Appendix B: Scripts for enabling Secure Boot with NULL db](#)

## Introduction

Option ROMs (or OpROMs) are firmware run by the PC BIOS during platform initialization. They are usually stored on a plug-in card, though they can reside on the system board.

Devices that typically require option ROMs are video cards, network adapters, and storage drivers for RAID modules. These option ROMs also typically provide firmware drivers to the PC.

They include a variety of types of firmware drivers, including legacy PC-AT, Open Firmware, and EFI option ROMs. Examples of firmware drivers include Video BIOS on video cards, PXE boot drivers for Ethernet adapters, and storage drivers on RAID controllers. These devices typically have Option ROMs that provide firmware drivers.

The Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI) has support for Legacy mode option ROMs.

As per latest UEFI specification (currently at 2.3.1 Errata C – section 2.5.1.2), ISA (legacy) option ROMs are not a part of the UEFI Specification. For the purposes of this discussion, only PCI-based UEFI-compatible option ROMs will be considered.

Option ROMs can be used when it's not be possible to embed a device's firmware in the PC firmware. When the option ROM carries the driver, the IHV can leverage that driver, and keep the driver and device in one place.

This document talks about why you need to validate option ROMs and shows some techniques of doing it.

## Supporting both UEFI BIOS and Legacy BIOS

Many manufacturers create devices that include option ROMs and firmware for many types of PCs. Common combos include:

- Legacy ROM Only
- UEFI Native OpROM
- Legacy ROM + UEFI EBC OpROM
- Legacy ROM + UEFI x64 OpROM
- Legacy ROM + UEFI x64 + UEFI IA32
- Legacy ROM + UEFI x64 + UEFI IA32 + UEFI EBC OpROM

UEFI BIOS can load and execute legacy firmware drivers when a Compatibility Support Module (CSM) is enabled. Note that when Secure Boot is enabled, execution of the Compatibility Support Module and legacy ROMs is prohibited because legacy firmware drivers do not support authentication. If the Option ROM format in the BIOS configuration is set to legacy ROM, it will always use the legacy ROM on the device.

If the Option ROM format is set to **UEFI Compatible**, it will use the newer EFI ROM if one is present and the legacy ROM if one is not.

UEFI drivers are necessary for many of the new firmware level security features as well as to enable UEFI boot sequences. For example, installing Windows from an optical disk which is attached to a non-UEFI compatible storage controller is not possible when a system is booting in UEFI mode when Secure Boot is enabled.

## 1. UEFI and Option ROMs

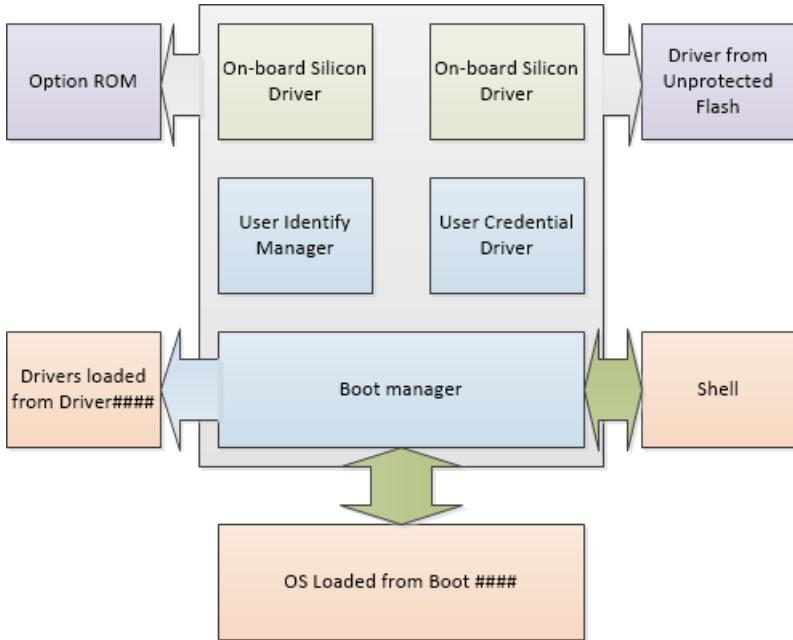


Figure 2: UEFI Driver Security Consideration, Source: UEFI 2.3.1 Errata C

### From Section 31.1.4 from the UEFI 2.3.1 Errata C:

Since the UEFI user profile details a number of security-related privileges, it is important that the User Identity Manager and User Credential Providers and the environment in which they execute are trusted.

This includes:

- Protecting the storage area where these drivers are stored.
- Protecting the means by which these drivers are selected.
- Protecting the execution environment of these drivers from unverified drivers.
- The data structures used by these drivers should not be corrupted by unauthorized drivers while they are still being used.

Components like User Identity Manager, the User Credential drivers and on board drivers maybe located in a secure location like write-protected flash drive which is trusted by platform policy.

Some other drivers may reside on an unprotected storage locations like option ROMs or a hard drive partition and may be easily replaced. These drivers must be verified.

For example, either the default platform policy must successfully be able to verify drivers listed in the Driver#### load options, or else the user must be identified prior to processing these drivers. Otherwise, the driver execution should be deferred. If the user profile is changed through a subsequent call to Identify () or through dynamic authentication, the Driver#### options may not be processed again.

The user profile database is closed using different UEFI signal events based on whether it can be protected.

UEFI Drivers & UEFI option ROMs will only be executed for devices in the boot path.

PCI spec allows multiple option ROM images on the same device. These option ROMS could be Legacy x86 & UEFI. UEFI firmware sets platform policy for picking the option ROM. That can make the optional adapter's ROM execute as its own control device.

The firmware verifies signatures during BDS and DXE phases. The sequence of events is as follows:

1. Initialize PCI and derivative Buses
2. Probe PCI Devices for option ROMs
3. Found option ROMs are mapped in memory
4. DXE phase loads any UEFI drivers in ROMs

UEFI option ROMs can be anywhere in memory. The default is to let the ROM on the card manage the device. UEFI allows platform to control policy around what option ROM controls what device using `EFI_PLATFORM_DRIVER_OVERRIDE`. UEFI supports option ROMs to register a configuration interface.

On a PC with Secure Boot enabled, option ROM drivers pose a security threat if they are not signed or not validated. Signature validation for option ROMs is a WHCK requirement. The same is true while servicing option ROMs to make sure that the update is validated prior to installation.

From the UEFI 2.3.1 Errata C specification:

1. Mandatory. **Signed Firmware Code Integrity Check.** Firmware that is installed by the OEM and is either read-only or protected by a secure firmware update process, as defined above, may be considered protected. **Systems shall verify that all unprotected firmware components, UEFI drivers, and UEFI applications are signed using minimum RSA-2048 with SHA-256 (MD5 and SHA-1 are prohibited)**, and verify that UEFI applications and drivers that are not signed as per these requirements will fail to run (this is the default policy for acceptable signature algorithms). If an image's signature is not found in the authorized database, or is found in the forbidden database, the image must not be started, and instead, information about it shall be placed in the Image Execution Information Table.11. Mandatory. **Verify Signature of all Boot Apps and Boot Loaders.** Upon power-on, the platform shall start executing boot firmware and use public key cryptography as per algorithm policy to verify the signatures of all images in the boot sequence up-to and including the Windows Boot Manager.

## 2. Problem statement

Some builds of Secure Boot-enabled UEFI BIOS, including Tiano Core, did not by default authenticate UEFI option ROMs because signed UEFI option ROMs were not available during Secure Boot development. This exposes an attack surface/vulnerability in UEFI Secure Boot.

### 2.1. Vulnerability

This vulnerability was still present in EDK II and UDK2010 as of August 2013. The source maintainers are aware of the issue and a bug is filed. Any firmware derived from EDK II and UDK2010 should verify how Option ROM verification is managed. Option ROM verification behavior is controlled by a PCD value

`PcdOptionRomImageVerificationPolicy` in the EDK II SecurityPkg package.

The source code for the TianoCore vulnerability is `SecurityPkg\SecurityPkg.dec` file:

```
Pcd for OptionRom.
Image verification policy settings:
ALWAYS_EXECUTE 0x00000000
NEVER_EXECUTE 0x00000001
ALLOW_EXECUTE_ON_SECURITY_VIOLATION 0x00000002
DEFER_EXECUTE_ON_SECURITY_VIOLATION 0x00000003
DENY_EXECUTE_ON_SECURITY_VIOLATION 0x00000004
QUERY_USER_ON_SECURITY_VIOLATION 0x00000005
gEfiSecurityPkgTokenSpaceGuid.PcdOptionRomImageVerificationPolicy|0x00|UINT32|0x00000001
```

The default value (0x00) is `ALWAYS_EXECUTE`, which does not properly perform verification of signed drivers in Option ROMs for add-in peripherals. This is not an ideal value for any system implementing UEFI Secure Boot functionality.

Recommended Value (Best Security): `DENY_EXECUTE_ON_SECURITY_VIOLATION (0x04)`

Recommended Value (Best Flexibility): `QUERY_USER_ON_SECURITY_VIOLATION (0x05)`

In EDK II & UDK2010, proper coding practice uses an override mechanism to modify PCD values for platform firmware. Therefore, the value for `PcdOptionRomImageVerificationPolicy` should not be changed in `SecurityPkg\SecurityPkg.dec`. The override value should be set in the platform's DSC file. An example is shown below using `Nt32Pkg\Nt32Pkg.dsc`:

```
[PcdsFixedAtBuild]
gEfiSecurityPkgTokenSpaceGuid.PcdOptionRomImageVerificationPolicy|0x04
```

The PCD override should be placed under the `[PcdsFixedAtBuild]` section of the DSC file. The exact mechanism for overriding parameters may differ depending on BIOS vendor tools.

#### Note

This vulnerability may exist in early implementations of UEFI Secure Boot BIOS from independent BIOS vendors. Contact your BIOS vendor to determine if your version may be impacted.

## 3. Who is affected?

A UEFI PC which implements Secure Boot and has a UEFI option ROM driver which is not signed. Furthermore, the firmware for compatibility to get the existing cards working may have a security vulnerability which doesn't verify option ROMs.

**Laptops, netbooks, ultrabooks, & tablets: most are not affected.** Option ROMs are typically present on backplane buses such as PCI/e, ISA, and their derivatives (ExpressCard, miniPCI, CardBus, PCCard, LPC, ThunderBolt etc). If a laptop has none of these exposed, then its attack surface is greatly reduced. Moreover, it is

likely UEFI drivers for onboard laptop components are integrated into the core BIOS firmware volume, not located on a separate option ROM. Thus most laptops are not at risk. Also, when Legacy option ROMs are disabled, it looks like UEFI only supports PCI-based option ROMs.

However, if you have a desktop, motherboard or a server which has a UEFI BIOS and implement Secure Boot, you may be affected. On a server's dedicated RAID controller, or add-in storage controller for SATA, FC etc. or Ethernet PCIe network cards may have option ROMs. Add-in controllers supporting a wide array of functionality on servers are common so this especially applies to the server space.

This can potentially affect 32-bit and 64-bit PCs, both class 2 and class 3.

If a Secure Boot platform supports option ROMs from devices not permanently attached to the platform and it supports the ability to authenticate those option ROMs, then it must support the option ROM validation methods described in Network Protocols — UDP and MTFTP and the authenticated EFI variables described in UEFI specification 2.3.1 Errata C Section 7.2.

## 4. How to test for it?

If you are developing the firmware and it is based on Tiano Core please check for vulnerability mentioned in the section 2.1. If you are using another IBV's firmware please check with them. Or you could do the test it yourself as mentioned below.

You will need the following:

- PC under test with UEFI firmware
- PCI device with Option ROM on the PC under test (like a video card)
- Make sure Secure Boot is enabled

Steps for testing:

1. Insert a UEFI add on PCI card with UEFI Option ROM to the PC under test.

If you are using a PCI video card for testing, hookup an external monitor.

2. Enable Secure Boot with the settings below:

- PK: Your PK or self-signed Test PK
- KEK: MS KEK, PK-signed Fabrikam test KEK or another KEK
- DB: NULL. (This must be NULL.)
- DBX: NULL.
- SecureBoot: The UEFI variable should be set to true

3. Reboot the PC

4. Expect the following result:

- If the UEFI firmware is implemented correctly, the UEFI option ROM driver wouldn't load since the presence of an option ROM will make the firmware check the "Db" for a certificate. Since the "Db" is NULL the UEFI driver will fail to load. For example, if you are using the video card to test, you will see that nothing shows up on display.
- If the firmware isn't implemented correctly, UEFI driver will load from the option ROM since the firmware doesn't check for signatures in "Db". For example, if you are using the video card for test, you will see that the monitor hooked to the option ROM card will have display.

## Note

It doesn't matter if the UEFI option ROM driver is signed or not, the option ROM will not load when DB is null and SB is enabled (PK and KEK are enrolled).

Please refer to sample scripts available in the WHCK for generating the PK and KEK. You can download the scripts from here: <http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=321292>. Appendix B has sample scripts and more details.

You can also reference Appendix A for another approach to performing the above test. This approach doesn't require setting the DB to Null but needs an unsigned UEFI option ROM driver from the IHV.

## 5. How to fix it

If the above test fails, work with your IBV to acquire the necessary versions and configure them to validate option ROMs. Make sure that the firmware passes the test. For PCs which have shipped you will need to do a secure firmware update. Please refer to [NIST publication 800-147](#) and/or see [Windows 8.1 Secure Boot Key Creation and Management Guidance](#).

You can test the PC and leverage Windows HCK as a test tool (not a certification tool) for testing the secure firmware update.

### 5.1. Signing the driver

In case you find that you may have unsigned drivers on UEFI option ROMs please read below on how to fix that.

Sign each option ROM driver individually. That will break the format of the PCI Option ROM. You only need to sign the UEFI driver before creating the combined Option ROM.

Before inserting the UEFI driver in the OpROM, sign the UEFI image and test it with Secure Boot ON & OFF at the UEFI Shell (load/unload the driver file). Then put the signed driver into the combined option ROM.

You can direct your IHV to Microsoft SysDev center to get their UEFI option ROMs signed through a service available through SysDev center.

### 5.2. Validation of update

Run the test you mentioned above to verify that the vulnerability does not exist. Use the HCK tests to ensure that there are no functional regressions.

## 6. Resources

- UEFI Platform Initialization Specification, Volume 5 Standards, 1.2.1 Errata A:  
<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=220187>
- Relevant info from UEFI 2.3.1 spec:
  - 2.5.1: Legacy Option ROM Issues
  - 10: Protocols –UEFI Driver Model
  - 13.4.2: PCI Option ROMs
  - 20: EFI Byte Code Virtual Machine
  - 28: HII Overview
  - 29: HII Protocols
  - 30: HII Configuration Processing and Browser Protocol
- [UEFI Forum Learning Center](#)
- [UEFI IHV resources @ intel.com](#)

- Use the [TianoCore edk2-devel mailing list](#) for support from other UEFI developers
- TechNet: [Best Practices for Enterprise Security: Security strategies](#)
- [UEFI specification](#) errata C
- [Trusted Computing Group](#)
- [Tianocore UEFI Development Kit](#)
- [UEFI Firmware](#)
- [Intel Press: Beyond BIOS 2nd Edition](#)
- [Windows 8.1 Secure Boot Key Creation and Management Guidance](#)
- [Validating Windows UEFI Firmware Update Platform Functionality](#)

## Appendix A: Alternate approach to testing using unsigned option ROM drivers

This approach relies on getting tools from IHV to make sure that the UEFI option ROM driver is signed.

You will need the following:

- PC under test with UEFI firmware
- PCI device with an unsigned Option ROM driver attached to the PC under test (like a Video card)
- Make sure Secure Boot is enabled
- Option IHV tools to detect signature on option ROM driver if it isn't apparent that the option ROM driver is signed or not

If the firmware is implemented correctly, and the option ROM is unsigned the card should fail the check by firmware and not load the driver on the card. The PC should report an error code such as

**EFI\_IMAGE\_EXECUTION\_AUTH\_SIG\_FOUND**. In case you are using a video card, you may see that the PC shows just a black screen since the option ROM driver didn't load.

If the firmware is implemented incorrectly, this test would work.

## Appendix B: Scripts for enabling Secure Boot with NULL db

You can either use your current set of Secure Boot variables (PK and KEK) or generate test ones for testing this.

Below are steps used to generate the test PK, KEK and setting Db to NULL. Make sure that Secure Boot is not enabled; otherwise these steps would require signed UEFI bin files.

### Note

We set the Secure Boot variable – Db, KEK and PK in reverse order so we don't have to sign the UEFI bin files.

Prior to this step the PC should be in setup mode.

#### 1. Create KEK and PK certificates

This step requires the makecert.exe tool available in the [Windows SDK](#).

```
MakeCert.exe -cy authority -len 2048 -m 60 -a sha256 -pe -ss my -n "CN=DO NOT SHIP - Fabrikam Test KEK CA" Fabrikam_Test_KEK_CA.cer
MakeCert.exe -cy authority -len 2048 -m 60 -a sha256 -pe -ss my -n "CN=DO NOT SHIP - Fabrikam Test PK" TestPK.cer
```

## 2. Script to generate test PK

You can either use your own PK or leverage the scripts from the WHCK for this

<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=321292>

A sample is provided below.

```

this scripts demonstrates how to format the Platform key
NOTE The PK is actually set in the Enable_OEM_SecureBoot.ps1 script
Import-Module secureboot
$d = (pwd).Path

#####
Complete the following parameters
#####

$certname = "TestPK"
TODO change this path to where you have the PK.cer file
This is where you plugin the certificate generated by the HSM
$certpath = $d + "\\" + $certname + ".cer"

Each signature has an owner SignatureOwner, which is a GUID identifying the agent which inserted the
signature in the database.
Agents might include the operating PC or an OEM-supplied driver or application.
Agents may examine this field to understand whether they should manage the signature or not.
TODO replace with OEM SignatureOwner GUID.
You can use tools like Guidgen.exe tool in SDK or a similar tool to generate a GUID
$sigowner = "55555555-5555-5555-5555-555555555555"

$var = "PK"
$efi_guid = "{8BE4DF61-93CA-11d2-AA0D-00E098032B8C}"
$append = $false

#####
Everything else is calculated
#####

Workaround relative path bug
TODO substitute OEM with your OEM name
$siglist = $certname + "_SigList.bin"
$serialization = $certname + "_SigList_Serialization_for_" + $var + ".bin"
$signature = $serialization + ".p7"

$appendstring = "set_"
$attribute = "0x27"
$example = "Example_SetVariable_Data-" + $certname + "_" + $appendstring + $var + ".bin"

Format-SecureBootUEFI -Name $var -SignatureOwner $sigowner -ContentFilePath $siglist -FormatWithCert -
Certificate $certpath -SignableFilePath $serialization -Time 2011-05-21T13:30:00Z -AppendWrite:$append

OutputFilePath - Specifies the name of the file created that contains the contents of what is set.
If this parameter is specified, then the content are not actually set, just stored into this file.
Please note if -OutputFilePath is provided the PK is not set like in this case. The master script
sets it at the end.

Time - you can change the time below as long as it isn't in the future. Nothing wrong with keeping it
as is.

Set-SecureBootUEFI -Name $var -Time 2011-05-21T13:30:00Z -ContentFilePath $siglist -OutputFilePath
$example -AppendWrite:$append

```

### 3. Generate test KEK or use your own OEM KEK

You can leverage your own OEM KEK or scripts from the WHCK for this. You can also use the Fabrikam\_PK\_SigList.bin from <http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=321292> instead of generating your own test KEK.

A sample is provided below.

```

script to add option OEM KEK
Import-Module secureboot
$d = (pwd).Path

#####
Complete the following parameters
#####

$certname = "Fabrikam_Test_KEK_CA"
TODO change this path to where you have the PK.cer file
This is where you plugin the certificate generated by the HSM
$certpath = $d + "\\" + $certname + ".cer"

TODO change this path to where you have the OEM_KEK.cer file
Each signature has an owner SignatureOwner, which is a GUID identifying the agent which inserted the
signature in the database.
Agents might include the operating system or an OEM-supplied driver or application.
Agents may examine this field to understand whether they should manage the signature or not.
TODO replace with OEM SignatureOwner GUID.
You can use tools like Guidgen.exe tool in SDK or a similar tool to generate a GUID

$sigowner = "00000000-0000-0000-0000-000000000000"

$var = "KEK"
$efi_guid = "{8BE4DF61-93CA-11d2-AA0D-00E098032B8C}"
$append = $false

#####
Everything else is calculated
#####

$siglist = $certname + "_SigList.bin"
$serialization = $certname + "_SigList_Serialization_for_" + $var + ".bin"
$signature = $serialization + ".p7"
if ($append -eq $false)
{
 $appendstring = "set_"
 $attribute = "0x27"
} else
{
 $appendstring = "append_"
 $attribute = "0x67"
}
$example = "Example_SetVariable_Data-" + $certname + "_" + $appendstring + $var + ".bin"

Format-SecureBootUEFI -Name $var -SignatureOwner $sigowner -ContentFilePath $siglist -FormatWithCert -
CertificateFilePath $certpath -SignableFilePath $serialization -Time 2011-05-21T13:30:00Z -
AppendWrite:$append

-Time You can change the time below as long as it isn't in the future. Nothing wrong with keeping it
as is.

Set-SecureBootUEFI -Name $var -Time 2011-05-21T13:30:00Z -ContentFilePath $siglist -OutputFilePath
$example -AppendWrite:$append

```

#### 4. Set Db to Null and set KEK and PK

The first thing this script does is set the Db to Null.

##### Note

Please keep in mind if the Fabrikam Test KEK CA is the only KEK CA present (meaning there is no Windows KEK CA), the PC may boot into Windows RE.

```
Prior to script execution, run "Set-ExecutionPolicy Bypass -Force"

Import-Module secureboot
try
{
 Write-Host "Deleting db..."
 Set-SecureBootUEFI -Name db -Time "2011-06-06T13:30:00Z" -Content $null
}
catch
{
}
Write-Host "Setting Fabrikam KEK..."
Set-SecureBootUEFI -Time 2011-05-21T13:30:00Z -ContentFilePath Fabrikam_Test_KEK_CA_SigList.bin -Name KEK

Write-Host "Setting self-signed Test PK..."
Set-SecureBootUEFI -Time 2011-05-21T13:30:00Z -ContentFilePath TestPK_SigList.bin -Name PK

Write-Host "`n... operation complete. `nSetupMode should now be 0 and SecureBoot should also be 0.
Reboot and verify that Windows is correctly authenticated, and that SecureBoot changes to 1."
```

## 5. Plug in the option ROM card and test

The test should either pass or fail based on firmware correctness. For example:

If the option ROM in the firmware is implemented correctly, and you are using a video card for testing, then there should be no display to the attached monitor.

However, if you are using incorrect firmware, the video card should have output on the display.

## Related topics

[Windows Secure Boot Key Creation and Management Guidance](#)

[Secure Boot Overview](#)

[Validating Windows UEFI Firmware Update Platform Functionality](#)

# Disabling Secure Boot

6/6/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You may need to disable Secure Boot to run some PC graphics cards, hardware, or operating systems such as Linux or previous version of Windows.

Secure Boot helps to make sure that your PC boots using only firmware that is trusted by the manufacturer. You can disable Secure Boot through the PC's firmware (BIOS) menus, but the way you disable it varies by PC manufacturer. If you are having trouble disabling Secure Boot after following the steps below, contact your manufacturer for help.

For logo-certified Windows RT 8.1 and Windows RT PCs, Secure Boot is required to be configured so that it cannot be disabled.

## Warning

- After disabling Secure Boot and installing other software and hardware, it may be difficult to re-activate Secure Boot without restoring your PC to the factory state.
- Be careful when changing BIOS settings. The BIOS menu is designed for advanced users, and it's possible to change a setting that could prevent your PC from starting correctly. Be sure to follow the manufacturer's instructions exactly.

## Disable Secure Boot

1. Before disabling Secure Boot, consider whether it is necessary. From time to time, your manufacturer may update the list of trusted hardware, drivers, and operating systems for your PC. To check for updates, go to Windows Update, or check your manufacturer's website.
2. Open the PC BIOS menu. You can often access this menu by pressing a key during the bootup sequence, such as F1, F2, F12, or Esc.  
Or, from Windows, hold the Shift key while selecting **Restart**. Go to **Troubleshoot > Advanced Options: UEFI Firmware Settings**.
3. Find the **Secure Boot** setting, and if possible, set it to **Disabled**. This option is usually in either the **Security** tab, the **Boot** tab, or the **Authentication** tab.
4. Save changes and exit. The PC reboots.
5. Install the graphics card, hardware, or operating system that's not compatible with Secure Boot.

In some cases, you may need to change other settings in the firmware, such as enabling a Compatibility Support Module (CSM) to support legacy BIOS operating systems. To use a CSM, you may also need to reformat the hard drive using the Master Boot Record (MBR) format, and then reinstall Windows. For more info, see [Windows Setup: Installing using the MBR or GPT partition style](#).

6. If you're using Windows 8.1, you may see a watermark on the desktop alerting you that Secure Boot is not configured correctly. Get this [update to remove the Secure Boot desktop watermark](#).

## Re-enable Secure Boot

1. Uninstall any graphics cards, hardware, or operating systems that aren't compatible with Secure Boot.
2. Open the PC BIOS menu. You can often access this menu by pressing a key during the bootup sequence,

such as F1, F2, F12, or Esc.

Or, from Windows: go to **Settings charm > Change PC settings > Update and Recovery > Recovery > Advanced Startup: Restart now**. When the PC reboots, go to **Troubleshoot > Advanced Options: UEFI Firmware Settings**.

3. Find the **Secure Boot** setting, and if possible, set it to **Enabled**. This option is usually in either the **Security** tab, the **Boot** tab, or the **Authentication** tab.

On some PCs, select **Custom**, and then load the Secure Boot keys that are built into the PC.

If the PC does not allow you to enable Secure Boot, try resetting the BIOS back to the factory settings.

4. Save changes and exit. The PC reboots.
5. If the PC is not able to boot after enabling Secure Boot, go back into the BIOS menus, disable Secure Boot, and try to boot the PC again.
6. In some cases, you may need to refresh or reset your PC to its original state before you can turn on Secure Boot. For more info, see [How to restore, refresh, or reset your PC](#).
7. If the above steps don't work, and you still want to use the Secure Boot feature, contact your manufacturer for help.

For additional troubleshooting steps for PC manufacturers: see [Secure Boot isn't configured correctly: Determine if the PC is in a manufacturing mode \(info for manufacturers\)](#).

## Related topics

[Secure Boot Overview](#)

[Secure Boot isn't configured correctly: troubleshooting](#)

# Secure Boot isn't configured correctly: troubleshooting

6/6/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The "Secure Boot isn't configured correctly" watermark appears on the Windows desktop when the PC is capable of using the Secure Boot security feature, but the feature is not activated or configured correctly.

This message may appear after updating your PC from Windows 8 to Windows 8.1.

## What is Secure Boot?

Secure Boot helps to make sure that your PC boots using only firmware that is trusted by the manufacturer. For more info on Secure Boot, see [Secure Boot Overview](#).

## Is my PC unsafe?

Your PC may be OK, but it's not as protected as it could be, because Secure Boot isn't running.

You may need to disable Secure Boot to run some hardware, graphics cards, or operating systems such as Linux or previous versions of Windows. For more info, see [Disabling Secure Boot](#).

You check the status of Secure Boot on your PC. click on [Start](#), and type msinfo32 and press enter. Under System Summary, you can see your BIOS mode and Secure Boot State. If Bios Mode is UEFI, and Secure Boot State is Off, then Secure Boot is disabled.

## Can I just dismiss this alert or remove the watermark?

Yes. Go to Windows Update for a patch that gets rid of the watermark.

- Windows 8.1 and Windows Server 2012 R2 users can also download this patch manually: [Update removes the "Windows 8.1 SecureBoot isn't configured correctly" watermark in Windows 8.1 and Windows Server 2012 R2 \(Microsoft Knowledge Base Article ID 2902864\)](#)
- Windows RT 8.1: Get this patch through Windows update.

## I'd like to use this feature. How can I enable it?

Try enabling Secure Boot through using the PC BIOS menus.

### Warning

Be careful when changing BIOS settings. The BIOS menu is designed for advanced users, and it's possible to change a setting that could prevent your PC from starting correctly. Be sure to follow the manufacturer's instructions exactly.

### Enabling Secure Boot

1. Open the PC BIOS menu. You can often access this menu by pressing a key during the bootup sequence, such as F1, F2, F12, or Esc.

Or, from Windows: go to **Settings charm > Change PC settings > Update and Recovery > Recovery > Advanced Startup: Restart now**. When the PC reboots, go to **Troubleshoot > Advanced Options: UEFI Firmware Settings**.

2. Find the **Secure Boot** setting, and if possible, set it to **Enabled**. This option is usually in either the **Security** tab, the **Boot** tab, or the **Authentication** tab.

On some PCs, select **Custom**, and then load the Secure Boot keys that are built into the PC.

If the PC does not allow you to enable Secure Boot, try resetting the BIOS back to the factory settings.

3. Save changes and exit. The PC reboots.
4. If the PC is not able to boot after enabling Secure Boot, go back into the BIOS menus, disable Secure Boot, and try to boot the PC again.
5. In some cases, you may need to refresh or reset your PC to its original state before you can turn on Secure Boot. For more info, see [How to restore, refresh, or reset your PC](#).
6. If the above steps don't work, and you still want to use the Secure Boot feature, contact your manufacturer for help.

For additional troubleshooting steps for PC manufacturers: see [Secure Boot isn't configured correctly: Determine if the PC is in a manufacturing mode \(info for manufacturers\)](#).

## Related topics

[Why is there a "SecureBoot isn't configured correctly" watermark on my desktop?](#)

[Secure Boot Overview](#)

[Microsoft Support KB article 2902864](#)

[Disabling Secure Boot](#)

# Secure Boot isn't configured correctly: Determine if the PC is in a manufacturing mode (info for manufacturers)

6/6/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

While manufacturing PCs, if the "Secure Boot isn't configured correctly" watermark appears on the Windows desktop, you may need to determine whether Secure Boot is disabled or if the PC is in a manufacturing/debugging mode. The PC is in a manufacturing/debugging mode whenever a non-production policy is installed. For details, see the whitepaper: **Windows 8.1 Secure Boot Key Creation and Management Guidance** on the [Microsoft Connect](#) website, or contact your Microsoft account manager.

## Note

**Did you see the "Secure Boot isn't configured correctly" watermark after upgrading to Windows 8.1, Windows Server 2012 R2, or Windows RT 8.1?**

We'll be releasing a patch soon that gets rid of the watermark.

Windows 8.1 and Windows Server 2012 R2 users can install a patch to remove the watermark immediately: [Microsoft Knowledge Base Article ID 2902864](#).

For more info, see [Secure Boot isn't configured correctly: troubleshooting](#).

## Determining if the PC is in a manufacturing mode

You can use any of the following methods to determine whether Secure Boot has been disabled or if the PC is in a manufacturing / debugging mode.

- **Use MSInfo32.** Click **Start**, type **msinfo32**. If **BIOS mode: UEFI** is **UEFI** and **Secure Boot State** is **OFF**, then Secure Boot is disabled.
- **Check the event logs.** Go to **Start > View Event Logs > Applications and Services Logs > Microsoft > Windows > VerifyHardwareSecurity > Admin**, and look for either of these logged events:

"Secure Boot is currently disabled. Please enable Secureboot through the system firmware." (The PC is in UEFI mode and Secure Boot is disabled.)

"A non-production Secure Boot Policy was detected. Remove Debug/PreRelease policy through the system firmware." (The PC is in a manufacturing/debugging mode.)

- **Use PowerShell commands.**

Open a PowerShell window as an administrator, and use following commands:

`Confirm-SecureBootUEFI` : checks to see if Secure Boot is disabled. Responses:

- "True": Secure Boot is enabled, and the watermark won't appear.
- "False": Secure Boot is disabled and watermark will appear.
- "Cmdlet not supported on this platform": The PC may not support Secure Boot, or the PC may be configured in legacy BIOS mode. The watermark won't appear.
- "Unable to set proper privileges. Access was denied.": Close PowerShell and reopen it as an Administrator.

"Get-SecureBootPolicy": checks to see if you have a non-production policy installed. Responses:

- "{77FA9ABD-0359-4D32-BD60-28F4E78F784B)": The correct Secure Boot policy is in place.
- Anything other GUID: The PC is in a manufacturing/debugging mode, and the GUID for the non-production Secure Boot policy is shown.
- "Secure Boot policy is not enabled on this machine": Either Secure Boot is disabled, or the PC is configured to boot to legacy BIOS mode. If the PC is in legacy BIOS mode, the watermark should not appear.
- "Incorrect authentication data": Close PowerShell and reopen it as an Administrator.

## How do I fix it?

If **Secure Boot is disabled**, re-enable it. For more info, see [Secure Boot isn't configured correctly: troubleshooting](#).

If **Secure Boot is enabled but the PC is in a manufacturing/debug mode**, you'll need to uninstall the non-production policy. For details, see the whitepaper: **Windows 8.1 Secure Boot Key Creation and Management Guidance** on the [Microsoft Connect](#) website, or contact your Microsoft account manager.

## Related topics

[Secure Boot isn't configured correctly: troubleshooting](#)

# Siloed provisioning packages

7/12/2017 • 21 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Siloed provisioning packages are a new type of provisioning package that is available for Windows 10, version 1607. Where traditional provisioning packages can capture all classic Windows applications and settings that are installed with a Windows image, a siloed provisioning package can capture classic Windows applications individually, drivers plus applications, settings, or capture add-ons for provisioning packages that were captured previously. This provides more flexibility for the manufacturing process and helps reduce the time required to build Windows-based computers in the factory.

## Performance comparison

The following table shows a comparison between using the Office installer vs using siloed provisioning packages in a typical factory floor process. When using the siloed provisioning packages to install Office, the base Office en-us package, along with the add-on Office fr-fr and Office de-de packages are captured using the User State Migration Tool (USMT) ScanState.exe utility as a one-time process in the imaging lab. The data in the following table was derived from a sample run on a VM with Windows 10, version 1607 desktop image. The actual time savings at the factory floor will vary based on the number and size of applications being installed and the hardware spec of physical devices. The time savings can be calculated by:

(time to Sysprep & boot to Audit mode + time to install applications + time to capture applications in a PPKG + <optional> time to single-instance the PPKG) – (time to apply SPPs + time to Sysprep & boot to Audit mode)

| PHASE/TASK                                                                                          | FACTORY PROCESS USING OFFICE INSTALLER | FACTORY PROCESS USING SILEOED PROVISIONING PACKAGES |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| Apply image to the device                                                                           | 4 min.                                 | 4 min.                                              |
| Install language packs – fr-fr & de-de                                                              | 20 min.                                | 20 min.                                             |
| Run BCDBoot.exe                                                                                     | negligible                             | negligible                                          |
| Run DISM to apply siloed Office en-us base, Office fr-fr, and Office de-de packages                 | N/A                                    | 3 min.                                              |
| Run Sysprep & boot to Audit mode                                                                    | 10 min.                                | 19 min.                                             |
| Install Office 2016 en-us, fr-fr, & de-de                                                           | 12 min.                                | N/A                                                 |
| Run ScanState to capture Office into provisioning package (for PBR)                                 | 10 min.                                | N/A                                                 |
| (Optional – for low disk space) Single-instancing Office files captured in the provisioning package | 7 min.                                 | N/A                                                 |
| <b>Total</b>                                                                                        | <b>56-63 min.</b>                      | <b>46 min.</b>                                      |
| <b>Overall application install time</b>                                                             |                                        | <b>45-65% faster</b>                                |

| PHASE/TASK                  | FACTORY PROCESS USING OFFICE INSTALLER | FACTORY PROCESS USING SILEOED PROVISIONING PACKAGES |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| Overall E2E deployment time |                                        | <b>18-30% faster</b>                                |

## Work with siloed provisioning packages

To create and deploy siloed provisioning packages, you'll need to copy binaries from various folders in the ADK install location that enable DISM and ScanState to work with SPPs. To facilitate the copy process, a script (CopyDndl.cmd) is included in the Windows ADK when 'Deployment Tools' option is selected at install. Run the script to copy all necessary files to an output folder, for example D:\ADKTools:

```
<%Windows ADK install root%>\Deployment Tools\CopyDndl.cmd amd64 D:\ADKTools
```

Before you use DISM, you'll need to copy the ADK tools again to a non-removable drive on the destination device. Copying the file to a non-removable location avoids an error associated with installing DISM from removable drives.

```
xcopy D:\ADKTools\ W:\ADKTools\ /s
```

You'll then have to install the tools:

```
W:\ADKTools\amd64\WimMountAdkSetupAmd64.exe /Install /q
```

And then run DISM from that location:

```
W:\ADKTools\amd64\DISM.exe /Apply-SiloedPackage /ImagePath:C:\ /PackagePath:e:\repository\SPP_base.spp
/PackagePath:e:\repository\SPP_AddOn1.spp /PackagePath:e:\repository\SPP_AddOn2.spp
```

You'll use ScanState to capture siloed provisioning packages from a booted Windows installation, and DISM to apply SPPs to an applied Windows image from WinPE.

For the full walkthrough, see [Lab 10: Add desktop applications and settings with siloed provisioning packages](#).

## Create siloed provisioning packages

This section covers how to use ScanState.exe from the Windows desktop to create siloed provisioning packages that contain applications, system settings, and drivers.

### Recommendations:

- Use a clean Windows installation. This prevents any potentially unwanted settings from being included in the package.
- Use virtual machines with checkpoints to quickly capture SPPs and then revert to a clean Windows installation.

### Configuration files

ScanState for Windows 10, version 1607 can now capture individual Windows desktop applications, and by default only captures components from the Windows namespace. You can choose what gets captured by using /apps by using configuration files. The configuration files that are installed with the Windows Assessment and Deployment Toolkit, along with the User State Migration Tool (USMT), is here:

<%Windows ADK install root%>\User State Migration Tool\<arch>\

Customize these files to capture more or fewer components in the siloed provisioning package:

| CONFIGURATION FILE             | USAGE                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Config_AppsOnly.xml            | Captures Windows desktop applications and application settings, without other non-relevant settings.<br>This is typically used to create an inventory of applications that can be deployed in the final factory floor process. |
| Config_SettingsOnly.xml        | Captures only system settings.<br>This is typically used to create an inventory of applications that can be deployed in the final factory floor process.                                                                       |
| Config_AppsAndSettingsOnly.xml | Captures both desktop applications and system settings.<br>This can be used either while creating an inventory of applications or as the last step in the factory floor process.                                               |

### Capture Windows desktop applications

The following example uses a configuration file to create a siloed provisioning package that contains Windows desktop applications installed on a reference device:

```
ScanState.exe /apps:-sysdrive /o /v:13 /config:Config_AppsOnly.xml /ppkg e:\repository\SPP_base.spp
/l:C:\Scanstate.log
```

Here are what the parameters for the above command mean:

| PARAMETER                | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| /apps                    | Tells ScanState to capture desktop applications.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| -sysdrive (or +sysdrive) | Tells ScanState to ignore all the folders outside the Windows namespace. For example, if there is a folder c:\Folder, that folder will be captured when running with /apps (or /apps:+sysdrive) but it will not be captured when running with /apps:-sysdrive.<br><br>Typically you use +sysdrive if you want to capture the entire state of the machine into a single siloed provisioning package; use -sysdrive if you want to capture a single application (or a small group of applications). |
| /o                       | The Windows namespace is the set of folders created by a Windows installation, typically: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• %systemdrive%\Users</li><li>• %systemdrive%\ProgramData</li><li>• %systemdrive%\Program Files</li><li>• %systemdrive%\Program Files (x86)</li><li>• %systemdrive%\Windows</li><li>• %systemdrive%\Inetpub</li></ul><br>Overwrites any existing data in the store. If not specified, ScanState will fail if the store already contains data.                     |

| PARAMETER        | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| /v:13            | Produces a MigLog.xml file that indicates what gets captured.                                                                                                  |
| /diff            | Used with the /apps command option to capture application add-on components relative to parent applications already captured in siloed provisioning packages.  |
| /l:ScanState.log | Tells ScanState where to save log files. When used in combination with <code>/v:13</code> , ScanState will save MigLog.xml to the same folder as ScanState.log |

### Capture add-on components

You can use /diff to create a siloed provisioning package that captures components relative to parent applications already captured in a siloed provisioning package. To use /diff, you must specify a SPP to compare the capture against:

```
ScanState.exe /apps:-sysdrive /o /v:13 /config:Config_AppsOnly.xml /diff:e:\repository\SPP_base.spp /ppkg e:\repository\SPP_AddOn1.spp
```

### Capture system settings

In a scenario where all deployment tasks for a device are complete and no Windows desktop applications have been installed, you can use ScanState to capture system settings that have not been captured in any other SPP by using Config\_SettingsOnly.xml. The SPP can be placed directly into the recovery folder during capture for use during Push-Button Reset.

The following example creates a siloed provisioning package of only system settings on a device, and places it into the recovery folder:

```
ScanState.exe /apps:-appfiles /o /v:13 /config:Config_SettingsOnly.xml /ppkg %systemdrive%\Recovery\Customizations\systemsettings.spp
```

### Capture system settings and Windows desktop applications in the same package

Config\_AppsAndSettingsOnly.xml is intended to capture Windows desktop applications and system settings that are installed last-minute, so they can be placed in the recovery folder for use during PBR. For example, after a device is booted into Audit mode on the factory floor, additional Win32 apps are installed and need to be captured. In this case, you have two options:

- Capture the additional apps and their relevant settings in one .spp using the /diff switch and Config\_AppsOnly.xml. Then capture the system settings in a separate .spp using the Config\_SettingsOnly.xml.
- Capture the additional apps and the system settings into one SPP using the /diff switch and Config\_AppsAndSettings.xml.

Config\_AppsAndSettingsOnly.xml can also be used when you want to capture all apps and settings into one .spp file, for use in an imaging lab or on the factory floor.

### Capture drivers

This section covers how to capture different types of drivers with ScanState.

#### Types of drivers

ScanState for Windows 10, version 1607 captures 3rd-party drivers when you use the /drivers switch. By default, ScanState.exe captures all 3rd party drivers, but can also capture a subset of drivers based on .inf name, manufacturer, or class. Some driver types, like filter drivers, may not be captured when using /drivers. In this case,

run Scanstate.exe with using /apps. The /drivers switch can also be used in combination with /apps in situations where you want to capture drivers and their associated management software, such as for printers or video cards.

## Hardware drivers

To capture drivers that are installed using an .inf file, use the /drivers switch. It's not necessary to use the /apps switch.

To capture drivers that are installed using another method (for example, a setup.exe file), use both /drivers and /apps. This ensures that both the driver package and all Windows desktop applications and settings created by setup for that driver are captured at the same time. To filter out other driver packages, use the arguments that are in combination with /drivers.

## Other drivers

Drivers such as filter drivers are not captured using the /drivers switch. To capture these types of drivers, use only the /apps switch.

### Capture drivers by using patterns

Because ScanState.exe captures all 3rd-party drivers by default when using `scanState.exe /drivers`, if you want to capture only certain drivers, you have to use patterns to narrow the number of captured drivers. ScanState processes commands left to right, so the last pattern specified in a command will take precedence over previous patterns in the same command. For example, if you want to only capture a specific set of drivers, you would first exclude all drivers from capture, and then include specific drivers. Since the arguments are processed in order, the drivers specified after the exclusion of all drivers will be captured.

Here are the patterns you can use to select which drivers will be captured:

| PATTERN | DESCRIPTION                                                      |
|---------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| +n      | Selects drivers to be included based on inf name                 |
| -n      | Selects drivers to be excluded based on inf name                 |
| +p      | Selects drivers to be included based on publisher name           |
| -p      | Selects drivers to be excluded based on publisher name           |
| +c      | Selects drivers to be included based on class name or class GUID |
| -c      | Selects drivers to be excluded based on class name or class GUID |

The following example uses a pattern to create a siloed provisioning package that contains drivers of a specific class.

```
ScanState.exe /drivers:-n:* /drivers:+c:{4d36e96f-e325-11ce-bfc1-08002be10318} /ppkg e:\repository\drivers.spp
```

Here are what the parameters for the above command mean:

| PARAMETER | DESCRIPTION                                   |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------|
| /drivers  | Tells ScanState to capture 3rd party drivers. |

| PARAMETER                                 | DESCRIPTION                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -n:*                                      | Removes all drivers from capture.                                                 |
| +c:{4d36e96f-e325-11ce-bfc1-08002be10318} | Adds drivers of a particular class back into the capture.                         |
| /ppkg                                     | Specifies that the output will be a ppkg. This is required for use with /drivers. |

## Capture Applications and Drivers in the same SPP

You can use the /apps and /drivers switches in the same command to create SPPs that contain both applications and drivers.

The following is an example of capturing a siloed provisioning package that contains Windows desktop applications and drivers with only with a specific class GUID.

```
ScanState.exe /drivers:-n:* /drivers:+c:{4d36e96f-e325-11ce-bfc1-08002be10318} /apps:-sysdrive /o /v:13
/config:Config_AppsOnly.xml /ppkg e:\repository\apps_and_drivers.spp
```

## Apply siloed provisioning packages

This section covers how to use DISM from WinPE to apply siloed provisioning packages.

DISM supports applying siloed provisioning packages to a Windows image through a new DISM provider, which is only available through the Windows ADK. You can get this version of DISM by using CopyDndl.cmd.

### Limitations

The functionality for applying siloed provisioning packages using DISM is limited to support the following scenarios:

- The DISM SiloedPackageProvider is not included in the Windows image, nor is it included in Windows PE, version 1607. The Windows ADK version of DISM must be installed on the servicing host, and then launch DISM.exe from the Windows ADK installed location. On a host that is not supported by Windows ADK installer, such as Windows PE, the required binaries can be copied to the host using the CopyDndl.cmd script in <%Windows ADK install root%>\Deployment Tools.
- DISM only supports applying siloed provisioning packages to a Windows image that has been applied at the root of a disk volume on a device, e.g. "C:". It does not support applying siloed provisioning packages to a Windows image that is mounted for offline servicing. The typical scenario is booting the device to Windows PE, and running the Windows ADK version of DISM in Windows PE to apply siloed provisioning packages after the Windows image has been applied to the device.
- The DISM command to apply siloed provisioning packages to a Windows image (DISM Apply-SiloedPackage) can be run only once. All of the siloed provisioning packages to be applied to the Windows image must be specified in the right order in a single command operation. The order of the installation will be preserved, so the packages can be restored in the same order during PBR.
- If additional siloed provisioning packages need to be applied to a Windows desktop image that has already gone through the entire deployment process with using DISM to apply a set of siloed provisioning packages, the image can be Sysprep generalized and captured as a new model image. DISM can then be run again to apply more siloed provisioning packages when this new model image is deployed onto other devices.
- Siloed provisioning packages must be applied to the same operating system architecture that they were captured on. For example, capturing an app on an x86 operating system in an .spp and applying it to an x64 operating system is not supported.
- Siloed provisioning packages can be applied to other editions of Windows. For example, an application

captured on Windows 10 Enterprise can be applied to Windows 10 Pro.

- Windows 10, Version 1607, does not support applying siloed provisioning packages on a generalized image that is set to boot into Audit mode. If booting into Audit mode is required, use Unattend.xml to reseal to Audit mode.

## Use DISM to apply siloed provisioning packages

The following example uses DISM that is created by CopyDndl.cmd to apply a base SPP, as well as two add-on SPPs:

```
DISM.exe /Apply-SiloedPackage /ImagePath:C:\ /PackagePath:e:\repository\BaseSPP.spp
/PackagePath:e:\repository\SPP_AddOn1.spp /PackagePath:e:\repository\SPP_AddOn2.spp
```

For syntax, see [DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#), or run `DISM.exe /Apply-SiloedPackage /?` from the target location of CopyDndl.cmd.

All of the siloed provisioning packages applied by DISM will be placed in `%systemdrive%\Recovery\Customizations` folder.

### Saving drive space: single-instancing is automatic on compact OS

When DISM applies siloed provisioning packages to the OS image that has been applied as Compact OS on a device, by default the packages will be applied with application files single-instanced (using WIMBoot v1 style) on the device.

To single-instance your siloed provisioning packages on devices without Compact OS image, use DISM /Apply-CustomDataImage while the device is booted into Windows PE.

```
DISM.exe /ImagePath:C:\ /Apply-CustomDataImage /CustomDataImage:C:\Recovery\Customizations\myApp.spp
/SingleInstance
```

The /Apply-SiloedPackage command works with both traditional provisioning packages and siloed provisioning packages (.spp). -If you create provisioning packages in audit mode, you can choose to single-instance contents by using the DISM /Apply-CustomDataImage /SingleInstance command. To learn more see [Lab 1g: Make changes from Windows \(audit mode\)](#).

### Push-button reset

When using ScanState to capture traditional provisioning packages, only one package with all the applications and system settings can be placed in `%systemdrive%\Recovery\Customizations` folder. During push-button reset (PBR), the single provisioning package is processed to restore the applications and system settings.

Beginning with Windows 10, version 1607, applications can be captured in multiple siloed provisioning packages and system settings can also be captured in a separate siloed provisioning package. As a result, PBR is enhanced to allow multiple siloed provisioning packages to be applied, in the preserved order in which they were applied using Dism /Apply-Siloed Package. The packages can then be queued and processed in the right order during PBR to restore the applications and system settings captured in these packages. If the packages were applied using single-instancing, it will be honored when PBR restores them to the device.

Single-instancing can occur automatically if Compact OS is used, or manually.

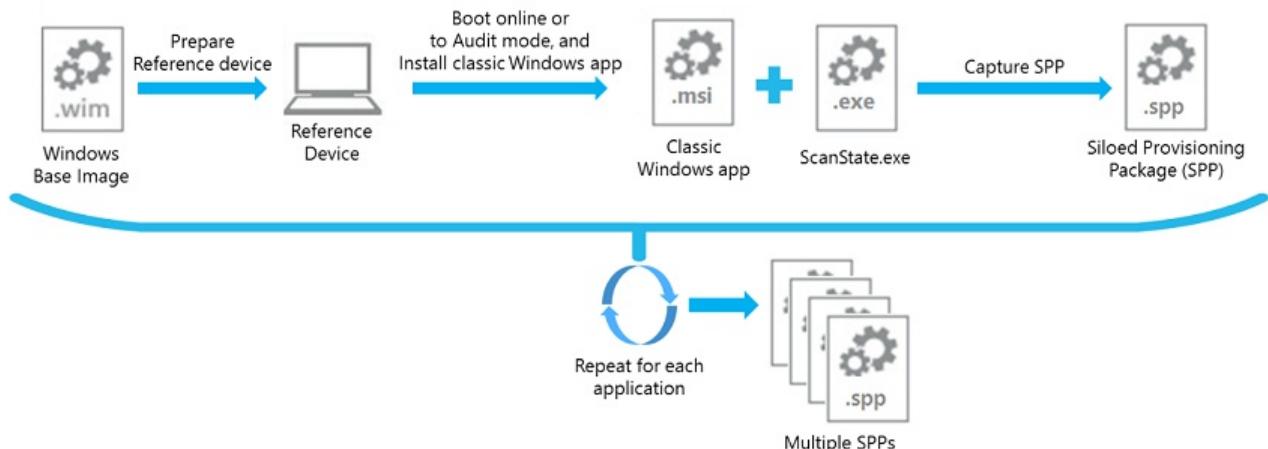
- If you use WinPE, then applying an image as Compact OS, then apply SPPs to it, Windows automatically single-instances the contents of the package. To learn more, see [Lab 10: Add desktop applications and settings with siloed provisioning packages \(SPPs\)](#)
- If you create provisioning packages in audit mode, you can choose to single-instance the contents by using the DISM /Apply-CustomDataImage /SingleInstance command. To learn more, see [Lab 9: Make changes from Windows \(audit mode\)](#).

# Scenarios for using siloed provisioning packages

This section covers scenarios using siloed provisioning packages.

## Capturing and applying independent applications

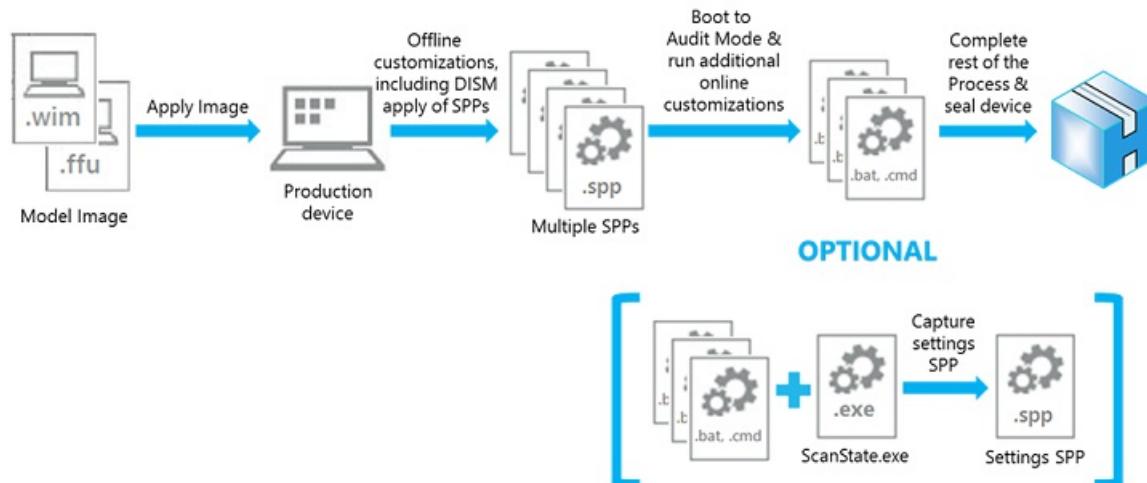
A Microsoft partner can capture siloed provisioning packages of individual classic Windows applications while in the imaging lab, and then install any combination of siloed provisioning packages in a customized order at factory floor. For example, a partner could capture siloed provisioning packages for a PDF reader application and an antivirus program, and then install those program packages on a specific device model at factory floor.



1. Clean install Windows 10, version 1607 on a reference device.
2. At the desktop, install antivirus software.
3. Run ScanState.exe to capture an antivirus software siloed provisioning package.
4. Wipe and clean install the reference device
5. Repeat steps 2-4 for the PDF reader application.

Alternatively, the siloed provisioning packages can be captured using a VM instead of a physical device:

1. Create a VM and boot it online using a Windows 10, version 1607 VHD/VHDX image.
2. Create a checkpoint of the clean OS installation on the VM.
3. At the desktop, install the antivirus software.
4. Run ScanState.exe to capture an antivirus software siloed provisioning package.
5. Revert the VM to the checkpoint.
6. At the desktop, install the PDF reader application.
7. Run ScanState.exe to capture the PDF reader application siloed provisioning package.



1. On the target device, boot to Windows PE, and apply the Windows 10, version 1607, desktop image.

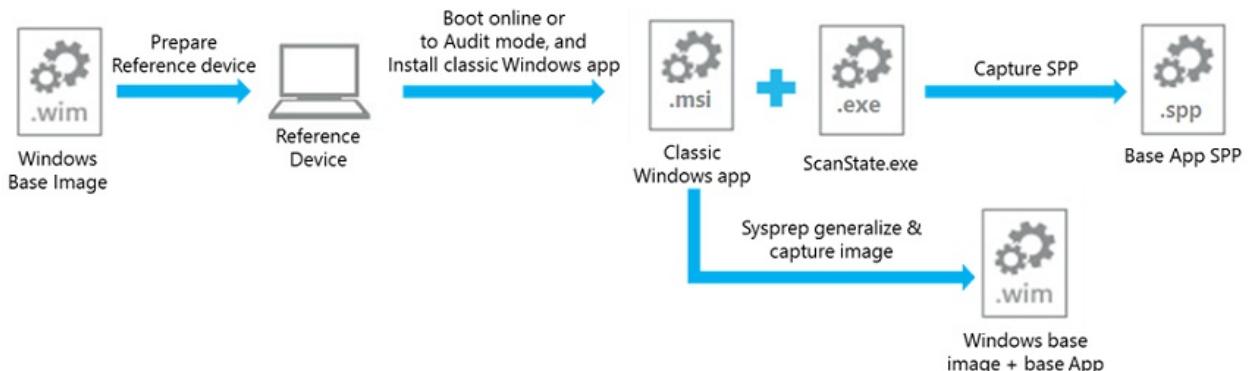
2. While in Windows PE, run DISM /Apply-SiloedPackage command with the PDF reader and antivirus program packages to apply the application files in the packages onto the applied desktop image.
3. Complete the rest of the offline customization tasks.
4. Go through first boot and run through specialize to get to Audit mode.
5. Complete the online customization/configuration tasks.
6. (Optional) While in Audit mode, run ScanState to capture only the system settings into siloed provisioning package and place it in the recovery folder.
7. Complete the rest of the factory floor tasks and shutdown/seal the product.

### Capturing and applying applications with dependencies

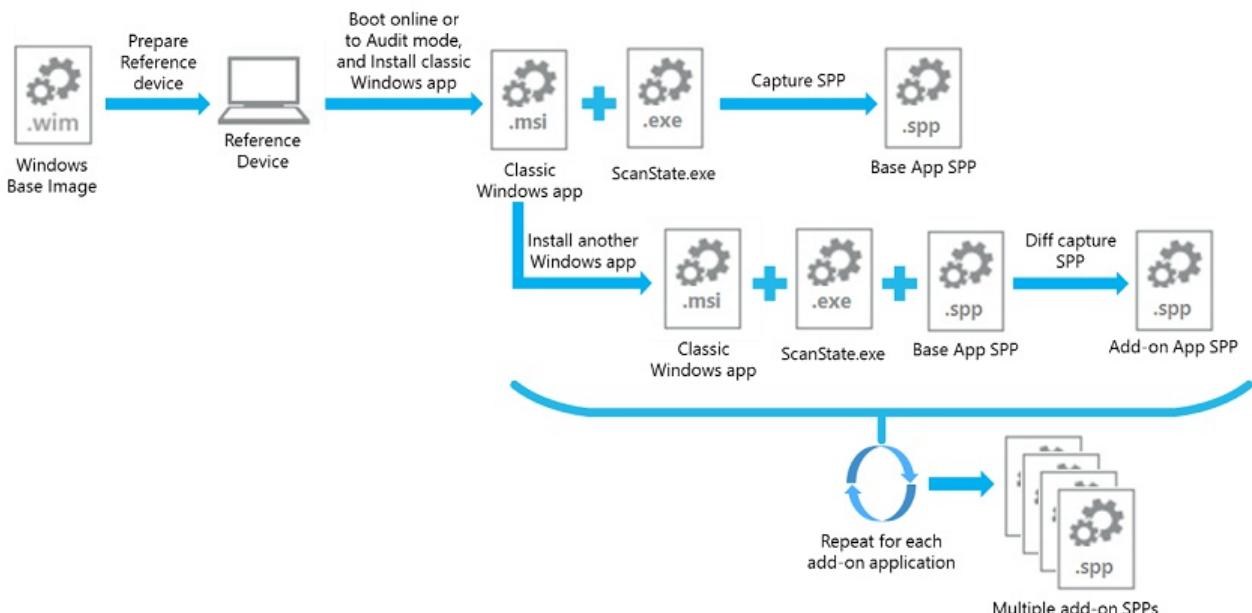
A Microsoft partner can use diff capture support to generate supplemental (or add-on) siloed provisioning packages that are relevant to a previously captured parent siloed provisioning package. The siloed provisioning packages can then be installed on devices at factory floor, with parent package first followed by combinations of supplemental packages in the customized order.

For example, you could capture the antivirus program base siloed provisioning package, and then diff capture an antivirus program patch (MSP) siloed provisioning packages using the base package as the parent. At the factory floor, the antivirus program base package and a selection of patch packages, specified in the desired order, can then be installed on a specific model device.

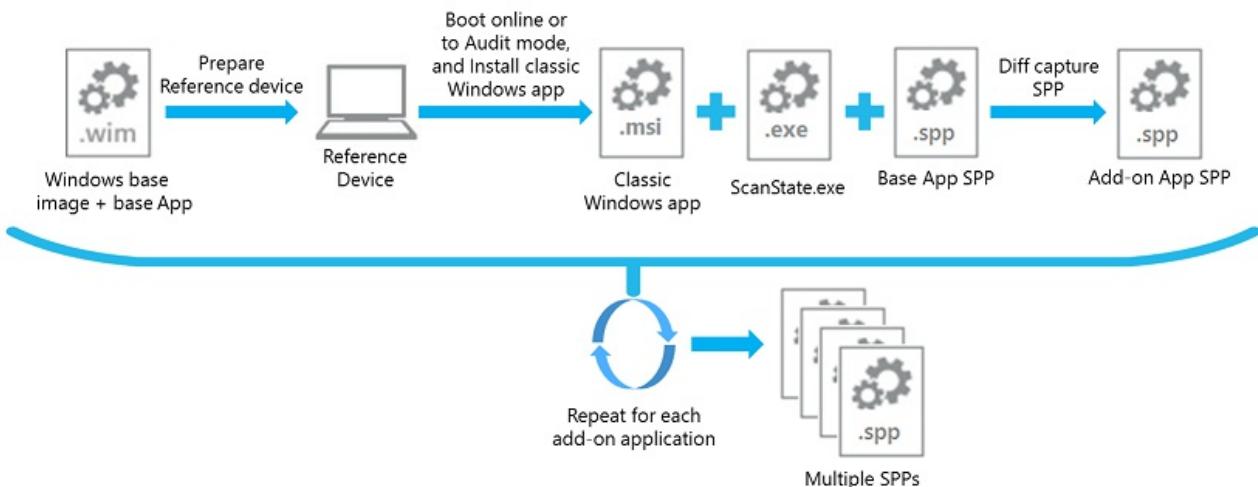
### Capturing Base App SPP



### Capturing Add-on App SPPs – Option 1



## Capturing Add-on App SPPs – Option 2



1. Clean install Windows 10, version 1607 on a reference device.
2. At the desktop, install the antivirus application.
3. Sysprep generalize and capture the OS image from the reference device.
4. Run ScanState.exe to capture your antivirus base siloed provisioning package.
5. Install antivirus software program patches.
6. Run ScanState.exe to diff capture the antivirus software program patches in a siloed provisioning package using the antivirus base package.
7. Either continue using the diff switch with the already captured base and program patches packages to capture another antivirus program patch siloed provisioning package:
  - a. Install additional antivirus software program patches.
  - b. Run ScanState.exe to diff capture the additional program patches siloed provisioning package using antivirus base package and the first program patches SPPs.
8. Or wipe and start clean again on the reference device to diff capture another antivirus software siloed provisioning package:
  - a. Wipe and clean install the reference device using the OS image captured in step 3.
  - b. At the desktop, install antivirus software.
  - c. Run ScanState.exe to diff capture antivirus software program patches siloed provisioning package using the antivirus base package captured in step 4.
9. Repeat either step 7 or 8 to capture any additional antivirus program patch siloed provisioning packages.

Alternatively, the siloed provisioning packages can be captured using VM instead of a physical device. When using a VM:

1. Create a VM and boot it online using a Windows 10, version 1607 VHD/VHDX image.
2. At the desktop, install the antivirus application.
3. Create a checkpoint of the OS installation with the antivirus software on the VM.
4. Run ScanState.exe to capture your antivirus base siloed provisioning package.
5. Install antivirus software program patches.
6. Run ScanState.exe to diff capture the antivirus software program patches in a siloed provisioning package using the antivirus base package.
7. Either continue using diff switch with the already captured base and language packages to capture another Office 2016 language siloed provisioning package:
  - a. Install additional antivirus software program patches.
  - b. Run ScanState.exe to diff capture the additional program patches siloed provisioning package using antivirus base package and the first program patches SPPs.

8. Or restart the VM to diff capture another antivirus software program patch siloed provisioning package:
  - a. Revert the VM to the checkpoint generated in step 3.
  - b. At the desktop, install antivirus software.
  - c. Run ScanState.exe to diff capture antivirus software program patches siloed provisioning package using the antivirus base package captured in step 4.
9. Repeat either step 7 or 8 to capture any additional antivirus program patch siloed provisioning packages.

Siloed provisioning packages can also capture applications with dependencies. For example, to capture multiple apps that depend on .NET Framework:

1. Create a VM and boot it online using a Window 10, version 1607 VHD/VHDX image.
2. Install .NET Framework.
3. Create a checkpoint of the of the OS installation with .NET Framework.
4. Capture a base .spp, for example, DotNet.spp.
5. Install App1, capture it as App1.spp, using /diff:DotNet.spp.
6. Revert the VM to the checkpoint created in Step 3.
7. Install App2, capture it as App2.spp, using /diff:DotNet.spp.

To preserve the dependency, apply the packages in this order:

- DotNet.spp, App1.spp, App2.spp
- or-
- DotNet.spp, App2.spp, App1.spp

The important point is DotNet.spp must be applied first.

### **Capturing an Application with associated device drivers**

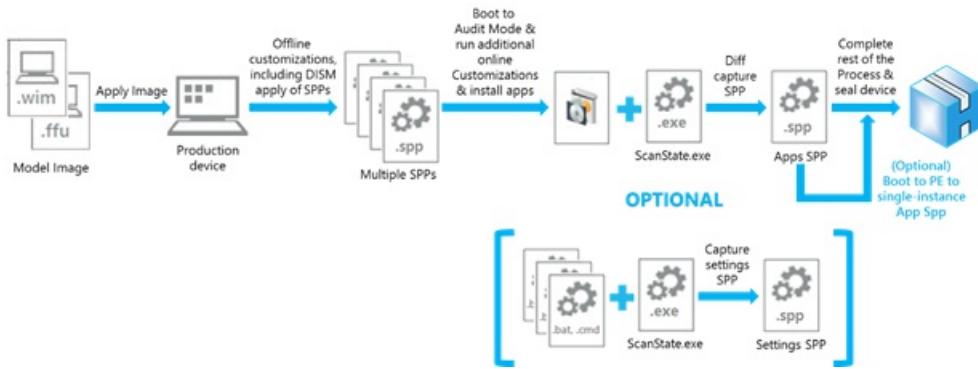
A Microsoft partner can capture a siloed provisioning package of individual classic Windows applications that have hardware drivers associated with them while in the imaging lab, and then install any combination of siloed provisioning packages in a customized order at factory floor. For example, a partner could capture a siloed provisioning package for Microsoft Mouse and Keyboard Center that contains both application and driver files.

1. Clean install Windows 10, version 1607 on a reference device.
2. At the desktop, install Microsoft Mouse and Keyboard Center.
3. Run ScanState.exe to capture Mouse and Keyboard Center siloed provisioning package, using both the /apps and /drivers switches.
4. Wipe and clean install the reference device
5. On the target device, boot to Windows PE, and apply the Windows 10, version 1607, desktop image.
6. While in Windows PE, run DISM /Apply-SiloedPackage command with the Microsoft Mouse and Keyboard Center package to apply the application and driver files in the packages onto the applied desktop image.
7. Complete the rest of the offline customization tasks.
8. Go through first boot and run through specialize to get to Audit mode.
9. Complete the online customization/configuration tasks.
10. (Optional) While in Audit mode, run ScanState to capture only the system settings into siloed provisioning package and place it in the recovery folder.
11. Complete the rest of the factory floor tasks and shutdown/reseal the product.

### **Capturing and applying applications for BTO model**

In the BTO model, last minute customizations on the factory floor could include installing additional classic Windows applications on to a customized image. If any classic Windows applications were not captured in siloed provisioning packages in the imaging lab, the factory floor process will then include the tasks shown in the

following diagram:



1. On the target device, boot to Windows PE, and apply Windows 10, version 1607 desktop image.
2. While in Windows PE, run DISM /Apply-SiloedPackage command specifying all the siloed provisioning packages to apply the application files in the packages onto the applied desktop image.
3. Complete the rest of the offline customization tasks.
4. Go through first boot and run through specialize to get to Audit mode.
5. Online install of classic Windows applications in Audit mode.
6. Complete the online customization/configuration tasks.
7. Run ScanState.exe to diff capture the applications installed in step 5 into a single siloed provisioning package, using the siloed provisioning packages for the applications already installed in the base model image as a reference.
8. (Optional) Run ScanState to capture only the system settings into siloed provisioning package and place it in the recovery folder.
9. (Optional) Boot the device to Windows PE, and run the DISM command to single-instance the application files in the siloed provisioning package captured in step 7.
10. Complete the rest of the factory floor tasks and shutdown/seal the product.

**Preferred process guidelines for BTO model:** As described in the preceding steps, the diff capture support provides flexibility to allow installing a classic Windows applications at the factory floor as last minute customizations. However, the diff capture operation may take some time to complete, depending on the number and the size of the siloed provisioning packages it needs to diff against. There is also overhead cost for the other steps in the process. Therefore, the preferred guideline for installing a classic Windows application in the BTO model is to incur the onetime cost of capturing the siloed provisioning packages for these applications in the imaging lab. They can then be applied on the factory floor as needed for last-minute customizations.

## Related topics

[WinPE: Create USB bootable drive](#)

[Lab 9: Make changes from Windows \(audit mode\)](#)

[Lab 10: Add desktop applications and settings with siloed provisioning packages \(SPPs\)](#)

# Create a provisioning package with Windows desktop applications

7/13/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Here's how to add Windows desktop applications and other data by using audit mode. You'll recapture these Windows desktop applications and data into a provisioning package by using the ScanState tool. As new builds of Windows are released, and as you prepare for different markets, you can mix and match the Windows images and provisioning packages, rather than rebuilding and customizing the images each time.

Once you've captured the provisioning package, you can add it to your image by using Windows ICD.

The recovery tools also use this provisioning package. When your users refresh the device (often used in case of device failure) or reset the device (often used to clean a device for a new user), the device keeps their installed Windows updates, plus the updates in this provisioning package.

## Step 1: Prepare a copy of ScanState

1. On your technician PC, plug in another USB key or drive.
2. In File Explorer, create a new folder on the USB key, for example: **D:\ScanState x64**.
3. Copy the files from "**C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\User State Migration Tool\amd64**" into **D:\ScanState x64**. You don't need to copy the subfolders.
4. Copy the files from "**C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Setup\amd64\Sources**" into **D:\ScanState x64**. There will be duplicate files, it's OK to skip copying these files. You don't need to copy the subfolders.

## Step 2: Install a Windows desktop application in audit mode

Use this method to install Windows desktop applications and any drivers that require installation (as opposed to .inf-style drivers.)

1. On the reference device, install the image that was created in Lab 1a. If the image is already installed, start the reference device. Either the **Languages** or the **Hi there** screen appears.
2. Press **Ctrl+Shift+F3** to enter Audit mode. The device reboots to the desktop, and the System Preparation Tool (Sysprep) appears. You can close Sysprep.
3. Ensure that your customizations from [Lab 1a](#) are available. To do this, in **Settings** under **System > About**, you should see the technical support info that you entered earlier appear (company name, support phone number, and support website).
4. Install a Windows desktop application application. For example, to install Office 2013, put in a USB key with the Office installation program, open File Explorer and navigate to [oemsetup.en-us.com](#). To learn more, download the Office OPK Update image from the Office OPK Connect site.

## Step 3: Save your updates to a provisioning package

### Capture your updates into a provisioning package

First, plug the USB key with ScanState into the reference device.

- **If you'd like to keep a copy of this provisioning package and deploy it to other devices**, save the file to a USB drive.

Capture the changes into the provisioning package, and save it on the USB key.

```
D:\ScanState_x64\scanstate.exe /apps /ppkg D:\Provisioning\ClassicApps.ppkg /o /c /v:13
/1:D:\ScanState.log
```

where *D* is the letter of the drive with ScanState.

- **For build-to-order devices**, you can wrap up these changes and prepare the device for immediate delivery. Capture the changes to provisioning package, and save it as C:\Recovery\Customizations\usmt.ppkg:

```
D:\ScanState_x64\scanstate.exe /apps /ppkg C:\Recovery\Customizations\usmt.ppkg /o /c /v:13
/1:D:\ScanState.log
```

## Step 4: Prepare the device for an end user

- **For build-to-order devices**, prepare the device for the end user: Right-click **Start**, select **Command Prompt (Admin)**, and run the following command:

```
C:\Windows\System32\Sysprep\sysprep /oobe /shutdown
```

The Sysprep tool reseals the device. This process can take several minutes. After the process completes, the device shuts down automatically. You can now send the device to the customer.

# Device Drivers

6/6/2017 • 12 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can add device drivers to a Windows image before, during, or after you deploy the image. When planning how to add drivers to your Windows deployment, it's important to understand how driver folders are added to the image, how driver ranking affects deployment, and the digital signature requirements for drivers.

In this topic:

- [Adding Drivers](#)
- [Managing Driver Folders](#)
- [Understanding Driver Ranking](#)
- [Understanding Digital Signature Requirements](#)
- [Additional Resources](#)

## Adding Drivers

You can add device drivers to a Windows image:

- [Before deployment on an offline Windows image](#)
- [During an automated deployment](#)
- [After deployment on a running operating system](#)

For more information, see [Understanding Servicing Strategies](#).

### Add drivers before deployment on an offline Windows image by using DISM

Offline servicing occurs when you modify a Windows image entirely offline without booting the operating system. You can add, remove, and enumerate drivers on an offline Windows image by using the DISM command-line tool. DISM is installed with Windows and is also distributed in the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (Windows ADK). For more information about DISM, see the [DISM - Deployment Image Servicing and Management Technical Reference for Windows](#).

When you add a driver to an offline image, it's either staged or reflected in the image:

- **Boot-critical drivers** are reflected. In other words, the files are copied into the image according to what's specified in the .inf file. The PC completes installation tasks during the initial boot, including updating the Critical Devices Database (CDDB) and the registry.
- **Drivers that aren't boot critical** are staged. In other words, they're added to the driver store. After Windows starts, PnP detects the device and installs the matching driver from the driver store.

You can use DISM commands to add or remove drivers on a mounted or applied Windows or Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE) image.

### Note

You can't use DISM to remove inbox drivers (drivers that are installed on Windows by default). You can use it only to remove third-party or out-of-box drivers.

You can also use DISM commands to apply an unattended answer file to a mounted or applied Windows image.

For more information, see [Add and Remove Drivers to an Offline Windows Image](#).

If you're using DISM, you can add only .inf drivers to an offline Windows image. Drivers that display the Designed for Windows logo are provided as .cab files. You must expand the .cab file before you install the .inf file if you're using DISM for the installation. You must install a driver that's packaged as a .exe file or another file type on a running Windows operating system. To run a .exe or Windows Installer (.msi) driver package, you can add a custom command to an answer file to install the driver package. For more information, see [Add a Custom Command to an Answer File](#).

### Add drivers during an automated deployment by using Windows Setup and an answer file

You can use an unattended answer file to add drivers to an image when you use Windows Setup for deployment. In this answer file, you can specify the path of a device driver on a network share (or a local path). You accomplish this by adding the Microsoft-Windows-PnpCustomizationWinPE or Microsoft-Windows-PnpCustomizationNonWinPE components and specifying the configuration passes where you want to install them. When you run Windows Setup and specify the name of the answer file, out-of-box drivers are staged (added to the driver store on the image), and boot-critical drivers are reflected (added to the image so that they'll be used when the computer boots). Setup uses the answer file. By adding device drivers during the **windowsPE** or **offlineServicing** configuration passes, you can add out-of-box device drivers to the Windows image before the computer starts. You can also use this method to add boot-critical device drivers to a Windows image. For more information, see [Add Device Drivers to Windows During Windows Setup](#). For more information about how Windows Setup works, see the [Windows Setup Technical Reference](#).

If you want to add boot-critical drivers to Windows PE, use the **windowsPE** configuration pass to reflect the drivers before the Windows PE image is booted. The difference between adding boot-critical drivers during the **windowsPE** configuration pass and adding them during the **offlineServicing** configuration pass is that during the **windowsPE** configuration pass, boot-critical drivers are reflected for Windows PE to use. During the **offlineServicing** configuration pass, the drivers are staged to the driver store on the Windows image.

Methods for adding device drivers by using Windows Setup include these:

- Using an answer file to add drivers during the **offlineServicing** configuration pass of Setup.
- Using an answer file to add drivers during the **windowsPE** configuration pass of Setup.
- For Windows Server®, placing drivers in the \$WinPEDriver\$ directory to be installed automatically during the **windowsPE** configuration pass of Setup. All drive letters with a value of C or greater are scanned for a \$WinPEDriver\$ directory. The drive must be accessible to the hard disk during Setup. Make sure that the drive does not require a storage driver to be loaded before it can be accessed.

For more information about these and other configuration passes, see [Windows Setup Configuration Passes](#).

When you're using Windows Deployment Services for deployment in Windows Server, you can add device drivers to your server and configure them to be deployed to clients as part of a network-based installation. You configure this functionality by creating a driver group on the server, adding packages to it, and then adding filters to define which clients will install those drivers. You can configure drivers to be installed based on the client's hardware (for example, manufacturer or BIOS vendor) and the edition of the Windows image that's selected during the installation. You can also configure whether clients install all packages in a driver group or only the drivers that match the installed hardware on the client. For more information about how to implement this functionality, see the Windows Deployment Services documentation.

### Add drivers after deployment on a running operating system by using PnPUtil or an answer file

You can use the PnPUtil tool to add or remove drivers on a running operating system. Alternatively, you can use an answer file to automate the installation of the drivers when the computer is booted in audit mode. These methods can be helpful if you want to maintain a simple Windows image, and then add only the drivers that are required for a specific hardware configuration. For more information about how to use audit mode, see [Boot Windows to Audit Mode or OOB](#)E.

Methods for adding device drivers online to a running operating system include these:

- Using PnUtil to add or remove PnP drivers. For more information, see [Use PnUtil at a command line to install a Plug and Play device](#).
- Using an answer file to automate the installation of PnP drivers when the computer is booted in audit mode. For more information, see [Add a Driver Online in Audit Mode](#).

## Managing Driver Folders

If you're adding multiple drivers, you should create separate folders for each driver or driver category. This makes sure that there are no conflicts when you add drivers that have the same file name. After the driver is installed on the operating system, it's renamed to Oem\*.inf to ensure unique file names in the operating system. For example, the staged drivers named MyDriver1.inf and MyDriver2.inf are renamed to Oem0.inf and Oem1.inf after they're installed.

When you specify a device-driver path in an answer file, all .inf drivers in the specified directory and subdirectories are added to the driver store of the Windows image,

%SystemRoot%\System32\DriverStore\FileRepository. For example, if you want all of the drivers in the C:\MyDrivers\Networking, C:\MyDrivers\Video, and C:\MyDrivers\Audio directories to be available in your Windows image, specify the device-driver path, C:\MyDrivers, in your answer file. If you're not using an answer file, you can use the **/recurse** command in DISM. For more information about the **/recurse** command, see [DISM Driver Servicing Command-Line Options](#). This command makes sure that all drivers in each subdirectory will be added to the driver store in your Windows image.

If all drivers in the specified directory and subdirectories are added to the image, you should manage the answer file or your DISM commands and these directories carefully. Do your best to address concerns about increasing the size of the image through unnecessary driver packages.

If it isn't practical to manage your driver shares so that only the required drivers are added to your image, you can use the Driver Package Installer (DPIInst) tool to add drivers that aren't boot critical online. DPIInst selectively installs drivers that aren't boot critical only if the hardware is present or if the driver package is a better match for the device.

## Understanding Driver Ranking

One of the most common issues in deploying drivers happens when a driver is successfully imported into the driver store but, after the system is online, PnP finds a higher-ranking driver and installs that driver instead.

The Windows PnP manager ranks these driver package properties in order of importance:

1. Signing
2. PnP ID match
3. Driver date
4. Driver version

For example, if a device has a better PnP ID match but is unsigned, a signed driver that has a compatible ID match takes precedence. An older driver can outrank a newer driver if the older driver has a better PnP ID match or signature.

For more information about driver ranking, see [How Windows Ranks Drivers](#).

## Understanding Digital Signature Requirements

Signed device drivers are a key security feature in Windows. Drivers that are installed on x64-based computers

must have a digital signature. Although it isn't required, we recommend making sure that drivers are signed before you install them on x86-based computers.

All boot-critical drivers must contain embedded signatures. A digital signature isn't required for Plug and Play (PnP) drivers. But when an unsigned PnP driver is installed on a running operating system, administrator credentials are required, and you can't install such drivers on 64-bit operating systems.

There are two ways that a driver can be signed:

- Kernel mode and boot-critical drivers are digitally signed via a method called embedded signing. By using embedded signatures, every binary in the driver package is signed. Embedded signatures improve boot loading performance. For drivers that are not PnP, signatures should be embedded so that they're not lost during an upgrade of the operating system.
- Digitally signed PnP drivers contain a catalog (.cat) file that's digitally signed. The catalog file contains a hash of all the files in the driver's .inf file for installation. A signed catalog file is all that's required to correctly install most PnP drivers.

Either of these sources can sign drivers:

- Windows Hardware Quality Labs (WHQL), which makes sure that your drivers qualify for the Windows Hardware Certification Program. WHQL creates a signed driver catalog. For boot-critical drivers, you should add embedded signatures instead of relying on the catalog. Embedded signatures in boot-critical driver image files optimize boot performance of the operating system by eliminating the requirement to locate the appropriate catalog file when the operating system loader verifies the driver signature.
- A certification authority (CA), by using a Software Publishing Certificate (SPC). For boot-critical and x64-based kernel drivers, Microsoft provides an additional certificate that can be used to cross-sign the drivers. Drivers that aren't boot critical don't have to be cross-signed by Microsoft or embedded. You can use the Windows Kernel Mode Code Signing process if you need the flexibility of signing the drivers yourself. For information about digital signatures for kernel modules on x64-based systems, see [64-Bit Driver Guidelines](#).

For testing, you can also use test certificates.

If you have received an unsigned driver from a vendor for testing, you can use a test signature to validate the driver and to test the installation. Test signing is the act of digitally signing an application by using a private key and a corresponding code-signing certificate that's trusted only in the confines of a test environment.

These are the primary ways to generate such test-signing certificates:

- Developers can generate their own self-signed certificates.
- A CA can issue certificates.

For either option, test-signing certificates must be clearly identified as appropriate only for testing. For example, the word "test" can be included in the certificate subject name, and additional legal disclaimers can be included in the certificate. Production certificates that are issued by commercial CAs must be reserved for signing only public beta releases and public final releases of software and internal line-of-business software.

For more information, see [Requirements for Device Driver Signing and Staging](#).

When you're adding test-signed driver packages to Windows, consider these points:

- You must install the test certificates on a running operating system. You can't install them offline.
- The certificate of the CA that issued the test certificate must be inserted in the Trusted Root Certification Authorities certificate store.

**Note**

If the test certificate is self-signed—for example, by using the Certificate Creation Tool (MakeCert)—the test certificate must be inserted in the Trusted Root Certification Authorities certificate store.

- The test certificate that's used to sign the driver package must be inserted in the Trusted Publishers certificate store.
- You must add test certificates online (to a booted instance of the Windows image) before you can use the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) command-line tool to add test-signed drivers offline.
- DISM validates WHQL certifications only for boot-critical drivers. But, a DISM command-line option can override this behavior. For more information, see [DISM Driver Servicing Command-Line Options](#).
- To install and verify test-signed drivers on 64-bit operating systems, set the Windows boot configuration to test mode by using the BCDedit tool on the destination computer. Test mode verifies that the driver image is signed, but certificate path validation doesn't require the issuer to be configured as a trusted root authority. For the PnP driver installation and ranking logic to treat the driver correctly, the test certificate must be stored in the trusted certificate store of the operating system image. For information about test mode during development, see [64-Bit Driver Guidelines](#).

### **Caution**

If an unsigned or invalid boot-critical device driver is installed on an x64-based computer, the computer will not boot. The unsigned or invalid boot-critical device driver will cause a Stop error. You should remove the driver from either the critical device database (CDDB) or its reflected location in the image. If you're performing an upgrade, make sure that unsigned drivers and their associated applications, services, or devices are removed or updated with a signed driver.

If you don't enable test mode by using BCDedit, and you have a test-signed driver installed, your computer will not boot. If you use DISM to remove the driver, all instances of the reflected driver package might not be removed. So, we recommend that you don't deploy images that have test-signed drivers installed.

## Additional Resources

These websites provide more information about device-driver requirements:

- For more information about PnP driver deployment, see [PnP Device Installation Signing Requirements](#).
- For more information about digital signatures and developing drivers, see the relevant page on the [Windows Hardware Developer Central](#) website.

## Related topics

[Add a Device Driver Path to an Answer File](#)

[Add a Driver Online in Audit Mode](#)

[DISM Driver Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

[Add and Remove Drivers to an Offline Windows Image](#)

[Add Device Drivers to Windows During Windows Setup](#)

[Maintain Driver Configurations when Capturing a Windows Image](#)

[BCDboot Command-Line Options](#)

[Deployment Troubleshooting and Log Files](#)

# Maintain Driver Configurations when Capturing a Windows Image

7/13/2017 • 9 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

A common deployment scenario is to capture a single Windows image from a reference computer and then apply the image to a group of destination computers that have identical hardware configurations.

To save time during installation and to speed up the out-of-box experience (OOBE) for end users, you can instruct Windows Setup to maintain the driver configurations from the reference computer as part of the Windows image. You should do this only when the hardware on the reference computer and the hardware on the destination computers are identical. When you do this, Windows Setup maintains driver configurations during image capture and deployment.

## Instructing Windows Setup to Maintain Driver Configurations

Before you capture an image, generalize the computer by using an answer file that instructs Windows Setup to maintain the driver configurations.

### To maintain driver configurations by using an answer file

1. On your technician computer, open Windows System Image Manager (Windows SIM). Click **Start**, type **Windows System Image Manager**, and then select **Windows System Image Manager**.
2. Create a new answer file, or update an existing answer file. For more information, see [Create or Open an Answer File](#) and [Best Practices for Authoring Answer Files](#).
3. Add the Microsoft-Windows-PnpSysprep/**PersistAllDeviceInstalls** setting. For more information, see the [Overview](#) section in this topic.
4. If the computer has undetectable hardware, include the Microsoft-Windows-PnpSysprep/**DoNotCleanUpNonPresentDevices** setting. For more information, see the [Undetectable hardware](#) section in this topic.
5. Generalize the computer by using the answer file. For example:

```
Sysprep /generalize /unattend:C:\unattend.xml
```

## Overview

The Windows in-box driver packages include device drivers that support a wide variety of popular hardware. If your specific hardware requires additional device drivers to boot, you can preinstall additional device drivers on your Windows image. Independent Hardware Vendors (IHVs) often supply these additional device drivers together with their device hardware. For more information about how to add device drivers, see [Add a Driver Online in Audit Mode](#).

To prepare a Windows image for deployment to multiple computers, you must use the System Preparation (Sysprep) tool to generalize the Windows image. Generalizing a Windows image removes the computer-specific information and prepares the device drivers for first boot. This preparation includes these steps:

- Device state for hardware is removed.
- Boot-critical driver settings are reset to their default values.
- Device log files are deleted.

When you generalize the computer, use an answer file that has the Microsoft-Windows-PnpSysPrep\\*\*PersistAllDeviceInstalls\*\* setting to save time. This setting prevents Windows Setup from removing and reconfiguring the device state for identical hardware. On first boot, the detected device drivers are already preconfigured, potentially enabling a quicker first-boot experience.

### Important

Avoid using the \*\*PersistAllDeviceInstalls\*\* setting when the hardware and the hardware configuration on the reference computer are not identical to those of the destination computers. Even seemingly minor differences in hardware or hardware configuration can cause severe or easily overlooked problems. For more information, see the [Troubleshooting Hardware Configuration Differences](#) section of this topic.

It's a good practice not to use the \*\*PersistAllDeviceInstalls\*\* setting on your primary reference image. Instead, for each group of computers that have a different hardware configuration, first load your primary reference image onto a new reference computer that has the planned hardware configuration. Next, capture a new image of this setup and use the \*\*PersistAllDeviceInstalls\*\* setting.

For more information about how to generalize the Windows image, see [Sysprep \(Generalize\) a Windows installation](#).

## Best Practices for Driver Revisions and Driver Ranking

Don't maintain multiple versions or revisions of the same driver package in the same image. Use offline or online servicing tools to update drivers.

Normally, when Windows Setup boots a computer and multiple versions of a driver package exist on that computer, Setup determines which driver to install by using driver ranking. But when you use the \*\*PersistAllDeviceInstalls\*\* setting, the normal driver-ranking processes don't occur. So, devices that use outdated drivers may remain installed. For more information about driver ranking, see [How Windows Ranks Drivers](#) on MSDN.

If you must add a device driver to an image that uses the \*\*PersistAllDeviceInstalls\*\* setting, you can update your device drivers by using one of the following methods:

- Use offline servicing tools, like the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) tool or an unattended answer file. For more information, see [Add and Remove Drivers to an Offline Windows Image](#).
- Use online servicing methods or tools, like an unattended answer file. For more information, see [Add a Driver Online in Audit Mode](#).

## Troubleshooting Hardware Configuration Differences

For the \*\*PersistAllDeviceInstalls\*\* setting to work correctly, the hardware configuration must be identical on the reference computer and on the destination computers. Hardware configuration includes the following components:

- **Hardware make and model.**
- **Firmware.** Updates, revisions, and configuration differences can cause some devices to report different criteria for matching device drivers or to use different resources. For example:
  - Peripheral Component Interconnect (PCI)-based devices can embed different subsystem revision numbers in their reported hardware IDs.
  - BIOS revisions can change the Advanced Configuration and Power Interface (ACPI) namespace. This causes Windows Setup to report existing devices differently or to introduce existing devices as new devices.
  - BIOS system configuration differences can cause system devices to claim different memory, I/O,

direct memory access (DMA), or interrupt request (IRQ) resources.

- **Physical location.** Hardware configurations must use the same slot, port, or socket numbers to connect to external devices. For example:
  - PCI expansion cards must be inserted in the same slot numbers.
  - USB devices must be connected or wired to the same port numbers on the same USB host controllers and integrated hubs.
  - Storage devices must be connected to the same storage controllers and channels.

### Low-risk, medium-risk, and high-risk differences in hardware configuration

When you use the **PersistAllDeviceInstalls** setting, any hardware differences can potentially cause problems. But some differences are more likely to cause problems than others.

#### Low-risk differences

For the following types of hardware differences, you may be able to work around potential driver conflicts and still use the **PersistAllDeviceInstalls** setting:

- CPU clock speed
- Amount of memory
- Hard disk capacity
- External input devices, like keyboards and mouse devices
- Monitors

#### Medium-risk differences

For the following types of hardware differences, we recommend that you don't use the **PersistAllDeviceInstalls** setting:

- Video cards
- Storage drives and media readers, like optical drives and card readers
- Internal or integrated bus devices, like USB or 1394 devices

When these types of hardware differences exist, using this setting may not reduce installation time, even if you work around potential driver conflicts.

#### High-risk differences

For major hardware differences, don't use the **PersistAllDeviceInstalls** setting. These differences include:

- Motherboard chipset or CPU brand
- Storage controllers
- Form-factor differences, like a change from a desktop to a laptop or from a laptop to a desktop
- Keyboard layout differences, like a change from a standard 101-key keyboard to a Japanese 106-key keyboard
- Any other devices that are in the enumeration path of the Windows boot volume

#### Types of problems that can occur with a hardware configuration change

Even seemingly minor differences in hardware or hardware configuration can cause severe or easily overlooked problems, like these:

- System instability
- Inability to use some of the basic or extended functionality of a device
- Extended boot times and extended installation times
- Misnamed devices in the Devices and Printers folder, Device Manager, and other device-related user interfaces
- Severe system problems that leave the computer in a non-bootable state

#### **Hardware configuration differences that can cause system boot failures**

When the boot-critical hardware is not identical on the reference computer and destination computers, using the **PersistAllDeviceInstalls** setting can cause severe system problems that can leave the computer in a non-bootable state.

Boot-critical driver packages can belong to any of the following Windows device setup classes, as identified by the ClassGUID directive in the <Version> section of the .inf files in their driver packages.

| SYSTEM-SUPPLIED DEVICE SETUP CLASS | CLASSGUID                              |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| System                             | {4D36E97D-E325-11CE-BFC1-08002BE10318} |
| Computer                           | {4D36E966-E325-11CE-BFC1-08002BE10318} |
| Processor                          | {50127DC3-0F36-415E-A6CC-4CB3BE910B65} |
| PCMCIA                             | {4D36E977-E325-11CE-BFC1-08002BE10318} |
| HDC                                | {4D36E96A-E325-11CE-BFC1-08002BE10318} |
| SCSIAdapter                        | {4D36E97B-E325-11CE-BFC1-08002BE10318} |
| DiskDrive                          | {4D36E967-E325-11CE-BFC1-08002BE10318} |
| CDROM                              | {4D36E965-E325-11CE-BFC1-08002BE10318} |
| FDC                                | {4D36E969-E325-11CE-BFC1-08002BE10318} |
| FloppyDisk                         | {4D36E980-E325-11CE-BFC1-08002BE10318} |
| Volume                             | {71A27CDD-812A-11D0-BEC7-08002BE2092F} |
| USB                                | {36FC9E60-C465-11CF-8056-444553540000} |
| SBP2                               | {D48179BE-EC20-11D1-B6B8-00C04FA372A7} |

| SYSTEM-SUPPLIED DEVICE SETUP CLASS | CLASSGUID                              |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| 1394                               | {6BDD1FC1-810F-11D0-BEC7-08002BE2092F} |
| Enum1394                           | {C459DF55-DB08-11D1-B009-00A0C9081FF6} |
| Keyboard                           | {4D36E96B-E325-11CE-BFC1-08002BE10318} |
| Mouse                              | {4D36E96F-E325-11CE-BFC1-08002BE10318} |
| HIDClass                           | {745A17A0-74D3-11D0-B6FE-00A0C90F57DA} |
| Ports                              | {4D36E978-E325-11CE-BFC1-08002BE10318} |

For more information about these device setup classes, see [System-Supplied Device Setup Classes](#) on MSDN.

### Undetectable hardware

When you deploy a new computer to an end user, some hardware, like a removable device or a device that has an on/off switch, may not be present or detected during first boot. By default, on first boot, Windows Setup removes the preconfigured device state for undetected hardware.

To deploy hardware that may not be present or detected on first boot, add any applicable device drivers to the reference image, connect or turn on the applicable devices so that Windows can install them, and use the Microsoft-Windows-PnpSysprep/**DoNotCleanUpNonPresentDevices** setting when you capture the image.

### Important

Using the **DoNotCleanUpNonPresentDevices** setting can lead to the unnecessary storage of excess device states and contribute to slower boot times.

## Troubleshooting Driver Conflicts

To avoid driver conflicts between independent boot-critical driver packages, the IHV must make sure that each device driver uses different service names, registry key values, and binary file names.

### Example of a potential driver conflict

In the following example, a fictitious IHV named Fabrikam produces two types of storage controllers: StandardController and ExtremeController. Fabrikam assumes that only one type of storage controller is installed at a time on a particular computer.

The driver package defines the StandardController and ExtremeController configurations to use the same driver service name, storctrl. The storctrl driver service uses different service settings that change depending on which hardware (StandardController or ExtremeController) is installed. Because both StandardController and ExtremeController use the same service, they cannot coexist.

This sample shows the contents of the driver package file Storctrl.inf:

```

[Version]
Signature = "$WINDOWS NT$"
Class = SCSIAdapter
ClassGuid = {4D36E97B-E325-11CE-BFC1-08002BE10318}
...
[Manufacturer]
%Fabrikam% = Fabrikam,NTx86

[Fabrikam.NTx86]
%StandardController% = StandardController_DDInstall,PCI\VEN_ABCD&DEV_0001
%ExtremeController% = ExtremeController_DDInstall, PCI\VEN_ABCD&DEV_0002
...

[StandardController_DDInstall.Services]
AddService = storctrl,0x00000002,StandardController_ServiceInstall

[StandardController_ServiceInstall]
ServiceType = 1 ; SERVICE_KERNEL_DRIVER
StartType = 0 ; SERVICE_BOOT_START
ErrorControl = 1 ; SERVICE_ERROR_NORMAL
ImagePath = %12%\storctrl.sys
AddReg = StandardController_ServiceSettings

[StandardController_ServiceSettings]
HKR,Settings,LowPowerMode,0x00010001,1
HKR,Settings>ErrorCorrection,0x00010001,1
...

[ExtremeController_DDInstall.Services]
AddService = storctrl,0x00000002,ExtremeController_ServiceInstall

[ExtremeController_ServiceInstall]
ServiceType = 1 ; SERVICE_KERNEL_DRIVER
StartType = 0 ; SERVICE_BOOT_START
ErrorControl = 1 ; SERVICE_ERROR_NORMAL
ImagePath = %12%\storctrl.sys
AddReg = ExtremeController_ServiceSettings

[ExtremeController_ServiceSettings]
HKR,Settings,LowPowerMode,0x00010001,0
HKR,Settings>ErrorCorrection,0x00010001,4
...

```

If StandardController is on the reference computer and its settings are maintained during image capture, the storctrl driver service is preconfigured. If ExtremeController is on the destination computer, Windows may use the preconfigured settings and files that are intended for StandardController. This can cause unexpected results.

The IHV can help resolve the conflict by using one of these options:

- Create separate driver packages that have separate .inf files for each configuration, and import only the required driver package into the Windows image during deployment. For example, split Storctrl.inf into two separate .inf files, one version for StandardController and one version for ExtremeController, and import only the required driver package into the Windows image.
- Create another service in the driver package for each configuration. Give each service a different name (for example, storctrl and storctrlx) and point to a different binary image file (for example, Storctrl.sys and Storctrlx.sys).

## Related topics

# Add a Driver Online in Audit Mode

7/13/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use an answer file to automate the installation of device drivers when the computer is booted in audit mode.

## Adding a Device Driver

The **auditSystem** configuration pass processes unattended Setup settings while Windows is running in system context, before a user logs on to the computer in audit mode. The **auditSystem** configuration pass runs only if the computer is booted in audit mode. To add device drivers during the **auditSystem** configuration pass, add the **Microsoft-Windows-PnpCustomizationsNonWinPE** component to your answer file in the **auditSystem** configuration pass, and specify the path for each device driver. After you run Setup, boot Windows in audit mode. You can run the **Sysprep** command with the **/audit** option to configure the computer to start in audit mode the next time that it boots. Or, in the answer file, you can configure the Microsoft-Windows-Deployment\Reseal\Mode setting to **audit**. For more information, see [Unattended Windows Setup Reference](#).

### To add a device driver during the **auditSystem** configuration pass

1. Locate the .inf files that you want to install during audit mode for the device driver.
2. On your technician computer, open Windows System Image Manager (Windows SIM). Click **Start**, type **Windows System Image Manager**, and then select **Windows System Image Manager**.
3. Open your answer file and expand the **Components** node to display available settings.
4. Add the **Microsoft-Windows-PnpCustomizationsNonWinPE** component to your answer file in the **auditSystem** configuration pass.
5. Expand the **Microsoft-Windows-PnpCustomizationsNonWinPE** node in the answer file. Right-click **DevicePaths**, and then click **Insert New PathAndCredentials**.

A new **PathAndCredentials** list item appears.

6. For each location that you access, add a separate **PathAndCredentials** list item.
7. In the **Microsoft-Windows-PnpCustomizationsNonWinPE** component, specify the path of the device driver and the credentials that are used to access the file if the file is on a network share.

#### Note

You can include multiple device-driver paths by adding multiple **PathAndCredentials** list items. If you add multiple list items, you must increment the value of **key** for each path. For example, if you add two separate driver paths, the first path uses the **key** value of **1**, and the second path uses the **key** value of **2**.

8. Save the answer file and close Windows SIM. The answer file must resemble this example:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" ?>
<unattend xmlns="urn:schemas-microsoft-com:unattend">
 <settings pass="auditSystem">
 <component name="Microsoft-Windows-PnpCustomizationsNonWinPE" processorArchitecture="x86"
publicKeyToken="31bf3856ad364e35" language="neutral" versionScope="nonSxS"
xmlns:wcm="http://schemas.microsoft.com/WMIConfig/2002/State"
xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
 <DriverPaths>
 <PathAndCredentials wcm:keyValue="1" wcm:action="add">
 <Credentials>
 <Domain>Fabrikam</Domain>
 <Password>MyPassword</Password>
 <Username>MyUserName</Username>
 </Credentials>
 <Path>\\networkshare\share\drivers</Path>
 </PathAndCredentials>
 </DriverPaths>
 </component>
 </settings>
</unattend>
```

9. Boot in Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE), run Windows Setup, and specify the name of the answer file. For example:

```
Setup /unattend:C:\unattend.xml
```

The specified answer file is cached to the system so that when you run audit mode, the computer applies settings in the answer file.

Setup finishes.

10. Run the **Sysprep** command with the **/audit** option to configure the computer to start in audit mode the next time that it boots. For example:

```
Sysprep /audit /reboot
```

When Windows reboots in audit mode, device drivers that you specified in the answer file are added.

You can use the PNUtil tool to add, remove, and enumerate drivers on a running operating system. For more information about how to use PNUtil to add or remove Plug and Play drivers, see [Install a Plug and Play Device](#).

## Related topics

[Device Drivers and Deployment Overview](#)

[Add Device Drivers to Windows During Windows Setup](#)

[DISM Driver Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

[Add and Remove Drivers to an Offline Windows Image](#)

[Audit Mode Overview](#)

[Boot Windows to Audit Mode or OOBE](#)

# Language Packs

6/6/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

To design PCs that work better for customers in different regions, you can set up Windows with the right set of local languages, settings, and keyboards or other input devices.

## What's new with Language Packs for Windows 10?

To help you reduce the size of your image, language packs have now been split into the following language components and [Features On Demand V2 \(Capabilities\)](#):

- UI Text (the language pack .cab file)
- Basic (spell check, typing)
- Fonts
- Handwriting
- Optical character recognition
- Text-to-speech
- Speech
- Retail Demo experience

You can now choose to add only core language pack UI resources to your image, significantly reducing image size.

To preload Cortana features, add the following features on demand: UI text, the Basic, Text-to-Speech, and Speech language components.

Not all components and features on demand are available for every language.

To learn more, see [Add Language Packs to Windows](#).

## Language packs for Windows

Language packs contain the text for the dialog boxes, menu items, and helpfiles that you see in Windows.

For some regions, language interface packs (LIPs) can provide additional translations for the most widely-used dialog boxes, menu items, and helpfile content. LIPs rely on a parent language pack to provide the remainder of the content.

### Get language packs and LIPs

- OEMs and System Builders with Microsoft Software License Terms can download language packs and LIPs from the [Microsoft OEM site](#) or the [OEM Partner Center](#).
- IT Professionals can download language packs from the [Microsoft Volume Licensing Site](#).
- After Windows is installed, end users can download and install additional language packs in **Settings > Time & language > Region and language > Add a language**.

Related information:

- [Available Language Packs for Windows](#). Lists all of the supported language packs and LIPs for multiple versions of Windows, and their identifier codes.

### Add languages to Windows

When you include more than one language or a LIP to Windows, your customers will be able to choose the

language that best meets their needs during Windows OOB.

There's a few different ways to install language packs:

- You can add a language pack to Windows by using the **Dism /Add-Package** tool. See [Add and Remove Language Packs on a Running Windows Installation](#) or [Add and Remove Language Packs Offline Using DISM](#).
- To deploy a multilingual version of Windows by using Windows Setup (for example, a corporate image Windows DVD or a set of images available on a corporate network), you can add language resources to the installation program. See [Add Multilingual Support to a Windows Distribution](#).

For corporate or network-based deployments, you may also need to update the Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE) that users see when they choose how and where to install Windows to their PC. For more information, see [WinPE: Mount and Customize](#).

- After Windows is installed, end users can download and install additional language packs and LIPs from the **Language** Control Panel. For more information, see the [Local Language Program](#).

## Language packs for recovery tools

When things go wrong, the Windows Recovery Environment (Windows RE) can help recover the system and data. When you update the available languages for Windows, update the available languages in the recovery tools: [Customize Windows RE](#).

## Prepare keyboards, time zones, and other regional settings

You can specify the default keyboard layout, language, or locale, either during deployment or after Windows is installed.

- [Configure International Settings in Windows](#)
- [Default Input Profiles \(Input Locales\) in Windows](#): Lists the default input profiles (language and keyboard pairs) used for each region.
- [Default Time Zones](#): Lists the default time zone used for each region.
- [Keyboard identifiers for Windows](#): Lists the keyboard hexadecimal values used when configuring input profiles.

## Languages for apps

Many apps include support for multiple languages, though some require separate installation of language packs to work properly. Consult with the app developer.

In general, install all of your languages onto Windows before installing apps. This helps make sure that the language resource files are available for each of the available apps.

For more information, see [Multilingual User Interface \(Windows\)](#).

## Related topics

[Add Language Packs to Windows](#)

[Features On Demand V2 \(Capabilities\)](#)

# Add Language Packs to Windows

7/13/2017 • 13 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

OEMs can add language packs to localize PCs and devices for customers in different regions.

For Windows 10 for desktop editions (Home, Pro, Enterprise, and Education), language packs have been split into language components and [Features On Demand V2 \(Capabilities\)](#). This reduction in image size can be helpful when creating images for lower-cost devices with small storage. It can also reduce the time required to create and deploy images.

## Language Pack Types

You can install multiple languages onto the same Windows 10 image. For each language, where available:

- Add the language pack and the **Basic** components.
- To preload Cortana features, also add the **Text-to-speech**, and **Speech recognition**.
- Add **Fonts** and **Optical character recognition** for the most popular languages within a region to improve your user's first experience (strongly recommended). If they're not already installed, Windows downloads and installs them in the background when the user chooses that language for the first time.
- Add **handwriting recognition** for devices with pen inputs.
- Add Windows Recovery Environment (WinRE) components so that end users can more easily recover their PCs.

Other customizations that can be preset:

- Currency, time zone, or calendar formats
- [Keyboard Identifiers and Input Method Editors for Windows](#)

Not all capabilities are available for every language.

Use care to limit the amount and types of language packs included with each image. While the Windows 10 language packs are smaller, having too many can still affect disk space, and can affect performance, especially while updating and servicing Windows.

Some capabilities have additional dependencies, as shown in the following table.

COMPONENT	SAMPLE FILE NAME	DEPENDENCIES	DESCRIPTION
Language pack	Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Pack_x64_es-es.cab	None	UI text, including basic Cortana capabilities.

Component	Sample file name	Dependencies	Description
Language interface pack	Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Interface-Pack_x64_ca-es-valencia.cab	Requires a specific fully-localized or partially-localized language pack. Example: ca-es-valencia requires es-es. To learn more, see <a href="#">Available Language Packs for Windows</a> .	UI text, including basic Cortana capabilities.  Not all of the language resources for the UI are included in a LIP. LIPs require at least one language pack (or parent language). A parent language pack provides support for a LIP. The parts of the UI that are not translated into the LIP language are displayed in the parent language. In countries or regions where two languages are commonly used, you can provide a better user experience by applying a LIP over a language pack.
Basic	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Basic-fr-fr-Package	None	Spell checking, text prediction, word breaking, and hyphenation if available for the language.  You must add this component before adding any of the following components.
Fonts	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Thai-Package	None	Fonts.  Required for some regions to render text that appears in documents. Example, th-TH requires the Thai font pack. To learn more, see <a href="#">Features On Demand V2 (Capabilities)</a> .
Optical character recognition	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-OCR-fr-fr-Package	Basic	Recognizes and outputs text in an image.
Handwriting recognition	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Handwriting-fr-fr-Package	Basic	Enables handwriting recognition for devices with pen input.
Text-to-speech	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-TextToSpeech-fr-fr-Package	Basic	Enables text to speech, used by Cortana and Narrator.
Speech recognition	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Speech-fr-fr-Package	Basic, Text-To-Speech recognition	Recognizes voice input, used by Cortana and Windows Speech Recognition.

COMPONENT	SAMPLE FILE NAME	DEPENDENCIES	DESCRIPTION
Retail Demo experience	Microsoft-Windows-RetailDemo-OfflineContent-Content-fr-fr-Package	Basic	<a href="#">Retail Demo experience.</a>
WinRE	Multiple, see <a href="#">Customize Windows RE</a> .	None	Used to help end users repair and recover their PCs. See <a href="#">Customize Windows RE</a> .

## Where do I download the language packs?

OEMs and system builders can get the packages and features from dedicated download centers for OEMs and System Builders.

Users can install more languages and features by going to **Settings > Time & language > Region & language > Add a language**. To learn more, see [How to add an input language to your PC](#).

To see what's available, see [Available Language Packs for Windows](#).

## Other considerations

- Some languages require more hard-disk storage space than others.
- Although you can add a bunch of language packs at once using the commands: **DISM /Add-Package**, **DISM /Apply-Unattend**, or **LPKSetup**, don't add too many at once, because the device may not have enough memory to handle it. General recommendations: from Windows in audit mode, don't add more than 20 language packs at a time. From Windows PE, don't add more than 7. If WinPE is still running out of memory, you can [customize WinPE by adding temporary storage \(scratch space\)](#).
- Cross-language upgrades are not supported. This means that during upgrades or migrations, if you upgrade or migrate an operating system that has multiple language packs installed, you can upgrade or migrate to the system default UI language only. For example, if English is the default language, you can upgrade or migrate only to English.
- The default language cannot be removed because it is used to generate computer security identifiers (SIDs). The default UI language is the language that is selected during the Out-Of-Box-Experience (OOBE), the UI language specified in the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) command-line tool, or in the unattended answer file if you skip OOBE.
- To add language packs using Windows PE, you may need to add pagefile support to Windows PE. For more information, see [Deployment Image Servicing and Management \(DISM\) Best Practices](#).
- If you install an update (hotfix, general distribution release [GDR], or service pack [SP]) that contains language-dependent resources prior to installing a language pack, the language-specific changes in the update won't be applied when you add the language pack. You need to reinstall the update to apply language-specific changes. To avoid reinstalling updates, install language packs before installing updates.
- The version of the language pack must match the version of Windows. For example, you can't add a Windows 10 language pack to Windows 8, or add Windows 8 language pack to Windows 10. The build number must also match.

## Installation methods

You can add a language pack to an image in the following ways:

- **Offline installation.** If you need to add a language pack or configure international settings on a custom Windows image, you can use DISM.
- **Using Windows Setup.**

- **On a running operating system.** If you need to boot the operating system to install an application or to test and validate the installation, you can add a language pack to the running operating system by using DISM or the language pack setup tool (Lpksetup.exe). You can use this method only for language packs that are stored outside of the Windows image. For more information, see [Add and Remove Language Packs on a Running Windows Installation](#) and [Add Language Interface Packs to Windows](#).

## Add or remove languages using Windows Setup

### To deploy a multilingual edition of Windows by using Windows Setup

1. Add or remove language packs in the **\Langpacks** folder in a distribution share.
2. Recreate the Lang.ini file. Windows Setup uses the Lang.ini file to identify the language packs that are inside the image and in the Windows distribution share. The Lang.ini file also identifies the language that is displayed during Windows Setup. You must also regenerate the Lang.ini file if you plan to create recovery media for images that contain multiple languages.

You can use DISM international servicing command-line options to recreate the Lang.ini file based on any language-pack updates. Do not manually modify the Lang.ini file. To learn more, see [DISM Languages and International Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

3. If you deploy a multilingual image, or need to apply a specific language pack to a Windows image for a specific device, you can add the language pack by using Windows Setup and an unattended answer file. The language pack must be added to the image before international settings can be configured. For more information about how to add a language pack to an answer file, see [Add a Package to an Answer File](#). To add a language pack and configure international settings, use the **WindowsPE** configuration pass to add the language pack and other configuration passes to configure international settings. For more information, see [Configure International Settings in Windows](#)

**Note** If language and locale settings are specified in an answer file, those settings overwrite any previous default. For example, if you first change the default **UILanguage** setting to FR-FR by using the DISM command-line tool on an offline image and then later apply an unattended answer file that specifies EN-US as the UI language, EN-US will be the default UI language.

4. Use Setup to install the language packs that are in the distribution share.

To learn more, see [Add Multilingual Support to a Windows Distribution](#) or [Add Multilingual Support to Windows Setup](#).

## Add or remove languages offline

Here's how to add and remove languages on an offline image (install.wim).

To save space, you can remove English language components when deploying to non-English regions. You'll need to uninstall them in the reverse order from how you add them.

### Mount the images

- Mount the Windows and Windows RE images. The Windows RE image file is part of the Windows image.

```
md C:\mount\windows
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:install.wim /Index:1 /MountDir:"C:\mount\windows"
md C:\mount\winre
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:"C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\Recovery\winre.wim" /index:1
/MountDir:"C:\mount\winre"
```

### Add a language

1. Add the language to Windows. You can use either the /Add-Package or /Add-Capabilities commands to add the capabilities.

For packages with dependencies, make sure you install the packages in order. For example, to enable Cortana, install: the language pack **.cab**, then **Basic**, then **TextToSpeech**, then **Speech**, in this order.

If you're not sure of the dependencies, it's OK to put them all in the same folder, and then add them all at once using the same DISM /Add-Package command.

After adding the language pack, verify that it's in the images.

```
rem Remove the paragraph marks to make this into one really big, long command.
Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\mount\windows"
 /PackagePath="C:\Languages\Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Pack_x64_fr-fr.cab"
 /PackagePath="C:\Languages\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Basic-fr-fr-Package.cab"
 /PackagePath="C:\Languages\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-OCR-fr-fr-Package.cab"
 /PackagePath="C:\Languages\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Handwriting-fr-fr-Package.cab"
 /PackagePath="C:\Languages\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-TextToSpeech-fr-fr-Package.cab"
 /PackagePath="C:\Languages\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Speech-fr-fr-Package.cab"
Dism /Get-Capabilities /Image:"C:\mount\windows"
```

2. Add any other capabilities, such as fonts, required for that region. To learn more, see [Features On Demand V2 \(Capabilities\)](#).

```
rem Thai example (add th-TH first).
Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\mount\windows"
 /PackagePath="C:\Languages\fr-fr_x64\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Thai-Package"
Dism /Get-Capabilities /Image:"C:\mount\windows"
```

3. When you add languages to Windows, when possible, add them to WinRE to ensure a consistent language experience in recovery scenarios. This requires a matching version of Windows and the Windows ADK. Windows RE now requires the WinPE-HTA package, this is new for Windows 10.

After adding the packages, verify that they're in the image.

```

Dism /Image:C:\mount\winre /Add-Package /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\lp.cab"
Dism /Image:C:\mount\winre /Add-Package /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-Rejuv_fr-fr.cab"
Dism /Image:C:\mount\winre /Add-Package /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-EnhancedStorage_fr-fr.cab"
Dism /Image:C:\mount\winre /Add-Package /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-Scripting_fr-fr.cab"
Dism /Image:C:\mount\winre /Add-Package /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-SecureStartup_fr-fr.cab"
Dism /Image:C:\mount\winre /Add-Package /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-SRT_fr-fr.cab"
Dism /Image:C:\mount\winre /Add-Package /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-WDS-Tools_fr-fr.cab"
Dism /Image:C:\mount\winre /Add-Package /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-WMI_fr-fr.cab"
Dism /Image:C:\mount\winre /Add-Package /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-StorageWMI_fr-fr.cab"
Dism /Image:C:\mount\winre /Add-Package /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-HTA_fr-fr.cab"
Dism /Get-Packages /Image:"C:\mount\winre"

```

Example output from /Get-Packages: Package Identity : Microsoft-Windows-WinPE-Rejuv\_fr-fr ... fr-FR~10.0.9926.0 State : Installed

### Add a language interface pack (LIP)

1. Add the LIP and desired/available capabilities to the Windows image. Some regions don't have any related capabilities, while others have partial or complete sets.

After adding the packages, verify that they're in the image.

```

Dism /Image:C:\mount\windows /Add-Package /PackagePath:C:\Languages\Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Pack_x64_bn-in.cab
/PackagePath="C:\Languages\bn-in_x64\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Basic-bn-in-Package.cab"

```

2. Add any other capabilities, such as fonts, required for that region.

```

Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\mount\windows"
/PackagePath="C:\Languages\Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Beng-Package"

```

3. Verify that they're in the image.

```

Dism /Get-Packages /Image:"C:\mount\windows"

```

### Remove a language

1. To save space, you can remove languages from an image.

You'll need to uninstall them in the reverse order from how you add them.

You can't remove a capability that other packages depend on. For example, if you have the French handwriting and basic capabilities installed, you can't remove the basic capability. This will fail.

You can use either the DISM /Remove-Package or DISM /Remove-Capability command to remove a capability, and either /DISM /Get-Packages or DISM /Get-Capabilities to verify that they're no longer in the image.

```
DISM /Remove-Capability /Image:"C:\mount\windows"
/CapabilityName:Language.Speech~~~en-US~0.0.1.0
DISM /Remove-Capability /Image:"C:\mount\windows"
/CapabilityName:Language.TextToSpeech~~~en-US~0.0.1.0
DISM /Remove-Capability /Image:"C:\mount\windows"
/CapabilityName:Language.Handwriting~~~en-US~0.0.1.0
DISM /Remove-Capability /Image:"C:\mount\windows"
/CapabilityName:Language.OCR~~~en-US~0.0.1.0
DISM /Remove-Capability /Image:"C:\mount\windows"
/CapabilityName:Language.Basic~~~en-US~0.0.1.0
Dism /Remove-Package /Image:"C:\mount\windows" /PackageName:Microsoft-Windows-Client-LanguagePack-
Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.10120.0
DISM /Get-Packages /Image:"C:\mount\windows"
DISM /Get-Capabilities /Image:"C:\mount\windows"
```

It's also OK to just remove the language pack without removing the language capabilities. One week after the user completes OOBE, if the user hasn't added the language to their input language list, Windows automatically cleans out the unused language capabilities.

2. Remove the Windows RE optional components. After removing, verify that they're no longer in the image. Replace build number 10.0.10120.0 with the build you are using.

```
Dism /Remove-Package /Image:"C:\mount\winre" /PackageName:WinPE-Rejuv-
Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.10120.0
Dism /Remove-Package /Image:"C:\mount\winre" /PackageName:WinPE-HTA-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-
US~10.0.10120.0
Dism /Remove-Package /Image:"C:\mount\winre" /PackageName:WinPE-StorageWMI-
Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.10120.0
Dism /Remove-Package /Image:"C:\mount\winre" /PackageName:WinPE-WMI-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-
US~10.0.10120.0
Dism /Remove-Package /Image:"C:\mount\winre" /PackageName:WinPE-WDS-Tools-
Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.10120.0
Dism /Remove-Package /Image:"C:\mount\winre" /PackageName:WinPE-SRT-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-
US~10.0.10120.0
Dism /Remove-Package /Image:"C:\mount\winre" /PackageName:WinPE-SecureStartup-
Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.10120.0
Dism /Remove-Package /Image:"C:\mount\winre" /PackageName:WinPE-Scripting-
Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.10120.0
Dism /Remove-Package /Image:"C:\mount\winre" /PackageName:WinPE-EnhancedStorage-
Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.10120.0
Dism /Remove-Package /Image:"C:\mount\winre" /PackageName:Microsoft-Windows-WinPE-LanguagePack-
Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~10.0.10120.0
Dism /Get-Packages /Image:"C:\mount\winre"
```

3. **Known issue:** If you've removed the English language pack, in Windows 10 Build 10240, you'll need to boot the image into audit mode, and use the command: `sfc.exe /scannow /verify` to repair issues with Windows 32-bit apps. For an example of how to do this with a script, see [Lab 2a: Answer files: Update settings and run scripts](#).

### Reinstall apps (required whenever adding languages)

Note: In Windows 10, version 1607, it is no longer necessary to remove inbox apps. If you do try to do this, the DISM command may fail.

1. Re-install the apps. The following example shows you how to reinstall the Get Started inbox app. Repeat these steps for each of the inbox apps (with the exception of AppConnector) by substituting the appropriate package.

```
Dism /Image:"c:\mount\windows" /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /packagepath:<path to appxbundle>\2b362ab83144485d9e9629ad2889a680.appxbundle /licensepath:<path to license file>\2b362ab83144485d9e9629ad2889a680_License1.xml
```

2. Windows desktop applications: You'll often need to reinstall these too, as they often include language-specific files that are chosen at installation. You won't be able to update these using offline servicing; instead you'll need to recapture the image or create a separate provisioning package for the Windows desktop application.

#### **For installations managed by Windows Setup or distribution shares, update the language list**

1. This is only required if you're distributing multilingual Windows Setup media, or distributing Windows through a share.

Recreate the lang.ini file.

```
Dism /Image:C:\mount\windows /gen-langini /distribution:C:\my_distribution
```

The lang.ini file in C:\myDistribution\sources should look similar to the following:

```
[Available UI Languages]
```

```
ca-ES = 2
```

```
es-ES = 3
```

```
[Fallback Languages]
```

```
es-ES = en-us
```

2. Review the default international settings in the Windows image by using DISM.

```
Dism /Image:C:\mount\windows /get-intl
```

For example, you should see output similar to the following:

```
Reporting offline international settings.
```

```
Default system UI language : es-ES
```

```
System locale : ca-ES
```

```
Default time zone : Romance Standard Time
```

```
User locale for default user : ca-ES
```

```
Location : Spain (GEOID = 217)
```

```
Active keyboard(s) : 0403:0000040a
```

```
Keyboard layered driver : PC/AT Enhanced Keyboard (101/102-Key)
```

```
Installed language(s): ca-ES
```

```
 Type : Partially localized language, LIP type.
```

```
Installed language(s): es-ES
```

```
 Type : Fully localized language.
```

```
Reporting distribution languages.
```

```
The default language in the distribution is:
```

```
es-ES
```

## Change the default language

- Set the default Windows language to match the preferred language for your customers.

```
Dism /Set-AllIntl:fr-fr /Image:C:\mount\windows
```

## Unmount the images

- Unmount the Windows RE and Windows images.

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:"C:\mount\winre" /Commit
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:"C:\mount\windows" /Commit
```

## The Language-Pack Removal Task

In Windows 10, the language pack removal task runs on all Windows editions. However, any languages that are selected by users in the language preferences section of the control panel are not removed. Users can choose to run multiple languages and any language packs that are not used by the user are removed from the computer. Also, any language pack that is installed by a user is not removed.

Running the Sysprep tool resets the language-pack removal clock. The clock will not start again until the next time OOBE runs and the computer is restarted. If you customize your Windows image, consider booting to audit mode to make your customizations. The language pack removal task will not be started when you boot to audit mode. For more information about audit mode, see [Boot Windows to Audit Mode or OOBE](#). You can also update your Windows image offline without booting the image. For more information, see [Service a Windows Image Using DISM](#)

Using the `SkipMachineOobe` setting in the Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup component does not skip the language-pack removal task.

### Note

The language-pack removal task does not remove LIPs.

## Related topics

[Language Packs](#)

[Available Language Packs for Windows](#)

[Features On Demand V2 \(Capabilities\)](#)

[Windows Language Pack Default Values](#)

[Default Input Locales for Windows Language Packs](#)

# Multilingual Windows Image Creation

7/13/2017 • 15 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

This walkthrough describes how to use the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (Windows ADK) to create and deploy multilingual versions of Windows 10. It describes how to create a multilingual Windows image to help reduce the number of Windows images that need to be maintained for different regions. You can deploy images that are created by using this process from a network share, from a server, or from media.

This walkthrough describes how to add language packs and other update packages to an offline Windows image and Windows recovery image. You then boot Windows to audit mode and add applications and drivers. You then capture the installation to an image and use the newly captured master image for testing purposes. After you test the image, you use it to create regional images by removing unnecessary language resources. You can then deploy these regional images.

The process described in this walkthrough is primarily intended for OEMs who want to reduce the number of Windows images that they maintain. By adding language packs to an offline image, you can decrease Windows installation time and reduce the number of images that you maintain. However, because multiple language packs are added to a single image, the size of the Windows image is increased.

IT Professionals who want to reduce the size of their overall image should instead use the process described in [Add Multilingual Support to a Windows Distribution](#). This process describes how to copy the lp.cab file to the Windows distribution, reducing the overall image size.

## Requirements

To complete this walkthrough, you should have a working knowledge of common desktop deployment technologies and processes. You should also have a basic understanding of the Windows Imaging (.wim) file format. The steps in this guide assume that you use a single Windows image within the .wim file. If you want to reduce the number of images you maintain, you can use the lowest edition of Windows available in your .wim file, and then use DISM to upgrade to a higher edition of Windows. If you want to maintain multiple images, you can repeat the steps in this guide for each Windows image in the .wim file, to create multiple editions of the regional Windows image.

Before you begin, make sure you have the following items:

- Windows installation media (DVD or Windows installation files) for multiple languages. This guide uses EN-US, De-DE and FR-FR media.
- One or more language packs.
- A technician computer that has the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (Windows ADK) installed.
- A test computer that you can use to install and test Windows.
- A USB drive that will be formatted during this walkthrough.

## Step 1: Add language packs to a Windows image

In this step, you will use Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) to add language packs to a Windows image. After you add language packs, you can add update packages. The Windows image that you start with can be in any language. For example, you can start with an English (en-US) image, and add support for French (fr-FR) and German (de-DE).

When you add language packs to the Windows image, the user is presented with a dialog box to choose their preferred language during Out-Of-Box Experience (OOBE).

By using this method, the sizes of the Windows images are larger; however, installation time is faster, and you can ensure that any updates you add to the Windows image apply to the languages installed to that image. Use this method if you want to install Windows as quickly as possible.

### **Important**

The Windows image must be a recently installed and captured image. This ensures that the Windows image does not have any pending online actions.

Always install language packs before you install updates. If you install an update (hotfix, general distribution release [GDR], limited distribution release [LDR], or service pack [SP]) that contains language-dependent resources before you install a language pack, the language-specific changes contained in the update are not applied. Packages that have language pack dependencies can be identified by using the `Dism /Get-PackageInfo` command. In the "Custom Properties" section of the report, look for the Dependency = "Language Pack" key/value pair. If language packs are installed after an LDR or GDR package that has this attribute, the update must be reinstalled.

### **To add language packs to a Windows image**

1. Open an elevated Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment command prompt.

2. Type the following commands to create the following folders:

```
Mkdir C:\mount\windows
Mkdir C:\mount\winre
Mkdir C:\mount\boot
Mkdir C:\LanguagePack
Mkdir C:\my_Distribution
```

3. Copy the entire contents of the en-US Windows DVD to C:\my\_Distribution. For example:

```
xcopy e:\windows C:\my_distribution /s /e
```

4. Copy each language pack to the technician computer. For example:

```
xcopy H:\LPs\Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Pack_x64_fr-fr.cab C:\LanguagePack
xcopy H:\LPs\Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Pack_x64_de-de.cab C:\LanguagePack
```

5. Type the following command to retrieve the name or index number for the image that you want to modify:

```
Dism /Get-ImageInfo /ImageFile:C:\my_distribution\sources\install.wim
```

Note the index or name value of the image that you want to modify.

6. Use DISM to mount the Windows image. For example:

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\my_distribution\sources\install.wim /Index:1 /MountDir:C:\mount\windows
```

7. Use DISM to mount the Windows recovery environment image that exists in the Windows image. For example:

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\recovery\winre.wim /Index:1
/MountDir:C:\mount\winre
```

8. Add language packs to the mounted offline Windows image. You can add multiple packages on one command line.

```
Dism /Add-Package /image:C:/mount/windows /PackagePath:C:\LanguagePack\Microsoft-Windows-Client-
Language-Pack_x64_de-de.cab /PackagePath:C:\LanguagePack\Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Pack_x64_fr-
fr.cab
```

9. Add language packs to the mounted offline Windows recovery image. The language packs that are used for the Windows recovery image are the same lp.cab files used with Windows PE. Use the language packs for Windows PE that are installed with the Windows ADK. For example:

```
Dism /image:C:/mount/winre /Add-Package /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment
and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\de-de\lp.cab"
```

```
Dism /image:C:/mount/winre /Add-Package /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment
and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\lp.cab"
```

This process can take several minutes.

10. (Optional) Add additional optional components and language packs to the Windows recovery image. If you want to install additional optional components to the recovery image, you must install the language-neutral cab file first, and then add the language specific cab files. For example, run the following command to add the WinPE-WinReCfg.cab optional component:

```
Dism /image:C:/mount/winre /Add-Package /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment
and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\WinPE-WinReCfg.cab"
```

```
Dism /image:C:/mount/winre /Add-Package /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment
and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\de-de\WinPE-WinReCfg_de-de.cab"
```

```
Dism /image:C:/mount/winre /Add-Package /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment
and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-WinReCfg_fr-fr.cab"
```

We recommend adding language packs for the following optional components that are included with Windows recovery image:

- WinPE-WinReCfg
- WinPE-Rejuv
- WinPE-EnhancedStorage
- WinPE-Scripting
- WinPE-SecureStartup
- WinPE-SRT
- WinPE-WDS-Tools
- WinPE-WMI
- WinPE-HTA

11. Configure the default language settings to use in the Windows image.

```
Dism /image:C:\mount\windows /set-allIntl:fr-fr
```

12. Configure the default language settings to use in the Windows recovery image.

```
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /set-allIntl:fr-fr
```

13. Recreate the lang.ini file.

```
Dism /image:C:\mount\windows /gen-langini /distribution:C:\my_distribution
```

14. Verify that the languages are installed and the correct language is configured as the default.

```
Dism /image:C:\mount\windows /get-intl /distribution:C:\my_distribution
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /get-intl
```

The output for the Windows image should be similar to the following:

```
Reporting offline international settings.

Default system UI language : fr-FR
System locale : fr-FR
Default time zone : Pacific Standard Time
User locale for default user : fr-FR
Location : France (GEOID = 84)
Active keyboard(s) : 040c:0000040c
Keyboard layered driver : PC/AT Enhanced Keyboard (101/102-Key)

Installed language(s): de-DE
 Type : Fully localized language.
Installed language(s): en-US
 Type : Fully localized language.
Installed language(s): fr-FR
 Type : Fully localized language.

Reporting distribution languages.

The default language in the distribution is:
en-US

The other available languages in the distribution are:
No languages found

The operation completed successfully.
```

The output for the Windows recovery image should be similar to the following:

```
Reporting offline international settings.

Default system UI language : fr-FR
System locale : fr-FR
Default time zone : Pacific Standard Time
User locale for default user : fr-FR
Location : France (GEOID = 84)
Active keyboard(s) : 040c:0000040c
Keyboard layered driver : PC/AT Enhanced Keyboard (101/102-Key)

Installed language(s): de-DE
Type : Fully localized language.
Installed language(s): en-US
Type : Fully localized language.
Installed language(s): fr-FR
Type : Fully localized language.

The operation completed successfully.
```

15. Unmount the images, committing the changes. Note that you must unmount the Windows recovery image before you unmounts and commit the Windows image.

```
DISM /unmount-image /mountdir:C:\mount\winre /commit
DISM /unmount-image /mountdir:C:\mount\windows /commit
```

## Step 2 (optional): Add language packs to Windows Setup

In this step, you add multiple language support to Windows Setup. This allows an end user to run Windows Setup and select a specific language that you install. You add language packs to the default boot.wim file, and then copy language resources into your Windows distribution.

### Note

This step is optional. If you complete this step, you can run Windows Setup in a language other than the language that you choose for the operating system. However, this does not cover adding font support for all languages.

#### To add language packs to the default boot image

1. Open a Deployment Tools command prompt with elevated permissions.
2. Use DISM to mount index 2 of the Boot.wim file. For example,

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\my_distribution\sources\boot.wim /Index:2 /MountDir:C:\mount\boot
```

3. Add Windows PE language packs and Windows Setup optional components to the mounted image for each language you want to support. For example:

```
DISM /add-package /image:C:\mount\boot /packagepath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\lp.cab"
DISM /add-package /image:C:\mount\boot /packagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\de-de\lp.cab"
```

4. Add the Windows PE Setup optional components. For example:

```
DISM /add-package /image:C:\mount\boot /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\WinPE-Setup.cab"
```

```
DISM /add-package /image:C:\mount\boot /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\WinPE-Setup-client.cab"
```

## Note

These Windows Setup language packs are for the client editions of Windows only. For Windows Server, you must use winpe-setup-server .cab files.

5. Add the Windows PE language specific optional components. For example:

```
DISM /add-package /image:C:\mount\boot /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-Setup_fr-fr.cab"
```

```
DISM /add-package /image:C:\mount\boot /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-Setup-client_fr-fr.cab"
```

```
DISM /add-package /image:C:\mount\boot /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\de-de\WinPE-Setup_de-de.cab"
```

```
DISM /add-package /image:C:\mount\boot /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\de-de\WinPE-Setup-client_de-de.cab"
```

6. In your Windows distribution, copy the language-specific Setup resources from each language specific Windows distribution to the Sources folder in your distribution share. For example, insert the Windows DVD for Fr-FR in your DVD drive (E:) and copy the Fr-FR sources folder to your Windows distribution.

```
Mkdir C:\my_distribution\sources\fr-fr
Mkdir C:\my_distribution\sources\de-de
```

```
xcopy E:\sources\fr-fr C:\my_distribution\sources\fr-fr /chervyi
xcopy E:\sources\de-de C:\my_distribution\sources\de-de /chervyi
```

7. Use DISM to mount the Windows image. For example:

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\my_distribution\sources\install.wim /Index:1 /MountDir:C:\mount\windows
```

8. Get the language settings that are configured in the Windows image by using the /Get-Intl parameter. For example

```
Dism /image:C:\mount\windows /Get-Intl
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /Get-Intl
```

9. Change the default language, locale, and other international settings by using the /set-allIntl parameter.

```
Dism /image:C:\mount\boot /set-allIntl:fr-fr
```

10. Recreate the lang.ini file. The Lang.ini file must be re-created each time you add or remove language resources from your distribution, and when you add or remove language packs from your Windows image.

```
Dism /image:C:\mount\windows /Gen-Langini /distribution:C:\my_distribution
```

11. Copy the lang.ini file from the Windows distribution to the boot.wim file. The Lang.ini file used in the Boot.wim file must match the Lang.ini file for the operating-system image.

```
Xcopy C:\my_distribution\sources\lang.ini C:\mount\winre\sources\lang.ini
```

12. Use DISM to unmount the Windows boot image and commit the changes. You must also unmount the Windows image. Because none of the files have changed in the Windows image, you can discard the changes. For example,

```
Dism /Unmount-image /MountDir:C:\mount\boot /Commit
Dism /Unmount-image /MountDir:C:\mount\Windows /Discard
```

## Step 3: Test the Windows Installation

In this step, you install Windows, selecting a language during Windows Setup, and verifying that multiple languages are installed.

To boot a computer without an operating system, you must create bootable Windows PE media. This walkthrough provides instructions on creating Windows PE on a bootable USB drive. For additional options, see [WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#).

### To install Windows

**Note:** Beginning with Windows 10, Version 1703, you can create a USB drive that has multiple partitions. To format a USB key so it has one FAT32 and one NTFS partition, see [WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#).

1. Create a Windows PE image on your technician computer. For example:

```
Copype amd64 C:\winpe_amd64
```

The following directories are created:

- C:\winpe\_amd64\media
- C:\winpe\_amd64\mount

If you need to add boot-critical drivers or other optional components to Windows PE, see [WinPE: Add packages \(Optional Components Reference\)](#).

2. Insert a USB drive into the technician computer and run the following command:

```
Makewinpemedia /ufd C:\winpe_amd64 F:
```

Where *F* is the drive letter of the USB drive. If you have multiple partitions on the USB drive, choose the drive letter of the FAT32 partition.

Makewinpemedia will format the selected partition and copy WinPE to it.

3. Copy the contents of the Windows distribution to a USB drive or partition that has sufficient free space. If your install.wim file is larger than 4GB, you'll need to use an NTFS-formatted partition.

For example,

```
Xcopy C:\my_distribution G:\my_distribution /chcky1
```

Where G is the letter of a second USB drive or the NTFS partition on your dual-partitioned USB drive.

4. Insert the Windows PE USB drive into your test computer. Boot the test computer, ensuring that the Windows PE USB drive is configured to boot first. You might need to change the boot options of the computer in the firmware.
5. After the Windows PE command line prompt appears, insert the USB drive that contains your Windows distribution on the test computer.
6. Identify the drives, volumes, and drive letters on the test computer. From the Windows PE command prompt, type:

```
Diskpart
List volume
```

Identify the drive letter of the USB drive that contains your Windows distribution. This example uses "F:\\". Exit diskpart.

```
exit
```

7. Install Windows by running Windows Setup.

```
F:\my_distribution\setup.exe
```

Windows Setup starts and you are prompted to select your language (French, German, or English). Select one of the languages and proceed with the installation. Verify that the correct language appears during installation.

## Step 4: Boot to audit mode, add applications and run sysprep

In this step, you install your Windows image on a test computer and boot it to audit mode. While the computer is running in audit mode, you add applications that must be installed online, and test the operating system. After applications are added and the computer is tested, you run the sysprep tool to prepare the image to be deployed to a computer that will ship to an end user.

### To boot to audit mode

1. Do one of the following to boot a test computer to audit mode:
  - For an attended installation, at the OOBE screen, press **Ctrl+Shift+F3**.
  - In an unattended installation, use an answer file with the Microsoft-Windows-Deployment\Reseal\Mode configured to **Audit**. This setting should appear in the **oobeSystem** configuration pass.
  - Run the **sysprep /audit** command in a Command Prompt window.
- For more information, see [Understanding Audit Mode](#).
2. Install Microsoft Office or other applications, and test the computer. For more information, see [Customize Windows in Audit Mode](#).
3. Prepare the computer for deployment by doing one of the following:
  - From audit mode, run the **Sysprep** command with the **/oobe /shutdown /generalize** options.
  - In unattended installations, configure the Microsoft-Windows-Deployment\Reseal\Mode setting to

**oobe**. For more information on this setting, see the Windows Unattended Setup Reference (Unattend.chm).

For more information, see [Sysprep Technical Reference](#).

After Sysprep is finished, the test computer shuts down.

## Step 5: Capture the Windows installation

In this step, you capture your Windows image from the test computer and store it for use as your master image.

### To capture the image

1. Start your test computer by booting to Windows PE.
2. Identify the drives, volumes, and drive letters on the test computer. From the Windows PE command prompt, type:

```
Diskpart
List volume
```

Identify the drive letter of the USB drive that contains your Windows distribution. Exit diskpart.

```
exit
```

3. At the Windows PE command prompt, capture the Windows image. This example uses E:\ as the location of the Windows installation. For example:

```
dism /Capture-Image /CaptureDir:E:\ /ImageFile:E:\MyInstall.wim /Name:"Fabrikam"
```

4. Copy the image to a USB drive or to a network share. For example:

```
xcopy E:\MyInstall.wim G:\MyInstall.wim
```

Where G is the letter of the USB drive.

## Step 6: Create regional images by removing language packs

In this step, you create a regional Windows image by removing language packs from your image while it is offline. This image contains only the languages that are necessary for deployment in a certain region.

### Important

You should not remove a language pack from an offline Windows image if there are pending online actions. The Windows image should be a recently installed and captured image. This will ensure that the Windows image does not have any pending online actions that require a reboot.

### To remove a language pack

1. Locate the Windows image that you intend to remove languages from, and copy it to your technician computer. For example:

```
xcopy F:\sources\MyInstall.wim C:\my_images\MyInstall.wim
```

2. Open the Deployment Tools command prompt with elevated permissions.

- Type the following command to mount the Windows image.

```
Dism /mount-image /ImageFile:C:\my_images\MyInstall.wim /Name:"Fabrikam" /MountDir:C:\mount\windows
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\mount\windows\Windows\System32\recovery\winre.wim /Index:1
/MountDir:C:\mount\winre
```

- Optional: Type the following command to list the packages that are installed in the offline image.

```
Dism /Image:C:\mount\windows /Get-Packages
Dism /Image:C:\mount\winre /Get-Packages
```

You can use > packagelist.txt to output the list to a text file named PackageList. Note the package identity of the language pack you want to remove.

- Remove a language pack from the image. You can remove multiple .cab files using one command-line statement.

#### Note

You can specify the package identity using the **/PackageName** option, or you can point to the original source of the package using the **/PackagePath** option. For example:

```
Dism /Image:C:\mount\windows /Remove-Package /PackagePath:C:\LanguagePack\Microsoft-Windows-Client-
Language-Pack_x64_fr-fr.cab
Dism /Image:C:\mount\winre /Remove-Package /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows
Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_0Cs\fr-fr\lp.cab"
```

For more information, see [DISM Operating System Package Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

- If you added additional optional components to the Recovery image, remove the language-specific optional components and change the default language settings. For example:

```
Dism /image:C:/mount/winre /Remove-Package /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows
Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_0Cs\fr-fr\WinPE-
WinReCfg_fr-fr.cab"
```

- Optional. If you added additional language support to the boot.wim file, remove the language specific resources and optional components from the boot.wim file. For example:

```
Dism /mount-image /ImageFile:C:\my_distribution\boot.wim /index:2 /MountDir:C:\mount\boot

Dism /remove-package /image:C:\mount\boot /packagepath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows
Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_0Cs\fr-fr\lp.cab"

Dism /remove-package /image:C:\mount\boot /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows
Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_0Cs\fr-fr\WinPE-
Setup_fr-fr.cab"

Dism /remove-package /image:C:\mount\boot /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows
Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_0Cs\fr-fr\WinPE-
Setup-client_fr-fr.cab"

Dism /image:C:\mount\boot /set-allIntl:de-de

rmdir C:\my_distribution\sources\fr-fr /s
```

- Recreate the lang.ini file and change the default language settings by running the following command:

```
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /Set-AllIntl:de-de
Dism /image:C:\mount\windows /Gen-LangINI /distribution:C:\my_distribution /Set-AllIntl:de-DE
```

9. Optional. If you removed languages from the boot.wim file, copy the updated lang.ini file to the boot image.  
After you have updated the lang.ini file in the boot.wim, unmounts the boot.wim file.

```
Dism /unmount-image /MountDir:C:\mount\boot /Commit
```

10. Type the following command to commit the changes and unmount the images.

```
Dism /unmount-image /MountDir:C:\mount\winre /Commit
Dism /unmount-image /MountDir:C:\mount\windows /Commit
```

# Add and remove language packs on a running windows installation

7/13/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can add support for additional languages on a running operating system, or to an offline image. For information about how to install languages to an offline image, see [Add and Remove Language Packs Offline Using DISM](#).

For information about installing Language Interface Packs (LIPs), see [Add Language Interface Packs to Windows](#).

In Windows 10, users can install more languages and features by going to **Settings > Time & language > Region & language > Add a language**.

## Use DISM to add a language pack online

When you add language packs using DISM, the licensing requirements of how many language packs are allowed to run on the Windows edition are not verified. If you add multiple language packs, all non-default, non-user selected languages will be removed from the computer after a period of time. For more information, see [Add Language Packs to Windows](#).

### Note

You can also add language packs to Windows Preinstallation and Windows Recovery installations. For more information, see [WinPE: Mount and Customize](#) and [Customize Windows RE](#).

### To add a language pack by using DISM

1. On the running operating system, open an elevated command prompt.
2. Type the following command to add a language pack (Greek, in this example) to the operating system.

```
Dism /online /Add-Package /PackagePath:D:\x64\LangPacks\Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Pack_x64_el-gr.cab
```

For more information about DISM international servicing commands, see [DISM Languages and International Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

## Remove a language pack online

Windows automatically removes non-user selected languages after a period of time. If you remove an installed language through the Settings app, the language will be removed from the listed languages, but the language pack will not be immediately deleted. If you want to immediately remove a language pack, use lpksetup.exe.

**Note:** Lpksetup will uninstall a language pack, but the language will still appear in the Settings app.

### Remove a language with the Settings app

In the Settings app, you can remove a language by going to **Settings > Time & language > Region & language**. Click on the language you'd like to remove, and then click on **remove**. Windows will automatically delete language pack files the next time it runs its automated cleanup tasks.

### Remove a language pack with lpksetup.exe

1. On the running operating system, open an elevated command prompt.

2. Run `lpksetup.exe` with the `/u` option to uninstall the language pack. Here is how you would remove a Greek (el-gr) language pack.

```
lpksetup.exe /u el-gr
```

See [Lpksetup command line options](#) to see all available command line options for Lpksetup.

## Related topics

[Service a Windows Image Using DISM](#)

[Understanding Servicing Strategies](#)

[Add Language Packs to Windows](#)

# Configure International Settings in Windows

7/13/2017 • 8 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can specify the default language, locale, and keyboard values during deployment or after Windows is installed.

You can configure international settings by using the International module for Windows PowerShell, by using an answer file with Windows Setup, or by using Deployment Imaging Servicing and Management (DISM).

For information about using DISM to configure international settings in an offline Windows image, see [DISM Languages and International Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

## Important

In Windows 10, the intl.cpl command line tools do not support the new settings available in the Region and Language section of Control Panel. For Windows 10, we recommend using the International Windows PowerShell cmdlet settings to automate customizing international settings.

In addition, Deployment Imaging Servicing and Management (DISM) should also only be used against an offline Windows image. In Windows 10, language settings are dynamically configured based on the user's language list. Individual settings, such as the display language, default input method, and user locale may be reset dynamically based on user preferences on a running Windows installation. Use the International PowerShell cmdlet settings to change the international settings of a running Windows installation.

## Configure international settings by using Windows PowerShell

In Windows 10, you can use the International Settings Windows PowerShell cmdlets to change the language on a running Windows installation.

1. Open a Windows PowerShell prompt.
2. Display the locale information on the computer by running the following command:

```
Get-WinSystemLocale
```

Set the locale for the region and language that you want. For example, the following command sets the system locale to Japanese (Japan):

```
Set-WinSystemLocale ja-JP
```

For a full description of these cmdlets, see [Get-WinSystemLocale](#) and [Set-WinSystemLocale](#). For more information about using International PowerShell cmdlets, see [International Settings Cmdlets](#).

## Configure international settings by using Control Panel

On a running Windows installation, you can use Control Panel to select language packs and configure additional international settings.

1. On the Start page, type **language**, and select **Add a language**.
2. Browse or search for the language that you want to install. For example, select **Catalan**, and then select **Add**.

Catalan is now added as one of your languages.

3. In the **Change your language preferences** pane, select **Options** next to the language that you added.
4. If a language pack is available for your language, select **Download and install language pack**.
5. When the language pack is installed, the language is displayed as available to use for the Windows display language.
6. To make this language your display language, move it to the top of your language list.
7. Log off and then log back on to Windows for the change to take effect.

Installing many additional language packs affects disk space and system performance. In particular, disk space and system performance are affected during servicing operations, such as service pack installations. Therefore, we recommend that you add a language pack to your computer only if you plan to use the language pack.

Language packs also let multiple users who share a computer select distinct display languages. For example, one user can select to see the dialog boxes, menus, and other text in Japanese, whereas another user can select to see the same content in French.

## Configure international settings by using DISM

You can use Deployment Imaging Servicing and Management (DISM) to change the international settings against an offline Windows image

1. Mount a Windows image. For example,

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\my_distribution\sources\install.wim /Index:1 /MountDir:C:\mount\windows
```

2. Get the language settings that are configured in the Windows image by using the **/Get-Intl** parameter. For example

```
Dism /image:C:\mount\windows /Get-Intl
```

3. Change the default language, locale, and other international settings by using the **/set-allIntl** parameter.

```
Dism /image:C:\mount\windows /set-allIntl:fr-fr
```

For additional parameters and other options, see [DISM Languages and International Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

## Configure international settings by using an answer file

You can configure international settings in an answer file in the following ways:

- Language Packs are installed from a distribution share and settings are configured installed during **WindowsPE** configuration pass.

Corporations that deploy a multilingual edition of Windows typically create an answer file that configures international settings during the **WindowsPE** configuration pass. For multilingual deployments, language packs can exist in both a distribution share and in the image. You can add and configure Language packs from the distribution share during the **WindowsPE** configuration pass, or you can add these Language packs during the **WindowsPE** configuration pass and configure the settings in another configuration pass.

The Microsoft-Windows-International-Core-WinPE component includes the settings that you can use to modify the language and locale settings during the **WindowsPE** configuration pass. Additionally, you can

change the Setup UI language for Windows Setup by specifying values in this component.

- Language packs are installed to the Windows image and settings are configured during **specialize** and **oobeSystem** configuration passes.

OEMs and corporations that deploy a single-language edition of Windows to various regions typically create an answer file for each region and set the locale and keyboard settings in the **specialize** configuration pass. In this scenario, the language pack is added to the Windows image before international settings are configured.

The Microsoft-Windows-International-Core component includes the settings that you can use to modify the language and locale settings during the **specialize** and **oobeSystem** configuration passes.

You can pre-select a language and skip the Windows Welcome language selection UI page for users by specifying language and locale settings in the **oobeSystem** configuration pass in the Microsoft-Windows-International-Core component. In general, a user can choose between the default Setup language and any additional languages that are installed in the image. The selection of the language will update the other regional settings to the default values that are associated with that language. The user can then individually change the default settings.

### To configure international settings during the Windows PE configuration pass

1. Verify that the necessary language packs are available in the image or in a Windows distribution share. For more information about multilingual distribution shares, see [Add Multilingual Support to a Windows Distribution](#).
2. Open Windows System Image Manager (Windows SIM) and create an answer file. For more information, see [Create or Open an Answer File](#).
3. Add the Microsoft-Windows-International-Core-WinPE component to the answer file to apply settings during the **windowsPE** configuration pass.
4. Configure international settings in the Microsoft-Windows-International-Core-WinPE component. For example, if the Spanish language pack is available in the distribution share, you can add *es-ES* values to the component settings in the **windowsPE** configuration pass.

Most system locales require a restart. When you configure your locale settings during the **windowsPE** configuration pass, the computer will automatically restart. Additional restarts are not required.

For more information about these settings, see the Microsoft-Windows-International-Core-WinPE components in the Windows® Unattended Setup Reference.

5. Save the answer file and close Windows SIM. The language pack in the distribution share will be automatically added and the international settings will be applied when you run Windows Setup and specify this answer file.

### To configure international settings during the specialize configuration pass

1. Verify that the necessary language packs are available in the image. For more information about how to add a language pack offline, see [Add and Remove Language Packs Offline Using DISM](#). For more information about how to add a language pack using an answer file, see [Add a Package to an Answer File](#).
2. Open Windows SIM and create a new answer file. For more information, see [Create or Open an Answer File](#).
3. Add the Microsoft-Windows-International-Core component to apply settings during the **specialize** and **oobeSystem** configuration passes.

Most system locales require a restart. When you process language settings during the **specialize** or **oobeSystem** configuration passes, the computer might require an additional restart.

4. Edit the settings for the Microsoft-Windows-International-Core component to configure international settings for a specific region. For example, you can add *EN-US* values to the Microsoft-Windows-International-Core settings in the **specialize** configuration pass.

You can also pre-select a language and specify language and locale settings in the **oobeSystem** configuration pass in the Microsoft-Windows-International-Core component. When you do this, the Windows Welcome language selection UI page will be skipped when the users boot to Windows Welcome. In general the user can select between the default Setup language and any additional languages that are installed in the image. The selection of the language will update the other regional settings to the default values associated with that language. The user can then change these default settings individually.

For more information about these settings, see the Microsoft-Windows-International-Core component in the Windows® Unattended Setup Reference.

5. Save the answer file and close Windows SIM. When you run Windows Setup specifying this answer file, the regional settings that you specified in the answer file will be applied.

#### To change international settings in separate configuration passes in the same answer file:

- Create multiple sections in an answer file that will process different language settings during different phases of Windows installation. This enables you to configure multiple language settings in an answer file by specifying different settings to be processed in different configuration passes. For more information, see [How Configuration Passes Work](#).

For example, you can create language and locale settings in the **windowsPE** configuration pass with the Microsoft-Windows-International-Core-WinPE component.

You can then change the default settings in either the **oobeSystem** or the **specialize** configuration pass by adding settings to the Microsoft-Windows-International-Core component.

For example, you can specify *EN-US* as the default language to use on the computer in the **windowsPE** configuration pass. Then, if you intend to send the computer to a different region, you can add more language and locale settings to the **oobeSystem** configuration pass.

If language settings are processed during the **oobeSystem** configuration pass, a restart might be required. Also, the time that is required for the computer to process the language settings might prevent the end user from starting Windows Welcome quickly.

## Related topics

[Windows Setup Technical Reference](#)

[Windows System Image Manager Technical Reference](#)

[Add Language Packs to Windows](#)

[Add and Remove Language Packs Offline Using DISM](#)

# Add Multilingual Support to a Windows Distribution

7/13/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use Windows® Setup to deploy a multilingual edition of Windows. This is a typical scenario for corporations that deploy Windows in a multilingual environment where the users must be able to switch the display language between multiple languages on a single computer. This procedure requires the following steps:

- Copy one or more language packs to the **\Langpacks** directory in the *Windows distribution*. The Windows distribution is the contents of the Windows retail DVD.
- Update the Lang.ini file.
- Use Setup to install the language packs that are in the distribution share.

## Important

Adding language packs to the **\Langpacks** directory can extend the Windows Setup installation time. Packages in the **\Langpacks** directory are added to the Windows image during the **windowsPE** configuration pass, before Windows is actually installed. If Windows Setup must install several language packs, then installation might be delayed.

## To add language packs to a Windows Distribution

1. Copy the Windows distribution to a local directory. For example, copy the contents of the Windows product DVD to a directory named **C:\my\_distribution**.
2. Locate the language pack .cab files for the languages that you want to add to the Windows distribution and copy them to a local directory.
3. Create the **\Langpacks** directory in the distribution share. For example:

```
mkdir C:\my_distribution\langpacks
```

4. Copy the language packs to the **\Langpacks** directory of the distribution share. For example:

```
mkdir C:\my_distribution\langpacks
xcopy C:\LPs\Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Pack_x64_fr-fr.cab
C:\my_distribution\langpacks\Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Pack_x64_fr-fr.cab
```

5. (Optional) To make additional languages available in Windows Setup, copy the localized Windows Setup sources to the distribution share. For example:

```
xcopy E:\sources\fr-fr C:\my_distribution\sources\fr-fr /cherkyi
xcopy E:\sources\de-de C:\my_distribution\sources\de-de /cherkyi
```

Where *E*: is the location of the Windows distribution that contains the localized Windows Setup resources.

The **/cherkyi** parameters for the **xcopy** command copies all hidden files and subdirectories and overwrites all files in the target directory.

6. Mount the Windows image that is in the distribution share. This step is required for the Deployment Image Servicing and Management tool (DISM.exe) to report the list of languages that are installed in the .wim file, and to recreate the Lang.ini file. Use DISM to mount the Windows image. For example:

```
DISM.exe /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\my_distribution\sources\install.wim /index:1
/MountDir:C:\mount\windows
```

7. Report the languages that are available in the distribution share or installed to the Windows image by using the **/Get-Intl** option and specifying the distribution share. For example:

```
DISM.exe /image:c:\mount\windows /distribution:c:\my_distribution /Get-Intl
```

Verify that the correct languages are displayed as available languages and that **The other available languages in the distribution** display the correct languages. For example:

```
Default system UI language : en-US
System locale : en-US
Default time zone : Pacific Standard Time
User locale for default user : en-US
Location : United States (GEOID = 244)
Active keyboard(s) : 0409:00000409
Keyboard layered driver : PC/AT Enhanced Keyboard (101/102-Key)

Installed language(s): en-US
Type : Fully localized language.

Reporting distribution languages.

The default language in the distribution is:
en-US

The other available languages in the distribution are:
es-es, fr-fr
```

8. Recreate the Lang.ini file. For example:

```
DISM.exe /image:c:\mount\windows /Gen-LangINI /distribution:c:\my_distribution
```

When you add or remove language packs from a Windows distribution, you must recreate the Lang.ini file. The Lang.ini file is located in the sources directory of the Windows distribution and is used during Windows Setup. The lang.ini file in the sources directory should look similar to the following:

```
[Available UI Languages]
en-US = 3
de-de = 0
fr-fr = 0

[Fallback Languages]
en-US = en-us
```

#### Note

You can choose a language for Windows Setup from those that are available in the distribution share when you run Setup from a full operating system only. If you run Windows Setup for bootable media or Windows PE, you must add optional components to the Boot.wim file for multilingual support. For more information, see [Add Multilingual Support to Windows Setup](#).

9. Unmount the .wim file and commit the changes. For example:

```
DISM.exe /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\mount\windows /commit
```

You can now run Windows Setup. During the installation, you will be prompted to choose one of the languages you added to the distribution share.

## Related topics

[DISM Languages and International Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

[Configure International Settings in Windows](#)

# Add Language Interface Packs to Windows

6/14/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Language Interface Packs (LIPs) include Windows user interface text for a region. LIPs must be used with a valid parent language.

For example, the Catalan (ca-ES) LIP can be installed only if one of the following languages is already installed: English US (en-US), Great Britain (en-GB), Spanish (es-ES), or French (fr-FR).

To add a LIP to an offline Windows image, you must verify that the supported parent language pack is installed to the Windows image first.

For a list of the LIPs and their parent languages, see [Available Language Packs for Windows](#).

The version of the LIP must match the version of Windows. For example, you can't add a Windows 10 LIP to a Windows 8 image, or a Windows 8 LIP to a Windows 10 image.

For Windows 10, language packs and LIPs are also available to download from Windows Update. You can add additional languages by using **Control Panel**. This process requires internet access and access to Windows Update. IT Professionals and end-users can use Windows Update to add additional languages to their Windows installations.

- OEMs can view and download LIPs from the [Microsoft OEM site](#).
- System Builders can view and download LIPs from the [OEM Partner Center](#).
- Users can get languages or LIPs from Windows Update. Go to **Settings > Time & language > Region & language > Add a language**. Select the language you want to use from the list, then choose which region's version you want to use. Your download will begin immediately.

## Install LIPs

### To install a LIP using audit mode (used for manufacturing PCs)

1. Download the appropriate LIP (and if necessary, its base language), and save it to removable media.
2. Boot the destination computer to audit mode. For example at the OOBE screen, press Ctrl+Shift+F3. To learn more, see [Boot Windows to Audit Mode or OOBE](#).
3. Insert the removable media and copy the LIP (and base language, if necessary) to the destination computer.
4. If the base language isn't already installed, install it: Navigate to the .cab file and double-click it. Follow the instructions to complete the installation.
5. Install the LIP: Navigate to the .cab file and double-click it. Follow the instructions to complete the installation.
6. Exit audit mode and prepare the PC for image capture or deployment, for example:

Open a command prompt and run:

```
sysprep /oobe /generalize
```

To learn more, see [Sysprep \(Generalize\) a Windows installation](#).

### To install a LIP to an offline Windows image

1. Download the appropriate LIP (and if necessary, its base language).
2. Open a command prompt with elevated permissions.

3. Mount the Windows image that you want to install the LIP to.

```
md "C:\mount\windows"

Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\images\Win10\sources\install.wim /Index:1 /MountDir:"C:\mount\windows"
```

4. If the base LP isn't in the image already, add it.

```
Dism /Image:C:\mount\windows /Add-Package /PackagePath:C:\Languages\x64\langpacks\Microsoft-Windows-
Client-Language-Pack_x64_es-es.cab
```

5. Add the LIP.

```
Dism /Image:C:\mount\windows /Add-Package /PackagePath:C:\Languages\x64\langpacks\Microsoft-Windows-
Client-Language-Interface-Pack_x64_ca-es.cab
```

6. If you're creating Windows Setup media or using a distribution share, recreate the lang.ini file.

```
Dism /Image:C:\mount\windows /Gen-LangIni /Distribution:C:\images\Win10\
```

The lang.ini file in C:\images\Win10\sources should look similar to the following:

```
[Available UI Languages]
ca-ES = 2
es-ES = 3

[Fallback Languages]
es-ES = en-us
```

7. Optional: Change the default language, locale, and other international settings to the local language.

```
Dism /image:C:\mount\windows /set-allIntl:ca-es
```

Optional: Review the default international settings.

```
Dism /image:C:\mount\windows /get-intl
```

For example, you should see output similar to the following:

Reporting offline international settings.

```
Default system UI language : es-ES
System locale : ca-ES
Default time zone : Romance Standard Time
User locale for default user : ca-ES
Location : Spain (GEOID = 217)
Active keyboard(s) : 0403:0000040a
Keyboard layered driver : PC/AT Enhanced Keyboard (101/102-Key)
```

```
Installed language(s): ca-ES
Type : Partially localized language, LIP type.
Installed language(s): es-ES
Type : Fully localized language.
```

Reporting distribution languages.

The default language in the distribution is:  
es-ES

## 8. Unmount the image, committing the changes.

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\mount\windows /Commit
```

Your Windows image is ready to be deployed.

## Related topics

[Add Language Packs to Windows](#)

[Available Language Packs for Windows](#)

[Language Pack Default Values](#)

# Available Language Packs for Windows

8/17/2017 • 6 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The following tables show the supported language packs and language interface packs (LIPs) for Windows. Language packs are available for Windows 10, Windows Server 2016, and Windows Server 2012 R2. LIPs are available for Windows 10, but are not available for Windows Server. For more information, see [Language packs](#).

Windows Server and Windows 10 language packs are not interchangeable. Windows Server language packs cannot be used on Windows 10, and Windows 10 language packs cannot be used on Windows Server.

LIPs must be installed to the operating system that they support. Windows 10 LIPs cannot be used on Windows 8.1; similarly, Windows 8.1 LIPs cannot be used on Windows 10.

OEMs and system builders with Microsoft Software License Terms can get language packs and LIPs from the [Microsoft OEM site](#) and [OEM Partner Center](#).

For a complete list of supported languages and locales, see [Locale Identifier Constants and Strings](#).

For a complete list of available language features on demand, see [Available language FODs](#)

To learn more, see [Add Language Packs to Windows](#).

## Supported Language Packs and Language Interface Packs

The following tables include these settings:

- **Language/region.** The name of the language that will be displayed in the UI. All 38 language packs are available for Windows 10 and Windows Server 2016. In Windows Server 2012 the user interface (UI) is localized only for the 18 languages listed in bold.
- **Language/region tag.** The language identifier based on the language tagging conventions of RFC 3066. This setting is used with the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) tool, or in an unattended answer file.
- **Language/region ID.** The hexadecimal representation of the language identifier. This setting is used with the keyboard identifier when specifying an input method using DISM.
- **Language/region decimal identifier.** The decimal representation of the language identifier. This setting is used in Oobe.xml.

### Language Packs

LANGUAGE/REGION	LANGUAGE/REGION TAG	LANGUAGE/REGION ID	LANGUAGE/REGION DECIMAL ID
Arabic (Saudi Arabia)	ar-SA	0x0401	1025
Bulgarian (Bulgaria)	bg-BG	0x0402	1026
Chinese (Hong Kong SAR)	zh-HK <small>Note: No longer used. See zh-TW.</small>	0x0c04	3076
Chinese (PRC)	zh-CN	0x0804	2052

LANGUAGE/REGION	LANGUAGE/REGION TAG	LANGUAGE/REGION ID	LANGUAGE/REGION DECIMAL ID
<b>Chinese (Taiwan)</b>	zh-TW	0x0404	1028
Croatian (Croatia)	hr-HR	0x041a	1050
<b>Czech (Czech Republic)</b>	cs-CZ	0x0405	1029
Danish (Denmark)	da-DK	0x0406	1030
<b>Dutch (Netherlands)</b>	nl-NL	0x0413	1043
<b>English (United States)</b>	en-US	0x0409	1033
English (United Kingdom)	en-GB	0x0809	2057
Estonian (Estonia)	et-EE	0x0425	1061
Finnish (Finland)	fi-FI	0x040b	1035
French (Canada)	fr-CA	0x0c0c	3084
<b>French (France)</b>	fr-FR	0x040c	1036
<b>German (Germany)</b>	de-DE	0x0407	1031
Greek (Greece)	el-GR	0x0408	1032
Hebrew (Israel)	he-IL	0x040d	1037
<b>Hungarian (Hungary)</b>	hu-HU	0x040e	1038
<b>Italian (Italy)</b>	it-IT	0x0410	1040
<b>Japanese (Japan)</b>	ja-JP	0x0411	1041
<b>Korean (Korea)</b>	ko-KR	0x0412	1042
Latvian (Latvia)	lv-LV	0x0426	1062
Lithuanian (Lithuania)	lt-LT	0x0427	1063
Norwegian, Bokmål (Norway)	nb-NO	0x0414	1044
<b>Polish (Poland)</b>	pl-PL	0x0415	1045
<b>Portuguese (Brazil)</b>	pt-BR	0x0416	1046
<b>Portuguese (Portugal)</b>	pt-PT	0x0816	2070
Romanian (Romania)	ro-RO	0x0418	1048

LANGUAGE/REGION	LANGUAGE/REGION TAG	LANGUAGE/REGION ID	LANGUAGE/REGION DECIMAL ID
Russian (Russia)	ru-RU	0x0419	1049
Serbian (Latin, Serbia)	sr-Latn-CS <i>Note:</i> No longer used. See sr-Latn-RS.	0x081a	2074
Serbian (Latin, Serbia)	sr-Latn-RS	0x241A	9242
Slovak (Slovakia)	sk-SK	0x041b	1051
Slovenian (Slovenia)	sl-SI	0x0424	1060
Spanish (Mexico)	es-MX	0x080a	2058
Spanish (Spain)	es-ES	0x0c0a	3082
Swedish (Sweden)	sv-SE	0x041d	1053
Thai (Thailand)	th-TH	0x041e	1054
Turkish (Turkey)	tr-TR	0x041f	1055
Ukrainian (Ukraine)	uk-UA	0x0422	1058

### Language Interface Packs (LIPs)

Except where noted, the following LIPs are available for Windows 10. For Windows Server, options to change keyboard and regional settings such as currency, time zones, and time/date format are available but LIPs are not available. For more information, see [Language packs](#).

LANGUAGE/REGION	LANGUAGE/REGION TAG	BASE LANGUAGE/REGION	LANGUAGE/REGION ID	LANGUAGE/REGION DECIMAL ID
Afrikaans (South Africa)	af-ZA	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0436	1078
Albanian (Albania)	sq-AL	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x041c	1052
Amharic (Ethiopia)	am-ET	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x045e	1118
Armenian (Armenia)	hy-AM	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB, ru-RU	0x042b	1067

LANGUAGE/REGION	LANGUAGE/REGION TAG	BASE LANGUAGE/REGION	LANGUAGE/REGION ID	LANGUAGE/REGION DECIMAL ID
Assamese (India)	as-IN	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x044d	1101
Azerbaijan	az-Latn-AZ	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB, ru-RU	0x042c	1068
Bangla (Bangladesh)	bn-BD	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0845	2117
Basque (Basque)	eu-ES	Primary: es-ES Secondary: en-GB, en-US, fr-FR	0x042d	1069
Belarusian	be-BY	Primary: ru-RU Secondary: en-GB, en-US	0x0423	1059
Bangla (India)	bn-IN	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0445	1093
Bosnian (Latin)	bs-Latn-BA	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB, hr-HR, sr-Latn-RS	0x141a	5146
Catalan	ca-ES	Primary: es-ES Secondary: en-GB, en-US, fr-FR	0x0403	1027
Central Kurdish	ku-ARAB-IQ	Primary: en-US Secondary: ar-SA, en-GB	0x0492	1170
Cherokee	chr-CHER-US	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x045c	1116
Dari	prs-AF	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x048c	1164

LANGUAGE/REGION	LANGUAGE/REGION TAG	BASE LANGUAGE/REGION	LANGUAGE/REGION ID	LANGUAGE/REGION DECIMAL ID
Filipino	fil-PH	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0464	1124
Galician	gl-ES	Primary: es-ES Secondary: en-GB, en-US	0x0456	1110
Georgian (Georgia)	ka-GE	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB, ru-RU	0x0437	1079
Gujarati (India)	gu-IN	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0447	1095
Hausa (Latin, Nigeria)	ha-Latn-NG	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB, fr-FR	0x0468	1128
Hindi (India)	hi-IN	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0439	1081
Icelandic (Iceland)	is-IS	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x040f	1039
Igbo (Nigeria)	ig-NG	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0470	1136
Indonesian (Indonesia)	id-ID	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0421	1057
Inuktitut (Latin, Canada)	iu-Latn-CA Not available in Windows 10.	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x085d	2141
Irish (Ireland)	ga-IE	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x083c	2108

LANGUAGE/REGION	LANGUAGE/REGION TAG	BASE LANGUAGE/REGION	LANGUAGE/REGION ID	LANGUAGE/REGION DECIMAL ID
isiXhosa (South Africa)	xh-ZA	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0434	1076
isiZulu (South Africa)	zu-ZA	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0435	1077
Kannada (India)	kn-IN	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x044b	1099
Kazakh (Kazakhstan)	kk-KZ	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB, ru-RU	0x043f	1087
Khmer (Cambodia)	km-KH	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0453	1107
K'iche' (Guatemala)	quc-Latn-GT	Primary: es-MX Secondary: es-ES, en-US, en-GB	0x0486	1158
K'iche' (Guatemala)	qut-GT No longer used.	Primary: es-MX Secondary: es-ES, en-US, en-GB	0x0486	1158
Kinyarwanda	rw-RW	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0487	1159
Kiswahili (Kenya)	sw-KE	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0441	1089
Konkani (India)	kok-IN	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0457	1111
Kyrgyz (Kyrgyzstan)	ky-KG	Primary: ru-RU Secondary: en-GB, en-US	0x0440	1088

LANGUAGE/REGION	LANGUAGE/REGION TAG	BASE LANGUAGE/REGION	LANGUAGE/REGION ID	LANGUAGE/REGION DECIMAL ID
Lao (Laos)	lo-LA	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0454	1108
Luxembourgish (Luxembourg)	lb-LU	Primary: fr-FR Secondary: de-DE, en-GB, en-US	0x046e	1134
Macedonian (FYROM)	mk-MK	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x042f	1071
Malay (Malaysia, Brunei, and Singapore)	ms-MY	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x043e	1086
Malayalam (India)	ml-IN	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x044c	1100
Maltese (Malta)	mt-MT	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x043a	1082
Maori (New Zealand)	mi-NZ	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0481	1153
Marathi (India)	mr-IN	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x044e	1102
Mongolian (Cyrillic)	mn-MN	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB, ru-RU	0x0450	1104
Nepali (Federal Democratic Republic of Nepal)	ne-NP	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0461	1121
Norwegian, Nynorsk (Norway)	nn-NO	Primary: nb-NO Secondary: en-GB, en-US	0x0814	2068

LANGUAGE/REGION	LANGUAGE/REGION TAG	BASE LANGUAGE/REGION	LANGUAGE/REGION ID	LANGUAGE/REGION DECIMAL ID
Odia (India)	or-IN	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0448	1096
Persian	fa-IR	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0429	1065
Punjabi (India)	pa-IN	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0446	1094
Punjabi (Arabic)	pa-Arab-PK	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0846	2118
Quechua (Peru)	quz-PE	Primary: es-MX Secondary: es-ES, en-GB, en-US	0x0c6b	3179
Scottish Gaelic	gd-GB	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0491	1169
Serbian (Cyrillic, Bosnia and Herzegovina)	sr-Cyrl-BA	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB, sr-Latn-RS	0x1C1A	7194
Serbian (Cyrillic, Serbia)	sr-Cyrl-CS <i>Note: No longer used. See sr-Latn-RS.</i>	Primary: sr-Latn-CS Secondary: en-GB, en-US	0x0c1a	3098
Serbian (Cyrillic, Serbia)	sr-Cyrl-RS	Primary: sr-Latn-RS Secondary: en-GB, en-US	0x281A	10266
Sesotho sa Leboa (South Africa)	nso-ZA	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x046c	1132
Setswana (South Africa)	tn-ZA	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0432	1074

LANGUAGE/REGION	LANGUAGE/REGION TAG	BASE LANGUAGE/REGION	LANGUAGE/REGION ID	LANGUAGE/REGION DECIMAL ID
Sindhi (Arabic)	sd-Arab-PK	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0859	2137
Sinhala (Sri Lanka)	si-LK	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x045b	1115
Tajik (Cyrillic)	tg-Cyrl-TJ	Primary: ru-RU Secondary: en-GB, en-US	0x0428	1064
Tamil (India)	ta-IN	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0449	1097
Tatar (Russia)	tt-RU	Primary: ru-RU Secondary: en-GB, en-US	0x0444	1092
Telugu (India)	te-IN	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x044a	1098
Tigrinya	ti-ET	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0473	1139
Turkmen	tk-TM	Primary: ru-RU Secondary: en-GB, en-US	0x0442	1090
Urdu	ur-PK	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0420	1056
Uyghur	ug-CN	Primary: zh-CN Secondary: en-GB, en-US	0x0480	1152
Uzbek (Latin)	uz-Latn-UZ	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB, ru-RU	0x0443	1091

LANGUAGE/REGION	LANGUAGE/REGION TAG	BASE LANGUAGE/REGION	LANGUAGE/REGION ID	LANGUAGE/REGION DECIMAL ID
Valencian	ca-ES-valencia	Primary: es-ES Secondary: en-GB, en-US	0x0803	2051
Vietnamese	vi-VN	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x042a	1066
Welsh (Great Britain)	cy-GB	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x0452	1106
Wolof	wo-SN	Primary: fr-FR Secondary: en-GB, en-US	0x0488	1160
Yoruba (Nigeria)	yo-NG	Primary: en-US Secondary: en-GB	0x046a	1130

## Related topics

[Add Language Packs to Windows](#)

[Windows Language Pack Default Values](#)

[Default Input Locales for Windows Language Packs](#)

# Default Input Profiles (Input Locales) in Windows

7/27/2017 • 13 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Input profiles (or input locales) describe the language of the input entered, and the keyboard on which it is being entered. When the first user logs into Windows and identifies their region, Windows sets the input profiles.

The input profiles are made up of a [language identifier](#) and a [keyboard identifier](#). For example, the Arabic (Algerian) input profile is 1401:00020401, where 1401 is the hexadecimal identifier of the language: Arabic (Algeria) and 00020401 is the hexadecimal identifier of the keyboard: Arabic 101.

When the user first identifies the time and date format (User Locale) as Algeria, Windows sets up both the primary input profile, and a secondary input profile: French (France) with French keyboard. The secondary input profile can help the user by providing a keyboard with a Latin character set for tasks that require it, such as filling out email addresses. Some character sets (like CHS IME) have a Latin character set built in.

Windows uses the language component of the input profile for tasks like spelling, hyphenation, and text prediction of the intended key press when using the touch-screen keyboard.

When setting up new devices for your users, you can use the DISM commands: /Set-InputLocale or /Set-AllIntl to identify a default input profile. You can either select the input profile by its language and keyboard pair (1401:00020401) or you can use a language\region tag to receive the default settings for that language/region.

Examples:

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Set-InputLocale:042d:0000040a
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Set-InputLocale:0411:{03B5835F-F03C-411B-9CE2-AA23E1171E36}{A76C93D9-5523-4E90-AAFA-4DB112F9AC76}
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Set-InputLocale:id-ID
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Set-AllIntl:fr-FR
```

For a list of language/culture names, see [Available Language Packs for Windows](#).

LANGUAGE/REGION	PRIMARY INPUT PROFILE (LANGUAGE AND KEYBOARD PAIR)	SECONDARY INPUT PROFILE
Afrikaans - South Africa	af-ZA: United States - English (0436:00000409)	
Albanian - Albania	sq-AL: Albanian (041c:0000041c)	
Alsatian - France	gsw-FR: French (0484:0000040c)	
Amharic - Ethiopia	am-ET: Amharic Input Method (045e:{E429B25A-E5D3-4D1F-9BE3-0C608477E3A1}{8F96574E-C86C-4bd6-9666-3F7327D4CBE8})	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Arabic - Algeria	ar-DZ: Arabic (102) AZERTY (1401:00020401)	fr-FR: French (040c:0000040c)
Arabic - Bahrain	ar-BH: Arabic (101) (3c01:00000401)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)

LANGUAGE/REGION	PRIMARY INPUT PROFILE (LANGUAGE AND KEYBOARD PAIR)	SECONDARY INPUT PROFILE
Arabic - Egypt	ar-EG: Arabic (101) (0c01:00000401)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Arabic - Iraq	ar-IQ: Arabic (101) (0801:00000401)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Arabic - Jordan	ar-JO: Arabic (101) (2c01:00000401)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Arabic - Kuwait	ar-KW: Arabic (101) (3401:00000401)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Arabic - Lebanon	ar-LB: Arabic (101) (3001:00000401)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Arabic - Libya	ar-LY: Arabic (101) (1001:00000401)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Arabic - Morocco	ar-MA: Arabic (102) AZERTY (1801:00020401)	fr-FR: French (040c:0000040c)
Arabic - Oman	ar-OM: Arabic (101) (2001:00000401)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Arabic - Qatar	ar-QA: Arabic (101) (4001:00000401)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Arabic - Saudi Arabia	ar-SA: Arabic (101) (0401:00000401)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Arabic - Syria	ar-SY: Arabic (101) (2801:00000401)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Arabic - Tunisia	ar-TN: Arabic (102) AZERTY (1c01:00020401)	fr-FR: French (040c:0000040c)
Arabic - U.A.E.	ar-AE: Arabic (101) (3801:00000401)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Arabic - Yemen	ar-YE: Arabic (101) (2401:00000401)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Armenian - Armenia	hy-AM: Armenian Phonetic (042b:0002042b)	hy-AM: Armenian Typewriter (042b:0003042b) ru-RU: Russian (0419:00000419)
Assamese - India	as-IN: Assamese - Inscript (044d:0000044d)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)

LANGUAGE/REGION	PRIMARY INPUT PROFILE (LANGUAGE AND KEYBOARD PAIR)	SECONDARY INPUT PROFILE
Azerbaijani - Azerbaijan (Cyrillic)	az-Cyr-AZ: Azerbaijani Cyrillic (082c:0000082c)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409) az-Latn-AZ: Azeri Latin (042c:0000042c)
Azerbaijani - Azerbaijan (Latin)	az-Latn-AZ: Azerbaijani Latin (042c:0000042c)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409) az-Cyrl-AZ: Azeri Cyrillic (082c:0000082c)
Bangla (Bangladesh)	bn-BD: Bangla - Bangladesh (0845:00000445)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Bangla - India (Bengali Script)	bn-IN: Bangla India-INSCRIPT (0445:00020445)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Bashkir - Russia	ba-RU: Bashkir (046d:0000046d)	ru-RU Russian (0419:00000419) en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Basque - Basque	eu-ES: Spanish (042d:0000040a)	
Belarusian - Belarus	be-BY: Belarusian (0423:00000423)	ru-RU Russian (0419:00000419) en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Bosnian - Bosnia and Herzegovina (Cyrillic)	bs-Cyrl-BA: Bosnian (Cyrillic) (201a:0000201a)	bs-Latn-BA: Croatian (141a:0000041a)
Bosnian - Bosnia and Herzegovina (Latin)	bs-Latn-BA: Croatian (141a:0000041a)	
Breton - France	br-FR: French (047e:0000040c)	
Bulgarian - Bulgaria	bg-BG: Bulgarian (0402:00030402)	en-US: United States - International (0409:00020409)
Burmese - Myanmar	my-MM: Myanmar (0455:00010c00)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Catalan - Catalan	ca-ES: Spanish (0403:0000040a)	
Central Atlas Tamazight (Latin) - Algeria	fr-FR: French (040c:0000040c)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Central Atlas Tamazight (Latin) - Algeria	tzm-Latn-DZ: Central Atlas Tamazight (085f:0000085f)	

LANGUAGE/REGION	PRIMARY INPUT PROFILE (LANGUAGE AND KEYBOARD PAIR)	SECONDARY INPUT PROFILE
Central Atlas Tamazight (Tifinagh) - Morocco	tzm-Tfng-MA: (105f:0000105f)	fr-FR: French (040c:0000040c)
Central Kurdish (Iraq)	ku-Arab-IQ: (0492:00000492)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Cherokee (Cherokee, United States)	chr-Cher-US: Cherokee Nation (045c:0000045c)	Cherokee Nation Phonetic (045c:0001045c) en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Chinese - PRC	zh-CN: Microsoft Pinyin - Simple Fast (0804:{81D4E9C9-1D3B-41BC-9E6C-4B40BF79E35E}{FA550B04-5AD7-411f-A5AC-CA038EC515D7})	
Chinese - Taiwan	zh-TW: Chinese (Traditional) - New Phonetic (0404:{B115690A-EA02-48D5-A231-E3578D2FDF80}{B2F9C502-1742-11D4-9790-0080C882687E})	
Corsican - France	co-FR: French (0483:0000040c)	
Croatian - Bosnia and Herzegovina	hr-BA: Croatian (101a:0000041a)	
Croatian - Croatia	hr-HR: Croatian (041a:0000041a)	
Czech - Czech Republic	cs-CZ: Czech (0405:00000405)	
Danish - Denmark	da-DK: Danish (0406:00000406)	en-US: Danish (0409:00000406)
Dari - Afghanistan	prs-AF: Persian (Standard) (048c:00050429)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Divehi - Maldives	dv-MV: Divehi Phonetic (0465:00000465)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Dutch - Belgium	nl-BE: Belgian (Period) (0813:00000813)	
Dutch - Netherlands	nl-NL: United States - International (0413:00020409)	
Dzongkha	dz-BT: 0C51:00000C51;0409:00000409	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
English - Australia	en-AU: United States - English (0c09:00000409)	
English - Belize	en-BZ: United States - English (2809:00000409)	

LANGUAGE/REGION	PRIMARY INPUT PROFILE (LANGUAGE AND KEYBOARD PAIR)	SECONDARY INPUT PROFILE
English - Canada	en-CA: United States - English (1009:00000409)	en-CA: Canadian Multilingual Standard (1009:00011009)
English - Caribbean	en-029: United States - English (2409:00000409)	
English - India	en-IN: India (4009:00004009)	
English - Ireland	en-IE: Irish (1809:00001809)	
English - Jamaica	en-JM: United States - English (2009:00000409)	
English - Malaysia	en-MY: United States - English (4409:00000409)	
English - New Zealand	en-NZ: United States - English (1409:00000409)	
English - Philippines	en-PH: United States - English (3409:00000409)	
English - Singapore	en-SG: United States - English (4809:00000409)	
English - South Africa	en-ZA: United States - English (1c09:00000409)	
English - Trinidad	en-TT: United States - English (2c09:00000409)	
English - Great Britain	en-GB: Great Britain (0809:00000809)	
English - United States	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)	
English - Zimbabwe	en-ZW: United States - English (3009:00000409)	
Estonian - Estonia	et-EE: Estonian (0425:00000425)	
Faroese - Faroe Islands	fo-FO: Danish (0438:00000406)	
Filipino - Philippines	fil-PH: United States - English (0464:00000409)	
Finnish - Finland	fi-FI: Finnish (040b:0000040b)	
French - Belgium	fr-BE: Belgian French (080c:0000080c)	
French - Canada	fr-CA: Canadian Multilingual Standard (0c0c:00011009)	en-CA: Canadian Multilingual Standard (1009:00011009)

LANGUAGE/REGION	PRIMARY INPUT PROFILE (LANGUAGE AND KEYBOARD PAIR)	SECONDARY INPUT PROFILE
French - France	fr-FR: French (040c:0000040c)	
French - Luxembourg	fr-LU: Swiss French (140c:0000100C)	fr-LU: French (140c:0000040c)
French - Monaco	fr-MC: French (180c:0000040c)	
French - Switzerland	fr-CH: Swiss French (100c:0000100c)	de-CH: Swiss German (0807:00000807)
Frisian - Netherlands		
Fulah (Latin, Senegal)	ff-Latn-SN: Wolof (0867:00000488)	
Galician - Galician	gl-ES: Spanish (0456:0000040a)	
Georgian - Georgia	ka-GE: Georgian (QWERTY) (0437:00010437)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
German - Austria	de-AT: German (0c07:00000407)	de-AT: German ()
German - Germany	de-DE: German (0407:00000407)	de-DE: German ()
German - Liechtenstein	de-LI: Swiss German (1407:00000807)	
German - Luxembourg	de-LU: German (1007:00000407)	
German - Switzerland	de-CH: Swiss German (0807:00000807)	fr-CH: Swiss French (100C:0000100C)
Greek - Greece	el-GR: Greek (0408:00000408)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Greenlandic - Greenland	kl-GL: Danish (046f:00000406)	
Guarani - Paraguay	gn-PY: Guarani (0474:00000474)	
Gujarati - India (Gujarati Script)	gu-IN: Gujarati (0447:00000447)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Hausa (Latin) - Nigeria	ha-Latn-NG: Hausa (0468:00000468)	
Hawaiian - United States	haw-US: (0475:00000475)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Hebrew - Israel	he-IL: (040d:0002040d)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Hindi - India	hi-IN: Hindi Traditional (0439:00010439)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Hungarian - Hungary	hu-HU: Hungarian (040e:0000040e)	

LANGUAGE/REGION	PRIMARY INPUT PROFILE (LANGUAGE AND KEYBOARD PAIR)	SECONDARY INPUT PROFILE
Icelandic - Iceland	is-IS: Icelandic (040f:0000040f)	
Igbo - Nigeria	ig-NG: Igbo (0470:00000470)	
Inari Sami - Finland	smn-FI: Finnish with Sami (243b:0001083b)	
Indonesian - Indonesia	id-ID: United States - English (0421:00000409)	
Inuktitut (Latin) - Canada	iu-Latn-CA: Inuktitut - Latin (085d:0000085d)	en-CA: United States - English (1009:00000409)
Inuktitut (Syllabics) - Canada	iu-Cans-CA: Inuktitut - Naqittaut (045d:0001045d)	en-CA: United States - English (1009:00000409)
Irish - Ireland	ga-IE: Irish (083c:00001809)	
isiXhosa / Xhosa - South Africa	xh-ZA: United States - English (0434:00000409)	
isiZulu / Zulu - South Africa	zu-ZA: United States - English (0435:00000409)	
Italian - Italy	it-IT: Italian (0410:00000410)	
Italian - Switzerland	it-CH: Swiss French (0810:0000100c)	it-CH: Italian (0810:00000410)
Japanese - Japan	ja-JP: Microsoft IME (0411:{03B5835F-F03C-411B-9CE2-AA23E1171E36}{A76C93D9-5523-4E90-AAFA-4DB112F9AC76})	
Javanese (Latin) - Indonesia	jv-Latn-ID: US (0c00:00000409)	
Kannada - India (Kannada Script)	kn-IN: Kannada (044b:0000044b)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Kazakh - Kazakhstan	kk-KZ: Kazakh (043f:0000043f)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Khmer - Cambodia	km-KH: Khmer (0453:00000453)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
K'iche - Guatemala	qut-GT: Latin American (0486:0000080a)	
Kinyarwanda - Rwanda	rw-RW: United States - English (0487:00000409)	
Konkani - India	kok-IN: Devanagari-INSCRIPT (0457:00000439)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)

LANGUAGE/REGION	PRIMARY INPUT PROFILE (LANGUAGE AND KEYBOARD PAIR)	SECONDARY INPUT PROFILE
Korean(Extended Wansung) - Korea	ko-KR: Microsoft IME (0412:{A028AE76-01B1-46C2-99C4-ACD9858AE02F}{B5FE1F02-D5F2-4445-9C03-C568F23C99A1})	
Kyrgyz - Kyrgyzstan	ky-KG: Kyrgyz Cyrillic (0440:00000440)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Lao - Lao PDR	lo-LA: Lao (0454:00000454)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Latvian - Legacy	lv-LV: Latvian (QWERTY) (0426:00010426)	
Latvian - Standard	lv-LV: Latvian (Standard) (0426:00020426)	
Lithuanian - Lithuania	lt-LT: Lithuanian (0427:00010427)	
Lower Sorbian - Germany	dsb-DE: Sorbian Standard (082e:0002042e)	
Lule Sami - Norway	smj-NO: Norwegian with Sami (103b:0000043b)	
Lule Sami - Sweden	smj-SE: Swedish with Sami (143b:0000083b)	
Luxembourgish - Luxembourg	lb-LU: Luxembourgish (046e:0000046e)	
Macedonian - F.Y.R.O.M	mk-MK: Macedonia (FYROM) - Standard (042f:0001042f)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Malay - Brunei	ms-BN: United States - English (083e:00000409)	
Malay - Malaysia	ms-MY: United States - English (043e:00000409)	
Malayalam - India (Malayalam Script)	ml-IN: Malayalam (044c:0000044c)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Maltese - Malta	mt-MT: Maltese 47-Key (043a:0000043a)	
Maori - New Zealand	mi-NZ: Maori (0481:00000481)	en-NZ: United States - English (1409:00000409)
Mapudungun - Chile	arn-CL: Latin American (047a:0000080a)	
Marathi - India	mr-IN: Marathi (044e:0000044e)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)

LANGUAGE/REGION	PRIMARY INPUT PROFILE (LANGUAGE AND KEYBOARD PAIR)	SECONDARY INPUT PROFILE
Mohawk - Mohawk	moh-CA: United States - English (047c:00000409)	
Mongolian (Cyrillic) - Mongolia	mn-MN: Mongolian Cyrillic (0450:00000450)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Mongolian (Mongolian) - Mongolia	mn-Mong-MN: Traditional Mongolian (Standard) (0c50:00010850)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Mongolian (Mongolian – PRC – Legacy)	mn-Mong-CN: Mongolian (Mongolian Script) (0850:00000850)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Mongolian (Mongolian– PRC – Standard)	mn-Mong-CN: Mongolian (Mongolian Script) (0850:00010850)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
N'ko – Guinea	nqo-GN: N'Ko (0c00:00090C00)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Nepali - Federal Democratic Republic of Nepal	ne-NP: Nepali (0461:00000461)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Northern Sami - Finland	se-FI: Finnish with Sami (0c3b:0001083b)	
Northern Sami - Norway	se-NO: Norwegian with Sami (043b:0000043b)	
Northern Sami - Sweden	se-SE: Swedish with Sami (083b:0000083b)	
Norwegian - Norway (Bokmål)	nb-NO: Norwegian (0414:00000414)	
Norwegian - Norway (Nynorsk)	nn-NO: Norwegian (0814:00000414)	
Occitan - France	oc-FR: French (0482:0000040c)	
Odia - India (Odia Script)	or-IN: Odia (0448:00000448)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Pashto - Afghanistan	ps-AF: Pashto (Afghanistan) (0463:00000463)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Persian	fa-IR: Central Kurdish (0429:00000429)	Fa-IR: Persian (Standard) (0429:00050429) en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Polish - Poland	pl-PL: Polish (Programmers) (0415:00000415)	

LANGUAGE/REGION	PRIMARY INPUT PROFILE (LANGUAGE AND KEYBOARD PAIR)	SECONDARY INPUT PROFILE
Portuguese - Brazil	pt-BR: Portuguese (Brazilian ABNT) (0416:00000416)	
Portuguese - Portugal	pt-PT: Portuguese (0816:00000816)	
Punjabi - India (Gurmukhi Script)	pa-IN: Punjabi (0446:00000446)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Punjabi (Islamic Republic of Pakistan)	pa-Arab-PK: Urdu (0846:00000420)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Quechua - Bolivia	quz-BO: Latin American (046b:0000080a)	
Quechua - Ecuador	quz-EC: Latin American (086b:0000080a)	
Quechua - Peru	quz-PE: Latin American (0c6b:0000080a)	
Romanian - Romania	ro-RO: Romanian (Standard) (0418:00010418)	
Romansh - Switzerland	rm-CH: Swiss German (0417:00000807)	
Russian - Russia	ru-RU: Russian (0419:00000419)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Sakha - Russia	sah-RU: Sakha (0485:00000485)	ru-RU Russian (0419:00000419) en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Sanskrit - India	sa-IN: Devanagari-INSRIPT (044f:00000439)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Scottish Gaelic - Great Britain	gd-GB: Gaelic (0491:00011809)	
Serbian - Bosnia and Herzegovina (Cyrillic)	sr-Cyrl-BA: Serbian (Cyrillic) (1c1a:00000c1a)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Serbian - Bosnia and Herzegovina (Latin)	sr-Latn-BA: Serbian (Latin) (181a:0000081a)	
Serbian - Montenegro (Cyrillic)	sr-Cyrl-ME: Serbian (Cyrillic) (301a:00000c1a)	en-US: United States - International (0409:00020409)
Serbian - Montenegro (Latin)	sr-Latn-ME: Serbian (Latin) (2c1a:0000081a)	

LANGUAGE/REGION	PRIMARY INPUT PROFILE (LANGUAGE AND KEYBOARD PAIR)	SECONDARY INPUT PROFILE
Serbian - Serbia (Cyrillic)	sr-Cyrl-RS: Serbian (Cyrillic) (281a:00000c1a)	en-US: United States - International (0409:00020409)
Serbian - Serbia (Latin)	sr-Latn-RS: Serbian (Latin) (241a:0000081a)	
Serbian - Serbia and Montenegro (Former) (Cyrillic)	sr-Cyrl-CS: Serbian (Cyrillic) (0c1a:00000c1a)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Serbian - Serbia and Montenegro (Former) (Latin)	sr-Latn-CS: Serbian (Latin) (081a:0000081a)	
Sesotho sa Leboa / Northern Sotho - South Africa	nso-ZA: Sesotho sa Leboa (046c:0000046c)	
Setswana / Tswana - Botswana	tn-BW: Setswana (0832:00000432)	
Setswana / Tswana - South Africa	tn-ZA: Setswana (0432:00000432)	
Shona – Zimbabwe	sn-Latn-ZW: US (0c00:00000409)	
Sindhi (Islamic Republic of Pakistan)	sd-Arab-PK: Urdu (0859:00000420)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Sinhala - Sri Lanka	si-LK: Sinhala (045b:0000045b)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Skolt Sami - Finland	sms-FI: Finnish with Sami (203b:0001083b)	
Slovak - Slovakia	sk-SK: Slovak (041b:0000041b)	
Slovenian - Slovenia	sl-SI: Slovenian (0424:00000424)	
Southern Sami - Norway	sma-NO: Norwegian with Sami (183b:0000043b)	
Southern Sami - Sweden	sma-SE: Swedish with Sami (1c3b:0000083b)	
Spanish - Argentina	es-AR: Latin American (2c0a:0000080a)	
Spanish - Bolivarian Republic of Venezuela	es-VE: Latin American (200a:0000080a)	
Spanish - Bolivia	es-BO: Latin American (400a:0000080a)	
Spanish - Chile	es-CL: Latin American (340a:0000080a)	
Spanish - Colombia	es-CO: Latin American (240a:0000080a)	

LANGUAGE/REGION	PRIMARY INPUT PROFILE (LANGUAGE AND KEYBOARD PAIR)	SECONDARY INPUT PROFILE
Spanish - Costa Rica	es-CR: Latin American (140a:0000080a)	
Spanish - Dominican Republic	es-DO: Latin American (1c0a:0000080a)	
Spanish - Ecuador	es-EC: Latin American (300a:0000080a)	
Spanish - El Salvador	es-SV: Latin American (440a:0000080a)	
Spanish - Guatemala	es-GT: Latin American (100a:0000080a)	
Spanish - Honduras	es-HN: Latin American (480a:0000080a)	
Spanish - Latin America	es-419: Latin American (580a:0000080a)	
Spanish - Mexico	es-MX: Latin American (080a:0000080a)	
Spanish - Nicaragua	es-NI: Latin American (4c0a:0000080a)	
Spanish - Panama	es-PA: Latin American (180a:0000080a)	
Spanish - Paraguay	es-PY: Latin American (3c0a:0000080a)	
Spanish - Peru	es-PE: Latin American (280a:0000080a)	
Spanish - Commonwealth of Puerto Rico	es-PR: Latin American (500a:0000080a)	
Spanish - Spain (International Sort)	es-ES: Spanish (0c0a:0000040a)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Spanish - Spain (Traditional Sort)	es-ES_tradnl: Spanish (040a:0000040a)	
Spanish - United States	es-US: Latin American (540a:0000080a)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Spanish - Uruguay	es-UY: Latin American (380a:0000080a)	
Standard Moroccan Tamazight - Morocco	zgh-Tfng-MA: Tifinagh (Basic) (0c00:0000105F)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Swahili - Kenya	sw-KE: United States - English (0441:00000409)	
Swedish - Finland	sv-FI: Swedish (081d:0000041d)	
Swedish - Sweden	sv-SE: Swedish (041d:0000041d)	

LANGUAGE/REGION	PRIMARY INPUT PROFILE (LANGUAGE AND KEYBOARD PAIR)	SECONDARY INPUT PROFILE
Syriac - Syria	syr-SY: Syriac (045a:0000045a)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Tajik - Tajikistan	tg-Cyril-TJ: Tajik (0428:00000428)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Tamil - India	ta-IN: Tamil (0449:00000449)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Tamil - Sri Lanka	ta-LK: Tamil (0849:00000449)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Tatar – Russia (Legacy)	tt-RU: Tatar (0444:00000444)	ru-RU: Russian (0419:00000419) en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Tatar – Russia (Standard)	tt-RU: Tatar (0444:00010444)	ru-RU: Russian (0419:00000419) en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Telugu - India (Telugu Script)	te-IN: Telugu (044a:0000044a)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Thai - Thailand	th-TH: Thai Kedmanee (041e:0000041e)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Tibetan - PRC	bo-CN: Tibetan (PRC) (0451:00010451)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Tigrinya (Eritrea)	ti-ET: Tigrinya Input Method (0473:{E429B25A-E5D3-4D1F-9BE3-0C608477E3A1}{3CAB88B7-CC3E-46A6-9765-B772AD7761FF})	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Tigrinya (Ethiopia)	ti-ET: Tigrinya Input Method (0473:{E429B25A-E5D3-4D1F-9BE3-0C608477E3A1}{3CAB88B7-CC3E-46A6-9765-B772AD7761FF})	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Turkish - Turkey	tr-TR: Turkish Q (041f:0000041f)	
Turkmen - Turkmenistan	tk-TM: Turkmen (0442:00000442)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Ukrainian - Ukraine	uk-UA: Ukrainian (Enhanced) (0422:00020422)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Upper Sorbian - Germany	hsb-DE: Sorbian Standard (042e:0002042e)	

LANGUAGE/REGION	PRIMARY INPUT PROFILE (LANGUAGE AND KEYBOARD PAIR)	SECONDARY INPUT PROFILE
Urdu – India	ur-IN: Urdu (0820:00000420)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Urdu (Islamic Republic of Pakistan)	ur-PK: Urdu (0420:00000420)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Uyghur - PRC	ug-CN: Uyghur (0480:00010480)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Uzbek - Uzbekistan (Cyrillic)	uz-Cyr-UZ: Uzbek Cyrillic (0843:00000843)	uz-Latn-UZ: United States - English (0443:00000409)
Uzbek - Uzbekistan (Latin)	uz-Latn-UZ: United States - English (0443:00000409)	
Valencian - Valencia	ca-ES-valencia: Spanish (0803:0000040a)	
Vietnamese - Vietnam	vi-VN: Vietnamese (042a:0000042a)	en-US: United States - English (0409:00000409)
Welsh - Great Britain	cy-GB: Great Britain Extended (0452:00000452)	en-GB: Great Britain (0809:00000809)
Wolof - Senegal	wo-SN: Wolof (0488:00000488)	
Yi - PRC	ii-CN: Yi Input Method(0478:{E429B25A-E5D3-4D1F-9BE3-0C608477E3A1}{409C8376-007B-4357-AE8E-26316EE3FB0D})	zh-CN: Microsoft Pinyin - Simple Fast (0804:{81D4E9C9-1D3B-41BC-9E6C-4B40BF79E35E}{FA550B04-5AD7-411f-A5AC-CA038EC515D7})
Yoruba - Nigeria	yo-NG: Yoruba (046a:0000046a)	

## Related topics

[Default Time Zones](#)

[Add Language Packs to Windows](#)

[Available Language Packs for Windows](#)

[Keyboard identifiers for Windows](#)

[DISM Languages and International Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

# Default Time Zones

6/6/2017 • 13 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Default time zones by region in Windows 10. When the first user logs into Windows and identifies their region, Windows sets the time zone. The user can change the time zone at any time.

**Important** Windows updates the time zones in the registry when time zones are available and updates are downloaded. Because time zones can change, use the `tzutil` command-line tool in Windows to verify the time zone.

Country	ISO3166	Timezone	UTC	Timezone description
Afghanistan	AF	Afghanistan Standard Time	(UTC+04:30)	Kabul
Åland Islands	AX	FLE Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Helsinki, Kyiv, Riga, Sofia, Tallinn, Vilnius
Albania	AL	Central Europe Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Belgrade, Bratislava, Budapest, Ljubljana, Prague
Algeria	DZ	W. Central Africa Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	West Central Africa
American Samoa	AS	UTC-11	(UTC-11:00)	Coordinated Universal Time-11
Andorra	AD	W. Europe Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Amsterdam, Berlin, Bern, Rome, Stockholm, Vienna
Angola	AO	W. Central Africa Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	West Central Africa
Anguilla	AI	SA Western Standard Time	(UTC-04:00)	Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus, San Juan
Antarctica	AQ	Pacific SA Standard Time	(UTC-03:00)	Santiago
Antigua and Barbuda	AG	SA Western Standard Time	(UTC-04:00)	Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus, San Juan
Argentina	AR	Argentina Standard Time	(UTC-03:00)	City of Buenos Aires
Armenia	AM	Caucasus Standard Time	(UTC+04:00)	Yerevan
Aruba	AW	SA Western Standard Time	(UTC-04:00)	Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus, San Juan

Australia	AU	AUS Eastern Standard Time	(UTC+10:00)	Canberra, Melbourne, Sydney
Austria	AT	W. Europe Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Amsterdam, Berlin, Bern, Rome, Stockholm, Vienna
Azerbaijan	AZ	Azerbaijan Standard Time	(UTC+04:00)	Baku
Bahamas, The	BS	Eastern Standard Time	(UTC-05:00)	Eastern Time (US & Canada)
Bahrain	BH	Arab Standard Time	(UTC+03:00)	Kuwait, Riyadh
Bangladesh	BD	Bangladesh Standard Time	(UTC+06:00)	Dhaka
Barbados	BB	SA Western Standard Time	(UTC-04:00)	Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus, San Juan
Belarus	BY	Belarus Standard Time	(UTC+03:00)	Minsk
Belgium	BE	Romance Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Brussels, Copenhagen, Madrid, Paris
Belize	BZ	Central America Standard Time	(UTC-06:00)	Central America
Benin	BJ	W. Central Africa Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	West Central Africa
Bermuda	BM	Atlantic Standard Time	(UTC-04:00)	Atlantic Time (Canada)
Bhutan	BT	Bangladesh Standard Time	(UTC+06:00)	Dhaka
Bolivarian Republic of Venezuela	VE	Venezuela Standard Time	(UTC-04:30)	Caracas
Bolivia	BO	SA Western Standard Time	(UTC-04:00)	Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus, San Juan
Bonaire, Sint Eustatius and Saba	BQ	SA Western Standard Time	(UTC-04:00)	Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus, San Juan
Bosnia and Herzegovina	BA	Central European Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Sarajevo, Skopje, Warsaw, Zagreb
Botswana	BW	South Africa Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Harare, Pretoria

Bouvet Island	BV	UTC	(UTC)	Coordinated Universal Time
Brazil	BR	E. South America Standard Time	(UTC-03:00)	Brasilia
British Indian Ocean Territory	IO	Central Asia Standard Time	(UTC+06:00)	Astana
Brunei	BN	Singapore Standard Time	(UTC+08:00)	Kuala Lumpur, Singapore
Bulgaria	BG	FLE Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Helsinki, Kyiv, Riga, Sofia, Tallinn, Vilnius
Burkina Faso	BF	Greenwich Standard Time	(UTC)	Monrovia, Reykjavik
Burundi	BI	South Africa Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Harare, Pretoria
Cabo Verde	CV	Cape Verde Standard Time	(UTC-01:00)	Cabo Verde Is.
Cambodia	KH	SE Asia Standard Time	(UTC+07:00)	Bangkok, Hanoi, Jakarta
Cameroon	CM	W. Central Africa Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	West Central Africa
Canada	CA	Eastern Standard Time	(UTC-05:00)	Eastern Time (US & Canada)
Cayman Islands	KY	SA Pacific Standard Time	(UTC-05:00)	Bogota, Lima, Quito, Rio Branco
Central African Republic	CF	W. Central Africa Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	West Central Africa
Chad	TD	W. Central Africa Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	West Central Africa
Chile	CL	Pacific SA Standard Time	(UTC-03:00)	Santiago
China	CN	China Standard Time	(UTC+08:00)	Beijing, Chongqing, Hong Kong, Urumqi
Christmas Island	CX	SE Asia Standard Time	(UTC+07:00)	Bangkok, Hanoi, Jakarta
Cocos (Keeling) Islands	CC	Myanmar Standard Time	(UTC+06:30)	Yangon (Rangoon)

Colombia	CO	SA Pacific Standard Time	(UTC-05:00)	Bogota, Lima, Quito, Rio Branco
Comoros	KM	E. Africa Standard Time	(UTC+03:00)	Nairobi
Congo	CG	W. Central Africa Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	West Central Africa
Congo (DRC)	CD	W. Central Africa Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	West Central Africa
Cook Islands	CK	Hawaiian Standard Time	(UTC-10:00)	Hawaii
Costa Rica	CR	Central America Standard Time	(UTC-06:00)	Central America
Côte d'Ivoire	CI	Greenwich Standard Time	(UTC)	Monrovia, Reykjavik
Croatia	HR	Central European Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Sarajevo, Skopje, Warsaw, Zagreb
Cuba	CU	Eastern Standard Time	(UTC-05:00)	Eastern Time (US & Canada)
Curaçao	CW	SA Western Standard Time	(UTC-04:00)	Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus, San Juan
Cyprus	CY	E. Europe Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	E. Europe
Czech Republic	CZ	Central Europe Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Belgrade, Bratislava, Budapest, Ljubljana, Prague
Democratic Republic of Timor-Leste	TL	Tokyo Standard Time	(UTC+09:00)	Osaka, Sapporo, Tokyo
Denmark	DK	Romance Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Brussels, Copenhagen, Madrid, Paris
Djibouti	DJ	E. Africa Standard Time	(UTC+03:00)	Nairobi
Dominica	DM	SA Western Standard Time	(UTC-04:00)	Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus, San Juan
Dominican Republic	DO	SA Western Standard Time	(UTC-04:00)	Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus, San Juan

Ecuador	EC	SA Pacific Standard Time	(UTC-05:00)	Bogota, Lima, Quito, Rio Branco
Egypt	EG	Egypt Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Cairo
El Salvador	SV	Central America Standard Time	(UTC-06:00)	Central America
Equatorial Guinea	GQ	W. Central Africa Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	West Central Africa
Eritrea	ER	E. Africa Standard Time	(UTC+03:00)	Nairobi
Estonia	EE	FLE Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Helsinki, Kyiv, Riga, Sofia, Tallinn, Vilnius
Ethiopia	ET	E. Africa Standard Time	(UTC+03:00)	Nairobi
Falkland Islands (Islas Malvinas)	FK	SA Eastern Standard Time	(UTC-03:00)	Cayenne, Fortaleza
Faroe Islands	FO	GMT Standard Time	(UTC)	Dublin, Edinburgh, Lisbon, London
Fiji Islands	FJ	Fiji Standard Time	(UTC+12:00)	Fiji
Finland	FI	FLE Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Helsinki, Kyiv, Riga, Sofia, Tallinn, Vilnius
France	FR	Romance Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Brussels, Copenhagen, Madrid, Paris
French Guiana	GF	SA Eastern Standard Time	(UTC-03:00)	Cayenne, Fortaleza
French Polynesia	PF	Hawaiian Standard Time	(UTC-10:00)	Hawaii
French Southern and Antarctic Lands	TF	West Asia Standard Time	(UTC+05:00)	Ashgabat, Tashkent
Gabon	GA	W. Central Africa Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	West Central Africa
Gambia, The	GM	Greenwich Standard Time	(UTC)	Monrovia, Reykjavik
Georgia	GE	Georgian Standard Time	(UTC+04:00)	Tbilisi

Germany	DE	W. Europe Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Amsterdam, Berlin, Bern, Rome, Stockholm, Vienna
Ghana	GH	Greenwich Standard Time	(UTC)	Monrovia, Reykjavik
Gibraltar	GI	W. Europe Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Amsterdam, Berlin, Bern, Rome, Stockholm, Vienna
Greece	GR	GTB Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Athens, Bucharest
Greenland	GL	Greenland Standard Time	(UTC-03:00)	Greenland
Grenada	GD	SA Western Standard Time	(UTC-04:00)	Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus, San Juan
Guadeloupe	GP	SA Western Standard Time	(UTC-04:00)	Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus, San Juan
Guam	GU	West Pacific Standard Time	(UTC+10:00)	Guam, Port Moresby
Guatemala	GT	Central America Standard Time	(UTC-06:00)	Central America
Guernsey	GG	GMT Standard Time	(UTC)	Dublin, Edinburgh, Lisbon, London
Guinea	GN	Greenwich Standard Time	(UTC)	Monrovia, Reykjavik
Guinea-Bissau	GW	Greenwich Standard Time	(UTC)	Monrovia, Reykjavik
Guyana	GY	SA Western Standard Time	(UTC-04:00)	Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus, San Juan
Haiti	HT	Eastern Standard Time	(UTC-05:00)	Eastern Time (US & Canada)
Heard Island and McDonald Islands	HM	Mauritius Standard Time	(UTC+04:00)	Port Louis
Honduras	HN	Central America Standard Time	(UTC-06:00)	Central America
Hong Kong SAR	HK	China Standard Time	(UTC+08:00)	Beijing, Chongqing, Hong Kong, Urumqi

Hungary	HU	Central Europe Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Belgrade, Bratislava, Budapest, Ljubljana, Prague
Iceland	IS	Greenwich Standard Time	(UTC)	Monrovia, Reykjavik
India	IN	India Standard Time	(UTC+05:30)	Chennai, Kolkata, Mumbai, New Delhi
Indonesia	ID	SE Asia Standard Time	(UTC+07:00)	Bangkok, Hanoi, Jakarta
Iran	IR	Iran Standard Time	(UTC+03:30)	Tehran
Iraq	IQ	Arabic Standard Time	(UTC+03:00)	Baghdad
Ireland	IE	GMT Standard Time	(UTC)	Dublin, Edinburgh, Lisbon, London
Israel	IL	Israel Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Jerusalem
Italy	IT	W. Europe Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Amsterdam, Berlin, Bern, Rome, Stockholm, Vienna
Jamaica	JM	SA Pacific Standard Time	(UTC-05:00)	Bogota, Lima, Quito, Rio Branco
Jan Mayen	SJ	W. Europe Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Amsterdam, Berlin, Bern, Rome, Stockholm, Vienna
Japan	JP	Tokyo Standard Time	(UTC+09:00)	Osaka, Sapporo, Tokyo
Jersey	JE	GMT Standard Time	(UTC)	Dublin, Edinburgh, Lisbon, London
Jordan	JO	Jordan Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Amman
Kazakhstan	KZ	Central Asia Standard Time	(UTC+06:00)	Astana
Kenya	KE	E. Africa Standard Time	(UTC+03:00)	Nairobi
Kiribati	KI	UTC+12	(UTC+12:00)	Coordinated Universal Time+12
Korea	KR	Korea Standard Time	(UTC+09:00)	Seoul
Kosovo	XK	Central European Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Sarajevo, Skopje, Warsaw, Zagreb

Kuwait	KW	Arab Standard Time	(UTC+03:00)	Kuwait, Riyadh
Kyrgyzstan	KG	Central Asia Standard Time	(UTC+06:00)	Astana
Laos	LA	SE Asia Standard Time	(UTC+07:00)	Bangkok, Hanoi, Jakarta
Latvia	LV	FLE Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Helsinki, Kyiv, Riga, Sofia, Tallinn, Vilnius
Lebanon	LB	Middle East Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Beirut
Lesotho	LS	South Africa Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Harare, Pretoria
Liberia	LR	Greenwich Standard Time	(UTC)	Monrovia, Reykjavik
Libya	LY	E. Europe Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	E. Europe
Liechtenstein	LI	W. Europe Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Amsterdam, Berlin, Bern, Rome, Stockholm, Vienna
Lithuania	LT	FLE Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Helsinki, Kyiv, Riga, Sofia, Tallinn, Vilnius
Luxembourg	LU	W. Europe Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Amsterdam, Berlin, Bern, Rome, Stockholm, Vienna
Macao SAR	MO	China Standard Time	(UTC+08:00)	Beijing, Chongqing, Hong Kong, Urumqi
Macedonia, Former Yugoslav Republic of	MK	Central European Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Sarajevo, Skopje, Warsaw, Zagreb
Madagascar	MG	E. Africa Standard Time	(UTC+03:00)	Nairobi
Malawi	MW	South Africa Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Harare, Pretoria
Malaysia	MY	Singapore Standard Time	(UTC+08:00)	Kuala Lumpur, Singapore
Maldives	MV	West Asia Standard Time	(UTC+05:00)	Ashgabat, Tashkent
Mali	ML	Greenwich Standard Time	(UTC)	Monrovia, Reykjavik

Malta	MT	W. Europe Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Amsterdam, Berlin, Bern, Rome, Stockholm, Vienna
Man, Isle of	IM	GMT Standard Time	(UTC)	Dublin, Edinburgh, Lisbon, London
Marshall Islands	MH	UTC+12	(UTC+12:00)	Coordinated Universal Time+12
Martinique	MQ	SA Western Standard Time	(UTC-04:00)	Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus, San Juan
Mauritania	MR	Greenwich Standard Time	(UTC)	Monrovia, Reykjavik
Mauritius	MU	Mauritius Standard Time	(UTC+04:00)	Port Louis
Mayotte	YT	E. Africa Standard Time	(UTC+03:00)	Nairobi
Mexico	MX	Central Standard Time (Mexico)	(UTC-06:00)	Guadalajara, Mexico City, Monterrey
Micronesia	FM	West Pacific Standard Time	(UTC+10:00)	Guam, Port Moresby
Moldova	MD	GTB Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Athens, Bucharest
Monaco	MC	W. Europe Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Amsterdam, Berlin, Bern, Rome, Stockholm, Vienna
Mongolia	MN	Ulaanbaatar Standard Time	(UTC+08:00)	Ulaanbaatar
Montenegro	ME	Central European Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Sarajevo, Skopje, Warsaw, Zagreb
Montserrat	MS	SA Western Standard Time	(UTC-04:00)	Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus, San Juan
Morocco	MA	Morocco Standard Time	(UTC)	Casablanca
Mozambique	MZ	South Africa Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Harare, Pretoria
Myanmar	MM	Myanmar Standard Time	(UTC+06:30)	Yangon (Rangoon)
Namibia	NA	Namibia Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Windhoek

Nauru	NR	UTC+12	(UTC+12:00)	Coordinated Universal Time+12
Nepal	NP	Nepal Standard Time	(UTC+05:45)	Kathmandu
Netherlands	NL	W. Europe Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Amsterdam, Berlin, Bern, Rome, Stockholm, Vienna
New Caledonia	NC	Central Pacific Standard Time	(UTC+11:00)	Solomon Is., New Caledonia
New Zealand	NZ	New Zealand Standard Time	(UTC+12:00)	Auckland, Wellington
Nicaragua	NI	Central America Standard Time	(UTC-06:00)	Central America
Niger	NE	W. Central Africa Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	West Central Africa
Nigeria	NG	W. Central Africa Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	West Central Africa
Niue	NU	UTC-11	(UTC-11:00)	Coordinated Universal Time-11
Norfolk Island	NF	Central Pacific Standard Time	(UTC+11:00)	Solomon Is., New Caledonia
North Korea	KP	Korea Standard Time	(UTC+09:00)	Seoul
Northern Mariana Islands	MP	West Pacific Standard Time	(UTC+10:00)	Guam, Port Moresby
Norway	NO	W. Europe Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Amsterdam, Berlin, Bern, Rome, Stockholm, Vienna
Oman	OM	Arabian Standard Time	(UTC+04:00)	Abu Dhabi, Muscat
Pakistan	PK	Pakistan Standard Time	(UTC+05:00)	Islamabad, Karachi
Palau	PW	Tokyo Standard Time	(UTC+09:00)	Osaka, Sapporo, Tokyo
Palestinian Authority	PS	Egypt Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Cairo
Panama	PA	SA Pacific Standard Time	(UTC-05:00)	Bogota, Lima, Quito, Rio Branco

Papua New Guinea	PG	West Pacific Standard Time	(UTC+10:00)	Guam, Port Moresby
Paraguay	PY	Paraguay Standard Time	(UTC-04:00)	Asuncion
Peru	PE	SA Pacific Standard Time	(UTC-05:00)	Bogota, Lima, Quito, Rio Branco
Philippines	PH	Singapore Standard Time	(UTC+08:00)	Kuala Lumpur, Singapore
Pitcairn Islands	PN	Pacific Standard Time	(UTC-08:00)	Pacific Time (US & Canada)
Poland	PL	Central European Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Sarajevo, Skopje, Warsaw, Zagreb
Portugal	PT	GMT Standard Time	(UTC)	Dublin, Edinburgh, Lisbon, London
Puerto Rico	PR	SA Western Standard Time	(UTC-04:00)	Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus, San Juan
Qatar	QA	Arab Standard Time	(UTC+03:00)	Kuwait, Riyadh
Reunion	RE	Mauritius Standard Time	(UTC+04:00)	Port Louis
Romania	RO	GTB Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Athens, Bucharest
Russia	RU	Russian Standard Time	(UTC+03:00)	Moscow, St. Petersburg, Volgograd (RTZ 2)
Rwanda	RW	South Africa Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Harare, Pretoria
Saint Barthélemy	BL	SA Western Standard Time	(UTC-04:00)	Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus, San Juan
Saint Helena, Ascension and Tristan da Cunha	SH	Greenwich Standard Time	(UTC)	Monrovia, Reykjavik
Saint Kitts and Nevis	KN	SA Western Standard Time	(UTC-04:00)	Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus, San Juan
Saint Lucia	LC	SA Western Standard Time	(UTC-04:00)	Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus, San Juan
Saint Martin (French part)	MF	SA Western Standard Time	(UTC-04:00)	Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus, San Juan

Saint Pierre and Miquelon	PM	Greenland Standard Time	(UTC-03:00)	Greenland
Saint Vincent and the Grenadines	VC	SA Western Standard Time	(UTC-04:00)	Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus, San Juan
Samoa	WS	Samoa Standard Time	(UTC+13:00)	Samoa
San Marino	SM	W. Europe Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Amsterdam, Berlin, Bern, Rome, Stockholm, Vienna
São Tomé and Príncipe	ST	Greenwich Standard Time	(UTC)	Monrovia, Reykjavik
Saudi Arabia	SA	Arab Standard Time	(UTC+03:00)	Kuwait, Riyadh
Senegal	SN	Greenwich Standard Time	(UTC)	Monrovia, Reykjavik
Serbia	RS	Central Europe Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Belgrade, Bratislava, Budapest, Ljubljana, Prague
Seychelles	SC	Mauritius Standard Time	(UTC+04:00)	Port Louis
Sierra Leone	SL	Greenwich Standard Time	(UTC)	Monrovia, Reykjavik
Singapore	SG	Singapore Standard Time	(UTC+08:00)	Kuala Lumpur, Singapore
Sint Maarten (Dutch part)	SX	SA Western Standard Time	(UTC-04:00)	Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus, San Juan
Slovakia	SK	Central Europe Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Belgrade, Bratislava, Budapest, Ljubljana, Prague
Slovenia	SI	Central Europe Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Belgrade, Bratislava, Budapest, Ljubljana, Prague
Solomon Islands	SB	Central Pacific Standard Time	(UTC+11:00)	Solomon Is., New Caledonia
Somalia	SO	E. Africa Standard Time	(UTC+03:00)	Nairobi
South Africa	ZA	South Africa Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Harare, Pretoria

South Georgia and the South Sandwich Islands	GS	UTC-02	(UTC-02:00)	Coordinated Universal Time-02
South Sudan	SS	E. Africa Standard Time	(UTC+03:00)	Nairobi
Spain	ES	Romance Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Brussels, Copenhagen, Madrid, Paris
Sri Lanka	LK	Sri Lanka Standard Time	(UTC+05:30)	Sri Jayawardenepura
Sudan	SD	E. Africa Standard Time	(UTC+03:00)	Nairobi
Suriname	SR	SA Eastern Standard Time	(UTC-03:00)	Cayenne, Fortaleza
Svalbard	SJ	W. Europe Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Amsterdam, Berlin, Bern, Rome, Stockholm, Vienna
Swaziland	SZ	South Africa Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Harare, Pretoria
Sweden	SE	W. Europe Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Amsterdam, Berlin, Bern, Rome, Stockholm, Vienna
Switzerland	CH	W. Europe Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Amsterdam, Berlin, Bern, Rome, Stockholm, Vienna
Syria	SY	Syria Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Damascus
Taiwan	TW	Taipei Standard Time	(UTC+08:00)	Taipei
Tajikistan	TJ	West Asia Standard Time	(UTC+05:00)	Ashgabat, Tashkent
Tanzania	TZ	E. Africa Standard Time	(UTC+03:00)	Nairobi
Thailand	TH	SE Asia Standard Time	(UTC+07:00)	Bangkok, Hanoi, Jakarta
Togo	TG	Greenwich Standard Time	(UTC)	Monrovia, Reykjavik
Tokelau	TK	Tonga Standard Time	(UTC+13:00)	Nuku'alofa
Tonga	TO	Tonga Standard Time	(UTC+13:00)	Nuku'alofa

Trinidad and Tobago	TT	SA Western Standard Time	(UTC-04:00)	Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus, San Juan
Tunisia	TN	W. Central Africa Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	West Central Africa
Turkey	TR	Turkey Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Istanbul
Turkmenistan	TM	West Asia Standard Time	(UTC+05:00)	Ashgabat, Tashkent
Turks and Caicos Islands	TC	Eastern Standard Time	(UTC-05:00)	Eastern Time (US & Canada)
Tuvalu	TV	UTC+12	(UTC+12:00)	Coordinated Universal Time+12
U.S. Minor Outlying Islands	UM	UTC-11	(UTC-11:00)	Coordinated Universal Time-11
Uganda	UG	E. Africa Standard Time	(UTC+03:00)	Nairobi
Ukraine	UA	FLE Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Helsinki, Kyiv, Riga, Sofia, Tallinn, Vilnius
United Arab Emirates	AE	Arabian Standard Time	(UTC+04:00)	Abu Dhabi, Muscat
United Kingdom	GB	GMT Standard Time	(UTC)	Dublin, Edinburgh, Lisbon, London
United States	US	Pacific Standard Time	(UTC-08:00)	Pacific Time (US & Canada)
Uruguay	UY	Montevideo Standard Time	(UTC-03:00)	Montevideo
Uzbekistan	UZ	West Asia Standard Time	(UTC+05:00)	Ashgabat, Tashkent
Vanuatu	VU	Central Pacific Standard Time	(UTC+11:00)	Solomon Is., New Caledonia
Vatican City	VA	W. Europe Standard Time	(UTC+01:00)	Amsterdam, Berlin, Bern, Rome, Stockholm, Vienna
Vietnam	VN	SE Asia Standard Time	(UTC+07:00)	Bangkok, Hanoi, Jakarta
Virgin Islands, U.S.	VI	SA Western Standard Time	(UTC-04:00)	Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus, San Juan

Virgin Islands, British	VG	SA Western Standard Time	(UTC-04:00)	Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus, San Juan
Wallis and Futuna	WF	UTC+12	(UTC+12:00)	Coordinated Universal Time+12
Yemen	YE	Arab Standard Time	(UTC+03:00)	Kuwait, Riyadh
Zambia	ZM	South Africa Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Harare, Pretoria
Zimbabwe	ZW	South Africa Standard Time	(UTC+02:00)	Harare, Pretoria

# Keyboard Identifiers and Input Method Editors for Windows

9/25/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Use keyboard identifiers and Input Method Editors (IMEs) identify the keyboard type.

## Keyboard identifiers

The following table lists keyboard identifiers that are available for Windows. You can also install support for additional keyboard types. The valid keyboards that can be configured for your device are listed in the registry key: **HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\SYSTEM\ControlSet001\Control\Keyboard Layouts**

KEYBOARD	KEYBOARD IDENTIFIER (HEXADECIMAL)
Albanian	0x0000041c
Arabic (101)	0x00000401
Arabic (102)	0x00010401
Arabic (102) AZERTY	0x00020401
Armenian Eastern	0x0000042b
Armenian Phonetic	0x0002042b
Armenian Typewriter	0x0003042b
Armenian Western	0x0001042b
Assamese - Inscript	0x0000044d
Azerbaijani (Standard)	0x0001042c
Azerbaijani Cyrillic	0x0000082c
Azerbaijani Latin	0x0000042c
Bashkir	0x0000046d
Belarusian	0x00000423
Belgian (Comma)	0x0001080c
Belgian (Period)	0x00000813
Belgian French	0x0000080c

KEYBOARD	KEYBOARD IDENTIFIER (HEXADECIMAL)
Bangla (Bangladesh)	0x00000445
Bangla (India)	0x00020445
Bangla (India - Legacy)	0x00010445
Bosnian (Cyrillic)	0x0000201a
Buginese	0x000b0c00
Bulgarian	0x0030402
Bulgarian (Latin)	0x00010402
Bulgarian (phonetic layout)	0x00020402
Bulgarian (phonetic traditional)	0x00040402
Bulgarian (Typewriter)	0x00000402
Canadian French	0x00001009
Canadian French (Legacy)	0x00000c0c
Canadian Multilingual Standard	0x00011009
Central Atlas Tamazight	0x0000085f
Central Kurdish	0x00000429
Cherokee Nation	0x0000045c
Cherokee Nation Phonetic	0x0001045c
Chinese (Simplified) - US Keyboard	0x00000804
Chinese (Traditional) - US Keyboard	0x00000404
Chinese (Traditional, Hong Kong S.A.R.)	0x00000c04
Chinese (Traditional Macao S.A.R.) US Keyboard	0x00001404
Chinese (Simplified, Singapore) - US keyboard	0x00001004
Croatian	0x0000041a
Czech	0x00000405
Czech (QWERTY)	0x00010405

KEYBOARD	KEYBOARD IDENTIFIER (HEXADECIMAL)
Czech Programmers	0x00020405
Danish	0x00000406
Devanagari-INSCRIPT	0x00000439
Divehi Phonetic	0x00000465
Divehi Typewriter	0x00010465
Dutch	0x00000413
Dzongkha	0x00000C51
Estonian	0x00000425
Faeroese	0x00000438
Finnish	0x0000040b
Finnish with Sami	0x0001083b
French	0x0000040c
Futhark	0x00120c00
Georgian	0x00000437
Georgian (Ergonomic)	0x00020437
Georgian (QWERTY)	0x00010437
Georgian Ministry of Education and Science Schools	0x00030437
Georgian (Old Alphabets)	0x00040437
German	0x00000407
German (IBM)	0x00010407
Gothic	0x000c0c00
Greek	0x00000408
Greek (220)	0x00010408
Greek (220) Latin	0x00030408
Greek (319)	0x00020408

KEYBOARD	KEYBOARD IDENTIFIER (HEXADECIMAL)
Greek (319) Latin	0x00040408
Greek Latin	0x00050408
Greek Polytonic	0x00060408
Greenlandic	0x0000046f
Guarani	0x00000474
Gujarati	0x00000447
Hausa	0x00000468
Hebrew	0x0000040d
Hindi Traditional	0x00010439
Hungarian	0x0000040e
Hungarian 101-key	0x0001040e
Icelandic	0x0000040f
Igbo	0x00000470
India	0x000004009
Inuktitut - Latin	0x0000085d
Inuktitut - Naqittaut	0x0001045d
Irish	0x00001809
Italian	0x00000410
Italian (142)	0x00010410
Japanese	0x00000411
Javanese	0x00110c00
Kannada	0x0000044b
Kazakh	0x0000043f
Khmer	0x00000453
Khmer (NIDA)	0x00010453

KEYBOARD	KEYBOARD IDENTIFIER (HEXADECIMAL)
Korean	0x00000412
Kyrgyz Cyrillic	0x00000440
Lao	0x00000454
Latin American	0x0000080a
Latvian (Standard)	0x00020426
Latvian (Legacy)	0x00010426
Lisu (Basic)	0x00070c00
Lisu (Standard)	0x00080c00
Lithuanian	0x00010427
Lithuanian IBM	0x00000427
Lithuanian Standard	0x00020427
Luxembourgish	0x0000046e
Macedonia (FYROM)	0x0000042f
Macedonia (FYROM) - Standard	0x0001042f
Malayalam	0x0000044c
Maltese 47-Key	0x0000043a
Maltese 48-key	0x0001043a
Maori	0x00000481
Marathi	0x0000044e
Mongolian (Mongolian Script - Legacy)	0x00000850
Mongolian (Mongolian Script - Standard)	0x00020850
Mongolian Cyrillic	0x00000450
Myanmar	0x00010c00
N'ko	0x00090c00
Nepali	0x00000461

KEYBOARD	KEYBOARD IDENTIFIER (HEXADECIMAL)
New Tai Lue	0x00020c00
Norwegian	0x00000414
Norwegian with Sami	0x0000043b
Odia	0x00000448
Ol Chiki	0x000d0c00
Old Italic	0x000f0c00
Osmanya	0x000e0c00
Pashto (Afghanistan)	0x00000463
Persian	0x00000429
Persian (Standard)	0x00050429
Phags-pa	0x000a0c00
Polish (214)	0x00010415
Polish (Programmers)	0x00000415
Portuguese	0x00000816
Portuguese (Brazilian ABNT)	0x00000416
Portuguese (Brazilian ABNT2)	0x00010416
Punjabi	0x00000446
Romanian (Legacy)	0x00000418
Romanian (Programmers)	0x00020418
Romanian (Standard)	0x00010418
Russian	0x00000419
Russian - Mnemonic	0x00020419
Russian (Typewriter)	0x00010419
Sakha	0x00000485
Sami Extended Finland-Sweden	0x0002083b

KEYBOARD	KEYBOARD IDENTIFIER (HEXADECIMAL)
Sami Extended Norway	0x0001043b
Scottish Gaelic	0x00011809
Serbian (Cyrillic)	0x00000c1a
Serbian (Latin)	0x0000081a
Sesotho sa Leboa	0x0000046c
Setswana	0x00000432
Sinhala	0x0000045b
Sinhala - wij 9	0x0001045b
Slovak	0x0000041b
Slovak (QWERTY)	0x0001041b
Slovenian	0x00000424
Sora	0x00100c00
Sorbian Extended	0x0001042e
Sorbian Standard	0x0002042e
Sorbian Standard (Legacy)	0x0000042e
Spanish	0x0000040a
Spanish Variation	0x0001040a
Swedish	0x0000041d
Swedish with Sami	0x0000083b
Swiss French	0x0000100c
Swiss German	0x00000807
Syriac	0x0000045a
Syriac Phonetic	0x0001045a
Tai Le	0x00030c00
Tajik	0x00000428

KEYBOARD	KEYBOARD IDENTIFIER (HEXADECIMAL)
Tamil	0x00000449
Tatar	0x00010444
Tatar (Legacy)	0x00000444
Telugu	0x0000044a
Thai Kedmanee	0x0000041e
Thai Kedmanee (non-ShiftLock)	0x0002041e
Thai Pattachote	0x0001041e
Thai Pattachote (non-ShiftLock)	0x0003041e
Tibetan (PRC - Standard)	0x00010451
Tibetan (PRC - Legacy)	0x00000451
Tifinagh (Basic)	0x00050c00
Tifinagh (Full)	0x00060c00
Turkish F	0x0001041f
Turkish Q	0x0000041f
Turkmen	0x00000442
Uyghur	0x00010408
Uyghur (Legacy)	0x00000480
Ukrainian	0x00000422
Ukrainian (Enhanced)	0x00020422
United Kingdom	0x00000809
United Kingdom Extended	0x00000452
United States - Dvorak	0x00010409
United States - International	0x00020409
United States-Dvorak for left hand	0x00030409
United States-Dvorak for right hand	0x00040409

KEYBOARD	KEYBOARD IDENTIFIER (HEXADECIMAL)
United States - English	0x00000409
Urdu	0x00000420
Uyghur	0x00010480
Uzbek Cyrillic	0x00000843
Vietnamese	0x0000042a
Wolof	0x00000488
Yakut	0x00000485
Yoruba	0x0000046a

## Input Method Editors

LANGUAGE/REGION	INPUT PROFILE (LANGUAGE AND KEYBOARD PAIR)
Amharic - (Ethiopia)	am-ET: Amharic Input Method (045e:{E429B25A-E5D3-4D1F-9BE3-0C608477E3A1}{8F96574E-C86C-4bd6-9666-3F7327D4CBE8})
Chinese (PRC)	zh-CN: Microsoft Pinyin - Simple Fast (0804:{81D4E9C9-1D3B-41BC-9E6C-4B40BF79E35E}{FA550B04-5AD7-411f-A5AC-CA038EC515D7})
Chinese (Taiwan)	zh-TW: Chinese (Traditional) - New Phonetic (0404:{B115690A-EA02-48D5-A231-E3578D2FDF80}{B2F9C502-1742-11D4-9790-0080C882687E})
Chinese (Traditional DaYi)	0404:{E429B25A-E5D3-4D1F-9BE3-0C608477E3A1}{037B2C25-480C-4D7F-B027-D6CA6B69788A}
Chinese (Wubi)	0804:{6a498709-e00b-4c45-a018-8f9e4081ae40}{82590C13-F4DD-44f4-BA1D-8667246FDF8E}
Chinese (Yi)	ii-CN: Yi Input Method(0478:{E429B25A-E5D3-4D1F-9BE3-0C608477E3A1}{409C8376-007B-4357-AE8E-26316EE3FB0D})
Japanese (Japan)	ja-JP: Microsoft IME (0411:{03B5835F-F03C-411B-9CE2-AA23E1171E36}{A76C93D9-5523-4E90-AAFA-4DB112F9AC76})
Korean (Hangul)	ko-KR: Microsoft IME (0412:{A028AE76-01B1-46C2-99C4-ACD9858AE02F}{B5FE1F02-D5F2-4445-9C03-C568F23C99A1})
Korean (Old Hangul)	0412:{a1e2b86b-924a-4d43-80f6-8a820df7190}{b60af051-257a-46bc-b9d3-84dad819bafb}

LANGUAGE/REGION	INPUT PROFILE (LANGUAGE AND KEYBOARD PAIR)
Tigrinya (Ethiopia)	ti-ET: Tigrinya Input Method (0473:{E429B25A-E5D3-4D1F-9BE3-0C608477E3A1}{3CAB88B7-CC3E-46A6-9765-B772AD7761FF})

## Related topics

[Available Language Packs for Windows](#)

[Default Input Profiles \(Input Locales\) in Windows](#)

# Where is lp.cab?

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Language packs and language interface packs have been renamed in Windows 10 version 1607.

PACKAGE	NAME FORMAT	EXAMPLE
Language pack	Microsoft-Windows-SKU-Language-Pack_arch_locale.cab	Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Pack_x64_es-es.cab
Language interface pack	Microsoft-Windows-SKU-Language-Interface-Pack_arch_locale.cab	Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Interface-Pack_x64_ca-es-valencia.cab

**Note:** This change doesn't apply to WinPE, where language packs still use the name lp.cab.

## Related topics

[Language Packs](#)

[Available Language Packs for Windows](#)

[Features On Demand V2 \(Capabilities\)](#)

[Windows Language Pack Default Values](#)

[Default Input Locales for Windows Language Packs](#)

# Features On Demand V2 (Capabilities)

6/27/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Features on Demand v2 (Capabilities), introduced in Windows 10, are Windows feature packages that can be added at any time. Common features include language resources like handwriting recognition or the .NET Framework (.NetFx3).

When the PC needs a new feature, it can request the feature package from Windows Update.

Unlike previous feature packs, Features on Demand V2 can be applicable to multiple Windows builds, and can be added using DISM without knowing the build number. Always use Features on Demand that match the architecture of the operating system. Adding Features on Demand of the wrong architecture might not return an error immediately, but will likely cause functionality issues in the operating system.

**Note:** If you install an update (hotfix, general distribution release [GDR], or service pack) prior to installing a Feature on Demand or language pack, you'll have to reinstall the update. Always install language packs and Features on Demand before you install updates.

## Adding or removing features/capabilities

Use DISM to add or remove capabilities:

- Use the /Online option to add the capability to your PC.
- Use the /Image:<mount path> option to add the capability to a Windows image file (.wim).

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
/Add-Capability	Adds a capability to an image. For packages with dependencies this also pulls dependent packages. For example, if you add the Speech package, you'll also get the Text-to-speech and Basic packages in addition to Speech.	DISM.exe /Online /Add-Capability /CapabilityName:Language.Basic~~~en-US~0.0.1.0
/Get-Capabilities	Get capabilities in the image.	DISM /Online /Get-Capabilities
/Get-CapabilityInfo	Get information of a capability in the image.	DISM /Online /Get-CapabilityInfo /CapabilityName:Language.Basic~~~en-US~0.0.1.0
/Remove-Capability	Removes a capability from an image.  Note: You cannot remove a capability that other packages depend on. For example, if you have the French handwriting and basic capabilities installed, you can't remove the basic capability. This will fail.	DISM.exe /Online /Remove-Capability /CapabilityName:Language.Basic~~~en-US~0.0.1.0

# Capabilities reference

## .NET Framework

COMPONENT	DESCRIPTION
NetFx3	.NET 3.x Framework, a software framework required by many applications.

## Language capabilities

Not all capabilities are available for every language.

COMPONENT	SAMPLE FILE NAME	DEPENDENCIES	DESCRIPTION
Basic	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Basic-fr-fr-Package	None	Spell checking, text prediction, word breaking, and hyphenation if available for the language.  You must add this component before adding any of the following components.
Fonts	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Thai-Package	None	Fonts.  Required for some regions to render text that appears in documents. Example, th-TH requires the Thai font pack.
Optical character recognition	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-OCR-fr-fr-Package	Basic	Recognizes and outputs text in an image.
Handwriting recognition	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Handwriting-fr-fr-Package	Basic	Enables handwriting recognition for devices with pen input.
Text-to-speech	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-TextToSpeech-fr-fr-Package	Basic	Enables text to speech, used by Cortana and Narrator.
Speech recognition	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Speech-fr-fr-Package	Basic, Text-To-Speech	Recognizes voice input, used by Cortana and Windows Speech Recognition.

## Font capabilities

When adding languages for some regions, you'll need to add font capabilities.

REGION	DESCRIPTION	FONT CAPABILITY REQUIRED
am-ET	Amharic	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Ethi-Package
ar-SA	Arabic (Saudi Arabia)	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Arab-Package
ar-SY	Arabic (Syria)	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Syrc-Package
as-IN	Assamese	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Beng-Package
bn-BD	Bangla (Bangladesh)	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Beng-Package
bn-IN	Bangla (India)	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Beng-Package
chr-Cher-US	Cherokee (Cherokee)	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Cher-Package
fa-IR	Persian	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Arab-Package
gu-IN	Gujarati	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Gujr-Package
he-IL	Hebrew	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Hebr-Package
hi-IN	Hindi	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Deva-Package
ja-JP	Japanese	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Jpan-Package
km-KH	Khmer	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Khmr-Package
kn-IN	Kannada	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Knda-Package

REGION	DESCRIPTION	FONT CAPABILITY REQUIRED
kok-IN	Konkani	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Deva-Package
ko-KR	Korean	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Kore-Package
ku-Arab-IQ	Central Kurdish (Arabic)	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Arab-Package
lo-LA	Lao	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Laoo-Package
ml-IN	Malayalam	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Mlym-Package
mr-IN	Marathi	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Deva-Package
ne-NP	Nepali	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Deva-Package
or-IN	Odia	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Orya-Package
pa-Arab-PK	Punjabi (Arabic)	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Arab-Package
pa-IN	Punjabi	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Guru-Package
prs-AF	Dari	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Arab-Package
sd-Arab-PK	Sindhi (Arabic)	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Arab-Package
si-LK	Sinhala	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Sinh-Package
syr-SY	Syriac	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Syrc-Package

Region	Description	Font Capability Required
ta-IN	Tamil	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Taml-Package
te-IN	Telugu	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Telu-Package
th-TH	Thai	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Thai-Package
ti-ET	Tigrinya	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Ethi-Package
ug-CN	Uyghur	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Arab-Package
ur-PK	Urdu	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Arab-Package
zh-CN	Chinese (Simplified)	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Hans-Package
zh-TW	Chinese Traditional (Hong Kong, Macau and Taiwan)	Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-Hant-Package

#### Additional fonts available:

These fonts are optional and not required for any region.

Name	Description
Microsoft-Windows-LanguageFeatures-Fonts-PanEuropeanSupplementalFonts-Package	Pan-European Supplemental Fonts. Includes additional fonts: Arial Nova, Georgia Pro, Gill Sans Nova, Neue Haas Grotesk, Rockwell Nova, Verdana Pro.

#### Other region-specific requirements

Region	Capability	Description
zh-TW	Microsoft-Windows-InternationalFeatures-Taiwan-Package	Supplemental support for Taiwan date formatting requirements. Package will be provided to customers located in Taiwan.

#### List of all language-related features on demand

[Download the list of all available language FODs](#)

## Related topics

[Add Language Packs to Windows](#)

## **DISM Capabilities Package Servicing Command-Line Options**

# Configure Oobe.xml

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Oobe.xml is a content file used to collect text and images for customizing Windows® OOBE. To build a single Windows image that contains multiple languages to deliver to more than one country or region, you can add multiple Oobe.xml files to customize the content based on the language and country/region selections of the customer.

## In This Section

[Oobe.xml Settings](#)

[How Oobe.xml Works](#)

## Related topics

[Windows Deployment Options](#)

# Oobe.xml Settings

10/12/2017 • 6 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

This topic describes the settings that can be set in Oobe.xml.

## Oobe.xml Settings

The following shows how elements are ordered in Oobe.xml. Not all elements and sections are required for Windows to process Oobe.xml.

```

<FirstExperience>
 <oobe>
 <oem>
 <name></name>
 <eulafilename></eulafilename>
 <computername></computername>
 <registration>
 <title></title>
 <subtitle></subtitle>
 <customerinfo>
 <label></label>
 <defaultValue></defaultValue>
 </customerinfo>
 <checkbox1>
 <label></label>
 <defaultValue></defaultValue>
 </checkbox1>
 <checkbox2>
 <label></label>
 </checkbox2>
 <checkbox3>
 <label></label>
 </checkbox3>
 <link1>
 <label></label>
 </link1>
 <link2>
 <label></label>
 </link2>
 <link3>
 <label></label>
 </link3>
 <hideSkip></hideSkip>
 </registration>
 </oem>
 <defaults>
 <language></language>
 <location></location>
 <keyboard></keyboard>
 <adjustForDST></adjustForDST>
 </defaults>
 <hidSetup>
 <title></title>
 <mouseImagePath></mouseImagePath>
 <mouseText></mouseText>
 <mouseErrorImagePath></mouseErrorImagePath>
 <mouseErrorText></mouseErrorText>
 <keyboardImagePath></keyboardImagePath>
 <keyboardErrorImagePath></keyboardErrorImagePath>
 <keyboardText></keyboardText>
 <keyboardPINText></keyboardPINText>
 <keyboardPINImagePath></keyboardPINImagePath>
 <keyboardErrorText></keyboardErrorText>
 </hidSetup>
 </oobe>
</FirstExperience>

```

The following tables show descriptions and values for elements available in Oobe.xml.

The following table shows description for OEM customization and registration pages.

ELEMENT	SETTING	DESCRIPTION	VALUE
<oem>			

ELEMENT	SETTING	DESCRIPTION	VALUE
	<name>	Optional. Text to describe the name of the OEM.	String.
	<eulafilename>	Optional. Text with the filename of the EULA file.	Absolute path to the EULA .rtf file. The EULA .html document must be in the same folder. Windows knows to look for the .html file in that location.  <b>Note:</b> .htm files are ignored.  <b>Important:</b> All HTML files in OOBEM must use UTF-8 encoding.  See <a href="#">OEM license terms</a> to learn about creating an .html EULA file.
	<computername>	Optional. Text to describe the name of the computer	String.
	<registration>	Optional. Additional details are below.	
<registration>			
	<title>	Required if registration element is used. Text to title the Registration page.	String of up to 25 characters.
	<subtitle>	Required if registration element is used. Text to describe the Registration page.	
<customerinfo>			
	<label>	Text to label customerinfo. Required for customerinfo to appear.	String of up to 250 characters. We strongly recommend that you use no more than 100 characters because this length of text will fit on one line.
	<defaultvalue>	Value to set customerinfo as selected or not. If this field is checked, information from the four input fields will be provided via asymmetric key encryption. If not checked, no information from the four input fields will be provided.	True or False. True means the check box default condition is selected. False means the check box default condition isn't selected.
<checkbox1>			

ELEMENT	SETTING	DESCRIPTION	VALUE
	<label>	Text to label checkbox1. Required for checkbox1 to appear.	String of up to 250 characters. We strongly recommend that you use no more than 100 characters because this length of text will fit on one line.
	<defaultvalue>	Value to set checkbox1 as selected or not selected.	True or False. True means the check box default condition is selected. False means the check box default condition isn't selected.
<checkbox2>			
	<label>	Text to label checkbox2. Required for checkbox2 to appear.	String of up to 250 characters. We strongly recommend that you use no more than 100 characters because this length of text will fit on one line.
	<defaultvalue>	Value to set checkbox3 as selected or not selected.	True or False. True means the check box default condition is selected. False means the check box default condition isn't selected.
<checkbox3>			
	<label>	Text to label checkbox3. Required for checkbox3 to appear.	String of up to 250 characters. We strongly recommend that you use no more than 100 characters because this length of text will fit on one line.
	<defaultvalue>	Value to set checkbox3 as selected or not selected.	True or False. True means the check box default condition is selected. False means the check box default condition isn't selected.
<link1>			
	<label>	Label for the link to the HTML file. Required for link1 to appear.	String of up to 100 characters.
	<link>	File must be named linkfile1.html. OOBE searches for these files under the oobe\info folder. OOBE searches for files under the appropriate locale and language specific subfolders of oobe\info.	linkfile1.html

ELEMENT	SETTING	DESCRIPTION	VALUE
<link2>			
	<label>	Label for the link to the HTML file. Required for link2 to appear.	String of up to 100 characters.
	<link>	File must be named linkfile2.html. OOBE searches for these files under the oobe\info folder. OOBE searches for files under the appropriate locale and language specific subfolders of oobe\info.	linkfile2.html
<link3>			
	<label>	Label for the link to the HTML file. Required for link3 to appear.	String of up to 100 characters.
	<link>	File must be named linkfile3.html. OOBE searches for these files under the oobe\info folder. OOBE searches for files under the appropriate locale and language specific subfolders of oobe\info.	linkfile3.html
<hideSkip>		Optional. Controls whether or not the Skip button is displayed to the user. Default is False, resulting in the skip button being visible.	True or False. True means the skip button is not visible to the user. False means the skip button is displayed as an option to the user.

The following table shows values for language and location.

ELEMENT	SETTING	DESCRIPTION	VALUE
<defaults>			
	<language>	Specifies the default language on the system.	Decimal identifier for language. These values can be found in the following topic, <a href="#">Available Language Packs for Windows</a> .
	<location>	Specifies the default location on the system.	GeolD. <a href="#">A list of GeolDs is available here</a> .

ELEMENT	SETTING	DESCRIPTION	VALUE
	<keyboard>	Specifies the default timezone on the system.	Keyboard ID string. This can be found with the GetKeyboardLayoutList API. Or, by prepending a colon and the appropriate LCID to one of the keyboard layout IDs listed under HKLM\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Control\Keyboard Layouts
	<adjustforDST>	Specifies whether to adjust for Daylight Saving Time.	True or False. True means adjust for Daylight Saving Time based on the time zone. False means always remain on Standard Time.

The following table shows values for HID setup.

ELEMENT	SETTING	DESCRIPTION	VALUE
<hidsetup>			
	<title>		
	<mouseImagePath>	Absolute path to the mouse pairing instruction image. The image must not be larger than 630 x 372 pixels. It's scaled to fit in portrait mode or on small form factors.	Absolute path to the image.
	<mouseText>	Help text that displays at the bottom of the page.	String
	<mouseErrorImagePath>	Absolute path to the mouse pairing error image. The image must not be larger than 630 x 372 pixels. It's scaled to fit in portrait mode or on small form factors.	
	<mouseErrorText>	Error that displays to users along with mouse pairing error image.	String

Element	Setting	Description	Value
	<keyboardImagePath>	Absolute path to the first keyboard pairing instruction image. The image must not be larger than 630 x 372 pixels. It's scaled to fit in portrait mode or on small form factors.	
	<keyboardErrorImagePath>	Absolute path to the keyboard pairing error image. The image must not be larger than 630 x 372 pixels. It's scaled to fit in portrait mode or on small form factors.	Absolute path to the image
	<keyboardText>	Specifies the text to prompt the user to pair the keyboard.	String
	<keyboardPINText>	Specifies the prompt text for the user to enter a pin for the keyboard.	String
	<keyboardPINImagePath>	Absolute path to the keyboard pairing instruction image. The image must not be larger than 630 x 372 pixels. It's scaled to fit in portrait mode or on small form factors.	Absoulte path to image
	<keyboardErrorText>	Specifies the text to use when an error occurs when pairing the keyboard.	String

## How to Customize OOBE

### To customize OOBE by using Oobe.xml

1. Create a file named Oobe.xml and store this file in Windows\System32\Oobe\Info.
2. By using an XML editor or a text editor, such as Notepad, update Oobe.xml with the appropriate files, paths, and content.
3. Save your updated version of Oobe.xml in Windows\System32\Oobe\Info, or in the appropriate language-and locale-specific folders required for your customizations.
4. Test OOBE.

### Test OOBE

- a. On the **Start** menu, point to **All Programs**, and then click **Accessories**.

- b. Right-click the command prompt shortcut, and click **Run as administrator**. Accept the **User Account Control** dialog box.
- c. Navigate to \Windows\System32\Sysprep
- d. Run **sysprep /oobe**.
- e. Start the computer.

## Related topics

[Configure Oobe.xml](#)

# How Oobe.xml Works

7/13/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

**Oobe.xml** is a content file that you can use to organize text and images and to specify and preset settings for customizing the Windows first experience. You can use multiple **Oobe.xml** files for language- and region-specific license terms and settings so that users see appropriate information as soon as they start their PCs. By specifying information in the **Oobe.xml** file, OEMs direct users to perform only the core tasks that are required to set up their PCs.

Windows checks for and loads **Oobe.xml** in the following locations, in the following order:

1. %WINDIR%\System32\Oobe\Info\Oobe.xml
2. %WINDIR%\System32\Oobe\Info\Default\Oobe.xml
3. %WINDIR%\System32\Oobe\Info\Default\<language>\Oobe.xml
4. %WINDIR%\System32\Oobe\Info\<country/region>\Oobe.xml
5. %WINDIR%\System32\Oobe\Info\<country/region>\<language>\Oobe.xml

If you have customizations that span all countries/regions and languages, the Oobe.xml files can be placed in Location 1.

If you're shipping a single-region, single-language system, your custom **Oobe.xml** file should be placed in the \Info (Location 1) or \Default (Location 2) directory. Those locations are functionally equivalent.

If you're shipping to multiple countries/regions and your OOBE settings require customizations for individual countries/regions, each with a single language, all of your **Oobe.xml** files should be placed in Locations 4 and 5.

If you're shipping to multiple countries/regions with multiple languages, the following guidelines apply:

- Place country/region-specific information in Location 4.
- Place language-specific information for each respective country/region in Location 5.

## Single-language deployments

If you're delivering PCs to one country/region in a single language, you should place a single **Oobe.xml** file in %WINDIR%\System32\Oobe\Info. This file can contain all of your customizations to the Windows first experience.

For example, an English version of Windows that's delivered to the United States can have the following directory structure:

\%WINDIR%\System32\Oobe\Info\Oobe.xml

If you're delivering PCs to more than one country/region in a single language, and you plan to vary your customizations in different locations, place an **Oobe.xml** file in %WINDIR%\System32\Oobe\Info.

This file can contain the default regional settings that you plan to show to the user. You should also include a default set of customizations, in case the user selects a country/region that you haven't made specific customizations for. The **Oobe.xml** file should also contain the <eulafilename> node with the name of the customized license terms that you plan to use.

Place an **Oobe.xml** file for each country/region that contains unique customized content in

\%WINDIR%\System32\<country/region that you're deploying to>\<language that you're deploying in>. After the user has chosen a country/region, these files are used to display additional customizations.

For example, an English version of Windows delivered to the United States and Canada can have the following directory structure:

\%WINDIR%\System32\Oobe\Info\Oobe.xml (EULA file name and regional settings)

\%WINDIR%\System32\Oobe\Info\244\1033\Oobe.xml (United States custom content)

\%WINDIR%\System32\Oobe\Info\39\1033\Oobe.xml (Canada custom content)

## Multiple-language or region deployments

If you're delivering PCs to one or more countries/regions and are delivering PCs running Windows with additional language packs, place an **Oobe.xml** file in \%WINDIR%\System32\Oobe\Info. This file can contain the default regional settings that you plan to show to the user. You should also include a default set of customizations, in case the user selects a country/region that you haven't made specific customizations for. This **Oobe.xml** should also contain the <eulafilename> node with the name of the custom license terms that you plan to use.

Place an **Oobe.xml** file for each country/region that contains unique customized content in \%WINDIR%\System32\<country/region that you're deploying to>\<language that you're deploying in>. After the user has chosen a country/region, this file is used to display additional customizations.

For example, an English version of Windows that's delivered to the United States and Canada would use the following directory structure:

\%WINDIR%\System32\Oobe\Info\Oobe.xml (logo, EULA file name, and regional settings)

\%WINDIR%\System32\Oobe\Info\244\1033\Oobe.xml (United States custom content)

\%WINDIR%\System32\Oobe\Info\39\1033\Oobe.xml (Canada custom content)

If you're delivering PCs to one or more countries/regions and are delivering PCs running Windows with additional language packs, place an **Oobe.xml** file in \%WINDIR%\System32\Oobe\Info. This **Oobe.xml** file should contain the <eulafilename> node with the name of the customized EULA that you plan to use.

Place an **Oobe.xml** for each Windows language that you're including in

\%WINDIR%\System32\Default\<language that you're deploying in>. These files should contain the default regional settings that you plan to show for a given language, as well as a default set of customizations, in case the user selects a country/region that you haven't made specific customizations for.

Place an **Oobe.xml** file for each country/region that contains customized content in \%WINDIR%\System32\<country/region that you're deploying to>\<language that you're deploying in>. After the user has chosen a country/region, this file is used to display your additional customizations.

For example, a version of Windows with English and French language packs that's delivered to the United States and Canada would use the following directory structure:

- Logo and EULA:

\%WINDIR%\System32\Oobe\Info\Oobe.xml (logo and EULA file name)

- Regional settings and fallback for content that's not localized for the specific country/region:

\%WINDIR%\System32\Oobe\Info\Default\1033\Oobe.xml (default regional settings and English content if the user chooses a country/region other than the United States or Canada)

\%WINDIR%\System32\Oobe\Info\Default\1036\Oobe.xml (default regional settings and French content if the user chooses a country/region other than United States or Canada)

- Country-specific or region-specific content in the appropriate languages

**\%WINDIR%\System32\Oobe\Info\244\1033\Oobe.xml** (United States custom content in English)

**\%WINDIR%\System32\Oobe\Info\244\1036\Oobe.xml** (United States custom content in French)

**\%WINDIR%\System32\Oobe\Info\39\1033\Oobe.xml** (Canada custom content in English)

**\%WINDIR%\System32\Oobe\Info\39\1036\Oobe.xml** (Canada custom content in French)

### **Country/region folder format**

To identify the country/region:

1. Look up the country/region GeolD identifier using the [Table of Geographical Locations](#) on **MSDN**. These values are presented in hexadecimal.
2. Convert the value from hexadecimal to decimal, and use that value for the folder name. For example, to create a folder for Chile (GeolD 0x2E), name the folder "46".

**\%WINDIR%\System32\Oobe\Info\46\Oobe.xml**

### **Language folder format**

To identify the language, use the decimal version of the Locale ID (LCID) value. For example, to create a Spanish folder, name the folder "3082".

**%WINDIR%\System32\Oobe\Info\Default\3082\Oobe.xml**

There are many more LCIDs than languages. A few LCIDs correlate to the languages that can be released with Windows. For more information about which languages release with Windows, at what level of localization, and their decimal identifiers, see [Available Language Packs](#) on **TechNet**.

# Work with Product Keys and Activation

7/7/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can enter a product key during an automated installation of Windows by including it in your answer file.

You can also use product keys to select an image to install during an automated Windows installation.

## Select Which Windows Edition to Install

To select a Windows edition to install, you can do one of the following:

- Install Windows manually, without an answer file. Windows Setup installs the default edition from the Windows product DVD.
- Install Windows with an answer file, and include a product key in Microsoft-Windows-Setup\ UserData\ ProductKey\ `key`. Each product key is specific to a Windows edition. Entering the product key in this setting does not activate Windows.
- Install Windows with an answer file, and then manually type in a product key during Windows Setup. The product key selects a Windows edition to install.

### Warning

If you have multiple Windows images with the same Windows edition that are stored in the same Windows image file (.wim), you can use the setting: Microsoft-Windows-Setup\ ImageInstall\ OSImage\ InstallFrom\ `MetaData` to differentiate between them. You must still provide a product key using one of the methods listed in the previous list.

For information about managing Windows product keys when changing the Windows image to a higher edition, see [Change the Windows Image to a Higher Edition Using DISM](#).

## Activate Windows

To automatically activate Windows by using a product key, you can do one of the following:

- Use the Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup\ `ProductKey` unattend setting. You can use either a single-use product key or a Volume License Multiple Activation Key. For more information, see the [Volume Activation Planning Guide](#).

The product key used to activate Windows must match the Windows edition that you install. If you use a product key to select a Windows edition, we recommend using the same key to activate Windows, so that the edition you install is the same as the edition that you activate.

- Original Equipment Manufacturers (OEMs) can use OEM-specific activation tools.

### Warning

In most Windows deployment scenarios, you no longer have to use the `SkipRearm` answer file setting to reset the Windows Product Activation clock when you run the **Sysprep** command multiple times on a computer.

The `SkipRearm` setting is used to specify the Windows licensing state. If you specify a retail product key or volume license product key, Windows is automatically activated. You can run the **Sysprep** command up to 8 additional times on a single Windows image. After running Sysprep 8 times on a Windows image, you must recreate your Windows image. For more information about Windows components and settings that you can add to an answer file, see the [Unattended Windows Setup Reference](#).

## Related topics

[Windows Deployment Options](#)

[How Configuration Passes Work](#)

[Sysprep \(Generalize\) a Windows installation](#)

[Change the Windows Image to a Higher Edition Using DISM](#)

# Battery Life

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

In this section, you will learn about managing battery life when you deploy Windows 8 and Windows Server® 2012 on different hardware and software platforms.

## In This Section

<a href="#">Managing Battery Life and Power Consumption Overview</a>	Describes considerations that can help you to meet battery life goals, and lists common Windows® power policy settings that can affect battery life.
<a href="#">Set the Default Power Plan</a>	Describes how to import a power plan and how to set a power plan to the active power plan.
<a href="#">Create a Custom Power Plan</a>	Describes how to create a power plan by using Control Panel, how to export the power plan, and how to import the power plan on a destination computer.
<a href="#">Fine-Tune a Custom Power Plan</a>	Describes how to configure a customized Windows power plan by using powercfg command-line options.
<a href="#">Test Battery Life and Power Consumption</a>	Describes how to test power consumption.

## Related topics

[Mobile Battery Life Solutions: A Guide for Mobile Platform Professionals](#)

[Windows Performance Toolkit](#)

[Power Policy Configuration and Deployment in Windows](#)

# Managing Battery Life and Power Consumption Overview

6/6/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Windows® -based laptops must meet energy-efficiency regulatory requirements, such as the United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) Energy Star program. Furthermore, surveys have shown that longer battery life for laptops continues to be a leading request from consumers.

Hardware and software factors such as a low-capacity battery, a processor-intensive driver, or a poorly configured power setting can cause a significant reduction in battery life. When you design your system, you should experiment with multiple configurations of each of these factors to find the best balance of battery life and performance.

## Hardware

This section lists a few of the common hardware design considerations that can affect battery life.

- **Battery capacity.** Check with your battery manufacturer to determine the battery capacity.
- **Other hardware components.** Ask your hardware component manufacturers for power-consumption test results for each hardware component.

For information on each of these battery-life factors, see [Mobile Battery Life Solutions: A Guide for Mobile Platform Professionals](#).

## Software

This section lists a few of the common software design considerations that can affect battery life.

- **Drivers.** As you add each new driver to the system, observe the driver's impact on power consumption. A single poorly performing driver can greatly affect system performance.
- **Applications, services, and other software.** As you add each new software application to the system, observe the application's impact on power consumption. A single poorly performing application can greatly affect system performance.
- **Windows power policy settings.** Optimize Windows power policy settings to balance performance needs and battery life. For more information, see the section: [Windows Power Policy Settings](#).

For more information about each of these battery life factors, see [Mobile Battery Life Solutions: A Guide for Mobile Platform Professionals](#).

## Windows Power Policy Settings

This section lists a few of the common configurable settings that can affect battery life. Test these and other settings to create an optimal power plan for your system.

Settings can be specific to whether the computer is plugged in (AC) or on battery power (DC). You can configure the following settings:

- **Display brightness**

The most effective way to reduce the power consumption on a mobile computer when the display is in use

is to reduce the display brightness. The attached display is the largest power consumer. The display uses up to 40 percent of the overall system power consumption.

By default, Windows significantly reduces the display brightness when a mobile computer is on battery power. Depending on your hardware and the needs of your users, you can adjust the default display brightness setting lower to increase battery life, or higher to make the display easier to read.

- **Display timeout**

Mobile PC battery life can be significantly extended by using a short display idle timeout.

**Note**

**Display dimming:** Mobile computers that run Windows 8.1 and Windows Server 2012 R2 will dim the display 15 seconds before the **Display timeout**. This value is no longer configurable.

- **Hard disk timeout**

Although the hard disk drive is not the primary power consumer in the typical mobile computer, you may be able to save power by increasing the hard drive timeout.

When the hard drive is idle for a period of time, the hard drive's motor stops. The next time that the computer needs to access the hard drive, the system response may be slow while the hard drive begins to spin again.

Depending on your hardware and the needs of your users, you can adjust the default hard disk timeout lower to increase battery life, or higher to increase the availability of the hard disk.

- **Sleep mode**

By default, if the processor is idle, and the end user is not using the computer, Windows enters low-power sleep mode or hibernate mode. The next time that the computer needs processor power, system response may be slow while the processor recovers.

Depending on your hardware and the needs of your users, you can adjust the default sleep timer lower to increase battery life, or higher to increase the availability of the processor.

- **Wireless adapter power-save modes**

By default, Windows configures the 802.11 power-save mode to **Maximum Performance** for both AC and battery power. This configuration keeps the wireless adapter active, even when data is not being transferred. This alleviates compatibility problems between some wireless adapters and access points that are not compatible with 802.11 power-save modes.

If you create custom power policies to save more power and help extend battery life, consult with the manufacturer of the wireless adapter about the effects of changing the power policy value to **Maximum Power Saving** or **Medium Power Saving**.

You can manually modify the power settings for each built-in power configuration. To learn more about these settings and other common configurable power settings, see [Mobile Battery Life Solutions: A Guide for Mobile Platform Professionals](#) and [Power Policy Configuration and Deployment in Windows](#).

## Related topics

[Mobile Battery Life Solutions: A Guide for Mobile Platform Professionals](#)

[Set the Default Power Plan](#)

[Create a Custom Power Plan](#)

[Windows Performance Toolkit](#)



# Set the Default Power Plan

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Use these instructions to set a default power plan when deploying Windows 8 or Windows Server® 2012 PCs. A power plan is also known as a *power scheme*.

## Note

This page gives information about manufacturing PCs.

To modify a power plans on your own PC, see [Power Plans: Frequently asked questions](#).

## To set the default power plan

1. On your technician computer, open an elevated command prompt.
2. If you want to use a power plan from another computer, import the power plan.

For example, to import a power plan that is named OutdoorPlan, type the following at a command prompt:

```
powercfg -IMPORT C:\OutdoorPlan.pow
```

3. Type the following to find the GUID for all the power plans on the computer:

```
powercfg -LIST
```

The computer returns the list of available power plans. The following examples refer to these plans as *guidPlan1* and *guidPlan2*.

```
Existing Power Schemes (* Active)

Power Scheme GUID: {guidPlan1} (Balanced) *
Power Scheme GUID: {guidPlan2} (Power saver)
```

4. Note the GUIDs that are listed next to the power plans that you want to change.
5. Set the power plan that you want to set as the default as the active power plan. For example, you can use the following command:

```
powercfg -SETACTIVE {guidPlan2}
```

where *guidPlan2* is the name of the power plan.

This command can be run by using a custom command in an answer file, or by opening an elevated command prompt in audit mode.

## To confirm that the default power plan

1. Click **Start**, and then select **Control Panel**.
2. Click **Hardware and Sound**, and then select **Power Options**.

The **Power Options** Control Panel opens, and the power plans appear.

3. Review each power plan.
4. Verify that the correct plan is set as the active power plan. The computer shows an asterisk (\*) next to the active power plan.

## Related topics

[Add a Custom Command to an Answer File](#)

[Boot Windows to Audit Mode or OOB](#)

[Create a Custom Power Plan](#)

[Power Policy Configuration and Deployment in Windows](#)

# Create a Custom Power Plan

7/13/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

A *power plan* is a collection of hardware and system settings that manages how computers use and conserve power. A power plan is also known as a *power scheme*. You can create custom power plans that are optimized for specific computers.

By default, Windows 8 and Windows Server® 2012 include three power plans: **Balanced**, **Power Saver**, and **High Performance**. You can customize these existing plans for your systems, create new plans that are based on the existing plans, or create a new power plan from scratch.

Optimizing Windows power plans can help improve battery life. However, a single poorly performing application, device, or system feature can significantly reduce battery life. For information about factors that influence battery life, see [Managing Battery Life and Power Consumption Overview](#).

## In this topic

[Creating a customized power plan](#)

[Listing the available power plans](#)

[Deploying a power plan](#)

### **Creating a customized power plan**

1. Click **Start**, and then select **Control Panel**.
2. Click **Hardware and Sound**, and then select **Power Options**.
3. The **Power Options** Control Panel opens, and the power plans appear.
4. Click **Create a power plan**.
5. Follow the on-screen instructions to create and customize a power plan file that is based on an existing plan. Name your power plan "OutdoorPlan".

#### **Note**

You can manage most common power plan settings through Control Panel. To fine-tune settings that do not appear in Control Panel, see [Fine-Tune a Custom Power Plan](#).

### **Listing the available power plans**

- On your technician computer, at an elevated command prompt, type the following:

```
powercfg -LIST
```

The computer will return the list of available power plans. In the following example, these plans are *Balanced*, *Power saver*, and *OutdoorPlan*.

```
Existing Power Schemes (* Active)

Power Scheme GUID: {guidPlan1} (Balanced) *
Power Scheme GUID: {guidPlan2} (Power saver)
Power Scheme GUID: {guidPlan3} (OutdoorPlan)
```

Note the GUIDs that are listed next to the power plans that you want to capture.

## Deploying a power plan

After you have created power plans that work for your system, you can deploy the power plans to your destination computers.

To export the OutdoorPlan power plan that you created on your technician computer, open an elevated command prompt, and then type the following

```
powercfg -EXPORT C:\OutdoorPlan.pow {guidPlan-New}
```

This creates a new power plan file.

To learn more, see [Set the Default Power Plan](#).

## Related topics

[Managing Battery Life and Power Consumption Overview](#)

[Test Battery Life and Power Consumption](#)

[Set the Default Power Plan](#)

# Fine-Tune a Custom Power Plan

7/13/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

A power plan is a collection of hardware and system settings that manages how computers use and conserve power. You can create custom power plans that are optimized for specific computers.

You can manage most common power plan settings through Control Panel. For more information, see [Create a Custom Power Plan](#). To fine-tune hardware-specific configurations that are not configurable through Control Panel, use the PowerCfg tool.

## Manually Modifying a Power Plan

You can customize all configurable Windows power options by using the `powercfg` command from an elevated command prompt. This includes hardware-specific configurations that are not configurable through Control Panel.

### To list the available power plans

- On your technician computer, at an elevated command prompt, type the following:

```
powercfg -LIST
```

The computer will return the list of available power plans. In the following examples, these plans are *Balanced* and *Power saver*.

```
Existing Power Schemes (* Active)

Power Scheme GUID: {guidPlan1} (Balanced) *
Power Scheme GUID: {guidPlan2} (Power saver)
```

Note the GUIDs that are listed next to the power plans that you want to change. You will need these GUIDs to manually update settings and capture the power plans.

### To set the power plan to be modified as active

- To modify a plan, use the GUID of the power plan that you want to change to set that power plan as the active power plan. For example:

```
powercfg -SETACTIVE {guidPlan2}
```

### To adjust the settings

- This section describes how to manually configure other power configuration settings by using the `powercfg` command. Test these settings to create an optimal power plan for your system.

#### Find information about the existing power setting.

- At an elevated command prompt, type the following:

```
powercfg -QUERY
```

The computer displays information for all of the power settings for this plan.

- b. Find the GUID for the subgroup of the setting that you want to change. For example, to modify a display setting, find the GUID for the Display subgroup:

```
Subgroup GUID: {guidSubgroup-Display} (Display)
```

- c. Find the GUID for the setting that you want to change. For example, to modify the Display Brightness setting, find the GUID for the (Display brightness) setting:

```
Power Setting GUID: {guidPowerSetting-Brightness} (Display brightness)
```

- d. Review the information from the query command, review the possible settings, and determine a value that works for your computer.

**Note**

You must enter these values by using decimal integers. However, the values appear on the screen as hexadecimal values that are specific to the setting.

For example, to set the maximum display brightness to 50 percent brightness, enter the value as 50. When you use the `powercfg -QUERY` command to confirm the setting, the value appears as 0x00000032.

```
Power Setting GUID: {guidPowerSetting-Brightness} (Display brightness)
Minimum Possible Setting: 0x00000000
Maximum Possible Setting: 0x00000064
Possible Settings increment: 0x00000001
Possible Settings units: %
Current AC Power Setting Index: 0x00000064
Current DC Power Setting Index: 0x00000032
```

2. Adjust the value for the power setting for times when the computer is plugged in. For example, to set the display brightness level to 100 percent when the computer is plugged in, type the following:

```
powercfg -SETACVALUEINDEX {guidPlan-New} {guidSubgroup-Display} {guidPowerSetting-Brightness} 100
```

3. Adjust the value for the power setting for times when the computer is on battery power. For example, to set the display brightness level to 75 percent when the computer is on battery power, type the following:

```
powercfg -SETDCVALUEINDEX {guidPlan-New} {guidSubgroup-Display} {guidPowerSetting-Brightness} 75
```

4. Use the **Query** command to verify the setting. For example:

```
powercfg -QUERY
```

The computer shows the new power setting index in hexadecimal notation. For example:

```
Power Setting GUID: {guidPowerSetting-Brightness} (Display brightness)
Minimum Possible Setting: 0x00000000
Maximum Possible Setting: 0x00000064
Possible Settings increment: 0x00000001
Possible Settings units: %
Current AC Power Setting Index: 0x00000064
Current DC Power Setting Index: 0x0000004b
```

The hexadecimal value 0x00000064 represents 100 percent display brightness when the computer is plugged in. The hexadecimal value 0x0000004b represents 75 percent display brightness when the computer is using battery power.

## Related topics

[Create a Custom Power Plan](#)

[Set the Default Power Plan](#)

# Test Battery Life and Power Consumption

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Compare the overall system power to the power that the system consumes when you use a clean installation. With preinstalled applications and power policies, some computers have shown a 40 percent decrease in battery performance compared with a clean Windows® installation. However, through careful engineering, computers can achieve equal or improved performance over a clean Windows installation.

## Determining the causes of heavy battery use

You can determine the causes of heavy battery use by looking at the way that the system uses resources. You can find many system problems by looking at processor idle time. Use a performance tool, such as Windows Assessments or the Windows Performance Toolkit, to investigate when the system has spikes in power use. Performance tools can help you target the applications that are causing increased processor use.

For more information, see [Windows Assessment Toolkit](#) and [Windows Performance Toolkit](#).

## Related topics

[Set the Default Power Plan](#)

[Create a Custom Power Plan](#)

# Understanding Servicing Strategies

8/24/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

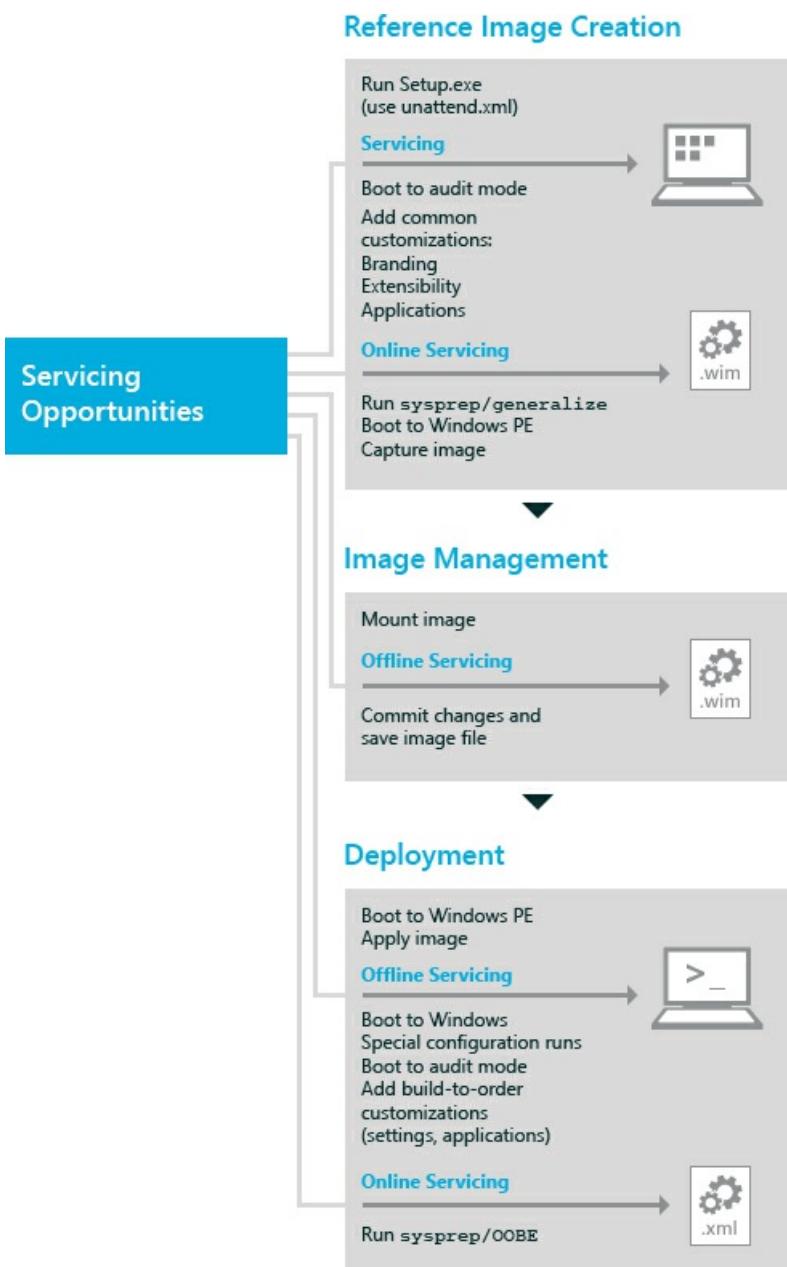
You can service, or make changes to, a Windows image at various phases of deployment in the following ways: offline, during an automated installation, or online. The phase of deployment that you select depends on your deployment strategy.

**Offline Servicing:** Allows you to add and remove updates, drivers, language packs, and configure other settings without booting Windows. Offline servicing is an efficient way to manage existing images that are stored on a server because it eliminates the need for re-creating updated images. You can perform offline servicing on an image that is mounted or applied to a drive or directory.

**Servicing an Image by Using Windows Setup:** Enables you to provide an answer file (Unattend.xml) that Windows Setup uses to make changes to your image at the time of deployment. The answer file contains specific servicing operations such as adding drivers, updates, language packs, and other packages. Servicing an image during an automated installation can be easily implemented and is ideal for Setup-based deployment.

**Servicing a Running Operating System:** Also known as online servicing, this method involves booting to audit mode to add drivers, applications, and other packages. Online servicing is ideal for drivers when the driver packages have co-installers or application dependencies. It is also efficient when most of your servicing packages have installers, or the updates are in .msi or KB.exe file formats, or the applications rely on Windows installed services and technologies (such as the .NET Framework or full Plug and Play support).

The following illustration shows the servicing opportunities available during the various phases of deployment.



## Offline Servicing

Offline servicing was introduced with Windows Vista. Offline servicing occurs when you modify or service a Windows image entirely offline without booting it first. For Windows Vista, the Package Manager command-line tool was provided for updating Windows images. In Windows 7 and Windows 8, Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) replaces Package Manager. For Windows 8 and later, most operating system servicing operations can be performed on an offline Windows image by using the DISM command-line tool. DISM is installed with Windows starting with Windows 8, and is also distributed in the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (Windows ADK). For more information about DISM, see [DISM - Deployment Image Servicing and Management Technical Reference for Windows](#).

DISM can be used on an offline image to:

- Mount, remount, and unmount an image in a .wim file for servicing.
- Query information about a Windows image.
- Add, remove, and enumerate drivers provided as .inf files.
- Add, remove, and enumerate packages, including language packs, provided as .cab files.
- Add .msu files.

- Configure international settings.
- Enable, disable, and enumerate Windows operating system features.
- Upgrade to a higher edition of Windows.
- Check the applicability of a Windows Installer application patch (.msp file).
- Enumerate applications and application patches installed in a Windows image.
- Add siloed provisioning packages to an applied image.
- Apply the offline servicing section of an unattended answer file.
- Update a Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE) image.

For more information about how to service a mounted image, see [Service a Mounted Windows Image](#).

For more information about how to service an applied image, see [Service an Applied Windows Image](#).

## Servicing an Image by Using Windows Setup

Use an unattended answer file with Windows Setup to service an image during the various configuration passes of Windows Setup. The answer file contains all the settings that are used to configure and update the Windows image. Setup calls the answer file multiple times during the deployment process. After the operating system is installed, you can boot to audit mode or Windows Welcome. For more information about Windows Setup, see [Windows Setup Technical Reference](#). For more information about configuration passes, see [Windows Setup Configuration Passes](#).

An unattended answer file can be used during setup to:

- Add or remove a language pack.
- Configure international settings.
- Add and remove drivers.
- Add and remove packages.
- Enable and disable Windows operating system features.

## Servicing a Running Operating System

There are several tools that can be used to service a running operating system (also known as servicing an online image). You should boot to audit mode to add updates to your Windows image. Audit mode does not require settings in Windows Welcome to be applied, allowing quicker access to the desktop. After you have booted to audit mode, you can add Plug and Play device drivers, install applications and system components, and test the validity of the installation. For more information about how to use audit mode, see [Boot Windows to Audit Mode or OOBE](#).

The following tools are typically used to update a running Windows operating system:

- Use DISM to enumerate drivers, international settings, packages, and features, and to apply unattended answer file settings. For more information, see [DISM - Deployment Image Servicing and Management Technical Reference for Windows](#).
- Use DPInst to add drivers for detected hardware. For information about DPInst and other tools available in the Windows Driver Kit (WDK), see [Download kits and tools for Windows](#).
- Use PnUtil to add, remove, and enumerate drivers. For more information, see [Use PnUtil at a command line to install a Plug and Play device](#).

- Use Windows Update Stand-Alone Installer to add service packs or other .msu files. For more information, see [Description of the Windows Update Stand-alone Installer \(Wusa.exe\) and of .msu Files in Windows](#)
- Use LPKSetup to add or remove language packs.

## Related topics

[Deployment Image Servicing and Management \(DISM\) Best Practices](#)

[DISM - Deployment Image Servicing and Management Technical Reference for Windows](#)

# Audit Mode Overview

7/13/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

When Windows boots, it starts in either Out-Of-Box Experience (OOBE) mode or in audit mode. OOBE is the default out-of-box experience that allows end users to enter their account information, select language, accept the Microsoft Terms of Service, and set up networking.

You can configure Windows to boot to audit mode instead. In audit mode, you can make additional changes to the Windows installation before you send the computer to a customer or capture the image for reuse in your organization. For example, you can install drivers included in a driver package, install applications, or make other updates that require the Windows installation to be running. When you use an answer file, Windows processes settings in the [auditSystem](#) and [auditUser](#) configuration passes.

When you boot to audit mode, you log into the system using the built-in administrator account. After you log on to the system, the built-in administrator account is immediately disabled during the [auditUser](#) configuration pass. The next time that the computer reboots, the built-in administrator account remains disabled. For more information, see [Enable and Disable the Built-in Administrator Account](#).

## Important

- If you are in audit mode and a password-protected screen saver starts, you cannot log back on to the system. The built-in administrator account that was used to log on to audit mode is immediately disabled after logon.

To disable the screen saver, either change the power plan through Control Panel or configure and deploy a custom plan. For more information, see [Create a Custom Power Plan](#).

- Settings in an unattended answer file from the [oobeSystem](#) configuration pass do not appear in audit mode.

## Benefits of using Audit Mode

In audit mode, you can do the following:

- **Bypass OOBE.** You can access the desktop as quickly as possible. You do not have to configure default settings such as a user account, location, and time zone.
- **Install applications, add device drivers, and run scripts.** You can connect to a network and access additional installation files and scripts. You can also install additional language packs and device drivers. For more information, see [Add a Driver Online in Audit Mode](#).
- **Test the validity of a Windows installation.** Before you deploy the system to end users, you can perform tests on the system without creating a user account. Then you can prepare the system to start in OOBE on the next boot.
- **Add more customizations to a reference image.** This reduces the number of images that you have to manage. For example, you can create a single reference image that contains the basic customizations that you want to apply to all Windows images. You can then boot the reference image to audit mode and make additional changes that are specific to the computer. These changes can be customer-requested applications or specific device drivers.

## Boot to Audit Mode

You can boot to audit mode on a new or existing Windows installation. For more information, see [Boot Windows to Audit Mode or OOB](#)e.

## Automatically Display the Windows 8 Desktop

In some Windows 8 manufacturing or testing scenarios you might need to automatically display the Windows 8 desktop instead of the Windows 8 start screen after the PC reboots. This might be required if you use manufacturing tools that display status to a Window on the desktop and you want your factory technicians to easily identify issues without having to manually switch from the Windows 8 start screen to the desktop.

You can automatically display the Windows 8 desktop by using %WINDIR%\System32\oobe\AuditShD.exe. AuditShD.exe must be run by an account with administrator permissions.

We recommend adding this command-line to your answer file as a RunAsynchronousCommand in the auditUser configuration pass. Use Windows System Image Manager to add **Microsoft-Windows-Deployment | RunAsynchronous | RunAsynchronousCommand** with the value %WINDIR%\System32\oobe\AuditShD.exe.

The answer file you create will look similar to the following:

```
<settings pass="auditUser">
<component name="Microsoft-Windows-Deployment" processorArchitecture="x86" publicKeyToken="31bf3856ad364e35"
language="neutral" versionScope="nonSxS" xmlns:wcm="http://schemas.microsoft.com/WMIConfig/2002/State"
xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
 <RunAsynchronous>
 <RunAsynchronousCommand wcm:action="add">
 <Description>Show Desktop</Description>
 <Order>1</Order>
 <Path>cmd.exe /c %WINDIR%\System32\oobe\AuditShD.exe</Path>
 </RunAsynchronousCommand>
 </RunAsynchronous>
</component>
</settings>
```

Before a Windows 8 PC is shipped to a customer, Windows must be configured to boot to the OOB screens and display the Start screen on first boot. Verify that AuditShD.exe is only configured to run in audit mode and is not used during OOB.

## Related topics

[Understanding Servicing Strategies](#)

[Windows Setup Configuration Passes](#)

[How Configuration Passes Work](#)

[Windows Setup Scenarios and Best Practices](#)

[Windows Setup Installation Process](#)

[Windows Setup Automation Overview](#)

[Windows Setup Supported Platforms and Cross-Platform Deployments](#)

# Run Audit Mode in the Factory

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

In build-to-order scenarios OEMs can boot the destination PCs to audit mode to install customer-specific apps, languages, drivers, and make additional configurations.

After final assembly of the PC you complete integrity testing to ensure the PC is configured correctly.

When ready, boot the PC with Windows PE, or another operating system that allows you to install your custom Windows image to the PC. You can boot the PC by using a USB key, or you can boot the PC from the network using PXE boot and Windows Deployment Services.

We recommend you use Windows PE and DISM to boot the PC and apply your custom Windows image.

- [Apply Images Using DISM](#)
- [WinPE for Windows 10](#)
- [Windows Deployment Services Overview](#)

After the image is applied, you boot the PC to audit mode.

- [Audit Mode Overview](#)

While in audit mode, you can install customer requested software, drivers specific to the PC, and additional items. While in audit mode you can also install the latest Windows updates. The following topics go into more detail about how to install drivers, language packs, and Windows updates:

- [Device Drivers and Deployment Overview](#)
- [Language Packs](#)
- [Service a Windows Image Using DISM](#)

Keep in mind that the more items that you install on the factory floor increases the time it takes to assemble, install, and box the PC.

After you complete your audit mode installations, you must run sysprep /oobe to ensure that the end-user goes through the out-of-box experience and accepts the license terms. You should capture the Windows installation to the recovery partition to help users rest the PC to factory default. By doing this in the factory, you can ensure that the build-to-order customizations that customers make are in the recovery image.

You will need to boot the PC to Windows PE again to capture and apply the Windows installation to the recovery partition.

The following topic describes how to create the recovery image:

- [Deploy Push-Button Reset Features](#)

After the recovery image is captured, you can shut down the PC, box it, and ship it.

Depending on the volume of units you are shipping, you might want to consider pulling one or more PCs off the line to ensure the systems you build meet your quality expectations.

# Enable and Disable the Built-in Administrator Account

7/13/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

When manufacturing PCs, you can use the built-in Administrator account to run programs and apps before a user account is created.

## Note

This topic is about manufacturing PCs. For help with the admin account on your own PC, try one of these pages:

- [Log on as an administrator](#)
- [Delete an account called "Administrator"](#)
- [User Account Control](#)

This account is used when you log into the system by using audit mode, or when you add scripts to the [auditUser](#) configuration pass.

## Enabling the Built-in Administrator Account

**You can use any of the following methods to enable the built-in Administrator account:**

1. [Use an answer file](#)
2. [Log on by using audit mode](#)
3. [Use the Local Users and Groups MMC \(Server versions only\)](#)

### Use an answer file

You can enable the built-in Administrator account during unattended installations by setting the `AutoLogon` setting to **Administrator** in the Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup component. This will enable the built-in Administrator account, even if a password is not specified in the `AdministratorPassword` setting.

You can create an answer file by using Windows® System Image Manager (Windows SIM).

The following sample answer file shows how to enable the Administrator account, specify an Administrator password, and automatically log on to the system.

## Note

Both the Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup\ `AutoLogon` section and the Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup\ `UserAccounts` \ `AdministratorPassword` section are needed for automatic logon in audit mode to work. The **auditSystem** configuration pass must include both these settings.

The following XML output shows how to set the appropriate values:

```

<component name="Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup" processorArchitecture="x86"
publicToken="31bf3856ad364e35" language="neutral" versionScope="nonSxS"
xmlns:wcm="http://schemas.microsoft.com/WMIConfig/2002/State" xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-
instance">
 <AutoLogon>
 <Password>
 <Value>SecurePasswd123</Value>
 <PlainText>true</PlainText>
 </Password>
 <Username>Administrator</Username>
 <Enabled>true</Enabled>
 <LogonCount>5</LogonCount>
 </AutoLogon>
 <UserAccounts>
 <AdministratorPassword>
 <Value>SecurePasswd123</Value>
 <PlainText>true</PlainText>
 </AdministratorPassword>
 </UserAccounts>
</component>

```

To prevent having to enter a password for the built-in Administrator account after you complete the out-of-box experience, set Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup\ `UserAccounts \ AdministratorPassword` in the **oobeSystem** configuration pass.

The following XML output shows how to set the appropriate values:

```

<UserAccounts>
 <AdministratorPassword>
 <Value>SecurePasswd123</Value>
 <PlainText>true</PlainText>
 </AdministratorPassword>
</UserAccounts>

```

For Windows Server® 2012, the built-in Administrator password must be changed at first logon. This prevents the built-in Administrator account from having a blank password by default.

### **Log on by using audit mode**

If the computer has not yet gone through Out-Of-Box Experience (OOBE), you can enter the built-in Administrator account by re-entering audit mode. For more information, see [Boot Windows to Audit Mode or OOBE](#).

### **Use the Local Users and Groups MMC (server versions only)**

Change the properties of the Administrator account by using the Local Users and Groups Microsoft Management Console (MMC).

1. Open MMC, and then select **Local Users and Groups**.
2. Right-click the **Administrator** account, and then select **Properties**.

The **Administrator Properties** window appears.

3. On the **General** tab, clear the **Account is Disabled** check box.
4. Close MMC.

Administrator access is now enabled.

## **Disabling the Built-in Administrator Account**

For new installations, after the end user creates a user account in OOBE, the built-in Administrator account is

disabled.

For upgrade installations, the built-in Administrator account remains enabled when there is no other active local administrator on the computer, and when the computer is not joined to a domain.

**Use either of the following methods to disable the built-in administrator account:**

**1. Run the sysprep /generalize command**

When you run the **sysprep /generalize** command, the next time that the computer starts, the built-in Administrator account will be disabled.

**2. Use the net user command**

Run the following command to disable the Administrator account:

```
net user administrator /active:no
```

You can run this command after you configure the computer and before you deliver the computer to a customer.

Original equipment manufacturers (OEMs) and system builders are required to disable the built-in administrator account before delivering the computers to customers. To do this, you can use either of the following methods.

## Configuring the Built-in Administrator Password

### Instructions

- When you run the **sysprep /generalize** command on Windows Server 2012 and Windows Server 2008 R2, the Sysprep tool resets the built-in Administrator account password. The Sysprep tool only clears the built-in Administrator account's password for server editions, not for client editions. The next time that the computer starts, Setup displays a prompt for a password.

### Note

In Windows Server 2012, Windows Server 2008 R2, and Windows Server 2008, the default password policy requires a strong password for all user accounts. To configure a weak password, you can use an answer file that includes the Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup\ UserAccounts \ AdministratorPassword setting. You cannot configure a weak password, either manually or by using a script such as the **net user** command.

## Related topics

[Windows Deployment Options](#)

[Audit Mode Overview](#)

# Configure Network Settings in an Unattended Installation

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

This section discusses common network scenarios during deployment, and how to implement these scenarios by using an answer file in an unattended installation.

## In This Section

<a href="#">Configure Windows Firewall with Advanced Security by Using an Answer File</a>	Configure Windows® Firewall with Advanced Security settings in an unattended installation.
<a href="#">Enable Remote Desktop by Using an Answer File</a>	Configure settings to enable Remote Desktop connections in an unattended installation.

## Related topics

[Windows Deployment Options](#)

# Configure Windows Firewall with Advanced Security by Using an Answer File

7/13/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

For unattended installations, you can configure Windows® Firewall with Advanced Security settings in an answer file by using the Networking-MPSSVC-Svc component. In addition to the answer file (Unattend.xml) settings for Windows Firewall with Advanced Security, you can create a **RunSynchronous** command that runs **Netsh advfirewall** commands during the [auditUser](#) or [oobeSystem](#) configuration pass.

## Adding, Modifying, or Deleting Rules for Windows Firewall with Advanced Security

Use **RunSynchronous** commands only to add, modify, or delete rules for Windows Firewall with Advanced Security. To modify rule groups, use the **FirewallGroups** setting in the **Networking-MPSSVC-Svc** component. For more information about Windows components and settings that you can add to an answer file, see the [Unattended Windows Setup Reference Guide](#).

### To add a Netsh command to an answer file

1. On your technician computer, open Windows System Image Manager (Windows SIM). Click **Start**, type **Windows System Image Manager**, and then select **Windows System Image Manager**.
2. Create a new answer file, or update an existing answer file. For more information, see [Create or Open an Answer File](#) and [Best Practices for Authoring Answer Files](#).
3. On the **Insert** menu, click **RunSynchronous**.
4. Select the configuration pass where you want to install the command. This can be the [auditUser](#) or [oobeSystem](#) configuration pass.

#### Note

Don't use the **RunSynchronousNetsh advfirewall** command during the [specialize](#) configuration pass.

5. The **Create Synchronous Command** dialog box appears.
6. In the **Enter command line** box, type the command-line syntax, like **Netsh advfirewall firewall**. For more information, see the [Network Shell \(Netsh\) Technical Reference](#).
7. In the **Order** box, select the order of the commands that will run, and then click **OK**.

The command is added to the answer file in the selected configuration pass, as follows:

- a. Commands that are added to the **6 auditUser passes** configuration pass appear in the setting Microsoft-Windows-Deployment\RunSynchronous.
  - b. Commands that are added to the **7 oobeSystem** configuration pass appear in the setting Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup\FirstLogonCommands.
8. In the **SynchronousCommand Properties** pane, in the **Settings** section next to **Description**, enter a description like **Enable Windows Messenger**.
  9. The command is added to the answer file under the configuration pass that you selected. This example illustrates how an incoming rule for Windows Messenger is configured:

```
<RunSynchronous>
 <RunSynchronousCommand wcm:action="add">
 <Path>Netsh advfirewall firewall
 add rule name="allow messenger" dir=in
 program="c:\programfiles\messenger\msmsgs.exe"
 action=allow
 </Path>
 <Description>Enable Windows Messenger</Description>
 <Order>1</Order>
 </RunSynchronousCommand>
</RunSynchronous>
```

## Note

The **Netsh advfirewall** command requires administrator permissions to run. If the **RunSynchronous** command runs in a configuration pass that runs in user context, that user account must have administrator permissions.

## Using the Netsh Advfirewall Command-Line Tool

The following example illustrates how to add a new outgoing firewall rule to block a port by using the **Netsh advfirewall** command-line tool.

### To add a new outgoing firewall rule

- At an elevated command prompt, enter syntax that adds a new outgoing firewall rule to block a port. For example:

```
Netsh advfirewall firewall add rule name="allow80" protocol=TCP
dir=out localport=80 action=block
```

where the blocked port is TCP port 80.

You can convert **Netsh** commands to Windows PowerShell commands. For more information, see the [Netshell to Powershell Conversion Guide](#).

## Related topics

[Windows Deployment Options](#)

# Enable Remote Desktop by Using an Answer File

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

To enable remote desktop connections during an unattended installation, you must configure several settings and enable the Remote Desktop group in Windows® Firewall with Advanced Security.

## To create an answer file to enable remote desktop connections

1. On your technician computer, open Windows System Image Manager (Windows SIM). Click **Start**, type **Windows System Image Manager**, and then select **Windows System Image Manager**.
2. Create a new answer file, or update an existing answer file. For more information, see [Create or Open an Answer File](#) and [Best Practices for Authoring Answer Files](#).

Add these settings to your answer file in the listed configuration pass:

COMPONENT	CONFIGURATION PASS
Microsoft-Windows-TerminalServices-LocalSessionManager	<b>4 specialize</b>
Networking-MPSSVC-Svc\FirewallGroups\FirewallGroup	<b>4 specialize</b>

3. In the **Answer File** pane, configure these settings:

COMPONENT	VALUE
Microsoft-Windows-TerminalServices-LocalSessionManager	<code>fDenyTSConnections=false</code>
Networking-MPSSVC-Svc\FirewallGroups\FirewallGroup	<code>Active=true</code> <code>Group=Remote Desktop</code> <code>Profile=all</code>

4. (Optional) Specify how users are authenticated. Specifying the following setting will help make sure that users can connect remotely from computers that don't run Remote Desktop by using network-level authentication. To enable remote desktop connections from computers that are running any version of Remote Desktop, add this setting to your answer file:

COMPONENT	CONFIGURATION PASS	VALUE
Microsoft-Windows-TerminalServices-RDP-WinStationExtensions	<b>4 specialize</b>	<code>UserAuthentication=0</code>

You're now ready to install your Windows image.

For more information about Windows® components and settings that you can add to an answer file, see the [Unattended Windows Setup Reference](#).

## Related topics

[Configure Windows Firewall with Advanced Security by Using an Answer File](#)

[Automate Windows Setup](#)

[Configure Network Settings in an Unattended Installation](#)

[Windows Deployment Options](#)

# Configure a Trusted Image Identifier for Windows Defender

7/13/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can speed up the initial performance of your computer for the end user by adding a trusted image identifier to Windows® Defender. Windows Defender is a Microsoft® application that can help to prevent, remove, and quarantine malware and spyware.

By default, Windows Defender performs a scan of each file on the computer when the computer accesses the file for the first time. This is known as an on-access scan. Optimization mechanisms, such as caching, help reduce unnecessary scans of files that have already been scanned. When Windows Defender performs a quick scan or a full scan (also known as on-demand scans), the rest of the files on the system will be marked as safe.

## Note

If you have already deployed a series of computers, and then later determine that there is a potential problem with the security of the image, contact your Depth Project Manager (PM) within the Windows Ecosystem Engagement team. and provide the unique identifier of the image. Microsoft will add this unique identifier into Windows Update. After a computer with that unique identifier receives updates from Windows Update, Windows Defender performs scans on all of the files on that computer.

## Adding a Trusted Image Identifier

For optimal performance, we recommend that you add this setting when you prepare the computer for final deployment, after you perform a full scan of the final image.

### To add a trusted image identifier

1. Create an answer file that you are going to use with Sysprep, and add the Security-Malware-Windows-Defender\ `TrustedImageIdentifier` setting. For more information, see [Use Answer Files with Sysprep](#).
2. For the value of the `TrustedImageIdentifier` setting, specify a unique identifier, such as a GUID, for the image.
3. Install Windows on the reference computer, and perform all updates that are described in the "Common Sysprep Scenarios" section of the [Sysprep \(System Preparation\) Overview](#) topic.
4. Perform a scan of the image by using Windows Defender or another scanning tool. This can help make sure that the image is safe.
5. When you run Sysprep for the final time, use the Sysprep command together with the /oobe and /unattend options, as follows:

```
Sysprep /oobe /shutdown /unattend:Unattend.xml
```

6. Perform other offline tasks, such as offline servicing of the image. Capture and apply the image to other computers, and then deliver the computer to the customer.

The next time that the computer starts, Windows identifies all of the files currently on the system, and skips these files during subsequent scans.

## Related topics

Sysprep Process Overview

[Use Answer Files with Sysprep](#)

# Windows Server Deployment Options

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The following topics describe how to configure Windows Server® 2012.

## In This Section

<a href="#">Configure Windows Server Roles</a>	Describes how to configure Windows Server roles during deployment.
<a href="#">Prepare a Network Policy Server (NPS) for Imaging</a>	Describes how to remove information that's defined in the Network Policy Server (NPS) configuration about RADIUS clients and remote RADIUS server groups, before you deploy an image to a different computer.

## Related topics

[Sysprep Support for Server Roles](#)

[Sysprep \(Generalize\) a Windows installation](#)

# Configure Windows Server Roles

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

To configure one or more Server Roles during an unattended installation, you can use the PowerShell or Server Manager command-line tool. For more information about Server Roles, see this [Microsoft Web site](#).

You can create `FirstLogonCommands` in your answer file that specifies the proper parameters for the server role you want to configure. The `FirstLogonCommands` setting is configured in the `oobeSystem` configuration pass. The `FirstLogonCommands` setting is run immediately after a user logs onto the computer and before the desktop is displayed.

## Note

You must run PowerShell and Server Manager commands from an account with administrator privileges.

For more information about adding the `FirstLogonCommands` setting, see [Add a Custom Command to an Answer File](#).

The following example shows the PowerShell.exe syntax for installing the ServerManager module and the DHCP, FAX, DNS, and File-Services roles.

```
<FirstLogonCommands>
 <SynchronousCommand wcm:action="add">
 <Order>1</Order>
 <CommandLine> Powershell.exe -command Import-Module ServerManager; Install-WindowsFeature
DHCP,FAX,DNS,File-Services</CommandLine>
 <Description>Configure Server Role</Description>
 </SynchronousCommand>
</FirstLogonCommands>
```

## Note

Not all server roles support Sysprep. You must configure some server roles after imaging and deployment. For more information, see [Sysprep Support for Server Roles](#).

## Related topics

[Windows Deployment Options](#)

# Prepare a Network Policy Server (NPS) for Imaging

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

If you intend to create an image of an installation for deployment to a different computer, and the Network Policy Server (NPS) service is installed on the source server, you may have to first remove confidential information that's stored on the server. Use these procedures to remove the relevant settings and data from the NPS configuration.

## To delete RADIUS clients from the NPS configuration

1. Display the list of Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) clients on the NPS server. To do that, open an elevated command prompt, type this command, and then press Enter:

```
Netsh nps show client
```

2. Delete each RADIUS client in the list. To do that, at the elevated command prompt, type this command and then press Enter:

```
Netsh nps delete client [name]
```

For example, this command deletes a RADIUS client named <WirelessAP1> from the NPS server configuration:

```
Netsh nps delete client name = <WirelessAP1>
```

You can delete multiple RADIUS clients by inserting a comma between each client. For example:

```
Netsh nps delete client name = <WirelessAP1>,<WirelessAP2>,<WirelessAP3>
```

You can also remove a RADIUS client by using the following command.

```
Remove-NpsRadiusClient [-Name] <Radius Client Name>-
```

3. Repeat this procedure for each RADIUS client that's configured on the NPS server.

## To delete a remote RADIUS server group from the NPS server configuration

1. Display the list of remote RADIUS server groups that are configured on the NPS server. To do that, open an elevated command prompt, type the following command, and then press Enter:

```
Netsh nps show remotesservergroup
```

2. Delete each remote server group in the list. To do that, at the elevated command prompt, type this command and then press Enter:

```
Netsh nps delete remotesservergroup [name =] name
```

For example, this command deletes a remote RADIUS server group named <RemoteServers1> from the

NPS server configuration:

```
Netsh nps delete remoteservergroup name = <RemoteServers1>
```

**Note**

When you delete a remote RADIUS server group, all RADIUS servers that are contained in the group are deleted.

3. Repeat this procedure for each remote RADIUS server group that's configured on the NPS server.

You can convert **Netsh** commands to Windows PowerShell® commands. For more information, see the [Netshell to Powershell Conversion Guide](#).

## Related topics

[Configure Windows Server Roles](#)

[Sysprep \(Generalize\) a Windows installation](#)

[Windows Server Deployment Options](#)

# Configure Windows System Assessment Test Scores

6/6/2017 • 7 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The Windows® System Assessment Tests (WinSAT) are used to analyze the performance of several system components, including CPU, memory, disk, and graphics.

The WinSAT results are summarized in the **Performance Information and Tools** Control Panel item as Windows Experience Index (WEI) scores. These scores show consumers the performance characteristics of their systems.

WEI scores are no longer generated during OOBE, nor are prepup xml files used to create WinSAT formal files during OOBE. We recommended that you generate the WinSAT formal file on the system prior to shipping it to the end-users. This allows WinSAT scores to be available as soon as end-user boots their systems, and allows the optimizations that depend on these results to be immediately available. Because the assessments are not run during the out-of-box experience, the WinSAT and WEI scores are no longer generated when a user finishes OOBE. Instead, the scores can be generated at two other times, using other mechanisms besides prepopulating WinSAT on the system that will ship.

- End users can explicitly request an assessment by using the **Re-run the assessment** option in the **Performance Information and Tools** Control Panel item.
- When the system is idle, subsequent to the first boot, the remaining WinSAT assessments will run using the Maintenance Scheduler if they were not prepopulated.

## To run WinSAT on a complete system

Use the **prepup** option with the WinSAT command-line tool to run assessments against component systems.

To run WinSAT per computer (for all systems):

1. Install Windows 8 and boot to audit mode. For more information about audit mode, see [Audit Mode Overview](#).
2. Add supplemental components, such as out-of-box drivers.
3. Run **WinSAT prepup**.

This will generate the WinSAT prepup .xml results files to the Datastore directory, located at:

`%WINDIR%\performance\winsat\datastore\`

4. [Optional] If you plan to capture this installation to deploy onto other computers, run **sysprep /generalize /audit /shutdown** and then capture the installation. Deploy the image to a PC that you intend to ship, and boot it.
5. Verify that Windows boots to audit mode, and then run **WinSAT moobe**.

This generates a WinSAT formal file from the matching prepup files, and ensures that the WinSAT formal file is available when the end-user boots the system the first time. Windows scales some features based on the WinSAT formal file, and if this file is not present on the system, then the system might experience performance problems, including unnecessary storage device defragmentation, lack of optimized memory management and prefetching optimizations.

### Note

To reduce the time a PC spends on the factory floor, we recommend using **WinSAT prepup** when you are creating your master Windows images. On the factory floor, you would only need to run **WinSAT moobe**.

However, if you want to run both **WinSAT prep** and **WinSAT moobe** on the factory floor, you can use **WinSAT formal** instead. This option creates the same set of files as running both **WinSAT prep** and **WinSAT moobe** and should be used in scenarios when you are not able to run **WinSAT prep** on your master Windows images.

6. Run the **sysprep /oobe** to configure Windows to boot to OOBE.

#### **Warning**

Running **sysprep /generalize** after running **WinSAT moobe** will delete the results that **WinSAT moobe** created. We recommend that you run **WinSAT moobe** or **WinSAT formal** on the factory floor for each PC that you intend to ship to a customer.

The system is now ready to be shipped to a customer. The benefit of running all of the WinSAT assessments per computer image is that the customer's computer always has a complete set of WinSAT results. It also has the most accurate WinSAT results. In this use, accurate means that if the consumer used on-demand rating of a system, that system would get a rating equal to or greater than the rating that was prepopulated by WinSAT.

Pre-population is not meant to enable transferring WinSAT data among systems with very different capabilities, such as among laptops and desktops, because the data is not accurate across widely differing systems. Instead, it is meant to make it easier to re-use WinSAT data among similar systems; those systems that contain the same motherboard/chipset and similar CPU, video cards and disks.

The following procedure describes how to run WinSAT on selected configurations within a line of similar computers. This involves running the **WinSAT prep** commands multiple times.

## To run WinSAT for selective PC configurations and PC components

1. Identify the configurations that you intend to include in the PC, including video processors, memory, and storage devices.
2. Install Windows 8 and boot to audit mode. For more information about audit mode, see [Audit Mode Overview](#).
3. Add supplemental components, such as out-of-box drivers.
4. Run **WinSAT prep**.
5. Run **Sysprep /generalize /audit /reboot**. This will remove any non-prepop WinSAT .xml files.
6. Copy the resulting WinSAT prep .xml files from `%WINDIR%\performance\winsat\datastore` to the network share that you are using to store WinSAT results.
7. Upgrade one of the components. For example, increase the memory of one configuration in your set of computers.
8. Run **WinSAT prep -mem** test. Using the tool this way ensures that only tests relevant to the specified component will run. An additional .xml file is generated that shows the memory test results.
9. Restore the original memory configuration, and upgrade a different component, such as the video card.

#### **Note**

Because WinSAT results can be used with configurations of the same level or higher, if you revert to the base configuration, the test results are relevant to a broader range of computers.

10. Re-run the test using the **WinSAT prep -graphics** command. Only tests relevant to the specified component run. An additional .xml file is generated for the Graphics results.
11. Store the new results files with the original .xml results files on your network share.
12. To prepopulate the WinSAT results for a new computer with similar components, copy the .xml files from the

network share to the target computer's WinSAT Datastore directory: `%WINDIR%\performance\winsat\datastore`.

You can copy the entire set of WinSAT prep files from the network share to the local WinSAT directory.

WinSAT will find the correct set for the current computer.

13. On the new computer run `WinsAT moobe`. This generates a WinSAT formal file from the matching prep files, and ensures that the WinSAT formal file is available when the end-user boots the system the first time. Windows scales some features based on the WinSAT formal file, and if this file is not present on the system, then the system might experience performance problems, including unnecessary storage device defragmentation, lack of optimized memory management and prefetching optimizations.

When running **WinSAT moobe** WinSAT examines the following directory for results files:

`%WINDIR%\performance\winsat\datastore`. If WinSAT does not discover a relevant set of .xml files, it will ignore the irrelevant files and treat the system as unrated. The DWM test will run immediately, and the other tests will run as a maintenance task, or when the end-user opts to run the tests from the **Performance Information and Tools** Control Panel item. If WinSAT finds a relevant set of prep .xml files, it uses the files to generate a formal .xml file which will be available for use when the end-user boots the computer for the first time. This enables scaling of features and allows Windows to perform appropriate optimizations.

WinSAT determines relevance by using hardware IDs. This includes: CPUID, memory DIMM configuration, hard disk model and size, and video card PNP ID. If the relevant secondary assessment is not present, WinSAT will run both the primary and secondary assessments; for example, both CPU and memory.

The advantage of this second option, running on selective configurations, is that WinSAT assessments may be run on fewer configurations and copied to similar systems. The disadvantage is that if a set of WinSAT files is not relevant to the current system, those tests will be ignored and the system will be treated as unrated, and optimizations and feature scaling will not be performed when the end-user boots the computer.

## WinSAT Prepop Command-line Options

**The syntax for prepopulation is as follows:**

```
Winsat prepop [-datastore <directory>][-graphics | -cpu | -mem | -disk | -dwm]
```

The following command runs all WinSAT tests: `winsat prepop`.

You can prepopulate only one subsystem, such as DWM, subject to the following dependencies:

- The DWM assessment can be run independently.
- The disk assessment can be run independently.
- The CPU assessment requires that a relevant memory assessment is present.
- The memory assessment requires that a relevant CPU assessment is present.
- The graphics assessment requires that relevant CPU and memory assessments are present.

**The syntax for moobe is as follows:**

```
Winsat moobe [-datastore <directory>]
```

**The WinSAT file naming pattern is as follows:**

For Windows 8, there is a `%type%` identifier, `Prepop`. This identifies datastore files that are a result of prepopulation. The naming pattern is:

```
%IdentifierDerivedFromDate% %Component%.Assessment(Prepop).WinSAT.xml
```

Where `%IdentifierDerivedFromDate%` is year-month-day and time represented as, for example, `0012-08-01 14.48.28`

where the test was run on August 1, 2012 at 2:48:28 PM.

A WinSAT formal file created from running **winsat prep0** followed by **winsat moobe**; or from running **winsat formal** uses the following naming pattern:

```
%IdentifierDerivedFromDate% Formal.Assessment(Initial).WinSAT.xml
```

## Related topics

[Windows Deployment Options](#)

# High DPI Support for IT Professionals

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Windows 8.1 has new features that improve the end user's experience with premium high density display panels. When using Windows 8.1, activities such as projecting to an external display and desktop scaling on the primary display are significantly improved from previous Windows releases. You will see the most benefit from these features when you are using a dense display, such as a 2560x1440 display with 225 DPI and 200% desktop scaling. This topic explains what is distinctive about these premium display parts, and what Windows 8.1 does to provide better support for them. It also explains some potential issues—including display fuzziness or blurriness—that might impact some users with lower density displays at 125% scaling, and how enterprise IT professionals can address them in Windows 8.1.

## In this section:

- [High DPI and Windows 8.1](#)
- [Fixing blurry text in Windows 8.1 for IT Professionals](#)
- [High DPI projection and multi-monitor configurations](#)
- [DPI-related APIs and registry settings](#)

# High DPI and Windows 8.1

6/6/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

This topic introduces the key concepts of DPI and display scaling and describes what is new in Windows 8.1.

## In this topic:

- [Key concepts](#)
- [What's new about DPI](#)

## Key concepts

### What is DPI

Dots per inch (DPI) is the physical measurement of number of pixels in a linear inch of a display. DPI is a function of display resolution and size; a higher resolution or a smaller size will lead to higher DPI, and a lower resolution or a larger size will lead to lower DPI. When a display has a higher DPI, pixels are smaller and closer together, so that the user interface (UI) and other displayed content appears smaller than intended.

### What are Windows scale factors

Windows® ensures that everything appears on the screen at a usable and consistent size by instructing applications (including the Windows desktop shell) to resize their content by a scale factor. This number depends on the display DPI as well as other factors that impact the user's perception of the display. Almost all desktop displays and most current laptop displays are in the range of 95-110 DPI; for these devices, no scaling is required, and Windows sets a scale factor of 100%. However, there are a number of new devices, particularly in the premium laptop and tablet markets, which have higher displays with over 200 DPI. For these devices, Windows sets higher scale factors to ensure that the user experience is comfortably viewable.

### Why this matters to users

Users typically spend hours reading and working on Windows devices, so it is important to ensure that the device they are looking at is optimized for their comfort. Therefore, it is important for Windows to present the content in the most readable way so that eye fatigue is reduced, and productivity is not impacted. As display technology improves, this can be delivered in a combination of higher DPI displays and better scaling in Windows. Windows 8 provides features that automatically adjust the default scaling to better match newer, more dense DPI displays.

### Why this matters to enterprises

As Windows devices improve, high density displays will become increasingly common in enterprise environments. Enterprises are also moving towards a more mobile workforce that use laptops in meetings to project, docking solutions when at the desk. To ensure optimum productivity, enterprise users should not need to manage how their screens lock when they project, or how their docking solutions present their workspace when they sit down at a desk. Windows 8 does this automatically for most users, but there remain some edge cases which IT professionals in enterprise environments might need to help support. This topic describes how Windows automatically does the right thing in most instances, and where IT might need to step in and help the user out.

## What's new about DPI

### Display hardware market changes

With the advent of higher DPI displays. Windows devices that are available during and after 2013 will routinely feature DPIS that are much higher than what has been previously available. Instead of laptops with 13" and 1366x768 resolutions, you will see screen resolutions up to 3200x1800 at 13". For these laptops to be usable,

Windows scaling has to move from 100% (13.3" 1366x768) to 125% (13.3" 1600x900), 150% (10.6" 1920x1080) or 200% (13.3" 2560x1440). Before Windows 8, only 100%, 125% and 150% were automatically set to match the display; in Windows 8, 200% support has been added.

### **Windows 8.1 changes**

Windows 8 includes a number of feature changes that are specific for high DPI, as shown in *Table 1 Windows 8.1 DPI Changes*:

**Table 1 Windows 8.1 DPI Changes**

FEATURE	WINDOWS 8	WINDOWS 8.1
Support for 200% scaling	No	Yes
Per-monitor DPI	No	Yes
Scaling of existing DPI-aware applications	No	Yes
Per-monitor DPI aware applications	No	Yes
Viewing distance incorporated in default DPI calculation	No	Yes
Logoff free DPI change	No	Yes
Per-monitor DPI aware Internet Explorer	No	Yes
Auto-DPI configuration of Remote Desktop	No	Yes

The first two of the above features have the biggest impact on Windows 8 usability. In more detail:

- 1. Improved 200% scaling support:** Windows 8.1 identifies high DPI display devices on a dynamic basis and natively supports up to 200% scale factors. Windows 8 only identified a high DPI display during first boot, and only supported up to 150% scaling without user customization. This feature ensures that users who buy premium laptops with high DPI displays will automatically receive the 200% scaling required to make content easily visible.
- 2. Per-monitor DPI:** Windows 8.1 sets different scale factors for different displays, and can scale content appropriately. Windows 8 only sets a single scale factor that is applied to all displays. This feature ensures that users with High DPI devices (that is, 150% and 200% scaling laptops) who project or dock their devices with conventional 100% scaling projectors and desktop monitors display properly sized content on those screens.

### **How these changes impact enterprise users**

For the users on laptops with 100% scaling, the Windows 8.1 feature changes have no impact. For users who acquire new devices that have high DPI, Windows 8.1 provides a significant benefit.

It is possible that some users will acquire devices that fall in-between, featuring Windows scaling of 125%. These devices can require the user or the IT professional to configure them correctly or update/tweak applications to improve usability. The troubleshooting section of this topic can help IT professionals identify these systems, these applications, and undertake the right mitigation tactics.

## Related topics

[High DPI Support for IT Professionals](#)

# Fixing blurry text in Windows 8.1 for IT Professionals

6/6/2017 • 5 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Windows® desktop apps fall broadly into two classes: apps that are *DPI-aware* and those that are not. DPI-aware apps actively let Windows know during application launch that they are capable of scaling themselves to work well on a high DPI display. These apps include: Internet Explorer, Office, Firefox, and .NET 2.0+ (including WPF) apps. These apps generally work well across a wide range of scale factors. Therefore, if your enterprise line of business apps are also DPI-aware, your users should not have a problem with any Windows 8.1 displays or scale factors.

However, if an application is not DPI aware, and is running on a high DPI display, Windows scales the app by applying bitmap scaling to the application output. This ensures that the application is the correct size on a high DPI display. In most instances this will result in crisp and usable applications, but in some instances, the result is less crisp and might have a slightly fuzzy or blurry appearance because of the bitmap scaling.

## In this topic:

- [How to tell if an application is not DPI-aware](#)
- [What you can do about apps that aren't DPI-aware](#)
- [Tell Windows not to scale an app that's not DPI-aware](#)

## How to tell if an application is not DPI-aware

Use the [Process Explorer tool](#) to determine if an app is DPI-aware. *Figure 1 Process Explorer* shows this utility in use, with the column for **DPI Awareness** enabled. (By default, process explorer does not show the **DPI Awareness** column. To turn this column on, click the **View** menu, click **Select Columns**, check the box for **DPI Awareness**, and click **OK**.) The column titled **DPI Awareness** tells you whether a particular process is aware of DPI or not.

Process	CPU	Private Bytes	Working Set	PID	Description	Company Name	DPI Awareness
System Idle Process	93.45	0 K	24 K	0		Microsoft Corporation	System Aware
System	0.75	116 K	2,288 K	4	n/a Hardware Interrupts and DPCs		System Aware
Interrupts	0.26	0 K	0 K	380			Unaware
smss.exe		272 K	1,040 K	380			System Aware
csrss.exe		1,820 K	4,432 K	452			System Aware
wininit.exe		780 K	4,332 K	516			System Aware
services.exe		5,532 K	11,304 K	568			System Aware
svchost.exe		9,696 K	18,040 K	648	Host Process for Windows S...	Microsoft Corporation	System Aware
WmiPrvSE.exe	0.68	38,032 K	40,360 K	2904			System Aware
unsecapp.exe		940 K	5,432 K	2932			System Aware
WmiPrvSE.exe	1.38	15,448 K	26,348 K	3044			System Aware
SkyDrive.exe		12,760 K	24,064 K	3968	SkyDrive Sync Engine Host	Microsoft Corporation	System Aware
igfxsrvc.exe		2,392 K	8,248 K	4908	igfxsrvc Module	Intel Corporation	Unaware
SettingSyncHost.exe		9,604 K	7,504 K	3480	Host Process for Setting Syn...	Microsoft Corporation	Unaware
WmiPrvSE.exe		3,860 K	11,876 K	3692			System Aware
UoMapI.exe	10,628 K	37,756 K	5840	Microsoft Lync	Microsoft Corporation	Microsoft Corporation	Per-Monitor Aware
WmiPrvSE.exe		5,220 K	10,608 K	4972			System Aware
WmiPrvSE.exe		1,912 K	7,284 K	6208			System Aware
WmiPrvSE.exe		3,204 K	12,520 K	6184			System Aware
svchost.exe	0.11	10,588 K	18,228 K	700	Host Process for Windows S...	Microsoft Corporation	System Aware
MsMpEng.exe	0.05	76,544 K	77,252 K	820	Antimalware Service Execut...	Microsoft Corporation	System Aware
svchost.exe	0.01	21,384 K	31,636 K	876	Host Process for Windows S...	Microsoft Corporation	System Aware
svchost.exe	0.05	17,704 K	33,780 K	928	Host Process for Windows S...	Microsoft Corporation	System Aware
svchost.exe	< 0.01	27,548 K	46,876 K	964	Host Process for Windows S...	Microsoft Corporation	System Aware
dasHost.exe		2,412 K	8,020 K	1472			System Aware
TabTip.exe	0.08	11,148 K	32,056 K	3768			Per-Monitor Aware
TabTip32.exe		672 K	3,668 K	3804			Per-Monitor Aware
svchost.exe		12,424 K	22,880 K	992	Host Process for Windows S...	Microsoft Corporation	System Aware
taskhost.exe	1.46	44,444 K	66,372 K	1020	Host Process for Windows S...	Microsoft Corporation	System Aware
taskhost.exe		64,624 K	75,468 K	3276	Host Process for Windows T...	Microsoft Corporation	Unaware
SynTPEnh.exe	0.15	3,860 K	4,556 K	3284	Synaptics TouchPad Enhanc...	Synaptics Incorporated	Unaware

**Figure 1 Process Explorer**

Windows 8.1 distinguishes between three classes of applications.

**Table 1 DPI Awareness Apps**

DPI AWARENESS	EXAMPLES	BEHAVIOR
Unaware	<b>Mmc.exe</b> (Microsoft Management Console and its plugins)	Windows bitmap scales the application to any high DPI displays that are attached to the system; can be fuzzy at 125% and 150% scale factors.
System-aware	Office apps	Application scales itself at launch to the system DPI (usually the same as the primary display DPI); Windows scales the app to any displays that do not match this.
Per-monitor-aware	Internet Explorer 11	Application dynamically scales itself to the display DPI.

## What you can do about apps that aren't DPI-aware

### Run the latest version of the app or ask the application vendor to update their app to be DPI aware

Microsoft recommends that all applications become DPI-aware. It is possible that newer versions of your applications are already DPI-aware. If they are not, you can ask your app vendor to update their app to be DPI aware. Microsoft provides developer resources that can help them update their app, including the following:

- [Making Your Desktop Apps Shine on High- DPI Displays \(BUILD 2013 presentation\)](#)
- [Writing DPI-Aware Desktop Applications in Windows 8.1](#)
- [Dynamic DPI sample](#)

### Tell Windows not to scale an app that's not DPI-aware

In the cases where users cannot deal with the bitmap scaling of apps that aren't DPI-aware (for example, 125% scaling and fuzzy applications), individual Windows desktop applications can be shimmed to not be scaled. Users can do this by using the **Compatibility** tab of the application's **Properties** UI. For example, *Figure 2 Application Properties* shows how a user can disable bitmap scaling:



**Figure 2 Application Properties**

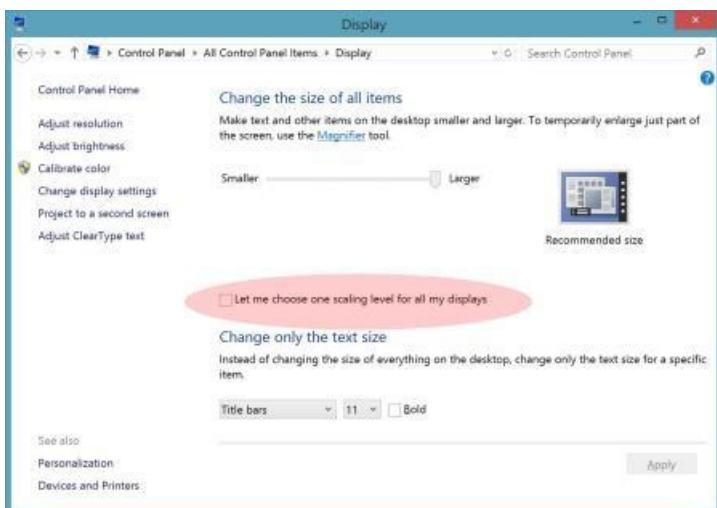
You can manage bulk-shimming of applications by using the Compatadmin tool, which is available in the Application Compatibility Toolkit that is included in the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (ADK). You can download the Windows ADK from [Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit \(ADK\) for Windows® 8](#). For more information about how to use the Compatadmin tool, see [How to use the Compatibility Administrator utility in Windows](#).

### Important

Disabling display scaling can result in content that is too small to be read or interacted with reliably; it can also produce visual artifacts such as clipped or overlapped content. These issues depend on details of how the app was written. Consequently, we recommend only changing this setting if absolutely required. This shim should not be applied to apps that do not require it, or to devices that do not require it.

### Use Windows 8 DPI scaling (not generally recommended)

Windows 8.1 includes a Windows 8 compatibility scaling mode that can be deployed to address all visual blurring issues with certain displays. Note that using the compatibility mode turns off all the benefits of the Windows 8.1 DPI features. This method should only be used as a last resort, if the enterprise environment includes too many apps that aren't DPI-aware to be mitigated by applying application shimming. Users can access this mode in the DPI CPL UI by checking the box that says **Let me choose one scaling level for all my displays:**



**Figure 3 Scaling Level Option**

This setting can also be applied during deployment if you have many specific apps that need remediation and you plan a large scale roll-out to low or mid-density displays. You can customize your image in Audit mode before deployment. See [Audit Mode Overview](#). See also the next section that explains how to programmatically perform device detection and registry customization.

### **Understanding high DPI, display types, and Windows scaling**

Windows 8.1 scales apps that aren't DPI-aware dynamically by resizing the bitmap generated by the application. Bitmap scaling works best when scaled at integer multiples (for example, 1x, 2x, 3x), but can have visual artifacts that are often perceived as blurry/fuzzy at non-integer multiples (for example, 125%, 150%).

Windows supports a full spectrum of screen sizes, resolutions, and therefore DPI. There will be some DPI ranges that result in less than optimal Windows scaling for apps that aren't DPI-aware.

*Table 2 Scaling Values* describes the possible issues that users can encounter at different Windows scaling values:

**Table 2 Scaling Values**

SCALE FACTOR	100% MAINSTREAM	125% VALUE	150% PREMIUM	200% PREMIUM
Scaling benefit	N/A	Small size improvement	Significant size improvement	Critical size improvement
Bitmap scaling of unaware apps	N/A	Most noticeable fuzziness	Less noticeable fuzziness	Clear and crisp
Scaling of aware apps	N/A	Clear and crisp	Clear and crisp	Clear and crisp

As shown in the preceding table, most of the issues manifest at the 125% scaling ratio. For this reason, any mitigation should target apps that aren't DPI-aware on 125% scaling systems only.

For information about how to identify 125% systems or how to revert to Windows 8 scaling behavior for a 125% system, see [DPI-related APIs and registry settings](#).

## Related topics

[High DPI Support for IT Professionals](#)

# High DPI projection and multi-monitor configurations

6/6/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Many enterprise users use secondary displays for such purposes as docking, projection, or extending their desktop to a secondary display.

These scenarios do not impact the guidance for 150% and 200% devices, but for users with 125% display devices who also use a desktop docking station or secondary monitor, we recommend the Windows 8 compatibility mode that is described in [Fixing blurry text in Windows 8.1 for IT Professionals](#). Additional guidance about compatible devices and projectors is provided in this topic.

## Projection experiences

Windows 8.1 has optimized support for projection experiences. In previous versions of Windows, the user of a high DPI device might see content that was too big on the low DPI projector, making it difficult to get all the appropriate content on screen for presentation purposes. There are two projection modes: *Duplicate* and *Extend*. This section describes how Windows supports each of these modes.

### **Duplicate mode (default for projection and typically used for projection)**

The default projection mode is called Duplicate mode. (Type **Win+P** at the keyboard to see a list of the four multi-monitor display modes: **PC screen only**, **Duplicate**, **Extend**, and **Second** screen only.) In Duplicate mode, the same content is presented on the laptop display as on the projector. This makes it easiest for the presenter to interact directly with the content being displayed on the screen, particularly with laptop or tablet that supports touch. In this mode, Windows will look at both displays, try to find the best common resolution, and then put both displays into that resolution. In Windows 8.1, if this resolution change has an impact on the display scale factor, Windows will then rescale based on the new scale factor, thereby ensuring the best projection experience.

### **Extend mode (typical for multi-monitor desktop scenarios)**

In the Extend mode, the projector is treated as a separate display from the primary display. This mode is typical for users using a multi-monitor setup or docking scenario. The user can drag or move content to the separate display by using the mouse or touchpad. This is not the default option but some users prefer this setting (to give just one example, because it allows the user to separate note taking from their presentation). In this mode, Windows 8.1 associates an appropriate scale factor for each display, and when the user moves content to the projector, Windows will rescale it appropriately, again ensuring the best projection experience.

### **What this means for the IT Professional**

For projection scenarios, per-monitor scaling is required to provide a usable projection experience for 150% and 200% displays. In some cases, users who have 125% devices might have issues with apps that aren't DPI-aware being fuzzier when projected. See [Fixing blurry text in Windows 8.1 for IT Professionals](#) for guidance on how to turn off per-app DPI scaling in these cases.

### **Important**

Projectors work best in duplicate mode if they support resolutions and video modes that are similar to the device that is projecting. For example, if the dominant portable devices in the enterprise have 1366x768 and 1920x1080 displays, the projectors that are used should support the same resolutions for the best duplicate mode experiences.

## Related topics

[High DPI Support for IT Professionals](#)

# DPI-related APIs and registry settings

7/13/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

If you need to perform deployment customizations, the following sections explain the registry keys and system parameters that your post-installation scripts might need to access.

## In this topic:

- [Primary display native resolution](#)
- [Primary display DPI scale factor](#)
- [Scaling mode](#)
- [Scaling override in Windows 8.1 scaling mode](#)
- [System-wide scale factor in Windows 8 scaling mode](#)

## Primary display native resolution

*Table 1 Windows 8.1 Scaling Levels*, while by no means exhaustive, provides information on the Windows 8.1 scaling level for a number of common displays. **Panel DPI** indicates the physical pixel density of the panel, and **Scaling level** indicates the scale factor that will be used for this display.

**Table 1 Windows 8.1 Scaling Levels**

DISPLAY SIZE	DISPLAY RESOLUTION	HORIZONTAL (PIXELS)	VERTICAL (PIXELS)	PANEL DPI	SCALING LEVEL
10.6"	FHD	1920	1080	208	150%
10.6"	HD	1366	768	148	100%
11.6"	WUXGA	1920	1200	195	150%
11.6"	HD	1366	768	135	100%
13.3"	WUXGA	1920	1200	170	150%
13.3"	QHD	2560	1440	221	200%
13.3"	HD	1366	768	118	100%
15.4"	FHD	1920	1080	143	125%
15.6"	QHD+	3200	1800	235	200%
17"	FHD	1920	1080	130	125%
23"	QFHD (4K)	3840	2160	192	200%
24"	QHD	2560	1440	122	125%

To programmatically find this information for any device, you can write a utility program that reports back data. The native primary resolution is retrieved by calling the API [GetDeviceCaps\(\) function](#), using the hdc for the desktop and the HORZRES and VERZRES indices:

```
// Get desktop dc
desktopDc = GetDC(NULL);
// Get native resolution
horizontalResolution = GetDeviceCaps(desktopDc,HORZRES);
verticalResolution = GetDeviceCaps(desktopDc,VERZRES);
```

For more information about GetDC, see [GetDC\(\) function](#).

## Primary display DPI scale factor

Similarly, you can get the pixel density by using the LOGPIXELSX and LOGPIXELSY indices:

```
// Get desktop dc
desktopDc = GetDC(NULL);
// Get native resolution
horizontalDPI = GetDeviceCaps(desktopDc,LOGPIXELSX);
verticalDPI = GetDeviceCaps(desktopDc,LOGPIXELSY);
```

These results are returned in a coordinate system in which 96 corresponds to 100%, as shown in *Table 2 DPI Scale Factors*.

**Table 2** **DPI Scale Factors**

DPI	SCALE FACTOR
96	100
120	125
144	150
192	200

### Note

This API will return different results depending on the DPI awareness mode of your application. Configuring the awareness mode requires adding XML to the application manifest, as detailed below:

DPI AWARENESS MODE	MANIFEST SETTING	RETURNED VALUE
None	None	96 for all displays, regardless of the scale factor
System DPI Aware	<dpiAware>True</dpiAware>	The DPI of the primary display at the time the Windows session was started (when the user first logged in to Windows)

DPI AWARENESS MODE	MANIFEST SETTING	RETURNED VALUE
Per-Monitor DPI Aware	<dpiAware>True/PM</dpiAware>	The DPI of the primary display at the time the Windows session was started (when the user first logged in to Windows). To obtain the DPI of the display that the application is located on, use <a href="#">GetWindowDpi()</a> or <a href="#">GetDpiForMonitor()</a>

For more information about this manifest setting, see [SetProcessDPIAware function](#).

## Scaling mode

The **Control Panel\Appearance and Personalization\Display** user interface (UI) includes a checkbox: **Let me choose one scaling level for all my displays**, which controls whether the system applies a single scale factor to all displays (as in Windows 8 and earlier versions of Windows), or different scale factors that take into account the pixel density of each display (the Windows 8.1 default). This checkbox configures the **HKCU\Control Panel\Desktop\Win8DpiScaling** registry key in Windows 8.1.

**Table 3 HKCU\Control Panel\Desktop\Win8DpiScaling Values**

KEY VALUE	MEANING
0	Different scale factors for each display: Windows 8.1 default. Content that is moved from one display to another will be the right size, but can be bitmap-scaled.
1	Same scale factor is applied to all displays: Windows 8 and earlier Windows versions behavior. Content that is moved from one display to another might be the wrong size.

## Scaling override in Windows 8.1 scaling mode

When the **Let me choose one scaling level for all my displays** checkbox is cleared and the system is running in the Windows 8.1 scaling mode, the user is provided with a slider that lets them override the current scale factors, from Smaller, to Medium, to Larger. This setting is configured in the **HKCU\Control Panel\Desktop\DesktopDPIOverride** registry key.

**Table 4 HKCU\Control Panel\Desktop\DesktopDPIOverride Values**

KEY VALUE	MEANING
<0	Reduce each display scale factor from the default by this value (for example, if the default was 150% scaling, -1 corresponds to 125%, -2 to 100%).
0	Use the default value for each display.
0>	Increase each display factor by this value (using the previous example, +1 corresponds to 200% scaling).

All display scale factors in this mode are constrained to be one of these four values: 100%, 125%, 150%, 200%. In addition, after scaling is applied, applications expect to have at least 720 effective lines of resolution (that is, the physical vertical resolution of the display divided by the scale factor); this can further limit the range of allowed display scale factors. *Table 5 Display Values* shows which values are allowed for different sized displays:

**Table 5 Display Values**

VERTICAL LINES	SUPPORTED SCALE FACTORS
<900	100%
>= 900 and <1080	100%, 125%
>=1080 and <1440	100%, 125%, 150%
>=1440	100%, 125%, 150%, 200%

## System-wide scale factor in Windows 8 scaling mode

When the **Let me choose one scaling level for all my displays** checkbox is checked, the user can specify a scale factor that applies to all displays, regardless of each display's pixel density. By using the custom setting, the user can select values other than 100%, 125%, 150%, 200%, although they are limited to the range (100%-500%). This setting is configured in the **HKCU\Control Panel\Desktop\LogPixels** registry key.

**Table 6 HKCU\Control Panel\Desktop\LogPixels Values**

KEY VALUE	MEANING
96	100% scaling on every display
120	125% scaling on every display
144	150% scaling on every display
192	200% scaling on every display
<other>	<other>*100/96 scaling on every display

## Related topics

[Documentation for developing High DPI applications](#)

[High DPI Support for IT Professionals](#)

# PAE/NX/SSE2 Support Requirement Guide for Windows 8

7/13/2017 • 9 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

This topic describes processor support for the PAE/NX/SSE2 requirement in Windows 8, and error cases and scenarios that customers can encounter when computers do not meet the requirement.

This content applies to Windows 8 and Windows Server® 2012.

## In this topic:

- [Overview](#)
- [Scope of implications](#)
- [Support requirements](#)
- [FAQs](#)

## Overview

### No-eXecute (NX)

No-eXecute (NX) is a processor feature that allows memory pages to be marked as non-executable. The feature enables the CPU to help guard the system from attacks by malicious software. The NX feature prevents executable malicious software code from being put in accessible regions of memory. Windows 8 requires that systems have processors that support NX, and NX must be turned on for important security safeguards to function effectively and to avoid potential security vulnerabilities.

In this topic, the term *NX* refers specifically to the NX processor bit that is defined by AMD, or the equivalent XD processor bit that is defined by Intel for the Data Execution Prevention (DEP) feature support in Microsoft Windows.

DEP helps prevent malicious code execution from data pages. The 32-bit version of Windows uses one of the following features for DEP support:

- The AMD-defined No-eXecute (NX) page protection processor feature
- The Intel-defined eXecute Disable (XD) bit feature

To use these processor features, the x86 (32-bit) processor must be running in Physical Address Extension (PAE) mode. The 64-bit version of Windows uses the NX processor feature on 64-bit extensions and certain values of the access rights Page Table Entry (PTE) field on Intel Itanium Processor Family (IPF) processors.

In addition to DEP, the Address Space Layout Randomization (ASLR) moves executable images into random locations when a system boots, thereby making it harder for malicious code to operate predictably. ASLR and DEP are effective only when they are used together. NX must be enabled for these two important Windows security safeguards to remain effective. For more information, see [Windows ISV Software Security Defenses](#).

### Physical Address Extension (PAE)

The processor must be running in Physical Address Extension (PAE) mode to use the NX processor feature. PAE is a processor feature that enables x86 processors to access more than 4 GB of physical memory on capable versions of Windows. The Intel Itanium and x64 processor architectures can access more than 4 GB of physical memory natively, and do not provide the equivalent of PAE. PAE is supported by 32-bit versions of Windows running on x86-based systems only.

When DEP is enabled on a system that has a processor that supports the NX feature, PAE is automatically enabled.

### Streaming SIMD Extensions 2 (SSE2)

All processors that support NX also support Streaming SIMD Extensions 2 (SSE2). SSE2 is an Intel Single Instruction Multiple Data (SIMD) processor supplementary instruction set. AMD also includes SSE2 support with Opteron and Athlon 64 ranges of AMD64 processors. All processors that support NX also support SSE2. Many Windows 8 applications have code paths that have the SSE2 instruction set. SSE2 is a requirement for Windows 8.

## Scope of implications

All modern processors support NX. NX can be turned off in the BIOS. Based on available telemetry data, it appears that one percent of the systems that are running Windows® 7 have NX turned off because of a misconfiguration in the BIOS setting.

NX requires PAE-capable processors on 32-bit version of Windows. All 64-bit processors support NX because they are Address Windowing Extensions (AWE)-aware. Therefore, the issue of older 32-bit processors that are not PAE-capable has no WOA implications or Windows Server implications (Windows Server 2012 is 64-bit only). The processor requirement won't impact customers on modern systems, or on systems that meet logo requirements for Windows 7 because these systems have PAE-capable 32-bit processors that support NX and enable NX to be turned on. Only a small set of customers who have Windows 7 running on very old 32-bit processors without PAE/NX support are impacted.

Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012 require PAE. This requirement impacts a small number of customers who have older hardware that does not support PAE. Failures occur when Windows 8 is installed on misconfigured Virtual Machines (VMs). Windows Setup fails the installation with error 0xc0000260 and rolls back to Windows 7.

Visual Studio emits SSE2 instructions by default. Applications that contact these instructions crash on systems that have older processors that do not support SSE2, as described in [SSE2 instructions generated when /arch:SSE is specified](#).

## Support requirements

This section describes the measures that ensure that processors on systems that are running Windows 8 meet PAE, NX, and SSE2 support requirements.

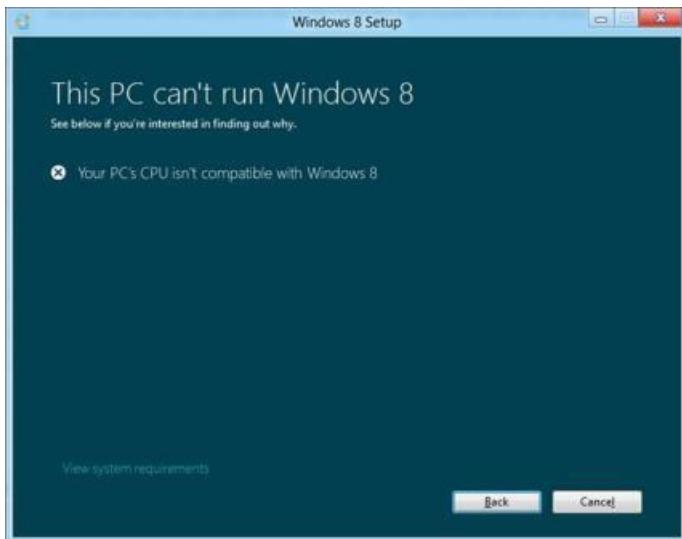
### Windows 8 Logo requirement

Windows 8 Hardware Certification Requirement requires that all drivers must operate normally together with Execution Protection to ensure proper device and driver system behavior. Drivers must not execute code out of the stack, paged pool, and session pool. Drivers must not fail to load when PAE mode is enabled. The system firmware must have NX on and DEP policy must not be set to **Always Off**. A certification test is included to certify that a system meets this NX support requirement.

For more information, see [Windows Hardware Certification Requirements](#).

### Hardware compatibility check in Windows Setup

Windows Setup has a hardware compatibility check for PAE, NX, and SSE2 support on the install system. Systems that fail the requirement of processor support for PAE, NX, and SSE2 are reported as hard blocks for Windows 8 in the compatibility issue report, and display the message: **Your PC's CPU isn't compatible with Windows 8**.



**Figure 1 CPU Incompatibility Error Message**

### Note

This support requirement check is available in the new Windows Setup and Upgrade Assistant only. Windows 8 includes an alternate version of Windows Setup in the sources folder of the installation media, which does not include this check. Customers who try to use this alternate version of Windows Setup on a system that does not meet the PAE/NX/SSE2 support requirements encounter an error during the Setup process and roll back to the previous operating system.

In a boot from media or a network installation such as Windows Deployment Services (WDS), no compatibility check occurs during Windows Setup. For these scenarios, a system without NX or SSE2 support will result in a bugcheck (that is described in the following **Kernel enhancement** section) when Setup tries to boot Windows.

### Kernel enhancement

To meet the Windows 8 requirement for NX feature and SSE2 instructions support, the Windows 8 kernel checks for these features during initialization. Systems that do not support NX or SSE2 cannot initialize a Windows 8 kernel. Systems that can disable NX in firmware have that option overridden; therefore, misconfigured firmware does not cause boot to fail. An attempt to boot a system that does not have NX or SSE2 support results in a bugcheck. Users get the UNSUPPORTED\_PROCESSOR code (0x0000005D) error, together with four lines of information on a 32-bit system:

- Line 1 – a code indicating a feature is missing and an identifier for the CPU
- Lines 2-4 – Vendor ID strings

On a 64-bit system, the bugcheck shows the same UNSUPPORTED\_PROCESSOR code as on a 32-bit system, together with the following four lines of information:

- Line 1 – the contents of the standard features register
- Line 2 – the contents of the extended features register
- Lines 3-4 – both 0

## FAQs

### How do I know if my system supports NX or SSE2?

You can use the [Coreinfo](#) command-line utility to get a system's processor information and review PAE, NX, and SSE2 entries in the output list. A \\* character displays next to a supported feature name. A - character displays if the feature is not supported. For example:

```
Coreinfo v3.04 - Dump information on system CPU and memory topology
Copyright (C) 2008-2012 Mark Russinovich
Sysinternals - www.sysinternals.com
```

```
AMD Athlon(tm) 64 X2 Dual Core Processor 4600+
x86 Family 15 Model 75 Stepping 2, AuthenticAMD
HTT* Hyperthreading enabled
HYPERVISOR - Hypervisor is present
VMX - Supports Intel hardware-assisted virtualization
SVM * Supports AMD hardware-assisted virtualization
EM64T * Supports 64-bit mode

SMX - Supports Intel trusted execution
SKINIT - Supports AMD SKINIT
EIST - Supports Enhanced Intel Speedstep

NX * Supports no-execute page protection
PAGE1GB - Supports 1 GB large pages
PAE * Supports > 32-bit physical addresses
PAT * Supports Page Attribute Table
PSE * Supports 4 MB pages
PSE36 * Supports > 32-bit address 4 MB pages
PGE * Supports global bit in page tables
SS - Supports bus snooping for cache operations
VME * Supports Virtual-8086 mode

FPU * Implements i387 floating point instructions
MMX * Supports MMX instruction set
MMXEXT * Implements AMD MMX extensions
3DNOW * Supports 3DNow! instructions
3DNOWEXT * Supports 3DNow! extension instructions
SSE * Supports Streaming SIMD Extensions
SSE2 * Supports Streaming SIMD Extensions 2
SSE3 * Supports Streaming SIMD Extensions 3
SSSE3 - Supports Supplemental SIMD Extensions 3
SSE4.1 - Supports Streaming SIMD Extensions 4.1
SSE4.2 - Supports Streaming SIMD Extensions 4.2
.....*
.....*
```

If PAE is displayed as not supported in Coreinfo output, this means that the system has a processor that is not PAE-capable, and cannot support NX. If PAE is shown as supported, but NX is displayed as not supported in Coreinfo output:

- Consult the feature set that is published by the CPU manufacturer to determine if NX is supported by the processor on the system.
- If the processor has NX support, then the system might have a misconfigured BIOS setting for the NX support option.

#### If NX is supported on my system, how do I turn on NX?

On a system that has the NX support, see the system manufacturer's guide to go into the BIOS settings option and look for the NX or XD settings under the **Security** tab to turn on the NX support. If the BIOS setting for NX support is not available on the system, you might need to contact the manufacturer to update the BIOS.

#### Note

On a 64-bit system, if NX is supported by the system, the system configuration settings do not allow setting DEP policy to be set to **Always Off**. For more information about system-wide configuration of DEP, see [A detailed description of the Data Execution Prevention \(DEP\) feature in Windows XP Service Pack 2, Windows XP Tablet PC Edition 2005, and Windows Server 2003](#).

For Windows 8, processors on a system must support NX and SSE2 for the system to boot successfully. If a system

has the support but the settings are misconfigured, the options are overridden before the kernel boots up the system.

**What should I do when Windows 8 failed to install on a VM with error 0x0000260?**

If a VM is hosted on a system that supports NX, you must enable PAE/NX in the VM settings or configuration manager when you set up the Windows 8 VM. See the virtualization product installation guide for instructions on how to enable PAE/NX for the VM.

**Note**

If you tried to install Windows 8 on a VM that is hosted on a system that is running a version of Windows that has NX disabled, you must follow the instructions in [How do I know if my system supports NX or SSE2?](#) and [If NX is supported on my system, how do I turn on NX?](#) to enable NX on the system before PAE/NX can be enabled for the VM.

# Microsoft .NET Framework 3.5 Deployment Considerations

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

.NET Framework 3.5 is not included by default in Windows 10 or Windows Server 2016, but you can download and deploy it for application compatibility. This section describes these deployment options.

## In this section:

- [Deploy .NET Framework 3.5 by using Group Policy Feature on Demand setting](#)
- [Deploy .NET Framework 3.5 by using Deployment Image Servicing and Management \(DISM\)](#)
- [Enable .NET Framework 3.5 by using Windows PowerShell](#)
- [Enable .NET Framework 3.5 by using Control Panel and Windows Update \(Windows 8 only\)](#)
- [Enable .NET Framework 3.5 by using the Add Roles and Features Wizard](#)
- [.NET Framework 3.5 deployment errors and resolution steps](#)

## Introduction

Windows 10 or Windows Server 2016 include .NET Framework 4.6, which is an integral Windows component that supports building and running the next generation of applications and web services. The .NET Framework provides a subset of managed types that you can use to create Windows Store apps for Windows by using C# or Visual Basic. For more information, see [.NET Framework](#).

Only the metadata that is required to enable the .NET Framework 3.5 is contained in the default Windows image (**\sources\install.wim**). The actual binaries are not in the image. This feature state is known as *disabled with payload removed*.

You can get the .NET Framework 3.5 payload files from Windows Update or the installation media in the **\sources\sxs** folder. For more information, see [Installing the .NET Framework 3.5](#). After the .NET Framework 3.5 feature is enabled, the files are serviced just like other operating system files from Windows Update.

If you upgrade from Windows 7 (which includes .NET Framework 3.5.1 [by default](#)) to Windows 10, or from Windows Server 2008 R2 (which has .NET Framework 3.5.1 feature installed) to Windows Server 2016, .NET Framework 3.5 is automatically enabled.

If you have feedback about this topic, please visit the appropriate Microsoft forum:

- [Windows IT Pro](#)
- [Windows Server](#)
- [Windows Store apps](#)

## Related topics

[Windows Server Installation Options](#)

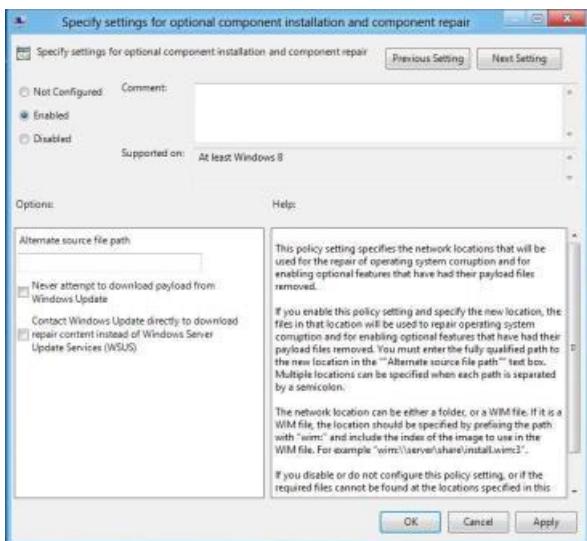
# Deploy .NET Framework 3.5 by using Group Policy Feature on Demand setting

6/6/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

For environments that use Active Directory and Group Policy, the Feature on Demand (FoD) policy setting option provides the most flexibility for the installation of .NET Framework 3.5. This Group Policy setting specifies the network locations to use to enable optional features that have had their payload files removed, and for file data and registry repair operations from failed update installations. If you disable or do not configure this setting, or if the required files cannot be found at the locations that are specified in this policy setting, the files are downloaded from Windows Update (if this is allowed by the policy settings for the computer). The Group Policy setting **Specify settings for optional component installation and component repair** is located at **Computer Configuration\Administrative Templates\System** in Group Policy Editor.

## Requirements

- Active Directory Domain infrastructure that supports Windows 8 and Windows Server® 2012
- Access rights to configure Group Policy
- Target computers need network access and rights to use alternate sources, or an Internet connection to use Windows Update



**Figure 1 Group Policy Setting for Features on Demand and Feature Store Repair**

When this policy is enabled, a network location (for example, a file server) can be specified for both repair of the feature file store, and to enable features that have their payload removed. The **Alternate source file path** can point to a **\sources\sxs** folder or a Windows image (WIM) file using the WIM: prefix. The advantage of a WIM file is that it can be kept current with updates, and provide a current repair source and .NET Framework 3.5 binaries. The repair WIM can be different than the initial WIM file that is used for installation. The user or process that tries to enable an optional Windows feature requires appropriate access rights to file shares and/or WIM files.

If you select **Never attempt to download payload from Windows Update**, Windows Update is not contacted during an installation or repair operation.

If you select **Contact Windows Update directly to download repair content instead of Windows Server Update Services (WSUS)**, any attempt to add features (for example, .NET Framework 3.5) or repair the feature file

store, uses Windows Update to download files. Target computers require Internet and Windows Update access for this option.

**Note**

Windows Server Update Services (WSUS) is not supported as a source for FoD or feature file store repair.

For Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012, WSUS is not supported as a source for feature installation (for example, adding .NET Framework 3.5 feature files) or feature file store repair operations. WSUS core scenarios include centralized update management and patch management automation, which enables administrators to manage the distribution of updates that are released through Microsoft Update to computers in their network. FoD and feature file store repair rely on download of individual files to perform update or repair operations. For example, if a single file becomes corrupted, then only that file (which could be as small as a few kilobytes) is downloaded from the repair source. WSUS can use either full or express files to perform servicing update operations; however, these files are not compatible with FoD or feature file store repair.

If an alternate source path is used to repair images, consider the following guidelines:

- **Servicing updates**

Keep any repair source current with the latest servicing updates. If you are using an image from a WIM file for FoD, you can use the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) tool to service the image.

For more information, see [Mount and Modify an Image Using DISM](#). If you are using an online Windows installation that is shared on your local network as a repair image, make sure that the computer has access to Windows Update.

- **Multilingual images**

You must include all relevant language packs with your repair source files for the locales that your image supports. If you restore a feature without all localization files that the Windows installation requires for that feature, installation fails. You can install additional language packs after a feature is restored.

## Related topics

[Microsoft .NET Framework 3.5 Deployment Considerations](#)

# Deploy .NET Framework 3.5 by using Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM)

7/13/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) command-line tool to create a modified image to deploy .NET Framework 3.5.

## Important

For images that will support more than one language, you must add .NET Framework 3.5 binaries before adding any language packs. This order ensures that .NET Framework 3.5 language resources are installed correctly in the reference image and available to users and applications.

### In this topic:

- [Using DISM with Internet connectivity](#)
- [Using DISM with no Internet connectivity](#)

## Using DISM with Internet connectivity

### Requirements

- Internet connection
- Access to Windows Update. If the PC or server is behind a firewall or uses a proxy server, see [KB900935 - How the Windows Update client determines which proxy server to use to connect to the Windows Update Web site](#).
- Windows 8, Windows Server® 2012, or the [Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit \(ADK\)](#) tools.
- Installation media
- Administrator user rights. The current user must be a member of the local Administrators group to add or remove Windows features.

### For an online reference image that can access Windows Update

1. Open a command prompt with administrator user rights (Run as Administrator) in Windows 8 or Windows Server 2012.
2. To Install .NET Framework 3.5 feature files from Windows Update, use the following command:

```
DISM /Online /Enable-Feature /FeatureName:NetFx3 /All
```

Use */All* to enable all parent features of the specified feature. For more information on DISM arguments, see [Enable or Disable Windows Features Using DISM](#).

3. On Windows 8 PCs, after installation .NET Framework 3.5 is displayed as enabled in **Turn Windows features on or off** in Control Panel. For Windows Server 2012 systems, feature installation state can be viewed in Server Manager.

### For an offline reference image

1. Run the following DISM command (image mounted to the **c:\test\offline** folder and the installation media in the **D:\drive**) to install .NET 3.5:

```
DISM /Image:C:\test\offline /Enable-Feature /FeatureName:NetFx3 /All /LimitAccess /Source:D:\sources\sxs
```

Use */All* to enable all parent features of the specified feature.

Use */LimitAccess* to prevent DISM from contacting Windows Update/WSUS.

Use */Source* to specify the location of the files that are needed to restore the feature.

To use DISM from an installation of the Windows ADK, locate the Windows ADK servicing folder and navigate to this directory. By default, DISM is installed at **C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\8.0\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Deployment Tools**. You can install DISM and other deployment and imaging tools, such as Windows System Image Manager (Windows SIM), on another supported operating system from the Windows ADK. For information about DISM-supported platforms, see [DISM Supported Platforms](#).

- Run the following command to look up the status of .NET Framework 3.5 (offline image mounted to **c:\test\offline**):

```
DISM /Image:c:\test\offline /Get-Features /Format:Table
```

A status of **Enable Pending** indicates that the image must be brought online to complete the installation.

### Using DISM with no Internet connectivity

You can use DISM to add .NET Framework 3.5 and provide access to the **\sources\SxS** folder on the installation media to an installation of Windows® that is not connected to the Internet.

#### Requirements

- Windows 8, Windows Server 2012, or the [Windows ADK](#) tools.
- Installation media
- Administrator user rights. The current user must be a member of the local Administrators group to add or remove Windows features.

#### Steps

- Open a command prompt with administrator user rights (Run as Administrator) in Windows 8 or Windows Server 2012.
- To install .NET Framework 3.5 from installation media located on the **D:** drive, use the following command:

```
DISM /Online /Enable-Feature /FeatureName:NetFx3 /All /LimitAccess /Source:d:\sources\sxs
```

Use */All* to enable all parent features of the specified feature.

Use */LimitAccess* to prevent DISM from contacting Windows Update/WSUS.

Use */Source* to specify the location of the files that are needed to restore the feature.

For more information on DISM arguments, see [Enable or Disable Windows Features Using DISM](#).

On Windows 8 PCs, after installation, .NET Framework 3.5 is displayed as enabled in **Turn Windows features on or off** in Control Panel.

## Related topics

[Microsoft .NET Framework 3.5 Deployment Considerations](#)

# Enable .NET Framework 3.5 by using Windows PowerShell

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

For a Windows Server installation that is not connected to the Internet, you can use Windows PowerShell to add .NET Framework 3.5 and provide access to the **\sources\sxs** folder on the installation media. The **\sources\sxs** folder can be copied to network share (for example, **\network\share\sxs**) to make it easily accessible to multiple computers. The target computer account **DOMAIN\SERVERNAME\$** must have at least read access to the network share.

## Requirements

- Windows Server 2012 or Windows Server 2016
- Installation media
- Administrator user rights. The current user must be a member of the local Administrators group to add or remove Windows features.
- Target Computers might need network access and rights to use either alternate sources or an Internet connection to use Windows Update.

## Steps

1. Start Windows PowerShell in the Administrator Command Prompt by typing:

```
powershell
```

2. To install .NET Framework 3.5 from installation media located on a network share, use the following command:

```
Install-WindowsFeature Net-Framework-Core -source \\network\share\sxs
```

Where **\network\share\sxs** is the location of the source files.

For more information about the `Install-WindowsFeature` cmdlet, see [Install-WindowsFeature](#).

3. To verify installation, run the following command:

```
Get-WindowsFeature
```

The **Install State** column should show **Installed** for the **.NET Framework 3.5 (includes .NET 2.0 and 3.0)** feature.

## Related topics

[Microsoft .NET Framework 3.5 Deployment Considerations](#)

# Enable .NET Framework 3.5 by using Control Panel and Windows Update (Windows 8 only)

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

For an installation of Windows 8 that has an Internet connection, the easiest way to add .NET Framework 3.5 is to download the required files by using Control Panel and Windows Update.

## Requirements

- Internet connection
- Access to Windows Update. If the PC or server is behind a firewall or uses a proxy server, see [KB900935 - How the Windows Update client determines which proxy server to use to connect to the Windows Update Web site](#).
- Administrator rights. The current user must be a member of the local Administrators group to add or remove Windows features.

## Steps

1. On the **Start** Screen type **turn on windows features**, select **Settings** in the Search pane, and click on **Turn Windows features on or off**.  
The wizard will search for required files and then prompt you to download the files through Windows Update.
2. In Windows Update, select **Download Files**.
3. After the wizard completes, click **Finish**.

## Related topics

[Microsoft .NET Framework 3.5 Deployment Considerations](#)

# Enable .NET Framework 3.5 by using the Add Roles and Features Wizard

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use Server Manager to enable .NET Framework 3.5 for a local or remote installation of Windows Server 2012 R2.

## Requirements

- Windows Server 2012 R2
- Installation media
- Administrator user rights. The current user must be a member of the local Administrators group to add or remove Windows features.
- Target Computers might need network access and rights to use either alternate sources or an Internet connection to use Windows Update.

## Steps

1. In Server Manager, click **Manage** and then select **Add Roles and Features** to start the Add Roles and Features Wizard.
2. On the **Select installation type** screen, select **Role-based or feature-based installation**.
3. Select the target server.
4. On the **Select features** screen, check the box next to **.Net Framework 3.5 Features**.
5. On the **Confirm installation selections** screen, a warning will be displayed asking **Do you need to specify an alternate source path?**. If the target computer does not have access to Windows Update, click the **Specify an alternate source path** link to specify the path to the **\sources\sxs** folder on the installation media and then click **OK**. After you have specified the alternate source, or if the target computer has access to Windows Update, click the **X** next to the warning, and then click **Install**.

If you are using Server Manager in Windows Server 2012 to add a role or feature to a remote server, the remote server's computer account (DOMAIN\ComputerName\$) requires access to the alternate source file path because the deployment operation runs in the SYSTEM context on the target server.

## Related topics

[Microsoft .NET Framework 3.5 Deployment Considerations](#)

# .NET Framework 3.5 deployment errors and resolution steps

7/18/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

This topic describes common errors you can encounter when you use Features on Demand to enable or deploy .NET Framework 3.5, and recommended steps to resolve the issues.

## Features on Demand Error Codes

Error Code	Name	Description	Resolution Steps
0x800F081F	CBS_E_SOURCE_MISSING	The source files could not be found. Use the <b>Source</b> option to specify the location of the files that are required to restore the feature. For more information about how to specify a source location, see <a href="#">Configure a Windows Repair Source</a> .	Verify that the source specified has the necessary files. The source argument should point to the <b>\sources\sxs folder</b> on the installation media or the Windows folder for a mounted image (for example, <b>c:\mount\windows</b> for an image mounted to <b>c:\mount</b> ).
0x800F0906	CBS_E_DOWNLOAD_FAILURE	The source files could not be downloaded. Use the <b>Source</b> option to specify the location of the files that are required to restore the feature. For more information about how to specify a source location, see <a href="#">Configure a Windows Repair Source</a> .  Windows couldn't connect to the Internet to download necessary files. Make sure that the system is connected to the Internet and click <b>Retry</b> .	Verify that the computer or server has connectivity to Windows Update, and that you are able to browse to <a href="http://update.microsoft.com">http://update.microsoft.com</a> . If WSUS is used to manage updates for this computer, verify that the Group Policy setting <b>Contact Windows Update directly to download repair content instead of Windows Server Update Services (WSUS)</b> is enabled.

Error code	Name	Description	Resolution steps
0x800F0907	CBS_E_GROUPOLICY_DISALLOWED	<p>DISM failed. No operation was performed. For more information, review the log file at %WINDIR%\logs\DISM\dism.log.</p> <p>Due to network policy settings, Windows couldn't connect to the Internet to download files required to complete the requested changes.</p>	<p>Contact your network administrator for assistance with the <b>Specify settings for optional component installation and component repair</b> Group Policy setting.</p>

## Related topics

[Microsoft .NET Framework 3.5 Deployment Considerations](#)

# DISM - Deployment Image Servicing and Management

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) is a command-line tool that is used to mount and service Windows images before deployment. You can use DISM image management commands to mount and get information about Windows image (.wim) files or virtual hard disks (VHD). You can also use DISM to capture, split, and otherwise manage .wim files.

You can use DISM to install, uninstall, configure, and update Windows features, packages, drivers, and international settings in a .wim file or VHD using the DISM servicing commands.

DISM commands are used on offline images, but subsets of the DISM commands are also available for servicing a running operating system.

DISM is installed with Windows, and it is also distributed in the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (Windows ADK). DISM replaces several deployment tools, including PEimg, Intlcfg, ImageX, and Package Manager.

## In This Section

<a href="#">What is DISM?</a>	Describes the DISM system requirements, benefits, common servicing and management scenarios, and limitations.
<a href="#">DISM How-to Topics (Deployment Image Servicing and Management)</a>	Provides how-to instructions on using DISM.
<a href="#">DISM Reference (Deployment Image Servicing and Management)</a>	Provides reference information for DISM, including command-line options, best practices, and supported platforms.

## Related topics

[Windows Setup Technical Reference](#)

[Device Drivers and Deployment Overview](#)

[Language Packs](#)

[Understanding Servicing Strategies](#)

# What is DISM?

8/17/2017 • 6 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM.exe) is a command-line tool that can be used to service and prepare Windows images, including those used for [Windows PE](#), [Windows Recovery Environment \(Windows RE\)](#) and [Windows Setup](#). DISM can be used to service a Windows image (.wim) or a virtual hard disk (.vhdx or .vhd).

DISM is available through the command line or from Windows PowerShell. To learn more about using DISM with PowerShell, see [Deployment Imaging Servicing Management \(DISM\) Cmdlets in Windows PowerShell](#).

## Image Requirements

DISM can be used to mount and service a Windows image from a .wim file, .vhdx file or a .vhd file or, in some cases, to update a running operating system. It can be used with older Windows image files (.wim files). However, it cannot be used with Windows images that are more recent than the installed version of the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (Windows ADK) in which DISM is distributed. DISM is also installed with the Windows 10, Windows 8.1 and Windows 8 operating systems.

For a complete technical description of WIM, see the [Windows Imaging File Format \(WIM\) white paper](#).

DISM can be used to service the following operating systems:

- Windows 10 for desktop editions (Home, Pro, Enterprise, and Education)
- Windows Server 2016
- Windows 8.1
- Windows 8
- Windows Server 2012 R2
- Windows Server 2012
- Windows 7
- Windows Server 2008 R2
- Windows Server 2008 SP2
- Windows PE for Windows 10
- Windows PE 5.0
- Windows PE 4.0
- Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE) 3.0
- [Windows Recovery Environment \(Windows RE\)](#)

**Note** DISM cannot mount a Windows image from a VHD on Windows Vista® with Service Pack 1 (SP1) or Windows Server 2008. You must attach the VHD using the DiskPart tool before you can use DISM to service the image. When you service VHD images that have been attached using the DiskPart tool, the changes are automatically committed with each operation and cannot be discarded.

For a list of the supported platforms and architecture types, see [DISM Supported Platforms](#).

## Benefits

You can use DISM with .wim files to:

- Capture and apply Windows images.

- Append and delete images in a .wim file.
- Split .wim files into several smaller files.

You can use DISM with .wim, .vhdx, or .vhd files to:

- Add, remove, and enumerate packages, drivers, languages.
- Enable or disable Windows features.
- Apply changes based on the **offlineServicing** section of an Unattend.xml answer file.
- Configure international settings.
- Upgrade a Windows image to a different edition.
- Prepare a Windows PE image.
- Provide detailed logs for troubleshooting.
- Service earlier versions of Windows such as Windows 8.x, Windows 7, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Vista.
- Service all platforms (32-bit, 64-bit).
- Service a 32-bit image from a 64-bit host, and service a 64-bit image from a 32-bit host. For more information, see the "Limitations" section later this topic.
- Make use of old Package Manager scripts.

## Common Servicing and Management Scenarios

Image servicing and management solutions fall into two main categories:

- Managing the data or information included in the Windows image, such as enumerating or taking an inventory of the components, updates, drivers, or applications that are contained in an image, capturing or splitting an image, appending or deleting images within a .wim file, or mounting an image.
- Servicing the image itself, including adding or removing driver packages and drivers, modifying language settings, enabling or disabling Windows features, and upgrading to a higher edition of Windows.

Here are some common scenarios for image servicing and management:

### TASKS

Capture an image and save it as a .wim file.

List all images within a .wim, .vhdx, or .vhd file.

Manage several images in a single .wim file by appending, removing, or enumerating the images.

Prepare a Windows PE image.

List information about a Windows PE image.

Mount a Windows image.

List specific information about an image mounted from a .wim, .vhdx, or .vhd file, including where it is mounted, the mount status, and the index of each image in a .wim file.

## TASKS

List all drivers in an image or information about a specific driver.

Add out-of-box or boot-critical drivers to support new hardware.

Add operating-system updates such as hotfixes and Windows features.

Add or remove a language pack, and configure international settings.

List all international settings and languages in an image.

Troubleshooting through integrated status and logging.

Manage multiple image versions.

List all features in a package or specific information about a Windows feature.

Check the applicability of a Windows® Installer.msp file.

Update multiple Windows editions by updating a single image.

Upgrade to a higher edition of Windows.

List all of the Windows editions that an image can be upgraded to.

Apply settings in an Unattend.xml answer file.

Split a large .wim file into several smaller files to fit on selected media.

## Limitations

**Version compatibility.** DISM can be used with target images of older Windows operating systems, but not with target images of operating systems that are more recent than the installed version of the Windows ADK in which DISM is distributed. For example, DISM from Windows 10, version 1511 can service Windows 10, version 1511 and version 1507 but not version 1607. To learn more, see [DISM Supported Platforms](#).

**Remote installation.** Installing packages to a remote computer over a network is not supported. The Windows image must be present on the local system. DISM can access packages on a network share, but it must copy them to a temporary, writable directory (called a *scratch directory*). We recommend that you use a unique scratch directory on a local drive for each package you install. The contents of the scratch directory can be deleted after installation.

**Answer files.** When you specify an answer file (Unattend.xml) for an image, only the settings specified in the **offlineServicing** configuration pass are applied. All other settings in the answer file are ignored. For more information, see [DISM Unattended Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

**Service Packs.** Service packs must be installed online with the Windows Update Standalone installer. For more information about Windows Update Standalone Installer, see [Description of the Windows Update Standalone Installer in Windows](#).

**Use an answer file to ensure package dependencies.** Some packages require other packages to be installed first. Because of this dependency requirement, you should use an answer file if you are installing multiple packages. By applying an answer file by using DISM, multiple packages can be installed in the correct order. This is the preferred method for installing multiple packages.

**Package installation order.** Packages are installed in the order that they are listed in the command line. In the following example, 1.inf, 2.inf, and 3.inf will be installed in the order in which they are listed in the command line.

```
DISM.exe /image:"c:\images\Image1" /Add-Driver /ForceUnsigned /DriverName:"C:\Drivers\1.inf"
/DriverName:"C:\Drivers\2.inf" /DriverName:"C:\Drivers\3.inf"
```

**Supported servicing commands are dynamic.** The commands and options that are available for servicing an image depend on which Windows operating system you are servicing, and whether the image is offline or a currently running operating system.

**Multiple unattend files are not supported.** You can specify more than one driver or package on a command line. However, multiple Unattend.xml answer files are not supported. Only a single answer file may be specified on any command line.

**Multiple servicing commands are not supported.** You can specify multiple drivers (1.inf, 2.inf) or packages, but you cannot specify multiple commands (such as **/Add-Driver /Remove-Driver** or **/Add-Driver /Add-Package**) on the same command line.

**Logging to a network share.** When you use a computer that is not joined to a network domain, use **net use** with domain credentials to set access permissions before you specify the path for the DISM log that is stored on a network share.

**Wildcards.** Wildcards are not supported in DISM command lines.

**Do not install a language pack after an update.** If you install an update (hotfix, general distribution release [GDR], or service pack [SP]) that contains language-dependent resources before you install a language pack, the language-specific changes that are contained in the update are not applied. Always install language packs before you install updates.

## Related topics

[DISM Reference \(Deployment Image Servicing and Management\)](#)

[Deployment Image Servicing and Management \(DISM\) Command-Line Options](#)

[Device Drivers and Deployment Overview](#)

[Language Packs](#)

[Understanding Servicing Strategies](#)

# What's New in DISM

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

DISM in Windows 10 supports new features:

- [Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer](#) and related tools.
- **Full Flash Update (.FFU)**: DISM supports the Full Flash Update (.FFU) format, which captures an entire drive, including partition information. This can make deployment faster and easier.

To learn more, see [WIM vs FFU image file formats](#) and [/Apply-FFU](#) and [/Split-FFU](#) in [DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#).

- **Capabilities**: This new Windows package type allows you to request services like .NET or languages without specifying the version. Use DISM to search multiple sources like Windows Update or your corporate servers to find and install the latest version. For more info, see [DISM Capabilities Package Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

To learn more, see the new topic: [DISM Capabilities Package Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

- **Compress operating system and provisioning packages**: Save space on a Windows image by running the operating system and other system files from compressed files. This replaces the WIMBoot features from Windows 8.1.

To learn more, see [/Apply-Image/Compact](#) and [/Apply-CustomDataImage](#) in [DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#).

For an overview of DISM, see [What is DISM?](#).

# Where is DISM?

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM.exe) is a command-line tool that can be used to service a Windows image or to prepare a Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE) image. For more information about DISM see [What is DISM?](#)

## DISM in Windows 10

DISM comes with Windows 10, in the `c:\windows\system32` folder. You can use DISM from a Command prompt running as administrator.

## DISM in the ADK

If you are running an older version of Windows, or you need a different version of DISM on your PC, download and install the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (Windows ADK), see [Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit \(Windows ADK\) Technical Reference](#).

DISM appears in the Windows ADK here:

```
C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\<version>\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Deployment Tools\<arch>\DISM
```

where `<version>` can be **8.0**, **8.1**, or **10**, and `<arch>` can be **x86** or **amd64**.

If you need to copy an ADK version of DISM to a PC that does not have the ADK, see [Copy DISM to another computer](#).

## Related topics

[What is DISM?](#)

[DISM - Deployment Image Servicing and Management Technical Reference for Windows](#)

[Copy DISM to another computer](#)

# DISM How-to Topics (Deployment Image Servicing and Management)

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

This section provides information about servicing an existing Windows image using the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) tool. You can add or remove language packs or drivers, and you can update an existing offline or online image when new software and hardware become available. Offline servicing is updating an image that has been mounted or applied, but is not currently installed and running. Online servicing is updating the image on a running installation of the Windows operating system. You can use DISM to mount a Windows image (.wim) file or a virtual hard disk (VHD) for servicing.

## In This Section

<a href="#">Use DISM in Windows PowerShell</a>	Import DISM cmdlets into a Windows PowerShell environment.
<a href="#">Install Windows 10 using a previous version of Windows PE</a>	Use the Windows 10 version of DISM on a previous version of Windows PE to deploy Windows 10.
<a href="#">Create and Manage a Windows Image Using DISM</a>	Capture, mount, or apply a Windows image.
<a href="#">Take Inventory of an Image or Component Using DISM</a>	Get information about an online or offline image and how to get information about the components in an image.
<a href="#">Service a Windows Image Using DISM</a>	Modify or service a Windows image by adding or removing drivers, packages, features, language packs, or by changing the Windows image to a higher edition.
<a href="#">Repair a Windows Image</a>	Repair a Windows Image if the operating system has become corrupted or the image is unserviceable.
<a href="#">Manage the Component Store</a>	Get information about the component store (WinSxS folder) and about how to reduce the size of the WinSxS folder.

## Related topics

[What is DISM?](#)

[DISM Reference \(Deployment Image Servicing and Management\)](#)

# Use DISM in Windows PowerShell

9/5/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) cmdlets can be used to perform the same functions as the DISM.exe command-line tool. In many cases, the DISM cmdlet names correspond directly to Dism.exe options and the same arguments can be used. Because there are also cases where the DISM cmdlet names do not correspond directly to Dism.exe options, a table that maps the Dism.exe commands to DISM cmdlets is provided here:

DISM.EXE COMMAND	DISM CMDLET
Dism.exe /Add-Capability	Add-WindowsCapability
Dism.exe /Append-Image	Add-WindowsImage
Dism.exe /Apply-Image	Expand-WindowsImage
Dism.exe /Capture-Image	New-WindowsImage
Dism.exe /Cleanup-MountPoints	Clear-WindowsCorruptMountPoint
Dism.exe /Commit-Image	Save-WindowsImage
Dism.exe /Export-Image	Export-WindowsImage
Dism.exe /Get-Capabilities	Get-WindowsCapability
Dism.exe /Get-ImageInfo	Get-WindowsImage
Dism.exe /Get-MountedImageInfo	Get-WindowsImage -Mounted
Dism.exe /Get-WimBootEntry	Get-WIMBootEntry
Dism.exe /List-Image	Get-WindowsImageContent
Dism.exe /Mount-Image	Mount-WindowsImage
Dism.exe /Split-Image	Split-WindowsImage

<b>DISM.EXE COMMAND</b>	<b>DISM CMDLET</b>
Dism.exe /Remove-Capability	Remove-WindowsCapability
Dism.exe /Remove-Image	Remove-WindowsImage
Dism.exe /Remount-Image	Mount-WindowsImage -Remount
Dism.exe /Unmount-Image	Dismount-WindowsImage
Dism.exe /Update-WimBootEntry	Update-WIMBootEntry
Dism.exe /Image:<...> /Add-Driver	Add-WindowsDriver
Dism.exe /Image:<...> /Add-Package	Add-WindowsPackage
Dism.exe /Image:<...> /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage	Add-AppxProvisionedPackage
Dism.exe /Image:<...> /Apply-Unattend	Apply-WindowsUnattend
Dism.exe /Image:<...> /Cleanup-Image /CheckHealth	Repair-WindowsImage -CheckHealth
Dism.exe /Image:<...> /Cleanup-Image /ScanHealth	Repair-WindowsImage -ScanHealth
Dism.exe /Image:<...> /Cleanup-Image /RestoreHealth	Repair-WindowsImage -RestoreHealth
Dism.exe /Image:<...> /Disable-Feature	Disable-WindowsOptionalFeature
Dism.exe /Image:<...> /Enable-Feature	Enable-WindowsOptionalFeature
Dism.exe /Image:<...> /Export-Driver	Export-WindowsDriver
Dism.exe /Image:<...> /Get-CurrentEdition	Get-WindowsEdition -Current
Dism.exe /Image:<...> /Get-Driverinfo	Get-WindowsDriver -Driver
Dism.exe /Image:<...> /Get-Drivers	Get-WindowsDriver
Dism.exe /Image:<...> /Get-Featureinfo	Get-WindowsOptionalFeature -FeatureName

DISM.EXE COMMAND	DISM CMDLET
Dism.exe /Image:<...> /Get-Features	Get-WindowsOptionalFeature
Dism.exe /Image:<...> /Get-Packageinfo	Get-WindowsPackage -PackagePath   -PackageName
Dism.exe /Image:<...> /Get-Packages	Get-WindowsPackage
Dism.exe /Image:<...> /Get-ProvisionedAppxPackages	Get-AppxProvisionedPackage
Dism.exe /Image:<...> /Get-TargetEditions	Get-WindowsEdition -Target
Dism.exe /Image:<...> /Optimize-Image	Optimize-WindowsImage
Dism.exe /Image:<...> /Remove-Driver	Remove-WindowsDriver
Dism.exe /Image:<...> /Remove-Package	Remove-WindowsPackage
Dism.exe /Image:<...> /Remove-ProvisionedAppxPackage	Remove-AppxProvisionedPackage
Dism.exe /Image:<...> /Set-Edition	Set-WindowsEdition
Dism.exe /Image:<...> /Set-ProductKey	Set-WindowsProductKey
Dism.exe /Image:<...> /Set-ProvisionedAppxDataFile	Set-AppXProvisionedDataFile

## Install the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (Optional)

The DISM PowerShell module is included in Windows 10 and Windows Server 2016. On other supported operating systems, you can install the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (ADK) which includes the DISM PowerShell module.

## Install Windows PowerShell 5.0

For Windows 10 and Windows Server 2016, Windows Powershell 5.0 is included in the installation. For other older supported versions of Windows and Windows Server, you must install Windows Management Framework 5.0. You can download and install [Windows Management Framework 5.0](#) from the Microsoft Download Center.

## To prepare the DISM PowerShell Environment

1. To open PowerShell with administrator privileges, on the **Start** screen, type **PowerShell**, right-click the **Windows PowerShell** app tile, and then, in the app bar, click **Run as administrator**.
2. Import the DISM PowerShell module.

The DISM PowerShell module is included in Windows 10 and Windows Server 2016 and does not need to be imported.

On other supported operating systems, you can use the DISM PowerShell module included in the Windows ADK. By default, the module is installed with the Windows ADK in the DISM folder at <x86 or amd64>\DISM\ under the path:

C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Deployment Tools\ in Windows 10. To import this module, at the command prompt, type:

```
import-module <path to DISM folder>
```

For example, using the Windows 10 version of the Windows ADK on a 64-bit PC type:

```
import-module "C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Deployment Tools\amd64\DISM"
```

### Note

**Import-Module** imports a module only into the current session. To import the module into all sessions, add an **Import-Module** command to your PowerShell profile. For more information about profiles, type `get-help about_profiles`.

3. Set the `%path%` environment variable to the location of the DISM folder in the Windows ADK installation. At the command prompt, type:

```
$env:path = <path to DISM folder>
```

When you change environment variables in PowerShell, the change affects only the current session. To make a persistent change to an environment variable that stores the change in the registry, use System in Control Panel. For more information, see [To add or change the values of environment variables](#).

### To get Help for DISM PowerShell cmdlets

To get the syntax to use with a cmdlet, at a command prompt, type:

```
get-help <cmdlet name>
```

For example, type:

```
get-help get-WindowsImage
```

## Related topics

[DISM - Deployment Image Servicing and Management Technical Reference for Windows](#)

[DISM Supported Platforms](#)

# Install Windows 10 using a previous version of Windows PE

7/13/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

To use some DISM features in WinPE, such as [siloed provisioning packages](#), you may run the latest version of DISM from a separate location.

Each time you boot WinPE and want to use these features, you'll need to install and configure the drivers needed for DISM, including the wimmount.sys and wofadk.sys drivers.

The CopyDandI.cmd script copies the version of DISM from your local installation of the ADK to a folder which you can use in WinPE.

## Option 1: Run DISM from a separate location

You'll need the Windows 10, version 1607 version of the Deployment and Imaging Tools from the ADK.

**Important** Don't overwrite the existing DISM files on the WinPE image.

1. Start the Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment as an administrator.
2. From the technician PC, copy the Deployment and Imaging Tools from the Windows ADK to the storage USB key.

```
CopyDandI.cmd amd64 E:\ADKTools\amd64
```

## Option 2: Add WinPE to the WinPE RAMDisk.

Note: this will add roughly 4MB to the size of your DISM image, which may affect performance.

1. On your technician PC, install the Windows ADK for Windows 10.
2. Mount WinPE. For WinPE 3.x, mount the file: \sources\winpe.wim. For WinPE 4.x and 5.x, mount the file: \sources\boot.wim.

```
md "C:\WinPE_amd64\mount"

Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:"C:\WinPE_amd64\media\sources\boot.wim" /index:1
/MountDir:"C:\WinPE_amd64\mount"
```

3. Copy the DISM folder from the Windows ADK into a new folder in the mounted WinPE image.

```
md C:\WinPE_amd64\mount\DISM

robocopy "C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Deployment
Tools\amd64\DISM" C:\WinPE_amd64\mount\DISM
```

**Important** Don't overwrite the existing DISM files from the **system32** folder in the WinPE image. Instead, create a new folder on the host computer to copy the Windows ADK files into.

4. Unmount WinPE.

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:"C:\WinPE_amd64\mount" /commit
```

5. Create WinPE bootable media, or replace the WinPE image file on your existing removable media.

```
MakeWinPEMedia /UFD C:\WinPE_amd64 F:
```

## Use the new version of DISM

1. Boot the reference PC to WinPE.
2. Find the drive letter of the storage drive (`diskpart, list volume, exit`).
3. Install and configure DISM's required drivers by using either **wimmountadksetupamd64.exe /Install** or **wimmountadksetupx86.exe /Install**.

```
W:\ADKTools\amd64\wimmountadksetupAmd64.exe /Install /q
```

For the default (RAMDisk) version of WinPE, you'll need to run this command each time you boot WinPE. To learn how to run this command automatically when WinPE boots, see [Wpeinit and Startnet.cmd: Using WinPE Startup Scripts](#).

4. Verify the new version of DISM:

```
W:\ADKTools\amd64\DISM.exe /?
```

The output shows the build number, for example:

```
Deployment Image Servicing and Management tool
Version: 10.0.14939.0
```

5. Use the new version of DISM. Example:

```
W:\ADKTools\amd64\DISM.exe /Apply-Image /ImageFile:install.wim /Index:1 /ApplyDir:W: /Compact
W:\ADKTools\amd64\DISM.exe /Apply-SiloedPackage /ImagePath:W:\ /PackagePath:"e:\SPPs\fabrikam-id.spp"
/PackagePath:"D:\SPPs\office16_base.spp" /PackagePath:"D:\SPPs\office16_fr-fr.spp"
/PackagePath:"D:\SPPs\office16_de-de.spp"
```

## Related topics

[DISM Supported Platforms](#)

[WinPE: Mount and Customize](#)

[Lab 10: Add desktop applications and settings with siloed provisioning packages \(SPPs\)](#)

# Create and Manage a Windows Image Using DISM

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM.exe) mounts a Windows image (.wim) file or virtual hard disk (.vhdx or .vhd) for servicing. You can also use the DISM image management command to list the image index numbers or to verify the architecture for the image that you are mounting. After you update the image, you must unmount it and either commit or discard the changes you have made.

You can use DISM servicing commands to install, uninstall, configure, and update the features and packages in offline Windows® images and offline Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE) images. For more information about common DISM scenarios, see [What is DISM?](#). For more information about DISM servicing commands, see [Deployment Image Servicing and Management \(DISM\) Command-Line Options](#).

## In This Section

<a href="#">Capture Images of Hard Disk Partitions Using DISM</a>	Use the Diskpart tool and the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) tool to capture an image and save it as a .wim file.
<a href="#">Mount and Modify a Windows Image Using DISM</a>	Map the contents of a Windows image (.wim) file to a directory to service the image or to perform common file operations such as adding and deleting files.
<a href="#">Apply Images Using DISM</a>	Use the Diskpart tool and the DISM tool to apply Windows images to one or more partitions onto a computer for deployment.
<a href="#">Split a Windows Image (WIM) File to Span Across Multiple DVDs</a>	Split a large .wim file into several smaller files that will fit on your selected media. Copy split .wim files onto your selected media as .iso files.
<a href="#">Create a WIM for Multiple Architecture Types Using DISM</a>	Create a single .wim file that includes both 32-bit and 64-bit Windows images.
<a href="#">Append a Volume Image to an Existing Image Using DISM</a>	Add a second image to an existing .wim file.
<a href="#">Create a Data Image Using DISM</a>	Create a .wim file that contains only files and applications that you intend to copy to the Windows installation by using an unattended answer file.

## Related topics

[DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#)

# Capture Images of Hard Disk Partitions Using DISM

8/2/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) tool to capture an image of your hard disk for deployment and save it as a Windows® image (.wim) file. To see how this information applies to Windows, system, and recovery partitions, see [Capture and Apply Windows, System, and Recovery Partitions](#).

## Prerequisites

1. Windows PE. See [WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#).
2. A reference computer. You can create a reference computer by deploying Windows, and then removing the computer-specific information from the system. For more information, see [Sysprep \(Generalize\) a Windows installation](#).

## Step 1: Determining Which Partitions to Capture

This table shows the types of partitions that you must capture and those that are managed automatically.

PARTITION TYPE	SHOULD YOU CAPTURE THIS PARTITION?
<b>System partition</b> (BIOS system partition or EFI System Partition)	Optional  If only a simple set of partition files is required, you don't have to capture this partition.
<b>Microsoft Reserved partition (MSR)</b>	No
<b>Primary partitions</b> (Windows partitions, utility partitions)	Yes
<b>Extended partition</b>	No
<b>Logical partitions</b> (Windows partitions, utility partitions)	Yes

You can capture and apply images between partitions on BIOS-based and UEFI-based computers, because the Windows image isn't affected by the firmware. For more information, see [Capture and Apply Windows, System, and Recovery Partitions](#).

## Step 2: Assign Drive Letters to Partitions

If any of the partitions you want to capture don't already have a drive letter assigned, assign a letter using the **DiskPart** tool.

1. Start your reference computer by using Windows PE.
2. At the Windows PE command prompt, type `diskpart` to open the DiskPart tool.

```
X:> diskpart
DISKPART>
```

3. View the disks in your PC with the `list disk` command. For example,

```
DISKPART> list disk

Disk ### Status Size Free Dyn Gpt
----- -----
Disk 0 Online 127 GB 0 B *
```

4. Select the hard disk with the `select disk` command. For example,

```
DISKPART> select disk 0
```

5. View the partitions with the `list partition` command. For example,

```
DISKPART> list partition

Partition ### Type Size Offset
----- -----
Partition 1 Recovery 300 MB 1024 KB
Partition 2 System 100 MB 451 MB
Partition 3 Reserved 16 MB 551 MB
Partition 4 Primary 126 GB 567 MB
```

6. Select the partition with the `select partition` command. For example,

```
DISKPART> select partition=2
```

7. Assign a letter to the partition with the `assign letter` command. For example,

```
DISKPART> assign letter=S
```

8. Type `exit` to return to the Windows PE command prompt.

```
DISKPART> exit
X:\>
```

For more information, see the DiskPart Help from the command line, or [Diskpart Command line syntax](#).

## Step 3: Capture Partition Images using DISM

Capture images for each customized partition.

- At the Windows PE command prompt, capture the images by using the **DISM** command together with the **/captureImage** option. For example,

```
Dism /Capture-Image /ImageFile:c:\my-windows-partition.wim /CaptureDir:C:\ /Name:"My Windows partition"
Dism /Capture-Image /ImageFile:s:\my-system-partition.wim /CaptureDir:S:\ /Name:"My system partition"
```

For more information about using the DISM tool to capture an image, see [DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#).

## Step 4: Save Images to the Network

Save your .wim files to your network or another safe location.

1. Connect to your distribution share by using the **net use** command. For example,

```
net use n: \\Server\Share
```

If prompted, provide your network credentials.

2. Copy the partitions to your network share. For example,

```
md N:\Images\
copy C:\my-windows-partition.wim N:\Images\
copy c:\my-system-partition.wim N:\Images\
```

## Next Steps

After the image is captured and stored, you can:

- Mount it to your reference computer for modification. For more information, see [Mount and Modify a Windows Image Using DISM](#).
- Split the file into smaller files. For more information, see [Split a Windows Image \(WIM\) File to Span Across Multiple DVDs](#).
- Apply the images to a destination computer. For more information, see [Apply Images Using DISM](#).
- Service the image. For more information, see [Service a Windows Image Using DISM](#).

## Related topics

[Deployment Image Servicing and Management \(DISM\) Command-Line Options](#)

[BCDboot Command-Line Options](#)

[Capture and Apply Windows, System, and Recovery Partitions](#)

[Boot to VHD \(Native Boot\): Add a Virtual Hard Disk to the Boot Menu](#)

# Mount and Modify a Windows Image Using DISM

7/13/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) tool to mount a Windows image from a WIM or VHD file. Mounting an image maps the contents of the image to a directory so that you can service the image using DISM without booting into the image. You can also perform common file operations, such as copying, pasting, and editing on a mounted image.

## Note

DISM cannot mount a Windows image from a VHD on Windows Vista with Service Pack 1 (SP1) or Windows Server 2008. You must attach the VHD using the DiskPart tool before you can use DISM to service the image. When you service VHD images that have been attached using the DiskPart tool, the changes are automatically committed with each operation and cannot be discarded.

You can mount and modify multiple images on a single computer. For more information, see [Deployment Image Servicing and Management \(DISM\) Best Practices](#).

## Mounting an Image

You can mount an image using the **/optimize** option to reduce initial mount time. However, when using the **/optimize** option, processes that are ordinarily performed during a mount will instead be completed the first time that you access a directory. As a result, there may be an increase in the time that is required to access a directory for the first time after mounting an image using the **/optimize** option.

### To mount an image

1. Open a command prompt with administrator privileges. If you are using a version of Windows other than Windows 8 or Windows 10, use the Deployment Tools Cmd Prompt installed with the ADK or navigate to the DISM directory on your local computer.
2. Mount the image.

```
DISM /Mount-Wim /WimFile:<path_to_WIM_file> {/Index:<image_index> | /Name:<image_name>} /MountDir:<target_mount_directory> [/readonly]
```

**Note:** To mount a Windows image from a VHD file, you must specify `/index:1`.

You can also add options to mount the image with read-only permissions or to reduce the initial mount time with the **/Optimize** option. For example,

```
DISM /Mount-Wim /WimFile:<path_to_WIM_file> {/Index:<image_index> | /Name:<image_name>} /MountDir:<target_mount_directory> [/readonly] [/optimize]
```

For more information about the options available for the **/Mount-Image** option in DISM, see [DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#).

## Modifying an Image

After you mount an image, you can browse the directory of the image. You can review the file and folder structure, and add, edit, or delete files and folders.

You can also use the DISM tool to add and remove drivers and packages, including language packs, enumerate drivers and packages, modify configuration settings, and more. For more information, see [Service a Windows Image Using DISM](#).

### To view and modify an image

1. On your technician computer open the mounted directory. For example,

```
cd C:\mounted_images
```

2. Delete, edit, or add additional files and folders to the location where they must appear after they have been applied to the destination computer. For example, C:\program\_files\application\_name.

#### Important

If you must add an application or a device, verify that you included all of the required files. Although you can add application files and folders, you cannot install applications.

## Committing Changes to an Image

You can commit changes to an image without unmounting the image.

### To commit changes to an image

- At the command prompt, type:

```
Dism /Commit-Image /MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

Use **/CheckIntegrity** to detect and track .wim file corruption when you commit changes to the image. When you apply or mount the image, use **/CheckIntegrity** again to stop the operation if file corruption was detected. **/CheckIntegrity** cannot be used with virtual hard disk (VHD) files.

## Unmounting an Image

After you modify an image, you must unmount it. If you mounted your image with the default read/write permissions, you can commit your changes. This makes your modifications a permanent part of the image.

### To unmount an image

1. Open a command prompt with administrator privileges. If you are using a version of Windows other than Windows 8 or Windows 10, use the Deployment Tools Cmd Prompt installed with the ADK or navigate to the DISM directory on your local computer.
2. Unmount the image.

```
Dism /Unmount-Wim /MountDir:<target_mount_directory> {/Commit | /Discard}
```

where `C:\test\offline` is the location of the mount directory. If you do not specify the parameters to unmount, this option lists all of the mounted images but does not perform the unmount action.

#### Important

You must use either the **/commit** or **/discard** argument when you use the **/unmount** option.

After modifying an image, you can apply the image from a network share or from local media, such as a CD/DVD or a USB flash drive (UFD).

# Troubleshooting

If the DISM commands in this topic fail, try the following:

1. Make sure that you are using the Windows 10 version of DISM that is installed with the Windows ADK.
2. If you are using a Windows 8.1, Windows 8, or Windows 7 PC, use the **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** to access the tools that are installed with the Windows 10 version of the Windows ADK.
3. Don't mount images to protected folders, such as your User\Documents folder.
4. If DISM processes are interrupted, consider temporarily disconnecting from the network and disabling virus protection.
5. If DISM processes are interrupted, consider running the commands from the Windows Preinstallation Environment (WinPE) instead.

## Related topics

[DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#)

[Service a Windows Image Using DISM](#)

# Apply Images Using DISM

7/13/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

This topic describes how to deploy images captured from your reference computer to one or more destination computers using the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) tool. For more information about configuring recommended hard drive partitions, see [Configure UEFI/GPT-Based Hard Drive Partitions](#) and [Configure BIOS/MBR-Based Hard Drive Partitions](#).

## Apply a Windows Image

On the destination computer, you will create a structure for the partitions where you apply your images. The partition structure on the destination computer must match the partition structure of the reference computer.

If you apply an image to a volume with an existing Windows installation, files from the previous installation may not be deleted. Format the volume by using a tool such as DiskPart before applying the new image.

### To partition the hard drive and apply an image

1. Boot the destination computer to Windows PE. For more information, see [Windows PE \(WinPE\) Technical Reference](#).
2. Connect to the network distribution share where your Windows image is stored. For example, you can use the **net use** command to do this:

```
net use n: \\server\share
```

If prompted, provide your network credentials.

3. At the Windows PE command prompt, type **diskpart** to start the **Diskpart** tool.
4. Create your partition structure using the **Diskpart** tool. For example:

```
select disk 0
clean
create partition primary size=3000 id=27
format quick fs=ntfs label="Recovery"
assign letter="R"
create partition primary size=300
format quick fs=ntfs label="System"
assign letter="S"
active
create partition primary
format quick fs=ntfs label="Windows"
assign letter="C"
exit
```

This example temporarily assigns these drive letters: Windows=C, System=S, and Recovery=R. If you're deploying to PCs with unformatted hard drives, change the Windows drive letter to a letter that's near the end of the alphabet, such as W, to avoid drive letter conflicts. Do not use X, because this drive letter is reserved for Windows PE. After the PC reboots, the Windows partition is assigned the letter C, and the other partitions don't receive drive letters.

For examples of recommended partition structures, see [Configure BIOS/MBR-Based Hard Drive Partitions](#) and [Configure UEFI/GPT-Based Hard Drive Partitions](#).

### Note

You can automate this task with the `diskpart /s <script>` command. For more information, see [Diskpart Command line syntax](#).

5. Use the DISM tool to apply images to your Windows partition.

For each partition that you apply an image to, run the **DISM /apply-image** /imageFile: <image\_file> /index:<index\_number> /ApplyDir:<image\_path> command.

```
Dism /apply-image /imagefile:N:\Images\my-windows-partition.wim /index:1 /ApplyDir:C:\
```

**Note** If the DISM /Apply-Image command fails, make sure you're using a [supported version of DISM](#) for that Windows image. For example, to apply a Windows 10 image, you'll need the Windows 10 version of DISM.

6. To set up a basic system partition, you can use the BCDboot tool to copy a simple set of system files to a system partition. These files include boot configuration data (BCD) information that is used to start Windows:

Use the BCDboot tool to copy common system partition files and to initialize boot configuration data:

```
C:\Windows\System32\bcdboot C:\Windows /l en-US
```

For more information about the BCDboot tool, see [BCDboot Command-Line Options](#).

### Note

You can also set up the system partition by applying an image. Use the **DISM /apply-image** command.

For example:

```
Dism /apply-image /imagefile:N:\Images\my-system-partition.wim /index:1 /ApplyDir:S:\
```

You can set up the computer to reinstall your Windows image in the event of a system failure. For more information, see [Windows Recovery Environment \(Windows RE\) Technical Reference](#).

### Important

Microsoft Reserved partitions (MSR) and Extended partitions are managed by the computer. Do not apply an image to these partitions.

You can use audit mode to test the computer and to perform additional customizations before you ship it to your end user. For more information, see [Boot Windows to Audit Mode or OOBE](#).

You can also perform some customizations to the computer without booting it. For more information, see [Service an Applied Windows Image](#).

### Note

If you receive the error message: **Bootmgr not found. Press CTRL+ALT+DEL**, this indicates that Windows cannot identify the boot information in the active partition. If you receive this error message, check the following:

- Use the DiskPart tool to check to make sure that the system partition is set to Active.
- Check to make sure that the active partition includes system files.

## Related topics

[Capture Images of Hard Disk Partitions Using DISM](#)

[Boot Windows to Audit Mode or OOBE](#)

## [DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#)

### [Applying Images using a script](#)

# Split a Windows image file (.wim) to span across multiple DVDs

8/25/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Split .wim files into .swm files for DVDs or FAT32 file systems. Use this procedure when the split .swm files do not fit in into a single medium, such as these cases:

- Deploying Windows using DVDs. (A standard single-sided DVD stores 4.7GB).
- Deploying your Windows image from a Windows PE USB key. (The standard Windows PE installation uses the FAT32 file system, which has a maximum file size of 4GB.) For more information, see [WinPE: Store or split images to deploy Windows using a single USB key](#).

Note: Split WIMs are supported by DISM /Apply-Image, but are not supported in the Windows 10 version of Windows Setup.

After the files are split, you can copy them onto separate DVDs, or onto USB key(s).

Note, before you can apply the image, you must first put all of the split files into the same folder, for example, by copying them to a temporary folder on the destination computer. Then use DISM to apply the image, while specifying the split .swm files location and file pattern. DISM does not support applying the files from separate folders or DVDs.

By default, this option creates new split .wim files with a .swm extension. The first file name is based on the specified file name, and each of the following files receives a number after it. For example, when you split "Install.wim", the default filenames are "Install.swm", "Install2.swm", "Install3.swm", and so on.

## Important

- Windows Setup doesn't support installing from a split .swm file for Windows 10 and Windows Server 2016.
- You cannot modify a split .swm file.

## Scenario: Deploy Windows using DVDs

1. On your technician PC, open the **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** as an administrator.
2. Split the Windows image:

```
Dism /Split-Image /ImageFile:C:\images\install.wim /SWMFile:C:\images\install.swm /FileSize:4700
```

where:

- `C:\images\install.wim` is the name and the location of the image file that you want to split.
- `C:\images\install.swm` is the destination name and the location for the split .swm files.
- `4700` is the maximum size in MB for each of the split .swm files to be created.

In this example, the `/split` option creates an `install.swm` file, an `install2.swm` file, an `install3.swm` file, and so on, in the `C:\images` directory.

3. Copy the files to individual DVDs. For example, insert the first DVD and type:

```
copy C:\images\install.swm D:*
```

Then insert the second DVD and type:

```
copy C:\images\install2.swm D:*
```

And so on until all .swm files are copied to DVDs.

4. Boot your destination computer to Windows Preinstallation Environment (WinPE). For more information, see [WinPE: Create a Boot CD, DVD, ISO, or VHD](#).
5. Configure and format your hard drive partitions, as shown in [Capture and Apply Windows, System, and Recovery Partitions](#).
6. Copy the files to a single temporary folder. For example, insert the first DVD and type:

```
md C:\temp
copy d:\install.swm c:\TempDVDFolder*
```

Then insert the second DVD and type:

```
copy d:\install2.swm c:\TempDVDFolder*
```

And so on until all .swm files are copied.

7. Apply your image using the DISM /Apply-image /swmfile option:

```
Dism /apply-image /imagefile:c:\temp\install.swm /swmfile:c:\temp\install*.swm /index:1 /applydir:D:\
```

8. Remove the temp folder:

```
rd c:\TempDVDFolder /s /q
```

9. Set up your system and recovery partitions, as shown in [Capture and Apply Windows, System, and Recovery Partitions](#).

## Related topics

[Capture and Apply Windows, System, and Recovery Partitions](#)

[WinPE: Use a single USB key for WinPE and a WIM file \(.wim\)](#)

[DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#)

# Create a WIM for Multiple Architecture Types Using DISM

7/13/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

When you plan your deployment scenarios, consider how you will deploy and maintain your images for different architecture types. There are several ways you can manage multiple Windows images for multiple architecture types. Because you can deploy both 32-bit and 64-bit Windows images from a 32-bit preinstallation environment, you can maintain 32-bit and 64-bit Windows images in the same Windows image (.wim) file or separate .wim files.

Because you can store multiple Windows images in a single .wim file, you can create architecture-specific .wim files or a single .wim file that contains images for multiple architecture types.

- 32-bit images only

You can create a .wim file that contains Windows images for a single architecture type. In this scenario, you build a .wim file that contains one or more Windows images for 32-bit systems only. You create separate .wim files for different architecture types.

- 64-bit images only

You can create a .wim file that contains one or more of the 64-bit Windows images that you deploy.

- 32-bit and 64-bit images

You can create a .wim file that contains multiple Windows editions for multiple architecture types. For example, you can create a Windows image that contains two versions of Windows, one for 32-bit architectures, and one for 64-bit architectures.

## To Create a Windows Image for Multiple Architecture Types

You can create a single .wim file that includes both 32-bit and 64-bit Windows images. You must have both a 32-bit Windows distribution and a 64-bit Install.wim file. (A Windows distribution is the collection of files on the Windows installation media that includes not only the Install.wim file, but the additional files and directories that are required for Setup.) Cross-platform deployment is supported only from 32-bit Windows Setup.

1. Copy the entire 32-bit Windows distribution to a temporary directory on the local computer.
2. Copy the 64-bit Install.wim file to a separate temporary directory on the local computer.
3. At a command prompt, use the **Dism** command to export the 64-bit Windows images to the Install.wim file in the Windows distribution.
4. Repeat the **Dism /Export-Image** command for each 64-bit Windows image that you want to add to the Windows distribution.

For example, if you copy the distribution to C:\WindowsDistribution and the 64-bit Install.wim file to C:\Windows64-bit, you would use the following at a command prompt.

```
Dism /Export-Image /SourceImageFile:c:\windows64-bit\install.wim /SourceIndex:1
/DestinationImageFile:c:\windowsdistribution\sources\install.wim /DestinationName:"Fabrikam 64-bit Image"
```

### Note

It is important to add the name of the Windows image to indicate that it is for 64-bit computers only.

The 64-bit Windows image and all accompanying metadata are copied to the Install.wim file to a new index during the export process. When you have added all Windows images to the Install.wim file, your Windows distribution is ready to be used in your environment.

During attended installations, users will be prompted to select which architecture-specific Windows image to install (x86 or x64 images).

In unattended installations, if you store multiple Windows editions for multiple architecture types in a single .wim file, you must explicitly specify which image to install during Windows Setup with the `MetaData` setting.

## Related topics

[DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#)

[Windows Setup Supported Platforms and Cross-Platform Deployments](#)

# Append, apply, and export volume images with a Windows Image (.wim) file

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Manage multiple Windows images by combining them into a single .wim file. A single .wim file can take a fraction of the drive space that multiple .wim files can take.

When you combine two or more Windows image files into a single .wim, any files that are duplicated between the images are only stored once.

## Apply a volume image



Run these commands using DISM from a command prompt with administrator privileges.

## Multiple Windows Images in a .wim file

### Combine images: append a volume image to an existing image

Example: append an image of the D drive to an existing image called install.wim. Each new image receives a new index number, starting from 1.

```
Dism /Append-Image /ImageFile:"C:\images\install.wim" /CaptureDir:D:\ /Name:"Home + drivers"
```

### See a list of the volume images contained in a .WIM file

```
Dism /Get-ImageInfo /ImageFile:"C:\images\install.wim"
```

### Apply a volume image from the .WIM file

You can refer to an image either by image name or image index number. Examples:

```
Dism /Apply-Image /ImageFile:"C:\images\install.wim" /Index:2 /ApplyDir:D:\
Dism /Apply-Image /ImageFile:"C:\images\install.wim" /Name:"Home + drivers" /ApplyDir:D:\
```

### Extract an image from the .WIM file

Create a new .WIM file that includes only the files you need from a single volume image, for example, when [creating recovery media](#). The destination .WIM file starts with a new index number: 1.

Examples:

```
Dism /Export-Image /SourceImageFile:"C:\images\install.wim" /SourceIndex:2
/DestinationImageFile:"C:\resetmedia_amd64\media\sources\install.wim"

Dism /Export-Image /SourceImageFile:"C:\images\install.wim" /SourceName:"Home + drivers"
/DestinationImageFile:"C:\resetmedia_amd64\media\sources\install.wim"
```

For more information, see [DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#).

## Related topics

[Capture Images of Hard Disk Partitions Using DISM](#)

[DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#)

# Create a Data Image Using DISM

7/13/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

To add applications, files, and other resources to Windows® during an installation, you can create a data image. By using the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) tool, you can create additional Windows image (.wim) files that contain only files and applications that you intend to copy to the Windows installation.

Data images enable you to add:

- Applications, files, scripts, and other resources to Windows during an installation.
- Files, resources, and other data to a partition other than the operating system partition.

## Note

Data images must be used only to add new files to a Windows installation. Do not use data images to replace existing Windows files. Overwriting operating system data is unsupported.

Previous methods of transferring data to a Windows installation required the use of \$OEM\$ folders. These folder structures are still supported, but data images provide an easier and more efficient means of transferring additional data to Windows.

In unattended installations, the Windows image to install is specified by the `osImage` setting in the Microsoft-Windows-Setup component. You can add one or more `DataImage` settings in the Microsoft-Windows-Setup component that represent additional data images that you add to the system. For more information, see the Windows® Unattended Setup Reference.

## To create a data image

1. Locate the data that you will create a data image for.
2. Open a command prompt as an administrator, or boot the computer to Windows PE to open the Windows PE command prompt.
3. Use DISM to compress your data files to a .wim file. For example:

```
Dism /Capture-Image /ImageFile:c:\data\myData.wim /CaptureDir:C:\data\dataFiles /Name:MyData
```

In this example, everything under the C:\Data\DataFiles directory is added to the .wim file and the .wim file is given the label "MyData". All files and folders under C:\Data\DataFiles are extracted to the root of the drive specified in the answer file.

For more information about how to use DISM, see [DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#).

4. Copy the data image to an available location such as another partition or a network share during Windows Setup.

## To add a data image path to an answer file

1. Use Windows System Image Manager (Windows SIM) to create an answer file that contains the path to the data image to install and the location for the installation.
2. Add the Microsoft-Windows-Setup\ `DataImage` settings to the appropriate configuration pass for your environment. For example: `windowsPE`.
3. Save the answer file and close Windows SIM.

The answer file must resemble the following example:

```
<settings pass="windowsPE">
 <component name="Microsoft-Windows-Setup" processorArchitecture="x86"
publicKeyToken="31bf3856ad364e35" language="neutral" versionScope="nonSxS"
xmlns:wcm="http://schemas.microsoft.com/WMIConfig/2002/State"
xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
 <ImageInstall>
 <DataImage wcm:action="add">
 <InstallTo>
 <DiskID>0</DiskID>
 <PartitionID>1</PartitionID>
 </InstallTo>
 <InstallFrom>
 <Credentials>
 <Domain>Fabrikam</Domain>
 <Username>MyUsername</Username>
 <Password>MyPassword</Password>
 </Credentials>
 <Path>\\\networkshare\share\MyData.wim</Path>
 </InstallFrom>
 <Order>1</Order>
 </DataImage>
 </ImageInstall>
 </component>
</settings>
```

4. Run Setup.exe, specifying the location of the answer file. For example:

```
setup /unattend:C:\unattend.xml
```

All the files and folders specified in the data image are extracted to the root of the drive during installation. Executable files and scripts are not run when the data image is applied; they are only copied to the drive. You can use `FirstLogonCommands` to specify commands to run the first time a user logs on to the computer. For more information about `FirstLogonCommands`, see the Windows® Unattended Setup Reference.

# Take Inventory of an Image or Component Using DISM

7/13/2017 • 23 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can take an inventory of what drivers, packages, and other files and settings are included in a Windows image. To do so, use Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) servicing commands.

You must mount an offline image from a WIM or VHD file before you can take inventory of or service a specific Windows image. For more information, see [Mount and Modify a Windows Image Using DISM](#).

In this section:

[Get Windows Image Information](#)

[Get Windows PE Information](#)

[Get Driver Information](#)

[Get Package and Feature Information](#)

[Get App Package \(.appx\) Servicing Information](#)

[Get International Settings and Languages](#)

[Get Windows Edition Information](#)

[Get Application Patch Information](#)

## Get Windows Image Information

You can use image commands to list the information about a specific Windows image in a (WIM) file or virtual hard disk (VHD) file, about the images contained in a specific WIM or VHD file, and about mounted WIM or VHD files. This information can help you identify mount locations, image names, or verify the architecture of the image that you are mounting.

You can gather information about all of the images in a WIM or VHD file by using the **/Get-ImageInfo** servicing command in DISM. You can also gather information about a specific image in a WIM or VHD file, such as operating system, architecture, and settings, by specifying the name or index number of the image. To specify the image in a VHD file, you must use **/Index:1** .

You can identify the images that are currently mounted on your computer, and you can list information about the mounted image such as read/write permissions, mount location, mounted file path, and mounted image index by using the **/Get-MountedImageInfo** servicing command.

For more information about image commands available in DISM, see [DISM - Deployment Image Servicing and Management Technical Reference for Windows](#).

### To list images that are contained in a WIM or VHD file

1. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
2. To list information about all of the images in a WIM or VHD file, at the elevated command prompt, type:

```
Dism /Get-ImageInfo /imagefile:C:\test\images\install.wim
```

When used with the **/Index** or **/Name** options, more detailed information about the specified image is displayed. To specify the image in a VHD file, you must use **/Index:1**.

The report that is generated includes the following information.

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Index	The index value of the image in the WIM or VHD file.	1
Name	The Windows edition name of the image in the WIM or VHD file.	Windows 8 Pro
Description	The description of the image in the WIM or VHD file.	Windows 8 Pro
Size	The size of the image.	8,045,951,502 bytes

### To list mounted images

1. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
2. At the elevated command prompt, type:

```
Dism /Get-MountedImageInfo
```

The report generated includes the following information:

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Mount Dir	The location where the image is mounted.	C:\Test\Mount
Image File	The full path to the WIM or VHD file.	C:\Test\Images\install.wim
Image Index	The index number of the mounted image that is enclosed in WIM or VHD file.	1
Mounted Read/Write	<b>Yes</b> if the mounted image allows for both read and write access or <b>No</b> if the mounted image allows for read-only access only.	Yes

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Status	<p>The mount status of the image. The possible values include the following:</p> <p><b>OK.</b> The image is mounted. There are no problems.</p> <p><b>Needs Remount.</b> The image must be remounted. This can be caused by rebooting the host system when the image is mounted.</p> <p><b>Invalid.</b>: the image is in an invalid state. You might have to use <b>/Cleanup-Mountpoints</b> on the image.</p>	OK

## Get Windows PE Information

You can mount a Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE) image for servicing in the same way you would any Windows image. There are also Windows PE servicing commands that are specific to a Windows PE image. These commands can be used to list Windows PE settings such as scratchspace, targetpath, and profiling information. For more information about Windows PE servicing commands available in DISM, see [DISM Windows PE Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

### To list all settings in the mounted Windows PE image.

1. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
2. To list information about all of the Windows PE settings in the mounted Windows PE image, at the elevated command prompt, type:

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-PESettings
```

The report generated includes the following information:

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Profiling	Reports whether Windows PE profiling is enabled or disabled.	Disabled
Scratch Space	The amount of writeable space available on the Windows PE system volume when booted in ramdisk mode.	32MB
TargetPath	The path to the root of the Windows PE image at boot time.	X:</p>

## Get Driver Information

The driver-servicing commands can be used to enumerate driver packages in the driver store based on their .inf

files. You can use the **/Get** commands to display basic information about third-party driver packages or all driver packages in the offline image. When you point to an offline image or a running operating system, you can determine what driver packages are in the image, and get information about the drivers.

You can display detailed information about a specific installed .inf file, or one that is not yet installed. Installed drivers in the driver store will be named Oem0.inf, Oem1.inf, and so on.

For more information about driver-servicing commands available in DISM, see [DISM Driver Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

### To list driver packages in the offline image

1. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
2. Use one of the following commands to list information about all of the driver packages in a mounted offline Windows image:

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-Drivers
```

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-Drivers /all
```

For a running operating system, type one of the following commands:

```
Dism /online /Get-Drivers
```

```
Dism /online /Get-Drivers /all
```

The report generated includes the following information:

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Published Name	The name of the driver package after it is added to the driver store.	Oem0.inf
Original File Name	The original .inf file name of the driver package.	Toaster.inf
Inbox	<b>Yes</b> for a default driver (inbox driver) or <b>No</b> for third-party driver packages.	No
Class Name	The friendly name of the device class the driver is a member of.	Printer
Provider Name	The provider or digital signature for the driver package.	Microsoft

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Date	The date associated with the driver, as it is specified in the .inf file. The date will be formatted appropriately for your locale.	10/31/2006
Version	The version number that is specified in the INF driverVer directive.	6.1.6801.0

## To get information about a specific driver

1. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
2. List information about a specific driver package in the offline Windows image. For example, type:

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-DriverInfo /driver:oem1.inf
```

For a running operating system, type:

```
Dism /online /Get-DriverInfo /driver:oem1.inf
```

The report generated includes the following information:

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Published Name	The name of the driver package after it is added to the driver store.	Oem0.inf
Driver Store Path	The path to the driver location. If the driver is installed, the path to the driver store is listed. If the driver is not installed yet, the path to the driver on the servicing host is listed.	E:\Images\Mount_depset\Windows\System32\DriverStore\FileRepository\Fasttx2k.inf_x86_neutral_0328f62e\Fasttx2k.inf
Class Name	The friendly name of the device class the driver is a member of.	Printer
Class Description	The description of the device class the driver is a member of.	Printers
Class GUID	The GUID of the device class that the driver is a member of.	{4D36E97B-E325-11CE-BFC1-08002BE10318}
Date	The date associated with the driver, as it is specified in the .inf file. The date will be formatted appropriately for your locale.	8/6/2003

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Version	The driver version number that is specified in the INF driverVer directive.	1.0.1.37
Boot Critical	<b>Yes</b> if the driver is boot critical or <b>No</b> if it is not.	<b>No</b>
Drivers for architecture	The architecture of the image that it is installed on. If the driver is not installed yet, the field is reported repeatedly for each supported operating system architecture.	x86
Manufacturer	The manufacturer of the supported device.	Adventure Works
Description	A description of the supported device.	<b>Windows XP Adventure Works 376 Controller</b>
Architecture	The architecture of the driver.	x86
Hardware ID	The hardware ID of the supported device.	<b>ABC_3376</b>
Service Name	The service name of the driver.	<b>C1232k</b>
Compatible IDs	Alternate Plug and Play (PnP) IDs for the device, if any apply.	<b>12ABC</b>
Exclude IDs	PnP IDs that will not match the device, if any apply.	<b>A_123</b>

#### Note

If you point to a driver that is not yet installed, the report will be slightly different.

## Get Package and Feature Information

You can use operating system package-servicing commands to obtain information about Windows packages. You can also use DISM and package-servicing commands to obtain information about Windows features, either offline or on a running Windows installation.

You can use the **/PackagePath** option to specify a .cab file or a folder where the .cab file is extracted. You cannot use this command to obtain package information for .msu files. Alternately, you can use **/Get-Packages** to find the name of a package, and then use **/PackageName** to specify the name of the package.

You can display detailed information about a feature. You must use the **/FeatureName** option with the **/Get** command. Use the **/Get-Features** option to find the name of the feature in the image. Feature names are case

sensitive if you are servicing a Windows image other than Windows 8.

For more information about operating system package-servicing commands available in DISM, see [DISM Operating System Package Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

### To list all packages in the image

1. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
2. To list information about all of the packages in the offline Windows image, type the following command:

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-Packages
```

For a running operating system, type the following command:

```
Dism /online /Get-Packages
```

The report generated includes the following information:

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Package Identity	The name of the package as it appears in the image.	<b>Microsoft-Windows-NetFx3-OC-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~x86~en-US~6.1.6772.0</b>
State	The current state of the package. Such as:  <b>Installed.</b> The package is installed.  <b>Install Pending.</b> The package is installed but requires a reboot to complete the pending online actions.  <b>Staged.</b> The package is staged for installation.	<b>Installed</b>
Release Type	The type of package that it is. Such as:  <b>Feature Pack.</b> A Windows operating system feature.  <b>Language Pack.</b> A Windows operating system Language pack or Language Interface Pack (LIP).  <b>Foundation.</b> Core operating system components including optional features.	Feature Pack
Install Time	The UTC date and time when the installation occurred. If the package is not installed yet, the Install Time field is left blank.	8/18/2008 7:58:00 PM

## To list information about a specific package

1. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
2. To list information about a specific package in the offline Windows image, type one of the following commands:

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-PackageInfo /PackagePath:C:\packages\package.cab
```

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-PackageInfo
/PackageName:Microsoft.Windows.Calc.Demo~6595b6144ccf1df~x86~en~1.0.0.0
```

For a running operating system, type one of the following commands:

```
Dism /online /Get-PackageInfo /PackagePath:C:\packages\package.cab
```

```
Dism /online /Get-PackageInfo /PackageName:Microsoft.Windows.Calc.Demo~6595b6144ccf1df~x86~en~1.0.0.0
```

The report generated includes the following information:

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Package Identity	The name of the package as it appears in the image.	<b>Microsoft-Windows-NetFx3-OC-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~x86~en-US~6.1.6772.0</b>
Applicable	Indicates if the package applies to the image.	<b>No</b>
Copyright	Copyright information for the package.	Copyright© Microsoft Corporation. All Rights Reserved.
Company	The company that provided the package, if available.	Microsoft Corporation
Creation Time	The date and time the package was created, if available.	8/18/2008 7:58:00 PM
Description	A brief description of the package.	Fix for KB300106
Install Client	The client tool that installed the package.	DISM Package Manager Provider
Install Package Name	The installed package.mum file name.	<b>Microsoft-Windows-NetFx3-OC-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~x86~en-US~6.1.6772.0.mum</b>

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Install Time	The date and time the package was installed. If the package is not installed yet, the <b>Install Time</b> field is left blank.	8/18/2008 7:58:00 PM
Last Update Time	The date the package was last updated, if available.	8/18/2008 7:58:00 PM
Name	<p>The display name of the package, localized if available.</p> <p>Generally, "default" will be displayed for all servicing packages.</p>	ActiveX® Installer Service
Product Name	The name of the product that the package belongs to, if available.	<b>Microsoft-Windows-NetFx3-OC-Package</b>
Product Version	The version of the product that the package belongs to, if available.	123.01.0000
Release Type	<p>The type of package that it is. Such as:</p> <p><b>Feature Pack.</b> A Windows operating system feature.</p> <p><b>Language Pack.</b> A Windows operating system Language pack or Language Interface Pack (LIP).</p> <p><b>Foundation.</b> Core operating system components including optional features.</p>	Feature Pack
Restart Required	Indicates if a reboot is required when you install or uninstall the package online.	Possible
Support Information	Where to find support information, if available.	<a href="http://support.microsoft.com/?kbid=300106">http://support.microsoft.com/?kbid=300106</a>

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
State	<p>Indicates if the package is installed in the operating system. Possible values include the following:</p> <p><b>Not Present.</b> The package is not installed.</p> <p><b>Installed.</b> The package is installed.</p> <p><b>Install Pending.</b> The package will be installed but requires a reboot to complete pending online actions.</p> <p><b>Staged.</b> The package is staged for installation.</p>	Installed
Completely offline capable	<p><b>Yes.</b> The package can be installed offline without booting the image.</p> <p><b>No.</b> You must boot into the image in order to complete installation of this package.</p> <p><b>Undetermined.</b> You may have to boot into the image in order to complete the installation of this package. Many packages can be installed offline entirely. If you attempt to install a package offline and a reboot is required, it will be reported in the log file. You can check the status of a package using the Get-PackageInfo command.</p> <p>This field is only applicable to Windows 8, Windows Server® 2012, and Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE) 4.0 target images.</p>	
Custom Properties	A list of custom properties defined in the package manifest file. If there are no custom properties, (No custom properties found) will be displayed.	Dependency: Language Pack
Features listing for package	<p>A list of the features found in the package.</p> <p>If there is no feature in the package, the package identity will be displayed followed by (No features found for this package).</p>	<b>Microsoft-Windows-NetFx3-OC-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~x86~en-US~6.1.6772.0 (No features found for this package)</b>

### To list all features in the image

1. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
2. To list information about the features in the offline Windows image, type one of the following commands:

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-Features
```

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-Features
/PackageName:Microsoft.Windows.Calc.Demo~6595b6144ccf1df~x86~en~1.0.0.0
```

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-Features /PackagePath:C:\packages\package.cab
```

For a running operating system, type one of the following commands:

```
Dism /online /Get-Features
```

```
Dism /online /Get-Features /PackageName:Microsoft.Windows.Calc.Demo~6595b6144ccf1df~x86~en~1.0.0.0
```

```
Dism /online /Get-Features /PackagePath:C:\packages\package.cab
```

The report generated includes the following information:

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Feature Name	The name of the feature as it appears in the image.	<b>InboxGames</b>

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
State	<p>The current state of the feature. Possible values include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled.</b> The feature is enabled.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled.</b> The feature is disabled.</li> <li>• <b>Enable Pending.</b> The feature will be enabled but requires a reboot to complete pending online actions.</li> <li>• <b>Disable Pending.</b> The feature will be disabled but requires a reboot to complete pending online actions.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled with Payload Removed.</b> The feature is disabled and its payload has been removed. Only the package metadata is present in the image. The payload can be restored and the feature can be enabled on demand after the image is deployed. For more information about features on demand, see <a href="#">Configure a Windows Repair Source</a>.</li> </ul>	<b>Disabled</b>

## To list information about a specific feature

1. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
2. To list information about a specific feature in the offline Windows image, type one of the following commands:

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-FeatureInfo /FeatureName:Hearts
```

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-FeatureInfo /FeatureName:LocalPack-GB /PackageName:Microsoft-Windows-LocalPack-GB-Package~6595b6144ccf1df~x86~~1.0.0.0
```

For a running operating system, type the following command:

```
Dism /online /Get-FeatureInfo /FeatureName:Hearts
```

The report generated includes the following information:

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Feature Name	Name of the feature.	<b>InboxGames</b>
Display Name	The name of the feature as it appears in the user interface.	<b>Games</b>
Description	A brief description of the feature.	Standard inbox games.
Restart Required	Indicates if a restart is required when you enable or disable this feature.	<b>Yes</b>
State	<p>The current state of the feature. Possible values include the following:</p> <p><b>Enabled.</b> The feature is enabled.</p> <p><b>Disabled.</b> The feature is disabled.</p> <p><b>Enable Pending.</b> The feature will be enabled but requires a reboot to complete pending online actions.</p> <p><b>Disable Pending.</b> The feature will be disabled but requires a reboot to complete pending online actions.</p> <p><b>Disabled with Payload</b></p> <p><b>Removed.</b> The feature is disabled and its payload has been removed. Only the package metadata is present in the image. The payload can be restored and the feature can be enabled on demand after the image is deployed. For more information about features on demand, see <a href="#">Configure a Windows Repair Source</a>.</p>	<b>Disabled</b>
Custom Properties	A list of custom properties defined in the package manifest file. If there are no custom properties, (No custom properties found) will be displayed.	Dependency: Language Pack

## Get App Package (.appx) Servicing Information

You can use the app package (.appx) servicing commands to list the provisioned apps in a Windows image. Provisioned apps will be registered for every user profile that is created for the Windows image.

For more information about app package servicing commands available in DISM, see [DISM App Package \(.appx or .appxbundle\) Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

### To list provisioned apps in the Windows image

1. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
2. To list provisioned apps in a mounted offline Windows image, type:

```
Dism /image:c:\test\offline /Get-ProvisionedAppxPackages
```

For a running operating system, type:

```
Dism /online /Get-ProvisionedAppxPackages
```

The report generated includes the following information:

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
DisplayName	The name of the app.	Fabrikam.Sample.CS
Version	The version number of the app package.	1.0.0.0
Architecture	The architecture of the app.	neutral
ResourceId	For more information, see <a href="#">App packaging glossary</a> .	
PackageName	The full name of the app package.	Fabrikam.Sample.CS_1.0.0.0_neutral_s9y1p3hwd5qda

## Get International Settings and Languages

The international servicing commands can be used to query existing international settings in Windows and Windows PE images. For more information about operating system package-servicing commands available in DISM, see [DISM Languages and International Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

### Important

International servicing commands cannot be used on a Windows Vista or Windows Server 2008 image.

Use the **/online** option to display information about international settings and languages in the running operating system. Use **/image: <path\_to\_offline\_image\_directory>** to display information about international settings and languages in the offline image. When used with the **/image** and **/distribution** options, information about international settings and languages in the distribution is displayed.

### To list all international settings and languages

1. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
2. To list information about all of the international settings in the offline Windows image, type one of the following commands:

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-Intl
```

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /distribution:C:\windows_distribution\langpacks /Get-Intl
```

For a running operating system, type the following command:

```
Dism /online /Get-Intl
```

The report generated includes the following information:

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Default system UI language	The language that is currently set as the default system UI language.	<b>en-US</b>
System locale	The language for non-Unicode programs (also referred to as system locale) and font settings.	<b>en-US</b>
Default timezone	The time zone that is currently set as the default.	Pacific Standard Time
User locale for default user	The "standards and formats" language (also referred to as user locale) that is set for the default user.	<b>en-US</b>
Location	The geographical location that is currently set for the operating system. For more information about geographical locations, see <a href="#">Table of Geographical Locations</a> .	United States
Active keyboards	The value pair for the active keyboard. In the example provided, 0409 is the language identifier and 00000409 is the keyboard identifier.	<b>0409:00000409</b>
Default keyboards	The value pair for the default keyboard. In the example provided, 0409 is the language identifier and 00000409 is the keyboard identifier.	<b>0409:00000409</b>
Installed language(s)	A list of all installed language packs.	<b>en-US</b>

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Type	The type of each installed language pack. For more information, see <a href="#">Add Language Packs to Windows</a> .	<p><b>en-US</b> Type: Fully localized language <b>ar-SA</b> Type: Partially localized language, MUI type Fallback Languages <b>en-US, fr-FR</b></p>
Distribution languages	A list of the languages that are available in the distribution share.	<p>The default language in the distribution is: <b>ja-JP</b></p> <p>The other available languages in the distribution are: <b>bg-BG, nl-NL</b></p> <p><b>Note</b> This list includes the name of the folder in the distribution share. The language of the actual LP.cab file in the folder is not validated. For example, if the path to the distribution is ... \Langpacks\bg-BG\lp.cab, the value of bg-BG will be reported as the language in the distribution share even if the lp.cab file is not the correct .cab file for bg-BG.</p>
Keyboard layered driver	A list of the keyboard drivers for Japanese or Korean keyboards, if any are installed.	Japanese Keyboard (106/109 Key)

## Get Windows Edition Information

You can use the edition-servicing commands to obtain information about which editions of Windows are available for upgrade.

Target editions are the editions of Windows that you can upgrade to. You can display information about the current edition or the target edition of an offline Windows image or a running operating system.

For more information about Windows edition servicing commands available in DISM, see [DISM Windows Edition-Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

### To get information about the current Windows editions

1. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
2. To list information about the current edition of the offline Windows image, type the following command:

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-CurrentEdition
```

For a running operating system, type the following command:

```
Dism /online /Get-CurrentEdition
```

## To get information about target editions of Windows

1. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
2. To list information about the target edition of the offline Windows image, type the following command:

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-TargetEditions
```

For a running operating system, type the following command:

```
Dism /online /Get-TargetEditions
```

## Get Application Patch Information

Application servicing command-line options can be used on a offline image to check the applicability of Microsoft® Windows® Installer application patches (.msp files) and to query your offline image for information about installed Windows Installer applications (.msi files) and application patches (.msp files).

You can display detailed information about installed MSP patches filtered by patch and application. If the **/PatchCode** option is specified, detailed information is displayed for all Windows Installer applications that the patch is applied to. If the **/ProductCode** option is specified, information about all MSP patches in the specified application is displayed.

If the **/PatchCode** and **/ProductCode** options are both specified, information is displayed only if that specific patch is applied to the specified Windows Installer application. If the **/PatchCode** and **/ProductCode** options are not specified, all installed Windows Installer packages and MSP patches are displayed.

For more information about application servicing commands available in DISM, see [DISM Application Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

### To list information about installed MSP patches

1. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
2. To list information about the MSP patches, type one of the following commands:

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-AppPatchInfo
```

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-AppPatchInfo /PatchCode:{B0B9997C-GUID-GUID-GUID-74D866BBDFFF}
```

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-AppPatchInfo /ProductCode:{B0F9497C-GUID-GUID-GUID-74D866BBDF59}
```

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-AppPatchInfo /PatchCode:{B0B9997C-GUID-GUID-GUID-74D866BBDFFF} /ProductCode:{B0F9497C-GUID-GUID-GUID-74D866BBDF59}
```

The report generated includes the following information:

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Patch Code	A GUID identifying a specific Windows Installer package. The package code associates an .msi file together with an application or product and can also be used for the verification of sources.	<b>{8ACD2816-595D-48AA-A43B-3523CAA4F692}</b>
Product Code	A GUID that is the principal identification of an application or product.	{7764DEFC-C5D1-413C-8428-2AA903BF6DAA}
Patch Name	The registered display name for the patch. For patches that do not include the <b>DisplayName</b> property in the MsiPatchMetadata table, the returned display name is an empty string.	QFE9 - Non Removable
Patch State	1 if this patch is currently applied to the product. 2 if this patch has been superseded by another patch. 4 if this patch has been made obsolete by another patch.	1 (Applied)
Patch Uninstallable	1 if the patch is marked as possible to uninstall from the product. In this case, the installer can still block the uninstallation if this patch is required by another patch that cannot be uninstalled. Otherwise 0 is reported.	0
Help Link	Where to find support information, if available.	<a href="http://www.microsoft.com">http://www.microsoft.com</a>
Transforms	The set of patch transforms applied to the product by the last patch installation. This value may not be available for per-user unmanaged applications if the user is not logged on to the computer.	<b>:App1RTMToApp1QFE9;:#App1RTMToApp1QFE9</b>
Local Package	The location of the local cached patch file that is used by the product.	<b>C:\Windows\Installer\132f5c.msP</b>
Install Date	The date when the patch was applied to the product.	20080912

## To list information about MSP patches applied to an application

1. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
2. To list information about the MSP patches, type one of the following commands:

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-AppPatches
```

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-AppPatches /ProductCode:{B0F9497C-GUID-GUID-GUID-74D866BBDF59}
```

The report generated includes the following information:

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Patch Code	A GUID identifying a particular Windows Installer package. The package code associates an .msi file together with an application or product and can also be used for the verification of sources.	<b>{8ACD2816-595D-48AA-A43B-3523CAA4F692}</b>
Product Code	A GUID that is the principal identification of an application or product.	<b>{7764DEFC-C5D1-413C-8428-2AA903BF6DAA}</b>
Patch Name	The registered display name for the patch. For patches that do not include the <b>DisplayName</b> property in the MsiPatchMetadata table, the returned display name is an empty string.	QFE9 - Non Removable

## To list information about all Windows Installer applications

1. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
2. To list information about the MSP patches, type the following command:

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-Apps
```

The report generated lists the product code and product name for applications that are installed in the offline image. For example:

Product Code : **{DB935363-5A68-47AF-A55A-CFC90F2E83BC}**

Product Name : MsiTestApplication2

## To list information about a specific Windows Installer application

1. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
2. To list information about the MSP patches, type the following command:

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-AppInfo /ProductCode:{B0F9497C-GUID-GUID-GUID-74D866BBDF59}
```

The report generated includes the following information:

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Product Code	A GUID that is the principal identification of an application or product.	<b>{DB935363-5A68-47AF-A55A-CFC90F2E83BC}</b>
Product Name	The name of the application.	MsiTestApplication2
Product State	<p>The installation state for the product at initialization.</p> <p>-1 if the product is neither advertised nor installed.</p> <p>1 if the product is advertised but not installed.</p> <p>2 if the product is installed for a different user.</p> <p>5 if the product is installed for the current user.</p>	5 (Installed)
Package Code	A GUID identifying a particular Windows Installer package. The package code associates an .msi file together with an application or product and can also be used for the verification of sources.	<b>{C67CA1AE-6074-4810-BD74-F6BBB609744A}</b>
Product Version	The version of the product in string format.	1.0.0
Assignment Type	<p>0 if the product is advertised or installed per-user.</p> <p>1 if the product is advertised or installed per-computer for all users.</p>	1 (Per-Machine)
Publisher	The name of the manufacturer for the product.	Microsoft MSI Test
Language	The decimal identifier for the product language.	1033
Install Source	The directory that contains the source .cab file or the source file tree of the installation package.	<b>E:\Testpkg\App2_RTM</b>

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Package Name	The name of the original installation package.	MsiTestApplication2.msi
Help Link	Where to find support information, if available.	<a href="http://www.microsoft.com/management">http://www.microsoft.com/management</a>
Transforms	The set of patch transforms applied to the product by the last patch installation. This value may not be available for per-user unmanaged applications if the user is not logged on to the computer.	C:\Windows\Installer\{BDB20E90-3ACD-450B-BBDE-61E39687C6B1}\ACBlueT02.mst
Local Package	The location of the local cached package.	C:\Windows\Installer\132f3b.msi
Install Date	The date the application was installed.	<b>20080912</b>

## Related topics

[Service a Windows Image Using DISM](#)

[Service a Windows PE Image with DISM](#)

[Deployment Image Servicing and Management \(DISM\) Best Practices](#)

# Service a Windows Image Using DISM

6/6/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) tool lets users enumerate drivers and packages, modify configuration settings, add and remove drivers without using an unattended answer file, and more. You can use DISM offline on a WIM or VHD file, or online on a running operating system.

Offline servicing allows you to modify or service a Windows® image entirely offline, without booting it first. This can reduce deployment costs because you can customize images to a degree before the operating system is deployed to the computer. In addition, if you have a stored master image that you want to make sure is always up to date, you can maintain it without booting the image.

You can also use DISM to service an image online. If you have to boot the operating system to install an application or test and validate the installation, you can boot to audit mode and add drivers and packages, or enable features and international settings.

## In This Section

<a href="#">Add and Remove Drivers to an Offline Windows Image</a>	Add or remove drivers from an offline image using either DISM or an unattended answer file.
<a href="#">Enable or Disable Windows Features Using DISM</a>	Enable or disable features in a Windows image using DISM. You can also remove a feature to install on-demand, and restore a previously removed feature.
<a href="#">Add or Remove Packages Offline Using DISM</a>	Add or remove packages from an offline image using either DISM or an unattended answer file.
<a href="#">Add and Remove Language Packs Offline Using DISM</a>	Add or remove language packs and configure international settings in an offline image using DISM.
<a href="#">Sideload Apps with DISM</a>	Install line-of-business (LOB) Windows Store apps to a Windows image by using Windows PowerShell® or the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) platform.
<a href="#">Preinstall Apps Using DISM</a>	Preinstall apps in a Windows image.
<a href="#">Customize the Start Screen</a>	Customize the Start screen to include Windows Store apps and desktop apps that you use in your business.
<a href="#">Change the Windows Image to a Higher Edition Using DISM</a>	Query an image to determine which edition of Windows the image is, and how to change the image to a higher edition of Windows.

<a href="#">Export or Import Default Application Associations</a>	Change the default programs associated with a file name extension or protocol in a Windows image.
<a href="#">Service a Mounted Windows Image</a>	Use DISM to mount an image and modify it.
<a href="#">Service an Applied Windows Image</a>	Use DISM to apply an image and then modify it.

## Related topics

[Understanding Servicing Strategies](#)

[Take Inventory of an Image or Component Using DISM](#)

# Add and Remove Drivers to an Offline Windows Image

7/13/2017 • 5 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) tool to install or remove driver (.inf) files in an offline Windows image. You can either apply an unattended answer file to a mounted .wim, .vhdx, or .vhd file, or you can add or remove the drivers directly by using the command prompt.

When you use DISM to install a device driver to an offline image, the device driver is added to the driver store in the offline image. When the image is booted, Plug and Play (PnP) runs and associates the drivers in the store to the corresponding devices on the computer.

**Note** To add drivers to a Windows 10 image offline, you must use a technician computer running Windows 10, Windows Server 2016 Technical Preview, or Windows Preinstallation Environment (WinPE) for Windows 10. Driver signature verification may fail when you add a driver to a Windows 10 image offline from a technician computer running any other operating system.

## To add drivers to an offline image by using DISM

- At an elevated command prompt, retrieve the name or index number for the image that you want to modify. For example, type:

```
Dism /Get-ImageInfo /ImageFile:C:\test\images\install.wim
```

An index or name value is required for most operations that specify a WIM file. For a VHD file, you must specify `/Index:<1>`.

- Mount the offline Windows image. For example, type:

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\test\images\install.wim /Name:"Windows Drive"
/MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

- Add a driver to the image.

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Add-Driver /Driver:C:\drivers\mydriver.inf
```

To install all of the drivers from a folder and all its subfolders, point to the folder and use the **/Recurse** option.

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Add-Driver /Driver:c:\drivers /Recurse
```

**Warning** While **/Recurse** can be handy, it's easy to bloat your image with it. Some driver packages include multiple .inf driver packages, which often share payload files from the same folder. During installation, each .inf driver package is expanded into a separate folder, each with a copy of the payload files. We've seen cases where a popular driver in a 900MB folder added 10GB to images when added with the **/Recurse** option.

To install an unsigned driver, use **/ForceUnsigned** to override the requirement that drivers installed on

X64-based computers must have a digital signature.

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Add-Driver /Driver:C:\drivers\mydriver.inf /ForceUnsigned
```

4. Review the list of third-party driver (.inf) files in the Windows image. Drivers added to the Windows image are named Oem\*.inf. This is to guarantee unique naming for new drivers added to the computer. For example, the files MyDriver1.inf and MyDriver2.inf are renamed Oem0.inf and Oem1.inf.

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-Drivers
```

5. Commit the changes and unmount the image.

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\test\offline /Commit
```

## To remove drivers from an offline image by using DISM

1. At an elevated command prompt, retrieve the name or index number for the image that you want to modify.

```
Dism /Get-ImageInfo /ImageFile:C:\test\images\install.wim
```

An index or name value is required for most operations that specify a WIM file. For a VHD file, you must specify `/Index:1`.

2. Mount the offline Windows image. For example:

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\test\images\install.wim /Name:"Windows 10 Home"
/MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

3. Remove a specific driver from the image. Multiple drivers can be removed on one command line.

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Remove-Driver /Driver:OEM1.inf /Driver:OEM2.inf
```

### Warning

Removing a boot-critical driver package can make the offline Windows image unbootable. For more information, see [DISM Driver Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

4. Commit the changes and unmount the image.

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\test\offline /Commit
```

## To add drivers to an offline Windows image by using an unattended answer file

1. Locate the device driver .inf files that you intend to install on the Windows image.

### Note

All drivers in the directory and subdirectories that are referenced in the answer file are added to the image. You should manage the answer file and these directories carefully to address concerns about increasing the size of the image with unnecessary driver packages.

2. Use Windows System Image Manager (Windows SIM) to create an answer file that contains the paths to the device drivers that you intend to install.
3. Add the Microsoft-Windows-PnpCustomizationsNonWinPE component to your answer file in the **offlineServicing** configuration pass.
4. Expand the **Microsoft-Windows-PnpCustomizationsNonWinPE** node in the answer file. Right-click **DevicePaths**, and then select **Insert New PathAndCredentials**.

A new **PathAndCredentials** list item appears.

5. For each location that you intend to access, add a separate **PathAndCredentials** list item.
6. In the Microsoft-Windows-PnpCustomizationsNonWinPE component, specify the path to the device driver and the credentials that are used to access the file, if the file is on a network share.

#### Note

You can include multiple device driver paths by adding multiple **PathAndCredentials** list items. If you add multiple list items, you must increment the value of **Key** for each path. For example, you can add two separate driver paths where the value of **Key** for the first path is equal to **1** and the value of **Key** for the second path is equal to **2**.

7. Save the answer file and exit Windows SIM. The answer file must resemble the following sample.

```
<?xml version="1.0" ?><unattend xmlns="urn:schemas-microsoft-com:asm.v3"
xmlns:wcm="http://schemas.microsoft.com/WMIConfig/2002/State">
<settings pass="offlineServicing">
 <component name="Microsoft-Windows-PnpCustomizationsNonWinPE" processorArchitecture="x86"
publicKeyToken="31bf3856ad364e35" language="neutral" versionScope="nonSxS">
 <DriverPaths>
 <PathAndCredentials wcm:keyValue="1">
 <Path>\\networkshare\share\drivers</Path>
 <Credentials>
 <Domain>Fabrikam</Domain>
 <Username>MyUserName</Username>
 <Password>MyPassword</Password>
 </Credentials>
 </PathAndCredentials>
 </DriverPaths>
 </component>
</settings>
</unattend>
```

8. Mount the Windows image that you intend to install the drivers to by using DISM. For example, type:

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\test\images\install.wim /Index:1 /MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

An index or name value is required for most operations that specify a WIM file. For a VHD file, you must specify `/Index:1`.

9. Use DISM to apply the answer file to the mounted Windows image. For example, type:

```
DISM /Image:C:\test\offline /Apply-Unattend:C:\test\answerfiles\myunattend.xml
```

For more information about how to apply an answer file, see [DISM Unattended Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

The .inf files referenced in the path in the answer file are added to the Windows image.

10. Review the list of third-party driver (.inf) files in the Windows image. Drivers added to the Windows image are named Oem\*.inf. This is to guarantee that all new drivers that are added to the computer are uniquely named. For example, the files MyDriver1.inf and MyDriver2.inf are renamed Oem0.inf and Oem1.inf.

For example, type:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-Drivers
```

11. Unmount the .wim file and commit the changes. For example, type:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\test\offline /Commit
```

If you need drivers for WinPE to see the local hard disk drive or a network, you must use the **windowsPE** configuration pass of an answer file to add drivers to the WinPE driver store and to reflect boot-critical drivers required by WinPE. For more information, see [Add Device Drivers to Windows During Windows Setup](#).

## Related topics

[Device Drivers and Deployment Overview](#)

[Add Device Drivers to Windows During Windows Setup](#)

[DISM - Deployment Image Servicing and Management Technical Reference for Windows](#)

# Enable or Disable Windows Features Using DISM

7/13/2017 • 5 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) tool is a command-line tool that is used to modify Windows® images. You can use DISM to enable or disable Windows features directly from the command prompt, or by applying an answer file to the image. You can enable or disable Windows features offline on a WIM or VHD file, or online on a running operating system.

## To mount an offline image for servicing

1. Open a command prompt with administrator privileges.
2. To use DISM from an installation of the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (Windows ADK), locate the Windows ADK servicing folder and navigate to this directory. By default, DISM is installed at C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10.0\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Deployment Tools\ in Windows 10, C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\8.1\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Deployment Tools\ in Windows 8.1 and C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\8.0\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Deployment Tools\ in Windows 8.

DISM is available in:

- Windows 10
- Windows 8.1
- Windows 8
- Windows Server 2016 Technical Preview
- Windows Server 2012 R2
- Windows Server 2012
- Windows Preinstallation Environment (WinPE) for Windows 10
- WinPE 5.0
- WinPE 4.0

You can install DISM and other deployment and imaging tools, such as Windows System Image Manager (Windows SIM), on another supported operating system from the Windows ADK. For more information, see [DISM Supported Platforms](#).

3. Use the `/Get-ImageInfo` option to retrieve the name or index number for the image that you want to modify. An index or name value is required for most operations that specify an image file.

For example, at the command prompt type:

```
Dism /Get-ImageInfo /ImageFile:C:\test\images\install.wim
```

4. Mount the offline Windows image. For example, type:

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\test\images\install.wim /Name:"Base Windows Image"
/MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

## To find available Windows features in an image

1. List all of the features available in the operating system. For example, type:

```
Dism /online /Get-Features
```

To service an offline image, specify the location of the mounted image directory. For example, type:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-Features
```

You can use `>featurelist.txt` to redirect the output of the command to a text file that is named featurelist.

2. Review the list of features to find the feature that you want to enable, disable, remove, or restore.
3. Use `/Get-FeatureInfo` to list information about the specific feature you are interested in. For example, type:

```
Dism /online /Get-FeatureInfo /FeatureName:TFTP
```

## To enable Windows features

1. Enable a specific feature in the image. You can use the `/All` argument to enable all of the parent features in the same command. For example, type:

```
Dism /online /Enable-Feature /FeatureName:TFTP /All
```

To service an offline image, specify the location of the mounted image directory. For example, type:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Enable-Feature /FeatureName:TFTP /All
```

2. Optional: Get the status of the feature you have enabled. For example, type:

```
Dism /online /Get-FeatureInfo /FeatureName:TFTP
```

If the status is **Enable Pending**, you must boot the image in order to enable the feature entirely.

## To restore removed Windows features

1. Enable a specific feature in the image. If you do not specify a source, DISM will look in the default location specified by group policy for the required files needed to enable the feature. For more information, see [Configure a Windows Repair Source](#).

If the files are not found in the default location, DISM will contact Windows Update (WU) for the required files. You can use the `/LimitAccess` argument to prevent DISM from contacting WU.

If you specify multiple `/Source` arguments, the files are gathered from the first location where they are found and the rest of the locations are ignored.

For example, type:

```
Dism /Online /Enable-Feature /FeatureName:TFTP /Source:Z:\sources\SxS /Source:C:\test\mount\windows
/LimitAccess
```

To service an offline image, specify the location of the mounted image directory. For example, type:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Enable-Feature /FeatureName:TFTP /Source:C:\test\mount\windows
```

2. Optional: Get the status of the feature you have enabled. For example, type:

```
Dism /online /Get-FeatureInfo /FeatureName:TFTP
```

If the status is **EnablePending**, you must boot the image in order to enable the feature entirely.

## To disable Windows features

1. Disable a specific feature in the image. For example, type:

```
Dism /online /Disable-Feature /FeatureName:TFTP
```

To service an offline image, specify the location of the mounted image directory. For example, type:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Disable-Feature /FeatureName:TFTP
```

2. Optional: Use **DISM /GetFeatureInfo** to get the status of the feature you have disabled. For example, type:

```
Dism /online /Get-FeatureInfo /FeatureName:TFTP
```

If the status is **DisablePending**, you must boot the image in order to disable the feature entirely.

## To remove Windows features for on-demand installation

1. Remove a specific feature in the image without removing the feature's manifest from the image. This option can only be used when servicing Windows 10, Windows 8.1, Windows 8, Windows Server 2016 Technical Preview, Windows Server 2012 R2, or Windows Server 2012. For more information, see [Configure a Windows Repair Source](#).

For example, type:

```
Dism /online /Disable-Feature /FeatureName:TFTP /Remove
```

To service an offline image, specify the location of the mounted image directory. For example, type:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Disable-Feature /FeatureName:TFTP /Remove
```

2. Optional: Use **DISM /GetFeatureInfo** to get the status of the feature you have disabled. For example, type:

```
Dism /online /Get-FeatureInfo /FeatureName:TFTP
```

The status is **Disabled**. Beginning with Windows 10, the payload is not removed from Windows client SKUs in order to support push-button reset. The payload is removed from Windows Server SKUs.

## To enable or disable Windows features by using DISM and an answer file

1. In Windows SIM, open an existing catalog by clicking **Select a Windows Image** on the **File** menu and specifying the catalog file type (.clg) in the drop-down list, or create a new catalog by clicking **Create Catalog** on the **Tools** menu.
2. Expand the catalog in the **Windows Image** pane, and then expand **Packages**.
3. Expand **Foundation**, and right-click **Microsoft-Windows-Foundation-Package**.
4. Click **Add to Answer File**.
5. Click **Enabled** or **Disabled** next to the features that you intend to enable or disable. Click the arrow to select the opposite choice.

You might have to expand an item to see all its children. You must enable the parent if any one of its children are enabled.

#### Note

You can't restore or remove a Windows feature for features on demand with an unattended answer file.

6. Click **Tools** on the main menu, and then click **Validate Answer File**.
7. Correct any errors that appear in the **Messages** pane, and save the answer file.
8. At the command prompt, type the following command to apply the unattended answer file to the image.

```
Dism /online /Apply-Unattend:C:\test\answerfiles\myunattend.xml
```

To service an offline image, specify the location of the mounted image directory. For example, type:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Apply-Unattend:C:\test\answerfiles\myunattend.xml
```

## To commit changes on an offline image

- Commit the changes and unmount the image. For example, type:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\test\offline /Commit
```

## Related topics

[DISM - Deployment Image Servicing and Management Technical Reference for Windows](#)

[DISM Operating System Package Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

[DISM Unattended Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

[Configure a Windows Repair Source](#)

# Add or Remove Packages Offline Using DISM

7/13/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM.exe) is a command-line tool that is used to update offline Windows® images. There are two ways to install or remove packages offline with DISM. You can either apply an unattend answer file to the offline image, or you can add or remove the package directly from the command prompt.

If you are installing multiple packages to a Windows image, and there are dependency requirements, the best way to ensure the correct order of the installation is by using an answer file. You can use DISM to apply the Unattend.xml answer file to the image. When you use DISM to apply an answer file, the unattend settings in the **offlineServicing** configuration pass are applied to the Windows image.

You must install the latest version of the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (Windows ADK), which contains all of the tools that are required, including DISM.

## To add packages to an offline image by using DISM

1. At an elevated command prompt, locate the Windows ADK servicing folder, and type the following command to retrieve the name or index number for the image that you want to modify.

```
Dism /Get-ImageInfo /ImageFile:C:\test\images\install.wim
```

An index or name value is required for most operations that specify an image file.

2. Type the following command to mount the offline Windows image.

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\test\images\install.wim /Name:"Windows 7 HomeBasic"
/MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

3. At a command prompt, type the following command to add a specific package to the image. You can add multiple packages on one command line. They will be installed in the order listed in the command line.

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Add-Package /PackagePath:C:\packages\package1.cab
/PackagePath:C:\packages\package2.cab
```

4. At a command prompt, type the following command to commit the changes and unmount the image.

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\test\offline /Commit
```

## To remove packages from an offline image by using DISM

1. At an elevated command prompt, locate the Windows ADK servicing folder, and type the following command to retrieve the name or index number for the image that you want to modify.

```
Dism /Get-ImageInfo /ImageFile:C:\test\images\install.wim
```

An index or name value is required for most operations that specify an image file.

- Type the following command to mount the offline Windows image.

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\test\images\install.wim /Name:"Windows 7 HomeBasic"
/MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

- Optional: Type the following command to list the packages in the image.

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-Packages
```

You can use `>featurelist.txt` to redirect the output of the command to a text file that is named FeatureList.

- Review the list of packages that are available in your mounted image and note the package identity of the package.
- At a command prompt, specify the package identity to remove it from the image. You can remove multiple packages on one command line.

```
DISM /Image:C:\test\offline /Remove-Package
/PackageName:Microsoft.Windows.Calc.Demo~6595b6144ccf1df~x86~en~1.0.0.0 /PackageName:Microsoft-Windows-
MediaPlayer-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~x86~~6.1.6801.0
```

You can use the **/PackagePath** option to point to the original source of the package, or to specify the path to the .cab file, or you can use the **/PackageName** option to specify the package by name as it is listed in the image. For more information, see [DISM Operating System Package Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

- At a command prompt, type the following command to commit the changes and unmount the image.

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\test\offline /Commit
```

## To add or remove packages offline by using DISM and an answer file

- Open Windows SIM.
- To add a new package, click **Insert** on the main menu, and select **Package(s)**. Browse to the package you want to add, and then click **Open**.
- To remove an existing package, select the package in the **Answer file** pane that you want to remove. In the **Properties** pane, change the **Action** property to **Remove**.

### Note

The packages must be added to the **offlineServicing** configuration pass.

- Validate and save the answer file.
- At an elevated command prompt, locate the Windows ADK servicing folder, and then type the following command to retrieve the name or index number for the image that you want to mount.

```
Dism /Get-ImageInfo /ImageFile:C:\test\images\install.wim
```

- Type the following command to mount the offline Windows image.

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\test\images\install.wim /name:"Windows 7 HomeBasic"
/MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

An index or name value is required for most operations that specify an image file.

7. At a command prompt, type the following command to apply the unattended answer file to the image.

```
DISM /Image:C:\test\offline /Apply-Unattend:C:\test\answerfiles\myunattend.xml
```

8. At a command prompt, type the following command to commit the changes and unmount the image.

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\test\offline /Commit
```

For more information about Windows SIM, see [Windows Setup Technical Reference](#).

## Related topics

[DISM - Deployment Image Servicing and Management Technical Reference for Windows](#)

[DISM Operating System Package Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

[DISM Unattended Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

# Add and Remove Language Packs Offline Using DISM

7/13/2017 • 8 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

All installations of Windows contain at least one language pack and the language-neutral binaries that make up the core operating system. This topic includes information about how to use Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM.exe) to add or remove additional language packs, and to configure international settings. You can use the same procedures to add or remove Language Interface Packs (LIPs). For more information about the difference between a language pack and a LIP, see [Add Language Packs to Windows](#).

The Windows image must be a recently installed and captured image, or the default retail image. This ensures that the Windows image does not have any pending package actions. The Windows images can be in any language. For example, you can start with an English (en-US) image and add support for Japanese (ja-JP) and Korean (ko-KR). In addition, you can add LIPs to a Windows image that contains the supported parent language. For more information about the supported language packs and LIPs, see [Language Packs](#).

For information about how to add a language pack to a Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE) image, see [WinPE: Add packages \(Optional Components Reference\)](#).

## Add a Language Pack to a Windows Image

Language packs are available as .cab files and are named with their locale; for example, Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Pack\_x64\_es-es.cab. Packages provided as .cab files can be added to an offline Windows image using the DISM command-line tool. You can use the same procedure to add a language pack or a Language Interface Pack (LIP).

### Important

LIPs can be installed only on a Windows image that has the supported parent languages installed. For example, the Basque (Basque) LIP can be installed only on a Windows image that has the Spanish (Spain) or French (France) parent language pack installed. Before you install a LIP to an offline Windows image, verify that the supported parent languages are installed. For more information about the supported language packs and LIPs, see [Language Packs](#).

You can also add language packs and LIPs to an answer file and then apply the answer file to an offline Windows image. When you do this, you can install the LIP and the parent language in the same operation.

### Important

Do not install a language pack after an update. If you install an update (hotfix, general distribution release [GDR], or service pack [SP]) that contains language-dependent resources before you install a language pack, the language-specific changes that are contained in the update are not applied and you will have to reinstall the update. Always install language packs before you install updates.

### To add a language pack using DISM

1. Before you add new language packs to a Windows image, you must remove any language packs from the Windows image that you do not intend to use. For more information, see [Remove a Language Pack from a Windows Image](#).
2. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.

3. If your image is already mounted from the previous procedure, you can type the following command to list the images that are currently mounted and information about the mounted image such as mount location and mounted image index.

```
Dism /Get-MountedImageInfo
```

If your image is not mounted, type the following command to retrieve the name or index number for the image that you want to modify.

```
Dism /Get-ImageInfo /ImageFile:C:\test\images\install.wim
```

An index or name value is required for most operations that specify an image file. Type the following command to mount the image.

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\test\images\install.wim /Name:"Windows 7 HomeBasic"
/MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

4. Type the following command to add a language pack to the mounted offline image. You can add multiple packages on one command line.

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /ScratchDir:C:\Scratch /Add-Package /PackagePath:C:\packages\package1.cab
/PackagePath:C:\packages\package2.cab ...
```

#### Note

The scratch directory must be at least 1 GB for adding language packs.

5. Type the following command to commit the changes. The image remains mounted until the **/unmount** option is used.

```
Dism /Commit-Image /MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

6. The language packs are added to the Windows image. The next step is to [Configure International Settings](#).

#### To add a language pack using an answer file and DISM

1. Note the location of the language packs you want to add to the Windows image. Language packs are stored in .cab files.
2. Use Windows SIM to create an answer file that contains only the language packs that you want to add. For more information about how to create an answer file, see [Create or Open an Answer File](#).
3. In the **Package** node, under **Language Packs**, right-click the language pack that you want to add, and then select **Add to Answer File**.
4. In the **Properties** pane, under **Settings**, select the **Install** value for the **Action** setting.
5. You can also configure international settings in the answer file. For more information, see [Configure International Settings in Windows](#).
6. Validate and save the answer file.
7. Close Windows SIM.

#### Important

Make sure that the language pack is copied to the location specified in the answer file.

8. If the image is not already mounted, use DISM to mount the Windows image. For example,

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\test\images\install.wim /Index:1 /MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

9. Use DISM to apply the unattended installation answer file to the mounted Windows image. For example,

```
DISM /Image:C:\test\offline /Apply-Unattend:C:\test\answerfiles\myunattend.xml
```

For more information about how to apply an unattended answer file by using DISM, see [DISM Unattended Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

10. The language packs are added to the Windows image, and international settings are configured.

## Remove a Language Pack from a Windows Image

Before you add new language packs to a Windows image, you must remove any language packs that you do not intend to use. There are two ways to remove language packs offline with DISM. You can either apply an unattended answer file to the offline image, or you can remove the language pack directly from the offline image, using the command prompt.

### Important

You cannot remove a language pack from an offline Windows image if there are pending online actions. The Windows image should be a recently installed and captured image. This will guarantee that the Windows image does not have any pending online actions that require a reboot.

### To remove a language pack using DISM

1. Locate the Windows image (.wim) file or virtual hard disk (.vhdx or .vhd) that contains the Windows image that you intend to remove languages from.
2. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
3. At the command prompt, type the following command to retrieve the name or index number for the image that you want to modify.

```
Dism /Get-ImageInfo /ImageFile:C:\test\images\install.wim
```

An index or name value is required for most operations that specify an image file.

4. Type the following command to mount the offline Windows image.

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\test\images\install.wim /Name:"Windows 7 HomeBasic"
/MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

5. Optional: Type the following command to list the languages in the offline image.

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-Intl
```

6. Type the following command to remove a language pack from the image. You can remove multiple .cab files by using one command-line statement.

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Remove-Package /PackagePath:C:\packages\package1.cab
/PackagePath:C:\packages\package2.cab ...
```

- Type the following command to commit the changes. The image remains mounted until the **/unmount** option is used.

```
Dism /Commit-Image /MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

- The language packs are removed from your image. The next step is to add a language pack to the mounted offline image. To continue, see [Add a Language Pack to a Windows Image](#).

#### To remove a language pack using DISM and an unattended answer file

- Use Windows® System Image Manager (Windows SIM) to create an answer file that contains only the language packs that you want to remove. Open the Windows image by using Windows SIM and create a new answer file. For more information about how to use Windows SIM, see [Create or Open an Answer File](#).
- In the **Package** node, under **Language Packs**, right-click the language pack that you want to remove and select **Add to Answer File**.
- In the **Properties** pane, under **Settings**, select the **Remove** value for the **Action** setting.
- Save the answer file and close Windows SIM. The answer file must resemble the following example.

```
<package action="remove">
 <assemblyIdentity name="Microsoft-Windows-LanguagePack-Package" version="6.0.5714.0"
 processorArchitecture="x86" publicKeyToken="31bf3856ad364e35" language="en-US" />
</package>
```

- Use DISM to mount the Windows image. For example,

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\test\images\install.wim /Index:1 /MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

- Use DISM to apply the unattended answer file to the mounted Windows image. For example,

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Apply-Unattend:C:\test\answerfiles\myunattend.xml
```

For more information about how to use DISM to apply an unattended answer file, see [DISM Unattended Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

- Type the following command to commit the changes. The image remains mounted until the **/unmount** option is used.

```
Dism /Commit-Image /MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

- The language packs are removed from your image. The next step is to add a language pack to the mounted offline image. To continue, see [Add a Language Pack to a Windows Image](#).

## Configure International Settings

After you add or remove a language pack in a Windows image, you can set the default user interface (UI) language, which is also known as the display language. At the same time, you can configure the international settings in the Windows image using DISM.

You can also configure international settings in an answer file. For more information about how to do this, see [Configure International Settings in Windows](#).

## Note

If you specify a default UI language and locale settings with the DISM tool, and then specify different language and locale settings in an answer file, the settings in the answer file overwrite the default values specified by the DISM tool.

### To configure international settings using DISM

1. You must first mount the image if it is not already mounted. For example,

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\test\images\install.wim /Index:1 /MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

2. To change all international language settings in the mounted offline image to match the default values set by Microsoft for a given language, at the DISM command prompt, type the following command,

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Set-SKUIntlDefaults:en-us
```

## Note

The **/Set-SKUIntlDefaults** option does not change the keyboard driver for Japanese and Korean keyboards. You must use the **/Set-LayeredDriver** option to change this. For more information, see [DISM Languages and International Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

For more information about default values, see [\[Windows Language Pack Default Values\]\(windows-language-pack-default-values.md\)](#).

Optionally, you can configure different values for different settings, including UI language, system locale, user locale, input locale, and others. For more information about how to specify individual values for each of these settings, see [\[DISM Languages and International Servicing Command-Line Options\]\(dism-languages-and-international-servicing-command-line-options.md\)](#).

1. At a command prompt, type the following command to commit the changes and unmount the image.

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\test\offline /Commit
```

The Windows image is ready to be deployed.

## Related topics

[Add Language Packs to Windows](#)

[Service a Windows Image Using DISM](#)

[DISM - Deployment Image Servicing and Management Technical Reference for Windows](#)

[DISM Languages and International Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

[DISM Unattended Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

[Windows System Image Manager Technical Reference](#)

# Sideload Apps with DISM

7/13/2017 • 15 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can sideload line-of-business (LOB) Windows apps to a Windows 10 by using PowerShell or Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM). Windows apps include:

- Universal Windows apps devices: Windows apps built upon the Universal Windows app platform, targeting the universal device family.
- Universal Windows 8 apps: Windows apps that target Windows 8.x.

Typically, Windows apps are available only through the Windows Store. You can submit LOB Windows apps to the Windows Store and make them available outside of your enterprise. However, you can also develop Windows apps for use only within your enterprise and add them to Windows devices you manage through a process we call *sideloading*. Sideloaded apps do not have to be certified by or installed through the Windows Store.

Here's what you'll need to know in order to sideload apps:

HOW TO?	DESCRIPTION
<a href="#">Understand Sideload Concepts</a>	Introduces some basic concepts you'll need to know about sideloading apps.
<a href="#">Configure PCs for Sideload Requirements</a>	Shows the requirements to be met in order to sideload apps on devices running different Windows Editions. Includes how to use Group Policy to configure your enterprise PCs for sideloading apps.
<a href="#">Configure PCs for Developing Windows Store Apps</a>	Shows you how to configure your PC to have a developer license that does not expire. The PC can be used to develop Windows Store apps or enterprise apps that will be added to your enterprise devices.
<a href="#">Add Apps</a>	Shows you how to sideload apps that you develop.
<a href="#">Add Multiple Languages for Apps</a>	Shows you how to prepare a multi-lingual image, sign-in to the image, install any desired app resource packs (including language) and then use Copy Profile to capture the image.
<a href="#">Inventory Apps</a>	Shows you how to list the LOB apps installed on the devices in your enterprise or in an offline Windows image.
<a href="#">Remove Apps</a>	Shows you how to remove individual instances of an app or remove the provisioning setting of an app.

## Understand Sideload Concepts

Windows apps differ from Windows desktop applications in their design and in the way users can interact with

them. To learn more about Windows apps , see [what is a Windows Store App?](#).

You cannot sideload an app that has been downloaded from the Windows Store. To install Windows apps that are not part of your business line, you must use the Windows Store. To learn more, see [Managing Client Access to the Windows Store](#).

LOB Windows apps that are not signed by the Windows Store can be sideloaded or added to a PC in the enterprise through scripts at runtime on a per-user basis. They can also be provisioned in an image by the enterprise so that the app is registered to each new user profile that's created on the PC. The requirements to sideload the app per-user or in the image are the same, but the Windows PowerShell cmdlets you use to add, get, and remove the apps are different. This topic provides steps for both methods.

Before you can sideload LOB Windows apps that are not signed by the Windows Store, you will need to configure the PC, see [Configure PCs for Sideload Requirements](#).

## When You're Developing LOB Windows apps for Your Enterprise

LOB Windows apps that are not signed by the Windows Store must be cryptographically signed. The apps can only be installed on a computer that trusts the signing certificate.

For more information about how to sign an app and using certificates, see [App Packaging Tools](#).

However, you can use a developer license to add apps that are in development to your PC. For more information about testing apps that are in development, see [Get a Developer License](#).

You can use Group Policy to configure your domain-joined PCs to have a developer license that does not expire to support app development. Once the PCs are configured, you won't need to connect to the Internet to obtain or renew a license. See [Configure PCs for Developing Windows Store Apps](#) for more information.

## Configure PCs for Sideload Requirements

Until the device meets all of the sideloading requirements, app tiles on the Start menu will show an "X" in the bottom-right corner to indicate that a problem is preventing the app from running.

In some cases, part of those requirements includes using a sideloading product key. This key provides use rights needed to deploy Windows 8, or Windows 8.1 apps directly to devices without having to install them through the public Windows Store.

Before you can add and run sideloaded LOB Windows apps that are not signed by the Windows Store you must configure your device based on the following conditions:

1. For those devices that are joined to a workgroup, you must:

- Activate the sideloading product key on the device.
- And enable the **Allow all trusted applications to install** Group Policy setting. See [Use Group Policy to configure your enterprise PCs for sideloading apps](#).

This applies to:

- Windows 10 Enterprise
- Windows 8.1 Enterprise
- Windows 8 Enterprise
- Windows Embedded 8.1 Industry Enterprise
- Windows 8.1 Pro Update

2. For those devices that will be joined to an Active Directory domain, you must:

- Join the device to an Active Directory domain.

- And enable the **Allow all trusted applications to install** Group Policy setting. See [Use Group Policy to configure your enterprise PCs for sideloading apps](#).

This applies to:

- Windows 10 Enterprise
- Windows 8.1 Enterprise
- Windows 8 Enterprise
- Windows Embedded 8.1 Industry Enterprise
- Windows 8.1 Pro Update
- Windows Server 2016 Technical Preview
- Windows Server 2012 R2 Update
- Windows Server 2012

3. For those devices that will require a sideloading product key, whether the device is domain-joined or a member of a workgroup, you must:

- Activate the sideloading product key on the device.
- And enable the **Allow all trusted applications to install** Group Policy setting. See [Use Group Policy to configure your enterprise PCs for sideloading apps](#).

This applies to:

- Windows 10 Pro
- Windows RT 8.1
- Windows 8.1 Pro
- Windows RT
- Windows 8 Pro
- Windows Embedded 8.1 Industry Pro

4. For certain Windows Embedded 8 Industry devices, you no longer need a sideloading product key whether the device is domain-joined or a member of a workgroup. In this case, you must:

- Enable the **Allow all trusted applications to install** Group Policy setting on the device.

For more information about sideloading on Windows Embedded 8 Industry, see [Enterprise guide to installing Universal Windows 8 apps on Windows Embedded 8 Industry](#).

This applies to:

- Windows Embedded 8.1 Industry Pro Update
- Windows Embedded 8.1 Industry Enterprise Update

## Use Group Policy to configure your enterprise PCs for sideloading apps

1. Open the Group Policy Management Editor for a domain—based Group Policy Object (GPO) to which you will be applying the group policy setting, as specified below, to your selected PCs.

### Note

The steps provided in this procedure assume you understand the basics of Group Policy design and operations. To administer domain—based Group Policy on a Windows 8.1 PC, you will need to install the Group Policy Management Console which is installed with the [Remote Server Administration Tools for Windows 8.1](#). For more information about Group Policy, see [Group Policy for Beginners](#) and the [Group Policy Techcenter](#).

2. Click to expand **Computer Configuration**, **Administrative Templates**, **Windows Components**, and then **App Package Deployment**.

3. Double-click the **Allow all trusted apps to install** setting.
4. In the **Allow all trusted apps to install** window, click **Enabled** and then click **OK**.

Setting the Group Policy to allow trusted applications updates the following registry setting:

**HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\Software\Policies\Microsoft\Windows\Appx\AllowAllTrustedApps = 1**

#### To activate a sideloading product key

1. Open a command prompt with administrator privileges and type the following to add the sideloading product key:

```
Slmgr /ipk <sideloading product key>
```

Where *<sideloading product key>* is the 25 digit key to enable sideloading on the computer.

2. Activate the sideloading key by typing:

```
slmgr /ato ec67814b-30e6-4a50-bf7b-d55daf729d1e
```

#### Note

The activation GUID is not the same as the sideloading product key. The activation GUID will always be ec67814b-30e6-4a50-bf7b-d55daf729d1e.

For more information about sideloading product keys, see the [Windows 8 Licensing Guide](#).

## Configure PCs for Developing Windows apps

You can configure your PCs to have a developer license that does not expire. Once the PCs are configured, you won't need to connect to the Internet to obtain or renew a license. Your computer must be a member of a domain and be running either of the following operating systems:

- Windows 10 Enterprise
- Windows 8.1 Enterprise
- Windows 8 Pro

#### Note

To enable sideloading on Windows 8 Pro device, you must use a sideloading product activation key. For more information see, [Configure PCs for Sideload Requirements](#)

#### To configure your enterprise PCs with a developer license

1. Open the Group Policy Management Editor for a domain—based Group Policy Object (GPO) to which you will be applying the group policy settings, as specified below, to your selected PCs.

#### Note

The steps provided in this procedure assume you understand the basics of Group Policy design and operations. To administer domain—based Group Policy on a Windows 8.1 PC, you will need to install the Group Policy Management Console which is installed with the [Remote Server Administration Tools for Windows 8.1](#). For more information about Group Policy, see [Group Policy for Beginners](#) and the [Group Policy Techcenter](#).

2. Click to expand **Computer Configuration**, **Administrative Templates**, **Windows Components**, and then **App Package Deployment**.
3. Double-click the **Allow development of Windows apps without installing a developer license** setting.

4. In the **Allow development of Windows apps without installing a developer license** window, click **Enabled** and then click **OK**.

5. Double-click the **Allow all trusted apps to install** setting.

6. In the **Allow all trusted apps to install** window, click **Enabled** and then click **OK**.

Setting the Group Policy to allow development of Windows apps without installing a developer license updates the following registry setting:

**HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\Software\Policies\Microsoft\Windows\Appx\AllowDevelopmentWithoutDeveloperLicense = 1**

Setting the Group Policy to allow trusted applications updates the following registry setting:

**HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\Software\Policies\Microsoft\Windows\Appx\AllowAllTrustedApps = 1**

## Add Apps

There are two ways to add apps. A user can add an app package, which will make the app available to just that user. Or the app can be installed in the Windows image, which will make the app available to every user of the Windows image at first logon or at the next logon, if the user account is already created. This second case is referred to as provisioning an app package.

### Add an App Package

You can install an app package (.appx or .appxbundle) on a per-user basis by using the *add-appxpackage* PowerShell cmdlet. There is no limit to the number of LOB apps you can add for each user.

### Add a LOB app to a user account

- At the Windows PowerShell prompt on a Windows 8 or Windows Server 2012 computer, add an .appx (or .appxbundle) file package. Include any required dependency app packages when you add the app. For example, type:

```
add-appxpackage C:\app1.appx -DependencyPath C:\winjs.appx
```

For more information, see [App Installation Cmdlets in Windows PowerShell](#).

### Add a provisioned LOB app to a Windows image

Apps that are installed in the Windows image are called *provisioned* apps. Provisioned apps are staged in the image and are scheduled to be installed for every user of the Windows image at first logon or at the next logon, if the user account is already created.

You can add these apps to a Windows image when you boot into audit mode before you deploy the image by using the DISM app provisioning commands. For more information about audit mode, see [Audit Mode Overview](#).

Provisioned apps are specific to the PC and will not roam with the user. You can only install 24 provisioned apps in an image.

On a Windows image that has already been deployed, you should instead use the Add-AppxPackage cmdlet in PowerShell. If you do use the DISM app provisioning commands on a deployed Windows image with active users, you should log all users off of the image, so that you are the only user logged on, before you run the command.

### Note

On Windows 8, to update a provisioned app, you must first remove the provisioned app and then deploy the new version of the app. The update will then be applied the next time each user logs in.

On Windows 8.1 and newer, you no longer need to remove the provisioned app prior to deploying the new

version of the provisioned app.

## Add a provisioned LOB app to a Windows image

- Use the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) command-line tool or PowerShell cmdlets to add the LOB app without a Windows Store license. For example, at an elevated command prompt, type:

```
DISM /Online /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /PackagePath:C:\App1.appx /SkipLicense
```

Or, at a Windows PowerShell prompt, type:

```
Add-AppxProvisionedPackage -Online -FolderPath C:\Appx -SkipLicense
```

For more information, see [DISM App Package \(.appx or .appxbundle\) Servicing Command-Line Options](#) or [DISM Cmdlets](#). For information about DISM supported platforms, see [DISM Supported Platforms](#).

### Note

The computer does not have to be joined to a domain or have an activated sideloading product key before you install provisioned LOB apps. However, the apps will not run until the computer meets this sideloading requirement. For more information, see [Customize the Start Screen](#).

## Update a provisioned LOB app once it has been added to a Windows image

On Windows 8, to update a provisioned app, you must first remove the provisioned app and then deploy the new version of the app. The update will then be applied the next time each user logs in.

On Windows 8.1 and newer, to update a provisioned app, you will need to update the app for each user that has signed on to the Windows image provisioned with the app:

## Update a provisioned LOB app to a Windows image

1. Use the PowerShell to update the LOB app without a Windows Store license. This must be done for each user that has signed in to the PC running the Windows image. For example, if you have installed the original version of the app, 1.0.0.0, that now needs to be updated to version 1.0.0.1, then at a PowerShell session, type:

```
Add-AppxPackage -Path App1_1.0.0.2 -DependencyPath C:\appx\WinJS.appx
```

Where `C:\appx\WinJS.appx` is the path to the dependency package.

2. Once you have updated your app, you can verify the version of the updated app. From a PowerShell session, type:

```
Get-AppxPackage | Out-GridView
```

## Add Multiple Languages for Apps

To prepare a multi-lingual image, sign-in to the image, install any desired app resource packs (including language) and then use Copy Profile to capture the image.

### Preparing a multi-lingual image for an app

1. Create an unattend.xml with the following contents to c:\unattend.xml:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<unattend xmlns="urn:schemas-microsoft-com:unattend">
 <settings pass="specialize">
 <component name="Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup" processorArchitecture="x86"
publicKeyToken="31bf3856ad364e35" language="neutral" versionScope="nonSxS"
xmlns:wcm="http://schemas.microsoft.com/WMIConfig/2002/State"
xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
 <CopyProfile>true</CopyProfile>
 <RegisteredOrganization />
 <RegisteredOwner />
 </component>
 </settings>
 <cpi:offlineImage cpi:source="catalog:d:/desktop/x86_clgs/install_windows_vista_ultimate.clg"
xmlns:cpi="urn:schemas-microsoft-com:cpi" />
</unattend>
```

### Note

See [Change the language used in apps](#) for information about setting the language and installing updates from the Windows Store.

2. Sign-in to a local administrator user account from OOBE on clean image.

### Important

When adding a specific language to a Windows app, you would also want to [Add Language Packs to Windows](#) for the same languages as you did for the Windows app.

3. Add the desired languages to the current user's language preference list.

4. **Install app updates using a Windows Store account (MSA account)**

- a. Sign-in to the store with an MSA account.

### Note

Store only. Don't convert the local account to MSA.

If you do not have an MSA account, you can update apps without a Windows Store account.

- b. Check for updates and install new language resource packs.
- c. Sign out of the Windows Store and remove the MSA account.

5. Open an elevated command prompt and type:

```
Sysprep.exe /generalize /oobe /reboot /unattend:C:\unattend.xml
```

Then press enter.

6. You should see the PC boot to OOBE. Any languages that you have added prior to Copy Profile should be present at this point.

### Install app updates without using a Windows Store account (MSA account)

1. After the PC has finished installing, open an elevated command prompt.
2. Type **Start ms-windows-store:Updates**
3. You will see the Windows Store Updates page. You should see the pending updates displayed.
4. Tap **Install** to install the updates.

## Inventory Apps

You can list the LOB apps installed in on offline or online Windows image and get additional information about the packages.

### List LOB Apps per user account

1. You can get a list of the Windows apps installed for a specific user account on the computer. You must open PowerShell with administrator privileges to list the packages for a user other than the current user. For example, at the PowerShell prompt, type:

```
Get-AppxPackage -AllUsers
```

2. You can get a list of packages installed for a specific user. You must open PowerShell with administrator privileges to list the packages for a user other than the current user. For example, at the PowerShell prompt, type:

```
Get-AppxPackage -Name Package1 -User domain\username
```

3. You can also get the manifest of an app package (.appx) which includes information such as the package ID. For example, at the PowerShell prompt, type:

```
Get-AppxPackageManifest -Package Package1
```

4. You can use the pipeline to get the manifest for an app package (.appx) if you don't know the full name of the package. For example, at the PowerShell prompt, type:

```
(Get-AppxPackage -Name "*WinJS*" | Get-AppxPackageManifest).package.applications.application.id
```

### List LOB apps that are provisioned in a Windows image

- You can get a list of the packages that are provisioned in a Windows image that will be installed for each new user by using Dism.exe or PowerShell. For example, at a PowerShell prompt, type:

```
Get-AppxProvisionedPackage -Path c:\offline
```

Or, at a command prompt, type:

```
DISM.exe /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-ProvisionedAppxPackages
```

For more information, see [Take Inventory of an Image or Component Using DISM](#).

## Remove Apps

You can remove individual instances of an app, or remove the provisioning setting of an app.

### Remove LOB apps per user account

- You can remove a single app for the current user only. For example, at a command prompt, type:

```
Remove-AppxPackage Package1
```

### Remove provisioned LOB apps in a Windows image

- When you remove a provisioned app, the app will not be installed for new user accounts. For the currently logged in user and other user accounts that are active on the computer, the app will not be removed from those accounts. The app will need to be uninstalled for those existing apps.

For example, to remove a provisioned LOB app, MyAppxPkg, from a Windows image, at an elevated PowerShell prompt, type:

```
Remove-AppxProvisionedPackage -Online -PackageName MyAppxPkg
```

Or, at a command prompt, type:

```
DISM.exe /Online /Remove-ProvisionedAppxPackage /PackageName:microsoft.app1_1.0.0.0_neutral_en-us_ac4zc6fex2zjp
```

## Related topics

[App Installation Cmdlets in Windows PowerShell](#)

[DISM App Package \(.appx or .appxbundle\) Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

[App Packaging Tools](#)

[AppX Module Cmdlets](#)

[Change the language used in apps](#)

[DISM Cmdlets](#)

[DISM Supported Platforms](#)

[Enterprise guide to installing Universal Windows 8 apps on Windows Embedded 8 Industry](#)

[Get a Developer License](#)

[Group Policy for Beginners](#)

[Group Policy Techcenter](#)

[Customize the Start Screen](#)

[Managing Client Access to the Windows Store](#)

[Microsoft Volume Licensing](#)

[Remote Server Administration Tools for Windows 8.1](#)

[What is a Windows Store App?](#)

[Windows 8 Licensing Guide](#)

# Preinstall Apps Using DISM

7/13/2017 • 10 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Interested in preinstalling Windows Store apps, but you aren't an OEM? For information about sideloading apps for organizations, see [Sideload Apps with DISM](#).

To pre-install Windows Store apps in your images, you'll need to use the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (Windows ADK). This section explains the steps involved in preinstalling apps as part of your images.

## Work with app packages

For offline provisioning of an app into an image, you can use either the Dism.exe tool or the DISM cmdlets in Windows PowerShell to add an app from a folder of unpacked files.

### To extract the package files

1. Browse to the folder where you saved the app packages that you downloaded from the Partner Dashboard.
2. Right-click each .zip folder containing your app package files. Click **Extract All** and select a location to save the package file folders.

The folder contains all of the unpacked files for the package, including a main package, any dependency packages, and the license file.

**Important** Do not modify the folder once you have extracted the package files. If you change, add, or remove any files in the folder, the app will fail either during installation or launch. Even browsing the folder may cause problems.

You'll need to use the license file from the package files to test your provisioned image. Creating your own custom data file will not allow you to accurately test an app preinstalled by an OEM.

For offline provisioning of an app into an image, you can use either the Dism.exe tool or the DISM cmdlets in Windows PowerShell to add an app from a folder of unpacked files.

### To preinstall a Store-signed app by using the Dism.exe tool

1. Open the Deployment Tools Command Prompt, installed with the Windows ADK, with administrator privileges. From the Start screen, type **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment**, right-click the icon, and select **Run as Administrator**.
2. Mount the offline image for servicing. At the command prompt, type:

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:c:\images\myimage.wim /Index:1 /mountdir:c:\test\offline
```

3. Add the app to the mounted image. Use the /PackagePath option and the /DependencyPackagePath option to specify the location of the folder containing all of the unpacked files and the dependency files from the Store package. /PackagePath should specify the root folder for the extracted folders. The root folder contains the license.xml, AUMIDs.txt, and all of the package files. At the command prompt, type:

```
Dism /Image:c:\test\offline /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /PackagePath:c:\downloads\appxpackage /DependencyPackagePath:c:\downloads\appxpackagedependency
```

4. Save changes and unmount the image. At the command prompt, type:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /mountdir:c:\test\offline /commit
```

## To preinstall a Store-signed app by using Windows PowerShell

1. Open Windows PowerShell with administrator privileges. You must be running Windows 10 or Windows 8.1 on the host PC or install a supported version of Windows PowerShell. For more information, see [How to Use DISM in Windows PowerShell](#).
2. Mount the image. At the Windows PowerShell prompt, type:

```
Mount-WindowsImage -ImagePath c:\images\myimage.wim -Index 1 -Path c:\test\offline
```

3. Use the Add-AppxProvisionedPackage cmdlet in Windows PowerShell to preinstall the app. Use the `/PackagePath` option and the `/DependencyPackagePath` option to specify the location of the folder containing all of the unpacked files and the dependency files from the Store package. In Windows PowerShell, type:

```
Add-AppxProvisionedPackage -Path c:\test\offline -FolderPath c:\downloads\appxpackage -
DependencyPackagePath c:\downloads\appxpackagedependency
```

4. Save changes and dismount the image. At the Windows PowerShell prompt, type:

```
Dismount-WindowsImage -Path c:\test\offline -Save
```

**Note** Windows Store apps don't run in audit mode. To test your deployment, run Windows and create a new user profile. For more information about audit mode, see [Understanding Audit mode](#) in the TechNet library.

**Important** If you are preinstalling a mobile broadband device app, you must insert the SIM card in the PC before you run the specialize phase of Sysprep. For more information about preinstalling a mobile broadband device app, see [Preinstall the Necessary Components for a Mobile Broadband Application Experience](#).

## Update or remove packages

You can remove a preinstalled app, including the license and custom data files, from a Windows image by using the DISM.exe tool or the DISM cmdlets in Windows PowerShell. You should remove the old version of the app before installing a new one.

### To remove a preinstalled app by using the Dism.exe tool

1. Open the Deployment Tools Command Prompt, installed with the Windows ADK, with administrator privileges. From the Start screen, type **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment**, right-click the icon, and select **Run as Administrator**.
2. Mount the offline image for servicing. At the command prompt, type:

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:c:\images\myimage.wim /Index:1 /mountdir:c:\test\offline
```

3. Find the full package name of the app that you want to remove. At the command prompt, type:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-ProvisionedAppxPackages
```

4. Remove the app from the mounted image. For example, at the command prompt, type:

```
Dism /Image:c:\test\offline /Remove-ProvisionedAppxPackage
/PackageName:microsoft.devx.appx.app1_1.0.0.0_neutral_en-us_ac4zc6fex2zjp
```

**Note** If the app isn't registered to a user profile in the image—for example if the image is generalized and hasn't been deployed—it's removed from the image. If the Windows image has been booted and a user profile has been created, the provisioned app is registered for that user and must be removed by using the Remove-AppxPackage cmdlets after you remove the provisioning for the app.

5. If you want to update the app, you can preinstall the updated version of the Store-signed app. At a command prompt, type:

```
Dism /Image:c:\test\offline /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage/FolderPath:c:\downloads\appxpackage
```

6. Save changes and unmount the image. At the command prompt, type:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /mountdir:c:\test\offline /commit
```

## To remove a provisioned app by using Windows PowerShell

1. Open Windows PowerShell with administrator privileges. You must be running Windows 10 or Windows 8.x on the host PC or install a supported version of Windows PowerShell. For more information, see [How to Use DISM in Windows PowerShell](#).
2. Mount the image. At the Windows PowerShell prompt, type:

```
Mount-WindowsImage -ImagePath c:\images\myimage.wim -Index 1 -Path c:\test\offline
```

3. Find the full package name of the app you want to remove. At the Windows PowerShell prompt, type:

```
Get-AppxProvisionedPackage -Path c:\test\offline
```

4. Use the Add-AppxProvisionedPackage cmdlet in Windows PowerShell to remove the app. In Windows PowerShell, type:

```
Remove-AppxProvisionedPackage -Path c:\test\offline -PackageName
microsoft.devx.appx.app1_1.0.0.0_neutral_en-us_ac4zc6fex2zjp
```

**Note** If the app isn't registered to a user profile in the image—for example if the image is generalized and hasn't been deployed—it's removed from the image. If the Windows image has been booted and a user profile has been created, the provisioned app is registered for that user and must be removed by using the Remove-AppxPackage cmdlets after you remove the provisioning for the app.

1. If you want to update the app, you can preinstall the updated version of the Store-signed app. At the Windows PowerShell prompt, type:

```
Add- AppxProvisionedPackage -Path c:\test\offline -FolderPath c:\downloads\appxpackage
```

2. Save changes and dismount the image. At the Windows PowerShell prompt, type:

```
Dismount-WindowsImage -Path c:\test\offline -Save
```

# Use custom data files

Apps that are preinstalled on a PC can access custom data specific to the installation. This custom data is added to the app during preinstallation and becomes available at runtime. Custom data enables developers to customize an app's features and functionality, including providing reporting capabilities.

## Add a custom data file to a Windows image

You must specify the custom data file when you preinstall the app by using the DISM tool and through Windows PowerShell using the **Add-AppxProvisionedPackage** cmdlet. The following command shows how to do this using the DISM tool:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage / FolderPath:f:\Apps\Fabrikam_KnowMyPC
/CustomDataPath:f:\Contoso_Promotion.xml
```

If a custom data file already exists in the data store for an app—for example, if the package has already been added to the image—the existing file is overwritten. If the installation fails, the file isn't restored.

### Note

You can release updates to an app through the Store without losing the custom data file. However, if a user deletes the app, the custom data file is no longer available, even if the user reinstalls the app.

## Test custom data for preinstalled apps

Apps that are preinstalled on a PC can access custom data specific to the installation. This custom data is added to the app during preinstallation and becomes available to the app at runtime. Custom data enables developers to customize an app's features and functionality, including providing reporting capabilities.

The Custom.data file appears at the app's installed location. The name Custom.data is hard-coded and can't be modified. Your app can check for the existence of this file to determine if the app was preinstalled on the PC. Here's an example of how to access the Custom.data file.

```
var outputDiv = document.getElementById("CustomData");
Windows.ApplicationModel.Package.current.installedLocation.getFileAsync
 ("microsoft.system.package.metadata\\Custom.data").then(function (file) {
 // Read the file
 Windows.Storage.FileIO.readTextAsync(file).done(function (fileContent) {
 outputDiv.innerHTML =
 "App is preinstalled. CustomData contains:

" +
 fileContent;
 },
 function (error) {
 outputDiv.innerText = "Error reading CustomData " + error;
 });
 },
 function (error) {
 outputDiv.innerText = "CustomData was not available. App not preinstalled";
 });
});
```

Your Custom.data file can include any content and be in any format your app requires. The preinstallation process simply makes it available to your app. Developers can supply the data file to the preinstallation partner, or you can agree to a format that enables the partner to generate the content.

## Test your custom data

When you're building and debugging your app in Microsoft Visual Studio, you can't access the Custom.data file from the app's installed location because the app isn't preinstalled yet. You can simulate using your Custom.data file by putting a test Custom.data file in the app itself, and then loading and testing the app local file. To do this, modify the code sample from:

```
("microsoft.system.package.metadata\\Custom.data").then(function (file) {
```

to:

```
("Custom.data").then(function (file) {
```

After you have verified your file format and content, you can change the location of the Custom.data file to the final location, as shown in the original example above.

### To test your Custom.data file

1. Open the Deployment Tools Command Prompt, installed with the Windows ADK, with administrator privileges. From the Start screen, type **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment**, right-click the icon, and select **Run as Administrator**.
2. Add the application with the custom data file:

```
dism /online /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /PackagePath:.\CustomData_1.0.0.1_AnyCPU_Debug.appx
/CustomDataPath:.\Test.txt /SkipLicense
```

Where `/PackagePath:.\CustomData_1.0.0.1_AnyCPU_Debug.appx` points to your local app test package, and where `/CustomDataPath:.\Test.txt` points to your Custom.data file. Be aware that the file name you provide here isn't used after the data is installed in your app.

The app now has a tile on the **Start** screen of the PC used to test the app. The app should be able to access the Custom.data file. If additional debugging is needed, attach a debugger after starting the app from the **Start** screen.

**Note** You might be required to sign out and sign in again to see the app on the **Start** screen.

3. After you're done testing your app, you must remove the preinstalled package to continue using your Dev environment. To remove the preinstalled package using Windows PowerShell, you can use the **Get-AppxPackage** cmdlet to provide the full app package name through the pipeline to the **Remove-ProvisionedAppxPackage** cmdlet:

```
Get-AppxPackage *CustomData* | Remove-ProvisionedAppxPackage
```

Where `*CustomData*` is the known part of your app's name

## Preinstall a Windows Store device app or mobile broadband app

You can preinstall the necessary components for a Windows Store device app or a mobile broadband app using the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) platform.

**Note** This article is intended for OEMs, who will be supporting a Windows Store device app or the mobile broadband app on their devices.

For each type of app, two things should be preinstalled to provide the correct Windows Store device app or mobile broadband app:

- Windows Store device app, preinstall:
  1. The device metadata package
  2. The app
- Windows Store mobile broadband app, preinstall:
  1. The service metadata package

## 2. The app

**Important** Although metadata packages and the corresponding apps are parsed immediately after the OOBE process completes, a user might be able to launch the app before the metadata package is parsed. In this case, the user will see an access denied error. To avoid this, apply both the metadata package and the app to the system image.

## Preinstall the device metadata or service metadata package

### To preinstall a device metadata or service metadata package

1. If you are preinstalling a Windows Store device app then you should have acquired the device metadata package. If you are preinstalling a mobile broadband app then you should have acquired the service metadata package.

**Note** Device metadata packages and service metadata packages use the same file name extension (.devicemetadata-ms).

2. Copy the device metadata or service metadata package (devicemetadata-ms file) to your system image in the **%ProgramData%\Microsoft\Windows\DeviceMetadataStore** folder. You can do this in one of the following ways:
  - Online before running Sysprep
  - Offline after running Sysprep by using DISM. To do this:
    - a. Mount the offline image for servicing.

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\test\images\myimage.wim /index:1 /MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

- b. Copy the metadata package files to the device metadata store of the mounted image. For example, to copy the **0ECF2029-2C6A-41AE-9E0A-63FFC9EAD877.devicemetadata-ms** metadata package file to the device metadata store,

**ProgramData\Microsoft\Windows\DeviceMetadataStore:**

```
copy 0ECF2029-2C6A-41AE-9E0A-63FFC9EAD877.devicemetadata-ms
C:\test\offline\ProgramData\Microsoft\Windows\DeviceMetadataStore
```

- c. Save the changes and unmount the image.

```
dism /Unmount-Image /mountdir: c:\test\offline /commit
```

For more info about offline image servicing, see [DISM Overview](#).

For more info about service metadata, see [Service metadata](#).

## Preinstall the Windows Store device app or mobile broadband app

### To preinstall the Windows Store device app or mobile broadband app

1. Mount the offline image for servicing.

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\test\images\myimage.wim /index:1 /MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

2. Add the Windows Store device app or mobile broadband app to the image.

```
dism /Image:<mounted folder> /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /FolderPath:<appxpackage path>
```

3. Save the changes and unmount the image.

```
dism /Unmount-Image /mountdir: c:\test\offline /commit
```

# Customize the Start Screen

7/20/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can add your business apps to a Windows image and customize the **Start** screen to include them. You can customize the **Start** screen for Windows 10 Enterprise, Windows Server 2016, or a domain-joined PC running Windows 10 Pro.

Line-of-business (LOB) Windows Store apps do not have to be certified or installed through the Windows Store. Adding apps that do not come from the Windows Store is called *sideload*. Sideloaded apps must be signed with a certificate that is chained to a trusted root certificate. For more information about sideloading Windows Store apps, including requirements, see [Sideload Apps with DISM](#).

To install Windows Store apps that are not part of your business line, you must use the Windows Store.

## Use LayoutModification XML

You can customize the Windows 10 Start menu by using layoutmodification.xml to modify or replace the default Start layout and its tiles. To see how to use layoutmodification.xml, see [Start layout XML for desktop editions of Windows 10](#).

## Use StartTiles settings to lay out the Start screen

### IMPORTANT

Customizing the Start menu using StartTiles in unattend is deprecated. Use layoutmodification.xml to customize the Windows 10 Start menu.

You can use settings in an unattended answer file to specify how the app tiles display on the **Start** screen. You can't remove tiles from the **Start** screen or label groups using unattend settings, but you can specify how tiles for 24 installed apps are displayed using the StartTiles settings. Each of the settings maps to a fixed position in the **Start** screen templates, and these positions vary according to the destination PC's screen size, resolution, and DPI. Each setting specifies whether the tile is a wide tile or a square tile for an app, or if it's a square tile for a desktop app.

### 1. Get the AppID of your LOB apps.

To use the unattend settings, you need the specific AppID string that is associated with an installed app. You can create this string by using the get-AppxPackage cmdlet in Windows PowerShell. The following example shows how to get the AppID string to use in the unattend settings for every app that is already installed on the computer:

```
$installedapps = get-AppxPackage
foreach ($app in $installedapps)
{
 foreach ($id in (Get-AppxPackageManifest $app).package.applications.application.id)
 {
 $app.packagefamilyname + "!" + $id
 }
}
```

### 2. Open an answer file.

Create or open an answer file in Windows System Image Manager (Windows SIM). For more information, see [Windows System Image Manager Technical Reference](#).

### 3. Add StartTiles settings to your answer file.

Use the Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup | StartTiles | <tileSetting> setting to specify the AppID of the app whose tile should appear in a particular position on the **Start** screen by default. The tile settings follow three naming patterns:

- WideTile and a number from 01 to 06.

Each app that you specify for these settings must provide assets, in the app manifest, that provide a wide tile. Each app setting requires that you input the AppID.

- SquareTile and a number from 01 to 12.

Each app setting requires that you input the AppID.

- DesktopOrSquareTile and a number from 01 to 06.

For apps in any or all of the DesktopOrSquare settings, you need to specify the appId for the corresponding app, or the path to the desktop app.

**Note** If you put an app that supports wide tiles in a square tile spot, the tile is forced to be square instead of wide.

If you skip a setting, Windows rearranges the flow of app tiles around the app tile position of that setting on the **Start** screen.

### 4. Deploy your Windows image using the modified answer file.

For more information, see [Deploy a Custom Image](#).

For more information about these settings, see the StartTiles settings topics in the Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup component in the [Windows Unattended Setup Reference](#) on TechNet.

## Related topics

[Sideload Apps with DISM](#)

[Mount and Modify a Windows Image Using DISM](#)

[Deployment Imaging Servicing Management \(DISM\) Cmdlets in Windows PowerShell](#)

# Change the Windows Image to a Higher Edition Using DISM

7/13/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use the Windows® edition-servicing commands to change one edition of Windows to a higher edition of Windows. The edition packages for each potential target edition are staged in the Windows image. This is referred to as an edition-family image. You can use the command-line options to list potential target editions. Because the target editions are staged, you can service a single image, and the updates will be applied appropriately to each edition in the image.

You need a product key to change the Windows edition online. Offline changes do not require a product key. If you change the image to a higher edition using offline servicing, you can add the product key by using one of the following methods:

- Enter the product key during the out-of-box experience (OOBE).
- Use an unattended answer file to enter the product key during the **specialize** configuration pass.
- Use Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) and the Windows edition-servicing command-line option **/Set-ProductKey** after you set the edition offline.

For more information about product keys, see [Work with Product Keys and Activation](#).

## Find and Change Current Edition of Windows

You can find the edition of Windows your image is currently set to by mounting the image and running DISM commands on the mounted image.

### To find the current edition

1. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
2. At the command prompt, type the following command to retrieve the name or index number for the image that you want to modify.

```
Dism /Get-ImageInfo /ImageFile:C:\test\images
```

3. Type the following command to mount the offline Windows image.

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\test\images /Index:1 /MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

An index or name value is required for most operations that specify an image file.

4. Type the following command to find the edition of Windows your image is currently set to.

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-CurrentEdition
```

Note which edition of Windows your image is currently set to. If the image has already been changed to a higher edition you should not change it again. We recommend that you use the lowest edition as a starting

point.

5. Unmount the image or continue with the next procedure. To unmount your image, type the following command.

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\test\offline /Commit
```

## To change to a higher edition of Windows

1. Type the following command to mount the offline Windows image (if it is not already mounted).

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\test\images /Name:<Image_name> /MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

2. Type the following command to find the editions of Windows that you can change your image to.

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-TargetEditions
```

Note the edition-ID for the edition you want to change to.

### Note

You cannot set a Windows image to a lower edition. The lowest edition will not appear when you run the **/Get-TargetEditions** option. You should not use this procedure on an image that has already been changed to a higher edition.

3. Type the following command specifying the edition-ID to change the Windows image to a higher edition.

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Set-Edition:Professional
```

4. Type the following command to unmount the image and commit your changes.

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\test\offline /Commit
```

## Related topics

[Understanding Servicing Strategies](#)

[DISM Windows Edition-Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

[DISM - Deployment Image Servicing and Management Technical Reference for Windows](#)

# Export or Import Default Application Associations

9/5/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) tool to change the default programs associated with a file name extension or protocol in a Windows 10 image.

## Generate Default Application Associations XML File

Deploy your Windows image to a test computer and configure the programs that are included in your image. You can log into Windows and use Control Panel to select your default application associations. You can export the default application associations that you have configured to an XML file on a network share or removable media so that you can import them into the WIM or VHD file before you deploy it to your destination computers.

### Set default application associations

1. Install your Windows image to a test computer. For more information about how to apply a Windows image, see [Apply Images Using DISM](#).
2. Start the test computer and complete Windows Setup.
3. Click **Search**, click **Settings**, and then type **Default Programs**. Click **Default Programs**.
4. You can configure default programs by file name extension or by application. For example, to set an installed photo viewing application as the default program that is used to open all of the file types and protocols that it supports, click **Set your default programs**, click the photo viewing application in the program list, and then click **Set this program as default**.

### Export default application association settings

1. On your test computer, open a Command Prompt as administrator.
2. Export the default application association settings from the test computer to an .xml file on a network share or USB drive. For example, at a command prompt type:

```
Dism /Online /Export-DefaultAppAssociations:\\Server\Share\AppAssoc.xml
```

Where:

- Server is the name of the server or computer that contains the share that you will export the default application association settings.
- Share is the name of the share where you will export the default application association settings.

## Add or Remove Default Application Association Settings to a Windows Image

You can change the default application association settings in a WIM or VHD file before you deploy it to your destination computers. You can also add and remove default application association settings from an online image.

### Import default application association settings

1. On your technician computer, open a Command Prompt as administrator.
2. Mount a Windows image from a WIM or VHD file. For example, at the Command Prompt type:

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\test\images\install.wim /Name:"Windows" /MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

3. Import the .xml file that has the default application association settings to the Windows image. For example, at the command prompt type:

```
Dism.exe /Image:C:\test\offline /Import-DefaultAppAssociations:\\Server\Share\AppAssoc.xml
```

Where:

- Server is the name of the server or computer that contains the share that you will export the default application association settings.
- Share is the name of the share where you will export the default application association settings.

### **Review the default application association setting in an image**

1. On your technician computer, open a Command Prompt administrator.
2. List the application associations that have been applied to the mounted image. For example, at the Command Prompt, type:

```
Dism.exe /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-DefaultAppAssociations
```

### **Remove default application association settings**

1. On your technician computer, open a Command Prompt as administrator.
2. Remove the custom default application association that have been added to the mounted image. For example, at the Command Prompt type:

```
Dism.exe /Image:C:\test\offline /Remove-DefaultAppAssociations
```

# Service a Mounted Windows Image

7/13/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) tool to mount a Windows image from a WIM or VHD file and modify it. In the first part of this walkthrough, you add a language pack, configuring international settings and enable Windows features. In the second part, you remove a package, and then upgrade the Windows image to a higher edition of Windows®.

## Prerequisites

To complete the walkthrough, you need the following:

- A computer that has the Windows ADK tools installed on it.
- A .wim, .vhd, or .vhdx file to update.
- Language packs, or other packages to add and remove from the image.

## Procedures

### Step 1: Mount an Image with Read/Write Permissions

In this step, you mount a Windows image to a specified directory, so that it is available for servicing.

1. Copy a .wim file, a .vhd, or a .vhdx that contains a Windows image, to the local drive. For example, C:\test\images.
2. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
3. Create a folder for your mounted image. For example, C:\test\offline.
4. Run the **DISM /Get-ImageInfo** command to retrieve the name or index number for the image that you want to update. For example:

```
Dism /Get-ImageInfo /ImageFile:C:\test\images\MyImage.wim
```

5. Mount the Windows image. For example:

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\test\images\MyImage.wim /Index:1 /MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

Since WIM files can contain one or more images, you must specify an index or name value. To mount an image from a VHD, you must specify `/Index:1`.

### Step 2: Add Packages to the Image

In this step, you add packages to the mounted Windows image.

1. At an elevated command prompt, add packages to the mounted Windows image. For example:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Add-Package /PackagePath:C:\test\packages\package1.cab
/PackagePath:C:\test\packages\package2.cab
```

2. If you added a language pack, you can change all international language settings in the mounted offline image by typing the following command:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Set-SKUIIntlDefaults:fr-FR
```

Optionally, you can configure different values for different settings, including UI language, system locale, user locale, input locale, and others. For more information about how to specify individual values for each of these settings, see [DISM Languages and International Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

3. At the command prompt, commit the changes. The image remains mounted until the **/Unmount-Image** option is used. For example:

```
Dism /Commit-Image /MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

### Step 3: Remove a Package from the Mounted Image

In this step, you review the packages that have been installed in your image, and then remove a specific package from the image.

1. At an elevated command prompt, find the names of the packages that are in your image. For example:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-Packages
```

If the list of packages is extensive, you can output the information to a text file. For example, you can add `>C:\PackageList.txt` to the end of the command line.

2. Review the list of packages that are available in your mounted image, and note the package identity of the package.
3. At a command prompt, specify the package identity of a package and remove it from the mounted image.

For example:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Remove-Package
/PackageName:Microsoft.Windows.Calc.Demo~6595b6144ccf1df~x86~en~1.0.0.0
```

### Step 4: Upgrade to a Higher Edition of Windows

All of the changes that you make are also applied to each potential target edition of Windows. Each target edition is staged in the image. The changes will not be lost when you upgrade to a higher edition of Windows. For more information, see [DISM Windows Edition-Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

1. At an elevated command prompt, list the editions that are available for the upgrade. For example:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-TargetEditions
```

Note the target edition ID.

2. At the command prompt, specify the edition that you want to upgrade to. For example:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Set-Edition:Ultimate
```

End users can use Windows Anytime Upgrade to remove files related to lower editions of Windows that are not being used.

## **Step 5: Reduce the Size of the Image**

In this step, you'll reduce the footprint of the image by cleaning up superseded components to reduce the size of the component store, and also by resetting the base of superseded components, which can further reduce the component store size.

- At an elevated command prompt, run the following command to reduce the size of the image file:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /cleanup-image /StartComponentCleanup /ResetBase
```

## **Step 6: Commit the Changes and Unmount the Image**

In this step, you unmount the image and save the changes that you have made.

- At an elevated command prompt, unmount the image and commit the changes to the image file. For example:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\test\offline /Commit
```

## **Next Step**

This walkthrough illustrates the basic offline servicing of a mounted Windows image. All the changes were made to a single image, and persisted when the image was upgraded. The updated image is ready to be deployed. Because you copied the image file to the local hard disk drive, you can delete the original image file from the server. You can replace it with this new one, or keep a copy of the older version for reference.

For more information about additional offline servicing operations that can be performed on an offline image, see [DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#).

## **Related topics**

[Understanding Servicing Strategies](#)

[Service a Windows Image Using DISM](#)

[DISM - Deployment Image Servicing and Management Technical Reference for Windows](#)

# Service an Applied Windows Image

7/13/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Windows® image (.wim) files contain one or more volume images for a Windows® operating system. A volume image represents the captured volume or partition of a Windows operating system. If you have to re-capture a Windows image, or export a copy of a specific .wim file to another .wim file, or append a volume image to an existing .wim file, you can use the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) tool to apply the image, and then service the image when it is applied. Then you can boot to audit mode to resolve pending online actions, and add applications or make additional customizations.

## Prerequisites

To complete the walkthrough, you need the following:

- A computer that has the latest version of the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (Windows ADK) tools installed on it.
- Before you can apply a Windows image to a hard disk drive partition, you must create the hard disk partitions on the destination computer. For more information, see [Hard Drives and Partitions](#).
- You must have the master Windows image (.wim file) and the language packs, drivers, or other packages available in an available location to add them to the Windows image.
- A bootable Windows PE disk. For more information, see [WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#) You can also apply the image from another operating system on the same computer, such as Windows 8 or Windows 7 with the latest ADK tools installed.

## Procedures

### Step 1: Boot to Windows PE and Apply the Windows Image

In this step, you boot to Windows PE and apply a Windows image so that it can be serviced offline.

#### To apply an image

1. On the destination computer, boot to Windows PE. For more information, see [WinPE for Windows 10](#).
2. At a command prompt, apply the master Windows image using DISM. For example:

```
Dism /Apply-Image /ImageFile:C:\test\wim\install.wim /Index:1 /ApplyDir:C:\test\AppliedImages
```

For more information about DISM commands, see [DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#).

### Step 2: Add Packages to the Windows Image

Use DISM to add packages to your master Windows image.

#### To add a package to the image

1. At a command prompt, run DISM with the **/Add-Package** option and point to the .cab or .msu package that you want to add to the Windows image. Multiple packages can be added on one command line. For example, type the following command to add multiple packages:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\AppliedImages /Add-Package /PackagePath:C:\Test\Packages\package1.cab
/PackagePath:C:\Test\Packages\package2.cab
```

For more information about these DISM command-line options, see [DISM Operating System Package Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

You can also use DISM command-line options on an applied Windows image to add drivers, add language packs, change to a higher edition of Windows, or apply an unattended answer file. For more information, see:

- [DISM Driver Servicing Command-Line Options](#)
- [DISM Languages and International Servicing Command-Line Options](#)
- [DISM Windows Edition-Servicing Command-Line Options](#)
- [DISM Unattended Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

2. Check the log file to verify that the package was successfully added.

Some packages and drivers that were added or removed could be in a pending state. This is usually because a restart is required to complete the action. Booting the image to audit mode will satisfy the restart requirement, and let you add applications and make additional customizations. For more information, see [Boot Windows to Audit Mode or OOB](#)E.

## Next Step

This walkthrough illustrates basic offline servicing of an applied Windows image in Windows PE. When you complete this process, the packages are added to the Windows image. You can now either run `sysprep /generalize /oobe` to remove machine-specific customizations and recapture the image for later deployment, or run `sysprep /oobe` to keep the specialized customizations and ship this computer. Using the `/oobe` option will ensure that the computer starts in Out-of-Box Experience (OOBE) mode the next time that it is booted. For more information, see [Sysprep \(System Preparation\) Overview](#).

## Related topics

[Understanding Servicing Strategies](#)

[Service a Windows Image Using DISM](#)

[DISM - Deployment Image Servicing and Management Technical Reference for Windows](#)

[Windows ADK](#)

# Repair a Windows Image

7/13/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Repair a Windows image using DISM. You can repair offline Windows image in a WIM or VHD file, or an online Windows image. An online Windows image will also attempt to repair itself if it becomes unserviceable. The repair source for this operation is the same source that is used for Features on Demand and is determined by Group Policy settings. For more information, see [Configure a Windows Repair Source](#). When you use the DISM tool to repair an online or offline image, you can use the */Source* argument with the */RestoreHealth* argument to specify additional repair source locations to use to search for the required files.

For a quick check of an online image, you may be able to use the command: `sfc /scannow` to scan and repair files.

For a more extensive check that can repair issues with the store, use `DISM /Cleanup-Image`.

## To check if an image is repairable

1. Scan the image to check for corruption. This operation will take several minutes. For example, at a command prompt, type the following command:

```
Dism /Online /Cleanup-Image /ScanHealth
```

2. Check the image to see whether any corruption has been detected. For example, at a command prompt, type:

```
Dism /Online /Cleanup-Image /CheckHealth
```

When you use the */CheckHealth* sfc argument, the DISM tool will report whether the image is healthy, repairable, or non-repairable. If the image is non-repairable, you should discard the image and start again. If the image is repairable, you can use the */RestoreHealth* argument to repair the image.

## To repair an image

- Use the */RestoreHealth* argument to repair the image. For example, to repair an offline image using a mounted image as a repair source, at a command prompt, type the following command:

```
Dism /Image:C:\offline /Cleanup-Image /RestoreHealth /Source:c:\test\mount\windows
```

Or to repair an online image using some of your own sources instead of Windows Update, type:

```
Dism /Online /Cleanup-Image /RestoreHealth /Source:c:\test\mount\windows /LimitAccess
```

If you do not specify a */Source* for the repair files, the default location for Features on Demand is used. For more information, see [Configure a Windows Repair Source](#). If you specify more than one */Source*, the files are copied from the first location where they are found and the rest of the locations are ignored. You can use */LimitAccess* to prevent the DISM tool from using Windows Update as a repair source or as a backup repair source for online images.

## Repairing images during servicing

In some cases, an image can be corrupted while modifying it with DISM. Use `/Cleanup-MountPoints` to repair it. This command will not unmount images that are already mounted, nor will it delete images that can be recovered using the `/Remount-Image` command.

```
Dism /Cleanup-Mountpoints
```

## Related topics

[Use the System File Checker tool to repair missing or corrupted system files](#)

[DISM Operating System Package Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

[Configure a Windows Repair Source](#)

# Manage the Component Store

6/6/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

"Why is WinSxS so large?" has been asked by many Windows users. While this question has been discussed in blog posts, this topic goes into a little more details about the concepts behind the component store (specifically the WinSxS folder) and then provides links to topics that highlight ways to better manage the size of the WinSxS folder.

The short answer is that the WinSxS folder isn't as large as it may appear at first glance because size calculations can include Windows binaries located elsewhere which makes the WinSxS folder seem larger than it really is.

## The Windows component store and WinSxS folder

The WinSxS folder is located in the Windows folder, for example **c:\Windows\WinSxS**. It's the location for Windows Component Store files. The Windows Component Store is used to support the functions needed for the customization and updating of Windows. Here are some examples of how the Windows Component Store files are used:

- Using Windows Update to install new component versions. This keeps systems secure and up-to-date.
- Enabling or disabling Windows features.
- Adding roles or features using Server Manager.
- Moving systems between different Windows Editions.
- System recovery from corruption or boot failures
- Uninstalling problematic updates
- Running programs using side-by-side assemblies

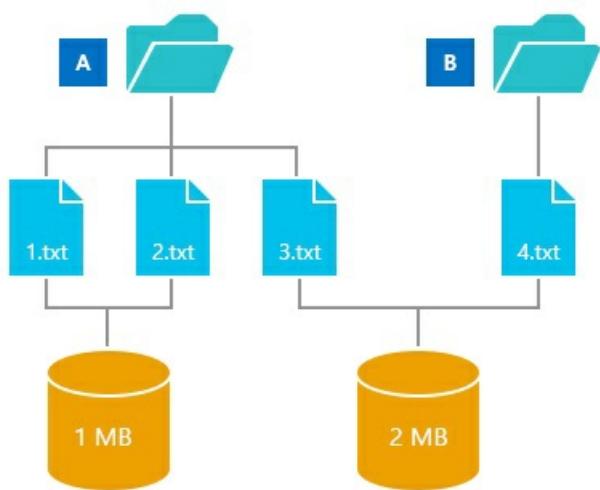
The Windows Component Store was first introduced in Windows XP to support side by side assemblies. Beginning in Windows Vista, the component store was enhanced to track and service all of the components that make up the operating system. Those different operating system components track objects such as files, directories, registry keys, and services. Specific versions of components are then collected together into packages. Packages are used by Windows Update and DISM to update Windows. The components and packages used in a Windows installation are processed by the Windows Component Store. Determining the size of the Windows Component Store is complicated by the fact that many of the files are used by Windows from directories outside the Windows Component Store using a technique known as *hard linking*. In such cases, the files from a component version appear both inside and outside the Windows Component Store. By using *hard linking* Windows is able to appear to keep multiple copies of the same file without actually taking the added space for multiple copies.

## Hard links

A hard link is a file system object which allows two files to refer to the same location on disk. This means that more than one file can refer to the same data and changes to that data in one file are reflected in the other files. This complicates notions of directory size as can be seen using the following example:

1. Directory A has three files: 1.txt, 2.txt, and 3.txt
2. Directory B has one file: 4.txt
3. Files 1.txt and 2.txt are hard linked together and contain 1MB of data.

4. Files 3.txt and 4.txt are also hard linked together and contain 2MB of data.



In this example, you can see that the hard links enable multiple files to refer to the same set of data.

Now what is the size of directory A?

The answer depends on what you plan to do with directory A:

1. If you read the files in the directory A then the size of all the files that are read is the sum of each file size. In this example, that would be 4 MB.
2. If you copy all the files from directory A to a new location, then the amount of data copied is the sum of all data hard linked from the files. In this example, that would be 3 MB.
3. If you are trying to free up space by deleting the directory A, you will only see a reduction in size for the files that are hard linked only by directory A. In this example, this amounts to a savings of 1 MB.

Back to the question of how much space is used by the Windows Component Store, and specifically the WinSxS folder. The third answer in the directory A example, most closely matches how much extra space is used. Files hard linked to the rest of the system are required for system operations, so they should not be counted, and files hard linked to multiple locations within the component store should only have the size stored on disk counted.

## Managing the Windows Component Store

You can use new features in Windows 8.1 and Windows Server 2012 R2 to manage the Windows Component Store:

[Determine the Actual Size of the WinSxS Folder](#)

[Clean Up the WinSxS Folder](#)

[Reduce the Size of the Component Store in an Offline Windows Image](#)

## Related topics

[Where Did My Space Go? \(blog post\)](#)

[More on hard links](#)

[NTFS Metafiles blog post](#)

[How to create and manipulate NTFS junction points](#)

# Determine the Actual Size of the WinSxS Folder

8/11/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Why is the WinSxS folder so big? The short answer to this commonly asked question is that the component store (WinSxS folder) contains all the components that make-up Windows to allow you operate your system. These components are kept to rollback any problematic change or to repair a file that becomes corrupted. For more information about the component store, see [Manage the Component Store](#). For information on how to delete files in the WinSxS folder, see [Clean Up the WinSxS Folder](#).

For operating system files, it can appear that more than one copy of the same version of a file is stored in more than one place on the operating system, but there's usually only one real copy of the file. The rest of the copies are just "projected" by hard linking from the component store. A *hard link* is a file system object that lets two files refer to the same location on disk. Some tools, such as the File Explorer, determine the size of directories without taking into account that the contained files might be hard linked. This might lead you to think that the WinSxS folder takes up more disk space than it really does.

## WARNING

Some important system files are located only in the WinSxS folder. Deleting files from the WinSxS folder or deleting the entire WinSxS folder might severely damage your system, so that your PC might not boot, and make it impossible to update.

A new option has been added to the DISM tool for Windows 8.1 to help determine how much disk space the WinSxS folder really uses.

## Analyze the size of the component store (WinSxS folder)

- Open an elevated command window and type:

```
Dism.exe /Online /Cleanup-Image /AnalyzeComponentStore
```

## NOTE

The **/AnalyzeComponentStore** option isn't recognized on Windows 8 and earlier.

The information returned is:

TITLE	DESCRIPTION
Windows Explorer Reported Size of Component Store	This value the size of the WinSxS folder if computed by Windows Explorer. This value doesn't factor in the use of hard links within the WinSxS folder.
Actual Size of Component Store	This value factors in hard links within the WinSxS folder. It doesn't exclude files that are shared with Windows by using hard links.

TITLE	DESCRIPTION
Shared with Windows	This value provides the size of files that are hard linked so that they appear both in the component store and in other locations (for the normal operation of Windows). This is included in the actual size, but shouldn't be considered part of the component store overhead.
Backups and Disabled Features	<p>This is the size of the components that are being kept to respond to failures in newer components or to provide the option of enabling more functionality. It also includes the size of component store metadata and side-by-side components.</p> <p>This is included in the actual size and is part of the component store overhead.</p>
Cache and Temporary Data	This is the size of files that are used internally by the component store to make component servicing operations faster. This is included in the actual size and is part of the component store overhead.
Date of Last Cleanup	This is the date of the most recently completed component store cleanup.
Number of Reclaimable Packages	This is the number of superseded packages on the system that component cleanup can remove.
Component Store Cleanup Recommended	This is a component store cleanup recommendation. Cleanup is recommended when performing a cleanup process may reduce the size of the component store overhead.

Based on this analysis you can determine the overhead of the WinSxS folder by taking the sum of the backups and disabled features size with the cache and temporary data size.

Example output:

```
C:\>dism /online /cleanup-image /analyzecomponentstore

Deployment Image Servicing and Management tool
Version: 6.3.XXXX.0

Image Version: 6.3.XXXX.0

[=====100.0%=====]

Component Store (WinSxS) information:

Windows Explorer Reported Size of Component Store : 4.98 GB

Actual Size of Component Store : 4.88 GB

Shared with Windows : 4.38 GB
Backups and Disabled Features : 506.90 MB
Cache and Temporary Data : 279.52 KB

Date of Last Cleanup : 2013-06-10 23:32:22

Number of Reclaimable Packages : 0
Component Store Cleanup Recommended : No

The operation completed successfully.
```

In this example, the WinSxS folder appears to be 4.98 GB, but the actual overhead (the sum of the size of backups and disabled features and the size of cache and temporary data) is 507.18 MB.

### Determine if you should clean up the component store (WinSxS folder) based on the analysis results

1. Open an elevated command window and type:

```
Dism.exe /Online /Cleanup-Image /AnalyzeComponentStore
```

2. If cleanup is recommended then follow steps in the related topic, [Clean Up the WinSxS Folder](#).

## Related topics

[Manage the Component Store](#)

[Clean Up the WinSxS Folder](#)

[Where Did My Space Go? \(blog post\)](#)

[Servicing changes in Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2](#)

[NTFS Metafiles blog post](#)

[How to create and manipulate NTFS junction points](#)

[DISM Operating System Package Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

# Clean Up the WinSxS Folder

10/13/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

This topic is about the different ways to reduce the size of the WinSxS folder on a running version of Windows 10.

One commonly asked question is, "Can I delete the WinSxS folder to regain some disk space?" The short answer is no. You can, however, reduce the size of the WinSxS folder using tools built into Windows. For more information about the WinSxS folder, see [Manage the Component Store](#).

Windows 10 and Windows Server 2016 automatically reduce the size of the WinSxS folder by using methods similar to the ones described in this topic, in addition to internal processes, such as uninstalling and deleting packages with components that have been replaced by other components with newer versions. Previous versions of some components are kept on the system for a period of time, allowing you to rollback if necessary. After a period of time, these older components are automatically removed from the installation.

You can also reduce the size of a Windows image using some of the same techniques, as discussed in [Reduce the Size of the Component Store in an Offline Windows Image](#).

To learn about finding the size of your WinSxS folder, see [Determine the actual size of the WinSxS folder](#).

## WARNING

Deleting files from the WinSxS folder or deleting the entire WinSxS folder may severely damage your system so that your PC might not boot and make it impossible to update.

In Windows 10 and Windows Server 2016, you have a number of ways to start the cleanup of the component store, which use a combination of package deletion and component compression to clean up the WinSxS folder:

## Task Scheduler

The **StartComponentCleanup** task was created in Windows 8 to regularly clean up components automatically when the system is not in use. This task is set to run automatically when triggered by the operating system. When run automatically, the task will wait at least 30 days after an updated component has been installed before uninstalling the previous versions of the component.

If you choose to run this task, the task will have a 1 hour timeout and may not completely clean up all files.

### Run the StartComponentCleanup task in Task Scheduler to clean up and compress components

1. If **Task Scheduler** is not open, start the **Task Scheduler**. For more information, see [Start Task Scheduler](#).
2. Expand the console tree and navigate to **Task Scheduler**  
**Library\Microsoft\Windows\Servicing\StartComponentCleanup**.
3. Under **Selected Item**, click **Run**

```
schtasks.exe /Run /TN "\Microsoft\Windows\Servicing\StartComponentCleanup"
```

## NOTE

The StartComponentCleanup task can also be started from the command line.

## Dism.exe

The **/Cleanup-Image** parameter of **Dism.exe** provides advanced users more options to further reduce the size of the WinSxS folder. For more information, see [DISM Operating System Package Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

### Use the /StartComponentCleanup parameter

- Using the **/StartComponentCleanup** parameter of Dism.exe on a running version of Windows 10 gives you similar results to running the **StartComponentCleanup** task in **Task Scheduler**, except previous versions of updated components will be immediately deleted (without a 30 day grace period) and you will not have a 1-hour timeout limitation.

From an elevated command prompt, type the following:

```
Dism.exe /online /Cleanup-Image /StartComponentCleanup
```

### Use the /ResetBase switch with the /StartComponentCleanup parameter

- Using the **/ResetBase** switch with the **/StartComponentCleanup** parameter of DISM.exe on a running version of Windows 10 removes all superseded versions of every component in the component store.

From an elevated command prompt, type the following:

```
Dism.exe /online /Cleanup-Image /StartComponentCleanup /ResetBase
```

#### WARNING

All existing service packs and updates cannot be uninstalled after this command is completed. This will not block the uninstallation of future service packs or updates.

### Use the /SPSuperseded parameter

- To reduce the amount of space used by a Service Pack, use the **/SPSuperseded** parameter of Dism.exe on a running version of Windows 10 to remove any backup components needed for uninstallation of the service pack. A service pack is a collection of cumulative updates for a particular release of Windows.

From an elevated command prompt, type the following:

```
Dism.exe /online /Cleanup-Image /SPSuperseded
```

#### Warning

The service pack cannot be uninstalled after this command is completed.

## Disk Cleanup

You can use Disk Cleanup to reduce the number of unnecessary files on your drives, which can help your PC run faster. It can delete temporary files and system files, empty the Recycle Bin, and remove a variety of other items that you might no longer need. The option to cleanup updates helps reduce the size of the component store.

### Run Disk Cleanup to delete system files

- To delete system files run the steps as provided in [Delete files using Disk Cleanup](#).

## Related topics

[Manage the Component Store](#)

[Determine the Actual Size of the WinSxS Folder](#)

[Reduce the Size of the Component Store in an Offline Windows Image](#)

[Uninstall-WindowsFeature](#)

[How to Reduce the Size of the Winsxs directory and Free Up Disk Space on Windows Server 2012 Using Features on Demand](#)

[How to address disk space issues that are caused by a large Windows component store \(WinSxS\) directory](#)

# Reduce the Size of the Component Store in an Offline Windows Image

7/13/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) tool to mount a Windows image from a WIM, VHD, or VHDX file and modify it.

## Analyze and clean up the Component Store (WinSxS folder) in an offline Windows image

To complete the walkthrough, you need the following:

- A computer running Windows 10, Windows 8.1, Windows 8, Windows 7, Windows Server 2016 Technical Preview, Windows Server 2012 R2, Windows Server 2012, or Windows Server 2008 R2 with the Windows 8.1 version of the Windows ADK tools installed on it.
- A .wim, .vhd, or .vhdx file of a Windows 10 or Windows Server 2016 Technical Preview image.

### Analyze the size of the Component Store in an offline Windows image

1. Copy a .wim file, a .vhd, or a .vhdx that contains a Windows image, to the local drive. For example, C:\test\images.
2. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
3. Create a folder for your mounted image. For example, C:\test\offline.
4. Run the **DISM /Get-ImageInfo** command to retrieve the name or index number for the image that you want to update. For example:

```
Dism /Get-ImageInfo /ImageFile:C:\test\images\MyImage.wim
```

5. Mount the Windows image. For example:

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\test\images\MyImage.wim /Index:1 /MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

Since WIM files can contain one or more images, you must specify an index or name value. To mount an image from a VHD, you must specify `/Index:1`.

6. Analyze the size of the component store. For example:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Cleanup-Image /AnalyzeComponentStore
```

To understand the different values provided in the display, see [Determine the Actual Size of the WinSxS Folder](#).

7. If the component store cleanup was recommended in the displayed report, then you can start cleanup of the image. For example:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Cleanup-Image /StartComponentCleanup
```

8. You can reduce the size of the component store further by adding the /ResetBase parameter. For example:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Cleanup-Image /StartComponentCleanup /ResetBase
```

Beginning with Windows 10, version 1607, you can specify the /Defer parameter with /Resetbase to defer any long-running cleanup operations to the next automatic maintenance. But we highly recommend you **only** use /Defer as an option in the factory where DISM /Resetbase requires more than 30 minutes to complete.

The maintenance task is scheduled to run weekly, with a two-week deadline. In the first week, the maintenance task will only run during system idle maintenance windows. If it is unable to complete (for example, the computer is turned off when not in use) then the task scheduler runs more often, and the task may run while the system is not idle.

To see the performance effects while the task is running, click Start > Run and type the following command:

```
Schtasks.exe /Run /I /TN \Microsoft\Windows\Servicing\StartComponentCleanup
```

9. Commit the changes and unmounts the image in order to save the changes that you've made. For example:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\test\offline /Commit
```

## Related topics

[Manage the Component Store](#)

[Clean Up the WinSxS Folder](#)

[Determine the Actual Size of the WinSxS Folder](#)

[Where Did My Space Go? \(blog post\)](#)

[NTFS Metafiles blog post](#)

[How to create and manipulate NTFS junction points](#)

[DISM Operating System Package Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

# Windows 10 DISM Command-Line Options

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM.exe) mounts a Windows image (.wim) file or virtual hard disk (.vhdx or .vhd) for servicing. You can also use DISM to install, uninstall, configure, and update the features and packages in offline Windows images and offline Windows Preinstallation Environment (WinPE) images. For more information about common DISM scenarios, see [What is DISM?](#).

In addition to the command-line tool, DISM is available by using PowerShell. For more information, see [Deployment Imaging Servicing Management \(DISM\) Cmdlets in Windows PowerShell](#).

DISM replaces tools including PEImg, Intlcfg, Package Manager, and ImageX.

## In This Section

<a href="#">DISM Image Management Command-Line Options</a>	Image management commands such as capturing, applying, and mounting a Windows image.
<a href="#">DISM Global Options for Command-Line Syntax</a>	Basic command-line syntax and universal options for servicing functions.
<a href="#">DISM Operating System Package Servicing Command-Line Options</a>	Package-servicing commands for adding, removing, and enumerating .cab and .msu packages and enabling, disabling, and enumerating features.
<a href="#">DISM Provisioning Package (.ppkg) Command-Line Options</a>	Use Windows provisioning packages (.ppkg)
<a href="#">DISM Capabilities Package Servicing Command-Line Options</a>	Capabilities servicing commands for adding languages, .NET, and other Windows features.
<a href="#">DISM App Package (.appx or .appxbundle) Servicing Command-Line Options</a>	Servicing commands for adding, removing, and enumerating app packages.
<a href="#">DISM Application Servicing Command-Line Options</a>	Servicing commands that can be used to check the applicability of Windows Installer application patches (.msp files) and to query your offline image for information about installed MSI applications and application patches (.msp files).
<a href="#">DISM Default Application Association Servicing Command-Line Options</a>	Servicing commands for importing, exporting, removing, and enumerating the settings that specify which application opens a file based on file extension or protocol
<a href="#">DISM Languages and International Servicing Command-Line Options</a>	International-servicing commands for adjusting international settings and configurations.

<a href="#">DISM Driver Servicing Command-Line Options</a>	Driver-specific servicing commands for adding, removing, and enumerating driver .inf files.
<a href="#">DISM Unattended Servicing Command-Line Options</a>	Servicing commands that can be used to apply an Unattend.xml file.
<a href="#">DISM Windows PE Servicing Command-Line Options</a>	WinPE-specific servicing commands for preparing a WinPE image.
<a href="#">DISM Windows Edition-Servicing Command-Line Options</a>	Edition-servicing commands for changing the edition of your Windows image.

## Related topics

[DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#)

[DISM How-to Topics \(Deployment Image Servicing and Management\)](#)

[What is DISM?](#)

# DISM Image Management Command-Line Options

10/17/2017 • 20 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM.exe) mounts a Windows image (.wim) file or virtual hard disk (.vhdx or .vhd) for servicing. You can also use the DISM image management command to list the image index numbers, to verify the architecture for the image that you are mounting, append an image, apply an image, capture an image and delete an image. After you update the image, you must unmount it and either commit or discard the changes that you have made.

This topic discusses DISM commands related to image management. To see other command-line options, see [Deployment Image Servicing and Management \(DISM\) Command-Line Options](#). For more information about common DISM scenarios, see [What is DISM?](#).

In addition to the command-line tool, DISM is available by using Windows PowerShell. For more information, see [Deployment Imaging Servicing Management \(DISM\) Cmdlets in Windows PowerShell](#).

The following commands can be used to mount, unmount, capture, append, and delete and query .wim, .vhdx and .vhd files. These options are not case sensitive.

## /Append-Image

Adds an additional image to a .wim file. **/Append-Image** compares new files to the resources in the existing .wim file specified by the **/ImageFile** argument, and stores only a single copy of each unique file so that each file is only captured once. The .wim file can have only one assigned compression type. Therefore, you can only append files with the same compression type.

This command-line option does not apply to virtual hard disk (VHD) files.

### IMPORTANT

Ensure that you have enough disk space for the **/Append-Image** option to run. If you run out of disk space while the image is being appended, you might corrupt the .wim file.

Syntax:

```
DISM.exe /Append-Image /ImageFile:<path_to_image_file> /CaptureDir:<source_directory> /Name:<image_name> [/Description:<image_description>] [/ConfigFile:<configuration_file.ini>] [/Bootable] [/WIMBoot] [/CheckIntegrity] [/Verify] [/NoRpFix]
```

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
/WIMBoot	Use /WIMBoot to append the image with Windows image file boot (WIMBoot) configuration. This only applies to Windows 8.1 images that have been captured or exported as a WIMBoot file. This feature isn't supported in Windows 10.

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
/ConfigFile	specifies the location of a configuration file that lists exclusions for image capture and compress commands. For more information, see <a href="#">DISM Configuration List and WimScript.ini Files</a> .
/Bootable	Marks a volume image as being a bootable image. This argument is available only for Windows Preinstallation Environment (WinPE) images. Only one volume image can be marked as bootable in a .wim file.
/CheckIntegrity	Detects and tracks .wim file corruption when used with capture, unmount, export, and commit operations. /CheckIntegrity stops the operation if DISM detects that the .wim file is corrupted when used with apply and mount operations.
/Verify	Checks for errors and file duplication.
/NoRpFix	Disables the reparse point tag fix. A reparse point is a file that contains a link to another file on the file system. If /NoRpFix is not specified, reparse points that resolve to paths outside of the value specified by /ImageFile will not be captured.

Example:

```
Dism /Append-Image /ImageFile:install.wim /CaptureDir:D:\ /Name:Drive-D
```

## /Apply-FFU

For FFU, this command applies a Full Flash Utility (FFU) or split FFU (SFU) to a specified physical drive.

Syntax:

```
/Apply-Ffu /ImageFile:<path_to_image_file> /ApplyDrive:<physical_drive_path> [/SFUFile:<pattern>]
```

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
/ImageFile	The path and name of the FFU image file that will be applied
/ApplyDrive	The path to the physical drive that will be imaged
/SFUfile<pattern>	Optional, for split FFUs that are captured with no compression. Use /SFUFile to reference split FFU files (SFUs). <i>Pattern</i> is the naming pattern and location of split files. Use a wildcard character when specifying the naming pattern. For example, "E:\image\install*.sfu" will apply all of the split files in the E:\image directory named install1.sfu, install2.sfu, and so on.

Example:

```
DISM.exe /Apply-Ffu /ImageFile:flash.ffu /ApplyDrive:\\.\PhysicalDrive0
```

## /Apply-Image

For WIM, this command applies a Windows image file (.wim) or a split Windows image (.swm) files to a specified partition. Beginning with Windows 10, version 1607, DISM can apply and capture extended attributes (EA).

For FFU, this command applies a full flash update (.ffu) image to a specified drive. It doesn't support applying an image from a virtual hard disk (.vhdx) file, though you can use this command to apply a full image to a VHD. FFU applies to Windows 10 only.

This option doesn't support applying an image from a virtual hard disk (VHD), though you can use this command to apply images to a .vhdx file that's been attached, partitioned, and formatted.

If Dism /Apply-Image fails with error code 5 and you are using Windows 10 version 1607 with Windows Subsystem for Linux (WSL) feature, see [KB article 319598](#).

Arguments for WIM:

```
DISM.exe /Apply-Image /ImageFile:<path_to_image_file> [/SWMFile:<pattern>] /ApplyDir:<target_directory> {/Index:<image_index> | /Name:<image_name>} [/CheckIntegrity] [/Verify] [/NoRpFix] [/ConfirmTrustedFile] [/WIMBoot (deprecated)] [/Compact] [/EA]
```

Arguments for FFU

```
DISM.exe /Apply-Image /ImageFile:<path_to_image_file> /ApplyDrive:<target_drive> [/SFUFile:<pattern>] /index:1
```

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
/CheckIntegrity	Detects and tracks .wim file corruption when used with capture, unmount, export, and commit operations. /CheckIntegrity stops the operation if DISM detects that the .wim file is corrupted when used with apply and mount operations.
/Verify	Checks for errors and file duplication.
/NoRpFix	Disables the reparse point tag fix. A reparse point is a file that contains a link to another file on the file system. If /NoRpFix is not specified, reparse points that resolve to paths outside the value specified by /ImageFile will not be captured.
/SWMFile	Enables you to reference split .wim files (SWMs). <i>Pattern</i> is the naming pattern and location of split files. Use a wildcard character when specifying the naming pattern. For example, "E:\image\install*.swm" will apply all of the split files in the E:\image directory named install1.swm, install2.swm, and so on.

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
/ConfirmTrustedFile	Validates the image for Trusted Desktop on a Windows 10, Windows 8.1, or Windows 8. This option can only be run on a computer running at least WinPE 4.0. When using /Apply-Image with the /ConfirmTrustedFile option in WinPE, always specify the /ScratchDir option pointed to a physical media location. This ensures that short file names will always be available. See <a href="#">DISM Global Options for Command-Line Syntax</a> for more information about the default behavior of the /ScratchDir option. Beginning with Windows 10, version 1607, you can use /EA to apply extended attributes.
/WIMBoot	Use /WIMBoot to append the image with Windows image file boot (WIMBoot) configuration. This only applies to Windows 8.1 images that have been captured or exported as a WIMBoot file. This feature isn't supported in Windows 10.
/Compact	<p>Applies an image in compact mode, saving drive space. Replaces WIMBoot. For Windows 10 for desktop editions (Home, Pro, Enterprise, and Education) only.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If you're applying an image in compact mode with the /ScratchDir option, make sure your ScratchDir folder is not on a FAT32-formatted partition. Using a FAT32 partition could result in unexpected reboots during OOBE.</p>
/EA	New in Windows 10, version 1607. Applies extended attributes.
/ApplyDrive	Specifies the logical drive, using the DeviceID. to get the device ID from the command line, type "wmic diskdrive list brief". Note: a VHD may appear with the name "PhysicalDrive" in the description, for example, .\PhysicalDrive2.
/SFUFile	Use /SFUFile to reference split FFU files (SFUs). <i>Pattern</i> is the naming pattern and location of split files.

Examples:

```
Dism /apply-image /imagefile:install.wim /index:1 /ApplyDir:D:\
```

```
Dism /apply-image /imagefile:install.swm /swmfile:install.swm /index:1 /applydir:D:\
```

```
DISM.exe /Apply-image /ImageFile:flash.ffu /ApplyDrive:\\.\PhysicalDrive0 /index:1
```

```
DISM.exe /Apply-image /ImageFile:flash.sfu /SFUFile:flash*.sfu /ApplyDrive:\\.\PhysicalDrive0 /index:1
```

## /Capture-CustomImage

Captures the incremental file changes based on the specific install.wim file to a new file, custom.wim for a WIMBoot image. You can't capture an empty directory. The captured files are converted to pointer files. The custom.wim is placed in the same folder next to the install.wim.

### Important

- /Capture-CustomImage only captures the customization files. It can't be used to capture installation files into a new WIM.
- Keep the install.wim and custom.wim files together. Don't switch out either the custom.wim file or the install.wim file.
- You can only capture the custom image once. Don't remove or recapture a custom.wim after capturing the incremental file changes.

Syntax:

```
Dism /Capture-CustomImage /CaptureDir:<source_directory> [/ConfigFile:<configuration_file.ini>]
[/CheckIntegrity] [/Verify] [/ConfirmTrustedFile]
```

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
/CaptureDir	Specifies the directory to which the image was applied and customized.
/ConfigFile	Specifies the location of a configuration file that lists exclusions for image capture and compress commands. For more information, see <a href="#">DISM Configuration List and WimScript.ini Files</a> .
/CheckIntegrity	Detects and tracks .wim file corruption when used with capture, unmount, export, and commit operations. /CheckIntegrity stops the operation if DISM detects that the .wim file is corrupted when used with apply and mount operations.
/Verify	Checks for errors and file duplication.
[/ConfirmTrustedFile	Validates the image for Trusted Desktop on a Windows 10, Windows 8.1, or Windows 8. This option can only be run on a computer running at least WinPE 4.0.

Example:

```
Dism /Capture-CustomImage /CaptureDir:D:\
```

## /Capture-FFU

Captures an image of a physical drive's partitions to a new .ffu file.

You can capture the image as a full flash utility image (.ffu) file or a set of split ffu (.sfu) files;

Syntax:

```
Dism /Capture-Ffu /ImageFile:<path_to_image_file> /CaptureDrive:<physical_drive_path> /Name:<image_name> [/Description:<image_description>] [/PlatformIds:<platform_ids>] [/Compress:{default|none}]
```

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
/CaptureDrive	The physical drive to be captured. You can <a href="#">use diskpart to get drive number information</a> . Uses the format <code>\.\PhysicalDriveX</code> , where X is the disk number that diskpart provides.
/PlatformIds	Not needed for desktop capture. Specifies one or more platform ids (separated with semicolon) to be added to the image. If not specified, platform id will be '*'.
/Compress	Specifies the type of compression used for when capturing. If you'll be splitting the FFU, specify <code>none</code> , as DISM doesn't support splitting compressed FFUs.

Examples:

Capture a desktop FFU:

```
DISM.exe /Capture-Ffu /ImageFile:install.ffa /CaptureDrive:\PhysicalDrive0 /Name:Drive0
```

Capture a desktop FFU that will be split:

```
DISM.exe /Capture-Ffu /ImageFile:install.ffa /CaptureDrive:\PhysicalDrive0 /Name:Drive0 /Compress:none
```

## /Capture-Image

Captures an image of a drive to a new .wim file. Captured directories include all subfolders and data. You cannot capture an empty directory. A directory must contain at least one file.

You can capture the image as a Windows image (.wim) file or a set of split Windows image (.swm) files; this option doesn't support capturing a virtual hard disk (.vhdx) file or a full flash update (.ffu) image. Beginning with Windows 10, version 1607, DISM can apply and capture extended attributes (EA).

Syntax:

```
Dism /Capture-Image /ImageFile:<path_to_image_file> /CaptureDir:<source_directory> /Name:<image_name> [/Description:<image_description>] [/ConfigFile:<configuration_file.ini>] {[/Compress:{max|fast|none}] [/Bootable] | [/WIMBoot]} [/CheckIntegrity] [/Verify] [/NoRpFix] [/EA]
```

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
/ConfigFile	Specifies the location of a configuration file that lists exclusions for image capture and compress commands. For more information, see <a href="#">DISM Configuration List and WimScript.ini Files</a> .

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
/Compress	Specifies the type of compression used for the initial capture operation. The <b>maximum</b> option provides the best compression, but takes more time to capture the image. The <b>fast</b> option provides faster image compression, but the resulting files are larger than those compressed by using the maximum option. This is also the default compression type that is used if you do not specify the argument. The <b>none</b> option does not compress the captured image at all.
/Bootable	Marks a volume image as being a bootable image. This argument is available only for WinPE images. Only one volume image can be marked as bootable in a .wim file.
/CheckIntegrity	Detects and tracks .wim file corruption when used with capture, unmount, export, and commit operations. /CheckIntegrity stops the operation if DISM detects that the .wim file is corrupted when used with apply and mount operations.
/Verify	Checks for errors and file duplication.
/NoRpFix	Disables the reparse point tag fix. A reparse point is a file that contains a link to another file on the file system. If /NoRpFix is not specified, reparse points that resolve to paths outside of the value specified by /ImageFile will not be captured.
/WIMBoot	Use /WIMBoot to append the image with Windows image file boot (WIMBoot) configuration. This only applies to Windows 8.1 images that have been captured or exported as a WIMBoot file. This feature isn't supported in Windows 10.
/EA	New in Windows 10, version 1607. Captures extended attributes. The switch must be explicitly specified to capture extended attributes. DISM will capture extended attribute bits if they are set in the components to be captured in the WIM image. If the bits are not set, DISM won't set them. Only the inbox components of CAB packages and drivers will have these extended attribute bits, not the AppX package components or Win32 application components. Extended attributes with prefix "\$Kernel." in name will be skipped because only user mode extended attributes are captured. If you use DISM in Windows 10, version 1607 to capture extended attributes and use an earlier version of DISM to apply the image, the operation will succeed but the extended attributes will not be set to the applied image.

Examples:

```
Dism /Capture-Image /ImageFile:install.wim /CaptureDir:D:\ /Name:Drive-D
```

```
dism /Capture-Image /CaptureDir:C:\ /ImageFile:"C:\WindowsWithOffice.wim" /Name:"Chinese Traditional"
/ea
```

## /Cleanup-Mountpoints

Deletes all of the resources associated with a mounted image that has been corrupted. This command will not unmount images that are already mounted, nor will it delete images that can be recovered using the **/Remount-Image** command.

Example:

```
Dism /Cleanup-Mountpoints
```

To learn more, see [Repair a Windows Image](#)

## /Commit-Image

Applies the changes that you have made to the mounted image. The image remains mounted until the **/Unmount-Image** option is used.

Syntax:

```
Dism /Commit-Image /MountDir:<path_to_mount_directory> [/CheckIntegrity] [/Append]
```

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
/CheckIntegrity	Detects and tracks .wim file corruption when used with capture, unmount, export, and commit operations. /CheckIntegrity stops the operation if DISM detects that the .wim file is corrupted when used with apply and mount operations.
/Append	Adds the modified image to the existing .wim file instead of overwriting the original image. The /CheckIntegrity and /Append arguments do not apply to virtual hard disk (VHD) files.

Example:

```
Dism /Commit-Image /MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

## /Delete-Image

Deletes the specified volume image from a .wim file that has multiple volume images. This option deletes only the metadata entries and XML entries. It does not delete the stream data and does not optimize the .wim file.

This command-line option does not apply to virtual hard disk (VHD) files.

Syntax:

```
Dism /Delete-Image /ImageFile:<path_to_image_file> {/Index:<image_index> | /Name:<image_name>} [/CheckIntegrity]
```

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
/CheckIntegrity	Detects and tracks .wim file corruption when used with capture, unmount, export, and commit operations. /CheckIntegrity stops the operation if DISM detects that the .wim file is corrupted when used with apply and mount operations.

Example:

```
Dism /Delete-Image /ImageFile:install.wim /Index:1
```

## /Export-Image

Exports a copy of the specified image to another file. The source and destination files must use the same compression type. You can also optimize an image by exporting to a new image file. When you modify an image, DISM stores additional resource files that increase the overall size of the image. Exporting the image will remove unnecessary resource files.

This command-line option does not apply to virtual hard disk (VHD) files.

Syntax:

```
Dism /Export-Image /SourceImageFile:<path_to_image_file> {/SourceIndex:<image_index> | /SourceName:<image_name>} /DestinationImageFile:<path_to_image_file> [/DestinationName:<Name>] [/Compress:{fast|max|none|recovery}] [/Bootable] [/WIMBoot] [/CheckIntegrity]
```

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
/SWMFile	Enables you to reference split .wim files. pattern is the naming pattern and location of split files. You can also specify wildcard characters. For example, "E:\image\install*.swm" will export the split files in the E:\image directory named install1.swm, install2.swm, and so on.
/Compress	Specifies the type of compression used for the initial capture operation. The /Compress argument does not apply when you export an image to an existing .wim file, you can only use this argument when you export an image to a new .wim file. The <b>maximum</b> option provides the best compression, but takes more time to capture the image. The <b>fast</b> option provides faster image compression, but the resulting files are larger than those compressed by using the <b>maximum</b> option. This is also the default compression type that is used if you do not specify the argument. Use the <b>recovery</b> option to export push-button reset images. The resulting files are much smaller in size, which in turn, greatly reduce the amount of disk space needed for saving the push-button reset image on a recovery drive. The destination file must be specified with an .esd extension. The <b>none</b> option does not compress the captured image at all.
/Bootable	Marks a volume image as being a bootable image. This argument is available only for WinPE images. Only one volume image can be marked as bootable in a .wim file.

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
/WIMBoot	Use /WIMBoot to append the image with Windows image file boot (WIMBoot) configuration. This only applies to Windows 8.1 images that have been captured or exported as a WIMBoot file. This feature isn't supported in Windows 10.
/CheckIntegrity	Detects and tracks .wim file corruption when used with capture, unmount, export, and commit operations. /CheckIntegrity stops the operation if DISM detects that the .wim file is corrupted when used with apply and mount operations.

Example:

```
Dism /Export-Image /SourceImageFile:install.wim /SourceIndex:1 /DestinationImageFile:install2.wim
```

## /Get-MountedImageInfo

Returns a list of .ffu, .vhd, .vhdx, and .wim images that are currently mounted, as well as information about the mounted image such as whether the image is valid, read/write permissions, mount location, mounted file path, and mounted image index.

Example:

```
Dism /Get-MountedImageInfo
```

## /Get-ImageInfo

Displays information about the images that are contained in a .wim, .ffu, .vhd or .vhdx file. When used with the /Index or /Name argument, information about the specified image is displayed, which includes if an image is a WIMBoot image, if the image is Windows 8.1, see [Take Inventory of an Image or Component Using DISM](#). The /Name argument does not apply to VHD files. You must specify /Index:1 for FFU and VHDX files.

Syntax:

```
Dism /Get-ImageInfo /ImageFile:<path_to_image.wim> [{/Index:<Image_index> | /Name:<Image_name>}]
```

Examples:

```
Dism /Get-ImageInfo /ImageFile:C:\test\offline\install.wim
```

```
Dism /Get-ImageInfo /ImageFile:C:\test\images\myimage.vhd /Index:1
```

## /Get-WIMBootEntry

Use /Get-WIMBootEntry to display WIMBoot configuration entries for the specified disk volume.

For more information about how to display WIMBoot configuration entries, see [Take Inventory of an](#)

Image or Component Using DISM.

This only applies to Windows 8.1; this feature isn't supported in Windows 10.

Syntax:

```
Dism /Get-WIMBootEntry /Path:<volume_path>
```

Example:

```
Dism /Get-WIMBootEntry /Path:C:\
```

## /List-Image

Displays a list of the files and folders in a specified image.

This command-line option does not apply to virtual hard disk (VHD) files.

Syntax:

```
Dism /List-Image /ImageFile:<path_to_image_file> {/Index:<image_index> | /Name:<image_name>}
```

Example:

```
Dism /List-Image /ImageFile:install.wim /Index:1
```

## /Mount-Image

Mounts an image from a .ffu, .wim, .vhdx or .vhd file to the specified directory so that it is available for servicing.

When mounting an image, note the following:

- The mount directory must be created, but empty.
- An index or name value is required for all image types. WIMs can contain more than one image. For FFU and VHD, use `index:1`.

Syntax:

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:<path_to_image_file> {/Index:<image_index> | /Name:<image_name>}
/MountDir:<path_to_mount_directory> [/ReadOnly] [/Optimize] [/CheckIntegrity]
```

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
/ReadOnly	Sets the mounted image with read-only permissions. Optional.
/Optimize	Reduces initial mount time.

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
/CheckIntegrity	Detects and tracks .wim file corruption when used with capture, unmount, export, and commit operations. /CheckIntegrity stops the operation if DISM detects that the .wim file is corrupted when used with apply and mount operations.

Examples:

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\test\images\myimage.wim /index:1 /MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\test\images\myimage.vhd /index:1 /MountDir:C:\test\offline /ReadOnly
```

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\test\images\WinOEM.ffa /MountDir:C:\test\offline /index:1
```

## /Optimize-Image /WIMBoot

Performs specified configurations to an offline image.

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
/WIMBoot	configure an offline image for installing on a Windows image file boot (WIMBoot) system.
/Optimize	Reduces initial mount time. /Optimize-Image /WIMBoot only applies to Windows 8.1 images that have been captured or exported as a WIMBoot file. Only use /Optimize-Image with images that will be used for WIMBoot supported systems. If /Optimize-Image is used with a non-WIMBoot supported system image, Windows may not work as expected, after installation on a non-WIMBoot supported device.

Example:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Optimize-Image /WIMBoot
```

## /Remount-Image

Remounts a mounted image that has become inaccessible and makes it available for servicing.

Syntax:

```
Dism /Remount-Image /MountDir:<path_to_mount_directory>
```

Example:

```
Dism /Remount-Image /MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

## /Split-FFU

For FFU, this command splits an existing full-flash update (.ffu) file into multiple read-only split .sfu files. DISM doesn't support splitting compressed FFUs. If you are splitting FFUs, make sure that your FFU was captured with the `/compress:none` option specified.

This option creates the .sfu files in the specified directory, naming each file the same as the specified /SFUFile, but with an appended number. For example, if you use `c:\flash.sfu`, you'll get a flash.sfu file, a flash2.sfu file, a flash3.sfu file, and so on, defining each portion of the split .sfu file and saving it to the C:\ directory.

Syntax for FFU:

```
Dism /Split-FFu /ImageFile:<path_to_image_file> /SFUFile:<pattern> /FileSize:<MB-Size>
[/CheckIntegrity]
```

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
<code>/FileSize</code>	Specifies the maximum size in megabytes (MB) for each created file. If a single file is larger than the value specified in the <code>/FileSize</code> option, one of the split .swm files that results will be larger than the value specified in the <code>/FileSize</code> option, in order to accommodate the large file.
<code>/CheckIntegrity</code>	Detects and tracks .wim file corruption when used with capture, unmount, export, and commit operations. <code>/CheckIntegrity</code> stops the operation if DISM detects that the .wim file is corrupted when used with apply and mount operations.
<code>/ImageFile</code>	Specifies the path of a .FFU file, example: flash.ffu.
<code>/SFUFile</code>	References split FFU files (SFUs). <i>Pattern</i> is the naming pattern and location of split files.

Example:

```
DISM.exe /Split-FFu /ImageFile:flash.ffu /SFUFile:flash.sfu /FileSize:650
```

## /Split-Image

For WIM, this command splits an existing .wim file into multiple read-only split .swm files.

This option creates the .swm files in the specified directory, naming each file the same as the specified *path\_to\_swm*, but with an appended number. For example, if you set *path\_to\_swm* as `c:\Data.swm`, this option creates a Data.swm file, a Data2.swm file, a Data3.swm file, and so on, defining each portion of the split .wim file and saving it to the C:\ directory.

This command-line option does not apply to virtual hard disk (VHD) files.

Syntax for WIM:

```
Dism /Split-Image /ImageFile:<path_to_image_file> /SWMFile:<path_to_swm> /FileSize:<MB-Size>
[/CheckIntegrity]
```

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
/FileSize	Specifies the maximum size in megabytes (MB) for each created file. If a single file is larger than the value specified in the /FileSize option, one of the split .swm files that results will be larger than the value specified in the /FileSize option, in order to accommodate the large file.
/CheckIntegrity	Detects and tracks .wim file corruption when used with capture, unmount, export, and commit operations. /CheckIntegrity stops the operation if DISM detects that the .wim file is corrupted when used with apply and mount operations.
/ImageFile	Specifies the path of an image file, example: install.wim.

Example:

```
Dism /Split-Image /ImageFile:install.wim /SWMFile:split.swm /FileSize:650
```

## /Unmount-Image

Unmounts the .ffu, .wim, .vhdx or .vhd file and either commits or discards the changes that were made when the image was mounted.

You must use either the /commit or /discard argument when you use the /Unmount-Image option.

Syntax:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:<path_to_mount_directory> {/Commit | /Discard} [/CheckIntegrity] [/Append]
```

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
/CheckIntegrity	Detects and tracks .wim file corruption when used with capture, unmount, export, and commit operations. /CheckIntegrity stops the operation if DISM detects that the .wim file is corrupted when used with apply and mount operations.
/Append	Adds the modified image to the existing .wim file instead of overwriting the original image. The /CheckIntegrity and /Append arguments do not apply to virtual hard disk (VHD, VHDX), or FFU files.

Examples:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\test\offline /commit
```

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\test\offline /discard
```

## /Update-WIMBootEntry

Updates the WIMBoot configuration entry, associated with the specified data source ID, with the renamed image file or moved image file path.

**Note:** /Update-WIMBootEntry requires a restart in order for any updates to take effect.

Syntax:

```
Dism /Update-WIMBootEntry /Path:<Volume_path> /DataSourceID:<Data_source_id> /ImageFile:<Renamed_image_path>
```

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
/Path	Specifies the disk volume of the WIMBoot configuration.
/DataSourceID	Specifies the data source ID as displayed by /Get-WIMBootEntry.

Example:

```
DISM.exe /Update-WIMBootEntry /Path:C:\ /DataSourceID:0 /ImageFile:R:\Install.wim
```

## /Apply-SiloedPackage

Applies one or more siloed provisioning packages (SPPs) to a specified image. This option is only available after running CopyDndl.cmd from the ADK for Windows 10, Version 1607, and running

```
dism.exe /Apply-SiloedPackage
```

 from the target folder created by CopyDndl.cmd.

**Note:** /Apply-SiloedPackage can only be run once against a Windows image, but /PackagePath can be used more than once in the same command to apply multiple SPPs. SPPs will be applied in the specified order, so a dependency should be specified before the SPP that depends on it.

For more information about siloed provisioning packages, and how to use CopyDndl.cmd, see [Siloed provisioning packages](#).

To find out how to work with siloed provisioning packages, see [Lab 10: Add desktop applications and settings with siloed provisioning packages \(SPPs\)](#).

```
/Apply-SiloedPackage /PackagePath:<package_path> /ImagePath:<applied_image_path>
```

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
/PackagePath	Specifies the path of a siloed provisioning package file.
/ImagePath	Specifies the path of the Windows image where you are applying the SPP.

Example:

```
Dism.exe /apply-SiloedPackage /PackagePath:C:\test\Word.spp /PackagePath:C:\test\spp2.spp /ImagePath:C:\
```

## Related topics

## [DISM - Deployment Image Servicing and Management Technical Reference for Windows](#)

[What is DISM?](#)

[DISM Global Options for Command-Line Syntax](#)

[Deploy Windows using Full Flash Update \(FFU\)](#)

[WIM vs. VHD vs. FFU: comparing image file formats](#)

# DISM Global Options for Command-Line Syntax

6/6/2017 • 5 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Global options can be added to most of the servicing and imaging options in the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) tool. These options can be used to access the command-line help, specify the location of files to use, and control logging.

## Basic Syntax for Servicing Commands

After you have mounted or applied a Windows® image so that it is available offline as a flat file structure, you can specify any DISM global options, the servicing option that will update your image, and the location of the offline image. You can use only one servicing option per command line.

If you are servicing a running computer, you can use the **/Online** option instead of specifying the location of the offline Windows image. The commands and options that are available for servicing an image depend on which Windows operating system you are servicing. They also depend on whether the image is offline or a running operating system. All commands work on an offline Windows image. Subsets of the commands are available for servicing a running operating system.

The base syntax for DISM servicing commands is:

```
DISM.exe {/Image:<path_to_image> | /Online} [dism_global_options] {servicing_option}
[<servicing_argument>]
```

For more information about servicing commands, see [Deployment Image Servicing and Management \(DISM\) Command-Line Options](#).

## Basic Syntax for Imaging Commands

Many of the global options are also available for imaging commands. The base syntax for DISM imaging commands is:

```
DISM.exe [dism_global_options] {servicing_option} [<servicing_argument>]
```

For more information about using DISM for image management, such as applying or mounting an image, see [DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#).

## Global Options for Servicing and Imaging Commands

The following DISM global options are available for an offline image.

```
DISM.exe /image:<path_to_offline_image_directory> [/WinDir:<path_to_%WINDIR%>]
[/LogPath:<path_to_log_file.log>] [/LogLevel:<n>] [/SysDriveDir:<path_to_bootMgr_file>] [/Quiet]
[/NoRestart] [/ScratchDir:<path_to_scratch_directory>] [/English] [/Format:<output_format>]
```

The following DISM global options are available for a running operating system.

```
DISM.exe /online [/LogPath:<path_to_log_file>] [/LogLevel:<n>] [/SysDriveDir:<path_to_bootMgr_file>]
[/Quiet] [/NoRestart] [/ScratchDir:<path_to_scratch_directory>] [/English] [/Format:<output_format>]
```

The following table provides a description of how each DISM global option can be used. These options are not case sensitive.

GLOBAL OPTION	DESCRIPTION
<p><b>/Get-Help</b></p> <p><b>/?</b></p>	<p>Displays information about available DISM command-line options and arguments.</p> <p>Use the <b>/?</b> or <b>/Get-Help</b> option without specifying an image file to get help on image management commands such as <b>/Mount-Image</b>.</p> <p>Example:</p> <p><b>Dism /?</b></p> <p>Specify an image file with the <b>/Image:&lt;path_to_an_image&gt;</b> option or use the <b>/Online</b> option to get help on the servicing command in the image, such as <b>/Get-Packages</b>. The options that are available for servicing an image depend on the servicing technology that is available in your image.</p> <p>Example:</p> <p><b>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /?</b></p> <p><b>Dism /online /?</b></p> <p>You can display additional Help by specifying a command-line option.</p> <p>Example:</p> <p><b>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Add-Driver /?</b></p> <p><b>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Add-Package /?</b></p> <p><b>Dism /online /Get-Drivers /?</b></p>
<p><b>/LogPath:&lt;path to log file.log&gt;</b></p>	<p>Specifies the full path and file name to log to. If not set, the default is: %WINDIR%\Logs\DISM\dism.log</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p><b>Important</b></p> <p>In Windows PE, the default directory is the RAMDISK scratch space which can be as low as 32 MB.</p> <p>The log file will automatically be archived. The archived log file will be saved with .bak appended to the file name and a new log file will be generated. Each time the log file is archived the .bak file will be overwritten.</p> </div> <p>When using a network share that is not joined to a domain, use the <b>net use</b> command together with domain credentials to set access permissions before you set the log path for the DISM log.</p> <p>Example:</p> <p><b>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /LogPath:AddPackage.log /Add-Package /PackagePath:C:\packages\package.cab</b></p>

GLOBAL OPTION	DESCRIPTION
<b>/LogLevel:&lt;n&gt;</b>	<p>Specifies the maximum output level shown in the logs. The default log level is 3. The accepted values are as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 = Errors only</li> <li>2 = Errors and warnings</li> <li>3 = Errors, warnings, and informational</li> <li>4 = All of the information listed previously, plus debug output</li> </ul> <p>Example:</p> <pre>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /LogPath:AddPackage.log /LogLevel:1 /Add- Package /PackagePath:C:\packages\package.cab</pre>
<b>/Image:&lt;path_to_offline_image_directory&gt;</b>	<p>This is the full path to the root directory of the offline Windows image that you will service. If the directory named Windows is not a subdirectory of the root directory, <b>/WinDir</b> must be specified.</p> <p>This option cannot be used with <b>/Online</b>.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /LogPath:AddPackage.log /LogLevel:1 /Add- Package /PackagePath:C:\packages\package.cab</pre>
<b>/WinDir:&lt;path_to_%WINDIR%&gt;</b>	<p>Used with the <b>/Image</b> option to specify the path to the Windows directory relative to the image path. This cannot be the full path to the Windows directory; it should be a relative path. If not specified, the default is the Windows directory in the root of the offline image directory.</p> <p>This option cannot be used with the <b>/Online</b> option.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /WinDir:WinNT /Add- Package /PackagePath:C:\packages\package.cab</pre>
<b>/Online</b>	<p>Specifies that the action is to be taken on the operating system that is currently running.</p> <p>This option cannot be used with the <b>/Image</b> or the <b>/WinDir</b> option. When <b>/Online</b> is used the Windows directory for the online image is automatically detected.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>Dism /online /Get-Packages</pre>

GLOBAL OPTION	DESCRIPTION
<b>/SysDriveDir:&lt;path_to_sysdrive_directory&gt;</b>	<p>Use <b>/SysDriveDir</b> to service an installed Windows image from a Windows PE environment.</p> <p>The <b>/SysDriveDir</b> option specifies the path to the location of the BootMgr files. This is necessary only when the BootMgr files are located on a partition other than the one that you are running the command from.</p> <p>For example, at a Windows PE command prompt, type:</p> <pre>Dism /image:C:\Windows /SysDriveDir:C:&lt;/strong&gt;</pre>
<b>/Quiet</b>	<p>Turns off information and progress output to the console. Only error messages will be displayed.</p> <p>To run in quiet mode, this option must be set every time that the command-line utility is run.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>Do not use the <b>/Quiet</b> option with <b>/Get</b> commands. No information will be displayed.</p> </div> <p>Example:</p> <pre>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Add-Package /PackagePath:C:\packages\package.cab /quiet</pre>
<b>/NoRestart</b>	<p>Suppresses reboot. If a reboot is not required, this command does nothing. This option will keep the application from prompting for a restart (or keep it from restarting automatically if the <b>/Quiet</b> option is used).</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>Dism /online /Add-Package /PackagePath:C:\packages\package.cab /NoRestart /quiet</pre>
<b>/ScratchDir:&lt;path_to_scratchdirectory&gt;</b>	<p>Specifies a temporary directory that will be used when extracting files for temporary use during servicing. The directory must exist locally. If not specified, the <code>\Windows%Temp%</code> directory will be used, with a subdirectory name of randomly generated hexadecimal value for each run of DISM. Items in the scratch directory are deleted after each operation.</p> <p>You should not use a network share location as a scratch directory to expand a package (.cab or .msu file) for installation. The directory used for extracting files for temporary usage during servicing should be a local directory.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /ScratchDir:C:\Scratch /Add-Package /PackagePath:C:\packages\package.cab</pre>

GLOBAL OPTION	DESCRIPTION
<b>/English</b>	<p>Displays command-line output in English.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>Some resources cannot be displayed in English.</p> <p>This option is not supported when you use the <b>DISM /?</b> command.</p> </div> <p>Example:</p> <pre>Dism /Get-ImageInfo /ImagePath:C:\test\offline\install.wim /index:1 /English</pre>
<b>/Format:{Table   List}</b>	<p>Specifies the report output format.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-Apps /Format:table</pre>

## Related topics

[Deployment Image Servicing and Management \(DISM\) Command-Line Options](#)

[DISM Application Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

[DISM Windows Edition-Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

[DISM Languages and International Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

[DISM Operating System Package Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

[DISM Driver Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

[DISM Unattended Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

[DISM Windows PE Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

# DISM Operating System Package (.cab or .msu) Servicing Command-Line Options

8/21/2017 • 10 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Use DISM with Windows cabinet (.cab) or Windows Update Stand-alone Installer (.msu) files to install or remove updates, service packs, language packs, and to enable or disable Windows features. Features are optional components for the core operating system.

## Syntax

```
DISM.exe {/Image:<path_to_image_directory> | /Online} [dism_global_options] {servicing_option}
[<servicing_argument>]
```

The following operating system package-servicing options are available for an offline image:

```
DISM.exe /Image:<path_to_image_directory> [/Get-Packages | /Get-PackageInfo | /Add-Package | /Remove-Package] [/Get-Features | /Get-FeatureInfo | /Enable-Feature | /Disable-Feature] [/Cleanup-Image]
```

The following operating system package-servicing options are available for a running operating system:

```
DISM.exe /Online [/Get-Packages | /Get-PackageInfo | /Add-Package | /Remove-Package] [/Get-Features | /Get-FeatureInfo | /Enable-Feature | /Disable-Feature] [/Cleanup-Image]
```

## Operating system package-servicing options

This section describes how you can use each operating system package-servicing option. These options are not case sensitive.

### /Get-Help /?

When used immediately after a package-servicing command-line option, information about the option and the arguments is displayed.

Additional topics might become available when an image is specified.

Syntax:

```
Dism /Get-Help
```

Examples:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Add-Package /?
```

```
Dism /Online /Get-Packages /?
```

### /Get-Packages

Displays basic information about all packages in the image. Use the /Format:Table or /Format>List argument to

display the output as a table or a list.

Syntax:

```
Dism /Get-Packages [/Format:{Table | List}]
```

Examples:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-Packages
```

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-Packages /Format:Table
```

```
Dism /Online /Get-Packages
```

### /Get-PackageInfo

Displays detailed information about a package provided as a .cab file. Only .cab files can be specified. You cannot use this command to obtain package information for .msu files. /PackagePath can point to either a .cab file or a folder.

You can use the /Get-Packages option to find the name of the package in the image, or you can specify the path to the .cab file. The path to the .cab file should point to the original source of the package, not to where the file is installed on the offline image.

Syntax:

```
Dism /Get-PackageInfo {/PackageName:<name_in_image> | /PackagePath:<path_to_cabfile>}
```

Examples:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-PackageInfo /PackagePath:C:\packages\package.cab
```

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-PackageInfo
/PackageName:Microsoft.Windows.Calc.Demo~6595b6144ccf1df~x86~en~1.0.0.0
```

### /Add-Package

Installs a specified .cab or .msu package in the image. An .msu package is supported only when the target image is offline, either mounted or applied.

Multiple packages can be added on one command line. The applicability of each package will be checked. If the package cannot be applied to the specified image, you will receive an error message. Use the /IgnoreCheck argument if you want the command to process without checking the applicability of each package.

Use the /PreventPending option to skip the installation of the package if the package or Windows image has pending online actions. (Introduced in Windows 8/Windows PE 4.0).

/PackagePath can point to:

- A single .cab or .msu file.
- A folder that contains a single expanded .cab file.
- A folder that contains a single .msu file.

- A folder that contains multiple .cab or .msu files.

## Notes

- If /PackagePath points to a folder that contains a .cab or .msu files at its root, any subfolders will also be recursively checked for .cab and .msu files.
- /Add-Package doesn't run a full check for a package's applicability and dependencies. If you're adding a package with dependencies, make sure that all dependencies are installed when you add the package.

Syntax:

```
Dism /Add-Package /PackagePath:<path_to_cabfile> [/IgnoreCheck] [/PreventPending]
```

Examples:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /LogPath:AddPackage.log /Add-Package /PackagePath:C:\packages\package.msu
```

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Add-Package /PackagePath:C:\packages\package1.cab
/PackagePath:C:\packages\package2.cab /IgnoreCheck
```

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Add-Package /PackagePath:C:\test\packages\package.cab /PreventPending
```

## /Remove-Package

Removes a specified .cab file package from the image. Only .cab files can be specified. You cannot use this command to remove .msu files.

### Note

Using this command to remove a package from an offline image will not reduce the image size.

You can use the /PackagePath option to point to the original source of the package, specify the path to the CAB file, or you can specify the package by name as it is listed in the image. Use the /Get-Packages option to find the name of the package in the image.

Syntax:

```
/Remove-Package {/PackageName:<name_in_image> | /PackagePath:<path_to_cabfile>}
```

Examples:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /LogPath:C:\test\RemovePackage.log /Remove-Package
/PackageName:Microsoft.Windows.Calc.Demo~6595b6144ccf1df~x86~en~1.0.0.0
```

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /LogPath:C:\test\RemovePackage.log /Remove-Package
/PackageName:Microsoft.Windows.Calc.Demo~6595b6144ccf1df~x86~en~1.0.0.0 /PackageName:Microsoft-Windows-
MediaPlayer-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~x86~~6.1.6801.0
```

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /LogPath:C:\test\RemovePackage.log /Remove-Package
/PackagePath:C:\packages\package1.cab /PackagePath:C:\packages\package2.cab
```

## /Get-Features

Displays basic information about all features (operating system components that include optional Windows foundation features) in a package. You can use the /Get-Features option to find the name of the package in the image, or you can specify the path to the original source of the package. If you do not specify a package name or path, all features in the image will be listed. /PackagePath can point to either a .cab file or a folder.

Feature names are case sensitive if you are servicing a Windows image other than Windows 8.

Use the /Format:Table or /Format>List argument to display the output as a table or a list.

Syntax:

```
/Get-Features {/PackageName:<name_in_image> | /PackagePath:<path_to_cabfile>} [/Format:{Table | List}]
```

Examples:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-Features
```

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-Features /Format>List
```

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-Features
/PackageName:Microsoft.Windows.Calc.Demo~6595b6144ccf1df~x86~en~1.0.0.0
```

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-Features /PackagePath:C:\packages\package1.cab
```

### **/Get-FeatureInfo**

Displays detailed information about a feature. You must use /FeatureName. Feature names are case sensitive if you are servicing a Windows image other than Windows 10 or Windows 8.x. You can use the /Get-Features option to find the name of the feature in the image.

/PackageName and /PackagePath are optional and can be used to find a specific feature in a package.

Syntax:

```
/Get-FeatureInfo /FeatureName:<name_in_image> [{/PackageName:<name_in_image> | /PackagePath:<path_to_cabfile>}]
```

Examples:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-FeatureInfo /FeatureName:Hearts
```

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-FeatureInfo /FeatureName:Hearts /PackagePath:C:\packages\package.cab
```

### **/Enable-Feature**

Enables or updates the specified feature in the image. You must use the /FeatureName option. Feature names are case sensitive if you are servicing a Windows image other than Windows 8. Use the /Get-Features option to find the name of the feature in the image.

You can specify the /FeatureName option multiple times in one command line for features that share the same parent package.

You do not have to specify the package name using the /PackageName option if the package is a Windows Foundation Package. Otherwise, use /PackageName to specify the parent package of the feature.

You can restore and enable a feature that has previously been removed from the image. Use the /Source argument to specify the location of the files that are required to restore the feature. The source of the files can be the Windows folder in a mounted image, for example c:\test\mount\Windows. You can also use a Windows side-by-side folder as the source of the files, for example z:\sources\SxS.

If you specify multiple /Source arguments, the files are gathered from the first location where they are found and the rest of the locations are ignored. If you do not specify a /Source for a feature that has been removed, the default location in the registry is used or, for online images, Windows Update (WU) is used.

Use /LimitAccess to prevent DISM from contacting WU for online images.

Use /All to enable all parent features of the specified feature.

The /Source, /LimitAccess, and /All arguments can be used with Windows 10, Windows 8.x, and Windows PE images above 4.0.

Syntax:

```
/Enable-Feature /FeatureName:<name_in_image> [/PackageName:<name_in_image>] [/Source: <source>]
[/LimitAccess] [/All]
```

Examples:

```
Dism /Online /Enable-Feature /FeatureName:Hearts /All
```

```
Dism /Online /Enable-Feature /FeatureName:Calc /Source:c:\test\mount\Windows /LimitAccess
```

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Enable-Feature /FeatureName:Calc
/PackageName:Microsoft.Windows.Calc.Demo~6595b6144ccf1df~x86~en~1.0.0.0
```

## **/Disable-Feature**

Disables the specified feature in the image. You must use the /FeatureName option. Feature names are case sensitive if you are servicing a Windows image other than Windows 8. Use the /Get-Features option to find the name of the feature in the image.

You can specify /FeatureName multiple times in one command line for features in the same parent package.

You do not have to specify the package name using the /PackageName option if it the package is a Windows Foundation Package. Otherwise, use /PackageName to specify the parent package of the feature.

Use /Remove to remove a feature without removing the feature's manifest from the image. This option can only be used with Windows 10, Windows 8.x, and Windows PE images above 4.0. The feature will be listed as "Removed" when you use /Get-FeatureInfo to display feature details and can be restored and enabled using /Enable-Feature with the /Source option.

Syntax:

```
/Disable-Feature /FeatureName:<name_in_image> [/PackageName:<name_in_image>] [/Remove]
```

Examples:

```
*Dism /Online /Disable-Feature /FeatureName:Hearts
```

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Disable-Feature /FeatureName:Calc
/PackageName:Microsoft.Windows.Calc.Demo~6595b6144ccf1df~x86~en~1.0.0.0
```

## /Cleanup-Image

Performs cleanup or recovery operations on the image. /AnalyzeComponentStore and /ResetBase can be used with Windows 10, Windows 8.1, and Windows PE images above 5.0. Beginning with Windows 10, version 1607, you can specify /Defer with /ResetBase. But we highly recommend you **only** use /Defer as an option in the factory where DISM /Resetbase requires more than 30 minutes to complete. /StartComponentCleanup can be used with Windows 10, Windows 8.x, and Windows PE images above 4.0. /CheckHealth, /ScanHealth, /RestoreHealth, /Source, and /LimitAccess can be used with Windows 10, Windows 8.x, and Windows PE images above 4.0. /HideSP and /SPSuperseded can't be used when servicing a version of Windows that is earlier than Windows 7 Service Pack 1 (SP1) image.

### Tip

To determine when the /ResetBase option was last run, check the LastResetBase\_UTC registry entry under this registry path:

HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Component Based Servicing

Syntax:

```
/Cleanup-Image {/RevertPendingActions | /SPSuperseded [/HideSP] | /StartComponentCleanup [/ResetBase
[/Defer]] | /AnalyzeComponentStore | /CheckHealth | /ScanHealth | /RestoreHealth [/Source: <filepath>]
[/LimitAccess]}
```

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
/RevertPendingActions	If you experience a boot failure, you can use the /RevertPendingActions option to try to recover the system. The operation reverts all pending actions from the previous servicing operations because these actions might be the cause of the boot failure. The /RevertPendingActions option is not supported on a running operating system or a Windows PE or Windows Recovery Environment (Windows RE) image. Important: You should use the /RevertPendingActions option only in a system-recovery scenario on a Windows image that did not boot.
SPSuperseded	Removes any backup files created during the installation of a service pack. Use /HideSP to prevent the service pack from being listed in the Installed Updates Control Panel. The service pack cannot be uninstalled after the /SPSuperseded operation is completed.
/StartComponentCleanup	Cleans up the superseded components and reduces the size of the component store. Use /ResetBase to reset the base of superseded components, which can further reduce the component store size. Installed Windows updates can't be uninstalled after running /StartComponentCleanup with the /ResetBase option. Use /Defer with /ResetBase to defer long-running cleanup operations to the next automatic maintenance.

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
/AnalyzeComponentStore	Creates a report of the component store. For more information about the report and how to use the information provided in the report, see <a href="#">Determine the Actual Size of the WinSxS Folder</a> .
/CheckHealth	Checks whether the image has been flagged as corrupted by a failed process and whether the corruption can be repaired.
/ScanHealth	Scans the image for component store corruption. This operation will take several minutes.
/RestoreHealth	Scans the image for component store corruption, and then performs repair operations automatically. This operation will take several minutes.
/Source	Used with /RestoreHealth to specify the location of known good versions of files that can be used for the repair, such as a path to the Windows directory of a mounted image.
/LimitAccess	Prevents DISM from contacting Windows Update for repair of online images.

Examples:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Cleanup-Image /RevertPendingActions
```

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Cleanup-Image /SPSuperseded /HideSP
```

```
Dism /Online /Cleanup-Image /ScanHealth
```

```
Dism /Online /Cleanup-Image /RestoreHealth /Source:c:\test\mount\windows /LimitAccess
```

To learn more, see [Repair a Windows Image](#).

## Limitations

- When you are installing a package in an offline image, the package state is “install pending” because of pending online actions. In other words, the package will be installed when the image is booted and the online actions are processed. If subsequent actions are requested, they cannot be processed until the previous pending online action is completed. You can use the /PreventPending option when you add a package with /AddPackage to skip the installation of a package when there are pending online actions.
- Some packages require other packages to be installed first. You should not assume that dependencies will be satisfied. If there are dependency requirements, you should use an answer file to install the necessary packages. By passing an answer file to DISM, multiple packages can be installed in the correct order. This is the preferred method for installing multiple packages. For more information, see [Add or Remove Packages Offline Using DISM](#).
- Packages are installed in the order that they are listed in the command line.
- When using DISM to list the optional components in a Windows PE image, the optional components will always be listed as pending even when the servicing operation was successful. This is by design and requires

no additional action from you.

## Related topics

[What is DISM?](#)

[DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#)

[Deployment Image Servicing and Management \(DISM\) Command-Line Options](#)

# DISM Provisioning Package (.ppkg) Command-Line Options

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Use DISM to work with Provisioning Packages (.ppkg) files. For example, you can add settings and Windows desktop applications to Windows 10, or reduce the size of your Windows installation.

## /Add-ProvisioningPackage

Adds applicable payload of provisioning package to the specified image.

Syntax:

```
DISM.exe /Add-ProvisioningPackage /PackagePath:<package_path> [/CatalogPath:<path>]
```

Example:

```
DISM.exe /Image=C:\ /Add-ProvisioningPackage /PackagePath:C:\oem.ppkg
```

## /Get-ProvisioningPackageInfo

Get the information of provisioning package.

Syntax:

```
DISM.exe /Get-ProvisioningPackageInfo /PackagePath:<package_path>
```

Example:

```
DISM.exe /Image=C:\ /Get-ProvisioningPackageInfo /PackagePath:C:\oem.ppkg
```

## /Apply-CustomDataImage

Dehydrates files contained in the custom data image to save space. For client editions, this package is used by the push-button recovery tools.

Syntax:

```
/Apply-CustomDataImage /CustomDataImage:<path_to_image_file> /ImagePath:<target_drive> /SingleInstance
```

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
/CustomDataImage	Specifies where the provisioning package is stored.

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
/ImagePath	Specifies the drive that contains the Windows image. DISM scans this drive for any non-system files on this drive and incorporates them into the provisioning package.
/SingleInstance	After DISM captures the non-system files to a compressed provisioning package, DISM adds pointers on the drive to the new compressed provisioning package, and removes the original files. As a result, the files are still visible to the system, but take up less space on the drive.

Example:

```
DISM.exe /Apply-CustomDataImage /CustomDataImage:C:\oem.pkg /ImagePath:C:\ /SingleInstance
```

Applies to: Windows 10 for desktop editions (Home, Pro, Enterprise, and Education) only.

# DISM App Package (.appx or .appxbundle) Servicing Command-Line Options

7/11/2017 • 7 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use app package-servicing commands to add, remove, and list provisioned app packages (.appx or .appxbundle) in a Windows image. An .appxbundle, new for Windows 10, is a collection of app and resource packages used together to enrich the app experience, while minimizing the disk footprint on a given PC. For detailed documentation about .appxbundle packages and the Store pipeline, see [App packaging](#). Only a subset of the packages within an .appxbundle might be added to the image when a bundle is provisioned using DISM. For more information, see [Understanding How DISM Adds .appxbundle Resource Packages to an Image](#).

Provisioned app packages are added to a Windows image and are then installed for every new or existing user profile the next time the user logs on. For more information, including requirements for app package provisioning, see [Sideloading Apps with DISM](#).

You can also use PowerShell to add, remove, and list app packages (.appx or .appxbundle) per image or per user in a Windows installation. For more information, see [Deployment Imaging Servicing Management \(DISM\) Cmdlets in Windows PowerShell](#) and [App Installation Cmdlets in Windows PowerShell](#).

The base syntax for servicing a Windows image using DISM is:

**DISM.exe {/Image:<path\_to\_image\_directory> | /Online} [dism\_global\_options] {servicing\_option} [<servicing\_argument>]**

The following app package (.appx or .appxbundle) servicing options are available for an offline image.

**DISM.exe /Image:<path\_to\_image\_directory> [/Get-ProvisionedAppxPackages | /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage | /Remove-ProvisionedAppxPackage | /Set-ProvisionedAppxDataFile]**

The following app package (.appx or .appxbundle) servicing options are available for a running operating system.

**DISM.exe /Online [/Get-ProvisionedAppxPackages | /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage | /Remove-ProvisionedAppxPackage | /Set-ProvisionedAppxDataFile]**

## App package servicing options

This section describes how you can use each app servicing option. These options are not case sensitive.

### **/Get-Help /?**

When used immediately after an app package servicing command-line option, information about the option and the arguments is displayed. Additional topics might become available when an image is specified.

### **Examples:**

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackages /?
Dism /online /Get-ProvisionedAppxPackages /?
```

### **/Get-ProvisionedAppxPackages**

Displays information about app packages (.appx or .appxbundle), in an image, that are set to install for each new user.

### **Example:**

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-ProvisionedAppxPackages
```

## /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage

Adds one or more app packages to the image.

The app will be added to the Windows image and registered for each existing or new user profile the next time the user logs in. If the app is added to an online image, the app will not be registered for the current user until the next time the user logs in.

Syntax:

```
dism.exe /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage {/FolderPath:<App_folder_path> [/SkipLicense\] [/CustomDataPath:<custom_file_path>] | /PackagePath:<main_package_path> [/DependencyPackagePath:<dependency_package_path>] {[/LicenseFile:<license_file_path>] | [/SkipLicense\]} [/CustomDataPath:<custom_file_path>]}
```

Use **/FolderPath** to specify a folder of unpacked app files containing a main package, any dependency packages, and the license file. This is only supported for an unpacked app package.

Use **/PackagePath** to specify an app package (.appx or .appxbundle). You can use **/PackagePath** when provisioning a line-of-business app online.

**Important** Use the **/PackagePath** parameter to provision .appxbundle packages.

**/PackagePath** is not supported from a host PC that is running Windows Preinstallation Environment (WinPE) 4.0, Windows Server 2008 R2, or an earlier version of Windows.

If the package has dependencies that are architecture-specific, you must install all of the applicable architectures for the dependency on the target image. For example, on an x64 target image, include a path to both the x86 and x64 dependency packages or include them both in the folder of unpacked app files.

COMPUTER ARCHITECTURE	DEPENDENCIES TO INSTALL:
x64	x64 and x86
x86	x86
ARM	Windows RT (ARM) only

Use **/CustomDataPath** to specify an optional custom data file for an app. You can specify any file name. The file will be renamed to Custom.dat when it is added to the image.

Use **/LicensePath** with the **/PackagePath** option to specify the location of the .xml file containing your application license.

Only use **/SkipLicense** with apps that do not require a license on a sideloading-enabled computer. Using **/SkipLicense** in other scenarios can compromise an image.

**Examples:**

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /FolderPath:c:\Test\Apps\MyUnpackedApp
/CustomDataPath:c:\Test\Apps\CustomData.xml
Dism /Online /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /PackagePath:C:\Test\Apps\MyPackedApp>MainPackage.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:C:\Test\Apps\MyPackedApp\Framework-x86.appx
/DependencyPackagePath:C:\Test\Apps\MyPackedApp\Framework-x64.appx /LicensePath:C:\Test\Apps\MyLicense.xml
Dism /Online /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage /FolderPath:C:\Test\Apps\MyUnpackedApp /SkipLicense
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage
/PackagePath:C:\Test\Apps\MyPackedApp>MainPackage.appxbundle /SkipLicense
```

## /Remove-ProvisionedAppxPackage

Removes provisioning for app packages (.appx or .appxbundle) from the image. App packages will not be registered to new user accounts that are created.

Syntax:

```
/Remove-ProvisionedAppxPackage /PackageName:<PackageName>
```

### Important

This option will only remove the provisioning for a package if it is registered to any user profile. Use the [Remove-AppxPackage](#) cmdlet in PowerShell to remove the app for each user that it is already registered to in order to fully remove the app from the image.

If the app has not been registered to any user profile, the /Remove-ProvisionedAppxPackage option will remove the package completely.

To remove app packages from a Windows Server 2012 image that has the Desktop Experience installed, you must remove the app packages before you remove the Desktop Experience. The Desktop Experience is a requirement of the **/Remove-ProvisionedAppxPackage** option for Server Core installations of Windows Server 2012.

### Examples:

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Remove-ProvisionedAppxPackage
/PackageName:microsoft.devx.appx.app1_1.0.0.0_neutral_ac4zc6fex2zjp
```

## /Set-ProvisionedAppxDataFile

Adds a custom data file into the specified app package (.appx or .appxbundle).

Syntax:

```
/Set-ProvisionedAppxDataFile [/CustomDataPath<custom_file_path>] /PackageName<PackageName>
```

The specified app (.appx or .appxbundle) package must already be added to the image prior to when you add the custom data file with this option. You can also add a custom data file when you use the **/Add-ProvisionedAppxPackage** option.

Use **/CustomDataPath** to specify an optional custom data file for an app. You can specify any file name. The file will be renamed to Custom.dat when it is added to the image. If a Custom.dat file already exists, it will be overwritten.

Use **/PackageName** to specify an app package (.appx or .appxbundle).

### Example:

```
DISM.exe /Image:C:\test\offline /Set-ProvisionedAppxDataFile /CustomDataPath:c:\Test\Apps\Custom.dat
/PackageName:microsoft.appx.app1_1.0.0.0_neutral_ac4zc6fex2zjp
```

## Understanding How DISM Adds .appxbundle Resource Packages to an Image

When an .appxbundle is added to the image, not all resource packages within the bundle are applicable. For example, if an app is being added to a Windows image with a Spanish (Spain) default language, French (France) resources should not be included. To determine what resources are added to the image, the package applicability is determined using:

- **Language Resource Packs:** If an operating system language is not present, the corresponding app language resource pack is not added. For example, you might have an image that is a Windows 10 with English (US) as the default language, and a Spanish (Spain) language pack included. English (US) and Spanish (Spain) app resource packs will be added to the image. If a French (France) resource pack (or any other language) is available in the app bundle, it will not be added.
- **Scale and DirectX (DXFL) Resource Packs:** Scale and DirectX (DXFL) resource packs depend upon the hardware configuration of the Windows device. Because the type of target hardware can't be known at the time the DISM commands are run, all scale and DXFL resource packages are added to the image at provisioning time. For more information about developing an app with scaling resources, see [Guidelines for scaling to pixel density \(Windows Store apps\)](#).

For an image containing multiple language packs, app resource packages will be added to the image for each language. Once the first user has signed in to the PC with the deployed image and the user has chosen a language during OOBE, the inapplicable resource packages, (language resource packs, scale resource packs and DXFL resource packages) that do not match the user profile settings are removed.

For example, an app might support English (US), French (France), and Spanish (Spain) languages. If the app is added to an image with English (US) and Spanish (Spain) language packs present, only English (US) and Spanish (Spain) resource packs will be added these to the image. Then, if a user signs in for the first time and, during OOBE, selects English (US) as their operating system language, the Spanish (Spain) resource packages will be removed after sign in completes.

### Important

If you add or remove a language pack from an image, you change the applicability context which may result in leaving an incorrect or incomplete set of resource packages in the image. When a language pack is added or removed, you must, once again, add all .appxbundle packages (including any dependency packages and Windows Store license file) to the image. This will ensure that the correct set of resource packages is provisioned.

## Limitations

- You cannot install an app package (.appx) on an operating system that does not support Windows 8 apps. You can't install an app bundle package (.appxbundle) on an operating system that does not support at least Windows 8.1 apps. Apps aren't supported on WinPE 4.0, the Windows Server 2012 Server Core installation option, or on any versions of Windows older than Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012.

To install and run apps on Windows Server 2012, you must install the [Desktop Experience](#).

- The **/FolderPath** option is only supported for app packages based on the .appx format.
- **/PackagePath** must always be used for .appxbundle packages.

## Related topics

[What is DISM?](#)

[DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#)

[Deployment Image Servicing and Management \(DISM\) Command-Line Options](#)

[Sideload Apps with DISM](#)

# DISM Application Servicing (.msp) Command-Line Options

6/6/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Application servicing command-line options can be used on an offline image to check the applicability of Windows Installer application patches (.msp files) and to query your offline image for information about installed Windows Installer applications and application patches (.msp files).

For information about using Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) with app packages, see [DISM App Package \(.appx or .appxbundle\) Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

The base syntax for servicing a Windows image using DISM is:

**DISM.exe /Image:<path\_to\_image\_directory> [**dism\_global\_options**] {**servicing\_option**} [**<servicing\_argument>**]**

The following servicing options are available to list Windows Installer applications and .msp application patches, and to check the applicability of an application patch for an offline Windows image:

**DISM.exe /Image:<path\_to\_directory> [/Check-AppPatch | /Get-AppPatchInfo: | /Get-AppPatches | /Get-AppInfo | /Get-Apps]**

## Application servicing options

This section describes how you can use each application servicing option. These options are not case sensitive.

**/Get-Help /?**

When used immediately after a package servicing command-line option, information about the option and the arguments is displayed. Additional topics might become available when an image is specified.

Example:

**Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Check-AppPatch /?**

**/Check-AppPatch /PatchLocation:< path\_to\_patch.msp >**

Displays information only if the MSP patches apply to the offline image. The path to the MSP patch file must be specified. Multiple patch files can be specified.

Example:

**Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Check-AppPatch /PatchLocation:C:\test\MSIPatches\MsiTestPatch1.msp /PatchLocation:C:\test\MSIPatches\MsiTestPatch2.msp**

**/Get-AppPatchInfo: [/PatchCode:< patch\_code\_GUID >] [/ProductCode:< product\_code\_GUID >]**

Displays detailed information about installed MSP patches filtered by <patch\_code\_GUID> and <product\_code\_GUID>.

If the **/PatchCode** option is specified, detailed information is displayed for all Windows Installer applications that the patch is applied to.

If the **/ProductCode** option is specified, information about all MSP patches in the specified application is displayed.

If the **/PatchCode** and **/ProductCode** options are specified, information is displayed only if that specific patch is

applied to the specified Windows Installer application.

Use the **/Get-AppPatches** option to find the patch code GUID and the product code GUID specific to the patch.

Use the **/Get-Apps** option to list all product code GUIDs for an installed Windows Installer applications.

If **/PatchCode** and **/ProductCode** are not specified, all installed Windows Installer packages and MSP patches are displayed.

Example:

**Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-AppPatchInfo**

**Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-AppPatchInfo: /PatchCode:{B0B9997C-GUID-GUID-GUID-74D866BBDFFF}**

**Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-AppPatchInfo: /ProductCode:{B0F9497C-GUID-GUID-GUID-74D866BBDF59}**

**Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-AppPatchInfo: /PatchCode:{B0B9997C-GUID-GUID-GUID-74D866BBDFFF} /ProductCode:{B0F9497C-GUID-GUID-GUID-74D866BBDF59}**

**/Get-AppPatches: [/ProductCode:< product\_code\_GUID >]**

Displays basic information about all applied MSP patches for all applications installed on the offline image. If a product code GUID is specified, information is displayed about all patches in the specified Windows Installer application.

Examples:

**Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-AppPatches**

**Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-AppPatches /ProductCode:{B0F9497C-GUID-GUID-GUID-74D866BBDF59}**

**/Get-AppInfo: [/ProductCode:< product\_code\_GUID >]**

Displays detailed information about a specific installed Windows Installer application.

Use the **/Get-Apps** option to find the GUID for an installed Windows Installer application. If a product code GUID is not specified, information is displayed for all Windows Installer applications installed in the offline image.

Examples:

**Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-AppInfo**

**Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-AppInfo /ProductCode:{B0F9497C-GUID-GUID-GUID-74D866BBDF59}**

**/Get-Apps**

Displays basic information about all Windows Installer applications in the offline image.

Example:

**Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-Apps**

## Limitations

**/Get-AppPatches** and **/Get-AppPatchInfo** apply only to installed patches (.msp files).

When you determine the applicability of an MSP patch, only the Windows Installer applications for which the patch is applicable will be displayed. One patch can apply to many installed applications and many patches can apply to one application.

## Related topics

[What is DISM?](#)

[DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#)

[Deployment Image Servicing and Management \(DISM\) Command-Line Options](#)

[DISM App Package \(.appx or .appxbundle\) Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

# DISM Default Application Association Servicing Command-Line Options

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use the default application association-servicing commands to import, export, list, and remove the settings that specify which application opens a file based on the file name extension or protocol.

The base syntax for servicing a Windows image using DISM is:

**DISM.exe {/Image:<path\_to\_image\_directory> | /Online} [dism\_global\_options] {servicing\_option} [<servicing\_argument>]**

The following default application servicing options are available for an offline image.

**DISM.exe /image:<path\_to\_image\_directory> [/Get-DefaultAppAssociations | /Import-DefaultAppAssociations | /Remove-DefaultAppAssociations]**

The following default application association servicing options are available for a running operating system.

**DISM.exe /Online [/Export-DefaultAppAssociations | /Get-DefaultAppAssociations | Import-DefaultAppAssociations | Remove-DefaultAppAssociations]**

The following table provides a description of how each default application association servicing option can be used. These options are not case sensitive.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
<b>/Get-Help</b> <b>/?</b>	When used immediately after a default application association servicing command-line option, information about the option and the arguments is displayed. Additional topics might become available when an image is specified. Examples: <b>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Import-DefaultAppAssociations /?</b> <b>Dism /online /Get-DefaultAppAssociations /?</b>
<b>/Export-DefaultAppAssociations:&lt;path_to_export_file&gt;</b>	Exports the default application associations from a running operating system to an .xml file. Example: <b>Dism.exe /Online /Export-DefaultAppAssociations:C:\AppAssoc.xml</b>

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
<b>/Get-DefaultAppAssociations</b>	<p>Displays the list of default application associations that have been set in the specified Windows image. You can use this option to verify that default application associations were successfully imported to the image.</p> <p>Examples:</p> <p><b>Dism.exe /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-DefaultAppAssociations</b></p> <p><b>Dism.exe /Online /Get-DefaultAppAssociations</b></p>
<b>/Import-DefaultAppAssociations:&lt;path_to_xml_file&gt;</b>	<p>Imports a set of default application associations to a specified Windows image from an .xml file. The default application associations will be applied for each user during their first logon.</p> <p>Examples:</p> <p><b>Dism.exe /Image:C:\test\offline /Import-DefaultAppAssociations:C:\AppAssoc.xml</b></p> <p><b>Dism.exe /Online /Import-DefaultAppAssociations:C:\AppAssoc.xml</b></p>
<b>/Remove-DefaultAppAssociations</b>	<p>Removes the default application associations from the specified Windows image.</p> <p>Examples:</p> <p><b>Dism.exe /Image:C:\test\offline /Remove-DefaultAppAssociations</b></p> <p><b>Dism.exe /Online /Remove-DefaultAppAssociations</b></p>

## Related topics

[What is DISM?](#)

[DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#)

[Deployment Image Servicing and Management \(DISM\) Command-Line Options](#)

# DISM Languages and International Servicing Command-Line Options

6/6/2017 • 9 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The international commands can be used to change international settings in Windows and Windows Preinstallation Environment (WinPE) images. You can also query existing settings in an offline or online Windows image.

The base syntax for servicing a Windows image using the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM.exe) tool is:

```
DISM.exe {/Image:<path_to_offline_image_directory> | /Online} [dism_global_options]
{servicing_option} [<servicing_argument>]
```

There are three types of international servicing commands:

- **Get commands.** Retrieves a report of the international settings for an offline image or a running operating system.
- **Set commands.** Sets the different international settings for an offline image.
- **Gen-LangIni commands.** Generates the Lang.ini file that is used during Setup.

The following international servicing options are available for an offline image:

```
DISM.exe /Image:<path_to_offline_image_directory> [/Get-Intl] [/Set-UILang | /Set-UILangFallback |
/Set-SysLocale | /Set-UserLocale | /Set-InputLocale | /Set-AllIntl | /Set-Timezone | /Set-
SKUIntlDefaults | /Set-LayeredDriver] [/Gen-Langini | /Set-SetupUILang | /Distribution]
```

The following international servicing options are available for a running operating system:

**DISM.exe /Online /Get-Intl**

The following table provides a description of how each international servicing option can be used. These options are not case-sensitive.

OPTION/ARGUMENT	DESCRIPTION
Option: <b>/Get-Help /?</b>	When used immediately after an international servicing command-line option, information about the option and the arguments is displayed. Additional topics might become available when an image is specified.  Examples:  <b>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Set-UILang /?</b> <b>Dism /online /Get-intl /?</b>

OPTION/ARGUMENT	DESCRIPTION
<p>Option: <b>/Get-Intl</b></p> <p>Argument: &lt;<i>language_name</i>&gt;</p>	<p>Displays information about international settings and languages.</p> <p>Use the <b>/Online</b> option to display information about international settings and languages in the running operating system.</p> <p>Use the <b>/Image:&lt;path_to_offline_image_directory&gt;</b> option to display information about international settings and languages in the offline image.</p> <p>When used with the <b>/Distribution</b> options, information about international settings and languages in the distribution is displayed. The name of the folder in the distribution share is not validated. It will be reported as ..\Langpacks\&lt;<i>locale_name</i>&gt;\Lp.cab. Where &lt;<i>locale_name</i>&gt; is the name of the folder.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>The user locale is reported only for offline images. The report does not include this setting for running operating systems.</p> </div> <p>Examples:</p> <p><b>Dism /online /Get-Intl</b></p> <p><b>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-Intl</b></p> <p><b>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /distribution:C:\windows_distribution /Get-Intl</b></p>
<p>Option: <b>/Set-UILang:</b></p> <p>Argument: &lt;<i>language_name</i>&gt;</p>	<p>Sets the default system user interface (UI) language. If the language is not installed in the Windows image, the command will fail.</p> <p>&lt;<i>language_name</i>&gt; specifies the name of the language to set as the default; for example, ja-JP.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>If you install a Language Interface Pack (LIP) and specify its language as the default UI language, the LIP language will be set as the system default UI language (or Install language) and the parent language will be set as the default UI language.</p> </div> <p>Example:</p> <p><b>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Set-UILang:fr-FR</b></p>

OPTION/ARGUMENT	DESCRIPTION
<p>Option: <b>/Set-UILangFallback:</b>            Argument: &lt;<i>language_name</i>&gt;</p>	<p>Sets the fallback default language for the system UI in the offline Windows image. This setting is used only when the language specified by the <b>/Set-UILang</b> option is a partially localized language.</p> <p>&lt;<i>language_name</i>&gt; specifies the name of the language to set as the default fallback; for example, en-US.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Set-UILangFallBack:fr-FR</pre>
<p>Option: <b>/Set-SysLocale:</b>            Argument: &lt;<i>locale_name</i>&gt;</p>	<p>Sets the language for non-Unicode programs (also called system locale) and font settings in the offline Windows image.</p> <p>&lt;<i>locale_name</i>&gt; specifies the name of the language and locale to set as the default language for non-Unicode; for example, en-US.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><b>Important</b></p> <p>You cannot set Unicode-only languages as the system locale. If you try, the <b>/Set-SysLocale</b> option will fail and the language for non-Unicode programs will not be changed.</p> </div> <p>Example:</p> <pre>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Set-SysLocale:fr-FR</pre>
<p>Option: <b>/Set-UserLocale:</b>            Argument: &lt;<i>locale_name</i>&gt;</p>	<p>Sets the "standards and formats" language (also called user locale) in the offline Windows image. The "standards and formats" language is a per-user setting that determines default sort order and the default settings for formatting dates, times, currency, and numbers.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Set-UserLocale:fr-FR</pre>

OPTION/ARGUMENT	DESCRIPTION
<p>Option: <b>/Set-InputLocale:</b>            Argument: &lt;input_locale&gt;:&lt;keyboard_layout&gt;</p>	<p>Sets the input locales and keyboard layouts to use in the offline Windows image.</p> <p>The value of the &lt;input_locale&gt;:&lt;keyboard_layout&gt; pair can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• &lt;language_id:keyboard_layout&gt;            For example, 0409:00000409</li> <li>• &lt;locale_name&gt;            For example, if you specify en-US as the local name, The <b>Set-InputLocale:</b> option also sets the default keyboard layout defined for this locale.</li> </ul> <p>You can specify more than one value by using semicolons as separators. This is useful when you want to include support for multiple keyboards on a single computer. The first value will be set as the default keyboard.</p> <p>The valid keyboard layouts that can be configured on your computer are listed in the following registry key.</p> <p><b>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE</b>  <b>\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Control\Keyboard Layouts</b></p> <p>For a list of the values, see <a href="#">Default Input Locales</a> and <a href="#">Default Keyboard Settings</a>.</p> <p>Use the hexadecimal value of the language ID and keyboard layout that you intend to configure.</p> <p>This parameter is optional.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Set-InputLocale:fr-fr</pre> <pre>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Set-InputLocale:0410:00010410</pre>

OPTION/ARGUMENT	DESCRIPTION
<p>Option: <b>/Set-AllIntl:</b>            Argument: &lt;<i>language_name</i>&gt;</p>	<p>Sets the default system UI language, the language for non-Unicode programs, the "standards and formats" language, and the input locales and keyboard layouts to the specified language in the offline Windows image. This option specifies the language value for the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• UI language</li> <li>• System locale</li> <li>• User locale</li> <li>• Input locale</li> </ul> <p>If used with any of the options that specify the individual language or locales, then the individual settings take precedence.</p> <p>&lt;<i>language_name</i>&gt; specifies the language name and locale code; for example, en-US, es-ES, or fr-FR.</p> <p>Example:</p> <p><b>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Set-AllIntl:fr-FR</b></p>
<p>Option: <b>/Set-TimeZone:</b>            Argument: &lt;<i>timezone_name</i>&gt;</p>	<p>Sets the default time zone in a Windows image. Before setting the time zone, DISM verifies that the specified time zone string is valid for the image.</p> <p>&lt;<i>timezone_name</i>&gt; specifies the name of the time zone to use; for example, Pacific Standard Time. For a complete list of time-zone strings, see the Windows® Unattended Setup Reference. On a computer that is running Windows 7, you can use the tzutil command-line tool to list the time zone for that computer. The tzutil tool is installed by default on Windows 7.</p> <p>The name of the time zone must exactly match the name of the time zone settings in the registry in <b>HKLM\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows NT\CurrentVersion\TimeZones&lt;/strong&gt;</b>.</p> <p><b>If you add a custom time zone to your computer, you can specify that custom time-zone string.</b></p> <p>Example:</p> <p><b>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Set-TimeZone:"W. Europe Standard Time"</b></p>

OPTION/ARGUMENT	DESCRIPTION
<p>Option: <b>/Set-SKUIntlDefaults:</b>            Argument: &lt;<i>language_name</i>&gt;</p>	<p>Sets the default system UI language, the language for non-Unicode programs, the "standards and formats" language, and the input locales, keyboard layouts, and time zone values in an offline Windows image to the default value specified by &lt;<i>language_name</i>&gt;. The <b>/Set-SKUIntlDefaults</b> option does not change the keyboard driver for Japanese and Korean keyboards. You must use the <b>/Set-LayeredDriver</b> option to change this.</p> <p>Use <b>/ Set-SKUIntlDefaults</b> to change all the international settings in an offline Windows image to match the default values that are set during retail installations. For more information about the default values of each language pack, see <a href="#">Default Input Locales for Windows Language Packs</a>.</p> <p>This parameter is optional. If combined with one of the settings earlier in this section, the individual setting takes priority.</p> <p>If the language passed matches a Unicode-only locale setting, the system locale will not be changed but the command will not fail.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Set-SKUIntlDefaults:fr-FR</pre>
<p>Option: <b>/Set-LayeredDriver:</b>            Arguments: &lt;1-6&gt;</p>	<p>Specifies a keyboard driver to use for Japanese or Korean keyboards.</p> <p>In Japan, many retail users have 106-key keyboards, whereas others have 101- or 102-key keyboards. In Korea, there are several different types of keyboards, some with different numbers of keys.</p> <p>The possible values for these settings are [1-6]:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Specifies the PC/AT Enhanced Keyboard (101/102-Key).</li> <li>2. Specifies the Korean PC/AT 101-Key Compatible Keyboard/MS Natural Keyboard (Type 1).</li> <li>3. Specifies the Korean PC/AT 101-Key Compatible Keyboard/MS Natural Keyboard (Type 2).</li> <li>4. Specifies the Korean PC/AT 101-Key Compatible Keyboard/MS Natural Keyboard (Type 3).</li> <li>5. Specifies the Korean Keyboard (103/106 Key).</li> <li>6. Specifies the Japanese Keyboard (106/109 Key).</li> </ol> <p>Example:</p> <pre>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Set-LayeredDriver:1</pre>

OPTION/ARGUMENT	DESCRIPTION
<p>Option: <b>/Gen-LangINI:</b></p> <p>Argument: &lt;language_name&gt;</p>	<p>Generates a new Lang.ini file, which is used by Setup to define the language packs inside the image and outside in the distribution. It also defines the default UI language for Setup.</p> <p>The new Lang.ini file will be added to the Sources folder of the Windows distribution.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>You will not be prompted for permission to overwrite an existing Lang.ini file. The existing Lang.ini file will be overwritten automatically.</p> </div> <p>You must specify an offline Windows image (<b>/Image:&lt;path_to_offline_image.wim&gt;</b>) and a distribution (<b>/Distribution:&lt;path_to_distribution_directory&gt;</b>).</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Gen-LangINI /distribution:C:\windows_distribution</pre>
<p>Option: <b>/Set-SetupUILang:</b></p> <p>Argument: &lt;language_name&gt;</p>	<p>Defines the default language that will be used by Setup. If this language cannot be used, Setup automatically uses English.</p> <p>This is an optional command. If not used, the default UI language in the image will be used. If the language is not present, the first language in the list of present languages will be used.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Set-SetupUILang:fr-FR /distribution:C:\windows_distribution</pre>
<p>Option: <b>/Distribution:</b></p> <p>Argument: &lt;path_to-distribution_directory&gt;</p>	<p>Specifies the path to the Windows distribution. The Windows distribution is a copy of the content that releases on the Windows product DVD. This option is only for use with the <b>/Get-Intl</b> and <b>/Gen-LangINI</b> option if there are external language packs.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Gen-LangINI /distribution:C:\windows_distribution</pre>

## Limitations

- The DISM International servicing commands cannot be used on a Windows Vista or a Windows Server 2008 image. For information about servicing Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008 images, see the Windows Vista SP1 release of the Windows OEM Preinstallation Kit (Windows OPK) or Windows Automated Installation Kit (Windows AIK).
- You cannot use other servicing commands on the same command line with international servicing commands.
- You cannot set a Unicode-only language as the system locale.

The following languages are Unicode-only (Languages are listed in the table in the format: Language - Country/Region):

- Amharic - Ethiopia
  - Kazakh - Kazakhstan
  - Odia - India (Odia Script)
  - Armenian - Armenia
  - Khmer - Cambodia
  - Pashto - Afghanistan
  - Assamese - India
  - Konkani - India
  - Punjabi - India (Gurmukhi Script)
  - Bangla - Bangladesh
  - Lao - Lao PDR
  - Sanskrit - India
  - Bangla - India (Bengali Script)
  - Malayalam - India (Malayalam Script)
  - Sinhala - Sri Lanka
  - Divehi - Maldives
  - Maltese - Malta
  - Syriac - Syria
  - Georgian - Georgia
  - Maori - New Zealand
  - Tamil - India
  - Gujarati - India (Gujarati Script)
  - Marathi - India
  - Telugu - India (Telugu Script)
  - Hindi - India
  - Mongolian (Mongolian) - PRC
  - Tibetan - PRC
  - Inuktitut (Syllabics) - Canada
  - Nepali - Federal Democratic Republic of Nepal
  - Yi - PRC
  - Kannada - India (Kannada Script)
- Do not install a language pack after an update.

If you install an update (hotfix, general distribution release [GDR], or service pack [SP]) that contains language-dependent resources before you install a language pack, the language-specific changes contained in the update are not applied. Always install language packs before installing updates.

- When specifying a time zone by using **/Set-TimeZone:<timezone\_name>** you must use straight quotation marks for multiple words. For example, **/Set-TimeZone:"Pacific Standard Time"**. If you copy and paste the time zone name, including quotation marks, from a Microsoft® Word document, the quotation marks might not be recognized and the command line might fail.
- If you are servicing an international image, and your host environment does not support the language in that image, you might not be able to read an error message that originates from the international image.

## Related topics

[What is DISM?](#)

[DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#)

[Deployment Image Servicing and Management \(DISM\) Command-Line Options](#)

# DISM Capabilities Package Servicing Command-Line Options

8/3/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Windows 10 for desktop editions (Home, Pro, Enterprise, and Education) only. Use Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM.exe) to service Windows capabilities. Capabilities are a Windows package type allows you to request services like .NET or languages without specifying the version. Use DISM to search multiple sources like Windows Update or your corporate servers to find and install the latest version.

To see the available capabilities, go to [Features On Demand V2 \(Capabilities\)](#).

## DISM Command-Line Options

Here's how each DISM option can be used. These options are not case sensitive.

Note, each of these commands requires either the **/Online** or **/Image:<path\_to\_offline\_image\_file>** argument.

OPTIONS	DESCRIPTION
<b>/Add-Capability</b>  <b>/Name:&lt;capability_name&gt; [/Source:&lt;source&gt;]</b> <b>[/LimitAccess]</b>	<p>Adds a capability to an image.</p> <p>Example:</p> <p><b>Dism /Online /Add-Capability</b> <b>/Name:Language.Basic~en-US~0.0.1.0</b></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"><p><b>Note</b> DISM checks for the source files in the following order:</p><ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. If <b>/Source</b> is specified, DISM looks in the specified locations first.</li><li>2. If <b>/Source</b> is not specified, or if the source files are not found in the specified locations, DISM checks to see if a group policy is set. If it is, DISM checks the locations specified by the group policy.</li><li>3. If the files still aren't found, and if DISM is working against an online image, and if <b>/LimitAccess</b> is not specified, it looks for the files on Windows Update.</li></ol></div> <p><b>/Source:</b> Allows you to choose a location, such as a server, where the capability source files are located. You can use multiple <b>/Source</b> arguments.</p> <p>Example:</p> <p><b>Dism /Online /Add-Capability</b> <b>/Name:Language.Basic~en-US~0.0.1.0</b> <b>/Source:\server\share /Source:\server2\share</b></p> <p><b>/LimitAccess:</b> Tells DISM to not check Windows Update or Windows Server Update Services for the capability source files.</p> <p>Example:</p> <p><b>Dism /Online /Add-Capability</b> <b>/Name:Language.Basic~en-US~0.0.1.0</b> <b>/Source:\server\share /LimitAccess</b></p>

OPTIONS	DESCRIPTION
<b>/Get-Capabilities</b>	<p>Get capabilities in the image.</p> <p>Example:</p> <p><b>DISM /Online /Get-Capabilities</b></p>
<b>//Get-CapabilityInfo/CapabilityName:&lt;capability_name&gt;</b>	<p>Get information about a specific capability.</p> <p>Example:</p> <p><b>DISM /Online /Get-CapabilityInfo /CapabilityName:Language.Basic~en-US~0.0.1.0</b></p>
<b>/Remove-Capability</b> Additional argument required: <b>/CapabilityName:&lt;capability_name_in_image&gt;</b>	<p>Example:</p> <p><b>Dism /Online /Remove-Capability /Name:Language.Basic~en-US~0.0.1.0</b></p> <p>Example:</p> <p><b>Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Remove-Capability /Name:Language.Basic~en-US~0.0.1.0</b></p>

## Related topics

[Features On Demand V2 \(Capabilities\)](#)

[DISM - Deployment Image Servicing and Management Technical Reference for Windows](#)

[What is DISM?](#)

[DISM Global Options for Command-Line Syntax](#)

[DISM Operating System Package Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

[DISM Languages and International Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

# DISM Windows Edition-Servicing Command-Line Options

7/21/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use the Windows edition-servicing commands to change one edition of Windows to a higher edition in the same edition family. The edition packages for each potential target edition are staged in a Windows image. This is referred to as an edition-family image. Because the target editions are staged, you can service a single image, and the updates will be applied appropriately to each edition in the image. This can help reduce the number of images that you have to manage, but it might increase the factory time or end-user time that must be spent in the **specialize** configuration pass.

Offline changes do not require a product key. If you change to a higher edition using offline servicing, you can add the product key using one of the following methods:

- Enter the product key during the out-of-box experience (OOBE).
- Use an unattended answer file to enter the product key during the **specialize** configuration pass.
- Use Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) and the Windows edition-servicing command-line option **/Set-ProductKey** after you set the edition offline.

## Command-line Syntax

The base syntax for servicing a Windows image using DISM is:

```
DISM.exe {/Image:<path_to_image_directory> | /Online} [dism_global_options] {servicing_option} [<servicing_argument>]
```

You can use the following edition-servicing options on an offline image to list editions or to change a Windows image to a higher edition:

```
DISM.exe /Image:<path_to_image_directory> {/Get-CurrentEdition | /Get-TargetEditions | /Optimize-Image | /WIMBoot | /Set-Edition | /Set-ProductKey:<product_key>}
```

The following edition-servicing options are available for a running Windows operating system:

```
DISM.exe /Online {/Get-CurrentEdition | /Get-TargetEditions | /Set-ProductKey:<product_key> | /Set-Edition:<target_edition> {/GetEula:< path> | /AcceptEula | /ProductKey:<product_key>}}
```

The following table provides a description for how each edition-servicing option can be used. These options are not case-sensitive.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
<b>/Get-Help</b> <b>/?</b>	When used immediately after an edition-servicing command-line option, information about the option and the arguments is displayed. Additional Help topics might become available when an image is specified.  Examples:  <b>Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-CurrentEdition /?</b> <b>Dism /Online /Get-CurrentEdition /?</b>

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
<b>/Get-CurrentEdition</b>	<p>Displays the edition of the specified image.</p> <p>Examples:</p> <p><b>Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-CurrentEdition</b></p> <p><b>Dism /Online /Get-CurrentEdition</b></p>
<b>/Get-TargetEditions</b>	<p>Displays a list of Windows editions that an image can be changed to.</p> <p>Examples:</p> <p><b>Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Get-TargetEditions</b></p> <p><b>Dism /Online /Get-TargetEditions</b></p>
<i>/Set-Edition:&lt;target_edition_ID&gt; [&lt;/GetEula:&lt;path   /AcceptEula /ProductKey:&lt;product_key&gt;&gt;]</i>	<p>Use the <b>/Set-Edition</b> option with no arguments to change an offline Windows image to a higher edition.</p> <p>To change an online Windows Server operation system to a higher edition, you must use the <b>/Set-Edition</b> option with the <b>/AcceptEula</b> and <b>/ProductKey</b> arguments.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p><b>Important</b></p> <p>You should not use the <b>/Set-Edition</b> option on an image that has already been changed to a higher edition. It is recommended that you use this option on the lowest edition available in the edition family.</p> </div> <p>Use <b>/GetEula</b> on an online image to copy the end-user license agreement to a specified path.</p> <p>The <b>/AcceptEula</b> argument accepts the end-user license agreement and is required in order to change the Windows edition on an online image.</p> <p>Example:</p> <p><b>Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Set-Edition:&lt;edition name&gt;</b></p> <p>On a running Windows Server operating system only:</p> <p><b>Dism /online /Set-Edition:&lt;edition name&gt; /GetEula:c:\eulapathDism /online /Set-Edition:&lt;edition name&gt;/AcceptEula /ProductKey:12345-67890-12345-67890-12345</b></p> <p>Where <i>&lt;edition name&gt;</i> is the higher edition that you want to change to.</p>

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
<b>/Set-ProductKey:&lt;productKey&gt;</b>	<p>The <b>/Set-ProductKey</b> option can only be used to enter the product key for the current edition in an offline Windows image after you change an offline Windows image to a higher edition using the <b>/Set-Edition</b> option.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Set-ProductKey:12345-67890-12345-67890-12345</pre>

## Limitations

- If you do not enter the product key when you set the edition of your offline image, you must either enter the product key during OOBE, or use an unattended answer file to enter the product key during the **specialize** configuration pass.
- You cannot use edition-servicing commands on a Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE) image.
- To maintain edition-specific customizations, you should apply edition-specific answer files after the edition upgrade.
- If you want to run the **/Set-Edition** option against a 64-bit image with more than 30 language packs, you must run it from a 64-bit computer. Otherwise, you might receive an out-of-memory error. This limitation only exists if you are manipulating a 64-bit image from a 32-bit computer. This limitation does not exist when you run this option on a computer that matches the architecture of the image.
- You cannot set a Windows image to a lower edition. The lowest edition will not appear when you run the **/Get-TargetEditions** option.
- You should not use the **/Set-Edition** option on an image that has already been changed to a higher edition.

## Related topics

[What is DISM?](#)

[DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#)

[Deployment Image Servicing and Management \(DISM\) Command-Line Options](#)

[Change the Windows Image to a Higher Edition Using DISM](#)

# DISM Driver Servicing (.inf) Command-Line Options

7/13/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Use DISM with INF-style drivers to add, remove, or list drivers to an online or offline Windows image (.wim). Microsoft Windows Installer or other driver package types (such as .exe files) are not supported.

You can specify a directory where the driver INF files are located, or you can point to a driver by specifying the name of the INF file.

The base syntax for servicing a Windows image using DISM is:

**DISM.exe {/Image:<path\_to\_image\_directory> | /Online} [dism\_global\_options] {servicing\_option} [<servicing\_argument>]**

The following driver servicing options are available for an offline image.

**DISM.exe /image:<path\_to\_image\_directory> [/Get-Drivers | /Get-DriverInfo | /Add-Driver | /Remove-Driver | /Export-Driver]**

The following driver servicing options are available for a running operating system.

**DISM.exe /Online [/Get-Drivers | /Get-DriverInfo | /Export-Driver]**

The following table provides a description of how each driver servicing option can be used. These options are not case sensitive.

OPTION/ARGUMENT	DESCRIPTION
Option: <b>/Get-Help /?</b>  Arguments: <b>/All</b> <b>/Format:{Table   List}</b>	When used immediately after a driver servicing command-line option, information about the option and the arguments is displayed. Additional topics might become available when an image is specified.  Examples: <b>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Add-Driver /?</b> <b>Dism /online /Get-Drivers /?</b>
Option: <b>/Get-Drivers</b>  Arguments: <b>/All</b> <b>/Format:{Table   List}</b>	Displays basic information about driver packages in the online or offline image.  By default, only third-party drivers will be listed. Use the <b>/all</b> argument to display information about default drivers and third-party drivers. Use the <b>/Format:Table</b> or <b>/Format&gt;List</b> argument to display the output as a table or a list.  If you point to an image, you can determine what drivers are in the image, in addition to the state of the drivers (installed or staged).  Example: <b>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-Drivers</b> <b>Dism /online /Get-Drivers</b>

OPTION/ARGUMENT	DESCRIPTION
<p>Option: <b>/Get-DriverInfo</b></p> <p>Arguments:</p> <p><b>/Driver:&lt;installed_INF_FileName&gt;</b></p> <p><b>/Driver:&lt;path_to_driver.inf&gt;</b></p>	<p>Displays detailed information about a specific driver package.</p> <p>You can point to an INF file installed in the image, or one that is not yet installed. You can specify the name of the uninstalled driver or the third-party driver in the device driver store. Installed third-party drivers in the driver store will be named Oem0.inf, Oem1.inf, and so on. This is referred to as the published name.</p> <p>You can specify multiple drivers on the command line by using the <b>/driver</b> option multiple times.</p> <p>Example:</p> <p>First, use the <b>/Get-Drivers</b> option so that you can identify a driver INF file. Then run the following command:</p> <pre>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-DriverInfo /driver:&lt;path_to_driver.inf&gt;</pre> <pre>Dism /online /Get-DriverInfo /driver:C:\test\drivers\usb\usb.inf</pre>
<p>Option: <b>/Add-Driver</b></p> <p>Arguments:</p> <p><b>/Driver:&lt;folder_containing_INF&gt;</b></p> <p><b>/Driver:&lt;path_to_driver.inf&gt;</b></p> <p><b>/Recurse</b></p> <p><b>/ForceUnsigned</b></p>	<p>Adds third-party driver packages to an offline Windows image.</p> <p>When you use the <b>/Driver</b> option to point to a folder, INF files that are not valid driver packages are ignored. These files are reported on the console when the command runs, and a warning is included in the log file. You will not receive an error message.</p> <p>If you point to a path and use the <b>/Recurse</b> option, all subfolders are queried for drivers to add.</p> <p>For testing purposes you can use <b>/ForceUnsigned</b> to add unsigned drivers and override the requirement that drivers installed on X64-based computers must have a digital signature. For more information about driver signing requirements, see <a href="#">Device Drivers and Deployment Overview</a>.</p> <p>Examples:</p> <pre>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Add-Driver /driver:C:\test\drivers\</pre> <pre>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Add-Driver /driver:C:\test\drivers /recurse</pre> <pre>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Add-Driver /driver:C:\test\drivers\mydriver.inf</pre> <pre>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Add-Driver /driver:C:\test\drivers\mydriver.inf /ForceUnsigned</pre>

OPTION/ARGUMENT	DESCRIPTION
<p>Option: <b>/Remove-Driver</b></p> <p>Arguments:</p> <p><b>/Driver:&lt;published_name&gt;</b></p>	<p>Removes third-party drivers from an offline image.</p> <p>When third-party drivers are added, they are named Oem0.inf, Oem1.inf, and so on. You must specify the &lt;published name&gt; (for example, Oem1.inf) to remove the driver. You cannot remove default drivers.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Warning</b></p> <p>Removing a boot-critical driver package can make the offline Windows image unbootable.</p> </div> <p>You can specify multiple drivers on the command line by using the <b>/Driver</b> option multiple times.</p> <p>Examples:</p> <pre>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Remove-Driver /driver:oem1.inf</pre> <pre>Dism /image: C:\test\offline /Remove-Driver /driver:oem1.inf /driver:oem2.inf</pre>
<p>Option: <b>/Export-Driver</b></p> <p>Arguments:</p> <p><b>/Destination:&lt;path_to_destination_folder&gt;</b></p>	<p>Exports all third-party driver packages from a Windows image to a destination path. The exported drivers can then be injected to an offline image by running the <b>DISM Add-Driver</b> command. This command is new for Windows 8.1 Update.</p> <p>Examples:</p> <pre>DISM /Online /Export-Driver /Destination:C:\destpath</pre> <pre>DISM /Image:C\test\offline /Export-Driver /Destination:C:\destpath</pre>

## Limitations

- The driver servicing command supports only .inf files. Windows Installer or other driver package types (such as .exe files) are not supported.
- Drivers are installed in the order that they are listed in the command line. In the following example, 1.inf, 2.inf, and 3.inf will be installed in the order that they are listed in the command line.

```
Dism /Image:C:\test\offline /Add-Driver /Driver:C:\test\drivers\1.inf /Driver:C:\test\drivers\2.inf
/Driver:C:\test\drivers\3.inf
```

## Related topics

[What is DISM?](#)

[DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#)

[Deployment Image Servicing and Management \(DISM\) Command-Line Options](#)

# DISM Unattended Servicing Command-Line Options

6/6/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

If you are installing multiple packages to a Windows® image, use DISM to apply an unattend.xml answer file to the image. Some packages require other packages to be installed first. If there is a dependency requirement, the best way to ensure the correct order of the installation is by using an answer file. When you use DISM to apply an unattend.xml answer file to an image, the unattended settings in the **offlineServicing** configuration pass are applied to the Windows image.

The base syntax for servicing a Windows image using DISM is:

**DISM.exe {/Image:<path\_to\_image\_directory> | /Online} [dism\_global\_options] {servicing\_option} [<servicing\_argument>]**

The following servicing options are available to apply an unattend.xml answer file to an offline Windows image:

**DISM.exe /Image:<path\_to\_image\_directory> /Apply-Unattend:<path\_to\_unattend.xml>**

The following servicing options are available to apply an unattend.xml answer file to a running operating system:

**DISM.exe /Online /Apply-Unattend:<path\_to\_unattend.xml>**

The following table provides a description of how an unattended servicing option can be used. These options are not case sensitive.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
<b>/Get-Help</b> <b>/?</b>	When used immediately after an unattended servicing command-line option, information about the option and the arguments is displayed. Additional topics might become available when an image is specified.  Examples:  <b>Dism /online /Apply-Unattend /?</b> <b>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Apply-Unattend /?</b>

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
<b>/Apply-Unattend:&lt;path_to_unattend.xml&gt;</b>	<p>Applies an Unattend.xml file to an image.</p> <p>If you are updating device drivers using an unattended answer file, you must apply the answer file to an offline image and specify the settings in the <b>offlineServicing</b> configuration pass.</p> <p>If you are updating packages or other settings using an unattended answer file, you can apply the answer file to an offline or online image. Specify the settings in the <b>offlineServicing</b> configuration pass.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Apply-Unattend:C:\test\answerfiles\myunattend.xml</pre> <pre>Dism /online /Apply-Unattend:C:\test\answerfiles\myunattend.xml</pre>

## Limitations

- You cannot use other servicing commands on the same command line with unattended servicing commands.
- Only a single unattend.xml answer file can be specified on any command line.
- When you add packages to an image using an unattended answer file, the applicability of the package will not be checked. The answer file will be applied, and the operation will complete even if there are packages specified in the answer file which do not apply to the image. If you have to check the applicability of a package when you add it to an image, use the **DISM** command together with the **/Add-Package** option without the **/ignorecheck** option. For more information, see [DISM Operating System Package Servicing Command-Line Options](#).
- If you are updating device drivers using an unattended answer file, you must apply the answer file to an offline image.
- When you use DISM.exe to apply an answer file to a running operating system, the answer file should only contain elements in the **offlineServicing** configuration pass. This is because some settings in the Specialize configuration pass might be applied to the operating system. We recommend that the answer file that you use with DISM only contain settings in the **offlineServicing** configuration pass.
- The recommended way to author answer files is to create them in Windows System Image Manager (Windows SIM). However, if you use a manually authored answer file, you must validate the answer file in Windows SIM to verify that it works. For more information, see [Best Practices for Authoring Answer Files](#).
- When you apply an answer file by using DISM, the answer file is not cached on the target computer.

## Related topics

[What is DISM?](#)

[DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#)

[DISM Languages and International Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

[DISM Operating System Package Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

[DISM Windows Edition-Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

## [DISM Driver Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

# DISM Windows PE Servicing Command-Line Options

6/6/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can mount a Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE) image and add or remove packages, drivers, and language packs using the appropriate driver, package, or international-servicing commands. There are also commands that are specific to a Windows PE image, which can be used to prepare the Windows PE environment, enable profiling, list packages and prepare the Windows PE image for deployment.

## Important

Windows PE profiling functionality is removed beginning with Windows 8.1.

The base syntax for servicing a Windows PE image is:

```
DISM.exe /Image:<path_to_image_directory> [dism_global_options] {servicing_option}
[<servicing_argument>]
```

In addition to the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) options, the following Windows PE servicing options are available for an offline image.

```
DISM.exe /Image: <path_to_image_directory> [/Get-PESettings | /Get-Profilin | /Get-ScratchSpace | /Get-TargetPath | /Set-ScratchSpace:<size_of_ScratchSpace> | /Set-TargetPath :<target_path> | /Enable-Profilin | /Disable-Profilin | /Apply-Profiles:<path_to_myprofile.txt>]
```

## Important

These options cannot be used with an online, running version of Windows PE. You must specify a Windows PE image using the **/Image:<path\_to\_image\_directory>** option.

The following table provides a description for how each Windows PE servicing option can be used on a Windows PE image. These options are not case sensitive.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
<b>/Get-PESettings</b>	Displays a list of Windows PE settings in the Windows PE image. The list includes current profiling state, scratch space settings and target path settings. For example:  <b>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-PESettings</b>
<b>/Get-Profilin</b>	Retrieves the enabled/disabled state of the Windows PE profiling tool. For example:  <b>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-Profilin</b>
<b>/Get-ScratchSpace</b>	Retrieves the configured amount of Windows PE system volume scratch space. This setting represents the amount of writeable space available on the Windows PE system volume when booted in ramdisk mode. For example:  <b>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-ScratchSpace</b>

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
<b>/Get-TargetPath</b>	<p>Retrieves the target path of the Windows PE image. The target path represents a path to the root of the Windows PE image at boot time. For example:</p> <p><b>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-TargetPath</b></p>
<b>/Set-ScratchSpace:&lt;size_of_ScratchSpace&gt;</b>	<p>Sets the available scratch space, in megabytes. Valid values are 32, 64, 128, 256 and 512. For example:</p> <p><b>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /set-ScratchSpace:128</b></p>
<b>/Set-TargetPath :&lt;target_path&gt;</b>	<p>For hard disk boot scenarios, this option sets the location of the Windows PE image on the disk.</p> <p>Note the following limitations when setting the target path:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The path must be at least three characters and no longer than 32 characters</li> <li>• The path must start with a letter (any letter from C to Z)</li> <li>• The drive letter must be followed by :\\</li> <li>• The remainder of the path must not contain any invalid characters, such as Unicode characters</li> <li>• The path must be absolute, no "." or ".." elements</li> <li>• The path must not contain any blank spaces or "\\</li> </ul> <p>For example:</p> <p><b>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Set-TargetPath:X:&lt;/strong&gt;</b></p>
<b>/Enable-Profilin</b>	<p>Enables profiling (file logging) so you can create your own profiles. By default, profiling is disabled. For example:</p> <p><b>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Enable-profilin</b></p>
<b>/Disable-Profilin</b>	<p>Turns off the file logging that is used to create a profile.</p> <p><b>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Disable-Profilin</b></p>
<b>/Apply-Profiles:&lt;path_to_myprofile.txt&gt;</b>	<p>&lt;path_to_myprofile.txt&gt; must be a comma separated list of profile file names.</p> <p>Removes any files from the Windows PE image that are not part of the custom profiles. It also checks the custom profile against the CORE profile to ensure that custom application files and boot-critical files are not deleted. A Windows PE image that has been customized using any profile is not serviceable. However, <b>/Get-Profilin</b>, <b>/Get-TargetPath</b> and <b>/Get-PESettings</b> will work. For example:</p> <p><b>Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Apply-Profiles:C:\test\profiles\myprofile.txt</b></p>

## Limitations

The Windows PE commands can be used to change international settings only in Windows PE 3.0 and Windows PE 4.0 images.

## Related topics

[Windows PE for Windows 10](#)

[Wpeutil Command-Line Options](#)

[What is DISM?](#)

[DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#)

[Deployment Image Servicing and Management \(DISM\) Command-Line Options](#)

# DISM Reference (Deployment Image Servicing and Management)

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) is a command-line tool that is used to service Windows® images offline before deployment. You can use it to install, uninstall, configure, and update Windows features, packages, drivers, and international settings. Subsets of the DISM servicing commands are also available for servicing a running operating system. For more information, see [What is DISM?](#).

## In This Section

<a href="#">Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) Command-Line Options</a>	Lists the command-line options for managing and servicing a Windows image with the Dism.exe tool.
<a href="#">DISM Configuration List and WimScript.ini Files</a>	Describes how to create a configuration list to exclude files and folders from an image capture or compression.
<a href="#">Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) Best Practices</a>	Describes some best practices related to servicing a Windows image. We recommend that you implement these practices wherever possible.
<a href="#">Service a Windows PE Image with DISM</a>	Describes information specific to using DISM to configure a Windows PE image.
<a href="#">DISM Supported Platforms</a>	Describes the different operating systems and architectures supported by DISM.
<a href="#">Configure a Windows Repair Source</a>	Describes how to configure and maintain a Windows image repair source to use within your network. The repair source can be used to restore Windows features or to repair a corrupted Windows image.

## Related topics

[What is DISM?](#)

[DISM How-to Topics \(Deployment Image Servicing and Management\)](#)

# DISM Configuration List and WimScript.ini Files

7/13/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) tool is a command-line tool that you can use to capture and apply Windows images. You can create a configuration list file to determine the following:

- Which files and folders must be excluded from the capture process when you use the **/Capture-Image** option with the DISM tool.
- Which folders, files, and file types must be excluded from the compression process when you use the **/Compress** argument.

The **/ConfigFile** argument enables you to customize specific compression, capture, and boundary alignment actions for each file and folder when you capture an image using DISM.exe. You can create a configuration list (.ini) file by using a text editor, such as Notepad.

## Creating a Configuration List File

The following sections appear in the DISM configuration list file.

SECTION	DESCRIPTION
[ExclusionList]	Enables you to define the files and folders to exclude when you use the <b>/Capture-Image</b> option.
[ExclusionException]	Enables you to override the default exclusion list when you use the <b>/Capture-Image</b> option.
[CompressionExclusionList]	Enables you to define the specific files and folders, and also to specify file types, to exclude when you use the <b>/Compress</b> argument. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"><p><b>Note</b></p><p>You can use file or folder matching to exclude a file from compression. You can provide a full path match, or you can use wildcard characters (.). For example, you can use <b>\WINDOWS\inf\*.pnf</b> to match a specific type of file, or <b>\WINDOWS\inf*</b> to match a whole folder.</p></div>

### Default Exclusion List

By default, the DISM.exe tool will exclude the following files.

```
[ExclusionList]
\$ntfs.log
\hiberfil.sys
\pagefile.sys
\swapfile.sys
"\System Volume Information"
\RECYCLER
\Windows\CSC

[CompressionExclusionList]
*.mp3
*.zip
*.cab
\WINDOWS\inf*.pnf
```

### Exclusion List Guidelines

- You can only use wildcard characters in the last component in a file path that does not begin with a backslash. For example:

```
myfolder*.txt
```

- You can use a preceding backslash to limit file-matching and directory-matching relative to the root directory. For example, you can use this exclusion list:

```
\myfolder
\folder\subfolder
```

This list will exclude the following files and directories when you capture the "C:\" drive:

```
C:\myfolder
C:\folder\subfolder
```

However, DISM will not exclude files or directories that are contained in the following example.

```
C:\main\myfolder
C:\data\folder\subfolder
```

- You can override the default exclusion list by using the [ExclusionException] section. For example:

```
[ExclusionException]
\pagefile.sys
"\System Volume Information"
```

- If an explicit [ExclusionException] section is provided in the WIM configuration file, it will always take precedence over the [Exclusion List] section.
- You cannot override the default compression exclusion list by using the [ExclusionException] section.

## Using the Configuration File

If you create a custom-named configuration file and store it outside the DISM directory, you can use the DISM command to run the file. At a command prompt, open the DISM directory. For example:

```
Dism /Capture-Image /ImageFile:install.wim /CaptureDir:D:\ /Name:Drive-D /ConfigFile:<configuration list>
```

or

```
Dism /Append-Image /ImageFile:install.wim /CaptureDir:D:\ /Name:Drive-D /ConfigFile:<configuration list>
```

where *<configuration list>* provides the complete directory location for the configuration file. For example, `c:\imaging\configuration_list.ini`. You must use either the **/Capture-Image** option to create a new .wim file or the **/Append-Image** option to append an existing .wim file.

## Related topics

[DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#)

# Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) Best Practices

6/6/2017 • 6 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

This section describes some best practices related to servicing a Windows® image. We recommend that you implement these practices wherever possible.

## Elevate Permissions for Command-Line Tools

Many deployment command-line tools, including Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM), require elevated permissions.

Make sure that you have elevated permissions. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.

This must be done even if you are logged on as an administrator.

## Disable Antivirus Tools

Some DISM commands may be blocked by antivirus or antimalware tools. Before servicing an image, disable antivirus or antimalware tools on the technician computer.

## Servicing an Image

The best way to service a Windows image is offline with the DISM tool. DISM can be used to install, uninstall, configure, and update drivers, features, and packages in Windows images and Windows Preinstallation Environment (WinPE) images without booting the image. For more information, see [DISM - Deployment Image Servicing and Management Technical Reference for Windows](#).

You can use the **/Commit-Image** option at any point during servicing to save the changes that you have made so far. You can recover a corrupted image more easily with the **/Cleanup-Image /RestoreHealth** option if you have committed your changes often.

You can mount and modify multiple images on a single computer. However, performance may slow down on some functions, such as **/Unmount-Image**, depending on the memory available on the computer. As a best practice, you should not mount more than 20 images at the same time.

### Note

If you have split a .wim file into smaller files for spanning across multiple media, you cannot mount the image for servicing.

## Changing International Settings

To change the international settings in Windows 10, Windows 8.1, Windows 8, Windows Server 2016 Technical Preview, Windows Server 2012 R2, Windows Server 2012, Windows 7, and Windows Server 2008 R2 images, you must use DISM. For more information, see [DISM Languages and International Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

## Use Log Files

DISM will log verbose information to %WINDIR%\Logs\Dism\Dism.log by default. You can also specify a name and location of your choice for the log file, and set the **/LogLevel** parameters so that only the information you are

interested in is logged. When an error occurs, the console will display the error code, error message, and the location of the log file.

### **Important**

If you specify a log path on a network share from a computer that is not joined to a domain, use net-use with domain credentials to set access permissions before you set the log path for the DISM log.

The log file will automatically be archived. The archived log file will be saved with .bak appended to the file name, and a new log file will be generated. Each time the log file is archived, the .bak file will be overwritten.

The log file gives you the history of the operations that have been performed, which can help you troubleshoot problems.

## Package Locations

Do not put a package that you intend to install directly at the root of a partition on a Windows installation.

## Storing Files on a Network Share

Although DISM supports network paths for images and packages, most operations will perform faster on files that are copied to the local hard-drive.

## Servicing a Windows Image from WinPE

You can service Windows images from WinPE. However, you must consider certain factors while planning your servicing strategy. Review the following requirements for servicing an image from WinPE.

### **Booting WinPE from a Hard Drive**

For better performance, you can allocate additional memory when you boot WinPE from a hard disk drive. You can also create temporary folders to store update files to accommodate large updates.

### **Add Page-File Support to Your WinPE Image**

Make sure you have sufficient memory to load and run your custom WinPE image. In addition to the image size, you should have at least 256 MB of available working memory. If you have limited memory, define a page file (Pagefile.sys) to improve memory management. For more information on implementing a page file, see [Wpeutil Command-Line Options](#).

### **Create a Temporary Directory in Which to Store Update Files**

You should use the **/ScratchDir** option with DISM to create a temporary directory on a different drive when you create or service a Windows image. A temporary directory is used for many DISM operations including capturing an image, installing language packs, installing updates, or installing or removing Windows features in a Windows image. Some files are expanded to this temporary directory before they are applied to a Windows image.

There must be sufficient space in the partition to accommodate large updates. The specific size of the free space that is required depends on the size of the updates that you intend to install. When adding a language pack, the scratch directory must have at least 1 GB of space for temporary files.

If you do not set a temporary directory path using the **/ScratchDir** option, WinPE creates a 32-MB temporary directory by default. You can allocate additional temporary storage to this default location using the DISM **/Set-ScratchSpace** option. Valid sizes include 32, 64, 128, 256, and 512 MB. This feature is available only offline and you cannot adjust this setting while a WinPE session is running. As a best practice, you should use the **/ScratchDir** option to instead specify a directory on another partition that has sufficient space to support any image management and servicing operations you perform.

After installation is complete, the contents of this directory are no longer needed and can be deleted. For more information, see [DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#).

## Booting WinPE from a CD-ROM/DVD

Servicing a Windows image requires additional temporary storage space. For WinPE RAM disks, you might need additional RAM. In addition to the RAM requirements of your WinPE image, additional RAM is required to process updates. The amount of RAM that is required depends on the size of the updates that you intend to apply. Ensure that your computer has sufficient RAM.

## Scan for Corruption and Verify the Integrity of System Files

Before you deliver a computer to an end user, you should verify the integrity of Windows system files. You can use the **/Cleanup-Image** option to identify file corruption and perform repair operations on the image. For more information about the **/Cleanup-Image** option in DISM, see [DISM Operating System Package Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

You can also use System File Checker (Sfc.exe) on an online or offline reference image. System File Checker is released with all versions of Windows. System File Checker requires elevated permissions, and you must be an Administrator to run it. It scans all protected files to verify the file versions. To verify only the integrity of the Windows system files, run the **sfc.exe /verifyonly** option. For complete command-line syntax, at an elevated command prompt, type **sfc.exe /?**.

Running Sfc.exe can take a significant amount of time. The expected result is that there are no system integrity violations. However, if there are problems with Windows system files, you should investigate the issues. We do not recommend that you use the Sfc.exe scan options to automatically fix Windows system files.

## Improving Security for Windows Images

Your Windows images contain custom configuration data, custom applications, and other intellectual property. There are several ways to improve the security of your Windows images, both online and offline.

- **Restrict access to Windows images.** Depending on your environment, you can edit the access control lists (ACLs) or permissions on a file. Only approved accounts can have access to Windows images.
- **Update your Windows images with the latest fixes and software updates.** There are many ways you can service a Windows image. After servicing your Windows image, test the validity and stability of the computer.
- **During Windows installation, configure the computer to automatically download and install Windows updates.** This extends installation time, but ensures that the Windows image that you are installing contains the latest updates. For more information, see the `DynamicUpdate` setting in the Microsoft-Windows-Setup component in the [Unattended Windows Setup Reference](#).

## Related topics

[DISM - Deployment Image Servicing and Management Technical Reference for Windows](#)

[Understanding Servicing Strategies](#)

# Service a Windows PE Image with DISM

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can service a Windows® Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE) image and add or remove packages, drivers, and language packs just as you would any Windows image using the appropriate driver, package, or international-servicing commands in Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM.exe). There are also commands that are specific to a Windows PE image, which you can use to prepare the Windows PE environment, enable profiling, list packages and prepare the Windows PE image for deployment.

For more information about how to customize a Windows PE image, see [WinPE: Mount and Customize](#). For more information about DISM commands that are specific to a Windows PE image, see [DISM Windows PE Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

## Related topics

[WinPE for Windows 10](#)

# DISM Supported Platforms

6/6/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The Windows 10 version of Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) is available in Windows 10 for desktop editions (Home, Pro, Enterprise, and Education), Windows Server 2016, and Windows Preinstallation Environment (WinPE) for Windows 10.

To service Windows 10 images, you'll need the Windows 10 version of DISM, otherwise the image may become corrupted.

To use the Windows 10 version of DISM onto a previous version of Windows, install the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (ADK) [from this website](#), and install the **Deployment Tools**. Then, start the **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** to run DISM commands.

To use the Windows 10 version of DISM with a previous version of Windows PE, see [Install Windows 10 using a previous version of Windows PE](#).

Note, newer DISM features don't always work when servicing images of previous versions of Windows. To learn more, see the [DISM Reference](#).

## Supported Platforms

The host deployment environment is the operating system where DISM runs. The target image is the image that is being serviced.

HOST DEPLOYMENT ENVIRONMENT	TARGET IMAGE: WINDOWS 10 OR WINPE FOR WINDOWS 10	TARGET IMAGE: WINDOWS 8.1, WINDOWS SERVER 2016, WINDOWS SERVER 2012 R2, OR WINPE 5.0 (X86 OR X64)	TARGET IMAGE: WINDOWS 8, WINDOWS SERVER 2012, OR WINPE 4.0 (X86 OR X64)	TARGET IMAGE: WINDOWS 7, WINDOWS SERVER 2008 R2, OR WINPE 3.0 (X86 OR X64)
Windows 10 (x86 or x64)	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported
Windows Server 2016 (x86 or x64)	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported
Windows 8.1 (x86 or x64)	Supported, using the Windows 10 version of DISM	Supported	Supported	Supported
Windows Server 2012 R2 (x86 or x64)	Supported, using the Windows 10 version of DISM	Supported	Supported	Supported

<b>HOST DEPLOYMENT ENVIRONMENT</b>	<b>TARGET IMAGE: WINDOWS 10 OR WINPE FOR WINDOWS 10</b>	<b>TARGET IMAGE: WINDOWS 8.1, WINDOWS SERVER 2016, WINDOWS SERVER 2012 R2, OR WINPE 5.0 (X86 OR X64)</b>	<b>TARGET IMAGE: WINDOWS 8, WINDOWS SERVER 2012, OR WINPE 4.0 (X86 OR X64)</b>	<b>TARGET IMAGE: WINDOWS 7, WINDOWS SERVER 2008 R2, OR WINPE 3.0 (X86 OR X64)</b>
Windows 8(x86 or x64)	Supported, using the Windows 10 version of DISM	Supported, using the Windows 8.1 version of DISM or later	Supported	Supported
Windows Server 2012 (x86 or x64)	Supported, using the Windows 10 version of DISM	Supported, using the Windows 8.1 version of DISM or later	Supported	Supported
Windows 7 (x86 or x64)	Supported, using the Windows 10 version of DISM	Supported, using the Windows 8.1 version of DISM or later	Supported, using the Windows 8 version of DISM or later	Supported
Windows Server 2008 R2 (x86 or x64)	Supported, using the Windows 10 version of DISM	Supported, using the Windows 8.1 version of DISM or later	Supported, using the Windows 8 version of DISM or later	Supported
Windows Server 2008 SP2 (x86 or x64)	Not supported	Supported, using the Windows 8.1 version of DISM or later	Supported, using the Windows 8 version of DISM or later	Supported
WinPE for Windows 10 x86	Supported	Supported	Supported	Supported
WinPE for Windows 10 x64	Supported: X64 target image only	Supported: X64 target image only	Supported: X64 target image only	Supported: X64 target image only
WinPE 5.0 x86	Supported, using the Windows 10 version of DISM	Supported	Supported	Supported
WinPE 5.0 x64	Supported, using the Windows 10 version of DISM: X64 target image only	Supported: X64 target image only	Supported: X64 target image only	Supported: X64 target image only

HOST DEPLOYMENT ENVIRONMENT	TARGET IMAGE: WINDOWS 10 OR WINPE FOR WINDOWS 10	TARGET IMAGE: WINDOWS 8.1, WINDOWS SERVER 2016, WINDOWS SERVER 2012 R2, OR WINPE 5.0 (X86 OR X64)	TARGET IMAGE: WINDOWS 8, WINDOWS SERVER 2012, OR WINPE 4.0 (X86 OR X64)	TARGET IMAGE: WINDOWS 7, WINDOWS SERVER 2008 R2, OR WINPE 3.0 (X86 OR X64)
WinPE 4.0 x86	Supported, using the Windows 10 version of DISM	Supported, using the Windows 8.1 version of DISM or later	Supported	Supported
WinPE 4.0 x64	Supported, using the Windows 10 version of DISM: X64 target image only	Supported, using the Windows 8.1 version of DISM or later: X64 target image only	Supported: X64 target image only	Supported: X64 target image only
WinPE 3.0 x86	Supported, using the Windows 10 version of DISM	Supported, using the Windows 8.1 version of DISM or later	Supported, using the Windows 8 version of DISM or later	Supported
WinPE 3.0 x64	Supported, using the Windows 10 version of DISM: X64 target image only	Supported, using the Windows 8.1 version of DISM or later: X64 target image only	Supported, using the Windows 8 version of DISM or later: X64 target image only	Supported: X64 target image only

Resilient File System (REFS) is not supported.

## Related topics

[Install the Windows 10 Assessment and Deployment Kit \(ADK\)](#)

[DISM Reference \(Deployment Image Servicing and Management\)](#)

[Install Windows 10 using a previous version of Windows PE](#)

# Configure a Windows Repair Source

6/6/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use Group Policy to specify a Windows image repair source to use within your network. The repair source can be used to restore Windows features or to repair a corrupted Windows image.

Features on demand enables you to remove an optional feature from a Windows® image and then restore it later. You can disable optional features and remove files associated with those features from a Windows image using the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) tools. When you use the **/Remove** argument with the DISM **/Disable-Feature** option, the manifest files for the feature or Server role is maintained in the image. However, all other files for the feature are removed. This enables you to store, download, and deploy smaller images without losing features. Once the image has been deployed, users can enable the feature on their computers at any time by using features on demand to retrieve the required files from the repair source. For more information, see [Enable or Disable Windows Features Using DISM](#).

Automatic corruption repair provides files to repair Windows if the operating system has become corrupted. Users can also use a specified repair source on your network or use Windows Update to retrieve the source files that are required to enable a feature or to repair a Windows image. For more information, see [Repair a Windows Image](#).

## Choose a Repair Source

You can use Windows Update to provide the files that are required to restore a Windows feature or repair a corrupted operating system. You can also configure Group Policy to gather the required files from a network location. Multiple source locations can be specified in the Group Policy.

### To use Windows Update to restore optional features and repair Windows images

1. Windows Update will be used by default if it is allowed by the policy settings on the computer.
2. If you want to use Windows Update as a primary or backup source for files that are used to restore optional features or repair Windows images, you should make sure that your firewall is configured to allow access to Windows Update.

### To use a network location to restore optional features and repair Windows images

1. You can use a mounted Windows image from a WIM file as a source to restore optional features and repair a corrupted operating system. For example, c:\test\mount\Windows. For more information about capturing a Windows image as a WIM file, see [Capture Images of Hard Disk Partitions Using DISM](#).
2. You can use a running Windows installation as a source to restore optional features by sharing the c:\Windows folder on your network.
3. You can use a Windows side-by-side folder from a network share or from a removable media, such as the Windows DVD, as the source of the files. For example, z:\sources\SxS.
4. You can use a Windows image (.wim) file on a network share as a source to restore optional features. You must specify the index of the Windows image in the .wim file that you want to use and you must use a **Wim:** prefix in the path to identify this file format. For example, to specify index 3 in a file named contoso.wim, type: Wim:\\network\\images\\contoso.wim:3.

## Set Group Policy

You can use Group Policy to specify when to use Windows Update, or a network location as a repair source for features on demand and automatic corruption repair.

### To configure Group Policy for Feature on Demand

1. Open the group policy editor. For example, on a computer that is running Windows 10, from the **Start** screen, type **Edit Group Policy**, and then select **Edit Group Policy** to open the Group Policy Editor.
2. Click **Computer Configuration**, click **Administrative Templates**, click **System**, and then double-click the **Specify settings for optional component installation and component repair** setting.
3. Select the settings that you want to use for Features on Demand.

## Maintaining a Repair Source

If you do not use Windows Update as the repair source for features on demand and automatic corruption repair, you should consider the following guidelines for maintaining a repair source.

### Servicing updates

You should keep any repair source current with the latest servicing updates. If you are using an image from a WIM file for features on demand, you can use the DISM tool to service the image. For more information, see [Mount and Modify a Windows Image Using DISM](#). If you are using an online Windows installation shared on your local network as a repair image, you should make sure that the computer has access to Windows Update.

### Multilingual images

You must include all of the relevant language packs with your repair source files for the locales that your image supports. If you try to restore a feature without all of the localization components that the Windows installation requires for that feature, the installation will fail.

You can install additional language packs after a feature is restored.

## Related topics

[What is DISM?](#)

[Enable or Disable Windows Features Using DISM](#)

[Repair a Windows Image](#)

[DISM Operating System Package Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

# Sysprep (System Preparation) Overview

6/6/2017 • 5 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

**Sysprep** (System Preparation) prepares a Windows installation (Windows client and Windows Server) for imaging, allowing you to capture a customized installation. **Sysprep** removes PC-specific information from a Windows installation, "generalizing" the installation so it can be installed on different PCs. With **Sysprep** you can configure the PC to boot to audit mode, where you can make additional changes or updates to your image. Or, you can configure Windows to boot to the Out-of-Box Experience (OOBE).

Sysprep is part of the Windows image, and is used during audit mode.

## Feature description

Sysprep provides the following features:

- Removes PC-specific information from the Windows image, including the PC's security identifier (SID). This allows you to capture the image and apply it to other PCs. This is known as generalizing the PC.
- Uninstalls PC-specific drivers from the Windows image.
- Prepares the PC for delivery to a customer by setting the PC to boot to OOBE.
- Allows you to add answer file (unattend) settings to an existing installation.

## Practical applications

Sysprep helps you solve business goals such as:

- Helps you manage multiple PCs by creating a generic image that can be used across multiple hardware designs.
- Deploy PCs by capturing and deploying images with unique security identifiers.
- Fine-tune setup of individual PCs by adding apps, languages, or drivers in audit mode. For more information, see [Audit Mode Overview](#).
- Provide more reliable PCs by testing in audit mode before delivering them to customers.

## New and changed functionality

Beginning with Windows 10, version 1607, Sysprep can be used to prepare an image that has been upgraded. For example:

- You can start with a computer that runs Windows 10, version 1511 or Windows 10, version 1507.
- Upgrade the computer to run Windows 10, version 1607.
- Run Sysprep generalize on the upgraded image, re-capture the updated image, and deploy the image to new devices.

This process allows enterprises to efficiently and continuously roll out up-to-date Windows 10 deployment images.

Beginning with Windows 8.1, the Sysprep user interface is deprecated. The Sysprep UI will continue to be supported in this release however it may be removed in a future release. We recommend that you update your deployment workflow to use Sysprep from the command line. For more information, see [Sysprep Command-line Options](#).

[Line Options.](#)

## Dependencies

- You must run Windows Setup before you use Sysprep.
- You need a tool to capture an image of the installation, such as [DISM - Deployment Image Servicing and Management Technical Reference for Windows](#) or other disk-imaging software.

### Note

When you copy Windows images between PCs, the reference and destination PCs may not have to have compatible hardware abstraction layers (HALs). The /detecthal option in the Boot Configuration Data (BCD) enables a system that has already run Sysprep to install the correct HAL.

## Limitations

Sysprep has the following limitations:

- The security identifier (SID) is only replaced on the operating system volume when you execute Sysprep. If a single PC has multiple operating systems, you must run Sysprep on each image individually.
- In some cases, customized applications that you install before you recapture the Windows image may require a consistent drive letter. Some applications store paths that include the system's drive letter. Uninstallation, servicing, and repair scenarios may not function correctly if the system's drive letter does not match the drive letter that the application specifies.
- The Plug and Play devices on the reference and destination PCs do not have to be from the same manufacturer. These devices include modems, sound cards, network adapters, and video cards. However, the installation must include the drivers for these devices.
- Not all server roles support Sysprep. If you generalize a Windows Server installation that has specific server roles configured, those server roles may not continue to function after the imaging and deployment process. For more information, see [Sysprep Support for Server Roles](#).
- If you run Sysprep on an NTFS file system partition that contains encrypted files or folders, the data in those folders becomes completely unreadable and unrecoverable.
- The Sysprep tool runs only if the PC is a member of a workgroup, not a domain. If the PC is joined to a domain, Sysprep removes the PC from the domain.
- If a PC is joined to a domain, and the Group Policy of that domain assigns a strong account password policy to the PC, all user accounts will require strong passwords. Running Sysprep or OOBE does not remove the strong password policy.

### Warning

If you do not assign a strong password to a user account before you run Sysprep or OOBE, you may not be able to log on to the PC. We recommend that you always use strong passwords for your user accounts.

## Unsupported Scenarios

The following scenarios are not supported:

- Moving or copying a Windows image to a different PC without generalizing the PC is not supported.
- Using a different version of the Sysprep tool to configure an image is not supported. You must use only the version of the Sysprep tool that is installed with the Windows image that you intend to configure. Sysprep is installed with every version of Windows. You must always run Sysprep from the %WINDIR%\system32\sysprep directory.

- If you are using a version of Windows earlier than Windows 10, Version 1607, using the Sysprep tool on upgrade installation types, or to reconfigure an existing installation of Windows that has already been deployed is not supported. In this case, Sysprep must be used only to configure new installations of Windows. You can run Sysprep an unlimited number of times to build and configure your installation of Windows.
- Automating Sysprep by using a Microsoft-Windows-Deployment\RunSynchronous command is not supported. However, you can use the Microsoft-Windows-Deployment\Generalize setting to prepare the PC for imaging after installation.
- Running VM mode outside a virtual machine (VM) is unsupported. You cannot use VM mode to prepare a VHD for deployment to any PC.
- Sysprep cannot be run under the context of a System account. Running Sysprep under the context of System account by using Task Scheduler or PSEExec, for example, is not supported.

## See also

The following table contains links to resources related to this scenario.

CONTENT TYPE	REFERENCES
<b>Product evaluation</b>	<a href="#">Sysprep Process Overview</a>
<b>Operations</b>	<a href="#">Sysprep (Generalize) a Windows installation</a>   <a href="#">Customize the Default User Profile by Using CopyProfile</a>   <a href="#">Use Answer Files with Sysprep</a>
<b>Tools and settings</b>	<a href="#">Sysprep Command-Line Options</a>   <a href="#">Sysprep Support for Server Roles</a>
<b>Related technologies</b>	<a href="#">Windows Setup</a>   <a href="#">Audit Mode Overview</a>   <a href="#">Boot Windows to Audit Mode or OOB</a>

# Sysprep Process Overview

6/6/2017 • 6 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The System Preparation (**Sysprep**) tool is used to change Windows® images from a generalized state to a specialized state, and then back to a generalized state. A generalized image can be deployed on any computer. A specialized image is targeted to a specific computer. You must reseal, or generalize, a Windows image before you capture and deploy the image. For example, when you use the **Sysprep** tool to generalize an image, **Sysprep** removes all system-specific information and resets the computer. The next time that the computer restarts, your customers can add user-specific information through Out-Of-Box Experience (OOBE) and accept the Microsoft Software License Terms.

**Sysprep.exe** is located in the **%WINDIR%\system32\sysprep** directory on all Windows installations.

If you transfer a Windows image to a different computer, you must run the **Sysprep** command together with the **/generalize** option, even if the other computer has the same hardware configuration. The **Sysprep /generalize** command removes unique information from your Windows installation so that you can reuse that image on a different computer. For more information, see [Sysprep \(Generalize\) a Windows installation](#).

## Sysprep Executable

**Sysprep.exe** is the main program that calls other executable files that prepare the Windows installation.

**Sysprep.exe** is located in the **%WINDIR%\system32\sysprep** directory on all Windows installations. If you use the command line instead of the **System Preparation Tool** GUI, you must first close the GUI and then run **Sysprep** from the **%WINDIR%\system32\sysprep** directory. You must also run **Sysprep** on the same version of Windows that you used to install **Sysprep**.

### Important

Beginning with Windows 8.1, the Sysprep user interface is deprecated. The Sysprep UI will continue to be supported in this release however it may be removed in a future release. We recommend that you update your Windows deployment workflow to use the Sysprep command line. For more information about the Sysprep Command line tool, see [Sysprep Command-Line Options](#).

## Sysprep Process Overview

When Sysprep runs, it goes through the following process:

1. **Sysprep verification.** Verifies that Sysprep can run. Only an administrator can run Sysprep. Only one instance of Sysprep can run at a time. Also, Sysprep must run on the version of Windows that you used to install Sysprep.
2. **Logging initialization.** Initializes logging. For more information, see [Sysprep Log Files](#).
3. **Parsing command-line arguments.** Parses command-line arguments. If a user does not provide command-line arguments, a System Preparation Tool window appears and enables users to specify Sysprep actions.
4. **Processing Sysprep actions.** Processes Sysprep actions, calls appropriate .dll files and executable files, and adds actions to the log file.
5. **Verifying Sysprep processing actions.** Verifies that all .dll files have processed all their tasks, and then either shuts down or restarts the system.

# Persisting the Hardware Configuration

If you create an image of this installation for deployment to a different computer, you must run the **Sysprep** command together with the **/generalize** option, even if the other computer has the identical hardware configuration. The **Sysprep /generalize** command removes unique information from a Windows installation so that you can reuse that image on different computers. The next time that you boot the Windows image, the **specialize** configuration pass runs.

If you want to install a Windows image to computers that have the same hardware configuration, you can preserve the device-drivers installation in a Windows image. To do this, in your answer file, specify the **PersistAllDeviceInstalls** setting in the **Microsoft-Windows-PnP\Sysprep** component. The default value is **false**. If you set the setting to **true**, the Plug and Play devices remain on the computer during the **generalize** configuration pass. You do not have to reinstall these devices during the **specialize** configuration pass. For more information, see [Use Answer Files with Sysprep](#) and [Unattended Windows Setup Reference Guide](#).

## Adding Device Drivers

Plug and Play devices include modems, sound cards, network adapters, and video cards. The Plug and Play devices on the reference and destination computers do not have to come from the same manufacturer. However, you must include the drivers for these devices in the installation. For more information, see [Add and Remove Drivers to an Offline Windows Image](#) and [Add Device Drivers to Windows During Windows Setup](#).

## Booting to Audit Mode or OOBE

When Windows boots, the computer can start in one of two modes:

- OOBE

OOBE, also named the out-of-box experience (OOBE), is the first user experience. The OOBE enables end users to customize their Windows installation. End users can create user accounts, read and accept the Microsoft® Software License Terms, and select their language and time zones. By default, all Windows installations boot to OOBE first. The **oobeSystem** configuration pass runs immediately before OOBE starts.

If you do not automatically activate Windows by using a product key, OOBE prompts the user for a product key. If the user skips this step during OOBE, Windows reminds the user to enter a valid product key later. To automatically activate Windows by using a product key, specify a valid product key in the **Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup\ProductKey** unattend setting during the **specialize** configuration pass. For more information, see [Work with Product Keys and Activation](#).

- Audit Mode

Audit mode enables you to add customizations to Windows images. Audit mode does not require that you apply settings in OOBE. By bypassing OOBE, you can access the desktop more quickly and perform your customizations. You can add more device drivers, install applications, and test the validity of the installation.

You can configure Windows to boot directly to audit mode by using the **Microsoft-Windows-Deployment | Reseal | Mode** setting in an answer file. In audit mode, the computer processes settings in an unattended answer file in the **auditSystem** and **auditUser** configuration passes.

If you are running a computer in audit mode to configure the installation to boot to OOBE, either use the **Sysprep** GUI or run the **Sysprep /oobe** command. To prepare a computer for an end user, you must configure the computer to boot to OOBE when an end user starts the computer for the first time. In a default Windows installation, OOBE starts after installation is completed, but you can skip OOBE and boot directly to audit mode to customize images.

For more information, see:

- Audit Mode Overview
- Boot Windows to Audit Mode or OOB
- How Configuration Passes Work
- Enable and Disable the Built-in Administrator Account
- Add a Driver Online in Audit Mode

## Detecting the State of a Windows Image

You can use Sysprep to identify the state of a Windows image. That is, you can determine whether the image will boot to audit mode or OOB, or if the image is still in the process of installation. For more information, see [Windows Setup Installation Process](#).

## Sysprep Log Files

The **Sysprep** tool logs Windows Setup actions in different directories, depending on the configuration pass. Because the **generalize** configuration pass deletes certain Windows Setup log files, the **Sysprep** tool logs generalize actions outside the standard Windows Setup log files. The following table shows the different log file locations that **Sysprep** uses.

ITEM	LOG PATH
Generalize	%WINDIR%\System32\Sysprep\Panther
Specialize	%WINDIR%\Panther</strong>
Unattended Windows Setup actions	%WINDIR%\Panther\Unattendgc

For more information, see [Deployment Troubleshooting and Log Files](#).

## Creating and Using Sysprep Providers

Independent software vendors (ISVs) and independent hardware vendors (IHVs) can create **Sysprep** providers that enable their applications to support imaging and deployment scenarios. If an application does not currently support generalize operations by using the **Sysprep** tool, you can create a provider that removes all software-specific and hardware-specific information from the application.

To create a **Sysprep** provider, you must do the following:

1. Determine which configuration pass (**cleanup**, **generalize**, or **specialize**) your Sysprep provider addresses.
2. Create the appropriate entry point for your **Sysprep** provider, based on your choice of configuration pass.
3. Register the **Sysprep** provider for use by the **Sysprep** tool.
4. Test your **Sysprep** provider to validate that the provider functions correctly. Make sure that you review the log files for warnings and errors.

For more information about **Sysprep** providers, see the [System Preparation \(Sysprep\) Tool Provider Developer's Guide](#).

## Related topics

[Sysprep \(System Preparation\) Overview](#)

[Sysprep Command-Line Options](#)

[Sysprep \(Generalize\) a Windows installation](#)

[Sysprep Support for Server Roles](#)

[Use Answer Files with Sysprep](#)

# Sysprep (Generalize) a Windows installation

9/28/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

To deploy a Windows image to different PCs, you have to first generalize the image to remove computer-specific information such as device drivers and the computer security identifier (SID). You can either use [sysprep](#) or an [unattend](#) answer file to generalize your image and make it ready for deployment.

## Generalizing a Windows installation

When you generalize a Windows image, Windows Setup processes settings in the [generalize](#) configuration pass. Even if you're capturing an image that's going to be deployed to a PC with similar hardware, you still have to generalize the Windows installation to remove unique PC-specific information from a Windows installation, which allows you to safely reuse your image.

When you generalize an image, Windows replaces the computer SID only on the operating system volume where you ran sysprep. If a single computer has multiple operating systems, you must run **Sysprep** on each image individually.

If you're generalizing Windows Server that has Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) clients or remote RADIUS server groups defined in the Network Policy Server (NPS) configuration, you should remove this information before you deploy it to a different computer. For more information, see [Prepare a Network Policy Server \(NPS\) for Imaging](#).

### Prevent sysprep from removing drivers

When you set up a Windows PC, Windows Setup installs drivers for any detected devices. By default, Windows Setup removes these drivers when you generalize the system, and the drivers have to be reinstalled when you deploy the image.

If you're deploying an image to computers that have the same hardware and devices as the original PC, you can keep these drivers on the computer during system generalization by using an unattend file with Microsoft-Windows-PnP\Sysprep | `PersistAllDeviceInstalls` set to **true**. For more information about **Sysprep**-related Windows unattend components, see the [Unattended Windows Setup Reference for Microsoft-Windows-Pnp\Sysprep](#).

### Limits on how many times you can run Sysprep

You can run the **Sysprep** command up to 8 times on a single Windows image. After running Sysprep 8 times, you must recreate your Windows image. In previous versions of Windows, you could use the `SkipRearm` answer file setting to reset the Windows Product Activation clock when running sysprep. If you are using a volume licensing key or a retail product key, you don't have to use `SkipRearm` because Windows is automatically activated.

### Store Apps

Updating your Windows Store apps before generalizing a Windows image will cause Sysprep to fail.

`Sysprep /generalize` requires that all apps are provisioned for all users, however, when you update an app from the Windows Store, that app becomes tied to the user account. The following error appears in the sysprep log files (%WINDIR%\System32\Sysprep\Panther):

```
<package name> was installed for a user, but not provisioned for all users. This package will not function properly in the sysprep image.
```

Instead of using the Windows Store to update your apps, you should sideload updates to your line-of-business apps, or have end-users update their apps by using the Windows Store on their destination PCs. If Windows

Store access in a managed environment is disabled by an IT administrator, end-users will not be able to update the Windows Store apps.

For more information about sideloading line-of-business Windows Store apps, see [Sideload Apps with DISM](#) and [Customize the Start Screen](#).

## Generalize an image

### Generalize from Audit Mode

To generalize an image, you have to first boot into Audit Mode. You can do this by using unattend or from OOBE. You can read about the different ways of booting into audit mode at [Boot Windows to audit mode or OOBE](#).

1. Boot a PC into Audit Mode. When Windows boots into Audit Mode, **System Preparation Tool** will appear on the desktop. Leave the **System Preparation Tool** window open.
  2. Customize Windows by adding drivers, changing settings, and installing programs.
  3. Run sysprep.
    - If the **System Preparation Tool** window is still open, click **Generalize**, click **Shutdown**, and then click **OK** to generalize the image and shut down the PC.
- or-
- Use Sysprep from Command Prompt. Run `%WINDIR%\system32\sysprep\sysprep.exe` to open the **System Preparation Window**. You can also use the `Sysprep` command together with the `/generalize`, `/shutdown`, and `/oobe` options. See [Sysprep command-line options](#) to see available options.

```
%WINDIR%\system32\sysprep\sysprep.exe /generalize /shutdown /oobe
```

#### NOTE

If you are generalizing a VHD that will be deployed as a VHD on the same virtual machine or hypervisor, use the `/mode:vm` option with the Sysprep command-line.

The computer generalizes the image and shuts down.

4. After the computer shuts down, [capture your image with DISM](#).
5. Deploy this image to a reference computer. When the reference computer boots, it displays the Out-Of-Box Experience (OOBE) screen.

### Generalize using unattend

If you use multiple unattend files during your computer deployment, you can add the following settings to your each of your unattend files so Windows Setup will generalize the PC after processing the unattend file.

- To automatically generalize the image and shut down, use the Microsoft-Windows-Deployment | `Generalize` setting. Set `Mode` to **OOBE** or **Audit**, and set `ForceShutdownNow` to **true**.
- or-
- To generalize the system, and have it boot into Audit Mode, use the Microsoft-Windows-Deployment | `Reseal` setting to the `oobeSystem` configuration pass. Set `Mode` to **Audit**.

## Related topics

- [Sysprep Process Overview](#)
- [Sysprep Command-Line Options](#)
- [Sysprep Support for Server Roles](#)
- [Work with Product Keys and Activation](#)

# Customize the Default User Profile by Using CopyProfile

7/13/2017 • 5 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use the `CopyProfile` setting to customize a user profile and then copy that profile to the default user profile. Windows® uses the default user profile as a template to assign a profile to each new user. By customizing the default user profile, you can configure settings for all user accounts that are created on the computer. By using `CopyProfile`, you can customize installed applications, drivers, desktop backgrounds, internet explorer settings, and other configurations. Note that some settings are not preserved by using `CopyProfile`.

Enterprise and IT Professionals can use `CopyProfile` to preserve the customized tile layout of groups on the **Start** screen.

## Creating an answer file with the CopyProfile setting

Use the following procedure to create an answer file to instruct **Sysprep** to copy user profile settings when you generalize the Windows image.

### To create a separate answer file for copying user profile settings

1. On your technician computer, open Windows System Image Manager (Windows SIM). Click **Start**, type **Windows System Image Manager**, and then select **Windows System Image Manager**. For more information about Windows SIM, see [Windows System Image Manager Technical Reference](#).
2. Create a new answer file to use with **Sysprep**:
  - a. Click **File**, and then click **New Answer File**. An empty answer file appears in the **Answer File** pane.
  - b. In the **Windows Image** pane, expand **Components**, right-click **amd64\_Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup**, and then click **Add Setting to Pass 4 specialize**.
  - c. In the **Answer File** pane, select the **Components\4\_specialize\amd64-Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup\_neutral** folder.
  - d. In the **Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup Properties** pane, in the **Settings** section, type the value `CopyProfile = true`.
  - e. Save this new answer file to the root directory of the removable media or network location, and name it **CopyProfile**.

For more information, see [Best Practices for Authoring Answer Files](#) and [Unattended Windows Setup Reference Guide](#).

## Configuring Default User Profile Settings

Use the following procedure to configure user settings in audit mode and then generalize the Windows installation by using an answer file that contains the `CopyProfile` setting. If you install Windows with another answer file, that answer file should not contain the `CopyProfile` setting or any settings that create additional user accounts.

## To configure default user profile settings and generalize the image

1. Install Windows on a reference computer and boot in audit mode. For more information, see [Boot Windows to Audit Mode or OOBE](#).

### Important

Don't use a domain account, because the `CopyProfile` setting runs after the computer is removed from the domain when you run **Sysprep**. As a result, you'll lose any settings that you configured in a domain. If you change the default user profile and then join the computer to a domain, the customizations that you made to the default user profile will appear on new domain accounts.

2. Customize the built-in administrator account by installing applications, desktop shortcuts, and other settings.

### Important

There is a limit to the number of provisioned Windows Runtime-based apps that you can install. However you can create scripts to install additional non-provisioned apps. For more information, see [Sideload Apps with DISM](#).

3. After your customizations are completed, insert the media that contains the CopyProfile answer file in the reference computer. For example, you can copy the answer file to a USB drive.
4. On the reference computer, open an elevated command prompt, and then type this command:

```
C:\Windows\System32\Sysprep\Sysprep /generalize /oobe /shutdown /unattend: F:\CopyProfile.xml
```

where *F* is the letter of the USB flash drive or other removable media. The **Sysprep** tool removes computer-specific information from the image, while preserving the user profile settings that you configured. For more information, see [Sysprep \(Generalize\) a Windows installation](#).

After the image is generalized, the computer shuts down, capture the image by booting to Windows PE and then capture the Windows installation by using DISM. For more information, see [WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#) and [Capture Images of Hard Disk Partitions Using DISM](#). After the image is captured, you can deploy it to a destination computer by using DISM. For more information, see [Apply Images Using DISM](#).

## Test the User Profile Customizations

After the customized image is deployed to a destination computer, you can test the user profile customizations. You can go through Out-Of-Box Experience (OOBE) to test the end user experience, or you can test the user customizations in audit mode.

### Important

Apps based on the Windows Runtime won't start in audit mode because audit mode uses the built-in administrator account. To run Windows Runtime-based apps you must modify a registry key before you can validate your Windows installation in audit mode.

### To test the user profile customizations after OOBE

1. Install Windows to a test computer.
2. After Windows is installed, go through OOBE and specify the computer name, user account name, and other items. After OOBE is complete, the Windows start screen appears.
3. Log onto the computer with the user account specified during OOBE and verify that your apps and customizations appear.

### To test the user profile customizations in audit mode

1. Boot to audit mode by using an answer file or by pressing Ctrl+Shift+F3 when OOBE starts. For more

information, see [Boot Windows to Audit Mode or OOB](#)E.

2. Verify that your customizations work as intended. To test Windows Runtime-based apps, modify the following registry key:
  - a. From an elevated command prompt, run Regedit.exe.
  - b. Browse to the **HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Policies\System\FilterAdministratorToken** registry key.
  - c. Click **FilterAdministrationToken**, and then type **1** as the value data.
  - d. Log off from the computer.
  - e. Log back on to the computer, and start the Windows Runtime-based apps to verify that your customizations work as intended.
  - f. After you complete validation of your Windows Runtime-based apps, reset the **FilterAdministrationToken** registry key to **0**.

## Troubleshooting CopyProfile

If the user profile settings aren't successfully copied:

1. Make sure that you set the **CopyProfile** setting only once during the deployment process.
2. When you customize user settings, only use only the built-in administrator account on the computer to avoid accidentally copying settings from the wrong profile.
3. Confirm that you didn't use a domain account.
4. Verify that there are no additional user accounts other than the built-in administrator account that you configured:
  - a. Click **Start**, and then type **Control Panel**.
  - b. Click **Control Panel**, and then click **Add or remove user accounts**.
  - c. Select any additional user account other than the built-in administrator account that you configured, and then delete it.

### Note

Delete all other user accounts on the computer before you customize the built-in administrator account.

5. Make sure that non-provisioned Windows Runtime-based apps that are stored in the tile layout are installed within two hours of user logon to preserve the tile layout on the **Start** screen, when apps are registered after the new user first logs on.
6. Some settings can be configured only by using the **CopyProfile** unattend setting, and other settings can be configured by using Group Policy.
  - Use Group Policy to configure settings that are reset by the new user logon process. You can also create scripts to define these user settings.  
-or-  
• Use the **CopyProfile** unattend setting instead. For more information, see [Unattended Windows Setup Reference](#).

## Related topics

[Sysprep \(System Preparation\) Overview](#)

[Sysprep Process Overview](#)

[Sysprep Command-Line Options](#)

# Use Answer Files with Sysprep

7/7/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use an answer file together with the System Preparation (**Sysprep**) tool to configure unattended Windows Setup settings. This topic describes some considerations and processes for using answer files together with **Sysprep**. For more information about Windows components and settings that you can add to an answer file, see the [Unattended Windows Setup Reference](#).

## Running Sysprep an Unlimited Number of Times

If you specify a product key, Windows is automatically activated, and you can run the **Sysprep** command an unlimited number of times. To automatically activate Windows by supplying a product key, specify a valid product key in the Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup\ `ProductKey` unattend setting during the `specialize` configuration pass. If you don't automatically activate Windows by providing a product key, Windows prompts the end user for a product key.

## Applying Settings in the generalize, auditSystem, and auditUser Configuration Passes

Not all configuration passes run during Windows Setup. The `generalize`, `auditSystem`, and `auditUser` configuration passes are available only when you run **Sysprep**.

If you add settings to your answer file in these configuration passes, you must run **Sysprep** to apply these settings as follows:

- To apply the settings in the `auditSystem` and `auditUser` configuration passes, you must boot in audit mode by using the **Sysprep/audit** command.
- To apply the settings in the `generalize` configuration pass, you must use the **Sysprep/generalize** command. The `generalize` configuration pass removes the system-specific settings so that you can deploy the same image on multiple computers.

For more information, see [How Configuration Passes Work](#).

## Caching Answer Files to the Computer

If you install Windows by using an answer file, that answer file is cached to the system. When later configuration passes run, the computer applies settings in that answer file to the system. Because this answer file is cached, when you run the **Sysprep** command, the system applies settings in the cached answer file. If you use the settings in a different answer file, you can specify a separate Unattend.xml file by using the **Sysprep /unattend:<file\_name>** option. For more information, see [Sysprep Command-Line Options](#). For more information about how to use an implicit answer-file search, see [Windows Setup Automation Overview](#).

## Persisting Plug and Play Device Drivers During the `generalize` Configuration Pass

You can persist device drivers when you run the **Sysprep** command together with the `/generalize` option. To do this, specify the `PersistAllDeviceInstalls` setting in the Microsoft-Windows-PnP\Sysprep component. During the `specialize` configuration pass, Plug and Play scans the computer for devices, and then installs device drivers for the detected devices. By default, the computer removes these device drivers from the system when you generalize the

system. If you set the Microsoft-Windows-PnP\sysprep\PersistAllDeviceInstalls setting to **true** in an answer file, Sysprep doesn't remove the detected device drivers.

## Displaying RunSynchronous Actions in an Answer File

In audit mode, you can view the status for Microsoft-Windows-Deployment\RunSynchronous commands that run during the **auditUser** configuration pass. The **AuditUI** window displays the status for commands and provides these:

- Visual progress to indicate that an installation is continuing and not suspended.
- Visual indication of when and where failures occur. This provides a quick diagnosis if the command doesn't create log files.

If the answer file contains Microsoft-Windows-Deployment\RunSynchronous commands in the **auditUser** configuration pass, a list of the commands appears in the **AuditUI** window. The commands appear in the order that the Microsoft-Windows-Deployment\RunSynchronous\RunSynchronousCommand\Order setting specifies. Each list item in the user interface is the string from one of these:

- Microsoft-Windows-Deployment\RunSynchronous\RunSynchronousCommand\Description (if present)
- Microsoft-Windows-Deployment\RunSynchronous\RunSynchronousCommand\Path

**Sysprep** processes all RunSynchronous commands in order. If the command succeeds, its related list item receives a green check-mark annotation. If the command fails, its related list item receives a red X annotation. If the command requests a reboot, the **AuditUI** window appears after the boot, but only unprocessed list items appear. Previously processed items no longer appear in the **AuditUI** window. If the list of items in the **AuditUI** window exceeds the height of the display, the list is truncated to the display and doesn't scroll. As a result, you may not be able to see some items.

Windows Setup interprets the return codes as status values in the **AuditUI** window. A zero value indicates a success. A nonzero value indicates a failure. The return value of the command might affect the behavior of Windows Setup, depending on the value of the Microsoft-Windows-Deployment\RunSynchronous\RunSynchronousCommand\WillReboot setting.

If the **WillReboot** command is set to **Always**:

- If the command returns 0, its related list item receives a green check-mark annotation. A reboot immediately occurs.
- If the command returns a nonzero number, its related list item receives a red X annotation. A reboot immediately occurs. A nonzero return value isn't treated as a fatal error when **WillReboot** is set to either **Always** or **Never**.

If the **WillReboot** command is set to **Never**:

- If the command returns 0, its related list item receives a green check-mark annotation.
- If the command returns a nonzero number, its related list item receives a red X annotation. A nonzero return value isn't treated as a fatal error when **WillReboot** is set to either **Always** or **Never**.

If the **WillReboot** command is set to **OnRequest**:

- If the command returns 0, its related list item receives a green check-mark annotation.
- If the command returns 1, its related list item receives a green check-mark annotation. A reboot immediately occurs.
- If the command returns 2, its related list item temporarily receives a green check-mark annotation. A reboot

immediately occurs. After the reboot, the related list item appears again in the **AuditUI** window without annotation because the command is still in process.

- If the command returns other values, a fatal error occurs and a blocking dialog box appears. If the Errorhandler.cmd file is present, no dialog box appears. For more information about the Errorhandler.cmd file, see [Add a Custom Script to Windows Setup](#).

## Related topics

[Sysprep \(System Preparation\) Overview](#)

[Sysprep Command-Line Options](#)

[Sysprep Support for Server Roles](#)

[Sysprep Process Overview](#)

[Deployment Troubleshooting and Log Files](#)

# Sysprep Command-Line Options

6/6/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Run **Sysprep** to prepare a Windows installation to be captured. This topic describes the command-line syntax for the System Preparation (Sysprep) tool.

If you intend to create an image of an installation for deployment to a different computer, you must run the **Sysprep** command together with the **/generalize** option, even if the other computer has the same hardware configuration. The **Sysprep /generalize** command removes unique information from your Windows installation so that you can safely reuse that image on a different computer. The next time that you boot the Windows image, the **specialize** configuration pass runs.

## Sysprep Command-Line Options

The following command-line options are available for Sysprep:

**Sysprep.exe [/oobe | /audit]**

**[/generalize]**

**[/mode:vm]**

**[/reboot | /shutdown | /quit]**

**[/quiet]**

**[/unattend:<answerfile>]**

The following table lists Sysprep command-line options:

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
<b>/audit</b>	<p>Restarts the computer into audit mode. Audit mode enables you to add additional drivers or applications to Windows. You can also test an installation of Windows before you send the installation to an end user. For example:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"><pre>Sysprep /audit</pre></div> <p>If you specify an answer file, the audit mode of Windows Setup runs the <b>auditSystem</b> and <b>auditUser</b> configuration passes.</p>

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
<b>/generalize</b>	<p>Prepares the Windows installation to be imaged. Sysprep removes all unique system information from the Windows installation. Sysprep resets the security ID (SID), clears any system restore points, and deletes event logs. For example:</p> <pre>Sysprep /generalize /shutdown</pre> <p>The next time that the computer starts, the <a href="#">specialize</a> configuration pass runs. The configuration pass creates a new security ID (SID).</p>
<b>/oobe</b>	<p>Restarts the computer into OOBE mode. For example:</p> <pre>Sysprep /generalize /shutdown /oobe</pre> <p>OOBE enables end users to customize their Windows operating system, create user accounts, name the computer, and perform other tasks. Sysprep processes any settings in the <a href="#">oobeSystem</a> configuration pass in an answer file before OOBE starts.</p>
<b>/mode:vm</b>	<p>Generalizes a Virtual Hard Disk (VHD) so that you can deploy the VHD as a VHD on the same Virtual Machine (VM) or hypervisor. After the VM restarts, the VM can boot to OOBE. For example:</p> <pre>Sysprep /generalize /oobe /mode:vm</pre> <p>The only additional switches that apply to VM mode are <a href="#">/reboot</a>, <a href="#">/shutdown</a>, and <a href="#">/quit</a>. You must deploy the VHD on a Virtual Machine (VM) or hypervisor with the same hardware profile. For example, if you created VHD in Microsoft Hyper-V, you can only deploy your VHD to Microsoft Hyper-V VMs with a matching hardware profile. Deploying the VHD to a different VM with a different hardware profile might cause unexpected issues.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"><b>Important</b></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">You can only run VM mode from inside a VM.</div>
<b>/reboot</b>	<p>Restarts the computer. You can use this option to audit the computer and to verify that the first-run experience operates correctly.</p>
<b>/shutdown</b>	<p>Shuts down the computer after the <b>Sysprep</b> command finishes running.</p>

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
<b>/quiet</b>	Runs the Sysprep tool without displaying on-screen confirmation messages. You can use this option if you automate the Sysprep tool.
<b>/quit</b>	Closes the Sysprep tool without rebooting or shutting down the computer after Sysprep runs the specified commands.
<b>/unattend:&lt;answerfile&gt;</b>	<p>Applies settings in an answer file to Windows during an unattended installation, where &lt;answerfile&gt; specifies the path and file name of the answer file to use. For example:</p> <pre>Sysprep /audit /reboot /unattend:F:\Unattend.xml</pre> <p>where F is the drive letter of the portable storage device on which the answer file (Unattend.xml) is located.</p>

### Important

You must use the **Sysprep /generalize** command to generalize a complete Windows installation before you can use the installation for deployment to a new computer, whether you use imaging, hard disk duplication, or another method. Moving or copying a Windows image to a different computer without running the **Sysprep /generalize** command is not supported.

## Related topics

[Sysprep \(System Preparation\) Overview](#)

[Sysprep Process Overview](#)

[Sysprep \(Generalize\) a Windows installation](#)

[Sysprep Support for Server Roles](#)

[Use Answer Files with Sysprep](#)

# Sysprep Support for Server Roles

6/6/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Many common server roles support the System Preparation tool (Sysprep). However, if you run the **Sysprep** command together with the **/generalize** option against an installation of a server, and you are using an unsupported server role, those roles may not function after the imaging and deployment process is completed. Therefore, you must enable and configure any server roles that do not support Sysprep after you have performed the imaging and deployment process.

The following table lists server roles and specifies whether the roles support Sysprep.

SERVER ROLE	SYSPREP SUPPORT IN WINDOWS SERVER 2008	SYSPREP SUPPORT IN WINDOWS SERVER 2008 R2	SYSPREP SUPPORT IN WINDOWS SERVER® 2012
Active Directory Certificate Services (AD CS)	No	No	No
Active Directory Domain Services (AD DS)	No	No	No
Active Directory Federation Services (AD FS)	No	No	No
Active Directory Lightweight Directory Services (AD LDS)	No	No	No
Active Directory Rights Management Services (AD RMS)	No	No	No
Application Server	Yes	Yes	Yes
Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) Server	Yes	No	No
Domain Name System (DNS) Server	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
Fax Server	No	No	No
File and Storage Services	No	Yes	Yes

SERVER ROLE	SYSprep SUPPORT IN WINDOWS SERVER 2008	SYSprep SUPPORT IN WINDOWS SERVER 2008 R2	SYSprep SUPPORT IN WINDOWS SERVER® 2012
Hyper-V™	Not applicable	Yes  Not supported for a virtual network on Hyper-V™. You must delete any virtual networks before you run the Sysprep tool.	Yes  Not supported for a virtual network on Hyper-V™. You must delete any virtual networks before you run the Sysprep tool.
Network Policy and Access Services (NPAS) <sup>1</sup>	No	No	No
Network Policy Routing and Remote Access Services	Yes	Not applicable	Not applicable
Printing and Document Services (Print Services) <sup>2</sup>	No	Yes	Yes
Remote Desktop Services <sup>3</sup>	Yes	Yes	Yes
Streaming Media Services (available as a download)	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
UDDI Services <sup>4</sup>	No	Not applicable	Not applicable
Volume Activation Services <sup>5</sup>	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
Web Server (Internet Information Services)	Yes  Not supported with encrypted credentials in the Applicationhost.config file.	Yes  Not supported with encrypted credentials in the Applicationhost.config file.	Yes  Not supported with encrypted credentials in the Applicationhost.config file.
Windows Deployment Services	No	No	Yes  Not supported if Windows Deployment Services is initialized. <sup>6</sup>
Windows Server Update Services (WSUS)	No	No	No

<sup>(1)</sup> NPAS includes Health Registration Authority (HRA), Network Policy Server (NPS), and Host Credential

Authorization Protocol (HCAP).

<sup>(2)</sup> In Windows Server 2008 R2, Print Services was renamed Printing and Document Services.

<sup>(3)</sup> In Windows Server 2008 R2, Terminal Services was renamed Remote Desktop Services, which is also known as Remote Desktop Session Host.

<sup>(4)</sup> UDDI Services was not included in Windows Server 2008 R2.

<sup>(5)</sup> Volume Activation Services is new for Windows Server 2012.

<sup>(6)</sup> You must uninitialized the server that has the Windows Deployment Services role installed before you run Sysprep. You can uninitialized a server by using the **wdsutil /uninitialize-server** command.

## Related topics

[Sysprep \(System Preparation\) Overview](#)

[Sysprep Process Overview](#)

[Sysprep Command-Line Options](#)

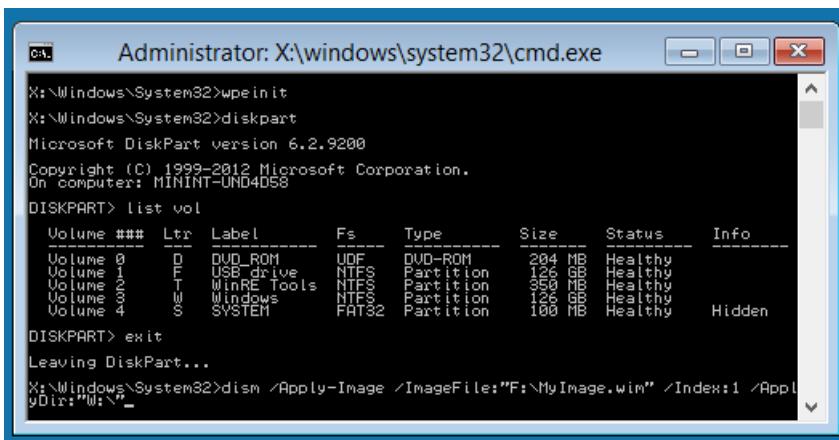
[Sysprep \(Generalize\) a Windows installation](#)

# Windows PE (WinPE)

6/6/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Windows PE (WinPE) for Windows 10 is a small operating system used to install, deploy, and repair Windows 10 for desktop editions (Home, Pro, Enterprise, and Education), Windows Server 2016, and other Windows operating systems. From Windows PE, you can:

- Set up your hard drive before installing Windows.
- Install Windows by using apps or scripts from a network or a local drive.
- Capture and apply Windows images.
- Modify the Windows operating system while it's not running.
- Set up automatic recovery tools.
- Recover data from unbootable devices.
- Add your own custom shell or GUI to automate these kinds of tasks.



The screenshot shows a Windows PE command prompt window titled "Administrator: X:\windows\system32\cmd.exe". The window contains the following command-line session:

```
X:\Windows\System32>wpeinit
X:\Windows\System32>diskpart
Microsoft DiskPart version 6.2.9200
Copyright (C) 1999-2012 Microsoft Corporation.
On computer: MININT-UND4D5B
DISKPART> list vol
Volume ### Ltr Label Fs Type Size Status Info
Volume 0 D DVD_ROM UDF DVD-ROM 204 MB Healthy
Volume 1 F USB_drive NTFS Partition 126 GB Healthy
Volume 2 T WinRE_Tools NTFS Partition 550 MB Healthy
Volume 3 W Windows_Tools NTFS Partition 126 GB Healthy
Volume 4 S SYSTEM FAT32 Partition 100 MB Healthy Hidden
DISKPART> exit
Leaving DiskPart...
X:\Windows\System32>dism /Apply-Image /ImageFile:"F:\MyImage.wim" /Index:1 /Appl
yDir:"W:_
```

## Where do I download it?

To get Windows PE, use the installer built into the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (Windows ADK). For more info, see [WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#), [WinPE: Create a Boot CD, DVD, ISO, or VHD](#), or see the [Demo: Installing Windows PE on a USB Drive](#).

## Support for many Windows features

Windows PE runs the Windows command line environment, and supports these Windows features:

- **Batch files and scripts**, including support for Windows Script Host (WSH), and ActiveX Data Objects (ADO), and optional support for PowerShell.
- **Applications**, including Win32 application programming interfaces (APIs) and optional support for HTML Applications (HTA).
- **Drivers**, including a generic set of drivers that can run networking, graphics, and mass storage devices.
- **Image capturing and servicing**, including Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM).
- **Networking**, including connecting to file servers using TCP/IP and NetBIOS over TCP/IP via LAN.
- **Storage**, including NTFS, DiskPart, and BCDBoot.
- **Security tools**, including optional support for BitLocker and the Trusted Platform Module (TPM), Secure Boot, and other tools.
- **Hyper-V**, including VHD files, mouse integration, mass storage and network drivers that allow Windows

PE to run in a hypervisor.

## Hardware requirements

Windows PE has the same requirements as Windows with these exceptions:

- No hard drive is required. You can run Windows PE entirely from memory.
- The base version requires only 512MB of memory. (If you add drivers, packages, or apps, you'll need more memory.)
- In order to boot Windows PE directly from memory (also known as RAM disk boot), a contiguous portion of physical memory (RAM) which can hold the entire Windows PE (WIM) image must be available. To optimize memory use, manufacturers should ensure that their firmware reserves memory locations either at the beginning or at the end of the physical memory address space.

The 32-bit version of Windows PE can boot 32-bit UEFI and BIOS PCs, and 64-bit BIOS PCs.

The 64-bit version of Windows PE can boot 64-bit UEFI and BIOS PCs.

## Limitations

Windows PE is not a general-purpose operating system. It may not be used for any purpose other than deployment and recovery. It should not be used as a thin client or an embedded operating system. There are other Microsoft products, such as Windows Embedded CE, which may be used for these purposes.

To prevent its use as a production operating system, Windows PE automatically stops running the shell and restarts after 72 hours of continuous use. This period is not configurable.

When Windows PE reboots, all changes are lost, including changes to drivers, drive letters, and the Windows PE registry. To make lasting changes, see [WinPE: Mount and Customize](#).

The default Windows PE installation uses the FAT32 file format, which poses its own limitations, including a maximum 4GB file size and maximum 32GB drive size. To learn more, see [WinPE: Use a single USB key for WinPE and a WIM file \(.wim\)](#).

Windows PE does not support any of the following:

- File server or Terminal Server use.
- Joining to a network domain.
- Connecting to an IPv4 network from Windows PE on an IPv6 network.
- Remote Desktop.
- .MSI installation files.
- Booting from a path that contains non-English characters.
- Running 64-bit apps on the 32-bit version of Windows PE.
- Adding bundled app packages through DISM (.appxbundle packages).

**Note** In general, use the latest version of WinPE to deploy Windows. If you are using customized WinPE for Windows 10 images, you may prefer to continue using your existing Windows PE image and run the latest version of DISM from a network location. To learn more, see [Copy DISM to Another Computer](#).

### Notes on running Windows Setup in Windows PE:

- You can use the 32-bit versions of Windows PE and Windows Setup to install 64-bit versions of Windows. For more information, see [Windows Setup Supported Platforms and Cross-Platform Deployments](#).
- Although Windows PE supports dynamic disks, Windows Setup does not. If you install Windows to a dynamic disk created in Windows PE, the dynamic disks won't be available in Windows.
- For UEFI-based PCs that support both UEFI and legacy BIOS modes, Windows PE needs to be booted in

the correct mode in order to correctly install Windows. For more info, see [WinPE: Boot in UEFI or legacy BIOS mode](#).

## See also

CONTENT TYPE	REFERENCES
<b>Product evaluation</b>	<a href="#">What's New in Windows PE</a>
<b>Deployment</b>	<a href="#">WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive</a>   <a href="#">Demo: Installing Windows PE on a USB Drive</a>   <a href="#">WinPE: Create a Boot CD, DVD, ISO, or VHD</a>   <a href="#">WinPE: Install on a Hard Drive (Flat Boot or Non-RAM)</a>   <a href="#">WinPE: Boot in UEFI or legacy BIOS mode</a>   <a href="#">Boot to UEFI Mode or Legacy BIOS mode</a>   <a href="#">WinPE: Use a single USB key for WinPE and a WIM file (.wim)</a>
<b>Operations</b>	<a href="#">WinPE: Mount and Customize</a>   <a href="#">WinPE: Add drivers</a>   <a href="#">WinPE: Storage Area Network (SAN) Policy</a>   <a href="#">WinPE: Create Apps</a>   <a href="#">WinPE: Optimize and shrink the image</a>
<b>Troubleshooting</b>	<a href="#">WinPE Network Drivers: Initializing and adding drivers</a>   <a href="#">WinPE: Debug Apps</a>
<b>Tools and settings</b>	<a href="#">Copype Command-Line Options</a>   <a href="#">Drvload Command-Line Options</a>   <a href="#">Makewinpemedia Command-Line Options</a>   <a href="#">Wpeinit and Startnet.cmd: Using WinPE Startup Scripts</a>   <a href="#">WinPE: Identify drive letters with a script</a>   <a href="#">Wpeutil Command-Line Options</a>   <a href="#">WinPE: Add packages (Optional Components Reference)</a>
<b>Technologies based on Windows PE</b>	<a href="#">Windows Setup</a>   <a href="#">Windows Recovery Environment</a>   <a href="#">Diagnostic and Recovery Toolset</a>

# What's New in Windows PE

6/28/2017 • 5 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

This topic describes the new and changed functionality of the Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE/WinPE) and compares it with previous versions of Windows PE and MS-DOS.

## New and Changed Functionality

This table compares the features and functionality with those of previous versions of Windows PE:

FEATURE	WINDOWS PE FOR WINDOWS 10	WINDOWS PE 5.0	WINDOWS PE 4.0	WINDOWS PE 3.X	WINDOWS PE 2.X
Operating systems deployed	Windows 10, Windows 8.1, Windows Server 2012 R2, Windows 8, Windows Server 2012, Windows 7, or Windows Server 2008 R2.	Windows 8.1, Windows Server 2012 R2, Windows 8, Windows Server 2012, Windows 7, or Windows Server 2008 R2.  Doesn't support: Windows Vista or Windows Server 2008.	Windows 8, Windows Server 2012, Windows 7, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Vista, or Windows Server 2008.	Windows 7, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Vista, or Windows Server 2008.	Windows Vista or Windows Server 2008
Scripts used to deploy Windows PE	No change.	No change.	CopyPE updated for use with the Windows ADK.  MakeWinPE Media added to make creation of USB flash drives or ISO files easier.	CopyPE and Oscdimg tools included.	CopyPE and Oscdimg tools included.  Windows PE 2.1: Oscdimg tool updated to support larger images.

FEATURE	WINDOWS PE FOR WINDOWS 10	WINDOWS PE 5.0	WINDOWS PE 4.0	WINDOWS PE 3.X	WINDOWS PE 2.X
Scripting tools	No change.	.NET Framework optional component renamed to WinPE_NetFx.  PowerShell optional component renamed to WinPE_PowerShell.  Winpeshl.ini allows you to launch apps with command-line parameters in quotes. For more info, see <a href="#">Winpeshl.ini Reference: Launching an app when WinPE starts.</a>	.NET Framework 4.5 optional component added (WinPE_NetFx 4).  PowerShell 3.0 optional component added (WinPE_PowerShell3).	Command-line scripting tools included.	Command-line scripting tools included.

FEATURE	WINDOWS PE FOR WINDOWS 10	WINDOWS PE 5.0	WINDOWS PE 4.0	WINDOWS PE 3.X	WINDOWS PE 2.X
Image capturing and servicing tools	DISM supports Windows 10 and Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer (ICD) features.	DISM supports Windows 8.1 and Windows Server 2012 R2 images but doesn't support Windows Vista or Windows Server 2008 images. For more info, see <a href="#">DISM - Deployment Image Servicing and Management Technical Reference for Windows</a> .	Image capturing tools included with new <code>dism /Capture-image</code> and <code>dism /Apply-image</code> commands.  Doesn't support servicing Windows 8.1 or Windows Server 2012 R2 images.	<b>DISM - Deployment Image Servicing and Management Technical Reference for Windows</b> added. DISM is a command-line tool that you can use to customize a Windows or a Windows PE image.  The PEImg and Pkgmgr tools are not supported in Windows PE 3.0.  ImageX available as an optional application for capturing and applying images.	<b>PEImg</b> is used to service Windows PE images.  After you run <b>PEImg /prep</b> against the Windows PE 2.0 image, the image can't be modified.  ImageX is available as an optional application for capturing and applying images.  <b>Pkgmgr</b> is used to install, remove, or update Windows packages in offline images.  Doesn't support servicing Windows 8.1 or Windows Server 2012 R2 images.

FEATURE	WINDOWS PE FOR WINDOWS 10	WINDOWS PE 5.0	WINDOWS PE 4.0	WINDOWS PE 3.X	WINDOWS PE 2.X
Optimizing Windows PE	No change.	<p>The profiling feature is removed.</p> <p>The default amount of scratch space is 512 MB for PCs that have more than 1 GB of RAM.</p>	No change.	<p>Smaller default size.</p> <p>The Windows PE 3.0 default image contains only the minimum resources to support most deployment scenarios.</p> <p>You can add optional components by using Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM).</p> <p>The new <code>dism /apply-profiles</code> command allows you to further reduce the contents of a Windows PE 3.0 image to only those files necessary to support a given set of apps.</p>	<p>Windows PE 2.1: Supports booting directly from the hard disk, not into RAM disk.</p> <p>Windows PE 2.1: Writable RAM drive: when booting from read-only media, Windows PE automatically creates a writable RAM disk (drive X) and allocates 32 megabytes (MB) of the RAM disk for general-purpose storage. You can customize the size, in megabytes, by using <b>PEImg /scratchsize</b>. Valid values are 32, 64, 128, 256, and 512.</p>
File management	No change.	No change.	File Management optional component added for discovering and restoring deleted files from unencrypted volumes.	Windows PE 3.1: base image contains improvements that are related to 4k/512e drive support.	No 4k/512e drive support.

FEATURE	WINDOWS PE FOR WINDOWS 10	WINDOWS PE 5.0	WINDOWS PE 4.0	WINDOWS PE 3.X	WINDOWS PE 2.X
Memory	No change.	<p>Maximum supported:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• x86: 64 GB</li> <li>• x64: 4 TB</li> </ul>	No change.	No change.	<p>Maximum supported:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• x86: 4 GB</li> <li>• x64: 128 GB</li> </ul>
Virtualization	No change.	No change.	No change.	<p>Windows PE 3.0 includes all Hyper-V drivers except display drivers. This enables Windows PE to run in Hypervisor. Supported features include mass storage, mouse integration, and network adapters.</p>	Not supported.
Networking	No change.	No change.	<p>Optional Remote Network Driver Interface Specification (RNDIS) feature added for enabling network devices that implement the RNDIS specification over USB.</p>	<p>The Windows PE 3.1 base image contains RNDIS binaries.</p> <p>Windows PE 3.0: <a href="#">Hotfix</a> available for 802.1X (LAN) support.</p> <p>Windows PE 3.1 includes 802.1X binaries as an optional component. The file name of this package is WinPE-Dot3Svc.cab.</p>	<p>Supports IPv4 and IPv6. Doesn't support other protocols, like Internetwork Packet Exchange/Sequenced Packet Exchange (IPX/SPX).</p>

FEATURE	WINDOWS PE FOR WINDOWS 10	WINDOWS PE 5.0	WINDOWS PE 4.0	WINDOWS PE 3.X	WINDOWS PE 2.X
Recovery	No change.	No change.	WinRE Configuration utility added (winrecfg.exe) to support configuring Windows RE in an offline operating system.	No change.	Supports Windows Recovery Environment (Windows RE).
Security	No change.	No change.	Secure Startup optional component added for provisioning and managing BitLocker and the Trusted Platform Module.	No change.	Supports BitLocker and Trusted Platform Module.
Architectures	No change.	No change.	Supports x86, x64, and ARM-based PCs.	No change.	Supports x86, x64, and Itanium-based PCs.

To see which version of Windows PE you're running, type `regedit` and locate this registry key:  
**HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows NT\CurrentVersion\WinPE**.

## Comparison with MS-DOS

Windows PE is similar to MS-DOS. It also includes support for the following features:

- The NTFS 5.x file system, including dynamic volume creation and management.
- TCP/IP networking and file sharing (client only).
- 32-bit or 64-bit Windows device drivers.
- A subset of the Windows application programming interface (API).
- CD, DVD, and USB flash drives.
- Windows Deployment Services server.
- Image management and servicing (DISM).
- Hyper-V drivers (all drivers except for display drivers). This enables Windows PE to run in a hypervisor. Supported features include mass storage, mouse integration, and network adapters.
- Optional support for PowerShell, Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI), Windows Data Access Components (Windows DAC), and HTML Applications (HTAs).

## Related topics

[WinPE for Windows 10](#)

# Download WinPE (Windows PE)

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Download Windows PE (WinPE) to boot your PC to a command prompt. You can install Windows PE to a USB flash drive, CD, DVD, or virtual hard drive.

## Install the Windows ADK

To download the correct version of Windows PE for your PC, you'll need to download and install the Windows ADK. The instructions to install Windows PE vary depending on the media.

Download the [Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit \(ADK\)](#) and install the following features:

- **Deployment Tools:** includes the **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment**.
- **Windows Preinstallation Environment :** includes the files used to install Windows PE.

## Create a bootable USB, CD, or DVD:

See [WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#) or [WinPE: Create a Boot CD, DVD, ISO, or VHD](#).

## Related topics

[WinPE for Windows 10](#)

[WinPE: Mount and Customize](#)

# WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive

7/13/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Create a Windows PE (WinPE) bootable USB flash drive or an external USB hard drive.

The default installation runs from memory (RAM disk), so you can remove the drive while Windows PE is running. Do not remove the USB drive if you are applying an image from it.

## Install the Windows ADK

- Install the following features from the [Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit \(ADK\)](#):
  - **Deployment Tools**: includes the **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment**.
  - **Windows Preinstallation Environment** : includes the files used to install Windows PE.

## Prepare a USB drive

### Windows 10, Version 1703

In Windows 10, Version 1703 you can create multiple partitions on a USB drive, allowing you to have a single USB key with a combination of FAT32 and NTFS partitions. To work with USB drives that have multiple partitions, your technician PC has to be Windows 10, Version 1703, with the most recent version of the ADK installed.

`MakeWinPEMedia` formats the drive as FAT32 which has a filesize limit of 4GB, and custom images can easily exceed that limitation. Creating a USB drive with both FAT32 and NTFS partitions allows you to have a single physical drive that can boot to Windows PE as well store large custom images.

To prepare your USB drive, you'll create separate FAT32 and NTFS partitions. The following creates two partitions on a USB drive; one 2GB FAT32 partition, and one NTFS partition that uses the rest of the available space on the drive. You want to make sure that your USB drive has enough free space for the 2GB WinPE partition and to hold large images on the NTFS partition:

```
diskpart
list disk
select <disk number>
clean
rem === Create the Windows PE partition. ===
create partition primary size=2000
format quick fs=fat32 label="Windows PE"
assign letter=P
active
rem === Create a data partition. ===
create partition primary
format fs=ntfs quick label="Other files"
assign letter=0
list vol
exit
```

### Windows 10, Version 1607 and earlier

You won't typically be able to store or capture Windows images on a Windows PE USB flash drive because most USB flash drives support only a single drive partition. The `MakeWinPEMedia` command formats the drive as FAT32, which supports booting both BIOS-based and UEFI-based PCs. This file format only supports

individual file sizes up to 4 GB, which is normally not large enough to hold custom Windows images.

In the next steps you'll use `MakeWinPEMedia` to format your USB drive, so you don't have to do anything else to prepare the drive for WinPE.

## Create a WinPE drive

1. Start the **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** as an **administrator**.
2. Create a working copy of the Windows PE files. Specify either x86, amd64, or arm:

```
copype amd64 C:\WinPE_amd64
```

3. Install Windows PE to the USB flash drive, specifying the WinPE drive letter:

```
MakeWinPEMedia /UFD C:\WinPE_amd64 P:
```

### Warning

This command reformats the partition.

## Boot to Windows PE

1. Connect the USB device to the PC you want to work on.
2. Turn on the PC, and press the key that opens the firmware boot menus.
3. Select the USB drive. Windows PE starts automatically.

After the command window appears, the `wpeinit` command runs, which sets up the system. This might take a few minutes.

## Troubleshooting

- If you're using a USB key with more than one partition, make sure that your WinPE partition is Partition 1 on the USB drive.
- If the `copype` command isn't recognized, make sure you're running the command from the Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment, which is part of the Windows ADK.
- If Windows PE doesn't appear, try the following workarounds, rebooting the PC each time:
  - To boot a PC that supports UEFI mode, in the firmware boot menus, try manually selecting the boot files: \EFI\BOOT\BOOTX64.EFI.
  - Try a different USB port. Avoid hubs or cables.
  - Avoid USB 3.0 ports if the firmware doesn't contain native support for USB 3.0.
  - Clean the USB flash drive, and then reinstall Windows PE. This can help remove extra boot partitions or other boot software.

```
diskpart
list disk
select disk <disk number>
clean
create partition primary
format quick fs=fat32 label="Windows PE"
assign letter="P"
exit

MakeWinPEMedia /UFD C:\winpe_amd64 P:
```

- Try booting Windows PE from a DVD instead. Create an ISO file that you can burn onto a DVD:

```
MakeWinPEMedia /ISO C:\winpe_amd64 c:\winpe_amd64\winpe.iso
```

In File Explorer, navigate to C:\winpe\_amd64, right-click **winpe.iso**, and select **Burn to disc**. Follow the prompts to create a DVD.

- If your PC requires storage or video drivers to boot, try adding those same drivers to the Windows PE image. For more info, see [WinPE: Mount and Customize](#).
  - Update the firmware of the PC to the latest version.
1. If the PC doesn't connect to network locations, see [WinPE Network Drivers: Initializing and adding drivers](#).

## Related topics

[WinPE for Windows 10](#)

[WinPE: Create a Boot CD, DVD, ISO, or VHD](#)

[WinPE: Install on a Hard Drive \(Flat Boot or Non-RAM\)](#)

[WinPE: Mount and Customize](#)

[WinPE: Boot in UEFI or legacy BIOS mode](#)

[Windows Setup Supported Platforms and Cross-Platform Deployments](#)

# WinPE: Create a Boot CD, DVD, ISO, or VHD

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Create a Windows PE (WinPE) bootable DVD, CD, ISO file, or virtual hard drive (VHD).

The default installation runs from memory (also known as a RAM disk), which allows you to remove the USB drive while Windows PE is running.

## Install the Windows ADK

- Install the following features from the [Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit \(ADK\)](#):
  - **Deployment Tools**: includes the **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment**.
  - **Windows Preinstallation Environment**: includes the files used to install Windows PE.

## Install Windows PE to a DVD, a CD, or an ISO file

1. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
2. Create a working copy of the Windows PE files. Specify either x86 or amd64:

```
copyone amd64 C:\WinPE_amd64
```

3. Create an ISO file containing the Windows PE files:

```
MakeWinPEMedia /ISO C:\WinPE_amd64 C:\WinPE_amd64\WinPE_amd64.iso
```

4. To burn a DVD or CD: In Windows Explorer, right-click the ISO file, and select **Burn disc image > Burn**, and follow the prompts.

## Using Hyper-V

When running Windows PE in Hyper-V, consider using an ISO file format instead of a VHD, to enable quick setup of the virtual PC. For more information, see the previous section.

## To install Windows PE to a VHD

1. Create a virtual hard drive (.vhd or .vhdx):

```
diskpart
create vdisk file="C:\WinPE.vhdx" maximum=1000
attach vdisk
create partition primary
assign letter=V
format fs=ntfs quick
exit
```

2. Prepare the drive by using MakeWinPEMedia:

```
MakeWinPEMedia /UFD C:\WinPE_amd64 V:
```

3. Detach the drive:

```
diskpart
select vdisk file="C:\WinPE.vhdx"
detach vdisk
exit
```

## Troubleshooting

1. If Windows PE doesn't appear, try the following workarounds, rebooting the PC each time:

- To boot a PC that supports UEFI mode: In the firmware boot menus, try manually selecting the boot files: \EFI\BOOT\BOOTX64.EFI.
- If your PC requires storage or video drivers to boot, try adding those same drivers to the Windows PE image. For more information, see [WinPE: Mount and Customize](#).

2. If the PC doesn't connect to network locations, see [WinPE Network Drivers: Initializing and adding drivers](#).

## Related topics

[WinPE for Windows 10](#)

[WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#)

[WinPE: Install on a Hard Drive \(Flat Boot or Non-RAM\)](#)

[WinPE: Mount and Customize](#)

[WinPE: Boot in UEFI or legacy BIOS mode](#)

[Windows Setup Supported Platforms and Cross-Platform Deployments](#)

# WinPE: Install on a Hard Drive (Flat Boot or Non-RAM)

7/13/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE) is a minimal operating system where you can prepare a PC for installation, deployment, and servicing of Windows. Here's how to download and install it to an internal or external hard drive.

These instructions show how to set up a basic Windows PE installation that runs from the drive. This can sometimes give you better performance than booting from memory, and can help you run Windows PE on PCs or virtual environments with low memory. This procedure is also known as a *non-RAMDISK boot*, or a *flat boot*.

## Note

When Windows PE is running from the drive, you must turn off the PC before disconnecting the drive to avoid losing your work.

## Install the Windows ADK

- Get the [Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit \(Windows ADK\) Technical Reference](#), including the Windows PE feature.

### Create a Set of Either 32-bit or 64-bit Windows PE Files

- Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
- In the **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment**, copy the Windows PE files for the PCs you want to boot.

The 64-bit version of Windows PE can boot 64-bit UEFI and 64-bit BIOS PCs:

```
copype amd64 C:\WinPE_amd64
```

The 32-bit version of Windows PE can boot 32-bit UEFI, 32-bit BIOS, and 64-bit BIOS PCs:

```
copype x86 C:\WinPE_x86
```

## Create a Working Directory for Windows PE Files

- Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
- From the **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment**, create a working directory for the Windows PE files.

```
copype amd64 C:\WinPE_amd64
```

## Install Windows PE to the Media

## 1. Use DiskPart to prepare the partitions.

### Note

The following commands prepare a USB hard drive that can boot on either a BIOS-based or UEFI-based PC.

On UEFI-based PCs, Windows PE requires a boot partition formatted using the FAT32 file format, which only supports file sizes up to 4 GB. We recommend creating a separate partition on the drive, formatted using NTFS, so that you can store Windows images and other large files. To learn more, see [WinPE: Identify drive letters with a script](#).

```
diskpart
list disk
select <disk number>
clean
rem === Create the Windows PE partition. ===
create partition primary size=2000
format quick fs=fat32 label="Windows PE"
assign letter=P
active
rem === Create a partition for images ===
create partition primary
format fs=ntfs quick label="Images"
assign letter=I
list vol
exit
```

where *<disk number>* is the listed number of the external USB hard drive.

## 2. Apply the Windows PE image to the hard drive.

```
dism /Apply-Image /ImageFile:"C:\WinPE_amd64\media\sources\boot.wim" /Index:1 /ApplyDir:P:\
```

## 3. Set up the boot files.

```
BCDboot P:\Windows /s P: /f ALL
```

### Note

Ignore any warning messages that say "Warning: Resume application not found."

## Boot to Windows PE

1. Connect the device (internal or external USB hard drive) into the PC you want to work on.
2. Turn on the PC, and use the boot menus to select the Windows PE drive. Typically this requires pressing a hardware button or a key, such as the Esc key.

### Note

For UEFI-based PCs, you might need to find an option to manually select the UEFI boot files, for example, `USBDrive01\EFI\BOOT\BOOTX64.EFI`.

Windows PE starts automatically. After the command window appears, the `wpeinit` command runs automatically. This might take a few minutes.

## Troubleshooting

1. If the PC does not boot, try the following steps in sequence, and try to boot the PC after each step:
  - a. For external USB drives, try inserting the drive into a different USB port. Avoid using USB hubs or

cables, because they might not be detected during the boot sequence. Avoid USB 3.0 ports if the firmware does not contain native support for USB 3.0.

- b. If your PC requires drivers to boot, such as storage drivers or video drivers, or if your driver requires changes to the registry, add the driver to the Windows PE image. For more info, see [WinPE: Mount and Customize](#).
  - c. Update the firmware of the PC to the latest version.
2. For tips on connecting to a network, see [WinPE Network Drivers: Initializing and adding drivers](#).

## Running Windows Setup from Windows PE

- See [Windows Setup Supported Platforms and Cross-Platform Deployments](#) for tips on installing Windows on UEFI PCs that support both UEFI and legacy BIOS firmware modes, and for using the 32-bit (x86) version of Windows PE to install a 64-bit version of Windows.

## Related topics

[WinPE for Windows 10](#)

[WinPE: Identify drive letters with a script](#)

[WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#)

[WinPE: Mount and Customize](#)

[WinPE: Boot in UEFI or legacy BIOS mode](#)

[Windows Setup Supported Platforms and Cross-Platform Deployments](#)

# WinPE: Add drivers

7/13/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Add drivers to Windows PE, such as graphics drivers or network drivers.

Device drivers typically include a folder that contains multiple files. These folders include a file that has the `.inf` file name extension. This file manages the other files in the device driver package. Many boot-critical drivers can be used in both the Windows image and in Windows PE.

You can also update device drivers while you're running Windows PE. For more information, see [Drvload Command-Line Options](#).

## Get the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit with Windows PE tools

- Install the [Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit \(Windows ADK\) Technical Reference](#), including the Windows PE feature.

## Create a set of either 32-bit or 64-bit Windows PE files

1. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
2. In the **Deployment Tools and Imaging Environment**, copy the Windows PE files for the PCs you want to boot.
  - The 64-bit version can boot 64-bit UEFI and 64-bit BIOS PCs.

```
copype amd64 C:\WinPE_amd64
```

- The 32-bit version can boot 32-bit UEFI, 32-bit BIOS, and 64-bit BIOS PCs.

```
copype x86 C:\WinPE_x86
```

## Mount the Windows PE boot image

- Mount the Windows PE image.

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:"C:\WinPE_amd64\media\sources\boot.wim" /index:1
/MountDir:"C:\WinPE_amd64\mount"
```

# Add customizations

## Add device drivers (.inf files)

1. Add the device driver to the Windows PE image.

```
Dism /Add-Driver /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64\mount" /Driver:"C:\SampleDriver\driver.inf"
```

### Note

Although you can add multiple drivers to an image by using one command, it is often easier to troubleshoot problems by adding each driver package individually.

- Verify that the driver packages are part of the image:

```
Dism /Get-Drivers /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64\mount"
```

Review the resulting list of drivers and verify that the list contains the driver package that you added.

### **Video drivers: Change the display resolution**

- For most graphics drivers, WinPE picks the maximum native resolution automatically.

To manually adjust the size, use an answer file and include settings for Microsoft-Windows-Setup/[Display](#).

To learn more, see [Wpeinit and Startnet.cmd: Using WinPE Startup Scripts](#).

### **Unmount the Windows PE image and create media**

- Unmount the Windows PE image.

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:"C:\WinPE_amd64\mount" /commit
```

- Create bootable media, such as a USB flash drive.

```
MakeWinPEMedia /UFD C:\WinPE_amd64 F:
```

- Boot the media. Windows PE starts automatically. After the Windows PE window appears, the wpeinit command runs automatically. This may take a few minutes. Verify your customizations.

### **Troubleshooting**

- Windows PE won't boot? See the troubleshooting tips at the end of the topic: [Install Windows PE](#).
- For tips on connecting to a network, see [WinPE Network Drivers: Initializing and adding drivers](#).

## **Related topics**

[WinPE: Optimize and shrink the image](#)

[WinPE for Windows 10](#)

[Install Windows PE](#)

[WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#)

[WinPE: Create a Boot CD, DVD, ISO, or VHD](#)

[WinPE: Install on a Hard Drive \(Flat Boot or Non-RAM\)](#)

[WinPE: Boot in UEFI or legacy BIOS mode](#)

[WinPE: Add packages \(Optional Components Reference\)](#)

# WinPE: Add packages (Optional Components Reference)

8/17/2017 • 12 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Add feature packages, also known as optional components, to Windows PE (WinPE).

**Languages:** When you install each optional component, you must first install the language-neutral optional component and then install the language-specific optional component. The required language resources must be the same version as the language-neutral resources. Language resources are in a folder that has the same name as the language that is installed in the directory of optional components.

## Adding optional components

Optional components are included as part of the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (Windows ADK), in 32- and 64-bit architectures. When you add optional components to your WinPE image, make sure your optional components are from the same ADK build and have the same architecture as your WinPE image. You can find WinPE optional components in the following locations after you install the ADK.

**64-bit** C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE\_OCs\

**32-bit** C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\x86\WinPE\_OCs\

### Get the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit with Windows PE tools including optional components

- Install the [Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit \(Windows ADK\)](#), including the Windows PE feature.

### Create a set of either 32-bit or 64-bit Windows PE files

1. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
2. In the **Deployment Tools and Imaging Environment**, copy the Windows PE files for the PCs you want to boot.
  - The 64-bit version can boot 64-bit UEFI and 64-bit BIOS PCs.

```
copype amd64 C:\WinPE_amd64
```

- The 32-bit version can boot 32-bit UEFI, 32-bit BIOS, and 64-bit BIOS PCs.

```
copype x86 C:\WinPE_x86
```

### Mount the Windows PE boot image

- Mount the Windows PE image.

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:"C:\WinPE_amd64\media\sources\boot.wim" /index:1
/MountDir:"C:\WinPE_amd64\mount"
```

### Add optional components (packages or .cab files)

1. Add the optional component into Windows PE. To add optional components, you need to add both the optional component and its associated language packs.

```
Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64\mount" /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\WinPE-HTA.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64\mount" /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\en-us\WinPE-HTA_en-us.cab"
```

### Important

Some optional components have prerequisites that must be installed in order. See the list of optional components on this page.

2. Verify that the optional component is part of the image:

```
Dism /Get-Packages /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64\mount"
```

Review the resulting list of packages and verify that the list contains the optional component and its associated language pack.

### Add more languages to images that include optional components

1. List the optional components in the Windows PE image:

```
Dism /Get-Packages /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64\mount"
```

2. Review the resulting list of packages, and add the corresponding language packs for each package in the image, including the base Windows PE language pack.

```
Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64\mount" /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\lp.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64\mount" /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-HTA_fr-fr.cab"
```

where ... WinPE\_OCs\fr-fr\lp.cab represents the base Windows PE language pack.

3. If you're adding language packs for Japan, Korea, or China, add the font packages for these languages. Here's an example for Japan:

```
Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64\mount" /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\WinPE-Font Support-JA-JP.cab"
```

4. Verify that the language packs are part of the image:

```
Dism /Get-Packages /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64\mount"
```

Review the resulting list of packages and verify that for each optional component, including the base Windows PE image, that there is an associated language pack.

5. Change the regional settings to the language you'd like to use:

```
Dism /Set-AllIntl:en-US /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64\mount"
```

To switch languages while in Windows PE, use `wpeutil setmuilanguage`.

### Unmount the Windows PE image and create media

1. Unmount the Windows PE image.

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:"C:\WinPE_amd64\mount" /commit
```

2. Create bootable media, such as a USB flash drive.

```
MakeWinPEMedia /UFD C:\WinPE_amd64 F:
```

3. Boot the media. Windows PE starts automatically. After the Windows PE window appears, the `wpeinit` command runs automatically. This may take a few minutes. Verify your customizations.

## List of Optional Components

AREA/OPTIONAL COMPONENT NAME	DESCRIPTION
Database/WinPE-MDAC	WinPE-MDAC supports Microsoft Open Database Connectivity (ODBC), OLE DB, and Microsoft ActiveX Data Objects (ADO). This set of technologies provides access to various data sources, such as Microsoft SQL Server. For example, this access enables queries to Microsoft SQL Server installations that contain ADO objects. You can build a dynamic answer file from unique system information. Similarly, you can build data-driven client or server applications that integrate information from a variety of data sources, both relational (SQL Server) and non-relational.
File management/WinPE-FMAPI	WinPE-FMAPI provides access to the Windows PE File Management API (FMAPI) for discovering and restoring deleted files from unencrypted volumes. The FMAPI also provides the ability to use a password or recovery key file for the discovery and recovery of deleted files from Windows BitLocker Drive Encryption encrypted volumes.

Area/Optional Component Name	Description
Fonts/WinPE-Fonts-Legacy	<p>WinPE-Fonts-Legacy contains 32 font files for various languages/writing scripts. Some of these fonts are no longer used as UI fonts. For example, scripts such as Bangla, Devanagari, Gujarati, Gurmukhi, Kannada, Malayalam, Odia, Tamil, Telugu, and Sinhalese were covered by Mangal, Latha, Vrinda, Gautami, Kalinga, artika, Raavi, Shruti, and Tunga, but in Windows 8, they were all unified under Nirmala UI, a single, pan-Indian font. The following list shows the fonts and languages included in this optional component:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• estre.ttf Estrangelo Edessa (Syriac)</li> <li>• mvboli.ttf MV Boli (Thaana)</li> <li>• KhmerUI.ttf Khmer UI (Khmer UI)</li> <li>• KhmerUIB.ttf Khmer UI Bold (Khmer UI)</li> <li>• Laoui.ttf Lao UI (Lao)</li> <li>• Lauib.ttf Lao UI Bold (Lao)</li> <li>• daunpenh.ttf DaunPenh (Khmer)</li> <li>• moolbor.ttf MoolBoran (Khmer)</li> <li>• dokchamp.ttf DokChampa (Lao)</li> <li>• Himalaya.ttf Microsoft Himalaya (Tibetan)</li> <li>• monbaiti.ttf Mongolian Baiti (Mongolian)</li> <li>• MSYI.ttf Microsoft Yi Baiti (Yi Syllables)</li> <li>• nyala.ttf Nyala (Ethiopic)</li> <li>• sylfaen.ttf Sylfaen (Armenian &amp; Georgian)</li> <li>• euphemia.ttf Euphemia (Unified Canadian Aboriginal Syllabics)</li> <li>• plantc.ttf Plantagenet Cherokee (Cherokee)</li> </ul>
Fonts/WinPE-Font Support-JA-JP	<p>WinPE-Font Support-JA-JP contains two Japanese font families that are packaged as TrueType Collection (TTC) files. MS Gothic is the Windows Japanese user interface font in versions of Windows before Windows Vista. MS Gothic contains a large character set and embedded bitmaps to ensure legible rendering at small sizes. Meiryo, a font that was introduced in Windows Vista, is designed specifically for use in a Microsoft ClearType® rendering environment. Meiryo does not include embedded bitmaps. Instead, Meiryo relies on hinting instructions to produce legible characters at small sizes. In addition, the module contains two Japanese bitmap fonts, App932.fon and Vga932.fon. The module also contains a bitmap-only TrueType font, Jpn_font.ttf. This font is used on boot screens.</p>
Fonts/WinPE-Font Support-KO-KR	<p>WinPE-Font Support-KO-KR contains three core Korean font families: Gulim, Batang and Malgun Gothic. Gulim is the legacy UI font and, as a TTC file, contains Gulim, GulimChe, Dotum and DotumChe. Batang is the legacy text font and is also a TTC file, containing Batang, BatangChe, GungSuh and GungSuhChe. Malgun Gothic, a font that was introduced in Windows Vista, is designed specifically for use in a ClearType rendering environment. Malgun Gothic does not include embedded bitmaps and instead relies on hinting instructions to produce legible characters at small sizes.</p>

Area/Optional Component Name	Description
Fonts/WinPE-Font Support-ZH-CN	<p>WinPE-Font Support-ZH-CN contains two Chinese font families that are packaged as TTC files. Simsun is the Simplified Chinese user interface font in Windows versions before Windows Vista. Simsun contains embedded bitmaps to ensure legible rendering at small sizes. The other TTC font is MingLiu. MingLiu has embedded bitmaps and provides support for the Hong Kong Supplementary Character Set (HKSCS). YaHei, a font that was introduced in Windows Vista, is designed specifically for use in a ClearType rendering environment. YaHei does not include embedded bitmaps. YaHei relies on hinting instructions to produce legible characters at small sizes. In addition, the module contains one bitmap-only TrueType font, Chs_boot.ttf. This font is used on boot screens.</p>
Fonts/WinPE-Font Support-ZH-HK and WinPE-Font Support-ZH-TW	<p>The Hong Kong and Taiwan optional components contain two Chinese font families that are packaged as TTC files. Simsun is the Simplified Chinese user interface font in Windows versions before Windows Vista. Simsun contains embedded bitmaps to ensure legible rendering at small sizes. MingLiu has embedded bitmaps and provides support for the HKSCS. JhengHei, a font that was introduced in Windows Vista, is designed specifically for use in a ClearType rendering environment. JhengHei does not include embedded bitmaps. JhengHei relies on hinting instructions to produce legible characters at small sizes. In addition, the module contains one bitmap-only TrueType font, Cht_boot.ttf. This font is used on boot screens.</p>
HTML/WinPE-HTA	<p>WinPE-HTA provides HTML Application (HTA) support to create GUI applications through the Windows Internet Explorer script engine and HTML services. These applications are trusted and display only the menus, icons, toolbars, and title information that you create.</p>
Input/WinPE-GamingPeripherals	<p>WinPE-GamingPeripherals adds support for Xbox wireless controllers in WinPE.</p>
Microsoft .NET/WinPE-NetFX	<p>WinPE-NetFX contains a subset of the .NET Framework 4.5 that is designed for client applications. Not all Windows binaries are present in Windows PE, and therefore not all Windows APIs are present or usable. Due to the limited API set, the following .NET Framework features have no or reduced functionality in Windows PE:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Windows Presentation Foundation (WPF)</li> <li>• Windows Runtime</li> <li>• .NET Framework Fusion APIs</li> <li>• Windows Control Library event logging</li> <li>• .NET Framework COM Interoperability</li> <li>• .NET Framework Cryptography Model</li> </ul> <p><b>Dependencies:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Install <b>WinPE-WMI</b> before you install <b>WinPE-NetFX</b>.</li> <li>• Install <b>WinPE-HTA</b> to enable limited WPF support.</li> </ul>

Area/Optional Component Name	Description
Network/WinPE-Dot3Svc	Adds support for the IEEE 802.X authentication protocol on wired networks. For more info, see <a href="#">WinPE Network Drivers: Initializing and adding drivers</a> .
Network/WinPE-PPPoE	WinPE-PPPoE enables you to use Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet (PPPoE) to create, connect, disconnect, and delete PPPoE connections from Windows PE. PPPoE is a network protocol for encapsulating Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) frames inside Ethernet frames. PPPoE enables Windows users to remotely connect their computers to the web. By using PPPoE, users can virtually dial from one computer to another over an Ethernet network, to establish a point-to-point connection between the computers. The computers can use this point-to-point connection to transport data packets.
Network/WinPE-RNDIS	WinPE-RNDIS contains Remote Network Driver Interface Specification (Remote NDIS) support. WinPE-RNDIS enables network support for devices that implement the Remote NDIS specification over USB. Remote NDIS defines a bus-independent message set and a description of how this message set operates over various I/O buses. Therefore, hardware vendors do not have to write an NDIS miniport device driver. Because this Remote NDIS interface is standardized, one set of host drivers can support any number of bus-attached networking devices.
Network/WinPE-WDS-Tools	WinPE-WDS-Tools includes APIs to enable the Image Capture tool and a multicast scenario that involves a custom Windows Deployment Services client. It must be installed if you intend to run the Windows Deployment Services client on a custom Windows PE image.
Network/WinPE-WiFi-Package	<p>WinPE-WiFi-Package is used by Windows Recovery Environment (Windows RE) for built-in recovery functions. This package is included in the base winre.wim file.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Windows PE and Windows RE don't support general wireless networking functions.</p>
Windows PowerShell/WinPE-PlatformID	<p>WinPE-PlatformID contains the Windows PowerShell cmdlets to retrieve the Platform Identifier of the physical machine.</p> <p><b>Dependencies:</b> Install <a href="#">WinPE-WMI</a> and <a href="#">WinPE-SecureStartup</a> before you install <a href="#">WinPE-PlatformID</a>. To use the Windows PowerShell cmdlet to retrieve the Platform Identifier, you will need install <a href="#">WinPE-PowerShell</a> package.</p>

Area/Optional Component Name	Description
Windows PowerShell/WinPE-PowerShell	<p>WinPE-PowerShell contains Windows PowerShell-based diagnostics that simplify using Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI) to query the hardware during manufacturing. You can create Windows PowerShell-based deployment and administrative Windows PE-based tools. In addition to deployment, you can use Windows PowerShell for recovery scenarios. Customers can boot in Windows RE and then use Windows PowerShell scripts to resolve issues. Customers are not limited to the toolsets that run in Windows PE. Similarly, you can build scripted offline solutions to recover some computers from no-boot scenarios.</p> <p>WinPE-PowerShell has the following known limitations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Windows PowerShell remoting is not supported. Any cmdlets that have remoting functionality will return an error.</li> <li>• The Windows PowerShell Integrated Scripting Environment (ISE) is not supported.</li> <li>• Windows PowerShell 2.0 is not supported.</li> </ul> <p><b>Dependencies:</b> Install <b>WinPE-WMI</b> &gt; <b>WinPE-NetFX</b> &gt; <b>WinPE-Scripting</b> before you install <b>WinPE-PowerShell</b>.</p>
Windows PowerShell/WinPE-DismCmdlets	<p>WinPE-DismCmdlets contains the DISM PowerShell module, which includes cmdlets used for managing and servicing Windows images.</p> <p>For more info, see <a href="#">Deployment Imaging Servicing Management (DISM) Cmdlets in Windows PowerShell</a>.</p> <p><b>Dependencies:</b> Install <b>WinPE-WMI</b> &gt; <b>WinPE-NetFX</b> &gt; <b>WinPE-Scripting</b> &gt; <b>WinPE-PowerShell</b> before you install <b>WinPE-DismCmdlets</b>.</p>
Windows PowerShell/WinPE-SecureBootCmdlets	<p>WinPE-SecureBootCmdlets contains the PowerShell cmdlets for managing the UEFI (Unified Extensible Firmware Interface) environment variables for Secure Boot.</p> <p><b>Dependencies:</b> Install <b>WinPE-WMI</b> &gt; <b>WinPE-NetFX</b> &gt; <b>WinPE-Scripting</b> &gt; <b>WinPE-PowerShell</b> before you install <b>WinPE-SecureBootCmdlets</b>.</p>
Windows PowerShell/WinPE-StorageWMI	<p>WinPE-StorageWMI contains PowerShell cmdlets for storage management. These cmdlets use the Windows Storage Management API (SMAPI) to manage local storage, such as disk, partition, and volume objects. Or, these cmdlets use the Windows SMAPI together with array storage management by using a storage management provider. WinPE-StorageWMI also contains Internet SCSI (iSCSI) Initiator cmdlets for connecting a host computer or server to virtual disks on external iSCSI-based storage arrays through an Ethernet network adapter or iSCSI Host Bus Adapter (HBA).</p> <p><b>Dependencies:</b> Install <b>WinPE-WMI</b> &gt; <b>WinPE-NetFX</b> &gt; <b>WinPE-Scripting</b> &gt; <b>WinPE-PowerShell</b> before you install <b>WinPE-StorageWMI</b>.</p>

Area/Optional Component Name	Description
Recovery/WinPE-Rejuv	WinPE-Rejuv is used by Windows Recovery Environment (Windows RE). This package is included in the base winre.wim file.
Recovery/WinPE-SRT	WinPE-SRT is used by Windows RE. This package is included in the base winre.wim file.
Recovery/WinPE-WinReCfg	<p>WinPE-WinReCfg contains the Winrecfg.exe tool, and it enables the following scenarios:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Boot from x86-based Windows PE to configure Windows RE settings on an offline x64-based operating system image.</li> <li>• Boot from x64-based Windows PE to configure Windows RE settings on an offline x86-based operating system image.</li> </ul>
Scripting/WinPE-Scripting	<p>WinPE-Scripting contains a multiple-language scripting environment that is ideal for automating system administration tasks, such as batch file processing. Scripts that run in the Windows Script Host (WSH) environment can call WSH objects and other COM-based technologies that support Automation, such as WMI, to manage the Windows subsystems that are central to many system administration tasks.</p> <p><b>Dependencies:</b> Install WinPE-Scripting to make sure that full scripting functionality is available when you are using WinPE-NetFX and WinPE-HTA. The installation order is irrelevant.</p>
Scripting/WinPE-WMI	WinPE-WMI contains a subset of the Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI) providers that enable minimal system diagnostics. WMI is the infrastructure for management data and operations on Windows-based operating systems. You can write WMI scripts or applications to automate administrative tasks on remote computers. Additionally, WMI supplies management data to other parts of the operating system and products.
Setup/Winpe-LegacySetup	Winpe-LegacySetup contains all Setup files from the \Sources folder on the Windows media. Add this optional component when you service Setup or the \Sources folder on the Windows media. You must add this optional component together with the optional component for the Setup feature. To add a new Boot.wim file to the media, add the parent WinPE-Setup, either of the children (WinPE-Setup-Client or WinPE-Setup-Server), and Media optional components. Media Setup is required to support Windows Server 2008 R2 installation.
Setup/WinPE-Setup	WinPE-Setup is the parent of WinPE-Setup-Client and WinPE-Setup-Server. It contains all Setup files from the \Sources folder that are common to the client and the server.

Area/Optional Component Name	Description
Setup/WinPE-Setup-Client	<p>WinPE-Setup-Client contains the client branding files for the parent WinPE-Setup optional component.</p> <p><b>Dependencies:</b> Install <b>WinPE-Setup</b> before you install <b>WinPE-Setup-Client</b>.</p>
Setup/WinPE-Setup-Server	<p>WinPE-Setup-Server includes the server branding files for the parent WinPE-Setup optional component.</p> <p><b>Dependencies:</b> Install <b>WinPE-Setup</b> before you install <b>WinPE-Setup-Server</b>.</p>
Startup/WinPE-SecureStartup	<p>WinPE-SecureStartup enables provisioning and management of BitLocker and the Trusted Platform Module (TPM). It includes BitLocker command-line tools, BitLocker WMI management libraries, a TPM driver, TPM Base Services (TBS), the Win32_TPM class, the BitLocker Unlock Wizard, and BitLocker UI libraries. The TPM driver provides better support for both BitLocker and the TPM in this preboot environment.</p> <p><b>Dependencies:</b> Install <b>WinPE-WMI</b> before you install <b>WinPE-SecureStartup</b>.</p>
Storage/WinPE-EnhancedStorage	<p>WinPE-EnhancedStorage enables Windows to discover additional functionality for storage devices, such as encrypted drives, and implementations that combine Trusted Computing Group (TCG) and IEEE 1667 ("Standard Protocol for Authentication in Host Attachments of Transient Storage Devices") specifications. This optional component enables Windows to manage these storage devices natively by using BitLocker.</p>

## Windows RE optional components

The default Windows RE image contains the following built-in optional components:

- WinPE-EnhancedStorage
- WinPE-Rejuv
- WinPE-Scripting
- WinPE-SecureStartup
- WinPE-Setup
- WinPE-SRT
- WinPE-WDS-Tools
- WinPE-WMI

## Related topics

[WinPE: Optimize and shrink the image](#)

[WinPE for Windows 10](#)

[WinPE: Mount and Customize](#)



# WinPE: Mount and Customize

10/14/2017 • 6 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Add drivers to Windows Preinstallation Environment (WinPE), such as graphics drivers or network drivers.

Common customizations:

- [Device drivers \(.inf files\)](#). You can customize device drivers, such as drivers that support network cards or storage devices.
- [Packages \(.cab files, also known as WinPE optional components\)](#) Add languages, hotfixes, or support for features like PowerShell and the HTML Application Language (HTA).
- [Languages](#). To run WinPE in multiple languages, add the packages (optional components) for those languages.
- Add files and folders. These can be added directly to the WinPE image.
- [DISM: Use a newer version](#). When new versions of Windows require features from the latest version of DISM, you can add DISM directly into WinPE.
- [Startup scripts](#). Examples include setting up a network connection, or adding a custom application, such as diagnostic software.
- [Apps](#). Note, WinPE only supports legacy apps.
- [Temporary storage \(scratch space\)](#). If your application requires temporary file storage, you can reserve extra memory space in RAM.
- [Background image](#)
- [Power scheme](#)
- [WinPE settings](#)
- [Windows updates](#)

## Get the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit with Windows PE tools

- Install the [Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit \(Windows ADK\) Technical Reference](#), including the **Windows PE** feature.

## Create a set of either 32-bit or 64-bit Windows PE files

1. Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
2. In the **Deployment Tools and Imaging Environment**, copy the WinPE files for the PCs you want to boot.
  - The 64-bit version can boot 64-bit UEFI and 64-bit BIOS PCs.

```
copype amd64 C:\WinPE_amd64
```

- The 32-bit version of WinPE can boot 32-bit UEFI, 32-bit BIOS, and 64-bit BIOS PCs.

```
copype x86 C:\WinPE_x86
```

# Mount the Windows PE boot image

- Mount the WinPE image.

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:"C:\WinPE_amd64\media\sources\boot.wim" /index:1
/MountDir:"C:\WinPE_amd64\mount"
```

## Add customizations

### Add device drivers (.inf files)

- Add the device driver to the WinPE image.

```
Dism /Add-Driver /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64\mount" /Driver:"C:\SampleDriver\driver.inf"
```

Although you can add multiple drivers to an image by using one command, it is often easier to troubleshoot problems by adding each driver package individually.

To learn more about drivers, see [Add device drivers \(.inf files\)](#).

### Add packages/languages/optional components/.cab files

- Add the optional component into WinPE. To add optional components, you need to add both the optional component and its associated language packs.

```
Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64\mount" /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files\Windows
Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\WinPE-
HTA.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64\mount" /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files\Windows
Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\en-
us\WinPE-HTA_en-us.cab"
```

To learn more about adding packages, see [WinPE: Add packages \(Optional Components Reference\)](#).

### Add files and folders

- Copy files and folders into the C:\WinPE\_amd64\mount folder. These files will show up in the X:\ folder in WinPE.

Don't add too many files, as these will slow down WinPE and can fill up the available memory in the default RAMDisk environment.

### Add a startup script

- Modify the Startnet.cmd script to include your customized commands. This file is located at [C:\WinPE\\_amd64\mount\Windows\System32\Startnet.cmd](#).

You can also call other batch files or command line scripts from this file.

For Plug and Play or networking support, make sure that you include a call to **wpeinit** in your customized Startnet.cmd script. For more info, see [Wpeinit and Startnet.cmd: Using WinPE Startup Scripts](#).

### Add an app

1. Create an app directory inside the mounted WinPE image.

```
md "C:\WinPE_amd64\mount\windows\<MyApp>"
```

2. Copy the necessary app files to the local WinPE directory.

```
Xcopy C:\<MyApp> "C:\WinPE_amd64\mount\windows\<MyApp>"
```

3. Test the app later by booting WinPE and running the application from the X: directory.

```
X:\Windows\System32> X:\Windows\<MyApp>
```

If your app requires temporary storage, or if WinPE becomes unresponsive when it runs an app, you may need to increase the amount of temporary storage (scratch space) allocated to WinPE.

4. To automatically launch a shell or application that runs when WinPE starts, add the path location to the Winpeshl.ini file. For more info, see [Winpeshl.ini Reference: Launching an app when WinPE starts](#).

### Add temporary storage (scratch space)

- WinPE reserves memory on the X: drive to unpack the WinPE files, plus additional temporary file storage, known as scratch space, that can be used by your applications. By default, this is 512MB for PCs with more than 1GB of RAM, otherwise the default is 32MB. Valid values are 32, 64, 128, 256, or 512.

```
Dism /Set-ScratchSpace:256 /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64\mount"
```

### Replace the background image

If you've got multiple versions of WinPE, you can set the background image so you can instantly tell which version of WinPE is running.

Change the security permissions of the WinPE background image file (`\windows\system32\winpe.jpg`). This allows you to modify or delete the file.

1. In Windows Explorer, navigate to `C:\WinPE_amd64\mount\windows\system32`.
2. Right-click the `c:\WinPE_amd64\mount\windows\system32\winpe.jpg` file, and select **Properties > Security** tab > **Advanced**.
3. Next to Owner, select **Change**. Change the owner to **Administrators**.
4. Apply the changes, and exit the Properties window to save changes.
5. Right-click the `c:\WinPE_amd64\mount\windows\system32\winpe.jpg` file, and select **Properties > Security** tab > **Advanced**.
6. Modify the permissions for **Administrators** to allow full access.
7. Apply the changes, and exit the Properties window to save changes.
8. Replace the `winpe.jpg` file with your own image file.

### Set the power scheme to high performance

Note: Using the high performance power scheme can make the device run hotter than usual.

1. In Notepad, edit the file: `C:\WinPE_amd64\mount\windows\system32\startnet.cmd`, adding a command to set the power scheme to High Performance.

```
wpeinit
powercfg /s 8c5e7fda-e8bf-4a96-9a85-a6e23a8c635c
```

## Add answer file settings

- Some WinPE settings can be managed by using an answer file, such as firewall, network, and display settings. Create an answer file, name it unattend.xml, and add it to the root of the WinPE media to process these settings. For more information, see [Wpeinit and Startnet.cmd: Using WinPE Startup Scripts](#).

## Add updates to WinPE (if needed)

You can apply updates to your WinPE image, but you'll only need to for certain situations.

If you've been instructed to apply an update to your WinPE image, you'll have to first download the latest update for your WinPE version from the [Microsoft update catalog](#). Updates for WinPE are included in updates for the matching version of Windows 10. You can find information about the latest available updates for Windows 10 at [Windows 10 update history](#).

- Download the latest update.
- Apply the update to your mounted WinPE image.

```
Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64\mount" /PackagePath:"E:\windows10.0-kbxxxxx.msu"
```

Where Windows10.0-kbxxxxx.msu is the name of the update file

## Unmount the Windows PE image and create media

- Unmount the WinPE image.

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:"C:\WinPE_amd64\mount" /commit
```

- Create bootable media, such as a USB flash drive.

```
MakeWinPEMedia /UFD C:\WinPE_amd64 F:
```

- Boot the media. WinPE starts automatically. After the WinPE window appears, the wpeinit command runs automatically. This may take a few minutes. Verify your customizations.

## Troubleshooting

- WinPE won't boot? See the troubleshooting tips at the end of the topic: [WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#)
- For tips on connecting to a network, see [WinPE Network Drivers: Initializing and adding drivers](#).
- If the WinPE image becomes unserviceable, you may need to clean up the images before you can mount the image again. For information, see [Repair a Windows Image](#).

### To delete a working directory:

In some cases, you may not be able to recover the mounted image. DISM protects you from accidentally deleting the working directory, so you may have to try the following steps to get access to delete the mounted directory. Try each of the following steps:

- Try remounting the image:

```
dism /Remount-Image /MountDir:C:\mount
```

2. Try unmounting the image, discarding the changes:

```
dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\mount /discard
```

3. Try cleaning up the resources associated with the mounted image:

```
dism /Cleanup-Mountpoints
```

## Related topics

[WinPE: Optimize and shrink the image](#)

[WinPE for Windows 10](#)

[WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#)

[WinPE: Create a Boot CD, DVD, ISO, or VHD](#)

[WinPE: Install on a Hard Drive \(Flat Boot or Non-RAM\)](#)

[WinPE: Boot in UEFI or legacy BIOS mode](#)

[WinPE: Add packages \(Optional Components Reference\)](#)

# WinPE: Adding Windows PowerShell support to Windows PE

9/15/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The following sample script creates a version of Windows PE with Windows PowerShell and its DISM and Storage cmdlets, which can be used to help automate Windows deployment.

## Prepare a local copy of the Windows PE files

1. Install the [Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit \(ADK\)](#), adding the **Deployment Tools** and **Windows PE** features.
2. Start the **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** as an **administrator**.
3. Create a working copy of the Windows PE files. Specify either x86, amd64, or arm:

```
copype amd64 C:\WinPE_amd64_PS
```

## Sample script

Use the following script to mount the Windows image, add the Windows PE optional components for Windows PowerShell, and to unmount the image.

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:"C:\WinPE_amd64_PS\media\sources\boot.wim" /Index:1
/MountDir:"C:\WinPE_amd64_PS\mount"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64_PS\mount" /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows
Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\WinPE-WMI.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64_PS\mount" /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows
Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\en-us\WinPE-WMI_en-
us.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64_PS\mount" /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows
Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\WinPE-NetFX.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64_PS\mount" /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows
Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\en-us\WinPE-
NetFX_en-us.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64_PS\mount" /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows
Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\WinPE-Scripting.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64_PS\mount" /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows
Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\en-us\WinPE-
Scripting_en-us.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64_PS\mount" /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows
Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\WinPE-
PowerShell.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64_PS\mount" /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows
Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\en-us\WinPE-
PowerShell_en-us.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64_PS\mount" /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows
Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\WinPE-
StorageWMI.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64_PS\mount" /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows
Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\en-us\WinPE-
StorageWMI_en-us.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64_PS\mount" /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows
Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\WinPE-
DismCmdlets.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:"C:\WinPE_amd64_PS\mount" /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows
Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\en-us\WinPE-
DismCmdlets_en-us.cab"

Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\WinPE_amd64_PS\mount /Commit
```

## Install this version of Windows PE to a USB key

```
MakeWinPEMedia /UFD C:\WinPE_amd64_PS F:
```

## Start Windows PowerShell in Windows PE

After you boot a PC to Windows PE using this USB key, start Windows PowerShell:

```
X:\Windows\system32\WindowsPowerShell\v1.0\powershell
```

## Related topics

[WinPE for Windows 10](#)

[WinPE: Add packages \(Optional Components Reference\)](#)

[WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#)

[WinPE: Create a Boot CD, DVD, ISO, or VHD](#)

[WinPE: Mount and Customize](#)

# WinPE: Boot in UEFI or legacy BIOS mode

8/24/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

When you boot Windows PE on a UEFI PC, you may need to check whether the PC is booted in UEFI mode or legacy BIOS-compatibility mode.

For example, running Windows Setup through Windows PE requires you to be in the correct firmware mode.

For many operations, such as applying Windows images using Diskpart and DISM, the firmware mode might not make a difference.

For more in-depth details on booting to UEFI or BIOS mode, see [Boot to UEFI mode or legacy BIOS mode](#).

## Boot to UEFI mode

- When booting the PC, you may need to manually select the UEFI boot files: \EFI\BOOT\BOOTX64.EFI.
  1. Boot your PC and press the key to get into the firmware menus (examples: Esc, F2, F9, F12).
  2. Look for a firmware option to choose the boot file (examples: Boot to file, Boot to EFI file).
  3. Select the file from the USB drive: \EFI\BOOT\BOOTX64.EFI .

## Detect whether Windows PE is booted in BIOS or UEFI mode

Once you're booted into WinPE, you can check to see which mode you've booted into. If you want to know which mode WinPE is in every time you boot, you can add a script that checks to your WinPE image. See [Wpeinit and Startnet.cmd: Using WinPE startup scripts](#) for more information.

1. Check the **HKLM\System\CurrentControlSet\Control\PEFirmwareType** registry value to see if the PC is booted to UEFI or BIOS mode. Note: you may need to run `wpeutil UpdateBootInfo` to make sure this value is present.

```
reg query HKLM\System\CurrentControlSet\Control /v PEFirmwareType
```

This command returns 0x1 if the PC is booted into BIOS mode, or 0x2 if the PC is booted in UEFI mode.

Sample script:

```
wpeutil UpdateBootInfo
for /f "tokens=2* delims= " %%A in ('reg query HKLM\System\CurrentControlSet\Control /v PEFirmwareType') DO SET Firmware=%B
:: Note: delims is a TAB followed by a space.
if %Firmware%==0x1 echo The PC is booted in BIOS mode.
if %Firmware%==0x2 echo The PC is booted in UEFI mode.
```

2. If this is a frequent problem, you can remove the boot files for UEFI mode or BIOS mode to prevent the PC from booting in the wrong mode. If the PC firmware is set up to boot in the wrong mode, the media will immediately fail to boot, allowing you to immediately retry booting the PC into the correct mode.

- **Boot in UEFI mode:** To prevent Windows PE from booting in BIOS mode, remove the **bootmgr** file on the root of the media.
- **Boot in BIOS mode:** To prevent Windows PE from booting in UEFI mode, remove the **efi** folder on the root of the media.

## Related topics

[Boot to UEFI mode or legacy BIOS mode](#)

[WinPE for Windows 10](#)

[Windows Setup: Installing using the MBR or GPT partition style](#)

[Wpeutil Command-Line Options](#)

[UEFI Firmware](#)

# WinPE: Store or split images to deploy Windows using a single USB drive

7/13/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

How can you deploy Windows to PCs with just one USB port?

The default Windows Preinstallation Environment (WinPE) drive format, FAT32, is used to boot UEFI-based PCs, but that's too small to store most Windows images:

- FAT32 has a maximum file size of 4GB in size. Most customized Windows images are over 4GB.
- FAT32 has a maximum partition size of 32GB. Some Windows images are larger than 32GB.

(You can still use a 64GB or 128GB USB key, but you have to format it to use only 32GB of its space.)

Here's a few ways around these limitations:

## Option 1: Create a multiple partition USB drive

Starting with Windows 10, Version 1703, you can create multiple partitions on USB drives. To work with a USB drive with multiple partitions, both your technician PC and WinPE have to be Windows 10, Version 1703.

### Create a USB drive with WinPE and data partitions

1. Start the **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** as an administrator.
2. Type **diskpart** and press Enter.
3. Use Diskpart to reformat the drive and create two new partitions for WinPE and for your images:

```
List disk
select disk X (where X is your USB drive)
clean
create partition primary size=2048
active
format fs=FAT32 quick label="WinPE"
assign letter=P
create partition primary
format fs=NTFS quick label="Images"
assign letter=I
Exit
```

4. Copy the WinPE files to the WinPE partition:

```
copype amd64 C:\WinPE_amd64
xcopy C:\WinPE_amd64\media P:\ /s
```

5. Copy the Windows image file to the Images partition:

```
xcopy C:\Images\install.wim I:\install.wim
```

## Option 2: Store the image on a separate USB drive

If you are using Windows 10, Version 1607 or earlier and your PC only has one USB port, you can still deploy Windows using two separate USB keys.

1. Boot to WinPE.
2. Remove the WinPE drive. (After booting, WinPE runs in memory.)
3. Plug in a separate storage drive with your image and apply it to the device.

## Option 3: Store the image on a network location

1. Copy the image to a server on your network, for example, \\server\share\install.wim
2. Boot to WinPE.
3. Connect a network drive using a drive letter, for example, N.

```
net use N: \\server\share
```

4. Apply the image from the network.

```
Dism /apply-image /imagefile:N:\install.wim /index:1 /applydir:D:\
```

## Option 4: Split the image

### Limitations:

- Windows Setup doesn't support installing from a split .wim file for Windows 10.
- You can't modify a split .wim file.
- To use a 64GB or 128GB key, format it to only use 32GB of space.
- For images larger than 32GB, you need a second USB key because of the FAT32 partition size limitation.

1. From your technician PC, create your WinPE key. See [WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#).
2. Open the **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** as an administrator.
3. Split the Windows image into files smaller than 4GB each:

```
Dism /Split-Image /ImageFile:C:\install.wim /SWMFile:C:\images\install.swm /FileSize:4000
```

where:

- `C:\images\install.wim` is the name and the location of the image file that you want to split.
- `D:\images\install.swm` is the destination name and the location for the split .wim files.
- `4000` is the maximum size in MB for each of the split .wim files to be created.

In this example, the `/split` option creates an `install.swm` file, an `install2.swm` file, an `install3.swm` file, and so on, in the `D:\Images` directory.

4. Copy the files to the WinPE key.
5. On the destination PC, boot to WinPE, and then apply an image using `DISM /Apply-Image /SWMFile` command.

```
Dism /apply-image /imagefile:install.swm /swmfile:install*.swm /index:1 /applydir:D:\
```

## Related topics

[WinPE: Identify drive letters with a script](#)

[Split a Windows image file \(.wim\) for FAT32 media or to span across multiple DVDs](#)

[DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#)

# WinPE: Identify drive letters with a script

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

WinPE drive letter assignments change each time you boot, and can change depending on which hardware is detected.

You can use a script to figure out which drive letter is which by searching for a file or folder.

This sample script looks for a drive that has a folder titled `Images`, and assigns it to a system variable: `%IMAGESDRIVE%`.

```
@echo Find a drive that has a folder titled Images.
@for %%a in (C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z) do @if exist %%a:\Images\ set IMAGESDRIVE=%%a
@echo The Images folder is on drive: %IMAGESDRIVE%
@dir %IMAGESDRIVE%\Images /w
```

## Related topics

[WinPE for Windows 10](#)

[Wpeinit and Startnet.cmd: Using WinPE Startup Scripts](#)

[WinPE: Install on a Hard Drive \(Flat Boot or Non-RAM\)](#)

# WinPE: Storage Area Network (SAN) Policy

7/13/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Storage area network (SAN) functionality enables a computer to mount disks and other storage devices automatically from other computers. By configuring the SAN policy on a Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE) image, you can control whether or not disks are automatically mounted and which disks can be mounted. You can also disable the policy to automatically mount disks.

## Configuring the SAN policy on a Windows PE image

For Windows PE images that are available in the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (Windows ADK), the default SAN policy is to mount available disks automatically. But if the SAN environment has many available disks, automatically mounting them might reduce the performance of Windows PE. The container ID determines the external and internal disk status. If the device container ID of a disk is the same as the root container ID, the disk is internal. Otherwise, it's an external disk. You can use the Setsanpolicy.cmd file in the Windows PE tools path to configure the SAN policy on a Windows PE image.

### To configure the SAN policy on a Windows PE image

1. Mount the Windows PE image to an available mount point. For example:

```
Dism /mount-image /imagefile:C:\winpe_x86\ISO\sources\boot.wim /index:<image_index>
/mountdir:C:\winpe_x86\mount
```

where *<image\_index>* is the number of the selected image in the .wim file.

2. Run the **setsanpolicy** command. For example:

```
Setsanpolicy.cmd <image_path> <policy_number>
```

where *<image\_path>* is the path of a mounted Windows PE image, and *<policy\_number>* is the SAN policy number.

These values are valid *<policy\_number>* values:

SAN POLICY NUMBER	DESCRIPTION
1	Mounts all available storage devices. This is the default value.
2	Mounts all storage devices except those on a shared bus.
3	Doesn't mount storage devices.

SAN POLICY NUMBER	DESCRIPTION
4	<p>New for Windows 8. Makes internal disks offline.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>All external disks and the boot disk are online.</p> </div>

This example shows how to configure the SAN policy on a Windows PE image to mount all disks except those disks on a shared bus:

```
Setsanpolicy C:\winpe_x86\mount <2>
```

where <2> is the SAN policy number that mounts all storage device except those on a shared bus.

- Unmount the image and commit the changes. For example:

```
Dism /unmount-image /mountdir:C:\winpe_x86\mount /commit
```

## Configuring the SAN Policy on a Windows Image

You can change the default SAN policy of a Windows image by using Windows System Image Manager (Windows SIM) to customize the Microsoft-Windows-PartitionManager component. You use the `SanPolicy` setting to configure the Windows image during an unattended installation.

### To configure the SAN policy by using an answer file

- On your technician computer, open Windows System Image Manager (Windows SIM). Click **Start**, type **Windows System Image Manager**, and then select **Windows System Image Manager**.
- Create a new answer file, or update an existing answer file. For more information, see [Create or Open an Answer File](#) and [Best Practices for Authoring Answer Files](#).
- On the **Insert** menu, click **RunSynchronous**.
- Select the configuration pass where you want to install the command. This can be the `auditUser` or `oobeSystem` configuration pass.

#### Note

Don't use the **RunSynchronousNetsh advfirewall** command during the `specialize` configuration pass.

The **Create Synchronous Command** dialog box appears.

- Enter the **Netsh advfirewall firewall** commands to add them to the answer file, and then click **OK**.

For more information, see the [Network Shell \(Netsh\) Technical Reference](#). You can convert **Netsh** commands to Windows PowerShell® commands. For more information, see the [Netshell to Powershell Conversion Guide](#).

- In the **SynchronousCommand Properties** pane, in the **Settings** section next to **Description**, enter a description like **Enable Windows Messenger**.

## Related topics

[WinPE for Windows 10](#)

[WinPE: Mount and Customize](#)

[WinPE Network Drivers: Initializing and adding drivers](#)

[DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#)

[Configure Network Settings in an Unattended Installation](#)

[Windows Deployment Options](#)

# WinPE Network Drivers: Initializing and adding drivers

10/17/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The Wpeutil command initializes the Windows PE (WinPE) network drivers as soon as WinPE boots. The default WinPE image includes support for many popular network adapters, and supports many of the same networking commands as in Windows. Windows PE includes a basic set of network drivers for many popular network adapters, and supports many of the same networking commands as in Windows.

Networking in WinPE has the following limitations:

- The supported methods of connecting to file servers are TCP/IP and NetBIOS over TCP/IP. Other methods, like the Internetwork Packet Exchange/Sequenced Packet Exchange (IPX/SPX) network protocol are not supported.
- Distributed File System (DFS) name resolution is supported for stand-alone namespaces only. It doesn't support domain namespaces. Stand-alone DFS namespaces allow for a DFS namespace that exists only on the local PC and therefore doesn't use Active Directory Domain Services (AD DS).
- General wireless networking functionality is not supported in WinPE.
- Connecting to an IPv4 network from Windows PE on an IPv6 network is not supported.
- Starting with WinPE for Windows 10, version 1709, SMB1 protocol is disabled by default. You can enable SMB1 support by running `dism.exe /enable-feature /featurename=SMB1Protocol-client`.

## To connect to another PC or shared folder on a network

1. While in Windows PE, you can connect (or map) to a shared network folder by using the [net use](#) command. If you're connecting to a domain-joined PC, Windows PE prompts for a username and password.

```
net use n: \\server\share
```

2. You can also host Windows PE from a network by using Preboot Execution Environment (PXE), which is part of [Windows Deployment Services](#).

## Troubleshooting networking problems

1. Try adding a driver for your network device.

We recommend [WinPE: Mount and Customize](#), especially for any driver that requires a reboot during the installation process.

You may also be able to use the [Drvload Command-Line Options](#) to load some drivers while Windows PE is running. However, any updates made to the registry during the installation process will not persist after a reboot, even when Windows PE is running in a [WinPE: Install on a Hard Drive \(Flat Boot or Non-RAM\)](#).

2. Run [Wpeinit and Startnet.cmd: Using WinPE Startup Scripts](#) to initialize the network. By default, wpeinit runs when Windows PE starts.
3. In some cases, you may need to configure firewall settings on the PC that you are trying to connect to. Windows PE supports [IPSec configuration](#).
4. Note, you cannot join Windows PE to a domain, or run Windows PE as a server. For more information, see [WinPE for Windows 10](#).

## To connect to a wired network using 802.1x authentication protocols

1. Create a custom Windows PE image that includes the **WinPE-Dot3Svc** optional component.

2. Boot a PC to Windows PE.

3. Start the dot3svc service.

```
net start dot3svc
```

4. Add a LAN profile. For example:

```
netsh lan add profile="G:\EthernetLANProfile.xml"
```

Sample LAN Profile:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!-- Sample LAN profile: EthernetLANProfile.xml" -->
<LANProfile xmlns="http://www.microsoft.com/networking/LAN/profile/v1">
 <MSM>
 <security>
 <OneXEnforced>false</OneXEnforced>
 <OneXEnabled>true</OneXEnabled>
 <OneX xmlns="http://www.microsoft.com/networking/OneX/v1">
 <cacheUserData>true</cacheUserData>
 <authMode>user</authMode>
 <EAPConfig><EapHostConfig
 xmlns="http://www.microsoft.com/provisioning/EapHostConfig"><EapMethod><Type
 xmlns="http://www.microsoft.com/provisioning/EapCommon">25</Type><VendorId
 xmlns="http://www.microsoft.com/provisioning/EapCommon">0</VendorId><VendorType
 xmlns="http://www.microsoft.com/provisioning/EapCommon">0</VendorType><AuthorId
 xmlns="http://www.microsoft.com/provisioning/EapCommon">0</AuthorId><EapMethod><Config
 xmlns="http://www.microsoft.com/provisioning/EapHostConfig"><Eap
 xmlns="http://www.microsoft.com/provisioning/BaseEapConnectionPropertiesV1">
 <Type>25</Type><EapType
 xmlns="http://www.microsoft.com/provisioning/MsPeapConnectionPropertiesV1">
 <ServerValidation>
 <DisableUserPromptForServerValidation>false</DisableUserPromptForServerValidation>
 <ServerNames></ServerNames>
 <TrustedRootCA>1a 2b 3c 4d 56 78 90 aa bb cc dd ee ff 1a 2b 3c 4d 5e 6f</TrustedRootCA>
 </ServerValidation><FastReconnect>true</FastReconnect>
 <InnerEapOptional>false</InnerEapOptional><Eap
 xmlns="http://www.microsoft.com/provisioning/BaseEapConnectionPropertiesV1">
 <Type>26</Type><EapType
 xmlns="http://www.microsoft.com/provisioning/MsChapV2ConnectionPropertiesV1">
 <UseWinLogonCredentials>false</UseWinLogonCredentials></EapType></Eap>
 <EnableQuarantineChecks>false</EnableQuarantineChecks>
 <RequireCryptoBinding>false</RequireCryptoBinding><PeapExtensions>
 <PerformServerValidation
 xmlns="http://www.microsoft.com/provisioning/MsPeapConnectionPropertiesV2">false
 </PerformServerValidation><AcceptServerName
 xmlns="http://www.microsoft.com/provisioning/MsPeapConnectionPropertiesV2">false
 </AcceptServerName><PeapExtensionsV2
 xmlns="http://www.microsoft.com/provisioning/MsPeapConnectionPropertiesV2">
 <AllowPromptingWhenServerCNotFound
 xmlns="http://www.microsoft.com/provisioning/MsPeapConnectionPropertiesV3">true
 </AllowPromptingWhenServerCNotFound></PeapExtensionsV2></PeapExtensions></EapType>
 </Eap></Config></EapHostConfig></EAPConfig>
 </OneX>
 </security>
 </MSM>
 </LANProfile>
```

5. Link the EAP User Data with the profile. For example:

```
netsh lan set eapuserdata filename="g:\EAP_UserData.xml" alluser=yes Interface="ethernet"
```

Sample EAP User Data file:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!!-- Sample EAP user data: EAP_UserData.xml -->
<EapHostUserCredentials
 xmlns="http://www.microsoft.com/provisioning/EapHostUserCredentials"
 xmlns:eamCommon="http://www.microsoft.com/provisioning/EamCommon"
 xmlns:baseEap="http://www.microsoft.com/provisioning/BaseEapMethodUserCredentials">
 <EapMethod>
 <eamCommon:Type>25</eamCommon:Type>
 <eamCommon:AuthorId>0</eamCommon:AuthorId>
 </EapMethod>
 <Credentials
 xmlns:eamUser="http://www.microsoft.com/provisioning/EamUserPropertiesV1"
 xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
 xmlns:baseEap="http://www.microsoft.com/provisioning/BaseEapUserPropertiesV1"
 xmlns:MsPeap="http://www.microsoft.com/provisioning/MsPeapUserPropertiesV1"
 xmlns:MsChapV2="http://www.microsoft.com/provisioning/MsChapV2UserPropertiesV1">
 <baseEap:Eap>
 <baseEap:Type>25</baseEap:Type>
 <MsPeap:EapType>
 <MsPeap:RoutingIdentity>onex\administrator</MsPeap:RoutingIdentity>
 <baseEap:Eap>
 <baseEap:Type>26</baseEap:Type>
 <MsChapV2:EapType>
 <MsChapV2:Username>actualuser</MsChapV2:Username>
 <MsChapV2:Password>actualpassword</MsChapV2:Password>
 <MsChapV2:LogonDomain>actualdomain</MsChapV2:LogonDomain>
 </MsChapV2:EapType>
 </baseEap:Eap>
 </MsPeap:EapType>
 </baseEap:Eap>
 </Credentials>
 </EapHostUserCredentials>
```

6. For more info, see [How to enable computer-only authentication for an 802.1X-based network in Windows Vista, in Windows Server 2008, and in Windows XP Service Pack 3](#).

## Related topics

[WinPE for Windows 10](#)

[WinPE: Mount and Customize](#)

[Wpeinit and Startnet.cmd: Using WinPE Startup Scripts](#)

[Drvload Command-Line Options](#)

# WinPE: Create Apps

7/13/2017 • 6 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Windows PE (WinPE) is licensed to independent software vendors (ISVs) and original equipment manufacturers (OEMs) to create customized deployment and recovery utilities. This topic provides guidelines for ISVs and OEMs to develop deployment and recovery apps that run in Windows PE.

## Note

Windows PE is not a general-purpose operating system. It may not be used for any purpose other than deployment and recovery. It should not be used as a thin client or an embedded operating system. There are other Microsoft® products, such as Windows Embedded CE, which may be used for these purposes.

## Extensibility

The majority of Windows PE apps are fixed-function shell apps that provide their own GUI. Two examples are the Windows Setup app and the Windows Recovery Environment (Windows RE).

- If it is acceptable to show a command prompt, then modify Startnet.cmd – this is the most convenient way to automatically start an app. See [WinPE: Mount and Customize](#).
- To have your app bypass the command line and start in your GUI, use Winpeshl.exe, Wpeinit.exe, wpeutil.exe, and wpeutil.dll.

## Winpeshl.exe, Wpeinit.exe, wpeutil.exe, and wpeutil.dll

By default, Winpeshl.exe is the first process run when Windows PE is booted. This is specified by the following registry value of type REG\_SZ.

```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE
 System
 Setup
 CmdLine
```

Winpeshl.exe searches for a file called Winpeshl.ini. If the file does not exist, Winpeshl.exe starts a Cmd.exe process that executes the Startnet.cmd script. If Winpeshl.ini does exist and it contains apps to launch, these apps are executed instead of Cmd.exe.

Wpeinit.exe installs Plug and Play (PnP) devices, starting the networking stack, and processing Unattend.xml settings when Windows PE starts. For more information, see [Wpeinit and Startnet.cmd: Using WinPE Startup Scripts](#).

Networking can be started at any time by running either by allowing Wpeinit.exe to run when Windows PE starts, or by running the [Wpeutil Command-Line Options](#) command.

Customized shell apps can call directly into Wpeutil.dll with the [LoadLibrary](#) and [GetProcAddress](#) functions. For related information, see [INFO: Alternatives to Using GetProcAddress\(\) With LoadLibrary\(\)](#).

Each of the functions exported by Wpeutil.dll has the same function signature as [WinMain Function](#), as illustrated in the following code sample.

```
int InitializeNetworkingW(
HINSTANCE hInstance,
HINSTANCE hPrevInstance,
LPSTR lpCmdLine,
int nCmdShow
);
```

The following code sample illustrates how to initialize networking.

```

#include <windows.h>
#include <tchar.h>
#include <stdio.h>
typedef int (*WpeutilFunction)(
HINSTANCE hInst,
HINSTANCE hPrev,
LPTSTR lpszCmdLine,
int nCmdShow
);
int __cdecl _tmain(int argc, TCHAR *argv[])
{
 HMODULE hWpeutil = NULL;

 WpeutilFunction InitializeNetwork = NULL;

 int result = 0;

 TCHAR szCmdLine[] = _T("");

 hWpeutil = LoadLibrary(_T("wpeutil"));

 if(NULL == hWpeutil)

 {
 _tprintf(_T("Unable to load wpeutil.dll \n"));

 return GetLastError();
 }

 InitializeNetwork = (WpeutilFunction)GetProcAddress(
hWpeutil,
"InitializeNetworkW"
);

 if(NULL == InitializeNetwork)

 {
 FreeLibrary(hWpeutil);

 return GetLastError();
 }

 result = InitializeNetwork(NULL, NULL, szCmdLine, SW_SHOW);

 if(ERROR_SUCCESS == result)

 {
 _tprintf(_T("Network initialized. \n"));
 }
 else
 {
 _tprintf(_T("Initialize failed: 0x%08x"), result);
 }

 FreeLibrary(hWpeutil);
}

return result;

```

For a complete list of Wpeutil.dll exports, see [Wpeutil Command-Line Options](#).

# Visual Studio project settings

Some basic Visual Studio project settings may be different from the defaults created by the Visual Studio Project Wizard. Ensure that you set up your project's build settings to produce apps and DLLs that are compatible with Windows PE, as follows:

1. You must develop Windows PE apps with native C or C++ code that does not use MFC or ATL. Therefore, if you use the Visual Studio Project Wizard, choose a Win32 project and make sure that neither MFC nor ATL are checked.
2. Set your project options to link to the static C/C++ runtime libraries, not the .dll version of Msvcrtd.dll.
3. Open your project properties and set **Configuration Properties \ C/C++ RunTime Library** to **Multi-threaded** or **Multi-threaded debug**, not one of the .dll versions. If you do not perform this step, your app might not run on Windows PE.
4. If you plan to host your app on the 64-bit version of Windows PE, set the project build options to compile all binaries with the x64 compiler in Visual Studio.
5. If you plan to host your app on the 32-bit version of Windows PE, set the project options to compile with the x86 compiler.
6. Ensure that your project does not have the /clr: compiler option set. This option produces managed C++ code, which will not run on Windows PE.

## Warning

Your app can use customized .dll files that you write or license from a third party. Add these .dll files to your app for Windows PE. However, do not use Msvcrtd.dll and do not include additional Windows .dll files that are not part of Windows PE.

# API Compatibility reference

Windows PE is a lightweight, bootstrap operating system based on a subset of components from the Windows operating system. It is designed to host deployment and recovery apps. As such, it contains many Windows binaries that are needed to host the APIs that are most important to these classes of app. Due to size and other design constraints, not all Windows binaries are present in Windows PE, and therefore not all Windows APIs are present or usable.

## Supported APIs in Windows PE

The following APIs are supported in Windows PE:

1. [Windows API sets \(Mincore.lib\)](#).
2. [Deployment Image Servicing and Management \(DISM\) API \(Dismapi.lib\)](#).
3. [Imaging APIs for Windows \(Wimgapi.lib\)](#).

If an API behaves the same as it does on the full Windows operating system and as documented in the Windows SDK for Windows operating system, it will be considered supported and can be used by apps unless otherwise noted. Because Windows PE is based on components from Windows, it contains a significant subset of Windows APIs that are published in the Windows SDK for Windows operating system. The parameters, calling conventions, and behaviors of these supported APIs will be the same or nearly the same as on the full Windows operating system, unless they are affected by the unique Windows PE environment. Apps using only these APIs should be portable between the full Windows operating system and Windows PE.

In some cases, a subset of the possible parameter values will be usable on Windows PE. This may be due to conditions unique to the runtime environment, such as running on a read-only medium, not having access to persistent state, or other design limitations. In this case, the API may not be supported, but may still be used to

accomplish a specific task if there is no other alternative.

In general, if an API works incorrectly or not at all on Windows PE, it is not supported and must not be used, even if it resides in a binary that is included in Windows PE. The API may be failing because Windows PE is a subset of the Windows operating system, or because of the runtime design considerations unique to Windows PE. Such failures are not considered bugs in Windows PE.

Because many Windows components are not present in Windows PE, many APIs are not available. They may be completely missing because the Windows binary in which they reside is not present. Alternatively, they may be only partially present because although the Windows binary in which they reside is present, one or more binaries they depend on are not. In addition, some APIs that are present in Windows PE do not work correctly and behave differently than they do in Windows. These APIs are unsupported and must not be used, because their behavior on Windows PE is undefined.

Sometimes, there may be no suitable API to accomplish a specific task. To find an alternate solution, you would require different app logic, different algorithm design, or redefinition of the underlying problem.

## Related topics

[WinPE for Windows 10](#)

[WinPE: Debug Apps](#)

# WinPE: Debug Apps

7/13/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use Windows Debuggers, such as Ntsd.exe, Cdb.exe, and Windbg.exe, and supporting tools to debug applications on Windows PE and to debug the Windows PE kernel. Debugging tools are included in the [Windows 10 SDK](#). You must make the debugging tools available on the Windows PE computer by either copying them locally or using them from a share.

To debug Windows PE remotely, you may need to turn off the built-in firewall on the PC:

```
wpeutil disablefirewall
```

## User-mode debugging

The easiest user-mode debugging method is to run a process server on the Windows PE computer, and connect to it by using a debugger on another computer. The process server is included with the debugging tools in the [Windows 10 SDK](#).

### To run a process server in user-mode

1. Copy the Windows Debugging Process Server tool: **dbgsrv.exe**, from the [Windows 10 SDK](#) debugging tools folder (example: C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10.0\Debuggers\x64), to the Windows PE computer.
2. At the Windows PE command prompt, disable the firewall.

```
wpeutil disablefirewall
```

3. Start the Windows Debugging Process Server, specifying a connection method to the PC, for example, a TCP port:

```
dbgsrv.exe -t tcp:port=1234
```

For more information, see [Activating a Process Server \(Windows Debuggers\)](#).

4. From the remote computer, use the process server to attach to or start processes on the Windows PE destination computer:

```
windbg -premove tcp:server=Server, port=1234
```

For more information, see [Activating a Smart Client \(Windows Debuggers\)](#).

It is also possible to run the debugger directly on the Windows PE computer. However, doing so requires setting up symbol and source paths after every reboot of the Windows PE computer. We recommend that you perform debugging from a computer running a full version of Windows, as described in this procedure.

The following debugging procedure is useful when you want to bypass startnet.cmd or setup.exe, and proceed directly to a command prompt for debugging purposes. This procedure bypasses all initialization, including setup, and runs no commands, such as Wpeinit.exe. This procedure must be performed online on an online operating system.

## To enable user-mode debugging prior to any initialization

1. Delete the winpeshl.ini file, if it exists. If the winpeshl.ini file does not exist, then user-mode debugging can be accessed by default.
2. Hold down the Ctrl key during boot before the command prompt is shown. A command prompt appears.
3. Proceed with debugging.

## Kernel-mode debugging

To debug in kernel-mode, you must enable kernel-mode debugging before the system is booted. The boot configuration file has a setting for kernel mode debugging, which is enabled by using the bcdedit.exe command-line tool to modify the Boot Configuration Data (BCD) store. Kernel debugging can only be performed by using bcdedit.exe. Bcdedit.exe is located in the \Windows\System32 directory of the Windows partition.

The default debugger settings are as follows:

```
identifier {dbgsettings}
debugtype Serial
debugport 1
baudrate 115200
```

For creating ISOs for VM environments, enable the kernel with BCD entries before creating the ISO.

For information about how to modify the default BCD store (default.bcd), see [How to Modify the BCD Store Using Bcdedit](#).

## To enable kernel-mode debugging

1. Locate the BCD store, which is contained in a file named **bcd**. This file is located within the boot directory in the root of the media containing the Windows PE image.
2. At the command prompt, type the following bcdedit command to set the debug flag of the BCD store used to boot the image to `debug on`:

```
bcdedit /store <path to winpe>/boot/bcd /set {default} debug on
```

The `{default}` might need to be replaced by the unique identifier (UID) of the boot option for Windows PE.

Alternatively, you can also enable kernel debugging by pressing F8 during boot and selecting the debug option.

### Note

To use a symbol server from within Windows PE, use the `net use` command on the server's symbols and file shares.

For more information about command-line options that control debugging, see [BCDEdit Command-Line Options](#).

## Related topics

[WinPE for Windows 10](#)

[WinPE: Mount and Customize](#)

[Wpeutil Command-Line Options](#)

[Winpeshl.ini Reference: Launching an app when WinPE starts](#)

## [BCDEdit Command-Line Options](#)

# Copype Command-Line Options

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The **Copype** tool creates a working directory that contains a standard set of Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE) files. You use these files to customize images and (together with the **Makewinpemedia** script) to create bootable media. For more information, see [Makewinpemedia Command-Line Options](#).

## Copype Command-Line Options

**Copype** uses the following command-line options.

**Copype.cmd** architecture WorkingDirectory

COMMAND-LINE OPTION	DESCRIPTION
<i>architecture</i>	<p>Copies the boot files and the Windows PE base image (Winpe.wim) to &lt;WorkingDirectory&gt;\Media.</p> <p>Values include <b>amd64</b>, <b>x86</b>, or <b>arm</b>.</p> <p>The x86 version of Windows PE can boot 32-bit UEFI, 32-bit BIOS, or 64-bit BIOS-based PCs.</p> <p>The amd64 version of Windows PE can boot either 64-bit BIOS-based or 64-bit UEFI-based PCs.</p> <p>The arm version of Windows PE can boot ARM-based PCs.</p> <p>For more information about running Windows PE on PCs with different architectures, see <a href="#">Windows Setup Supported Platforms and Cross-Platform Deployments</a>.</p>
<i>WorkingDirectory</i>	<p>Specifies the name of the working directory where <b>Copype</b> creates the directory structure and copies the Windows PE files. For example:</p> <pre>copype amd64 C:\winpe_amd64</pre> <p><b>Copype</b> creates the following directory structure.</p> <pre>&lt;WorkingDirectory&gt; &lt;WorkingDirectory&gt;\media &lt;WorkingDirectory&gt;\mount</pre> <p>When <b>Copype</b> copies the Windows PE base image to the &lt;WorkingDirectory&gt;\Media\Sources folder, it renames the base image from Winpe.wim to Boot.wim.</p>

## Related topics

[WinPE for Windows 10](#)

[WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#)

[Makewinpemedia Command-Line Options](#)

# Drvload Command-Line Options

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The Drvload tool adds out-of-box drivers to a booted Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE) image. It takes one or more driver .inf files as inputs. To add a driver to an offline Windows PE image, use the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) tool. For more information, see [Add and Remove Drivers to an Offline Windows Image](#).

If the driver .inf file requires a reboot, Windows PE will ignore the request. If the driver .sys file requires a reboot, then the driver cannot be added with Drvload. For more information, see [Device Drivers and Deployment Overview](#) and [DISM Driver Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

Drivers added using the Drvload tool are marked as the preferred driver for that device. If you add an updated driver during Windows Setup, the driver that you added with Drvload takes precedence.

## Drvload Command-Line Options

The following command-line options are available for Drvload.

**drvload** *inf\_path* [*inf\_path* [...]] [/?]

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
/?	Displays usage information.
<i>inf_path</i>	Specifies the path to the driver .inf file. The path can contain environment variables.

If any drivers were not installed, then Drvload will return a non-zero status (%errorlevel%).

## Related topics

[WinPE for Windows 10](#)

[WinPE: Mount and Customize](#)

# Makewinpemedia Command-Line Options

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The **Makewinpemedia** tool is new for Windows 8. You can use **Makewinpemedia** to create bootable Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE) media. Running the **Copype** tool is a prerequisite for creating bootable media. **Copype** creates a directory structure for Windows PE files and copies the necessary Windows PE media files. For more information, see [Copype Command-Line Options](#) and [WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#).

## Makewinpemedia Command-Line Options

The **Makewinpemedia** tool uses the following command-line options.

**Makewinpemedia** {**/ufd** | **/iso**} [**/f**] <WorkingDirectory> <DestinationLocation>

COMMAND-LINE OPTION	DESCRIPTION
<b>/ufd</b>	<p>Specifies a USB flash drive as the type of media to create. For example:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"><pre>Makewinpemedia /ufd C:\winpe_amd64 F:</pre></div> <p>where F is the drive letter of the USB flash drive.</p>
<b>/iso</b>	<p>Specifies a .iso file (CD or DVD) as the type of media to create. For example:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"><pre>Makewinpemedia /iso C:\winpe_amd64 C:\winpe_x64\winpe_amd64.iso</pre></div>
<b>/f</b>	<p>Optional. Suppresses the confirmation message that appears before you format the USB flash drive or overwrite an existing .iso file. For example:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"><pre>Makewinpemedia /ufd /f C:\winpe_amd64 F:</pre></div> <p>where F is the drive letter of the USB flash drive.</p>
<WorkingDirectory>	<p>Specifies the name of the working directory where the <b>Copype</b> tool creates the Windows PE directory structure and copies the necessary files for creating bootable media. For example:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"><pre>C:\winpe_amd64</pre></div>
<DestinationLocation>	<p>Specifies the drive letter of the USB flash drive if you are using the <b>/ufd</b> option, or the name of the .iso file if you are using the <b>/iso</b> option.</p>

## Related topics

[WinPE for Windows 10](#)

[WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#)

[WinPE: Mount and Customize](#)

[Oscdimg Command-Line Options](#)

# Winpeshl.ini Reference: Launching an app when WinPE starts

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Use the **Winpeshl.ini** file in Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE) to replace the default command prompt with a shell application or other app. For example, your shell app might provide a GUI for deployment engineers to choose a method of installing Windows.

To add a customized app, create a file named Winpeshl.ini and place it in %SYSTEMROOT%\System32 a customized Windows PE image. For more information, see [WinPE: Mount and Customize](#).

## Example

```
[LaunchApp]
AppPath = %SYSTEMDRIVE%\Fabrikam\shell.exe
[LaunchApps]
%SYSTEMDRIVE%\Fabrikam\app1.exe
%SYSTEMDRIVE%\Fabrikam\app2.exe, /s "C:\Program Files\App3"
```

The Wpeshl.ini file may have either or both of the sections: [LaunchApp] and [LaunchApps]. The apps listed in [LaunchApp] and [LaunchApps] run in order of appearance, and don't start until the previous app has terminated.

## LaunchApp

Set the **AppPath** entry to the path to your app. You can use a fully qualified path, or you can include environment variables, such as **%SYSTEMDRIVE%** to describe the path.

### Note

- The [LaunchApp] entry may only include one app.
- You can't specify a command that is greater than 250 characters.
- You can't specifiy any command-line options with LaunchApp.

## LaunchApps

Use the **[LaunchApps]** section to run apps with command-line options.

### Note

- LaunchApps supports running apps, but does not support common scripting commands. To run commands, add a startup script instead (startnet.cmd). For more information, see [WinPE: Mount and Customize](#).
- You can't specify a command that is greater than 250 characters.
- To add command-line options to an app: add a comma (,) after the app name:  
**%SYSTEMDRIVE%\Fabrikam\app2.exe, <option>**

## Related topics

[WinPE for Windows 10](#)

WinPE: Debug Apps

# Wpeinit and Startnet.cmd: Using WinPE Startup Scripts

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Use Wpeinit and Startnet.cmd to run startup scripts when Windows PE (WinPE) first runs.

Wpeinit outputs log messages to **C:\Windows\system32\wpeinit.log**.

## Startnet.cmd

You can add customized command-line scripts in Windows PE by using Startnet.cmd. By default, Windows PE includes a Startnet.cmd script located at %SYSTEMROOT%\System32 of your customized Windows PE image.

Startnet.cmd starts Wpeinit.exe. Wpeinit.exe installs Plug and Play devices, processes Unattend.xml settings, and loads network resources.

For more info, see [WinPE: Mount and Customize](#).

## Wpeinit Command-Line Options

The following command-line option is available for Wpeinit:

**Wpeinit** [-unattend:<path\_to\_answer\_file>]

Example:

```
Wpeinit -unattend:"C:\Unattend-PE.xml"
```

## Supported Unattend settings

You can create an answer file and include any of the following settings for use with Windows PE:

- Microsoft-Windows-Setup/[Display](#)
- Microsoft-Windows-Setup/[EnableFirewall](#)
- Microsoft-Windows-Setup/[EnableNetwork](#)
- Microsoft-Windows-Setup/[LogPath](#)
- Microsoft-Windows-Setup/[PageFile](#)
- Microsoft-Windows-Setup/[Restart](#)
- Microsoft-Windows-Setup/[RunAsynchronous](#)
- Microsoft-Windows-Setup/[RunSynchronous](#)

## Related topics

[WinPE: Identify drive letters with a script](#)

[WinPE for Windows 10](#)

[Winpeshl.ini Reference: Launching an app when WinPE starts](#)

[WinPE: Mount and Customize](#)

[Unattended Windows Setup Reference](#)

# Wpeutil Command-Line Options

7/13/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The Windows® PE utility (Wpeutil) is a command-line tool that enables you to run commands during a Windows PE session. For example, you can shut down or restart Windows PE, enable or disable a firewall, set language settings, and initialize a network.

## Wpeutil Command-Line Options

Wpeutil uses the following conventions.

**Wpeutil** {command} [argument]

For example:

```
Wpeutil Shutdown
Wpeutil Enablefirewall
Wpeutil SetMuiLanguage de-DE
```

### Note

Wpeutil can only accept one command per line.

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
<b>CreatePageFile</b> [/path=<path>] [/size=<size>]	<p>Creates a page file to a specified path and size. The default path is C:\pagefile.sys and default size is 64 megabytes. At least one option must be specified. For example:</p> <pre>Wpeutil CreatePageFile /path=C:\pagefile.sys</pre> <p>-or-</p> <pre>Wpeutil CreatePageFile /path=C:\pagefile.sys /size=128</pre> <p><b>Important</b> If a page file exists, the <b>/CreatePageFile</b> option must be set equal to or greater than the current size of the page file or the command will fail.</p>

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
<b>DisableExtendedCharactersForVolume</b> <i>&lt;path_on_target_volume&gt;</i>	<p>Disables extended character support for DOS-compatible file names (8.3 format) for the volume that contains <i>path on target volume</i>. This command only applies to NTFS volumes. The <i>path on target volume</i> must specify the root of the volume. For example:</p> <pre>Wpeutil DisableExtendedCharactersForVolume C: /&gt;/code&gt;</pre> <p>If disabled, all files that have been created with extended characters will be converted to a short file name.</p>
<b>DisableFirewall</b>	<p>Disables a firewall. For example:</p> <pre>Wpeutil DisableFirewall</pre>
<b>EnableExtendedCharactersForVolume</b> <i>&lt;path_on_target_volume&gt;</i>	<p>Allows 8.3 format file names to contain extended characters on the volume that contains <i>path on target volume</i>. This command only applies to NTFS volumes. The <i>path on target volume</i> must specify the root of the volume. For example:</p> <pre>Wpeutil EnableExtendedCharactersForVolume C: /&gt;/code&gt;</pre> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"><b>Note</b></div> <p>If you are installing an operating system in a language that has extended characters that are enabled by default, such as ja-JP or ko-KR, or using a copy of Windows PE in a language that doesn't have extended characters enabled, such as en-US, the installation will cause a Chkdsk error during first boot. Enabling this option before you install to that volume will prevent Chkdsk command from running.</p>
<b>EnableFirewall</b>	<p>Enables a firewall. For example:</p> <pre>Wpeutil EnableFirewall</pre>
<b>InitializeNetwork</b>	<p>Initializes network components and drivers, and sets the computer name to a randomly-chosen value. For example:</p> <pre>Wpeutil InitializeNetwork</pre>

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
<b>ListKeyboardLayouts</b> <LCID>	<p>Lists the supported keyboard layouts (Name and ID) for a given Locale ID (LCID) value. The keyboard layouts will also be updated in the registry under the key:  <b>HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows NT\CurrentVersion\WinPE\KeyboardLayouts</b>. For example:</p> <pre>Wpeutil ListKeyboardLayouts 0x0409</pre> <p>-or-</p> <pre>Wpeutil ListKeyboardLayouts 1033</pre> <p>For a list of valid Locale IDs, see <a href="#">Locale ID (LCID) Chart</a>.</p>
<b>Reboot</b>	<p>Restarts the current Windows PE session. For example:</p> <pre>Wpeutil Reboot</pre>
<b>SaveProfile</b>	<p>Stops logging and saves the custom profile to the location the user specified earlier with the <b>Dism /enable-profiling</b> command. For more information about the <b>/enable-profiling</b> command-line option, see <a href="#">DISM Windows PE Servicing Command-Line Options</a>. For example:</p> <pre>Wpeutil SaveProfile profile_file_name "short description"</pre>
<b>SetKeyboardLayout</b> <keyboard_layout_ID>	<p>Sets the keyboard layout in the current Windows PE session. This will take effect for processes after the command succeeds. To obtain a list of supported keyboard layouts, enter:</p> <pre>ListKeyboardLayouts LCID</pre> <p>To set the keyboard for en-US, for example:</p> <pre>Wpeutil SetKeyboardLayout 0409:00000409</pre>
<b>SetMuiLanguage</b> <language-name>[;<language-name>]	<p>Sets the language. &lt;language-name&gt; uses the international language code format (for example, en-US for the U.S. English language). You can specify multiple languages in priority order, by separating them with a semicolon. For example:</p> <pre>Wpeutil SetMuiLanguage de-DE;en-US</pre>

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
<b>SetUserLocale</b> <language-name>[;<language-name>]	<p>Sets the user locale. &lt;language-name&gt; uses the international language code format (for example, en-US for the U.S. English language). You can specify multiple languages in priority order, by separating them with a semicolon. For example:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"><pre>Wpeutil SetUserLocale de-DE;en-US</pre></div>
<b>Shutdown</b>	<p>Shuts down the current Windows PE session. For example:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"><pre>Wpeutil Shutdown</pre></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"><p><b>Note</b> You can also do the following in the Command Prompt window:</p><ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Click the <b>Close</b> button</li><li>● Type EXIT</li></ul></div>

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
<b>UpdateBootInfo</b>	<p>Populates the registry with information about how Windows PE boots.</p> <p>After you run this command, query the registry. For example:</p> <pre>wpeutil UpdateBootInfo reg query HKLM\System\CurrentControlSet\Control /v PEBootType</pre> <p>The results of this operation might change after loading additional driver support.</p> <p>To determine where Windows PE is booted from, examine the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>PEBootType</b>: Error, Flat, Remote, Ramdisk:Sourceldentified Ramdisk:SourceUnidentified, Ramdisk:OpticalDrive</li> <li>• <b>PEBootTypeErrorCode</b>: HRESULT code</li> <li>• <b>PEBootServerName</b>: Windows Deployment Services server name</li> <li>• <b>PEBootServerAddr</b>: Windows Deployment Services server IP address</li> <li>• <b>PEBootRamdiskSourceDrive</b>: Source drive letter, if available.</li> <li>• <b>PEFirmwareType</b>: Firmware boot mode: 0x1 for BIOS, 0x2 for UEFI.</li> </ul> <p>If you are not booting Windows Deployment Services, the best way to determine where Windows PE booted from is to first check for PEBootRamdiskSourceDrive registry key. If it is not present, scan the drives of the correct PEBootType and look for some kind of tag file that identifies the boot drive.</p>
<b>WaitForNetwork</b>	<p>Waits for the network card to be initialized. Use this command when creating scripts to make sure that the network card has been fully initialized before continuing.</p>
<b>WaitForRemovableStorage</b>	<p>During the Windows PE startup sequence, this command will block startup until the removable storage devices, such as USB hard drives, are initialized. For example:</p> <pre>Wpeutil WaitForRemovableStorage</pre> <p><b>Note</b> This spelling of <b>WaitForRemovableStorage</b> is correct.</p>

## Related topics

[WinPE for Windows 10](#)

[WinPE: Mount and Customize](#)

## DISM Windows PE Servicing Command-Line Options

# Where is WinPE.wim?

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

WinPE.wim: In Windows 7, the main Windows PE boot file was renamed from winpe.wim to boot.wim. This file is in Windows PE in the \sources folder. It can be modified in the same way as WinPE.wim.

## Related topics

[WinPE for Windows 10](#)

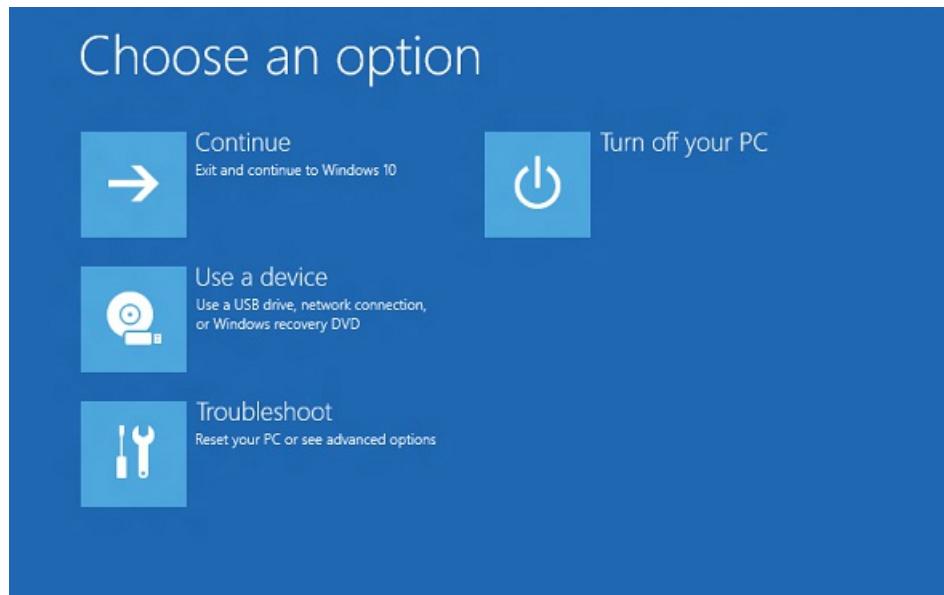
[WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#)

[WinPE: Add packages \(Optional Components Reference\)](#)

# Windows Recovery Environment (Windows RE)

6/6/2017 • 5 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Windows Recovery Environment (WinRE) is a recovery environment that can repair common causes of unbootable operating systems. WinRE is based on Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE), and can be customized with additional drivers, languages, Windows PE Optional Components, and other troubleshooting and diagnostic tools. By default, WinRE is preloaded into the Windows 10 for desktop editions (Home, Pro, Enterprise, and Education) and Windows Server 2016 installations.



## What's new with WinRE for Windows 10?

- By default, if you install Windows using media created from Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer (ICD), you'll get a dedicated WinRE tools partition on both UEFI and BIOS-based devices, located immediately after the Windows partition. This allows Windows to replace and resize the partition as needed. (If you install Windows by using Windows Setup, you'll get the same partition layout that you did in Windows 8.1.)
- If you [add a custom tool to the WinRE boot options menu](#), it can only use optional components that are already in the default WinRE tools. For example, if you have a app from Windows 8 that depended on the .NET optional components, you'll need to rewrite the app for Windows 10.
- If you [add a custom tool to the WinRE boot options menu](#), it must be placed in the \Sources\Recovery\Tools folder so that it can continue to work after future WinRE upgrades.
- When adding languages to the push-button reset tools, you'll now need to add the WinPE-HTA optional component.

## Tools

WinRE includes these tools:

- **Automatic repair and other troubleshooting tools.** For more info, see [Windows RE Troubleshooting Features](#).
- **Push-button reset** (Windows 10 for desktop editions , Windows 8.1 and Windows 8 only). This tool enables your users to repair their own PCs quickly while preserving their data and important customizations, without having to back up data in advance. For more info, see [Push-Button Reset Overview](#).
- **System image recovery** (Windows Server 2016, Windows Server 2012 R2 and Windows Server 2012 only).

This tool restores the entire hard drive. For more info, see [Recover the Operating System or Full Server](#).

In addition, you can create your own custom recovery solution by using the [Windows Imaging API](#), or by using the [Deployment Image Servicing and Management \(DISM\) API](#).

## Entry points into WinRE

Your users can access WinRE features through the **Boot Options** menu, which can be launched from Windows in a few different ways:

- From the login screen, click Shutdown, then hold down the Shift key while selecting **Restart**.
- In Windows 10, select **Start > Settings > Update & security > Recovery** > under **Advanced Startup**, click **Restart now**.
- Boot to recovery media.
- Use a [hardware recovery button \(or button combination\)](#) configured by the OEM.

After any of these actions is performed, all user sessions are signed off and the **Boot Options** menu is displayed. If your users select a WinRE feature from this menu, the PC restarts into WinRE and the selected feature is launched.

WinRE starts automatically after detecting the following issues:

- Two consecutive failed attempts to start Windows.
- Two consecutive unexpected shutdowns that occur within two minutes of boot completion.
- A Secure Boot error (except for issues related to Bootmgr.efi).
- A BitLocker error on touch-only devices.

### Boot options menu

This menu enables your users to perform these actions:

- Start recovery, troubleshooting, and diagnostic tools.
- Boot from a device (UEFI only).
- Access the **Firmware** menu (UEFI only).
- Choose which operating system to boot, if multiple operating systems are installed on the PC.

### Note

You can add one custom tool to the **Boot options** menu. Otherwise, these menus can't be further customized. For more info, see [Add a Custom Tool to the Windows RE Boot Options Menu](#).

## Security considerations

When working with WinRE, be aware of these security considerations:

- If users open the **Boot options** menu from Windows and select a WinRE tool, they must provide the user name and password of a local user account with administrator rights.
- By default, networking is disabled in WinRE. You can turn on networking when you need it. However, we recommend that you disable networking when you don't need connectivity.

## Customizing WinRE

You can customize WinRE by adding packages (Windows PE Optional Components), languages, drivers, and custom diagnostic or troubleshooting tools. The base WinRE image includes these Windows PE Optional Components:

- Microsoft-Windows-Foundation-Package

- WinPE-EnhancedStorage
- WinPE-Rejuv
- WinPE-Scripting
- WinPE-SecureStartup
- WinPE-Setup
- WinPE-SRT
- WinPE-WDS-Tools
- WinPE-WMI
- WinPE-StorageWMI-Package (added to the base image in Windows 8.1 and Windows Server 2012 R2)
- WinPE-HTA (added to the base image in Windows 10)

#### **Note**

The number of packages, languages, and drivers is limited by the amount of memory available on the PC. For performance reasons, we recommend that you minimize the number of languages, drivers, and tools that you add to the image.

## Hard drive partitions

When you install Windows by using Windows Setup, WinRE is configured like this:

1. During Windows Setup, Windows prepares the hard drive partitions to support WinRE.
2. Windows initially places the WinRE image file (winre.wim) in the Windows partition, in the \Windows\System32\Recovery folder.

Before delivering the PC to your customer, you can modify or replace the WinRE image file to include additional languages, drivers, or packages.

3. During the specialize configuration pass, the WinRE image file is copied into the recovery tools partition, so that the device can boot to the recovery tools even if there's a problem with the Windows partition.

When you deploy Windows by applying images, you must manually configure the hard drive partitions. When WinRE is installed on a hard drive, the partition must be formatted as NTFS.

Add the baseline WinRE tools image (winre.wim) to a separate partition from the Windows and data partitions. This enables your users to use WinRE even if the Windows partition is encrypted with Windows BitLocker Drive Encryption. It also prevents your users from accidentally modifying or removing the WinRE tools.

We recommend that you store the recovery tools in a dedicated partition, directly after the Windows partition.

For more info about configuring hard drive partitions, see [Configure UEFI/GPT-Based Hard Drive Partitions](#) or [Configure BIOS/MBR-Based Hard Drive Partitions](#).

## Memory requirements

In order to boot Windows RE directly from memory (also known as RAM disk boot), a contiguous portion of physical memory (RAM) which can hold the entire Windows RE image (winre.wim) must be available. To optimize memory use, manufacturers should ensure that their firmware reserves memory locations either at the beginning or at the end of the physical memory address space.

## See also

CONTENT TYPE	REFERENCES
<b>Deployment</b>	<a href="#">Customize Windows RE</a>   <a href="#">Deploy Windows RE</a>
<b>Operations</b>	<a href="#">REAgentC Command-Line Options</a>
<b>Troubleshooting</b>	<a href="#">Windows RE Troubleshooting Features</a>
<b>Add-on tools</b>	<a href="#">Add a Custom Tool to the Windows RE Boot Options Menu</a>   <a href="#">Add a Hardware Recovery Button to Start Windows RE</a>   <a href="#">Push-Button Reset Overview</a>

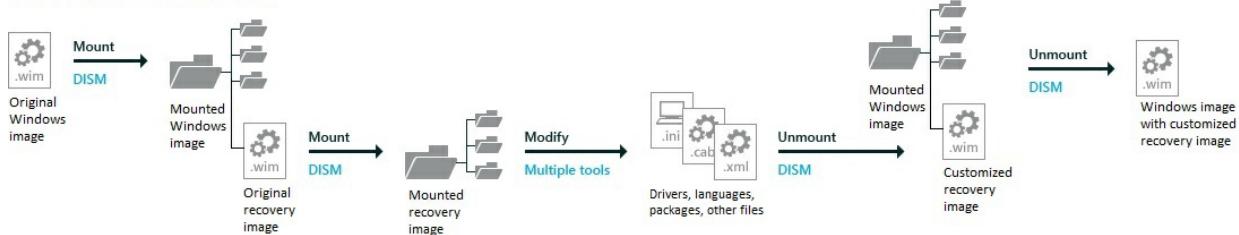
# Customize Windows RE

7/13/2017 • 5 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can customize Windows Recovery Environment (Windows RE) by adding languages, packages drivers, and custom diagnostic or troubleshooting tools.

The WinRE image is included inside the Windows 10 and Windows Server 2016 images, and is eventually copied to the Windows RE tools partition on the destination PC or device. To modify it, you'll mount the Windows image, then mount the WinRE image inside it. Make your changes, unmount the WinRE image, then unmount the Windows image.

Customize the recovery image



We recommend that when you update your Windows images with languages and boot-critical drivers, update the Windows RE image at the same time.

This topic also gives optional steps to optimize the Windows RE image after updating it.

## Prerequisites

To complete this walkthrough, you need the following:

- A technician computer with the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (ADK) installed.
- The Windows image (install.wim). This can be from the Windows installation media or from a reference image.

## Step 1: Mount the Windows and Windows RE image

### Mount the images

1. Open the **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** command prompt as an administrator:

Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator > Yes**.

2. Mount the Windows base image for editing.

```
md C:\mount\windows
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\mount\install.wim /Index:1 /MountDir:C:\mount\windows
```

3. Mount the Windows RE image for editing.

```
md C:\mount\winre

Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\recovery\winre.wim /Index:1
/MountDir:C:\mount\winre
```

**Note** The Windows RE image should always be index number 1.

## Step 2: Adding languages

When you add languages to Windows RE, you need to add the base language pack and the corresponding language packs for each of the Windows PE optional components in the Windows RE tools image.

Starting with Windows 10, Version 1607 and Windows Server 2016, the base language pack and optional component language packs required to customize Windows RE are included in the Language Pack DVDs for Windows 10 and Windows Server 2016. The Windows PE language packs in the Windows 10 ADK should not be used to customize Windows RE.

**Note**

To ensure a consistent language experience in recovery scenarios, add the same set of languages to the Windows RE image that you add to the Windows image.

We recommend adding no more than ten language packs to a Windows or Windows RE image. Multiple language packs increase the size of the Windows image and also affect the overall performance of a system during deployment and servicing.

### To add language packs

1. List the Windows PE optional components in the Windows RE tools image:

```
Dism /Get-Packages /Image:C:\mount\winre
```

2. Review the resulting list of packages, and then add the corresponding language packs for each package in the image, including the base Windows PE language pack, but not including **WinPE-WiFi-Package**.

The following code shows how to add the French (fr-fr) language pack to the base Windows PE image, and then to each of the optional components that are present in the default Windows RE image:

```
Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\lp.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-Rejuv_fr-fr.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-EnhancedStorage_fr-fr.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-Scripting_fr-fr.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-SecureStartup_fr-fr.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-SRT_fr-fr.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-WDS-Tools_fr-fr.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-WMI_fr-fr.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-StorageWMI_fr-fr.cab"

Dism /Add-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-HTA_fr-fr.cab"
```

The **WinPE-WiFi-Package** is not language-specific and does not need to be added when adding other languages.

3. If you're adding language packs for Japan, Korea, or China, add the font packages for these languages. Here's an example for Japan:

```
Dism /image:C:\mount\winre /add-package /packagepath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\WinPE-FontSupport-JA-JP.cab"
```

To learn more, see [WinPE: Add packages \(Optional Components Reference\)](#).

4. To save space and speed up the recovery process, remove unneeded languages. Reverse the order to avoid problems with dependencies.

Note, the **WinPE-WiFi-Package** is not language specific and should not be removed.

```
Dism /Remove-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\en-us\WinPE-HTA_en-us.cab"

Dism /Remove-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\en-us\WinPE-StorageWMI_en-us.cab"

Dism /Remove-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\en-us\WinPE-WMI_en-us.cab"

Dism /Remove-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\en-us\WinPE-WDS-Tools_en-us.cab"

Dism /Remove-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\en-us\WinPE-SRT_en-us.cab"

Dism /Remove-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\en-us\WinPE-SecureStartup_en-us.cab"

Dism /Remove-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\en-us\WinPE-Scripting_en-us.cab"

Dism /Remove-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\en-us\WinPE-EnhancedStorage_en-us.cab"

Dism /Remove-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\en-us\WinPE-Rejuv_en-us.cab"

Dism /Remove-Package /Image:C:\mount\winre /PackagePath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\en-us\lp.cab"
```

## Step 3: Adding boot-critical drivers

Make sure that you add any third-party drivers that your reference device requires to boot, such as storage or video drivers. If you add boot-critical drivers to a Windows image using Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer (ICD), they'll be added to the Windows RE image inside that Windows image.

### Add a boot-critical driver

1. If necessary, unzip or unpack the driver file from your device manufacturer.
2. Identify the driver setup (.inf) file, and add it.

```
Dism /Image:C:\mount\winre /Add-Driver /Driver:"C:\SampleDriver\driver.inf"
```

where *C:\SampleDriver\driver.inf* is the location of the .inf file.

## Step 4: Adding a custom tool

You can add a custom troubleshooting or diagnostic tool to your Windows RE image. To learn more, see [Add a Custom Tool to the Windows RE Boot Options Menu](#).

## Step 5: Adding Windows updates

Occasionally, a Windows update may require you to update the Windows RE image.

- Add the Windows update package, for example, C:\MSU\Windows8.1-KB123456-x64.msu.

```
Dism /Add-Package /PackagePath:C:\MSU\Windows8.1-KB123456-x64.msu /Image:C:\mount\winre
/LogPath:AddPackage.log
```

## Step 6: Optimizing the image, part 1 (optional)

After adding a language or Windows update package, you can reduce the size of the final Windows RE package by checking for duplicate files and marking the older versions as superseded.

1. Optimize the image:

```
Dism /Image:c:\mount\winre /Cleanup-Image /StartComponentCleanup /ResetBase
```

2. Later, you'll export the image to remove the superseded files.

## Step 7: Unmount the WinRE image

- Unmount and save the image:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\mount\winre /Commit
```

## Step 8: Optimizing the image, part 2 (optional)

If you've optimized the image, you'll need to export the image in order to see a change in the file size. During the export process, DISM removes files that were superseded.

1. Export the Windows RE image into a new Windows image file.

```
Dism /Export-Image /SourceImageFile:c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\recovery\winre.wim
/SourceIndex:1 /DestinationImageFile:c:\mount\winre-optimized.wim
```

2. Replace the old Windows RE image with the newly-optimized image.

```
del c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\recovery\winre.wim
copy c:\mount\winre-optimized.wim c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\recovery\winre.wim
```

## Step 9: Unmount the Windows image

Save your changes back into the Windows base image.

- Unmount the base Windows image:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\mount\windows /Commit
```

## Next Steps

If you're deploying Windows using **Windows Setup**, update the other Windows images inside the base Windows file (Install.wim).

If you're deploying your reference image by using **Windows PE**, **Diskpart**, and **DISM**, then continue to [Deploy Windows RE](#).

## Related topics

[Add a Custom Tool to the Windows RE Boot Options Menu](#)

[Deploy Windows RE](#)

[Deploy Push-Button Reset Features](#)

[REAgentC Command-Line Options](#)

# Add a custom tool to the Windows RE boot options menu

7/13/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can add a custom troubleshooting or diagnostic tool to the Windows Recovery Environment (WinRE) image. This tool is displayed in the Boot Options menu.

By developing your custom tool to run in WinRE, you can leverage the touch and on-screen keyboard support available in WinRE.

New for Windows 10: You won't be able to add WinRE optional components that aren't already in the default WinRE tools. For example, if you have a app from Windows 8 that depended on the .NET optional components, you'll need to rewrite the app for Windows 10.

## To add a custom tool

1. Extract and mount a Windows image (install.wim) and its corresponding WinRE image (winre.wim):

```
md c:\mount
xcopy D:\sources\install.wim C:\mount
md C:\mount\windows
Dism /mount-image /imagefile:C:\mount\install.wim /index:1 /mountdir:C:\mount\windows
md C:\mount\winre
Dism /mount-image /imagefile:c:\mount\windows\windows\system32\recovery\winre.wim /index:1
/mountdir:C:\mount\winre
```

For more information about these steps, see the topic: [Customize Windows RE](#).

2. In Notepad, create a configuration file that specifies the custom tool's filename and parameters (if any):

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<!-- WinREConfig.xml -->
<Recovery>
 <RecoveryTools>
 <RelativeFilePath>OEMDiagnostics.exe</RelativeFilePath>
 <CommandLineParam>/param1 /param2</CommandLineParam>
 </RecoveryTools>
</Recovery>
```

Where C:\Tools\OEMDiagnostics.exe is the custom troubleshooting or diagnostics tool, and where */param1* and */param2* are optional parameters used when running this custom tool.

### Note

You can only add one custom tool to the WinRE boot options menus.

Save the file using UTF-8 coding. Do not use ANSI:

Click **File**, and then click **Save As**. In the **Encoding** box, select **UTF-8**, and save this file as  
C:\mount\WinREConfig.xml .

3. Create a \Sources\Recovery\Tools folder in the WinRE mount folder, and then copy the custom tool and its configuration file into the new folder:

```
md C:\mount\winre\sources\recovery\tools
copy C:\Tools\OEMDiagnostics.exe C:\mount\winre\sources\recovery\tools
copy C:\mount\WinREConfig.xml C:\mount\winre\sources\recovery\tools
```

The custom tool and any associated folders must be in this folder so that it can continue to work after future WinRE upgrades.

4. Commit your customizations and unmount the WinRE image:

```
Dism /unmount-image /mountdir:C:\mount\winre /commit
```

5. Optional: make a backup copy of the WinRE image.

```
copy C:\mount\windows\windows\system32\recovery\winre.wim C:\mount\winre_amd64_backup.wim
```

You can often reuse the same customizations on multiple images.

6. Unmount and save the changes from the base Windows image:

```
Dism /unmount-image /mountdir:C:\mount\windows /commit
```

## To deploy the image

1. In Notepad, create a configuration file that describes the custom tool in the boot options menu. Add descriptions for each language you support. This example specifies both English and French language versions of the tool name and description:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<!-- AddDiagnosticsToolToBootMenu.xml -->
<BootShell>
 <WinRETool locale="en-us">
 <Name>Fabrikam Utility</Name>
 <Description>Troubleshoot your Fabrikam PC</Description>
 </WinRETool>
 <WinRETool locale="fr-fr">
 <Name>Utilité de Fabrikam</Name>
 <Description>Dépannez votre PC de Fabrikam</Description>
 </WinRETool>
</BootShell>
```

### Warning

Limit the `<Name>` and `<Description>` values to approximately 30 characters or less to make sure that they appear correctly in the boot options menu.

Save the file using UTF-8 coding:

Click **File**, and then click **Save As**. In the **Encoding** box, select **UTF-8**, and save this file as `E:\Recovery\BootMenu\AddDiagnosticsToolToBootMenu.xml`.

Where `E:\` is the drive letter of a removable drive or network location.

2. On your destination computer, during image deployment, but after you register the custom WinRE boot image and the Windows operating system, you must register the description of the custom tool:

```
Reagentc /setbootshelllink /configfile E:\Recovery\BootMenu\AddDiagnosticsToolToBootMenu.xml
```

If the custom tool is registered properly, the output from running this command will be: <OEM Tool = 1>.

**Note**

For more information about deploying Windows, see the [Deploy Windows RE](#) topic.

**To verify the custom tool appears in the Boot Options menu when launched from Windows**

1. Restart the destination computer, and complete OOBE as your user.

**Note**

If you are prompted for a product key, click **Skip**.

2. Click **Start** > **PC settings**, and then select **General**.
3. In the **Advanced startup** section, select **Restart now**.

The Windows **Boot Options** menu appears.

4. In the **Boot Options** menu, select **Troubleshoot**, and then click the **Fabrikam Utility** link.

The computer restarts in WinRE, and the tool that is specified in the <RecoveryTools> section of the WinREConfig.xml file, appears.

5. Confirm that the custom tool works properly, and then close the tool.

If the custom tool does not appear on the Boot Options menu, you can try the following:

- Verify the WinREConfig.xml and the AddDiagnosticsToolToBootMenu.xml files are saved using the UTF-8 encoding format.
- Disable WinRE, register the custom tool again, and then enable WinRE. For example:

```
Reagentc /disable
Reagentc /setbootshelllink /configfile E:\Recovery\BootMenu\AddDiagnosticsToolToBootMenu.xml
Reagentc /enable
```

**To verify the custom tool appears in the WinRE recovery menu**

6. In the recovery menu, select **Troubleshoot**, and then click the **Fabrikam Utility** link.
7. Confirm that the custom tool works properly, and then close the tool.
8. Click **Continue**.

The PC reboots into the operating system.

## Related topics

[Windows Recovery Environment \(Windows RE\) Technical Reference](#)

[Customize Windows RE](#)

[Deploy Windows RE](#)

[Windows RE Troubleshooting Features](#)

# Add a hardware recovery button to start Windows RE

6/6/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

On UEFI-based computers, you can configure a hardware recovery button (or button combination) to start Windows RE, including push-button reset features for Windows 10 for desktop editions (Home, Pro, Enterprise, and Education). This can help users get to the Windows RE menus more easily.

Relative to Windows 8/8.1, the recommended implementation in Windows 10 for such hardware buttons has been greatly simplified. You no longer need to copy Windows boot files to an unmanaged location on the EFI system partition (ESP) to create a secondary boot path. Instead, Windows configures and manages all the on-disk resources required to support the hardware buttons. The design can be summarized as follows:

1. Windows 10 automatically creates a secondary Boot Configuration Data (BCD) store in the folder `\EFI\Microsoft\Recovery`.

When Windows RE is installed, this secondary BCD store is automatically populated with the appropriate settings to boot Windows RE by default.

If the location of Windows RE changes (for example, due to future updates), the secondary BCD store is updated automatically.

2. You will still need to create a static boot device entry for recovery at the end of the UEFI firmware boot order list.

This boot device entry should point to the default Windows Boot Manager (`bootmgfw.efi`) in the folder `\EFI\Microsoft\Boot` on the ESP.

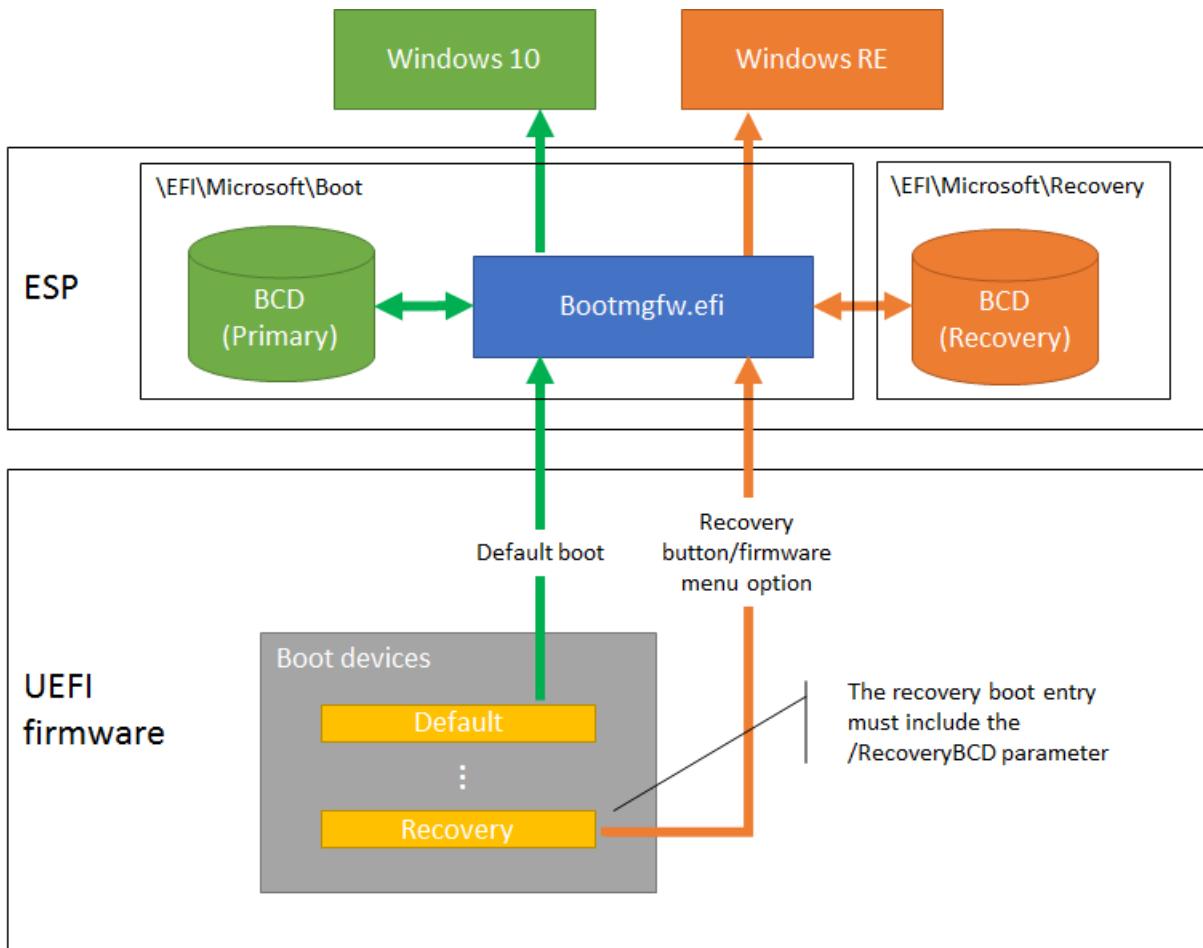
The boot device entry must specify the `/RecoveryBCD` parameter.

When the hardware button is triggered, the recovery boot device entry should be selected automatically.

To learn more, see your hardware manufacturer's instructions for modifying the UEFI firmware on the device.

3. When Windows Boot Manager is launched with the `/RecoveryBCD` parameter, it uses the secondary BCD store which is configured to boot Windows RE, instead of the default BCD store.

The following diagram illustrates the recommended implementation and the various boot paths:



## Design recommendations for the hardware button:

The hardware recovery button (or button combination) should be usable even when the PC is powered off. When triggered, the PC should power on and go through the secondary boot path. This eliminates the need for users to press the button within a very short time window during and after POST.

For PCs which support firmware options menu, triggering the button (or button combination) should first display a simple menu which gives users the options to either boot Windows RE or to enter the firmware options menu. This removes the need to support multiple button combinations.

**Note** The hardware button will not be able to boot the PC into Windows RE until Windows RE is installed. In general, this means after the PC has completed the Specialize configuration pass.

## Related topics

[Deploy Windows RE](#)

# Deploy Windows RE

7/13/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Use these steps to deploy Windows® Recovery Environment (Windows RE) to a new computer, to help end users repair a PC when a system failure occurs.

## Prerequisites

To complete this walkthrough, you need the following:

- A destination computer that has been configured with a Windows RE tools partition, and optionally, a recovery image partition. For more information, see [Capture and Apply Windows, System, and Recovery Partitions](#).
- Optional: Customize your recovery media. For more information, see [Customize Windows RE](#).
- Optional: Customize your recovery media to include custom tools. For more information, see [Add a Custom Tool to the Windows RE Boot Options Menu](#).

## Step 1: Deploy Windows RE

1. Create a new directory in the Windows RE Tools partition, and then copy your custom Windows RE tools image (Winre.wim) to this directory. The following are examples based on your firmware type:

### UEFI:

```
mkdir T:\Recovery\WindowsRE
xcopy /h W:\Windows\System32\Recovery\Winre.wim T:\Recovery\WindowsRE
```

where *T*: is the drive letter of your Windows RE Tools partition. For example:

### BIOS:

```
mkdir S:\Recovery\WindowsRE
xcopy /h W:\Windows\System32\Recovery\Winre.wim S:\Recovery\WindowsRE
```

where *S*: is the system partition.

2. Register your custom Windows RE tools image:

### UEFI:

```
C:\Windows\System32\Reagentc /setreimage /path T:\Recovery\WindowsRE /target W:\Windows
```

where *T*: is the Windows RE Tools partition.

### BIOS

```
C:\Windows\System32\Reagentc /setreimage /path S:\Recovery\WindowsRE /target W:\Windows
```

where *S*: is the System partition.

3. Optional: If you have added a custom tool to your Windows RE boot image, register it so that it will appear on the **Boot Options** menu:

```
Reagentc /setbootshelllink /configfile E:\Recovery\BootMenu\AddDiagnosticsToolToBootMenu.xml
```

For more information about adding a custom tool, see [Add a Custom Tool to the Windows RE Boot Options Menu](#).

4. Optional: Configure a hardware recovery button (or button combination) to run a secondary boot path that contains Windows RE. For more information, see [Add a Hardware Recovery Button to Start Windows RE](#).

## Step 2: Identify the Recovery Partitions and Hide the Drive Letters

**Note** If you want to configure push-button reset features for Windows 8 editions, skip this section, and go to the topic: [Deploy Push-Button Reset Features](#).

Configure your partitions as recovery partitions, and then conceal the drive letters so the partitions don't appear in common Windows menus, such as File Explorer.

### Prepare a DiskPart script to identify the recovery partitions and to hide drive letters

1. In Notepad, create a text file that includes commands to identify and hide the recovery partitions. The following examples are based on your firmware type:

#### UEFI:

Use the ID: PARTITION\_MSFT\_RECOVERY\_GUID (de94bba4-06d1-4d40-a16a-bfd50179d6ac) to define the partitions as recovery partitions.

Use the GPT attributes: 0x8000000000000001 to hide the drive letters and to mark them as required, by using a combination of two attributes: GPT\_BASIC\_DATA\_ATTRIBUTE\_NO\_DRIVE\_LETTER and GPT\_ATTRIBUTE\_PLATFORM\_REQUIRED.

For more information about UEFI hard drive partition attributes, see [PARTITION\\_INFORMATION\\_GPT structure](#).

```
rem == HideRecoveryPartitions-UEFI.txt
select disk 0
select partition 1
remove
set id=de94bba4-06d1-4d40-a16a-bfd50179d6ac
gpt attributes=0x8000000000000001
rem == If Push-button reset features are included, add the following commands:
rem select partition 5
rem remove
rem set id=de94bba4-06d1-4d40-a16a-bfd50179d6ac
rem gpt attributes=0x8000000000000001
list volume
```

#### BIOS:

Use the attribute: `id=27` to define the system partition, and use the `remove` command to remove the drive letter.

```
rem == HideRecoveryPartitions-BIOS.txt
select disk 0
select partition 3
set id=27
remove
list volume
exit
```

2. Save your completed file as either E:\Recovery\HideRecoveryPartitions-UEFI.txt or E:\Recovery\HideRecoveryPartitions-BIOS.txt, based on your firmware type.

### Identify and hide the drive letters

- Run the diskpart script to identify and hide the recovery partitions:

```
Diskpart /s E:\Recovery\HideRecoveryPartitions-<firmware>.txt
```

Where <firmware> is either UEFI or BIOS.

### Verify that the Windows RE configuration is set correctly

- Open an administrative command prompt.

Verify the Windows RE information:

```
reagentc /info
```

Verify the following:

- Windows RE status is enabled.
- Windows RE location is on the correct partition.
- The BCD GUID entry for WinRE is the same as the WinRE GUID entry in the file: reagent.xml. On BIOS-based PCs, this file is on the system partition, at \Recovery\{GUID}\. On UEFI-based PCs, this file is on the Windows RE Tools partition, at \Recovery\WindowsRE\.
- WinRE is located in the \Recovery\WindowsRE directory

## Related topics

[Windows Recovery Environment \(Windows RE\) Technical Reference](#)

[DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#)

[Customize Windows RE](#)

[Add a Custom Tool to the Windows RE Boot Options Menu](#)

# Push-button reset

6/6/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

This topic is intended for original equipment manufacturers (OEMs) who want to add push-button reset features to their Windows 10 desktop computer manufacturing processes. If you are a user who wants to reset a computer that runs Windows 10, see [Recovery options in Windows 10](#).

Push-button reset is a recovery tool that repairs the OS while preserving data and important customizations. It reduces the need for custom recovery applications by providing users with more recovery options and the ability to fix their own PCs with confidence.

Push-button reset is included in Windows 10 for desktop editions (Home, Pro, Enterprise, and Education), and was introduced in Windows 8.

## What's new for Windows 10

In Windows 10, Version 1703, Push-button reset has been updated to include the following change:

- **Use default config files when using ScanState to capture customizations:** Starting with Windows 10 Version 1703, you have to use the `/config` option with ScanState when capturing customizations. Use only one of the default configuration files included with the Assessment and Deployment Kit (ADK). These files are:

- **Config\_AppsAndSettings.xml** – Use this configuration file to specify that both desktop applications and OS settings should be captured by the ScanState tool.
- **Config\_AppsOnly.xml** – Use this configuration file to specify that only desktop applications should be captured by the ScanState tool. Since desktop applications are not always well-defined, this configuration file does not guarantee that all settings related to desktop applications are captured.
- **Config\_SettingsOnly.xml** – Use this configuration file to specify that only OS settings should be captured by the ScanState tool.

You can modify these configuration files by setting the `migrate` attribute for specific components to `no`, but components that are already excluded from capture/migration in the default configuration files must remain excluded.

Previous versions of Windows 10 provided the following improvements to push-button reset:

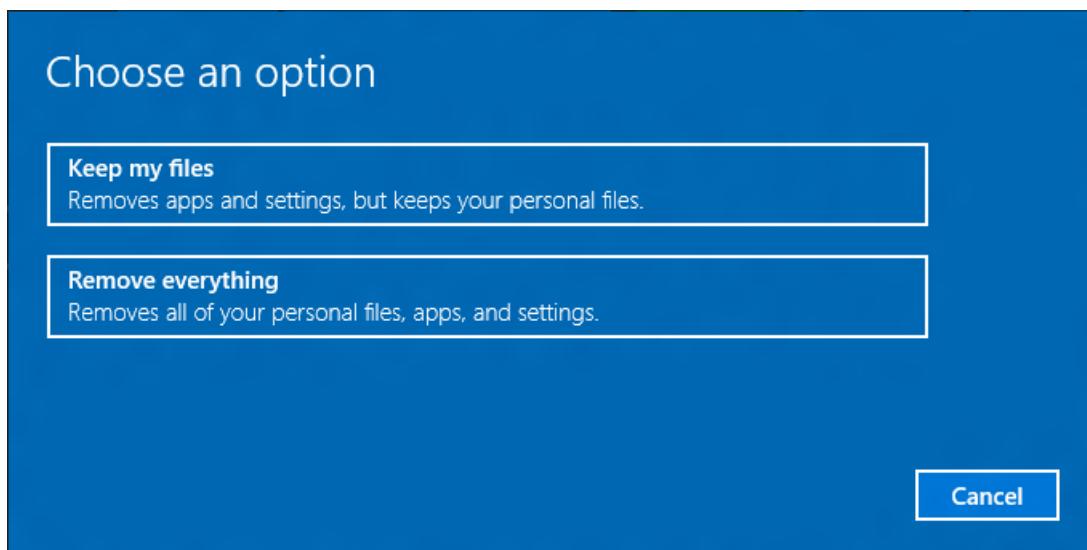
- **Improved reliability:** When you start push-button reset features from the Settings app, Windows scans the system files in the Windows Component Store for corruptions. If it finds corrupt files and can download replacements through Windows Update, it fixes the problem automatically. Although this increases the overall recovery time, it improves the reliability of the PC.
- **Recover from failed resets:** In Windows 10, Version 1507, and Windows 10, Version 1511, failures that occur during Reset this PC almost always rendered the PC unbootable/unrecoverable. This feature has been redesigned in the Anniversary Update to support limited rollback if a problem occurs while the PC is in Windows RE.
- **Recovery options when booted from recovery media:** When the PC is booted from recovery media, the Refresh this PC and Reset this PC features are no longer supported. The only Push-button reset feature available when booted from media is bare metal recovery (i.e. Recover from a drive).
- **Image-less recovery:** Push-button reset no longer require or support a separate recovery image on a local partition or on media. This significantly reduces the disk space needed to support the features, and makes recovery possible even on devices with limited storage capacity.

- **Recovers to an updated state:** Push-button reset features now recover the Operating System (OS) and drivers (including device applets that are installed as part of INF-based driver packages) to an updated state. This reduces the amount of time users have to spend reinstalling the OS updates and drivers after performing a recovery.

The Push-button reset user experience continues to offer customization opportunities. Manufacturers can insert custom scripts, install applications or preserve additional data at available extensibility points.

The following Push-button reset features are available to users with Windows 10 PCs and devices:

- **Refresh your PC** Fixes software problems by reinstalling the OS while preserving the user data, user accounts, and important settings. All other preinstalled customizations are restored to their factory state. In Windows 10, this feature no longer preserves user-acquired Windows apps.
- **Reset your PC** Prepares the PC for recycling or for transfer of ownership by reinstalling the OS, removing all user accounts and contents (e.g. data, Windows desktop applications, and Universal Windows apps), and restoring preinstalled customizations to their factory state.
- **Bare metal recovery** Restores the default or preconfigured partition layout on the system disk, and reinstalls the OS and preinstalled customizations from external media.



CONTENT TYPE	REFERENCES
<b>Overview</b>	<a href="#">How push-button reset features work</a>   <a href="#">Recovery strategy for common customizations</a>   <a href="#">Siloed provisioning packages</a>
<b>Hard drive setup</b>	<a href="#">Hard Drives and Partitions</a>   <a href="#">UEFI/GPT-based hard drive partitions</a>   <a href="#">BIOS/MBR-based hard drive partitions</a>
<b>Operations</b>	<a href="#">Deploy push-button reset features using ScanState</a>   <a href="#">Bare metal reset/recovery: enable your users to create recovery media</a>   <a href="#">Bare metal reset/recovery: create recovery media while deploying new devices</a>   <a href="#">Add a script to push-button reset features</a>   <a href="#">Create a provisioning package with Windows desktop applications</a>
<b>Configuration files</b>	<a href="#">ResetConfig XML reference</a>

CONTENT TYPE	REFERENCES
<b>Technologies used by push-button reset</b>	<a href="#">Windows Recovery Environment</a>   <a href="#">Windows PE (WinPE)</a>   <a href="#">ScanState</a>

# How push-button reset features work

6/6/2017 • 16 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

## Restoring the operating system and customizations

This section discusses the mechanisms Push-button reset features use to restore software on the PC.

### Restoring Windows

Push-button reset features restore Windows 10 by constructing a new copy of the OS using runtime system files located in the Windows Component Store (C:\Windows\WinSxS). This allows recovery to be possible even without a separate recovery image containing a backup copy of all system files.

In addition, push-button reset features restore Windows to an updated state rather than to the factory-preinstalled state. Specifically, the latest release or major update installed on the PC (such as Windows 10, version 1511) will be restored, while other updates installed after that are discarded.

This approach provides a balance between user experience in terms of the number of updates which need to be reinstalled and the features' effectiveness in addressing update problems. It also allows Windows to remove older system files which are no longer needed for runtime use or for recovery, freeing up disk space.

By default, non-major updates are not restored. To ensure that updates preinstalled during manufacturing are not discarded after recovery, they should be marked as permanent by using the /Cleanup-Image command in DISM with the /StartComponentCleanup and /ResetBase options. Updates marked as permanent are always restored during recovery.

### Restoring language packs

Language packs that are installed and used by at least one user account are restored. Other language packs are removed from the Windows Component Store seven days after the Out-of-Box Experience (OOBE). Using Push-button reset features after that will not restore the removed language packs.

On PCs running single-language editions of Windows, such as Windows 10 Home, users cannot download or install additional language packs, and they cannot use push-button reset features to switch languages if the preinstalled language packs have been removed.

### Restoring drivers

Drivers are restored in a similar fashion as the OS. Instead of restoring them from a recovery image, existing drivers are preserved across recovery. As with system files, drivers are restored to the state they were in when the most recent release or major update is installed. For example:

- If the customer performs recovery after booting up a new PC preinstalled with Windows 10, drivers that are present during OOBE will be restored, even if newer drivers have been installed since.
- If the customer performs recovery after upgrading from Windows 10 to Windows 10, version 1511, the drivers that are present during the upgrade will be restored, even if newer drivers have been installed since.

Device applets which are installed outside of the driver INF package are not restored as part of this process. They are restored to factory version and state in the same way as other customizations such as Windows desktop applications. (See Restoring other customizations for more information.) If the device applet must always stay in sync (version wise) with the driver, it is recommended that both the driver and the device applet be installed via the same INF package.

### Restoring previously installed Windows apps

Preinstalled Windows apps are always restored to their factory version and state. Instead of restoring them from a

recovery image, a copy of the Windows apps is automatically backed up when they are provisioned during image customization and manufacturing, and the backups are restored when Push-button reset features are used.

### Restoring other customizations

By default, Push-button reset features restore only OS files, drivers, and preinstalled Universal Windows apps. Different mechanisms are used to restore other customizations, such as settings and Windows desktop applications.

- **Windows desktop applications** can be captured using the User State Migration Tool's (USMT) ScanState utility into a reference device data image within a provisioning package. Push-button reset features look for and automatically restore this provisioning package from a well-known location.
- **Settings common to all editions of Windows 10** (including Windows 10 Mobile) can be set using the Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer (ICD) tool and stored in provisioning packages. Push-button reset features look for and automatically restore these provisioning packages from a well-known location. Alternatively, these settings can be restored using a combination of an unattend file and extensibility scripts for Push-button reset.
- **Settings specific to editions of Windows 10 for desktop editions (Home, Pro, Enterprise, and Education)** can be restored using a combination of an unattend file and extensibility scripts for Push-button reset. Examples of these settings include manufacturer support information, manufacturer logos and Start Menu layout.

### Note

Many of the settings customizations allowed or required by the OPD are specific to Windows 10 for desktop, and cannot be stored in provisioning packages created using Windows ICD. For Windows 10 RTM, the use of an unattend file and Push-button reset extensibility scripts is recommended for restoring all settings customizations during recovery. The use of provisioning packages created using Windows ICD is completely optional.

## Refresh your PC

### The Refresh your PC feature can be summarized in the following steps:

1. PC boots into the Windows Recovery Environment (Windows RE).
2. **EXTENSIBILITY POINT A:** OEMs can optionally add a script here. (See [Extensibility points](#) later in this topic).
3. User accounts, settings, and data are gathered and moved to a temporary location.
4. A new copy of the OS is constructed in a temporary location using files from the Windows Component Store.
5. Customizations stored in provisioning packages under C:\Recovery\Customizations are applied to the new OS.
6. Drivers are copied from the existing OS and injected into the new OS.
7. Preinstalled Windows apps are restored from their backup location.
8. System-critical settings are applied to the new OS.
9. Existing OS is moved to C:\Windows.old.
10. New OS is moved to the root of the OS volume.
11. **EXTENSIBILITY POINT B:** OEMs can optionally add a script here. (See [Extensibility points](#) later in this topic).
12. PC reboots to the new OS.
13. During first boot, user data and settings are reapplied.

### Preserved settings

The **Refresh your PC** feature preserves a number of system and user settings that are required to keep the system running while minimizing the need for users to reconfigure their PCs.

Preserved settings can be broadly categorized into one of the following categories:

- Are required for users to log on to their PCs after running the **Refresh your PC** feature.
- Affect how users access their documents and personal files.

- Are difficult for most users to recreate.
- Affect system security or user privacy.
- Personalize the PC.

The preserved settings are summarized as follows:

- User accounts (local, domain, Microsoft account), and group memberships
- Domain settings
- Windows Update settings
- Library settings
- Lock screen background
- Desktop themes
- International settings
- Wireless network profiles
- Settings configured in Windows Welcome

## User data

Because user data can be stored in many locations, the **Refresh your PC** feature preserves most folders and files that are not part of a standard Windows installation. The **Refresh your PC** feature refreshes the following system locations and does not preserve the contents.

- \Windows
- \Program Files
- \Program Files(x86)
- \ProgramData
- \Users\<user name>\AppData (in each user profile)

**Note** Some applications store user data in the \AppData folder in user profiles. The \AppData folders are available in C:\Windows.old after using the **Refresh your PC** feature.

The **Refresh your PC** feature bypasses the following locations and preserves the contents:

- File History versioning data
- All files and folders on non-OS partitions

## Windows Applications

The Refresh your PC feature handles application types differently in order to ensure that the PC can be restored to a reliable state. Applications are handled as follows:

- User-acquired Windows apps from the Windows Store are not preserved. Users will need to reinstall them from the Windows Store. This is a change from Windows 8/8.1.
- Preinstalled Windows apps are restored to their factory version and state. Updates to these apps will be downloaded and reapplied automatically when internet connectivity is available.
- User-acquired Windows desktop applications are not preserved. Users will need to reinstall them manually.
- Preinstalled Windows desktop applications captured in the customizations provisioning package will be restored to their factory condition, even if users have previously uninstalled them.

The **Refresh your PC** feature does not preserve user-installed Windows desktop applications by default, and locations that are commonly used for storing application settings (\AppData and \ProgramData) are deleted. Manufacturers can leverage the push-button reset extensibility points to save and later restore specific application settings and data, if necessary.

## Reset your PC

## The Reset your PC feature can be summarized in the following steps:

1. PC boots into the Windows Recovery Environment (Windows RE).
2. User accounts, data and installed Windows apps and Windows desktop applications are removed from the OS volume.
3. Data volumes are formatted (if requested by the user).
4. Data erasure is performed on OS and data volumes (if requested by the user).
5. **EXTENSIBILITY POINT C**: OEMs can optionally add a script here. (See [Extensibility points](#) later in this topic).
6. A new copy of the OS is constructed in a temporary location using files from the Windows Component Store.
7. Customizations stored in provisioning packages under C:\Recovery\Customizations are applied to the new OS.
8. Drivers are copied from the existing OS and injected into the new OS.
9. Preinstalled Universal Windows apps are restored from their backup location.
10. Existing OS is removed.
11. New OS is moved to the root of the OS volume.
12. **EXTENSIBILITY POINT D**: OEMs can optionally add a script here. (See [Extensibility points](#) later in this topic).
13. PC reboots to the new OS.
14. OOBE starts.

### Data removal options

When users use the **Reset your PC** feature, they will be presented with options that affect the way that their data is removed from the PC.

- If the PC has more than one user-accessible hard drive volumes, users can choose to remove data from all volumes or only the Windows volume.

The Windows volume is never formatted, as the files needed to rebuild the OS are on it. Instead, user data files are deleted individually.

If user chooses to remove data from all volumes, the data volumes are formatted.

- Users can choose to simply delete their files or to also perform data erasure on the drive(s) so that recovery of the data by someone else is much more difficult.

Manufacturers must configure custom utility partitions as follows to ensure these partitions are not affected by the reset process.

- For UEFI-based PCs, utility partitions on GUID Partition Table (GPT) disks should have the GPT\_ATTRIBUTE\_PLATFORM\_REQUIRED attribute set. See [PARTITION\\_INFORMATION\\_GPT structure](#) for more information on GPT partition attributes.
- For BIOS-based PCs, utility partitions on Master Boot Record (MBR) disks must be of a type other than 0x7, 0x0c, 0x0b, 0x0e, 0x06, and 0x42.

The time it takes to perform data erasure depends on drive speed, partition size, and whether the drive is encrypted using Windows BitLocker Drive Encryption. The data erasure functionality is targeted at consumers and does not meet government and industry data erasure standards.

If [Compact OS](#) is enabled on the OS before the reset, Compact OS will remain enabled after the PC has been reset.

## Bare metal recovery

If the user needs to replace their hard drive or completely wipe it, they can use bootable recovery media to perform bare metal recovery. Bare metal recovery removes all existing partitions on the system disk and recreates all partitions, before restoring software onto the PC. Two types of recovery media are supported:

- **User-created recovery media** using the [Create a recovery drive](#) utility in Windows 10. This backs up the

files needed to restore the PC to a pristine state.

- **Manufacturer-created recovery media** for support and refurbishing scenarios by placing a recovery image on a piece of bootable Windows RE media.

## **When user-created recovery media are used, the bare metal recovery feature can be summarized in the following steps:**

1. The system disk is identified.
2. All partitions from the system disk are removed.
3. Data erasure is performed on the system disk (if requested by the user).
4. Factory or default partition layout is recreated on the system disk.
5. All partitions are formatted.
6. Recovery files from recovery media are copied to the OS volume.
7. A new copy of the OS is constructed at the root of the OS volume.
8. Customizations stored in provisioning packages are applied.
9. Drivers are injected into the new OS.
10. Preinstalled Windows apps are restored.
11. Boot files are configured on the system partition.
12. PC reboots to the new OS.
13. OOBE starts.

### **Data removal options**

When users use the bare metal recovery feature, they can choose to perform data erasure on the entire system disk before the factory partition layout is reapplied. On most PCs, this data erasure process is done in software, writing cryptographically random patterns to the entire LBA range of the system disk once.

However, on certain hardware configurations, the data erasure process is performed by the storage device's hardware controller. This often takes less time to complete and is usually more thorough in removing remnant data. Hardware-based data erasure is supported on PCs with storage devices which meet the following criteria:

- eMMC
- Supports the Secure Trim and Sanitize commands

### **System disk selection**

Bare metal recovery automatically identifies the system disk using the following methods:

- Adaptor location path and GUID of the system disk are written to a UEFI variable during OOBE.
  - Performed only when both the system and Windows partitions are on the system disk.
  - The variable is updated if necessary when Windows RE gets disabled and then re-enabled.
- During bare metal recovery, if multiple internal disks are detected, the system disk is searched in this order:
  - Disk with GUID matching the value stored in the UEFI variable.
  - Disk with location path matching the value stored in firmware.
  - Disk with an existing ESP.
    - If multiple disks with ESP are found, bare metal recovery will not proceed.
  - Uninitialized (raw) disk.
    - If multiple uninitialized disks are found, bare metal recovery will not proceed.
- On legacy BIOS/MBR systems, the BIOS-reported system disk is used.

### **User-created recovery media**

When users create USB recovery media using the Create a recovery drive utility, the resulting media always contain

a bootable copy of Windows RE. This gives users access to troubleshooting and recovery tools when booting from recovery media.

Users can optionally back up files required to perform bare metal recovery. When the option is selected, the following are copied onto the USB recovery media as well:

- Windows Component Store
- Installed drivers
- Backup of preinstalled Windows apps
- Provisioning packages containing preinstalled customizations (under C:\Recovery\Customizations)
- Push-button Reset configuration XML and scripts (under C:\Recovery\OEM)

### Manufacturer-created recovery media

Bare metal recovery supports the use of a recovery WIM image when the media are prepared by manufacturers. This type of media is primarily used in support and refurbishing scenarios.

Manufacturer-created media must contain the following:

1. A bootable Windows RE image.
2. A Push-button reset-compatible recovery image (install.wim).
3. A Push-button reset configuration file (Resetconfig.xml) which specifies disk partitioning information.
4. A DISKPART script to perform partitioning of the disk.

### Extensibility points for push-button reset features

Push-button reset provides extensibility points where manufacturers can insert custom operations when a user runs the **Refresh your PC** and **Reset your PC** features.

See the sections above to see where the custom operations that can be executed for these features appear.

The extensibility points for **Refresh your PC** are summarized in the following table:

Ext. point	System state	Example usage
A	Settings and data to be migrated have been moved to a temporary location	Copy files, drivers, or settings that are not migrated by default when the user runs the Refresh your PC feature.
B	The OS has been rebuilt. Drivers and customizations have been reapplied. Only critical system settings have been migrated.	Restore customization files (e.g. unattend.xml, layoutmodification.xml), or files and settings you might have backed up at extensibility point A.

The extensibility points for **Reset your PC** are summarized in the following table:

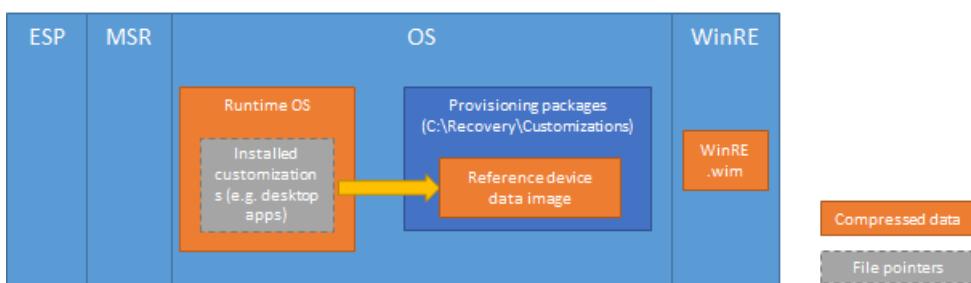
Ext. point	System state	Example usage
C	All user data have been removed from the Windows partition and data partitions have (optionally) been formatted.	Reconfigure data partitions if needed. <b>Important</b> Do not modify the Windows partition.
D	The OS has been rebuilt. Drivers and customizations have been reapplied.	Restore customization files (e.g. unattend.xml, layoutmodification.xml), or apply additional customizations.

# Compact OS

Compact OS is a collection of technologies which allow Windows 10 to be deployed on PCs with storage capacity as low as 16 gigabytes (GB). The following two technologies in particular work in conjunction with the Push-button reset changes to reduce Windows' disk footprint:

- Per-file compression When applying a reference image file (WIM) to a PC, the files written to the disk can be compressed individually using the XPRESS Huffman codec. This is the same codec used by the WIMBoot technology in Windows 8.1. When Push-button reset features rebuilds the OS, the runtime system files remain compressed.
- Single-instancing of installed customizations After the installed customizations (e.g. Windows desktop applications) have been captured (using ScanState) into a reference device data image stored inside a provisioning package, the two copies of the customizations can be singled-instanced to reduce disk footprint impact. This is accomplished by converting the installed customizations (e.g. C:\Program Files\Foo\Foo.exe) into file pointers linked to the contents of the reference device data image.

The following diagram illustrates the high-level content layout of PCs with Compact OS enabled:



Both technologies are optional and can be configured during deployment.

## Updating the on-disk Windows Recovery Environment

In Windows 10, the on-disk copy of Windows RE can be serviced as part of rollup updates for the OS. Not all rollup updates will service Windows RE.

Unlike the normal OS update process, updates for Windows RE do not directly service the on-disk Windows RE image (winre.wim). Instead, a newer version of the Windows RE image replaces the existing one, with the following contents being injected or migrated into the new image:

- Boot critical and input device drivers from the full OS environment are added to the new Windows RE image.
- Windows RE customizations under \Sources\Recovery of the mounted winre.wim are migrated to the new image.

The following contents from the existing Windows RE image are not migrated to the new image:

- Drivers which are in the existing Windows RE image but not in the full OS environment
- Windows PE optional components which are not part of the default Windows RE image
- Language packs for Windows PE and optional components

The Windows RE update process makes every effort to reuse the existing Windows RE partition without any modification. However, in some rare situations where the new Windows RE image (along with the migrated/injected contents) does not fit in the existing Windows RE partition, the update process will behave as follows:

- If the existing Windows RE partition is located immediately after the Windows partition, the Windows partition will be shrunk and space will be added to the Windows RE partition. The new Windows RE image will be installed onto the expanded Windows RE partition.
- If the existing Windows RE partition is not located immediately after the Windows partition, the Windows

partition will be shrunk and a new Windows RE partition will be created. The new Windows RE image will be installed onto this new Windows RE partition. The existing Windows RE partition will be orphaned.

- If the existing Windows RE partition cannot be reused and the Windows partition cannot successfully be shrunk, the new Windows RE image will be installed onto the Windows partition. The existing Windows RE partition will be orphaned.

**Important** To ensure that your customizations continue to work after Windows RE has been updated, they must not depend on functionalities provided by Windows PE optional components which are not in the default Windows RE image (e.g. WinPE-NetFX). To facilitate development of Windows RE customizations, the WinPE-HTA optional component has been added to the default Windows RE image in Windows 10.

**Note** The new Windows RE image deployed as part of the rollup update contains language resources only for the system default language, even if the existing Windows RE image contains resources for multiple languages. On most PCs, the system default language is the language selected at the time of OOB.

# Recovery components

6/6/2017 • 7 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Push-button reset features by default restore only drivers (installed through INF packages) and preinstalled Windows apps. To configure the features to restore other customizations such as settings and Windows desktop applications, you will need to prepare one or more customization packages which contain the customizations. These customizations packages are in the form of provisioning packages (.ppkg).

Push-button reset features look for and automatically restore provisioning packages which are located in the folder C:\Recovery\Customizations.

To protect the packages from tampering or accidental deletion, the Write/Modify permissions of C:\Recovery\Customizations should be restricted to the local Administrators user group.

Some settings and customizations cannot be included in provisioning packages. Instead, you can restore them using an unattend file applied using the Push-button reset extensibility scripts. For settings which are supported by both provisioning packages and unattend, it is recommended that you specify them using only one of the mechanisms, not both. To learn more, see [How push-button reset features work](#).

## Capturing Windows desktop applications using Windows User State Migration Tool (USMT)'s ScanState tool

The Windows User State Migration Tool (USMT) ScanState.exe has been updated in Windows 10 to support capturing Windows desktop applications applications. This functionality can be activated by specifying the `/apps` option.

When `/apps` is specified, ScanState uses a set of application discovery rules to determine what should be captured, and stores the output as a reference device data image inside a provisioning package. In general, the reference device data includes the following:

- Windows desktop applications installed using either Microsoft Windows Installer or other installers
- All files and folders outside of the Windows namespace (in other words, outside of \Windows, \Program Files, \Program Files (x86), \ProgramData, and \Users). This applies only to the volume on which Windows is installed.
- Not captured: Windows apps.
- Not captured: User state/data.

You can also specify additional rules to include or exclude specific files, folders, and registry settings. For example, if you are using ScanState during factory deployment, you might need to exclude manufacturing-specific tools so that they will not be restored when end users use Push-button reset features. To specify additional rules, you will need to author a migration XML and specify the `/i` option when using ScanState.exe.

ScanState's `/apps` option also supports the following optional parameters:

PARAMETER	USE
-----------	-----

PARAMETER	USE
<code>+/-sysdrive</code>	<p>Specifies whether applications, files, and folders outside of the Windows namespace should be captured.</p> <p>If <code>+sysdrive</code> is specified, all contents on the system drive are examined and eligible to be captured according to the discovery rules.</p> <p>If <code>-sysdrive</code> is specified, only contents within the Windows namespace are examined and eligible to be captured according to the discovery rules.</p> <p><code>+sysdrive</code> is the default.</p>
<code>+/-oeminfo</code>	<p>Specifies whether the OEM-specific help and support info should be captured.</p> <p>If <code>+oeminfo</code> is specified, OEM and support info are captured.</p> <p>If <code>-oeminfo</code> is specified, OEM and support info are not captured.</p> <p><code>+oeminfo</code> is the default.</p>

## Important

- Although push-button reset features can restore multiple provisioning packages, only one of the packages can contain reference device data image captured using ScanState.
- ScanState should be used only after all customizations have been applied to the PC. It does not support appending additional changes to an existing reference device data image.
- A provisioning package captured using ScanState.exe can only be applied using push-button reset features and deployment media created using Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer (ICD). It cannot be applied using tools such as DISM or USMT's LoadState.exe.
- When you prepare ScanState for capturing customizations, you should exclude Windows Defender settings to prevent possible failures during recovery that can be caused by file conflicts. For more information, see Step 1 in [Deploy push-button reset features](#).

## Creating customization packages using Windows ICD

For customizations involving settings which apply to all editions of Windows 10 (including Windows 10 Mobile), you can create provisioning packages using the Windows ICD.

In build-to-stock (BTS) scenarios, if you have already captured your Windows desktop applications from your reference PC using the ScanState tool, you can import the output provisioning package into Windows ICD and specify additional settings which should be restored during recovery.

## Restoring settings using unattend.xml and extensibility scripts

Most settings which are configured using unattend.xml and other configuration files (e.g. oobe.xml, LayoutModification.xml) cannot be restored using provisioning packages. Instead, you will need to use the Push-button reset extensibility points in order to restore them during recovery. These extensibility points allow you run scripts which can:

- Inject an unattend.xml into the recovered OS
- Copy other configuration files and assets into the recovered OS

## Important

- You should not use unattend.xml (or other mechanisms) to boot the recovered OS into Audit Mode. The recovered OS must remain configured to boot to OOBE.
- A copy of the configuration files and assets which need to be restored must be placed under C:\Recovery\OEM. Contents in this folder are not modified by push-button reset features and are automatically backed up to recovery media created using the **Create a recovery drive** utility. To protect the unattend.xml and configuration files/assets from tampering or accidental deletion, Write/Modify permissions of C:\Recovery\OEM should be restricted to the local Administrators user group.

To learn how to author scripts to be run using extensibility points, see [Add a script to push-button reset features](#).

To learn how to use ScanState to capture and store the resulting PPKG under C:\Recovery\Customizations, which is restored automatically during PBR, see [Deploy push-button reset features using ScanState](#).

## Recovery strategies for common customizations

The following table outlines the recovery strategy for common customizations which are described in the User Experience Windows Engineering Guide (UX WEG) as well as those covered in the OEM Policy Document (OPD). For up-to-date details on these customizations, refer to the latest version of the UX WEG and OPD.

CUSTOMIZATION	HOW IT IS CONFIGURED	HOW IT CAN BE RESTORED DURING PBR
OOBE – HID pairing	Settings in the <hidSetup> section of OOBE.xml and images (e.g. .png files)	Use PBR extensibility script to restore OOBE.xml and images from C:\Recovery\OEM
OOBE – OEM EULA	<Eulafilename> setting in OOBE.xml and license terms .rtf file(s) stored under %WINDIR%\System32\Oobe\Info	Use PBR extensibility script to restore OOBE.xml and .rtf files from C:\Recovery\OEM
OOBE – Preconfigured language and time zone	Settings in the <defaults> section of OOBE.xml	Use PBR extensibility script to restore OOBE.xml from C:\Recovery\OEM
OOBE – Hide mobile broadband page	Microsoft-Windows-WwanUI   NotInOOBE setting in unattend.xml	Use PBR extensibility scripts to restore unattend.xml from C:\Recovery\OEM
OOBE – OEM Registration page	Settings in the <registration> section of OOBE.xml and HTML files for in-place links	Use PBR extensibility script to restore OOBE.xml and HTML files from C:\Recovery\OEM
Start – Pinned tiles and groups	LayoutModification.xml stored under %SYSTEMDRIVE%\Users\Default\AppData\Local\Microsoft\Windows\Shell or settings under Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup   StartTiles in unattend.xml	Use PBR extensibility scripts to restore LayoutModification.xml or unattend.xml from C:\Recovery\OEM
Start – Prepopulated MFU list	LayoutModification.xml stored under %SYSTEMDRIVE%\Users\Default\AppData\Local\Microsoft\Windows\Shell	Use PBR extensibility scripts to restore LayoutModification.xml from C:\Recovery\OEM

CUSTOMIZATION	HOW IT IS CONFIGURED	HOW IT CAN BE RESTORED DURING PBR
Continuum – Form factor	Settings in unattend.xml: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Microsoft-Windows-Deployment   DeviceForm</li><li>• Microsoft-Windows-GPIOBUTTONS   ConvertibleSlateMode</li></ul>	Use PBR extensibility scripts to restore unattend.xml from C:\Recovery\OEM
Continuum – Default mode	Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup   SignInMode setting in unattend.xml	Use PBR extensibility scripts to restore unattend.xml from C:\Recovery\OEM
Desktop – Default and additional accent colors	RunSynchronous command in unattend.xml which adds the AGRB hex color values to the registry under HKLM\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Themes\Accents	Use PBR extensibility scripts to restore unattend.xml from C:\Recovery\OEM
Desktop – Background image	Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup   Themes   DesktopBackground setting in unattend.xml and image (e.g. jpg/png/.bmp file)	Use PBR extensibility scripts to restore unattend.xml and background image file from C:\Recovery\OEM
Desktop – Pinned taskbar items	Settings under Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup   TaskbarLinks in unattend.xml and shortcut (.lnk) files stored in a folder under %ALLUSERSPROFILE%\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs</td>	Use PBR extensibility scripts to restore unattend.xml and .lnk files from C:\Recovery\OEM
Desktop – Systray icons	Settings under Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup   NotificationArea in unattend.xml	Use PBR extensibility scripts to restore unattend.xml from C:\Recovery\OEM
Mobile broadband – Rename "WiFi" to "WLAN" in network list	Microsoft-Windows-SystemSettings   WiFiToWlan setting in unattend.xml	Use PBR extensibility scripts to restore unattend.xml from C:\Recovery\OEM
Mobile broadband – Enable Network Selection control in Settings	Microsoft-Windows-SystemSettings   DisplayNetworkSelection setting in unattend.xml	Use PBR extensibility scripts to restore unattend.xml from C:\Recovery\OEM
PC Settings – Preinstalled settings apps	Settings apps are preinstalled in the same way as any other app, and automatically appear in Settings. Capability declared in the app manifest determines whether it is a settings app or not.	Restored automatically along with other preinstalled apps
Default browser and handlers of protocols	Default application association settings XML file imported using the /Import-DefaultAppAssociations command in DISM	Use PBR extensibility scripts to re-import the XML from C:\Recovery\OEM using DISM
Support information in Contact Support app	Settings under Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup   OEMInformation in unattend.xml and logo.bmp file	Use PBR extensibility scripts to restore unattend.xml and .bmp file from C:\Recovery\OEM

CUSTOMIZATION	HOW IT IS CONFIGURED	HOW IT CAN BE RESTORED DURING PBR
Store content modifier	Microsoft-Windows-Store-Client-UI   StoreContentModifier setting in unattend.xml	Use PBR extensibility scripts to restore unattend.xml from C:\Recovery\OEM
Windows desktop applications (including driver applets installed via setup.exe)	MSI or custom installers	Use ScanState to capture and store the resulting PPKG under C:\Recovery\Customizations, which is restored automatically during PBR.
RDX contents	See UX WEG for details	Should not be restored during PBR

# Deploy push-button reset features

7/13/2017 • 13 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Push-button reset features are included with Windows 10 for desktop editions (Home, Pro, Enterprise, and Education), though you'll need to perform additional steps to deploy PCs with the following customizations.

- Windows desktop applications
- Windows settings, such as customized OOBE screens or Start Menus.
- Customized partition layouts.

These steps also show you how to add your own scripts during a reset to capture logs or perform other cleanup tasks.

## Prerequisites

To complete these procedures, you'll need a technician PC which has Windows 10 and the following Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (ADK) for Windows 10 components installed:

- Deployment Tools
- Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE)
- Imaging and Configuration Designer (ICD)
- User State Migration Tool (USMT)

You'll also need:

- A destination PC with drive size of 100 GB or larger
- A Windows 10 for desktop editions image (install.wim)
- A Windows RE boot image (Winre.wim) (You'll extract this from a Windows 10 image).

For an overview of the entire deployment process, see the [Desktop manufacturing guide](#).

Use the follow steps to prepare the ScanState tool to capture Windows desktop applications after they have been installed:

### Step 1: Prepare the ScanState tool

1. On the technician PC, copy the Windows ADK files from Windows User State Migration Tool (USMT) and Windows Setup to a working folder. You'll need to match the architecture of the destination device. You don't need to copy the subfolders.

```
md C:\ScanState_amd64
xcopy /E "C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\User State Migration Tool\amd64" C:\ScanState_amd64
xcopy /E /Y "C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Setup\amd64\Sources" C:\ScanState_amd64
```

2. Copy the contents of the working folder to a network location or USB flash drive.

Use the following steps to customize your Windows RE boot image if additional drivers and language packs are needed.

### Step 2: Extract and customize the Windows RE boot image (optional)

1. On the technician PC, click **Start**, and type deployment. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
2. In **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment**, create the folder structure to store the Windows image and its mount point.

```
Mkdir C:\OS_image\mount
```

3. Create the folder structure to store the Windows RE boot image and its mount point.

```
Mkdir C:\winre_amd64\mount
```

4. Mount the Windows image (install.wim) to the folder \OS\_image\mount by using DISM.

```
Dism /mount-image /imagefile:C:\OS_image\install.wim /index:1 /mountdir:C:\OS_image\mount
```

where `Index:1` is the index of the selected image in the Install.wim file.

5. Copy the Windows RE image from the mounted Windows image to the new folder.

```
xcopy /H C:\OS_image\mount\windows\system32\recovery\winre.wim C:\winre_amd64
```

6. Unmount the Windows image. Tip: If you haven't made any other changes in the Windows image, you can unmount the image faster by using the `/discard` option.

```
Dism /unmount-image /mountdir:C:\OS_image\mount /discard
```

7. Mount the Windows RE boot image for editing.

```
Dism /mount-image /imagefile:C:\winre_amd64\winre.wim /index:1 /mountdir:C:\winre_amd64\mount
```

where `Index:1` is the number of the selected image in the Winre.wim file.

Once the Winre.wim file is extracted from the Install.wim file, you can customize the Windows RE boot image.

8. Add language packs, boot-critical device drivers, and input device drivers to the Windows RE boot image.  
To learn more, see [Customize Windows RE](#).
9. Commit your customizations and unmount the image.

```
Dism /unmount-image /mountdir:C:\winre_amd64\mount /commit
```

If you are planning to customize only the settings common to all editions of Windows 10 (including Windows 10 Mobile), use the following steps to create a provisioning package which specifies settings to be restored during recovery:

### **Step 3: Create a provisioning package with settings to be restored (optional)**

1. On the technician PC, start Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer (ICD).
2. Click **File > New Project**.
3. Enter a project name and description, and then click **Next**

4. In the **Select project workflow** step, select the **Provisioning Package** option, and then click **Next**.
5. In the **Choose which settings to view and configure** step, select the **Common to all Windows editions** option, and then click **Next**.
6. In the **Import a provisioning package (optional)** step, click **Finish** to create the new project.
7. Use the **Available customizations** pane to add settings and specify the defaults which should be restored during recovery. The settings will appear in the **Selected customizations** pane.
8. Click **Export > Provisioning package**.
9. In the **Describe the provisioning package** step, click **Next**.
10. In the **Select the security details for the provisioning package** step, click **Next**.
11. In the **Select where to save the provisioning package** step, enter a location to save the package (such as a network share) and then click **Next**.
12. Click **Build** to create the provisioning package.
13. After the provisioning package is created, click **Finish**.

If your customizations include settings specific to editions of Windows 10 for desktop editions, use the following steps to create an unattend.xml which specifies the settings to be restored during recovery:

#### **Step 4: Create an unattend file to restore settings (optional)**

1. On the technician PC, start **Windows System Image Manager**.
2. Click **File > Select Windows image**.
3. When prompted to create a catalog file, click **Yes**.
4. Use the **Windows Image** and **Answer File** panes to add settings to the Specialize or oobeSystem phase (or both), and specify the defaults which should be restored during recovery.
5. Click **Tool > Validate Answer File** to check for errors. Correct any problem identified.
6. Click **File > Save Answer File**. Enter a location to save the answer file (such as a network share) and then click **Save**.

If you plan to use Push-button reset's extensibility points, use the following steps to prepare your extensibility scripts and register them using a Push-button reset configuration file.

**Important** If you have created an unattend file, you must also create a script to reapply it using the BasicReset\_AfterImageApply and FactoryReset\_AfterImageApply extensibility points.

#### **Step 5: Prepare push-button reset extensibility scripts (optional)**

1. Create scripts (.cmd) or executables (.exe) to run at the available extensibility points when the Refresh your PC feature runs:
  - A: At BasicReset\_BeforeImageApply
  - B: At BasicReset\_AfterImageApply
2. Create scripts (.cmd) or executables (.exe) to run at the available extensibility points when the Reset your PC feature runs:
  - C: At FactoryReset\_AfterDiskFormat
  - D: At FactoryReset\_AfterImageApply
3. Save the scripts to a network location, or USB flash drive.
4. Create a ResetConfig.xml file that specifies the location of the scripts that you created for the four extensibility points. For example:

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<Reset>
 <Run Phase="BasicReset_BeforeImageApply">
 <Path>Fabrikam\SampleScript_A.cmd</Path>
 <Duration>2</Duration>
 </Run>
 <Run Phase="BasicReset_AfterImageApply">
 <Path>Fabrikam\SampleScript_B.cmd</Path>
 <Param></Param>
 <Duration>2</Duration>
 </Run>
 <Run Phase="FactoryReset_AfterDiskFormat">
 <Path>Fabrikam\SampleScript_C.cmd</Path>
 <Duration>2</Duration>
 </Run>
 <Run Phase="FactoryReset_AfterImageApply">
 <Path>Fabrikam\SampleScript_D.cmd</Path>
 <Param></Param>
 <Duration>2</Duration>
 </Run>
</Reset>

```

**Important** If you use a text editor to author the ResetConfig.xml file, save the document with an .xml file name extension and use **UTF-8 encoding**. Do not use Unicode or ANSI.

- Save the ResetConfig.xml file together with the extensibility scripts that you created.

#### Step 6: Create bare-metal recovery configuration (optional)

- To specify the partition layout to be used when users perform bare metal recovery using recovery media created from their PCs, modify resetconfig.xml to include the following elements:

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<Reset>
 <SystemDisk>
 <MinSize>160000</MinSize>
 <DiskpartScriptPath>ReCreatePartitions.txt</DiskpartScriptPath>
 <OSPartition>3</OSPartition>
 <WindowsREPartition>4</WindowsREPartition>
 <WindowsREPath>Recovery\WindowsRE</WindowsREPath>
 <Compact>False</Compact>
 </SystemDisk>
</Reset>

```

- MinSize** - Specifies the minimum size of the system disk in megabytes (MB). Recovery process will not proceed if the system disk does not meet this minimum size.
- DiskpartScriptPath** - Path to Diskpart script relative to install.wim location. The script should assume that all existing partitions have been deleted, and the system disk has focus in Diskpart.
- OSPartition** - The partition to which the recovery image should be applied must be specified. The ESP or active partition must be on the same disk as the OS.
- WindowsREPartition; WindowsREPath** – (Optional) The location in which WinRE should be staged. The WinRE boot image on the media will be copied and registered with the OS. (Same as running "reagentc.exe /setreimage")

If partitioning information is not specified in resetconfig.xml, users can still perform bare metal recovery using media they have created. However, the default/recommended partition layout for Windows 10 will be used instead.

#### Step 7: Create a diskpart script for initial deployment

1. Create a disk partitioning script for initial deployment.

**UEFI example:**

```
rem These commands are used with DiskPart tool.
rem Erase the drive and create four partitions
rem for a UEFI/GPT-based PC.
select disk 0
clean
convert gpt
rem == 1. System Partition =====
create partition efi size=100
rem ***NOTE: For 4KB-per-sector drives, change
rem this value to size=260.***
format quick fs=fat32 label="System"
assign letter="S"
rem == 2. Microsoft Reserved (MSR) Partition =====
create partition msr size=16
rem == 3. Windows Partition =====
rem == a. Create Windows Partition =====
create partition primary
rem == b. Create space for Windows RE tools partition
shrink minimum=450
rem == c. Prepare the Windows partition
format quick fs=ntfs label="Windows"
assign letter="W"
rem == 4. Windows RE Tools Partition =====
create partition primary
format quick fs=ntfs label="Windows RE tools"
set id=de94bba4-06d1-4d40-a16a-bfd50179d6ac
assign letter="T"
exit
```

**BIOS example:**

```
rem These commands are used with DiskPart to
rem erase the drive and create three partitions
rem for a BIOS/MBR-based PC.
rem Adjust the partition sizes to fill the drive.
select disk 0
clean
rem == 1. System Partition =====
create partition primary size=100
format quick fs=ntfs label="System"
assign letter="S"
active
rem == 2. Windows Partition =====
rem == a. Create Windows partition =====
create partition primary
rem == b. Create space for Windows RE tools partition ====
shrink minimum=450
rem == c. Prepare the Windows partition ====
format quick fs=ntfs label="Windows"
assign letter="W"
rem == 3. Windows RE Tools Partition =====
create partition primary
format quick fs=ntfs label="Windows RE tools"
set id=27
assign letter="R"
exit
```

2. Name the script CreatePartitions-UEFI or CreatePartitions-BIOS.txt, and save it to a network location, or USB flash drive. Note: In these Diskpart examples, the partitions are assigned the letters S:\, W:\, and T:\ to simplify partition identification. After the PC reboots, Windows PE automatically assigns the letter C:\ to

the Windows partition. The other partitions do not receive drive letters.

## Step 8: Create a diskpart script for bare-metal recovery (optional)

1. Create a diskpart script for bare-metal recovery.

**Important** The diskpart script used for bare metal recovery should not include a `select disk` or `clean` command. The system disk will be selected automatically before the diskpart script is processed.

### UEFI example:

```
rem These commands are used with DiskPart tool.
rem Erase the drive and create five partitions
rem for a UEFI/GPT-based PC.
convert gpt
rem == 1. System Partition =====
create partition efi size=100
rem ***NOTE: For 4KB-per-sector drives, change
rem this value to size=260.***
format quick fs=fat32 label="System"
assign letter="S"
rem == 2. Microsoft Reserved (MSR) Partition =====
create partition msr size=16
rem == 3. Windows Partition =====
rem == a. Create Windows Partition =====
create partition primary
rem == b. Create space for Windows RE tools partition
shrink minimum=450
rem == c. Prepare the Windows partition
format quick fs=ntfs label="Windows"
assign letter="W"
rem == 4. Windows RE Tools Partition =====
create partition primary
format quick fs=ntfs label="Windows RE tools"
set id=de94bba4-06d1-4d40-a16a-bfd50179d6ac
assign letter="T"
exit
```

### BIOS example:

```
rem These commands are used with DiskPart to
rem erase the drive and create three partitions
rem for a BIOS/MBR-based PC.
rem Adjust the partition sizes to fill the drive.
rem == 1. System Partition =====
create partition primary size=100
format quick fs=ntfs label="System"
assign letter="S"
active
rem == 2. Windows Partition =====
rem == a. Create Windows partition =====
create partition primary
rem == b. Create space for Windows RE tools partition ====
shrink minimum=450
rem == c. Prepare the Windows partition ====
format quick fs=ntfs label="Windows"
assign letter="W"
rem == 3. Windows RE Tools Partition =====
create partition primary
format quick fs=ntfs label="Windows RE tools"
set id=27
assign letter="R"
exit
```

2. Name the script RecreatePartitions-UEFI.txt or RecreatePartitions-BIOS.txt, and save it to the same network location, or USB flash drive as create partitions.

### Step 9: Deploy and customize Windows

1. On the destination PC, boot to Windows PE.
2. At the Windows PE command prompt, run the script to create the recommended hard drive partitions.

```
Diskpart /s N:\CreatePartitions.txt
```

where N:\CreatePartition is the location of the file.

3. Apply the Windows reference image to the Windows partition.

```
Dism /Apply-Image /ImageFile:N:\Install.wim /Index:1 /ApplyDir:W:\
```

Optional: You can also specify the /compact option so that the files written to disk are compressed. For example:

```
Dism /Apply-Image /ImageFile:N:\Install.wim /Index:1 /ApplyDir:W:\ /Compact:on
```

This is useful if you are deploying Windows onto PCs with limited storage capacity, but is not recommended on PCs with rotational storage devices.

4. Configure the system partition by using BCDboot.

```
W:\Windows\System32\Bcdboot W:\Windows
```

5. Create a folder in the Windows RE tools partition, and copy your custom Windows RE boot image to it.

```
Mkdir T:\Recovery\WindowsRE
xcopy /H N:\Winre.wim T:\Recovery\WindowsRE
```

where T:\ is the Windows RE tools partition.

**Important** You must store Winre.wim in \Recovery\WindowsRE.

6. Register the Windows RE boot image together with the Windows image.

```
W:\Windows\System32\Reagentc /setreimage /path T:\Recovery\WindowsRE /target W:\Windows
```

7. Use Diskpart to conceal the Windows RE tools (T:\) partition from Windows Explorer.

#### For UEFI-based PCs:

```
select disk 0
select partition 4
remove
set id=de94bba4-06d1-4d40-a16a-bfd50179d6ac
gpt attributes=0x8000000000000001
exit
```

#### For BIOS-based PCs:

```
select disk 0
select partition 3
remove
set id=27
exit
```

8. Customize the Windows image on the destination PC:
  - a. Perform offline customizations to the Windows image, such as installing INF-based driver packages specific to the destination PC, installing OS updates and language packs, or provisioning additional Windows apps.
  - b. Boot the destination PC to audit mode. This can be accomplished by using an answer file with the Microsoft-Windows-Deployment | Reseal | Mode = audit setting, or by first booting the PC to OOBE, and then pressing CTRL+SHIFT+F3.
  - c. Perform any remaining customizations such as installing applications and device software packages that are specific to the destination PC.
9. If you have installed OS updates, clean up the superseded components and mark the updates as permanent so that they will be restored during recovery:

```
DISM.exe /Cleanup-Image /StartComponentCleanup /ResetBase
```

## Step 10: Capture and deploy customizations for recovery

1. Use the ScanState tool to capture the installed customizations into a provisioning package. Use the /config option to specify one of the default configuration files included with the ADK, and save the .ppkg file in the folder C:\Recovery\Customizations.

```
N:\ScanState_amd64\scanstate.exe /apps /config:<path_to_config_file> /ppkg
C:\Recovery\Customizations\apps.ppkg /o /c /v:13 /l:C:\ScanState.log
```

where N:\ is the location of the ScanState tool installed in Step 1.

2. If you have used Windows ICD to create additional provisioning packages with customizations which should be restored during recovery, copy the packages to the destination PC. For example:

```
xcopy N:\RecoveryPPKG*.ppkg C:\Recovery\Customizations
```

where N:\ is the location where the additional provisioning packages are located.

3. Copy any Push-button reset configuration file (resetconfig.xml) and extensibility scripts to the destination PC, and then configure permissions to write/modify them. For example:

```
mkdir C:\Recovery\OEM
xcopy /E N:\RecoveryScripts* C:\Recovery\OEM
```

where N:\ is the location where the configuration file and scripts are located.

4. Restrict the Write/Modify permissions of the customizations, and hide the root folder. For example:

```
icacls C:\Recovery\Customizations /inheritance:r /T
icacls C:\Recovery\Customizations /grant:r SYSTEM:(F) /T
icacls C:\Recovery\Customizations / grant:r *S-1-5-32-544:(F) /T
icacls C:\Recovery\OEM /inheritance:r /T
icacls C:\Recovery\OEM /grant:r SYSTEM:(F) /T
icacls C:\Recovery\OEM / grant:r *S-1-5-32-544:(F) /T
attrib +H C:\Recovery
```

5. Use the Sysprep tool to reseal the Windows image without using the /generalize option.

```
Sysprep /oobe /exit
```

**Note** Important: You must configure the image that you are shipping to the customer to boot to OOB.

6. (Optional) To save space, you can also convert your installed Windows desktop applications into file pointers referencing the customizations package. To do so, boot the destination PC to Windows PE and run the following:

```
DISM /Apply-CustomDataImage /CustomDataImage:C:\Recovery\Customizations\USMT.ppkg /ImagePath:C:\ /SingleInstance
```

7. Shut down the destination PC for packaging and shipment. When the user starts the PC for the first time, it will boot to OOB.

## Step 11: Verify your customizations

1. Verify that your customizations are restored after recovery, and that they continue to function by running the Refresh your PC and Reset your PC features from the following entry points:

**Settings :** From the Start Menu, click **Settings > Update & security > Recovery**. Click the **Get Started** button under **Reset this PC** and follow the on-screen instructions.

**Windows RE:** From the Choose an option screen in Windows RE, click **Troubleshoot > Reset this PC** and then follow the on-screen instructions

2. **Verify that recovery media can be created, and verify its functionality by running the bare metal recovery feature:**

- a. Launch Create a recovery drive from Control Panel.
- b. Follow the on-screen instructions to create the USB recovery drive.
- c. Boot the PC from the USB recovery drive
- d. From the Choose an option screen, click **Troubleshoot**
- e. Click **Recover from a drive** and then follow the on-screen instructions

**Note** The Push-button reset UI has been redesigned in Windows 10. The **Keep my files** option in the UI now corresponds to the **Refresh your PC** feature, whereas the **Remove everything** option corresponds to the **Reset your PC** feature.

## Related topics

[ScanState Syntax](#)

[Bare metal reset/recovery: Create recovery media while deploying new devices](#)

[Deploy push-button reset features using ScanState](#)

# Add a script to push-button reset features

7/13/2017 • 7 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can customize the Push-button reset experience by configuring extensibility points. This enables you to run custom scripts, install additional applications, or preserve additional user or application data.

## Prerequisites

To configure extensibility points and customize the Push-button reset experience, you need the following.

- A configuration file named ResetConfig.xml
- Scripts that execute custom operations at selected extensibility points.
- Any additional files required by the scripts

Each script must meet the following requirements:

- Be an executable (.exe) or a command script (.cmd)
- Run without displaying a graphical user interface (GUI)
- Return either 0 to indicate a successful operation, or a non-zero value to indicate an unsuccessful operation

These files should be placed in the folder C:\Recovery\OEM, and will automatically be detected by Push-button reset features. It's OK to use subfolders.

## Step 1: Creating Configuration Files to Prepare for Recovery

### To create extensibility scripts

- In Notepad, you can create custom scripts to save or retrieve log files, check partitions, and to install applications.

#### Important

Your scripts must meet the following requirements:

- The scripts are formatted as a .cmd or .exe files.
- The scripts do not depend on Windows PE optional components not present in the default Windows RE image (winre.wim).
- The scripts do not depend on binaries (e.g. .exe or .dll files) not present in the default Windows RE image (winre.wim).
- The scripts run without displaying a graphical user interface (GUI).
- The scripts complete all intended functions within 5 minutes for each extensibility point.
- The script must not modify the drive letters. This can potentially cause the recovery to fail.

Your scripts must return a 0 (zero), if successful. If push-button reset receives a non-0 value, the following steps occur:

- **If running the Refresh your PC feature:** All system changes are rolled back. If the script or executable file is initiated from the Windows **PC settings** menu, the system reboots in Windows. If the script or executable file is initiated from Windows RE or the **Boot Options** menu, the system remains in Windows RE and displays an error message.
- **If running the Reset your PC feature:** The failure is ignored. The script or executable file proceeds to the next step in the reset process and logs the failure.

You can use the following locations for storage, if needed.

- **Windows PE RAM drive (X:)**. This virtual drive is created by Windows PE, and stays active during the **Refresh your PC** process. You can use it with the **Refresh your PC** feature to save data before the partition is refreshed, and to restore the data after the partition refresh is complete. The amount of available memory is limited to the amount of RAM on the system, minus the amount of RAM needed for the Windows RE tools when fully expanded. For instructions about mounting Windows RE and determining the fully-expanded file size, see [Customize Windows RE](#).
- **Designated OEM partition**. You can leave extra room on a partition. For example, you can leave room on the recovery image partition, and use scripts to temporarily assign a drive letter and then save files to that partition. However, if your user uses the recovery media to repartition the disks, the data on these partitions might be lost during the recovery process.

**\*\*Example 1: Saving Log Files\*\***

This example script preserves files that would otherwise be removed, by placing them in a temporary location in memory, to be retrieved by another sample script, **\*\*RetrieveLogFiles.cmd\*\***.

```
...
:rem == SaveLogFiles.cmd

:rem == This sample script preserves files that would
:rem otherwise be removed by placing them in a
:rem temporary location in memory, to be retrieved by
:rem RetrieveLogFiles.cmd.

:rem == 1. Use the registry to identify the location of
:rem the new operating system and the primary hard
:rem drive. For example,
:rem %TARGETOS% may be defined as C:\Windows
:rem %TARGETOSDRIVE% may be defined as C:
for /F "tokens=1,2,3 delims= " %%A in ('reg query "HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\RecoveryEnvironment"
/v TargetOS') DO SET TARGETOS=%%C

for /F "tokens=1 delims=\" %%A in ('Echo %TARGETOS%') DO SET TARGETOSDRIVE=%%A

:rem == 2. Copy old logs to a temporary folder in memory
mkdir X:\Temp
xcopy %TARGETOS%\Logs*.* X:\temp /cherkyi

EXIT 0
...
```

**\*\*Example 2: Retrieving Log Files\*\***

This sample script retrieves the files that were saved in memory by the `SaveLogFiles.cmd` script, and adds them back to the system. It also runs a system diagnostic, and then sends the output to the C:\\\\Fabrikam folder.

```
...
:rem == RetrieveLogFiles.cmd

:rem == This sample script retrieves the files that
:rem were saved in memory by
:rem SaveLogFiles.cmd,
:rem and adds them back to the system.
:rem
:rem It also runs a system diagnostic, and sends the output
:rem to the C:\\\\Fabrikam folder.

:rem == 1. Use the registry to identify the location of
:rem the new operating system and the primary drive.
:rem
```

```

:rem %TARGETOS% is the Windows folder
:rem (This later becomes C:\Windows)
:rem %TARGETOSDRIVE% is the Windows partition
:rem (This later becomes C:)
for /F "tokens=1,2,3 delims= " %%A in ('reg query "HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\RecoveryEnvironment" /v TargetOS') DO SET TARGETOS=%%C
for /F "tokens=1 delims=\\" %%A in ('Echo %TARGETOS%') DO SET TARGETOSDRIVE=%%A

:rem == 2. Copy the old logs to the new OS
:rem at C:\Windows\OldLogs
mkdir %TARGETOS%\OldLogs
xcopy X:\Temp*.* %TARGETOS%\OldLogs /chervy

:rem == 3. Run system diagnostics using the
:rem DirectX Diagnostic tool, and save the
:rem results to the C:\Fabrikam folders. ==
mkdir %TARGETOSDRIVE%\Fabrikam
%TARGETOS%\system32\dxdiag.exe /whql:off /t %TARGETOSDRIVE%\Fabrikam\dxdiag-TestLogFiles.txt

EXIT 0
```

```

To create a push-button reset configuration file

1. In Notepad, create a configuration file (ResetConfig.xml) that points to your push-button reset extensibility scripts. For more information about this file, see [ResetConfig XML Reference](#).

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<!-- ResetConfig.xml -->
<Reset>
    <Run Phase="BasicReset_BeforeImageApply">
        <Path>SaveLogFiles.cmd</Path>
        <Duration>4</Duration>
    </Run>
    <Run Phase="BasicReset_AfterImageApply">
        <Path>RetrieveLogFile.cmd</Path>
        <Duration>2</Duration>
    </Run>
    <Run Phase="FactoryReset_AfterDiskFormat">
        <Path>CheckPartitions.exe</Path>
        <Duration>2</Duration>
    </Run>
    <Run Phase="FactoryReset_AfterImageApply">
        <Path>InstallApps.cmd</Path>
        <Param>/allApps</Param>
        <Duration>2</Duration>
    </Run>
    <!-- May be combined with Recovery Media Creator
        configurations - insert SystemDisk element here -->
</Reset>

```

Where SaveLogFiles.cmd, RetrieveLogFile.cmd, CheckPartitions.exe, and InstallApps.cmd are all fictional scripts.

2. Click **File**, and then click **Save As**. In the **Encoding** box, select **UTF-8**, and save this file as E:\Recovery\RecoveryImage\ResetConfig.xml.

Where *E* is the drive letter of a USB flash drive or other removable media. Do not use ANSI coding.

Note

You can use the same ResetConfig.xml file to configure Windows to create recovery media. For more information, see [Deploy Push-Button Reset Features](#).

Step 2: Adding Configuration Files and Scripts to the Destination Computer

To add your configuration files and scripts

1. On your destination computer, insert the USB flash drive with the configuration files.
2. Copy the configuration files to the destination computer

```
Copy E:\Recovery\RecoveryImage\* R:\RecoveryImage\*
```

where *E* is the drive letter of the USB flash drive.

Sample script: making sure unattend.xml, LayoutModification.xml, and OOBE.xml are kept during a reset

Windows doesn't automatically save settings created through unattend.xml setup files, nor Windows Start Menu customizations created with LayoutModification.xml during a full-system reset, nor first-login info from oobe.xml. To make sure your customizations are saved, that includes steps to put the unattend.xml, LayoutModification.xml, and oobe.xml files back into place.

Here's some sample scripts that show how to retain these settings and put them back into the right spots.

Save copies of unattend.xml, LayoutModification.xml, oobe.xml, plus these two text files, in C:\Recovery\OEM\.

ResetConfig.xml:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<!-- ResetConfig.xml -->
<Reset>
    <Run Phase="BasicReset_AfterImageApply">
        <Path>EnableCustomizations.cmd</Path>
        <Duration>2</Duration>
    </Run>
    <Run Phase="FactoryReset_AfterImageApply">
        <Path>EnableCustomizations.cmd</Path>
        <Duration>2</Duration>
    </Run>
</Reset>
```

EnableCustomizations.cmd:

```
rem EnableCustomizations.cmd

rem Define %TARGETOS% as the Windows folder (This later becomes C:\Windows)
for /F "tokens=1,2,3 delims= " %%A in ('reg query "HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\RecoveryEnvironment" /v TargetOS') DO SET TARGETOS=%%%

rem Define %TARGETOSDRIVE% as the Windows partition (This later becomes C:)
for /F "tokens=1 delims=\" %%A in ('Echo %TARGETOS%') DO SET TARGETOSDRIVE=%%%

rem Add back Windows settings, Start menu, and OOBE.xml customizations
copy "%TARGETOSDRIVE%\Recovery\OEM\Unattend.xml" "%TARGETOS%\Panther\Unattend.xml" /y
copy "%TARGETOSDRIVE%\Recovery\OEM\LayoutModification.xml"
"%TARGETOSDRIVE%\Users\Default\AppData\Local\Microsoft\Windows\Shell\LayoutModification.xml" /y
xcopy "%TARGETOSDRIVE%\Recovery\OEM\OOBE\Info" "%TARGETOS%\System32\Info\" /s

rem Recommended: Create a pagefile for devices with 1GB or less of RAM.
wpeutil CreatePageFile /path=%TARGETOSDRIVE%\PageFile.sys /size=256
```

For multilingual deployments, OOBE.xml uses a more complicated folder structure. It's OK to just copy the entire folder into C:\Recovery\OEM, and then modify the script to copy the entire folder:

```
xcopy "%ScriptFolder%\Info\" "%TargetOSDrive%\System32\Info\" /s
```

Next Steps

Now that you have customized the push-button reset experience, you can deploy the recovery image for push-button reset (Install.wim) to the recovery image partition.

To copy the Diskpart script, the ResetConfig.xml file, and the push-button reset recovery image (install.wim) to the recovery image partition of the destination PC, follow the instructions in the [Deploy Push-Button Reset Features](#) topic.

Related topics

[Push-Button Reset Overview](#)

[Create Media to Run Push-Button Reset Features](#)

[Deploy Push-Button Reset Features](#)

[REAgentC Command-Line Options](#)

[ResetConfig XML Reference](#)

Bare metal reset/recovery: create recovery media while deploying new devices

7/13/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Recovery media (bare metal recovery) helps restore a Windows device to the factory state, even if the user needs to replace the hard drive or completely wipe the drive clean.

You can include this media with new devices that you provide to your customers using the same Windows images used to deploy the devices.

Note

- The PC firmware/BIOS must be configured so that the PC can boot from the media (USB drive or DVD drive).
- The USB flash drive or DVD recovery media must have enough space for the Windows image.
- If the Windows images are larger than 32GB or are larger than the media you're using (for example, 4.7GB DVDs), you'll need to [split the Windows image file to span across multiple DVDs](#).

To create a bootable USB recovery drive for a personal device, see [Create a USB recovery drive](#).

Create a bootable Windows RE image

To create the recovery media that you can include with the PC, you must have the following:

- A Windows image (Install.wim). You can either use the base Windows image or a customized recovery image.
- A Windows RE tools image (Winre.wim). You can either extract the base Windows RE tools image from the Windows image, or use a [customized Windows RE image](#).

Step 1: Open the Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment

1. Download and install the [Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit \(ADK\)](#).
2. On your technician PC: Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.

Step 2: Extract the Windows RE image from the Windows image

1. Mount the Windows image:

```
md c:\mount\Windows  
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:D:\sources\install.wim /Index:1 /MountDir:C:\mount
```

2. Copy the Windows RE image:

```
md C:\Images  
xcopy C:\mount\Windows\System32\Recovery\winre.wim C:\Images\winre.wim /h
```

3. Unmount the Windows image:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\mount\winre /Discard
```

Step 3: Create a working folder for Windows RE files

1. Create a folder structure for Windows RE, which is based on Windows PE:

```
copy /y amd64 C:\resetmedia_amd64
```

where *amd64* is the architecture of the system you are creating media for.

2. Replace the default Windows PE boot image (Boot.wim) with a Windows RE tools image.

```
xcopy C:\MyImages\winre.wim C:\resetmedia_amd64\media\sources\boot.wim /h
```

Step 4: Add the Windows image

- Copy the Windows image to the working folder.

```
copy D:\sources\install.wim C:\resetmedia_amd64\media\sources\install.wim
```

where *D:\sources\install.wim* is either the base Windows image or a customized push-button reset recovery image.

Step 5: Optional: Add bare metal recovery configuration scripts

- If you're using a customized partition layout, add bare metal recovery configuration scripts to the working folder, under \sources. For more info, see [Bare Metal Reset/Recovery: Enable Your Users to Create Media](#).

```
copy E:\Recovery\RecoveryImage\ResetConfig.xml C:\resetmedia_amd64\media\sources\ResetConfig.xml  
copy E:\Recovery\RecoveryImage\ResetPartitions-UEFI.txt  
C:\resetmedia_amd64\media\sources\ResetPartitions-UEFI.txt
```

Create bootable media

To create a bootable USB flash drive:

1. Install Windows RE to a USB flash drive:

```
Makewinpemedia /ufd C:\resetmedia_amd64 F:
```

where *F* is the drive letter of the USB flash drive.

2. Label the USB flash drive with a descriptive name:

In File Explorer, right-click the drive, and select **Rename**, and type **Full-PC Recovery**.

To create a bootable DVD:

1. Create a DVD image file:

```
Makewinpemedia /iso C:\resetmedia_amd64 C:\resetmedia_amd64\RecoveryImage.iso
```

2. Insert a DVD.

3. In File Explorer, navigate to `C:\resetmedia_amd64`, right-click `RecoveryImage.iso`, and then click **Burn disc**

image.

Test the bare metal recovery features

1. On a PC with an empty hard drive, insert your new recovery media.
2. Start the PC, press a key to open the firmware boot menus, and then select the appropriate boot device.
3. At the **Windows RE Tools** menus, select a keyboard layout, for example, **US**.
4. Click **Troubleshoot > Reset your PC > Next**

Note

If you are testing on the same PC, and you have not cleaned the hard drive, you may be prompted to select a drive. Select Windows 10.

```
Select **Yes, repartition the drives** &gt; **Just remove my files** &gt; **Reset**.
```

```
Windows resets the computer to its original state by using the recovery image.
```

Large-Scale Deployment

If you are deploying USB keys with your computers, you can create a basic copy of the Windows recovery media on USB by using the steps above. After you have performed final customization of the image, you can boot the computer to Windows PE, and update the install.wim image on the USB recovery media.

You can potentially save manufacturing time by appending the Windows image on the USB flash drive, rather than recapturing the entire Windows image. If you do this, you must also update the ResetConfig.xml configuration file element: `RestoreFromIndex` to the appropriate index number. For more information, see [Append a Volume Image to an Existing Image Using DISM](#) and [ResetConfig XML Reference](#).

Related topics

[Bare Metal Reset/Recovery: Enable Your Users to Create Media](#)

[Push-Button Reset Overview](#)

[ResetConfig XML Reference](#)

[REAgentC Command-Line Options](#)

Bare metal reset/recovery: enable your users to create recovery media

7/13/2017 • 6 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Recovery media (bare metal recovery) helps restore a Windows device to the factory state, even if the user needs to replace the hard drive or completely wipe the drive clean.

Windows uses the built-in Windows files, including recent Windows and driver updates, plus any customizations included in the OEM provisioning package, to create the recovery media.

If you deploy Windows using the default partition layout, your users will be able to create bare metal recovery media by default.

If you're deploying Windows with a custom partition layout, you'll need to add a few configuration files to enable your users to create bare metal recovery media:

- A **partition reset script**, which is a modified DiskPart script that resets your custom partition layout.
- A **push-button reset configuration file** ([ResetConfig XML](#)) that identifies the Windows and Windows RE partitions.

Note: In Windows 10, version 1607, desktop applications and settings captured in [siloeed provisioning packages](#) will not be restored using this media. Regular customizations packages (.ppkg) captured using the ScanState tool are not affected by this issue.

Creating configuration files

Partition reset script

1. In Notepad, create a configuration file that partitions the hard drive after the hard drive has been reset. This script should be the same as the script used to create partitions on the hard drive, with the following exceptions:

- The script should not contain commands to select or clean the drive. Windows identifies the system drive automatically. To learn more, see [Identifying the System Drive](#) later in this topic.
- The script should assign letters to the system partition, the Windows partition, and the Windows RE tools partition.

Examples:

UEFI (based on [UEFI/GPT-based hard drive partitions](#)):

```
rem == ResetPartitions-UEFI.txt ==
rem == These commands are used with DiskPart to
rem     reset the drive and recreate five partitions
rem     for a UEFI/GPT-based computer.
rem     Adjust the partition sizes to fill the drive
rem     as necessary. ==
rem == The differences between this file and
rem     CreatePartitions-UEFI.txt
rem     are noted in parenthesis.
rem         (NOT USED: select disk 0)
rem         (NOT USED: clean)
convert gpt
rem == 1. System partition =====
create partition efi size=100
rem     ** NOTE: For Advanced Format 4Kn drives,
rem             change this value to size = 260 **
format quick fs=fat32 label="System"
assign letter="S"
rem == 2. Microsoft Reserved (MSR) partition =====
create partition msr size=128
rem == 3. Windows partition =====
rem ==     a. Create the Windows partition =====
create partition primary
rem ==     b. Create space for the recovery tools ===
shrink minimum=500
rem     ** NOTE: Update this size to match the
rem             size of the recovery tools
rem             (winre.wim) **
rem ==     c. Prepare the Windows partition =====
format quick fs=ntfs label="Windows"
assign letter="C"
rem == 4. Recovery tools partition =====
create partition primary
format quick fs=ntfs label="Recovery tools"
assign letter="R"
set id="de94bba4-06d1-4d40-a16a-bfd50179d6ac"
gpt attributes=0x8000000000000001
list volume
```

BIOS (based on [BIOS/MBR-based hard drive partitions](#)):

```

rem == ResetPartitions-BIOS.txt ==
rem == These commands are used with DiskPart to
rem   reset the drive and create three partitions
rem   for a BIOS/MBR-based computer.
rem   Adjust the partition sizes to fill the drive
rem   as necessary. ==
rem == The differences between this file and
rem   CreatePartitions-BIOS.txt
rem   are noted in parenthesis.
rem       (NOT USED: select disk 0 )
rem       (NOT USED: clean )
rem == 1. System partition =====
create partition primary size=100
format quick fs=ntfs label="System"
assign letter="S"
active
rem == 2. Windows partition =====
rem ==   a. Create the Windows partition =====
create partition primary
rem ==   b. Create space for the recovery tools
shrink minimum=500
rem       ** NOTE: Update this size to match the
rem       size of the recovery tools
rem       (winre.wim) **
rem ==   c. Prepare the Windows partition =====
format quick fs=ntfs label="Windows"
assign letter="C"
rem == 3. Recovery tools partition =====
create partition primary
format quick fs=ntfs label="Recovery"
assign letter="R"
set id=27
list volume

```

2. Save your file, for example, E:\Recovery\RecoveryImage\ResetPartitions-UEFI.txt.

Push-button reset configuration file (ResetConfig.xml)

1. In Notepad, create a configuration file that points to your push-button reset partition script.

For information about configuring this file, see [ResetConfig XML Reference](#).

UEFI:

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<!-- ResetConfig.xml for UEFI -->
<Reset>
  <!-- May be combined with custom scripts - insert Run Phase elements here -->
  <SystemDisk>
    <DiskpartScriptPath>ResetPartitions-UEFI.txt</DiskpartScriptPath>
    <MinSize>75000</MinSize>
    <WindowsREPartition>4</WindowsREPartition>
    <WindowsREPath>Recovery\WindowsRE</WindowsREPath>
    <OSPartition>3</OSPartition>
  </SystemDisk>
</Reset>

```

BIOS:

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<!-- ResetConfig.xml for BIOS -->
<Reset>
    <!-- May be combined with custom scripts - insert Run Phase elements here -->
    <SystemDisk>
        <DiskpartScriptPath>ResetPartitions-BIOS.txt</DiskpartScriptPath>
        <MinSize>75000</MinSize>
        <WindowsREPartition>3</WindowsREPartition>
        <WindowsREPath>Recovery\WindowsRE</WindowsREPath>
        <OSPartition>2</OSPartition>
    </SystemDisk>
</Reset>

```

2. Save the file using the UTF-8 file format:

Click **File**, and then click **Save As**. In the **Encoding** box, select **UTF-8**, and save this file as E:\Recovery\RecoveryImage\ResetConfig.xml.

Enable users to create media

Users can use this option to create recovery media, and to reclaim the hard drive space from the recovery image partition when needed.

Step 1: Add the configuration files to the destination computer

1. On your destination computer, insert the USB flash drive with the configuration files.
2. Copy the configuration files to the destination computer:

```
Copy E:\Recovery\RecoveryImage\* R:\RecoveryImage\*
```

where *E* is the drive letter of the USB flash drive and *R* is the drive letter of the recovery image partition.

Step 2: Test that Windows can create recovery media

1. Restart the destination computer, and complete Out-Of-Box Experience (OOBE).
2. Click **Start**, type **create a recovery drive**, and select **Create a recovery drive**, and click **Yes** at the UAC prompt.
3. Insert a USB flash drive.
4. Select **Copy the recovery partition from the PC to the recovery drive > Next > Next > Create**.

Step 3: Test the recovery media

1. On a computer that has no operating system, insert your recovery media.
2. Start the computer, press a key to open the firmware boot menus, and then select the appropriate boot device.
3. At the **Windows RE Tools** menus, select a keyboard layout, for example, **US**.
4. Click **Troubleshoot > Reset your PC > Next**. If you're prompted to clean the drive, select **Yes**.
5. Select **Yes, repartition the drives > Just remove my files > Reset**.

Troubleshooting:

- Make sure that ResetConfig.xml is saved as a UTF-8 file.
- Make sure that the filename listed in the **<DiskpartScriptPath>** element of the ResetConfig.xml file matches the filename in the Diskpart script.
- Make sure that the Diskpart script doesn't include commands to select the drive or clean the drive (

```
select disk 0, clean).
```

Identifying the system drive

Windows identifies the system drive using the following methods:

BIOS-based computers: the BIOS-reported system drive is used.

UEFI-based computers: When Windows RE is enabled by using the `reagentc /setreimage` command, Windows writes the adaptor location path and GUID of the system disk to a UEFI variable. This step is only performed when both the system and OS partitions are on the system drive. The variable is updated if necessary when Windows RE gets disabled and then re-enabled.

If multiple local drives are detected, Windows identifies the system drive by searching in the following order:

1. Windows searches for a drive with a GUID matching the value stored in firmware.
2. Windows searches for a drive with a location path matching the value stored in firmware.
3. Windows searches for a drive with an existing ESP.

If multiple drives with ESP are found, the recovery process will not proceed.

4. Windows searches for an uninitialized (raw) disk.

If multiple uninitialized disks are found, the recovery process will not proceed.

Related topics

[Push-Button Reset Overview](#)

[ResetConfig XML Reference](#)

[Bare metal reset/recovery: create recovery media while deploying new devices](#)

[UEFI/GPT-based hard drive partitions](#)

[BIOS/MBR-based hard drive partitions](#)

Push-button reset frequently-asked questions (FAQ)

6/6/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

QUESTION	ANSWER
Is Window RE required for a user to run the Push-button reset features?	<p>Yes. To run a Push-button reset feature, you must make the Windows RE boot image (Winre.wim) available on the local hard drive, and register its location by using the Reagentc tool. You can use the default Winre.wim (available at C:\Windows\System32\Recovery), or a custom Winre.wim image. If Windows RE is not enabled on the local hard drive, users will have to boot Windows RE from media to access Push-button reset features.</p>
What is Compact OS?	<p>Compact OS is a collection of features which allow Windows 10 to be deployed on PCs with storage capacity as low as 16GB. The two primary technologies include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Compression of the runtime system files• Single-instancing of installed customizations with the customizations package used by Push-button reset features
When should I use Compact OS?	<p>Both the compression of system files and single-instancing of customizations have similar characteristics as the WIMBoot technology from Windows 8.1. While Compact OS is supported on all hardware configurations, it is only recommended to be used on PCs with flash-based storage.</p>
How do I know if the OS is compressed?	<p>Compact.exe can be used to query the current compression state.</p>
How can I tell if a .ppkg is single-instanced?	<p>Run Fsutil.exe and specify the drive where the .ppkg is stored. For example: <code>fsutil.exe wim enumwims c:</code></p>
Are there any formatting requirements for the ResetConfig.xml file?	<p>Yes. Always use UTF-8 encoding, and do not use Unicode or ANSI. Add the following declaration in the ResetConfig.xml file, and in other .xml files:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"><code><?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?></code></div>
What types of removable media are supported for manufacturer-created recovery media?	<p>DVDs or USB flash drives can be used as recovery media. Note that Push-button reset features requires all recovery resources to be located on the same piece of media.</p>
Is recimg.exe supported in Windows 10?	<p>No recimg.exe is deprecated in Windows 10.</p>
Is Push-button reset supported on Windows Server ?	<p>No, this functionality is not supported on Windows Server 2016 Technical Preview.</p>
Can custom recovery solutions (i.e. not Push-button reset) restore the provisioning packages created using either Windows ICD or USMT's ScanState tool.	<p>Provisioning packages can only be applied by Push-button reset or deployment media created using Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer (ICD). Application of these packages by custom recovery solutions is not supported.</p>

QUESTION	ANSWER
If the provisioning package created using USMT's ScanState tool is larger than 4GB, will the "Create a recovery drive" utility allow customers to create USB recovery media?	Yes, the Create a recovery drive utility will split the provisioning package into smaller pieces before copying them to the USB flash drive. During recovery, the pieces will be reassembled into the original provisioning package.
I've preinstalled OS updates on the PC, how can I ensure that they are restored during recovery?	DISM.exe's /Cleanup-Image command with the /StartComponentCleanup and /ResetBase options marks all installed OS updates as permanent. Permanent updates are always restored during recovery.
How can I determine when the /ResetBase option was last run?	Check the LastResetBase_UTC registry entry under the registry path: HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Component Based Servicing
I have files that need to be persisted/restored when Reset your PC and Refresh your PC are performed, but I don't want to capture them using ScanState. Where should I put these files?	All contents under C:\Recovery\OEM are left unmodified during Reset your PC and Refresh your PC. However, it should be noted that these contents will also be backed up onto the USB recovery media when using the Create a recovery drive utility.
I can't find the Refresh your PC option in Settings or Windows RE anymore. Where did the feature go?	Both Refresh your PC and Reset your PC are now part of the same user experience, under the Reset this PC option in Settings and in Windows RE. When you launch the Reset this PC experience, you'll see additional options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Keep my files – This initiates the Refresh your PC feature. • Remove everything – This initiates the Reset your PC feature. • Restore factory settings – On PCs upgraded from Windows 8/8.1, this initiates factory recovery using the existing recovery image.
Should I specify the /drivers option when using ScanState to capture customizations?	The /drivers option is not required if the provisioning package being created is to be used for Push-button reset features. Push-button reset features persist the drivers which are already installed, making it unnecessary to reapply the factory-preinstalled drivers. Note: Driver applets installed outside of the driver INF package are captured using ScanState's /apps option.
How much available disk space is required in order for the Refresh your PC feature to run successfully?	If you have converted the installed customizations into file pointers referencing the customizations package created using ScanState, the required disk space is: 4GB + size_of_ppkg0.2 <i>Otherwise, the required disk space is: 4GB + size_of_ppkg2</i>
Am I required to reduce the size of the MSR partition from 128MB to 16MB based on the updated partition layout recommendations?	No. Windows continues to support 128MB MSR partitions. However, on PCs with limited storage capacity, a 16MB MSR partition is recommended to give end users as much available storage as possible.

QUESTION

Is there any known issue with using Reset your PC to restore PCs back to factory condition after going through factory floor testing?

ANSWER

Although PBR features are not intended to be used on factory floors, there's no technical limitation which prevents it. However, keep the following in mind when using Reset your PC on the factory floor:

- If your factory floor testing includes activating Windows, Reset your PC will not revert the unit back to an non-activated state
- Preinstalled RDX contents will be removed
- If the unit is not reset for multiple days after factory validation but remains powered on, the preinstalled languages except for the one selected during OOBE will be removed during maintenance
- End users will be able to tell that a unit has been reset during factory by looking for the PBR logs under C:\Windows\Logs\PBR

REAgentC command-line options

8/5/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use the REAgentC.exe tool to configure a Windows Recovery Environment (Windows RE) boot image and a push-button reset recovery image, and to administer recovery options and customizations. You can run the **REAgentC** command on an offline Windows image or on a running Windows operating system.

Note

If you are using Windows PE 2.X, 3.X, or 4.X to configure recovery on an offline Windows 10 installation, you must use the Winrecfg.exe file from the Recovery folder of the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (Windows ADK). Winrecfg.exe supports only the offline operations that REAgentC.exe supports.

REAgentC Commands

The following command-line options are available for Windows RE:

reagentc.exe <command> <arguments>

The following table describes these command-line options:

OPTION	ONLINE/OFFLINE	DESCRIPTION
/setreimage /path <path_to_Windows_RE_image> [/target <path_to_offline_image>]	Both	<p>Sets the location of a Windows RE boot image. In Windows 10, Windows 8.1, Windows 8, Windows Server 2016 Technical Preview, Windows Server 2012 R2, and Windows Server 2012, /path supports UNC paths to locations on the local disk. For example:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"><pre>Reagentc /setreimage /path S:\Recovery\WindowsRE</pre></div> <p>Use the /target option to specify the location of the Windows image when you apply the setting offline. For example:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"><pre>Reagentc /setreimage /path T:\Recovery\WindowsRE /target W:\Windows</pre></div>

OPTION	ONLINE/OFFLINE	DESCRIPTION
<pre>/enable [/auditmode] [/osguid <bcd_guid>]</pre>	<p>Both</p>	<p>Enables a custom Windows RE boot image.</p> <p>The /enable option runs automatically during the specialize configuration pass. If you don't specify a Windows RE boot image, the computer attempts to enable Windows RE by using the default Winre.wim file from the \Windows\System32\Recovery folder.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • /auditmode: <p>By default, the /enable option doesn't perform any actions when Windows is in audit mode. To override the default behavior and enable Windows RE from audit mode, specify the /auditmode option. For example:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>Reagentc /enable /auditmode</pre> </div> <p>If you generalize the image after you use the /enable option in audit mode, Windows RE is disabled until you use the /enable option again or until after the specialize configuration pass runs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • /osguid <bcd_guid>: <p>This option allows you to enable your custom Windows RE boot image from Windows PE. It can only be used after bcdboot.exe has been run. <bcd_guid> is the Boot Configuration Data (BCD) identifier of the target Windows installation, obtained by running</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>bcdedit -enum -v .</pre> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>Reagentc /enable /osguid {00000000- 0000-0000-0000- 000000000000}</pre> </div>

OPTION	ONLINE/OFFLINE	DESCRIPTION
/disable	Online	<p>Disables any active Windows RE image that is mapped to the online image. For example:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>Reagentc /disable</pre> </div>
/boottore	Online	<p>Specifies that Windows RE starts automatically the next time the system starts. For example:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>Reagentc /boottore</pre> </div>
/setosimage /path <path_to_recovery_image> /index <image_index> [/target <path_to_offline_image>]	Both	<p>This setting is not used in Windows 10.</p> <p>Registers the location of a push-button reset image in an online or offline image. The recovery image must be in the Windows image (.wim) format.</p> <p>The /index option specifies the index number of the recovery image to use from within a .wim file. For example:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>Reagentc /setosimage /path R:\RecoveryImage /index 1</pre> </div> <p>Use the /target option to specify the location of the offline Windows image. For example:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>Reagentc /setosimage /path R:\RecoveryImage /index 1 /target W:\Windows</pre> </div>

OPTION	ONLINE/OFFLINE	DESCRIPTION
<pre>/info [/target <path_to_offline_image>]</pre>	Both	<p>Displays the current status of Windows RE and any available recovery image on an online or offline image. For example, the following command returns the status of the online operating system:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <pre>Reagentc /info</pre> </div> <p>Use the /target option to obtain configuration information about an offline image. For example:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <pre>Reagentc /info /target W:\Windows</pre> </div>
<pre>/setbootshelllink [/configfile <path_to_BootShellXML>] [/target <path_to_offline_image>]</pre>	Both	<p>Registers the link to a custom tool that appears in the Windows boot options menu. For example:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <pre>Reagentc /setbootshelllink /configfile F:\BootMenu\AddDiagnosticsToo lToBootMenu.xml</pre> </div> <p>The BootShellXML file is an.xml file that contains the <code><BootShell></code> element and the <code><Name></code> and <code><Description></code> attributes that you want to appear in the link. For more information, see Customize Windows RE.</p> <p>Use the /target option to specify the location of the offline Windows image. If this argument is not used, the running operating system is used. For example:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <pre>Reagentc /setbootshelllink /target W:\Windows</pre> </div>

Related topics

[Windows RE Troubleshooting Features](#)

ResetConfig XML reference

7/13/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

This reference describes all XML elements that are used to author the ResetConfig.xml file, used to configure Windows Recovery Environment push-button reset features.

Reset

The `Reset` XML element can contain the elements: `Run` and `SystemDisk`.

Run

The `Run` XML element is used to add custom scripts to push-button reset features.

You can specify up to four `Run` elements in a single ResetConfig.xml file. Each `Run` element must contain a different *[ExtPoint]* value for the `Phase` attribute.

The following table describes the valid elements that can be added to the `Run` element:

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
<code>Run Phase="[ExtPoint]"</code>	<p>Each <code>Run</code> element defines the extensibility point to be used, the script that is executed at that extensibility point, and estimated time duration in minutes.</p> <p>The <code>Phase</code> attribute is required. It accepts only the following values for <i>[ExtPoint]</i>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <code>BasicReset_BeforeImageApply</code>. Runs the specified program at extensibility point A.• <code>BasicReset_AfterImageApply</code>. Runs the specified program at extensibility point B• <code>FactoryReset_AfterDiskFormat</code>. Runs the specified program at extensibility point C• <code>FactoryReset_AfterImageApply</code>. Runs the specified program at extensibility point D <p>You can specify up to four <code>Run</code> sections in a single ResetConfig.xml file. However, each <code>Run</code> section must contain a different value for the phase attribute.</p>
<code>Path</code>	<p>Specifies the location of the script for a particular <code>Run</code> section.</p> <p>The path must be the relative path of the script from the folder which contains ResetConfig.xml (usually this is C:\Recovery\OEM).</p>

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
<code>Duration</code>	<p>Specifies the estimated time, in minutes, that you expect the custom script to run. This estimate is used to display progress information in the GUI.</p> <p>The duration must be an integer and must be between 1 and 5.</p>
<code>Param</code>	<p>Specifies the command-line parameters to use when you run the custom script or executable file. The value is treated as a string, and can contain multiple parameters.</p> <p><code>Param</code> does not support empty elements. If your script does not require parameters, then do not include this element. For examples, see Using ResetConfig.xml later in this topic.</p>

SystemDisk

The `SystemDisk` element customizes bare metal recovery functionality. For more information, see [Create Media to Run Push-Button Reset Features](#).

You can specify one `SystemDisk` section. Here's the required and optional elements:

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
<code>MinSize</code>	<p>Required. Specifies the minimum required size for the primary hard drive, in megabytes.</p> <p>Bare metal recovery won't proceed if the system disk doesn't meet this size requirement.</p>
<code>DiskpartScriptPath</code>	<p>Required. Path to Diskpart script relative to <code>C:\Recovery\OEM</code>. The script should assume that all existing partitions have been deleted, and the system disk has focus in Diskpart.</p> <p>For example, if the recovery scripts are located at <code>C:\Recovery\OEM\Scripts\RecreatePartitions.dps</code>, use the value <code>\Scripts\RecreatePartitions.dps</code>.</p>
<code>OSPartition</code>	<p>Required. The partition to which the OS should be restored. The ESP or active partition must be on the same disk as the OS.</p>
<code>RestoreFromIndex</code>	<p>Optional. The index of the image within <code>install.wim</code> to be applied during bare metal recovery. This element is optional and is only needed on manufacturer-created recovery media</p>

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
<code>WindowsREPartition</code>	<p>Optional. Specifies the partition where the Windows RE boot image is installed.</p> <p>The <code>WindowsREPartition</code> and <code>WindowsREPath</code> elements are optional, but they must be used together. If only one of these elements is present, your user won't be able to repartition the hard drive.</p>
<code>WindowsREPath</code>	<p>Optional. Specifies the folder path where the Winre.wim boot image is copied and staged, relative to the root of the partition specified in the <code>WindowsREPartition</code> element.</p> <p>The <code>WindowsREPartition</code> and <code>WindowsREPath</code> elements are optional, but they must be used together. If only one of these elements is present, your user won't be able to repartition the hard drive.</p>
<code>Compact</code>	<p>Optional. Specifies whether the recovery image should be applied with per-file compression enabled. This element is optional and is only needed on manufacturer-created recovery media.</p> <p><code>Compact</code> accepts the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>True</code> : Files applied from the image are compressed individually. • <code>False</code> (default value): Compression is not used.
<code>RecoveryImagePartition</code>	This setting is deprecated in Windows 10.
<code>RecoveryImagePath</code>	This setting is deprecated in Windows 10.
<code>RecoveryImageIndex</code>	This setting is deprecated in Windows 10.
<code>WIMBoot</code>	This setting is deprecated in Windows 10.

Using ResetConfig.xml

If you use a text editor to author your .xml files, you must save the document with an .xml file name extension, and use UTF-8 encoding. You must not use ANSI coding.

These files should be placed in the folder C:\Recovery\OEM, and will automatically be detected by Push-button reset features.

Example

This is a code example for the ResetConfig.xml file.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<Reset>
  <Run Phase="BasicReset_BeforeImageApply">
    <Path>Fabrikam\CopyFiles.cmd</Path>
    <Duration>2</Duration>
  </Run>
  <Run Phase="BasicReset_AfterImageApply">
    <Path>Fabrikam\InstallDrivers.cmd</Path>
    <Param>/allDrivers</Param>
    <Duration>2</Duration>
  </Run>
  <Run Phase="FactoryReset_AfterDiskFormat">
    <Path>Fabrikam\FixPartitions.exe</Path>
    <Duration>2</Duration>
  </Run>
  <Run Phase="FactoryReset_AfterImageApply">
    <Path>Fabrikam\InstallDrivers.cmd</Path>
    <Param>/allDrivers</Param>
    <Duration>2</Duration>
  </Run>
  <SystemDisk>
    <MinSize>75000</MinSize>
    <DiskpartScriptPath>Fabrikam\CreatePartition.txt </DiskpartScriptPath>
    <OSPartition>4</OSPartition>
    <RestoreFromIndex>2</RestoreFromIndex>
    <WindowsREPartition>1</WindowsREPartition>
    <WindowsREPath>Recovery\WindowsRE</WindowsREPath>
    <Compact>False</Compact>
  </SystemDisk>
</Reset>
```

Related topics

[Push-Button Reset Overview](#)

[Create Media to Run Push-Button Reset Features](#)

Windows RE troubleshooting features

6/6/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

If a Windows device can't start, it automatically fails over to the Windows Recovery Environment (Windows RE). The Automatic Repair tool in Windows RE automates the diagnosis and repair of an unbootable Windows installation. Windows RE is also a starting point for several tools for manual system recovery. This topic describes the automatic failover behavior, manual diagnosis, and repair process in Windows RE.

Recovering from startup failures

If the system detects a boot failure on a computer running Windows, the system automatically fails over into the on-disk Windows RE tool. At startup, the Windows loader sets a status flag to indicate that the boot process has started. Windows typically clears this flag before the Windows logon screen appears. However, if the boot attempt fails, Windows doesn't clear the flag. The next time that the computer starts, the loader detects the flag and assumes that a boot failure occurred. When this occurs, the loader starts Windows RE instead of Windows.

Note

Boot failure detection relies on boot completion and not whether an error occurred in Windows 8. For example, a false positive may occur if power is lost during the boot process, and your user starts Windows RE even though the Windows installation is bootable.

Because the failover mechanism relies on the Windows boot manager and the Windows boot loader, some failures can make Windows RE inaccessible. In the following scenarios, your user must use the bootable Windows RE media to recover the computer:

- Corrupt disk metadata exists in the master boot record (MBR), partition table, or boot sector of a Windows RE partition.
- The boot manager is missing or corrupted.
- The Boot Configuration Data (BCD) store is missing or corrupted.

If the boot loader can't read or write to the boot status flag, Windows won't be able to automatically fail over into Windows RE. However, your user can still manually start the on-disk Windows RE tool through the **Boot Options** menu.

Advanced troubleshooting utilities in Windows RE

Your user can manually start several system recovery tools after starting the on-disk Windows RE tool from the recovery media, or from the **Boot Options** menu. With the exception of Automatic Repair, the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (Windows ADK) doesn't include these tools. Push-button reset is the recommended recovery solution in Windows.

Automatic Repair

The Automatic Repair tool automates common diagnostic and repair tasks for non-bootable operating system installations. Automatic Repair starts if the computer fails over into Windows RE because of a detected boot failure. If automatic failover to an on-disk instance of Windows RE is not available, your users can also start Automatic Repair as a manual recovery tool from a Windows RE CD or DVD.

System Image Recovery

Use System Image Recovery for file backup and system image backup. System Image Recovery requires an external storage device. For file backup, your users can let Windows choose what to back up, or they can select

individual folders, libraries, and drives. By default, backups are created on a regular schedule. Your users can change the schedule and manually create a backup at any time. After your user sets up System Image Recovery, Windows keeps track of the new or modified files and folders, adding them to the backup.

For system image backup, your users can create a system image or an exact image of a drive. A system image includes Windows and system settings, programs, and files. Your users can use a system image to restore the contents of their computer if the hard disk drive or computer stops working.

If your users restore their computer from a system image, the restoration is a complete restoration. Your users can't choose individual items to restore. All of the current programs, system settings, and files are replaced.

If you set up a scheduled file backup, you can include a system image with only the drives Windows requires to run. You can manually create a system image if you want to include additional data drives.

Note

Previous system image versions are copies of the files and folders saved automatically by Windows as part of the system protection process. Depending on the type of file or folder, your users can open a previous version, save the version to a different location, or restore a previous version. Your users can use these previous versions to restore accidentally modified, deleted, or damaged files or folders. However, because Windows replaces these files with new versions the files won't be available if the drive fails.

Command Prompt

All Windows PE command-line tools are available from a command prompt window. For example, you can use Registry Editor (Regedit.exe), which includes command-line switches, to modify the Windows registry. Or, you can use the Chkdsk.exe tool to troubleshoot and fix volumes. For more information, see [Registry Editor](#), [Chkdsk](#), and [Troubleshooting Tools and Strategies](#).

Custom Support and Recovery Tools

Computer manufacturers can provide custom support and recovery tools. These tools will vary by manufacturer. For more information, see the manufacturer-provided documentation.

Related topics

[BCDboot Command-Line Options](#)

[REAgentC Command-Line Options](#)

Windows Setup Technical Reference

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Windows Setup is a bootable program that installs the Windows operating system.

Practical applications

- You can install or upgrade the Windows operating system on a PC from a USB key, a mounted .ISO file, DVD, or network device.
- You can automate the Windows installation process, including the configuration of drivers, packages, files, and Windows system settings by using answer files created from [Windows System Image Manager Technical Reference](#).
- You can use Windows Setup as an installer for your own customized Windows images.
- You can use the menus in Windows Setup to prepare the hard drives before installation.

What's New

- Windows 8.1 upgrades are different from previous Windows upgrade scenarios. For more info, see [Windows 8.1 Upgrade Scenarios for OEMs](#).
- Windows Setup cannot be used to perform automated upgrades to most editions of Windows 8.1.

For volume-licensed editions of Windows, we've added a new command-line option, `setup /auto`, to help enable upgrades. Note, we only plan to use this option for upgrades to Windows 8.1, and we may remove the option in future versions of Windows. For more info, see [Windows Setup Command-Line Options](#).

- **Settings for Automating OOBE:** The [NetworkLocation](#) setting is no longer needed to automate OOBE. The functionality of the [ProtectYourPC](#) setting has changed.

See also

The following table contains links to resources related to this scenario.

CONTENT TYPE	REFERENCES
Planning	Windows Setup Scenarios and Best Practices Windows Setup Automation Overview
Deployment	Windows Setup Installation Process Windows 8.1 Upgrade Scenarios for OEMs Boot from a DVD Install Windows from a USB Flash Drive Deploy a Custom Image WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive
Operations	Automate Windows Setup Use a Configuration Set with Windows Setup Add Device Drivers to Windows During Windows Setup Add a Custom Script to Windows Setup Multilingual Windows Image Creation Boot Windows to Audit Mode or OOBE

CONTENT TYPE	REFERENCES
Tools and settings	Windows Setup Command-Line Options Windows Setup Supported Platforms and Cross-Platform Deployments Windows Setup States Windows Setup Edition Configuration and Product ID Files (EI.cfg and PID.txt) Windows Setup Log Files and Event Logs Windows Setup Configuration Passes
Related technologies	Windows System Image Manager Technical Reference Unattended Windows Setup Reference Sysprep (System Preparation) Overview WinPE for Windows 10

Windows Setup Supported Platforms and Cross-Platform Deployments

7/13/2017 • 7 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

This topic describes the supported platforms and deployment scenarios for running Windows Setup.

When you're deploying different types of PCs, you can use Windows Setup as a way to choose between your images through the Windows Setup user interface to select a specific image. You can include images for a variety of hardware platforms (such as BIOS and UEFI, 32-bit and 64-bit PCs), and across different versions of Windows (such as Windows 8.1, Windows Server 2012 R2, and Windows 7).

You can also run Windows Setup through a script. Boot the PC to Windows PE, and then use the `\sources\setup.exe` file to specify your image.

Firmware considerations: BIOS vs. UEFI

For UEFI-based PCs that support booting into either UEFI or legacy BIOS modes, make sure your PC is booted into the correct firmware mode before starting Windows Setup. Otherwise, Windows Setup may set up the hard drive partitions incorrectly, or may abort the installation if the hard drives are preconfigured. For more information, see [WinPE: Boot in UEFI or legacy BIOS mode](#).

Firmware: BIOS 32-bit and 64-bit

To set up a single environment or set of scripts that can deploy Windows to both 32-bit and 64-bit BIOS PCs, use a 32-bit version of Windows PE and a 32-bit version of Windows Setup.

The 64-bit version of Windows Setup does not run on the 32-bit version of Windows PE.

To install a 64-bit version of Windows from a 32-bit version of Windows PE:

1. Boot the PC using the 32-bit version of Windows PE.
2. Use any of the following techniques to install a 64-bit version of Windows:
 - Run a 32-bit version of Windows Setup, and use the `/InstallFrom` command-line option to select a 64-bit Windows image:

```
X:\windows\system32> D:\setup /InstallFrom:"N:\Windows_64-bit\sources\install.wim"
```

-or-

- Run a 32-bit version of Windows Setup, and use the `Microsoft-Windows-Setup\ImageInstall\OSImage\InstallFrom` unattend setting to select a 64-bit Windows image.

```
X:\windows\system32> D:\setup /unattend:"D:\unattend_install_64-bit.xml"
```

-or-

- Use image-capturing tools to apply a 64-bit version of Windows to the PC.

```
Dism /Apply-Image /ImageFile:"Fabrikam_64-bit_image.wim" /Index:1 /ApplyDir:D:\
```

For more information, see [Apply Images Using DISM](#).

Warning

This procedure does not support deploying Windows 7.

Using Windows Setup to Install Previous Versions of Windows

You can use the Windows 8.1 and Windows Server 2012 R2 versions of Windows Setup to install previous versions of Windows:

HOST OPERATING SYSTEM	WINDOWS 8.1 SETUP SUPPORT
Windows 8.1	Yes
Windows Server 2012 R2	Yes
Windows 8	Yes
Windows Server 2012	Yes
Windows 7	Yes
Windows Server 2008 R2	Yes
Windows Vista	No
Windows Server 2008	No
Windows XP with SP3	No
Windows Server 2003 R2 and previous versions	No
Windows XP with SP2 and previous versions	No

You can also run Windows Setup from the Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE). The following table lists the supported Windows PE environments:

VERSION OF WINDOWS SETUP	WINDOWS PE 5.0 (WINDOWS 8.1)	WINDOWS PE 4.0 (WINDOWS 8)	WINDOWS PE 3.0 (WINDOWS 7)	WINDOWS PE 2.0 (WINDOWS VISTA)
Windows 8.1 Setup	Yes	Yes	Yes	No

VERSION OF WINDOWS SETUP	WINDOWS PE 5.0 (WINDOWS 8.1)	WINDOWS PE 4.0 (WINDOWS 8)	WINDOWS PE 3.0 (WINDOWS 7)	WINDOWS PE 2.0 (WINDOWS VISTA)
Windows 8 Setup	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Windows 7 Setup	No	No	Yes	Yes
Windows Vista Setup	No	No	No	Yes

Cross-Platform Deployment

Cross-platform deployment is the process of installing a specific architecture of Windows from an environment of a different architecture. For example, you can deploy a 64-bit edition of Windows 8.1 or Windows 8 from a 32-bit edition of Windows PE. The benefit of using a cross-platform deployment solution is that you don't have to maintain multiple versions of Windows PE for installing different architecture editions of Windows. You can build a single Windows PE image that you can use to install both 32-bit and 64-bit editions of Windows.

When you install a 64-bit edition of Windows from a 32-bit version of Windows PE, you must use Windows PE 2.0 or a later version. For more information about Windows PE releases, see [WinPE for Windows 10](#).

The following table lists the different architecture types of Windows images (32-bit or 64-bit) that a specific version of Windows 8.1 Setup is able to install.

	64-BIT WINDOWS 8.1 IMAGE	32-BIT WINDOWS 8.1 IMAGE	64-BIT WINDOWS 8 IMAGE	32-BIT WINDOWS 8 IMAGE
64-bit Windows 8.1 Setup	Yes	No	Yes	No
32-bit Windows 8.1 Setup	Yes	Yes	No	Yes

Limitations of cross-platform deployment

These cross-platform deployment scenarios aren't supported:

- Installing a 64-bit Windows image on a 32-bit computer.
- Deploying a 32-bit Windows image from a 64-bit preinstallation environment.
- Using a 32-bit version of Windows Setup to upgrade a 64-bit operating system.
- Using a 32-bit version of Windows 8 Setup to deploy a 64-bit version of the Windows 7 operating system.

For example, you must use a 64-bit version of Windows 8 Setup to deploy a 64-bit version of Windows 7. In previous releases, the version of Windows Setup version had to match the operating system that you would deploy. For example, you had to use the Windows 7 Setup.exe to install Windows 7.

- Using Microsoft Internet SCSI (iSCSI) boot disk in a cross-platform deployment scenario.

For example, installing Windows (64-bit version) from cross-platform media, such as Windows PE (32-bit version), to an iSCSI boot disk is unsupported. You must use the same architecture for Windows PE as the target deployment architecture when you deploy Windows to an iSCSI boot disk.

- On Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI), deploying a 64-bit edition of Windows from a 32-bit version of Windows PE. On some UEFI computers, you can't install Windows in BIOS-compatibility mode and must switch to UEFI-compatibility mode. For more information, see [Boot to UEFI Mode or Legacy BIOS mode](#).
- On BIOS:
 - Performing cross-platform deployments, except as part of a clean installation, or performing a Windows Deployment Services deployment.
 - Providing cross-platform installation media to users for recovery.

To prevent users from installing the wrong edition of Windows for the architecture of their computer, don't provide cross-platform installation media to users for recovery or reinstallation. Also, the Windows Recovery Environment (Windows RE) feature that's included on the media applies only to 32-bit Windows installations.

Creating a .wim file for multiple architecture types

If a .wim file contains both 32-bit and 64-bit Windows editions, you must select the Windows image that you want to install. Typically, Windows Setup uses the product key that you specify in the `ProductKey` setting to determine which Windows image to install. But if the file contains 2 editions of the same Windows version, like Windows 8.1 Pro, you must use the `MetaData` setting in an answer file to specify the edition to install.

To choose an image, specify metadata that corresponds to the image index, name, description, or architecture type. For the metadata for architecture type, use 0 for 32-bit editions and 9 for 64-bit editions. For more info, see the `MetaData Key` setting.

The answer file must include processor-specific components. The answer-file settings in the [windowsPE](#) configuration pass must match the architecture type of the preinstallation environment. The settings that apply to the Windows image must match the architecture type of the image. For example, if you create an answer file that deploys 64-bit images from a 32-bit preinstallation environment, all components in the answer file for the [windowsPE](#) configuration pass must include the processor attribute type of **x86**. Settings to be applied in the [specialize](#), [oobeSystem](#), or other configuration passes must include the processor attribute type of **amd64**.

Installing 64-bit drivers

All drivers that are included with Windows are signed. In cross-architecture deployments, you can use an out-of-box device driver. But if you use an unsigned out-of-box device driver that's boot critical in a 64-bit installation, the installation may become unusable.

You can install 64-bit drivers for a Windows image during Windows Setup in either of these ways:

- In attended installations, you can press F6 or click the **Load Driver** button on the **Disk Configuration** page of Windows Setup.
- In unattended installations, you can use the `Microsoft-Windows-PnpCustomizationsWinPE` or `Microsoft-Windows-PnpCustomizationsNonWinPE` component in an answer file to specify a driver path. For more information about how to automate your installation, see [Automate Windows Setup](#).

Hardware considerations: Encrypted Hard Drives (e-Drives)

We added support for Encrypted Hard Drive Devices (also known as E-Drives) in Windows 8, Windows Server 2012, and Windows PE 4.0.

To install a previous version of Windows (examples: Windows 7 or Windows Vista) to an Encrypted Hard Drive Device, use Windows PE 4.0 or later.

For more information, see [Encrypted Hard Drive Device Guide](#).

Related topics

[WinPE: Boot in UEFI or legacy BIOS mode](#)

[Windows Setup Scenarios and Best Practices](#)

[Windows Setup Installation Process](#)

[Windows Setup Automation Overview](#)

[Audit Mode Overview](#)

[Windows Setup Configuration Passes](#)

Windows Setup Scenarios and Best Practices

6/6/2017 • 5 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Windows® Setup installs the Windows operating system. Windows Setup uses a technology called Image-based Setup (IBS) that provides a single, unified process with which all customers can install Windows. IBS performs clean installations and upgrades of Windows and is used in both client and server installations. Windows Setup also enables you to customize Windows during installation by using Setup answer file settings.

In this topic:

- [Common Usage Scenarios](#)
- [Windows Setup Best Practices](#)
- [Windows Setup Limitations](#)

Common Usage Scenarios

Common installation scenarios include performing clean installations, upgrades, and unattended installations.

Custom Installations

The most common scenario for Windows Setup is performing a custom installation. In this scenario, you install Windows onto a computer that does not have an operating system, or has a previous version of Windows. This scenario consists of the following stages:

1. Run Setup.exe from your Windows product DVD or network share.
2. Select the **Custom** installation type.
3. If you are installing from a previous installation of Windows, Windows Setup creates a local boot directory and copies all of the required Windows Setup files to this directory.
4. Windows Setup reboots, installs and configures Windows components, and, after installation is complete, launches Windows Welcome.

Custom installations do not migrate any settings or preferences from previously installed versions of Windows. Files from previous Windows versions are copied to a \Windows.old directory. All data from the Windows installation including the Users, Program Files, and Windows directories are saved to this directory.

Upgrades

Windows Setup can also perform upgrades from a supported operating system.

This scenario includes the following stages:

1. Run Setup.exe on the previous version of Windows.
2. Select the **Upgrade** installation type. Windows Setup upgrades the system and protects your files, settings, and preferences during the installation process.
3. Windows Setup reboots and restores your protected files, settings, and preferences. Windows Setup then launches Windows Welcome.

Note

Upgrades are used to upgrade a single computer to Windows 8. Upgrades also support migrating user data to a new system.

Automated Installations

Automated installations enable you to customize a Windows installation and remove the need for a user to interact with Windows Setup. By using Windows System Image Manager (Windows SIM) or the Component Platform Interface (CPI) APIs, you can create one or more customized Windows installations that can then be deployed across many different hardware configurations.

The automated installation, also called an unattended installation, scenario includes the following stages:

1. Use Windows SIM or the CPI APIs to create an unattended installation answer file, typically called Unattend.xml. This answer file contains all of the settings that you configure in the Windows image. For more information, see [Windows System Image Manager How-to Topics](#).
2. From Windows PE, a previous version of Windows, or another preinstallation environment, run Setup.exe with the explicit path to the answer file. If you do not include the path to the answer file, Setup.exe searches for a valid answer file in several specific locations. For more information, see [Windows Setup Command-Line Options](#).
3. Windows Setup then installs the operating system and configures all settings listed in the answer file. Additional applications, device drivers, and updates can also be installed during Windows Setup. After the operating system is installed, Setup launches Windows Welcome.

Windows Setup Best Practices

The following section describes some of the best practices to use with Windows Setup.

- **Verify that there is sufficient space for Windows Setup temporary files.** If you run setup from a previous version of Windows, verify that there is sufficient space on the disk for temporary Windows Setup files. The space that is required may vary, but it can be up to 500 megabytes (MB).
- **Previous Windows installations are moved to a Windows.old folder.** As a best practice, you should back up your data before you upgrade. If you install Windows over a previous Windows installation, all previous Windows files and directories are moved to a Windows.old folder, including the contents of the Users, Program Files, and Windows directories. You can access your data in the Windows.old folder after Windows Setup completes. If you have additional folders not in the Users, Program Files, or Windows directories, those folders are not moved. For example, if you have a folder that is named C:\Drivers, that folder will not be moved to the Windows.old folder.
- **Review the Windows Setup log files.** If you experience problems during Windows Setup, review the log files in %WINDIR%\panther. You will be able to identify and troubleshoot many issues by reviewing the installation log files. For more information, see [Deployment Troubleshooting and Log Files](#) and [Windows Setup Log Files and Event Logs](#).

Windows Setup Limitations

The following sections describe some of the limitations of Windows Setup. Review this section before you run Windows Setup.

- **Enable UEFI-compatibility mode to install to an UEFI-based computer.** On some UEFI computers, you cannot install Windows in BIOS-compatibility mode. You may need to switch to UEFI-compatibility mode.
- **Applications might require a consistent drive letter.** If you install custom applications to your Windows image, we recommend that you install Windows to the same drive letter on the destination computer because some applications require a consistent drive letter. Uninstallation, servicing, and repair scenarios might not function appropriately if the drive letter of the system does not match the drive letter specified in the application. This limitation applies to both the Deployment Image Servicing and

Management (DISM) tool and Windows Setup.

- **Deploying multiple images to multiple partitions.** If you capture and deploy multiple images on multiple partitions, the following requirements must be fulfilled:
 - The partition structure, bus location, and number of disks must be identical on the reference and destination computers.
 - The partition types (primary, extended, or logical) must match. The active partition on the reference computer must match that of the destination computer.
- **Installing Custom .wim files requires a description value in the .wim file.** When you create a custom .wim file, Windows Setup requires that you always include a description value. If a .wim file does not include a description value, the image may not install correctly. You can provide a description value when you use the **dism** command with the **/capture-image** option. If you install a .wim file that does not have a description value, recapture the image and provide a valid description value. For more information, see the [DISM - Deployment Image Servicing and Management Technical Reference for Windows](#).

Note

For Windows® Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE), the version of boot files must match the computer architecture. An x64 UEFI computer can only boot by using Windows PE x64 boot files. An x86 computer can only boot by using Windows PE x86 boot files. This is different from legacy BIOS. In legacy BIOS, an x64 computer can boot by using x86 boot files.

Related topics

[Windows Setup Installation Process](#)

[Windows Setup Automation Overview](#)

[Audit Mode Overview](#)

[Windows Setup Configuration Passes](#)

[Windows Setup Supported Platforms and Cross-Platform Deployments](#)

Windows Setup Automation Overview

7/13/2017 • 11 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Use Setupconfig.ini to install Windows

What is a setupconfig file?

Setupconfig is a configuration file that is used to pass a set of flags or parameters to Windows setup.exe. Use this file as an alternative to passing parameters to Windows setup on a command line. This functionality is available in Windows 10, version 1511 and later.

IT pros can use the setupconfig file to add parameters to Windows Setup from Windows Update and Windows Server Update Services.

The different parameters that can be used with Windows 10 Setup.exe are described in this topic.

Setupconfig.ini files can contain single parameters, or parameters and value pairs. Do not include "/" characters, and with parameter and value pairs, include "=" between the two.

For example, you create a Setupconfig.ini with the following. Note that the header `[SetupConfig]` is required.

```
[SetupConfig]
NoReboot
ShowOobe=None
Telemetry=Enable
ReflectDrivers = <path of folder containing INF and SYS files for the encryption drivers>
```

This is equivalent to the following command line:

```
Setup /NoReboot /ShowOobe None /Telemetry Enable
```

How does Windows Setup use Setupconfig.ini?

Using media/ISO file

If you are running Windows setup from media or an ISO file, you must include the location to the setupconfig file on the command line ("`/ConfigFile <path>`") when running setup.exe. For example:

```
Setup.exe /ConfigFile <path to Setupconfig.ini>
```

If you include a parameter on the command line and the same parameter in the setupconfig file, the setupconfig file parameter and value has precedence.

Using Windows Update

If the update is delivered through Windows Update, Windows Setup searches in a default location for a setupconfig file. You can include the setupconfig file here:

```
"%systemdrive%\Users\Default\AppData\Local\Microsoft\Windows\WSUS\SetupConfig.ini"
```

Use an answer file while installing Windows

You can automate Windows installation by using an answer file:

Use a USB flash drive

1. Use a sample answer file or create your own with Windows System Image Manager (Windows SIM).
2. Save the file as **Autounattend.xml** on the root of a USB flash drive.
3. On a new PC, put in the Windows product DVD and the USB flash drive, and then boot the PC. When no other answer file is selected, Windows Setup searches for this file.

Select an answer file

- You can select a specific answer file during installation by booting to the Windows Preinstallation Environment, and using the **setup.exe** command with the **/unattend:filename** option. For more information, see [WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#).

For sample answer files and a list of settings used to automate installation, see [Automate Windows Setup](#).

Modify an existing installation

Because reboots are required during Setup, a copy of the answer file is cached to the %WINDIR%\Panther directory of the Windows installation. You can modify this file to do any of the following:

- Update system and control panel settings without booting the image.
- Update an image by preparing the PC to boot to audit mode (see Microsoft-Windows-Deployment\Reseal\Mode).
- Update the order in which drivers or packages are installed. (Packages with dependencies may require installation in a certain order.)

Replace the answer file in an offline image

1. Create a custom answer file in Windows System Image Manager (Windows SIM).
2. Open an elevated command prompt.
3. Mount the Windows image.

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:"C:\images\CustomImage.wim" /Index:1 /MountDir:C:\mount
```

4. Modify or replace the file: \Windows\Panther\unattend.xml in the mounted image.

```
Copy CustomAnswerFile.xml C:\mount\Windows\Panther\unattend.xml
```

Note

The answer file in the image may contain settings that have not yet been processed. If you want these settings to get processed, edit the existing file rather than replacing it.

5. Unmount the image.

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\mount /Commit
```

6. Test the image by deploying it to a new PC, without specifying an answer file. When Windows Setup runs, it finds and uses this answer file.

Implicit Answer File Search Order

Windows Setup searches for answer files at the beginning of each configuration pass, including the initial installation and after applying and booting an image. If an answer file is found, and it contains settings for the

given configuration pass, it processes those settings.

Windows Setup identifies and logs all available answer files, depending on the search order. The answer file that has the highest precedence is used. The answer file is validated and then cached to the computer. Valid answer files are cached to the \$Windows.~BT\Sources\Panther directory during the [windowsPE](#) and [offlineServicing](#) configuration passes. After the Windows installation is extracted to the hard disk, the answer file is cached to %WINDIR%\panther.

The following table shows the implicit answer file search order.

SEARCH ORDER	LOCATION	DESCRIPTION
1	Registry HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\Setup\UnattendFile	Specifies a pointer in the registry to an answer file. The answer file is not required to be named Unattend.xml.
2	%WINDIR%\Panther\Unattend	The name of the answer file must be Unattend.xml or Autounattend.xml. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"><p>Note Windows Setup searches this directory only on downlevel installations. If Windows Setup starts from Windows PE, the %WINDIR%\Panther\Unattend directory is not searched.</p></div>
3	%WINDIR%\Panther	Windows Setup caches answer files to this location for use in subsequent stages of installation. For example, when a computer reboots, Setup can continue to apply the settings in an answer file. If you explicitly specify an answer file by using Windows Setup or Sysprep, the answer file cached to this directory is overwritten with the explicitly specified answer file. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"><p>Important Do not use, modify, or overwrite the answer file in this directory. The answer file in this directory is annotated by Windows Setup during installation. This answer file cannot be reused in Windows SIM or any other Windows installations.</p></div>

SEARCH ORDER	LOCATION	DESCRIPTION
4	Removable read/write media in order of drive letter, at the root of the drive.	Removable read/write media in order of drive letter, at the root of the drive. The name of the answer file must be Unattend.xml or Autounattend.xml, and the answer file must be located at the root of the drive.
5	Removable read-only media in order of drive letter, at the root of the drive.	Removable read-only media in order of drive letter, at the root of the drive. The name of the answer file must be Unattend.xml or Autounattend.xml, and must be located at the root of the drive.
6	windowsPE and offlineServicing configuration passes: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• \Sources directory in a Windows distribution All other passes: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• %WINDIR%\System32\Sysprep	In the windowsPE and offlineServicing configuration passes, the name of the answer file must be Autounattend.xml. For all other configuration passes, the file name must be Unattend.xml.
7	%SYSTEMDRIVE%	The answer file name must be Unattend.xml or Autounattend.xml
8	Drive from where Windows Setup (setup.exe) is running, at the root of the drive.	The name of the answer file must be Unattend.xml or Autounattend.xml, and must be located at the root of the Windows Setup folder path.

Sensitive Data in Answer Files

Setup removes sensitive data in the cached answer file at the end of each configuration pass.

Important

Because answer files are cached to the computer during Windows Setup, your answer files will persist on the computer between reboots. Before you deliver the computer to a customer, you must delete the cached answer file in the %WINDIR%\panther directory. There might be potential security issues if you include domain passwords, product keys, or other sensitive data in your answer file. However, if you have unprocessed settings in the [oobeSystem](#) configuration pass that you intend to run when an end user starts the computer, consider deleting the sections of the answer file that have already been processed. One option when you run the **sysprep /oobe** command might be to use a separate answer file that only contains settings in the [oobeSystem](#) configuration pass.

However, if an answer file is embedded in a higher precedence location than the cached answer file, then the

cached answer may be overwritten at the beginning of each subsequent configuration pass, if the embedded answer file matches the implicit search criteria. For example, if an answer file is embedded at %WINDIR%\Panther\Unattend\Unattend.xml, the embedded answer file will replace the cached answer file at the beginning of each configuration pass. For example, if the embedded answer file specifies both the **specialize** and **oobeSystem** configuration passes, then the embedded answer file is discovered for the **specialize** configuration pass, cached, processed, and sensitive data is cleared. The embedded answer file is discovered again during the oobeSystem configuration pass and cached again. As a result, the sensitive data for the specialize configuration pass is no longer cleared. Sensitive data for previously processed configuration passes will not be cleared again. Unless the cached answer file must be overridden, we recommend that answer files be embedded at a location that has a lower precedence.

Important

Because answer files are cached to the computer during Windows Setup, your answer files will persist on the computer between reboots. Before you deliver the computer to a customer, you must delete the cached answer file in the %WINDIR%\panther directory. There might be potential security issues if you include domain passwords, product keys, or other sensitive data in your answer file. However, if you have unprocessed settings in the **oobeSystem** configuration pass that you intend to run when an end user starts the computer, consider deleting the sections of the answer file that have already been processed. One option when you run the **sysprep /oobe** command might be to use a separate answer file that only contains settings in the oobeSystem configuration pass.

You can add a command to the Setupcomplete.cmd command script that deletes any cached or embedded answer files on the computer. For more information, see [Add a Custom Script to Windows Setup](#).

Windows Setup Annotates Configuration Passes in an Answer File

After a configuration pass is processed, Windows Setup annotates the cached answer file to indicate that the pass has been processed. If the configuration pass is run again and the cached answer file has not been replaced or updated in the interim, the answer file settings are not processed again. Instead, Windows Setup will search for implicit Unattend.xml files that are at a lower precedence location than the cached Unattend.xml file.

For example, you can install Windows with an answer file that contains Microsoft-Windows-Deployment/**RunSynchronous** commands in the **specialize** configuration pass. During installation, the **specialize** configuration pass runs and the **RunSynchronous** commands execute. After installation, run the **sysprep** command with the **/generalize** option. If there is no answer file in a higher precedence than the cached answer file or an answer file was not explicitly passed to the Sysprep tool, Setup runs the **specialize** configuration pass the next time that the computer boots. Because the cached answer file contains an annotation that the settings for that configuration pass were already applied, the **RunSynchronous** commands do not execute.

Implicit Answer File Search Examples

The following examples help describe the behavior of implicit answer file searches.

Answer Files Named Autounattend.xml are Automatically Discovered by Windows Setup

1. Create an answer file that is named Autounattend.xml that includes settings in the **windowsPE** configuration pass.
2. Copy Autounattend.xml to a removable media device.
3. Configure the BIOS of your computer to boot from CD or DVD.
4. Boot the Windows product DVD.
5. Insert the removable media device when Windows is booting. This example assumes that the removable media is assigned the drive letter D:\.

Windows Setup starts and automatically identifies Autounattend.xml as a valid answer file. Because the answer file uses a valid file name (Autounattend.xml), is located in one of the valid search paths (the root of D), and includes valid settings for the current configuration pass ([windowsPE](#)), this answer file is used.

The answer file is cached to the computer. If there are no additional answer files discovered in later passes, the cached answer file is used throughout Windows Setup.

Answer Files are Discovered in Order of Precedence in Predefined Search Paths

1. Install Windows with an answer file by using the steps in the previous scenario. The answer file that is used to install Windows is cached to the system in the %WINDIR%\Panther directory.
2. Copy an Unattend.xml file to the %WINDIR%\System32\Sysprep directory.
This answer file has settings in the [generalize](#) configuration pass.
3. Run the **sysprep** command with the **/generalize** option to create a reference image.

Because the %WINDIR%\System32\Sysprep directory is in the implicit search paths, the answer file copied to this directory is found. However, an answer file that was used to install Windows is still cached on the computer and contains settings for the [generalize](#) configuration pass. This cached answer file has a higher precedence than the one copied to the Sysprep directory. The cached answer file is used.

Note

The Sysprep tool can be run as a command-line tool or as a GUI tool. If you run the Sysprep tool as a GUI tool, you can select the **Generalize** check box.

```
To use the new answer file, you can copy it to a directory of a higher precedence than the cached answer file, or you can specify the answer file by using the **/unattend** option. For example:
```

```
...
sysprep /generalize /unattend:C:\MyAnswerFile.xml
...
```

Answer Files Must Include a Valid Configuration Pass

1. Copy an Unattend.xml file to a removable media device.

The Unattend.xml file has settings only for the [auditSystem](#) and [auditUser](#) configuration passes.

2. On an installed Windows operating system, run the **sysprep /generalize /oobe** command.

Even though the answer file is available in one of the implicit search paths, the Unattend.xml file is ignored because it does not contain a valid pass for the [generalize](#) configuration pass.

Additional Resources

See the following topics for more information about answer files and configuration passes:

- [Best Practices for Authoring Answer Files](#)
- [Create or Open an Answer File](#)
- [Configure Components and Settings in an Answer File](#)
- [Validate an Answer File](#)
- [Hide Sensitive Data in an Answer File](#)
- [How Configuration Passes Work](#)

Related topics

[Windows Setup Scenarios and Best Practices](#)

[Windows Setup Installation Process](#)

[Automate Windows Setup](#)

[Audit Mode Overview](#)

[Windows Setup Configuration Passes](#)

[Windows Setup Supported Platforms and Cross-Platform Deployments](#)

Windows Setup Installation Process

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Windows® Setup is the program that installs Windows or upgrades an existing Windows installation. It is also the basis for the following installation and upgrade methods:

- Interactive Setup
- Automated installation
- Windows Deployment Services

In this topic:

- [Windows Setup Installation Types](#)
- [Windows Setup Process](#)

Windows Setup Installation Types

Windows Setup can perform both clean and upgrade installations. However, it does not perform computer-to-computer migrations. Instead, you must use Windows Easy Transfer, the User State Migration Tool (USMT), or another migration tool to move data from a previous installation to the new operating system.

- **Custom installations.** Windows Setup can perform a custom installation, also known as a clean installation, which saves your previous Windows installation but does not migrate your settings. The previous Windows installation will not boot after a clean installation.
- **Upgrade installations.** Windows Setup can perform an installation that retains your settings and preferences while upgrading your operating system.

Windows Setup Process

The Windows Setup program starts and restarts the computer, gathers information, copies files, and creates or adjusts configuration settings. The following table shows the overall process for Windows Setup:

WINDOWS SETUP PHASE	SETUP ACTIONS
---------------------	---------------

WINDOWS SETUP PHASE	SETUP ACTIONS
<p>Downlevel (for custom installations and upgrades) - or - Windows PE (for booting the Windows DVD or booting a custom Windows PE image)</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Specify Windows Setup configurations by using either the Windows Setup dialog boxes (interactive) or an answer file (unattended), or a combination of the two. Windows Setup configurations include adding a product key and configuring a disk. Apply answer file settings in the windowsPE configuration pass to configure the installation behavior and user experience. Configure the disk. Copy the Windows image to the disk. Prepare boot information. Process answer file settings in the offlineServicing configuration pass. The settings are applied to the Windows image before that Windows image boots. When the computer first boots, any optional components, drivers, updates, or language packs are processed.
Online configuration	Create specific configurations, making the Windows installation unique.
Windows Welcome	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Apply answer file settings in the oobeSystem configuration pass. Apply content file settings from the Oobe.xml file. Start Windows Welcome.

Related topics

[Windows Setup Technical Reference](#)

[Automate Windows Setup](#)

[Settings for Automating OOBE](#)

[Windows Setup Scenarios and Best Practices](#)

[Windows Setup Automation Overview](#)

[Audit Mode Overview](#)

[Windows Setup Configuration Passes](#)

[Windows Setup Supported Platforms and Cross-Platform Deployments](#)

Windows 8.1 Upgrade Scenarios for OEMs

6/6/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The Windows 8.1 upgrade retains the majority of OEM customizations, including OEM branding, apps, help and support information, drivers, and OEM store listings. Some OEM solutions, including a custom Help and Support experience or custom recovery solution might not persist through the upgrade. To mitigate any potential problems for your customers, test the end-to-end upgrade experience.

The Windows 8.1 can be installed from the Windows Store or from media.

Upgrade options for Windows 8.1 include:

- **Full Upgrade** preserves apps, user data, user accounts, and PC settings.
- **Data Only** preserves user accounts and data, but doesn't preserve desktop application installs or OS settings. Drivers that are critical for installation (storage and networking drivers) are migrated to the new installation.
- **Clean install** doesn't save any data or Windows configurations.

All personal files, and Windows files and directories, are moved to a Windows.old folder, and can be accessed after Windows Setup is complete. Personal files will remain in Windows.old. After a period of time, Windows files from the previous installation are removed.

The supported options for upgrade are:

PREVIOUS OS	FULL UPGRADE	DATA ONLY	CLEAN INSTALL
Windows 8 (from Windows Store)	Yes	No	No
Windows RT (from Windows Store)	Yes	No	No
Windows 8 (from Media)	Yes	Yes	Yes
Windows 7 (from Media)	No	Yes	Yes

Windows 8.1 upgrade installations from Windows Vista and Windows XP aren't supported.

System Rollback log files

Rollback to the previous installation occurs when the Windows upgrade fails. Troubleshoot issues by looking at the log files (<Drive>\$Windows.~BT\sources\Panther and sources\Rollback, where <Drive> is the root of the drive where Windows is installed).

Warning

The Push-Button Reset image will no longer be available on Windows RT devices if a system rollback occurs.

Low disk space

Windows 8.1 can be installed on PCs with limited disk space. The Windows upgrade process compresses the previous Windows installation and deletes large cache files.

Windows RE

A Windows 8.1 version of Windows RE is installed so that the operating system can be repaired. During the upgrade, boot critical and input device drivers are added to the new Windows RE image.

Windows RE is installed in the following ways:

1. The existing Windows RE partition is used on Windows RT.
2. The Windows RE partition is left in place on Windows 8 PCs with an OEM-configured Windows RE partition.
A new Windows RE partition is created by shrinking the Windows partition.
3. The existing Windows RE partition is used on Windows 8 PCs with a generic Windows RE partition.

Caution

Any OEM customizations to the existing Windows RE image aren't migrated to the new Windows RE image.

Recovery Image for Push Button Reset

The Push Button Reset image is updated based on the following implementation:

Before upgrade After upgrade Platform **Local recovery image availability**

Upgrade method

Recovery image

Recovery Image partition

x64, x86

Local recovery image is available

Media or Windows Store

Existing Windows 8 recovery image

Existing partition is unmodified

x64, x86

Local recovery image is not available

Media or Windows Store

None

None

Windows RT

Local recovery image is available

Windows Store

New Windows 8.1 recovery image

Existing partition is reused

Windows RT

Local recovery image is not available

Windows Store

None

None

On Windows RT PCs with an existing recovery image, the image will be replaced by a Windows 8.1 recovery image. The following customizations are migrated to the Windows 8.1 recovery image, including:

- Store customizations and licenses for pre-loaded Windows Store apps
- Drivers compatible with Windows 8.1
- OEM support information

The recovery image will remain on Windows 8 PCs with an existing recovery image.

If the previous operating system doesn't have an existing recovery image partition, no recovery image or partitions are created.

Drivers

In Full upgrade scenarios, the following driver types are migrated:

- Compatible drivers
- Third-party drivers installed by an OEM or end-user
- Storage drivers that are critical to installation are migrated to Windows PE as well as the operating system in all upgrade scenarios.

The following drivers are not migrated:

- Third-party in-box drivers, such as printer drivers, aren't migrated because the new operating system typically contains more up-to-date drivers.
- Software filter drivers aren't migrated, with the exception of antivirus filter drivers, or drivers installed by an .inf file.

Network and Wi-Fi drivers are migrated on clean installations and Data Only upgrade scenarios.

All migrated drivers are placed in the driver repository and Windows automatically installs drivers during PnP based on the criteria defined in [How Windows Ranks Drivers](#).

Related topics

[Windows Setup Technical Reference](#)

[Windows Setup Log Files and Event Logs](#)

Boot from a DVD

6/6/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The simplest way to install Windows on new hardware is to start directly from the Windows product DVD by using an answer file that is named Autounattend.xml. This method provides flexibility when network access is not available or when you are building only a few computers. You can use this same method to build an initial image in an image-based deployment scenario, typically known as a *master installation*.

By using the answer file, you can automate all or parts of Windows Setup. You can create an answer file by using Windows System Image Manager (Windows SIM). For more information, see [Create or Open an Answer File](#).

Prerequisites

To complete this walkthrough, you need the following:

- An answer file on removable media (CD or DVD-ROM) or a USB flash drive. The answer file must be named Autounattend.xml. The answer file must be located at the root of the media.
- A Windows product DVD.

To install Windows from the Windows product DVD

1. Turn on the new computer.

Note

This example assumes that the hard disk drive is blank.

2. Insert both the Windows product DVD and the removable media that contains your answer file into the new computer.

Note

When you use a USB flash drive, insert the drive directly into the primary set of USB ports for the computer. For a desktop computer, this is typically in the back of the computer.

3. Restart the computer by pressing the CTRL+ALT+DEL keys. Windows Setup (Setup.exe) starts automatically.

By default, Windows Setup searches at the root of a drive and other locations, such as removable media, for an answer file that is named Autounattend.xml. This occurs even if you do not explicitly specify an answer file. For more information, see "Implicitly Searching for an Answer File" and "Implicit Answer File Search Order" in [Windows Setup Automation Overview](#).

4. After the Setup program is finished, validate that Windows applied all customizations, and then reseal the computer by using the **sysprep** command together with the **/generalize** option.

The Sysprep tool removes all system-specific information and resets the computer. The next time that the computer starts, your customers can accept the Microsoft Software License Terms and add user-specific information.

Optional: To automatically run the Sysprep tool after the installation, set the Microsoft-Windows-Deployment | Reseal component setting in your answer file (Autounattend.xml) as follows:

```
ForceShutdownNow = true, Mode =OOBE
```

Optional: To run the Sysprep tool manually from a running operating system, type the following at a command prompt:

```
c:\windows\system32\sysprep /oobe /shutdown
```

For more information, see [Sysprep \(System Preparation\) Overview](#).

Next Steps

This walkthrough illustrates a basic unattended installation that requires no user input. You can manually add more customizations to the newly installed operating system. If this is a master installation or an installation that you will use for image deployment, shut down the computer. Then, capture an image of the installation by using the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) tool or any third-party imaging software.

Important

You must run the **sysprep /generalize** command before you move a Windows image to a new computer by any method. These methods include imaging, hard disk duplication, and other methods. Moving or copying a Windows image to a different computer without running the **sysprep /generalize** command is not supported, even if the new computer has the same hardware configuration. Generalizing the image removes unique information from the Windows installation so that you can apply that image on different computers.

The next time that you boot the Windows image, the **specialize** configuration pass runs. During this configuration pass, many components perform actions that must occur when you boot a Windows image on a new computer. For more information, see [How Configuration Passes Work](#).

Related topics

[Windows Setup Technical Reference](#)

[Use a Configuration Set with Windows Setup](#)

[Deploy a Custom Image](#)

[Boot Windows to Audit Mode or OOBE](#)

[Add Device Drivers to Windows During Windows Setup](#)

[Add a Custom Script to Windows Setup](#)

Install Windows from a USB Flash Drive

10/17/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can install Windows on a device without a DVD drive by using a USB flash drive.

NOTE

If you're looking for a tool that downloads Windows 10 and creates a bootable USB Windows installation drive, see [Download Windows 10](#).

This topic covers how to create a bootable Windows installation USB drive from a Windows 10 install .iso or DVD.

What you need

- Windows 10 install .iso or DVD
- USB flash drive with at least 5GB free space. This drive will be formatted, so make sure it doesn't have any important files on it.
- Technician PC - Windows PC that you'll use to format the USB flash drive
- Destination PC - A PC that you'll install Windows on

Step 1 - Format the drive and set the primary partition as active

1. Connect the USB flash drive to your technician PC.
2. Open Disk Management: Right-click on **Start** and choose **Disk management**.
3. Format the partition: Right-click the USB drive partition and choose **Format**. Select the **FAT32** file system to be able to boot either BIOS-based or UEFI-based PCs. The default install.wim is smaller than the 4 GB file size limit of FAT32.
4. Set the partition as active: Right-click the USB drive partition and click **Mark Partition as Active**.

Step 2 - Copy Windows Setup to the USB flash drive

1. Use File Explorer to copy and paste the entire contents of the Windows product DVD to the USB flash drive.
2. Optional: add an Unattend file or a configuration set to automate the installation process. For more information, see [Automate Windows Setup](#).

Step 3 - Install Windows to the new PC

1. Connect the USB flash drive to a new PC.
2. Turn on the PC and press the key that opens the boot-device selection menu for the computer, such as the Esc/F10/F12 keys. Select the option that boots the PC from the USB flash drive.
Windows Setup starts. Follow the instructions to install Windows.
3. Remove the USB flash drive.

Related topics

[Windows Setup Technical Reference](#)

Deploy a Custom Image

7/13/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

In this topic you create a reference installation, capture an image of the installation, and rerun Windows® Setup with an answer file that points to your custom image. Deploying a custom image using Windows Setup provides several benefits over applying an image using an image capture tool.

Setup supports the following:

- Applying another answer file for additional customizations during deployment.
- Reconfiguring disk configuration.
- Adding additional drivers.
- Replacing a product key.
- Selecting a different language to install.
- Selecting from a list of images to install, if your image file contains more than one image.
- Installing to a different drive location.
- Upgrading an existing Windows installation.
- Configuring the computer to dual-boot operating systems.
- Ensuring that the hardware can support Windows 8.

There are some limitations to installing a custom image using Windows Setup. For more information, see [Windows Setup Scenarios and Best Practices](#).

In this topic:

- [Copy the Windows product DVD source files to a network share](#)
- [Create a master installation](#)
- [Capture an image of the installation](#)
- [Create a custom answer file](#)
- [Deploy the image by using Windows Setup](#)

Prerequisites

To complete this walkthrough, you need the following:

- A technician computer. A technician computer is any computer that has the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (Windows ADK) tools installed..
- A Windows 8 product DVD.
- A master computer on which you will install and capture your custom image.
- Bootable Windows PE media. There are several types of Windows PE media that you can create. For more information about these options, see [WinPE for Windows 10](#).
- Access to a network share to store your custom image and Windows Setup source files.

Step 1: Copy the Windows product DVD source files to a network share

On your technician computer, copy the entire content of the Windows product DVD to a network share. For example:

```
net use N: \\server\share\  
xcopy D: N:\WindowsDVD\ /s
```

where D: is the DVD-ROM drive on your local computer.

Step 2: Create a master installation

1. Create a master installation by using one of the following methods:

- [Boot from a DVD](#)
- [Use a Configuration Set with Windows Setup](#)

2. After the installation is complete, shut down the computer.

Step 3: Capture an image of the installation

In this step, you will capture an image of the reference installation by using the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (**DISM**) tool and then store the custom image on a network share.

1. Boot the reference computer by using your bootable Windows PE media.
2. At a command prompt, capture an image of the installation. You specify a name and description as part of your image capture. All values are required by Windows Setup. If a .wim file does not include these values, then the image will not install correctly. For example:

```
Dism /Capture-Image /ImageFile:C:\myimage.wim /CaptureDir:c:\ /Compress:fast /CheckIntegrity  
/ImageName:"x86_Ultimate" /ImageDescription:"x86 Ultimate Compressed"
```

3. Replace the default Install.wim on the network share with your custom image. The image must be called Install.wim. For example:

```
net use N: \\server\share\  
copy C:\myimage.wim N:\WindowsDVD\sources\install.wim
```

If necessary, provide network credentials for appropriate network access.

For more information, see [DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#).

Step 4: Create a custom answer file

In this step, you will create an answer file that points to your custom image. This step assumes that you have already built an answer file and have a working catalog.

1. On your technician computer, open **Windows System Image Manager**.
2. On the **File** menu, click **New Answer File**.
3. In the **Windows Image** pane of Windows SIM, expand the **Components** node to display available settings.

4. Add the following components to your answer file by right-clicking the component and then selecting the appropriate configuration pass.

COMPONENT	CONFIGURATION PASS
Microsoft-Windows-Setup\DiskConfiguration\Disk\CreatePartitions\CreatePartition	windowsPE
Microsoft-Windows-Setup\DiskConfiguration\Disk\ModifyPartitions\ModifyPartition	windowsPE
Microsoft-Windows-Setup\ImageInstall\OSImage\InstallTo	windowsPE

Note

Expand the component list until you see the lowest setting listed in the previous table, and then add that setting to your answer file. This shortcut will add the setting and all parent settings to your answer file in one step.

5. All of the settings that you added must appear in the **Answer File** pane. Select and configure each setting as specified in the following table.

COMPONENT	VALUE
Microsoft-Windows-Setup\DiskConfiguration	<code>WillShowUI = OnError</code>
Microsoft-Windows-Setup\DiskConfiguration\Disk	<code>DiskID = 0</code> <code>WillWipeDisk = true</code>
Microsoft-Windows-Setup\DiskConfiguration\Disk\CreatePartitions\CreatePartition	<code>Extend = false</code> <code>Order = 1</code> <code>Size = 300</code>
	<code>Type = Primary</code>
Microsoft-Windows-Setup\DiskConfiguration\Disk\CreatePartitions\CreatePartition	<code>Extend = true</code> <code>Order = 2</code>
	<code>Type = Primary</code>

COMPONENT	VALUE
Microsoft-Windows-Setup\DiskConfiguration\Disk\ModifyPartitions\ModifyPartition	Active = true Extend = false Format = NTFS Label = System Letter = S Order = 1 PartitionID = 1
Microsoft-Windows-Setup\DiskConfiguration\Disk\ModifyPartitions\ModifyPartition	Extend = false Format = NTFS Label = Windows Letter = C Order = 2 PartitionID = 2
Microsoft-Windows-Setup\ImageInstall\OSImage	WillShowUI = OnError
Microsoft-Windows-Setup\ImageInstall\OSImage\InstallTo	DiskID = 0 PartitionID = 2

6. In a command prompt window copy the answer file to a network location. For example:

```
net use N: \\server\share\  
md N:\AnswerFiles  
copy C:\deploy_unattend.xml N:\AnswerFiles\
```

If necessary, provide network credentials for appropriate network access.

Step 5: Deploy the image by using Windows Setup

In this step, you will deploy your custom image from a network share onto a destination computer.

1. Boot the destination computer by using your bootable Windows PE media.
2. Connect to the network share that you specified in [Step 4: Create a custom answer file](#), and then run Setup with your answer file. For example:

```
net use N: \\server\share  
N:\WindowsDVD\setup /unattend:N:\AnswerFiles\deploy_unattend.xml
```

If necessary, provide network credentials for appropriate network access.

Next Steps

You can further customize your answer file to include additional options. You can also build a DVD deployment media that contains the same content that you put on the network share. A single deployment DVD provides a

portable installation solution that requires no network or any additional resources. The process includes building a configuration set and recapturing all source files into a single DVD.

Important

The DVD media that you create is for internal deployment use only. You cannot redistribute this media.

Related topics

[Windows Setup Technical Reference](#)

[Boot from a DVD](#)

[Use a Configuration Set with Windows Setup](#)

[Boot Windows to Audit Mode or OOBE](#)

[Add Device Drivers to Windows During Windows Setup](#)

[Add a Custom Script to Windows Setup](#)

Automate Windows Setup

9/5/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can prevent some or all of the user interface (UI) pages from Windows Setup from being displayed during installation. The default behavior of Windows Setup is to display the Setup UI if any of the required settings are incorrect or empty.

Use an answer file while installing Windows

You can automate Windows installation by using an answer file:

Use a USB flash drive

1. Use an existing answer file or [create your own with Windows System Image Manager \(Windows SIM\)](#).
2. Save the file as **Autounattend.xml** on the root of a USB flash drive.
3. On a new PC, insert a Windows installation USB flash drive, as well as the flash drive that contains **Autounattend.xml** and then boot the PC. When no other answer file is selected, Windows Setup searches for this file.

Select an answer file

- You can select a specific answer file during installation by booting to the Windows Preinstallation Environment, and [using the setup.exe command with the /unattend:filename option](#).

List of settings

The following is a list of the settings used in these answer files:

- Windows Setup language settings: Microsoft-Windows-International-Core-WinPE\UILanguage and Microsoft-Windows-International-Core-WinPE\SetupUILanguage\UILanguage.
- Product key: Microsoft-Windows-Setup\UserData\ProductKey\Key.

Automating Windows Setup

To automate Windows Setup, add settings for each of the following Windows Setup pages to your unattended Setup answer file. When a setting for a Windows Setup page is configured, Windows Setup skips that page.

Language, Region, and Input Method Selection Page

SETTING	DESCRIPTION
Microsoft-Windows-International-Core-WinPE UILanguage	Specifies the default language to use on the installed Windows operating system.
Microsoft-Windows-International-Core-WinPE SetupUILanguage UILanguage	Specifies the default language to use during Windows Setup. During installation, Windows Setup displays installation progress in the selected language.

Note

When you use an Autounattend.xml file with Windows Setup and rely on an implicit answer-file search, the

language selection page in Setup is not displayed, even if you explicitly do not configure language settings in your answer file. For more information about implicit answer files, see [Windows Setup Automation Overview](#).

Type your Product Key for Activation Page

The product key must match the Windows edition you intend to install. For more information, see [Work with Product Keys and Activation](#).

SETTING	DESCRIPTION
Microsoft-Windows-Setup UserData ProductKey Key	Specifies the product key used to install Windows.
Microsoft-Windows-Setup ImageInstall OSImage InstallFrom MetaData (Key and Value).	Use Key and Value together to select a specific Windows image to install. Required for some Windows Server® 2012 editions. You can get the image information by using the DISM /Get-ImageInfo command. For more information, see Image Management Command-Line Options .

Accept Microsoft Software License Terms Page

SETTING	DESCRIPTION
Microsoft-Windows-Setup UserData AcceptEula	Specifies whether to accept Microsoft License Software Terms during Windows Setup.

Select Upgrade or Custom Installation Page

By default, when an answer file is used, this page does not appear and Windows is configured as a new installation. To configure Windows as an upgrade, add the following setting:

SETTING	DESCRIPTION
Microsoft-Windows-Setup UpgradeData Upgrade	Specifies that the present installation is an upgrade from a previous version of Windows.

Specify Where to Install Windows Page

You can either specify the exact disk ID and partition ID, or you can install Windows to the first available partition. To preconfigure your partitions, you may also need to configure your drive partitions. For full XML examples and recommended partition configurations, see [How to Configure UEFI/GPT-Based Hard Disk Partitions](#) or [How to Configure BIOS/MBR-Based Hard Disk Partitions](#).

SETTING	DESCRIPTION
Microsoft-Windows-Setup ImageInstall OSImage InstallTo DiskID	Specifies the disk where Windows will be installed.
Microsoft-Windows-Setup ImageInstall OSImage InstallTo PartitionID	Specifies the partition where Windows will be installed.

-or-

SETTING	DESCRIPTION
Microsoft-Windows-Setup ImageInstall OSImage InstallToAvailablePartition	Specifies to install Windows on the first available partition.

Settings to Use with Unattended Windows Deployment Services

When deploying Windows using Windows Deployment Services, add each of the settings in the following sections to your unattended-Setup answer file. These are the only settings required for an unattended installation.

Select a Language and Locale Page

SETTING	DESCRIPTION
Microsoft-Windows-International-Core-WinPE SetupUILanguage UILanguage	Specifies the default language to use during Windows Setup.

Provide Windows Deployment Services Credentials Page

SETTING	DESCRIPTION
Microsoft-Windows-Setup WindowsDeploymentServices Login	Specifies the credentials used for Windows Deployment Services logon, and specifies in what circumstances the UI is displayed for logon.

Select an Image to Install Page

SETTING	DESCRIPTION
Microsoft-Windows-Setup WindowsDeploymentServices ImageSelection	Specifies the image to be installed and the location where it is installed, as well as whether the UI is displayed.

Specify Where to Install Windows Page

These settings assume that you are installing to a partitioned disk drive.

SETTING	DESCRIPTION
Microsoft-Windows-Setup WindowsDeploymentServices ImageSelection InstallTo DiskID	Specifies the disk ID of the disk to which the image is to be installed.
Microsoft-Windows-Setup WindowsDeploymentServices ImageSelection InstallTo PartitionID	Specifies the partition ID of the partition to which the image is to be installed.

Related topics

[Settings for Automating OOBES](#)

[Windows Setup Technical Reference](#)

Use a Configuration Set with Windows Setup

7/13/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Use a configuration set to add applications, drivers, packages, scripts, files and folders to Windows during installation. A configuration set is a portable collection of files and folders that you can place on a USB Flash Drive (UFD) or on a network share.

To use a configuration set, you need the following:

- A configuration set. For more information, see [Create a Configuration Set](#).
- A Windows product DVD.
- A removable media, such as a USB flash drive (UFD), if you intend to install without a network.
- A bootable Windows PE media if you intend to install from a network. For more information, see [WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#).

How to use a Configuration Set with a Windows DVD

1. Turn on the computer.
2. Insert both the removable media that contains your configuration set and the Windows product DVD into the new computer.
3. Restart the computer by pressing CTRL+ALT+DEL.
4. When the computer reboots, you might be prompted to press any key to boot from the CD-ROM drive. Press any key and Windows Setup (**Setup.exe**) starts automatically.

By default, Windows Setup searches all removable media for an answer file that is named **Autounattend.xml**. Autounattend.xml must be located at the root of the removable media.

Installation starts, and the settings you configured in your answer file will be applied.

How to use a Configuration Set from a Network

1. Create two folders on a network share to store the product DVD source files and your configuration set. For example,

```
net use N: \\server\share  
md N:\WindowsDVD  
md N:\ConfigurationSets
```

2. Copy the content of the product DVD to the **\WindowsDVD** folder.
3. Copy your configuration set to the **\ConfigurationSets** folder.
4. Boot the destination computer by using a bootable Windows PE media.

For information about creating bootable Windows PE media, see [WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#).
5. At a command prompt in Windows PE, map a network drive to your network share. For example,

```
net use N: \\server\share
```

6. Run Windows Setup from the network and reference your answer file in your configuration set. For example,

```
N:\WindowsDVD\setup /unattend:N:\ConfigurationSets\autounattend.xml
```

Related topics

[Windows Setup Technical Reference](#)

[Add a Custom Command to an Answer File](#)

[Boot from a DVD](#)

[Deploy a Custom Image](#)

[Boot Windows to Audit Mode or OOB](#)

[Add Device Drivers to Windows During Windows Setup](#)

[Add a Custom Script to Windows Setup](#)

Add Device Drivers to Windows During Windows Setup

7/13/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

To install Windows® on some hardware designs, you may need to add device drivers to Windows Setup. You can add drivers to Windows Setup by using an answer file that specifies the path to the driver files. To do this in new installations, you add the Microsoft-Windows-PnpCustomizationWinPE component during the [windowsPE](#) configuration pass, add the driver paths, and then specify the answer file.

You can also modify existing images and add and remove drivers. You can service offline images in several ways. For example, you can add the Microsoft-Windows-PnpCustomizationsNonWinPE component during the [offlineServicing](#) configuration pass, add or remove the driver paths, and then specify the name of the answer file. For more information about how to modify drivers on an offline Windows image by using an answer file, and also other methods of adding drivers to and removing drivers from an existing image, see [Add and Remove Drivers to an Offline Windows Image](#).

Add Drivers to New Installations ([windowsPE](#))

For new installations, you add drivers during the [windowsPE](#) configuration pass.

This method initializes Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE) and processes Windows PE settings from the answer file, as follows:

1. Windows stages the Windows PE drivers in the RAM driver store.. Windows loads boot-critical drivers that Windows PE requires to access the local disk and network. When you right-click **DevicePaths** and select **Insert New PathAndCredentials into Windows PE**, Windows PE processes other Windows PE customizations that the answer file specifies.
2. The Windows Setup process applies the Windows image. Boot-critical drivers appear on the Windows image before Setup installs that image. Other drivers that you added to the Windows PE driver store appear in the Windows image driver store. When Windows Setup processes the [offlineServicing](#) pass, Windows Setup also adds any drivers that the driver path specifies to the Windows image driver store.

To add a device driver during the [windowsPE](#) pass

1. Use Windows System Image Manager (Windows SIM) to create an answer file that contains the paths to the device drivers that you intend to install.
 2. Add the **Microsoft-Windows-PnpCustomizationsWinPE** component to your answer file in the [windowsPE](#) configuration pass.
 3. Expand the **Microsoft-Windows-PnpCustomizationsWinPE** node in the answer file. Right-click **DevicePaths**, and then select **Insert New PathAndCredentials**.
- A new **PathAndCredentials** list item appears.
4. For each location that you access, add a separate **PathAndCredentials** list item.

You can include multiple device driver paths by adding multiple **PathAndCredentials** list items. If you add multiple list items, you must increment the **Key** value for each path. For example, if you add two separate driver paths, the first path uses the **Key** value of **1**, and the second path uses the **Key** value of **2**.

- Save the answer file, and then close Windows SIM. The answer file must resemble the following example:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" ?>
<unattend xmlns="urn:schemas-microsoft-com:unattend">
    <settings pass="windowsPE">
        <component name="Microsoft-Windows-PnpCustomizationsWinPE" processorArchitecture="x86"
publicKeyToken="31bf3856ad364e35" language="neutral" versionScope="nonSxS"
xmlns:wcm="http://schemas.microsoft.com/WMIConfig/2002/State"
xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
            <DriverPaths>
                <PathAndCredentials wcm:keyValue="1" wcm:action="add">
                    <Credentials>
                        <Domain>Fabrikam</Domain>
                        <Password>MyPassword</Password>
                        <Username>MyUserName</Username>
                    </Credentials>
                    <Path>\\server\share\drivers</Path>
                </PathAndCredentials>
            </DriverPaths>
        </component>
    </settings>
</unattend>
```

- Boot to Windows PE.

- At a command prompt, run Windows Setup. Specify the name of the answer file. For example:

```
Setup /unattend:C:\unattend.xml
```

Windows Setup adds the device drivers in the \\server\\share\\drivers path to the system during the setup process.

For more information about drivers, see [Device Drivers and Deployment Overview](#) and [Add a Driver Online in Audit Mode](#). For more information about Windows components, see [Unattended Windows Setup Reference](#).

Related topics

[Windows Setup Technical Reference](#)

[Boot from a DVD](#)

[Deploy a Custom Image](#)

[Boot Windows to Audit Mode or OOBE](#)

[Use a Configuration Set with Windows Setup](#)

[Add a Custom Script to Windows Setup](#)

Add a Custom Script to Windows Setup

7/13/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Windows Setup scripts: **Setupcomplete.cmd** and **ErrorHandler.cmd** are custom scripts that run during or after the Windows Setup process. They can be used to install applications or run other tasks by using **cscript/wscript** scripts.

- **%WINDIR%\Setup\Scripts\SetupComplete.cmd:** This script runs immediately after the user sees the desktop. This setting is disabled when using OEM product keys. It runs with local system permission.
- **%WINDIR%\Setup\Scripts\ErrorHandler.cmd:** This script runs automatically when Setup encounters a fatal error. It runs with local system permission.

Windows Unattend scripts: Create an Unattend.xml file with one of these settings to run during the Windows Setup process. This can be used with OEM product keys.

To run services or commands that can start at the same time, use RunAsynchronousCommands. To run commands that need to finish before other commands can start, use RunSynchronousCommands.

Note As of Windows 10, [Microsoft-Window-Shell-Setup\LogonCommands\AsynchronousCommand](#) now works like LogonCommands\AsynchronousCommand: all commands using these unattend settings are now started at the same time, and no longer wait for the previous command to finish.

Some of these settings run in the user context, others run in the system context depending on the configuration pass.

- Add [Microsoft-Windows-Setup\RunAsynchronousCommand](#) or [RunSynchronousCommand](#) to run a script as Windows Setup starts. This can be helpful for setting hard disk partitions.
- Add [Microsoft-Windows-Deployment\RunAsynchronousCommand](#) or [RunSynchronousCommand](#) to the **auditUser** configuration pass to run a script that runs when the PC enters audit mode. This can be helpful for tasks like automated app installation or testing.
- Add [Microsoft-Window-Shell-Setup\LogonCommands\AsynchronousCommand](#) or [FirstLogonCommands\SynchronousCommand](#) to run after the Out of Box Experience (OOBE) but before the user sees the desktop. This can be especially useful to set up language-specific apps or content after the user has already selected their language.

Use these scripts sparingly because long scripts can prevent the user from reaching the Start screen quickly. For retail versions of Windows, additional restrictions apply to these scripts. For info, see the Licensing and Policy guidance on the [OEM Partner Center](#).

Note When you add a script using FirstLogonCommands, it will be triggered on the next boot, even if you boot into audit mode using Ctrl+Shift+F3. To boot to audit mode without triggering these scripts, add the setting: Microsoft-Windows-Deployment\Reseal\Mode = Audit.

Run a script after setup is complete (SetupComplete.cmd)

Order of operations

1. After Windows is installed but before the logon screen appears, Windows Setup searches for the **SetupComplete.cmd** file in the **%WINDIR%\Setup\Scripts** directory.
2. If a **SetupComplete.cmd** file is found, Windows Setup runs the script. Windows Setup logs the action in the **C:\Windows\Panther\UnattendGC\Setupact.log** file.

Setup does not verify any exit codes or error levels in the script after it executes **SetupComplete.cmd**.

Warning You cannot reboot the system and resume running **SetupComplete.cmd**. You should not reboot the system by adding a command such as **shutdown -r**. This will put the system in a bad state.

3. If the computer joins a domain during installation, the Group Policy that is defined in the domain is not applied to the computer until **Setupcomplete.cmd** is finished. This is to make sure that the Group Policy configuration activity does not interfere with the script.

Run a script if Windows Setup encounters a fatal error (ErrorHandler.cmd)

This script is useful when you're installing many systems at the same time. This helps you detect when an error occurs during Windows Setup. When it does, Setup automatically runs a script that can contain custom commands or actions to address the cause of the error.

If Windows Setup encounters a fatal error and is prevented from completing the installation, Windows Setup searches for a command script in the following directory: **%WINDIR%\Setup\Scripts\ErrorHandler.cmd**. One of two actions will occur, depending on whether the script is found.

- If the script is not found, a dialog box is displayed with the error text. A user must dismiss the dialog box before Windows Setup exits.
- If the script is found, the script executes synchronously. No dialog box or error text is displayed. After the **ErrorHandler.cmd** script has finished running, Windows Setup exits.

Depending on the phase of Windows Setup, the computer will return to the environment from which Windows Setup was executed, such as an earlier version of the operating system or Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE), for example.

There may be instances when Windows Setup encounters more than one error and runs the **ErrorHandler.cmd** script more than once. When developing the code for **ErrorHandler.cmd**, make sure that you can run this script multiple times.

To use ErrorHandler.cmd, you can do either of the following:

- Mount the image, and add it to the image, in **%WINDIR%\Setup\Scripts\ErrorHandler.cmd**. Unmount the image.
-or-
- Add **ErrorHandler.cmd** to a temporary file location (for example, C:\Temp\ErrorHandler.cmd), and then run Windows Setup using the **/m** option.

```
Setup /m:C:\Temp
```

To learn more, see [Windows Setup Command-Line Options](#).

Related topics

[Windows Setup Technical Reference](#)

[Boot from a DVD](#)

[Use a Configuration Set with Windows Setup](#)

[Deploy a Custom Image](#)

[Boot Windows to Audit Mode or OOBE](#)

Add Device Drivers to Windows During Windows Setup

Boot Windows to Audit Mode or OOBE

7/13/2017 • 5 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use audit mode to customize your computer, add applications and device drivers, and test your computer in a Windows environment. Booting to audit mode starts the computer in the built-in administrator account. Windows® removes this account automatically during the [generalize](#) configuration pass. After you configure a computer to boot to audit mode, the computer will continue to boot to audit mode by default until you configure the computer to boot to Out-Of-Box Experience (OOBE) when the computer ships to the user.

If a password-protected screen saver starts when you are in audit mode, you cannot log back on to the system. The built-in administrator account that is used to log on to audit mode is immediately disabled after logon. To disable the screen saver, either change the power plan through Windows Control Panel or configure and deploy a custom plan. For more information, see [Create a Custom Power Plan](#).

Boot to audit mode automatically on a new installation

- To configure Windows to boot to audit mode, add the **Microsoft-Windows-Deployment | Reseal | Mode = audit** answer file setting.

When Windows completes the installation process, the computer boots into audit mode automatically, and the System Preparation (**Sysprep**) Tool appears. For more information about using the Sysprep tool in audit mode, see [Sysprep \(Generalize\) a Windows installation](#).

Note

Settings in an answer file from the **oobeSystem** configuration pass do not appear in audit mode. For more information about which answer file settings are processed when you boot to audit mode or OOBE, see [How Configuration Passes Work](#).

Boot to audit mode manually (on a new or existing installation)

- At the OOBE screen, press **CTRL+SHIFT+F3**.

Windows reboots the computer into audit mode, and the System Preparation (**Sysprep**) Tool appears.

Note

The **CTRL+SHIFT+F3** keyboard shortcut does not bypass all parts of the OOBE process, such as running scripts and applying answer file settings in the **oobeSystem** configuration pass.

Boot to OOBE automatically on a new installation

- To configure Windows to boot to OOBE, add the **Microsoft-Windows-Deployment | Reseal | Mode = oobe** answer file setting.

If you have configured your Windows image to boot to OOBE, but then you need to make further configurations to your image in audit mode, see [Modify an existing image that is configured to boot to OOBE](#).

Modify an existing image that is configured to boot to OOBE

- If you have configured your Windows image to boot to OOBE, but then need to make further configurations to your image in audit mode, you can do one of the following:

1. Use the **CTRL+SHIFT+F3** keyboard shortcut. The computer will reboot into audit mode.

This option may trigger any scripts that you have configured to launch in OOOE.

-or-

2. Mount the image, add an answer file with the **audit** setting, and save it as **C:\test\offline\Windows\Panther\Unattend\Unattend.xml**. This may require overwriting an existing answer file at this location.

On the next boot, Windows will boot directly into audit mode.

Boot to audit mode automatically from an existing image

1. Create a new answer file, and then add the **Microsoft-Windows-Deployment | Reseal | Mode = audit** setting. Save the answer file as **Unattend.xml**.
2. At an elevated command prompt, mount the Windows image. For example:

```
Dism /Mount-Image /ImageFile:C:\test\images\MyImage.wim /index:<image_index>
/MountDir:C:\test\offline
```

where *<image_index>* is the number of the selected image on the .wim file.

3. Copy the new answer file to the **C:\test\offline\Windows\Panther\Unattend folder**.
4. Commit the changes, and then unmount the image. For example:

```
Dism /Unmount-Image /MountDir:C:\test\offline /commit
```

When the image is applied to the destination computer and Windows is booted, the computer boots into audit mode automatically, and the **Sysprep** tool appears. For sample procedures, see Step 1: Transfer an image to a different computer and Step 2: Prepare the computer for a customer in [Deployment examples](#).

Options for applying an image also include using answer file settings, such as specifying the image to install and the disk configurations to make on the destination computer. For more information, see the [Unattended Windows Setup Reference Guide](#).

Deployment examples

To transfer an image to a different computer, you must first remove the computer-specific information from the configured computer by generalizing the image with the **Sysprep** tool. To prepare a computer for the customer, you must generalize the computer, and then set it to boot to OOOE when a customer starts the computer for the first time. In the following examples we create and transfer a reference image to a different computer, and then create a model-specific image that ships to a customer.

Step 1: Transfer an image to a different computer

1. Install Windows on a reference computer.
2. After the installation is complete, boot the computer and install any additional device drivers or applications.
3. After you update the Windows installation, run **Sysprep**:
 - At the command line, run the **Sysprep /generalize /shutdown** command.

-or-

- In the System Preparation Tool window, select the **Generalize** check box under the **System Cleanup Action** box on the **Shutdown Options** box, select **Shutdown**, and then click **OK**.

Sysprep removes system-specific data from the Windows installation. System-specific information includes event logs, unique security IDs (SIDs), and other unique information. After **Sysprep** removes the unique system information, the computer shuts down.

4. After the computer shuts down, insert the Windows PE USB flash drive or other bootable media, and reboot into Windows PE.
5. In the Windows PE session, capture the reference image by using the **Dism /capture-image** command.
6. Proceed to the next step to create a model-specific reference image.

Step 2: Prepare the computer for a customer

1. Install the reference image you created in Step 1 that is destined for your customer.
2. After you update the Windows installation, at the command line run the **Sysprep /audit /generalize /shutdown** command to configure Windows to boot the computer to audit mode. You can then capture the Windows image by booting to another partition or by using Windows PE.
3. Use the new model-specific reference image to install Windows on a new computer. The Windows image is applied to the computer, and Windows boots to audit mode.
4. (Optional) You can install additional applications and other updates based on a customer's order. You can also test the computer to verify that all components are working correctly.
5. After you update the Windows installation, run the **Sysprep /oobe /shutdown command**.

Note

If you install Windows images by using the **Sysprep /generalize /oobe** command, the user experience will not be ideal. On the next reboot after you run the **Sysprep /generalize /oobe** command, Windows runs the **specialize** configuration pass, Plug and Play, and other Setup tasks before Windows starts OOB. This process can take additional time and can delay a customer's first logon.

6. Package and deliver the computer to your customer.

When the customer starts the computer, OOB runs.

Related topics

[Windows Setup Technical Reference](#)

[DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#)

[Audit Mode Overview](#)

[Add a Driver Online in Audit Mode](#)

[Enable and Disable the Built-in Administrator Account](#)

[Boot from a DVD](#)

[Use a Configuration Set with Windows Setup](#)

[Deploy a Custom Image](#)

[Add Device Drivers to Windows During Windows Setup](#)

[Add a Custom Script to Windows Setup](#)

Add multilingual support to Windows Setup

7/13/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Windows Setup multilingual support allows you to choose different languages for Windows Setup and Windows installation. This scenario allows for a technician to run Windows setup in one language, and install Windows in a different language.

This walkthrough provides steps for creating Windows installation media with multilingual support.

Prerequisites

To complete this walkthrough, you need the following:

- A technician computer that has the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (Windows ADK) installed
- Windows installation media for all languages that you are creating media
- The Windows language pack ISO

Step 1. Prepare your environment

To get started, copy Windows installation files from media to a local directory. If you are creating media for use with a customized image, you must use the Windows media that corresponds to the version of your customized image. For example, if you are building a custom Windows 10 setup image, you must use the original Windows 10 product media.

- On your technician computer, create a new directory for your Windows distribution and copy the Windows media content to that directory. For example:

```
md C:\my_distribution  
xcopy /E D: C:\my_distribution  
md C:\mount\boot  
md C:\mount\windows
```

Where *D:* is the location of the Windows product media.

Step 2. Customize languages available for Windows setup

This section shows how to customize the languages that are available for a technician when performing a Windows installation.

Add Windows PE Setup Language Packs to the Default Boot Image

In this step, you add language support and the Windows Setup optional components to the second image (index 2) in the default Boot.wim.

1. On your technician PC: Click **Start**, and type **deployment**. Right-click **Deployment and Imaging Tools Environment** and then select **Run as administrator**.
2. Mount the second image (index 2) in Boot.wim to a local mount directory using **Dism /Mount-Image**. For example:

```
Dism /mount-image /imagefile:C:\my_distribution\sources\boot.wim /index:2 /mountdir:C:\Mount\boot
```

3. Add Windows PE Setup optional component and language packs into your mounted image using **Dism /Add-Package** for each language you want to support. Add *lp.cab*, *WinPE-setup_<language>.cab*, and *WinPE-Setup-client_<language>.cab* for each language you are adding.

Windows PE language packs are available in the Windows ADK.

For example:

```
Dism /image:C:\mount\boot /add-package /packagepath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\lp.cab"

Dism /image:C:\mount\boot /add-package /packagepath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-Setup_fr-fr.cab"

Dism /image:C:\mount\boot /add-package /packagepath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\fr-fr\WinPE-Setup-Client_fr-fr.cab"
```

Important

For Windows Server 2016, you must use the WinPE-Setup-Server optional components instead of the WinPE-Setup-Client optional components.

4. For Japanese (ja-JP), Korean (ko-KR), and Chinese (zh-HK, zh-CN, zh-TW), you have to add additional font support to your image. For example, to add Japanese font support:

```
Dism /image:C:\mount\boot /add-package /packagepath:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Windows Preinstallation Environment\amd64\WinPE_OCs\WinPE-FontSupport-JA-JP.cab"
```

Step 3. Customize the languages available in Windows

Add Language Packs to the Windows Image

You must add the same language support to your Windows image file, install.wim, as you did for the boot.wim file. The setup process requires that both images contain the same set of language packs. For more information, see [Add and Remove Language Packs Offline Using DISM](#).

1. Mount the Windows image with DISM

```
Dism /mount-image /imagefile:C:\my_distribution\sources\install.wim /index:1 /mountdir:C:\mount\windows
```

Where 1 is the index of the image that you want to mount.

2. Add one or more language packs to the Windows image.

```
Dism /image:C:\mount\windows /add-package /packagepath:F:\x64\langpacks\Microsoft-Windows-Client-Language-Pack_x64_fr-fr.cab
```

Where F: is the location of the language pack ISO.

The same set of languages must also be added to the Windows Recovery Environment image (winre.wim). For more information, see [Customize Windows RE](#).

Step 4: Add Localized Windows Setup Resources to the Windows Distribution

In this step you copy the language-specific Setup resources from each language specific Windows distribution to the Sources folder in your Windows distribution. For example, insert the Windows DVD for Fr-FR in your DVD drive (E:) and copy the Fr-FR sources folder to your Windows distribution.

- Copy the localized Windows setup files to your Windows distribution.

```
xcopy E:\sources\fr-fr C:\my_distribution\sources\fr-fr /chervyi
```

Where *E:* is the location of the Windows installation media that contains the localized Windows Setup resources.

Step 5: Recreate the Lang.ini

In this step you recreate the Lang.ini file and specify the default language settings.

1. Recreate the Lang.ini file to reflect the additional languages using *Dism /Gen-LangINI*.

```
Dism /image:C:\mount\windows /gen-langINI /distribution:C:\my_distribution
```

2. Change the Windows Setup default language with DISM. For example:

```
Dism /image:C:\mount\windows /Set-SetupUILang:fr-FR /distribution:C:\my_distribution
```

For more information about specifying different international settings for input locale, and other items see [DISM Languages and International Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

3. Copy the lang.ini file in the Windows distribution to the boot.wim file.

```
Xcopy C:\my_distribution\sources\lang.ini C:\mount\boot\sources\lang.ini
```

Step 6: Commit the Changes to the Windows Images

In this step you commit the changes to all of the images you have updated

- Use DISM to unmount and commit the changes to the Windows and boot images.

```
Dism /unmount-image /mountdir:C:\mount\boot /commit  
Dism /unmount-image /mountdir:C:\mount\windows /commit
```

Step 7: Create a Boot Order File (Optional)

In this step, you create a boot order file. Due to the size of the image, you must do so before you create an .iso file.

- Create a boot order file (bootorder.txt). For example:

```
Oscdimg -m -n -yo C:\temp\bootOrder.txt -bC:\winpe_amd64\Efisys.bin C:\winpe_amd64\winpeamd64.iso
```

where Bootorder.txt contains the following list of files:

```
boot\bcd
boot\boot.sdi
boot\bootfix.bin
boot\bootsect.exe
boot\etfsboot.com
boot\memtest.efi
boot\memtest.exe
boot\en-us\bootsect.exe.mui
boot\fonts\chs_boot.ttf
boot\fonts\cht_boot.ttf
boot\fonts\jpn_boot.ttf
boot\fonts\kor_boot.ttf
boot\fonts\wg14_boot.ttf
sources\boot.wim
```

Next Steps

You can now use the multilingual image to create media for distribution. To create bootable media such as a USB flash drive, see [WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#). You can also create a bootable CD or DVD. However, due to the size of a multilingual image, you must first create a boot order file before you create a bootable image (.iso) file on CD or DVD. For more information, see [Oscdimg Command-Line Options](#).

Related topics

[Windows Setup Technical Reference](#)

[DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#)

[DISM Windows PE Servicing Command-Line Options](#)

[Oscdimg Command-Line Options](#)

[WinPE: Mount and Customize](#)

[WinPE: Install on a Hard Drive \(Flat Boot or Non-RAM\)](#)

Windows Setup Command-Line Options

10/5/2017 • 13 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The following command-line options are available for Windows Setup. Beginning with Windows 10, version 1607, you can use a setupconfig file as an alternative to passing parameters to Windows Setup on a command line. For more information, see [Windows Setup Automation Overview](#).

setup.exe

Setup Command-Line Options

The following table lists Setup command-line options:

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
/1394Debug:<channel> [BaudRate:<baudrate>]	<p>Enables kernel debugging over an IEEE 1394 (FireWire) port while Windows is running and during the windowsPE configuration pass of Windows Setup.</p> <p><channel> specifies the debugging channel. The default value for <channel> is 1.</p> <p>[baudrate:<baudrate>] specifies the baud to use when Windows transfers data during debugging. The default setting is 19200. You can also set the setting to 57600 or 115200. For example:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;"><code>Setup /1394debug:1 /baudrate:115200</code></div>
/AddBootMgrLast	Instructs Windows Setup to add the Windows Boot Manager as the last entry in the UEFI firmware boot order. This option is only supported on UEFI PCs running Windows PE 4.0 or later.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
/Auto {Clean DataOnly Upgrade}	<p>Performs an automated upgrade to Windows 10 or Windows 8.1 volume license editions only.</p> <p>When /auto is used, an unattend file cannot be used.</p> <p>When /auto is used, Windows Setup consumes ei.cfg, and checks compatibility issues before starting the installation. If ei.cfg is malformed, setup exits silently and logs an exit code.</p> <p>Clean: Performs a clean install of Windows.</p> <p>DataOnly: Performs an upgrade of Windows, saving only data (and not apps.) If the data-only installation option is not available due to compatibility checks, Windows Setup will exit silently and log an exit code.</p> <p>Upgrade: Performs an upgrade of Windows saving apps and data. If the upgrade installation option is not available, or the user needs to resolve an app compatibility issue, Windows Setup will exit silently and log an exit code.</p> <p>Setup.exe exit codes: See table below</p> <p>/noautoexit: Not used in Windows 10. In Windows 8.1, if an error is found, Windows Setup does not exit, but instead stops and stays on the setup screen until the user addresses the issue. The installation from that point on is attended.</p> <p>/performDU: Not used in Windows 10. In Windows 8.1, Windows Setup checks for Dynamic Updates for Windows Setup.</p> <p>Examples:</p> <pre>Setup /auto clean Setup /auto dataonly Setup /auto upgrade</pre>
/BusParams:<bus.device.function>	<p>Specifies the PCI address of a 1394, USB, or NET debug port. The bus, device, and function numbers must be in decimal format. Example:</p> <pre>Setup /busparams:0.29.7</pre> <p>For more info, see Setting Up Kernel Debugging with USB 2.0.</p>

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
/CompactOS {Enable / Disable}	<p>Specifies whether to use the Compact OS feature to save hard drive space. By default, Windows Setup determines whether to use this feature automatically.</p> <p>Enable: Setup installs Windows using compressed system files.</p> <p>Disable: Setup installs Windows using uncompressed system files</p> <p>To learn more about Compact OS, see Compact OS, single-instancing, and image optimization.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"><code>Setup /compactos enable</code></div>

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
/Compat {IgnoreWarning / ScanOnly}	<p>IgnoreWarning: Setup completes installation, ignoring any dismissible compatibility messages.</p> <p>ScanOnly: Windows Setup runs through compatibility scans, and then exits (without completing the installation) with an exit code to indicate if any compatibility concerns are present. Setup will return 0xC1900210 if no concerns are found. Setup will return 0xC1900208 if compatibility concerns are found.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>Setup /compat /IgnoreWarning</pre> <p>If you launch Setup with <code>/Compat ScanOnly</code>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If it does not find any compat issue, it will return MOSETUP_E_COMPAT_SCANONLY (0xC1900210) • If it finds Actionable compat issues, like Apps, it will return MOSETUP_E_COMPAT_INSTALLREQ_BLOCK (0xC1900208) • If it finds that the Mig-Choice selected is not available, it will return MOSETUP_E_COMPAT_MIGCHOICE_BLOCK (0xC1900204) • If it finds that machine is not eligible for Windows 10, it will return MOSETUP_E_COMPAT_SYSREQ_BLOCK (0xC1900200) • If it finds that machine does not have enough free space to install, it will return MOSETUP_E_INSTALLDISKSPACE_BLOCK (0xC190020E) <p>This command works with other switches. For example, to run Setup in the background without any UI:</p> <pre>Setup /Auto Upgrade /Quiet /Compat ScanOnly</pre> <p>To ignore common disclaimers in the UI, for example, language changes:</p> <pre>Setup /Auto Upgrade /Quiet /Compat ScanOnly /Compat IgnoreWarning</pre> <p>Most of the time, an Admin would like to look at the compat XML if Setup found compat issues. For that the admin can even use copy logs flag to collect Setup logs:</p> <pre>Setup /Auto Upgrade /Quiet /Compat ScanOnly /Compat IgnoreWarning /CopyLogs <folder_path></pre> <p>This setting is new for Windows 10.</p>

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
/CopyLogs<location>	<p>Setup will copy or upload logs(compressed) upon failure to the specified location (assuming machine/user has permission and network access to location).</p> <p>Accepted parameters are local file paths and UNC network paths.</p> <p>Note: This runs in the system context, so it may not have permissions to copy to locations that require user permissions.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>Setup /copylogs \\server\share\</pre>
/Debug:<port> [BaudRate:<baudrate>]	<p>Enables kernel debugging over a communications (COM) port when Windows is running, and during the windowsPE configuration pass of Windows Setup.</p> <p><port> specifies the debugging port. The default value for <port> is 1.</p> <p>[baudrate:<baudrate>] specifies the baud to use when Windows transfers data during debugging. The default setting is 19200. You can also set the <baudrate> setting to 57600 or 115200. For example:</p> <pre>Setup /1394debug:1 /baudrate:115200</pre>
/DiagnosticPrompt {enable disable}	<p>Specifies that the Command Prompt is available during Windows Setup.</p> <p>Enable: The Command Prompt can be accessed by pressing Shift+F10 during Windows setup.</p> <p>Disable: The Command Prompt is not available during Windows setup. The Command Prompt wil not be available while offline and OOB phases are running. This is the default setting.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>setup /DiagnosticPrompt enable</pre> <p>This setting is new for Windows 10, Version 1703.</p>
/DynamicUpdate {enable disable}	<p>Specifies whether setup will perform Dynamic Update operations (search, download, and install updates). Example:</p> <pre>setup /auto upgrade /DynamicUpdate disable</pre>

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
<p>/EMSPort: {COM1 COM2 off} [/emsbaudrate:<baudrate>]</p>	<p>Enables or disables Emergency Management Services (EMS) during Windows Setup and after the server operating system has been installed. The following arguments are used to specify the behavior of EMS during Windows Setup.</p> <p>COM1 enables EMS over COM1. Supported for x86 systems only.</p> <p>COM2 enables EMS over COM2. Supported for x86 systems only.</p> <p>usebiossettings uses the setting that the BIOS specifies. For x86 systems, Windows uses the value from the Serial Port Console Redirection (SPCR) table. If no SPCR table or EFI console device path is specified in the BIOS, Windows disables usebiossettings.</p> <p>off disables EMS. If EMS is disabled in Windows Setup, you can later enable EMS by modifying the boot settings.</p> <p>[/emsbaudrate:<baudrate>] specifies the baud to use when Windows transfers data during debugging. The default is 19200. You can also set the <baudrate> setting to 57600 or 115200. For example:</p> <pre>Setup /emsport:COM1 /emsbaudrate:115200</pre>
<p>/InstallDrivers<location></p>	<p>Adds .inf-style drivers to the new Windows 10 installation. The driver .inf can be in a folder within the specified location. The command will recurse through the specified location.</p> <p>Accepted parameters are a local file path or UNC network path to a folder that contains .inf files. Example:</p> <pre>setup.exe /auto upgrade /installdrivers C:\Fabrikam\drivers /noreboot</pre> <p>This setting is new for Windows 10.</p>
<p>/InstallFrom<path></p>	<p>Specifies a different Install.wim file to use during Windows Setup. This enables you to use a single preinstallation environment to install multiple versions of Windows images. For example, you can use a 32-bit version of Windows Setup to deploy a 64-bit Windows image. You can also use an answer file for cross-platform deployments. For more information, see "Creating a WIM for Multiple Architecture Types" in Windows Setup Supported Platforms and Cross-Platform Deployments.</p> <p><path> specifies the path of the .wim file to install. For example:</p> <pre>Setup /installfrom D:\custom.wim</pre>

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
<p>/InstallLangPacks<location></p>	<p>Adds language packs (.lp.cab) to the new Windows 10 installation.</p> <p>The language packs can be in a folder within the specified location. The command installs all lp.cab files and language capabilities such as text-to-speech recognition, in the folder and subfolders at the specified location.</p> <p>Accepted parameters are a local file path or UNC network path to a folder that contains .inf files.</p> <pre><code>setup /auto upgrade /installlangpacks C:\Fabrikam\Languages\French /noreboot</code></pre> <p>This setting is new for Windows 10.</p>
<p>/m:<*folder_name*></p>	<p>Instructs Setup to copy alternate files from an alternate location. This option instructs Setup to look in the alternate location first, and, if files are present, to use them instead of the files from the default location.</p> <p><folder_name> specifies the name and the location of the folder that contains the replacement files and can be any local drive location. UNC paths are not supported.</p> <p>You must know where the files will be installed on the Windows installation. All the additional files must be copied to an \$OEM\$ folder in your installation sources or in the <folder_name>. The \$OEM\$ structure provides a representation of the destination installation disk. For example:</p> <pre><code>\$OEM\$\\$1</code></pre> <p>maps to %SYSTEMDRIVE%, which could be drive C.</p> <pre><code>\$OEM\$\\$\$</code></pre> <p>maps to %WINDIR%, which could be C:\windows.</p> <pre><code>\$OEM\$\\$progs</code></pre> <p>maps to the program files directory.</p> <pre><code>\$OEM\$\\$docs</code></pre> <p>maps to the user's My Documents folder.</p> <p>For example, to copy an updated C:\Program Files\Messenger\Msmssgs.exe file into the Windows installation, create the following folder structure on the Pro\Sources\\$\\$OEM\$\\$Progs\Messenger\Msmssgs.exe installation source by using the Setup command:</p> <pre><code>Pro\sources\setup.exe /m</code></pre> <p>If you replace a file that Windows file protection protects, you must also copy the updated file to the local sources to be installed with Windows. For example, you may copy the file to the C:\Windows\i386 folder. The file name must be the same as the name that is used in Windows Setup. For example, add</p>

OPTION	<p>the following file and folder structure to your \$OEM\$ DESCRIPTION directory:</p> <pre>Pro\sources\\$OEM\$\\$\\$\\i386\msmsgs.ex_</pre> <p>If you use files that are not on an installation share, you must specify the folder name. In this example the <folder_name> is C:\additional_files:</p> <pre>Setup /m:C:\additional_files</pre> <p>where C:\additional_files is your customized \$OEM\$ directory. For example:</p> <pre>C:\additional_files\$\\$\\$\\i386\msmsgs.ex_</pre> <p>If you change resources in your replacement files, you must add the updated Multilanguage User Interface (MUI) files to the installation.</p>
/MigrateDrivers {all none}	<p>Instructs Setup whether to migrate the drivers from the existing installation during the upgrade. You can specify All or None. By default, Setup decides which is best for each individual driver based on the install choice.</p> <p>You can use this switch with /installdrivers, though it's not required.</p> <pre>Setup /auto upgrade /migratedrivers all</pre> <pre>Setup /auto upgrade /migratedrivers none /installdrivers N:\\NewDrivers</pre>
/NetDebug:hostip=<w.x.y.z>,port=<n>,key= <q.r.s.t> [,nodhcp][,busparams=n.o.p]	<p>Enables kernel debugging over the network.</p> <p>Use hostip to identify the IP address of the host computer.</p> <p>Use port to identify the port. The default start port is 49152, and the default end port is 65535.</p> <p>Use key to provide a password to set up a secure connection.</p> <p>Use nodhcp to avoid using a DHCP connection. (optional)</p> <p>Use busparams to select the bus number, device number, and function number of an adapter for a specific PCI bus device. (optional)</p> <p>Examples:</p> <pre>setup /netdebug:hostip=10.125.4.86,port=50000,key=0.0.0.0</pre> <pre>setup /netdebug:hostip=10.125.4.86,port=50000, key=abcdefg.123.hijklmnop.456,nodhcp</pre> <pre>setup /netdebug:hostip=10.1.4.8,port=50000, key=dont.use.previous.keys,busparams=1.5.0</pre> <p>For details, see Setting Up Kernel-Mode Debugging over a Network Cable Manually.</p>

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
/NoReboot	<p>Instructs Windows Setup not to restart the computer after the down-level phase of Windows Setup completes. The /noreboot option enables you to execute additional commands before Windows restarts. This option suppresses only the first reboot. The option does not suppress subsequent reboots. For example:</p> <pre>Setup /noreboot</pre>
/PKey<product key>	<p>Supplies Setup with the specific product key. Example:</p> <pre>setup.exe /auto upgrade /pkey xxxxx-xxxxx-xxxxx-xxxxx-xxxxx-xxxxx</pre> <p>This setting is new for Windows 10.</p>
/PostOOBE<location> [\setupcomplete.cmd]	<p>After Setup is complete, run a script.</p> <p>Accepted parameters are a local file path or UNC network path to a file named setupcomplete.cmd or to a folder that contains setupcomplete.cmd.</p> <pre>setup.exe /auto upgrade /postoobe c:\Fabrikam\setupcomplete.cmd</pre> <p>Path to folder that contains a script with the name: setupcomplete.cmd: Copies setupcomplete.cmd to \$Windows.~BT to be run after OOBE.</p> <pre>setup.exe /auto upgrade /postoobe c:\Fabrikam</pre> <p>This setting is new for Windows 10.</p>
/PostRollback<location> [\setuprollback.cmd]	<p>If the user rolls back their version of Windows, run a script.</p> <p>Accepted parameters are a local file path or UNC network path to a file named setuprollback.cmd or to a folder that contains setuprollback.cmd.</p> <pre>setup.exe /auto upgrade /post rollback c:\Fabrikam\setuprollback.cmd</pre> <p>Path to folder that contains a script with the name: setuprollback.cmd: Copies setuprollback.cmd to \$Windows.~BT to be run after OOBE.</p> <pre>setup.exe /auto upgrade /post rollback \server\share</pre> <p>This setting is new for Windows 10.</p>
/Quiet	<p>This will suppress any Setup user experience including the rollback user experience. Example:</p> <pre>setup /auto upgrade /quiet</pre> <p>This setting is new for Windows 10.</p>

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
/ReflectDrivers<location>	<p>Specifies the path to a folder that contains encryption drivers for a computer that has third-party encryption enabled.</p> <pre>Setup /ReflectDrivers <folder_path></pre> <p>This setting is new for Windows 10, version 1607.</p> <p>Make sure that <folder_path> contains only a minimal set of encryption drivers. Having more drivers than necessary in <folder_path> can negatively impact upgrade scenarios.</p>
/ResizeRecoveryPartition {Enable / Disable}	<p>Specifies whether it's OK to resize the existing Windows Recovery Environment (Windows RE) partition or create a new one during installation.</p> <p>Enable: During installation, Windows can resize the existing Windows RE tools partition or create a new one if needed.</p> <p>Disable: Windows does not resize the existing Windows RE tools partition or create a new one during installation.</p> <p>To learn more about Windows RE partitions, see UEFI/GPT-based hard drive partitions and BIOS/MBR-based hard drive partitions.</p> <pre>Setup /resizerecoverypartition disable</pre>
/ShowOOBE {full / none}	<p>full: Requires the user to interactively complete the out of box experience (OOBE).</p> <p>none: Skips OOBE and selects the default settings.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>setup.exe /auto upgrade /showoobe full</pre> <p>This setting is new for Windows 10.</p>
/Telemetry {Enable / Disable}	<p>Specifies whether Windows Setup should capture and report installation data.</p> <p>Enable: Setup captures and reports installation data.</p> <p>Disable: Setup does not capture and report installation data.</p> <pre>Setup /telemetry disable</pre>

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
/TempDrive <drive_letter>	<p>Instructs Windows Setup to put temporary installation files on the specified partition. For an upgrade, the /tempdrive option affects only the placement of temporary files. The operating system is upgraded in the partition from which you run the Setup.exe file.</p> <p>The /tempdrive parameter is available in Windows 10, version 1607, but it is not available in earlier versions of Windows 10.</p> <p><drive_letter> specifies the partition to copy installation files to during Windows Setup. For example:</p> <pre>Setup /tempdrive H</pre>
/Unattend:<answer_file>	<p>Enables you to use an answer file with Windows Setup. This is known as an unattended installation. You must specify a value for <answer_file>. Windows Setup applies the values in the answer file during installation.</p> <p><answer_file> specifies the file path and file name of the unattended Windows Setup answer file.</p> <pre>Setup /unattend:\server\share\unattend.xml</pre>
/Uninstall {enable / disable}	<p>Determines whether Windows will include controls that allow the user to go back to the previous operating system.</p> <p>This setting is new for Windows 10.</p> <pre>Setup /uninstall disable</pre>
/USBDebug:<hostname>	<p>Sets up debugging on a USB port. Debug data is effective on the next reboot.</p> <p><hostname> specifies the name of the computer to debug. For example:</p> <pre>Setup /usbdebug:testmachine01</pre>
/WDSDiscover	<p>Specifies that the Windows Deployment Services (WDS) client should be in discover mode.</p> <p>If you do not specify /wdsserver with this option, WDS searches for a server. For example, to start the WDS client in this dynamic discover mode, run the following command:</p> <pre>Setup /wds /wdssdiscover</pre>

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
/WDSServer:<servername>	<p>Specifies the name of the Windows Deployment Services server that the client should connect to.</p> <p>To use this setting, you must also use the <code>/wdssdiscover</code> option.</p> <p><servername> can be an IP address, a NetBIOS name, or a fully qualified domain name (FQDN). For example, to start the Windows Deployment Services client in this static discover mode, run the following command:</p> <pre><code>Setup /wds /wdssdiscover /wdsserver:MyWDSServer</code></pre>

Setup.exe exit codes

EXIT CODE NAME	EXIT CODE	CAUSE
CONX_SETUP_EXITCODE_CONTINUE_R_EBOOT	0x3	This upgrade was successful.
CONX_SETUP_EXITCODE_RESUME_AT_COMPAT_REPORT	0x5	The compatibility check detected issues that require resolution before the upgrade can continue.
CONX_SETUP_EXITCODE_AUTO_INSTALLED_FAIL	0x7	The installation option (upgrade or data only) was not available.

Related topics

[Windows Setup States](#)

[Windows Setup Edition Configuration and Product ID Files \(EI.cfg and PID.txt\)](#)

[Windows Setup Log Files and Event Logs](#)

Windows Setup States

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

There are several states assigned to a Windows® image during installation. This state information can be used to detect automatically the different states and stages of Windows Setup.

Windows Setup State Information

The Windows image state is stored in two locations, in the registry and in a file.

- In the registry:

KEY: **HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Setup\State**

TYPE: REG_SZ

VALUE: *StateName*

- In a file:

FILE: %WINDIR%\Setup\State\State.ini

SECTION: [State]

VALUE: *StateName*

The following table describes the values that exist for *StateName*.

STATE NAME	DESCRIPTION
IMAGE_STATE_COMPLETE	The image has successfully been installed. The specialize and oobeSystem configuration passes are complete. This image is not deployable to a computer that has a different hardware configuration because it is now hardware-dependent. To deploy this image to a computer that has a different hardware configuration, you must run sysprep /generalize .
IMAGE_STATE_UNDEPLOYABLE	This is the default state for an image in a given phase of Windows Setup that is not yet complete. If a process queries the IMAGE_STATE value and IMG_UNDEPLOYABLE is returned, the image is in one of the following states: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Setup is currently running and has not fully completed the phase. Once a given phase is complete, the IMAGE_STATE will be set to an appropriate completion value.• If queried online when Setup is not running, there was a failure when completing a Setup phase. This image must be reinstalled.• If queried offline, the image did not finish a phase and will never be deployable.

STATE NAME	DESCRIPTION
IMAGE_STATE_GENERALIZE_RESEAL_TO_OOBE	The image has successfully completed the generalize configuration pass and will continue into OOBESystem configuration pass when Setup is initiated.
IMAGE_STATE_GENERALIZE_RESEAL_TO_AUDIT	The image has successfully completed the generalize configuration pass and will continue into audit mode when Setup is initiated.
IMAGE_STATE_SPECIALIZE_RESEAL_TO_OOBE	The image has successfully completed the specialize pass and will continue into OOBESystem configuration pass when Setup is initiated.
IMAGE_STATE_SPECIALIZE_RESEAL_TO_AUDIT	The image has successfully completed the specialize configuration pass and will continue into audit mode when Setup is initiated.

The following examples show how to access state information.

- To access state information from the registry:

```
C:\>reg query HKLM\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Setup\State /v ImageState
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Setup\State
ImageState      REG_SZ      IMAGE_STATE_SPECIALIZE_RESEAL_TO_OOBE
```

- To access state information from a file:

```
C:\>type %windir%\Setup\State\State.ini
[State]
ImageState="IMAGE_STATE_SPECIALIZE_RESEAL_TO_OOBE"
```

Related topics

[Windows Setup Command-Line Options](#)

[Windows Setup Edition Configuration and Product ID Files \(El.cfg and PID.txt\)](#)

[Windows Setup Log Files and Event Logs](#)

Windows Setup Edition Configuration and Product ID Files (EI.cfg and PID.txt)

7/13/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The edition configuration (EI.cfg) file and the product ID (PID.txt) file are optional configuration files that you can use to specify the Windows® product key and the Windows edition during Windows installation. You can use these files to automate the product-key entry page in Windows Setup instead of using an answer file. If you use an EI.cfg file to differentiate volume license media, but you do not include a PID.txt file, the user receives a prompt for a product key to continue Windows Setup.

You can reuse the product key in the product ID file for multiple installations. The product key in the product ID file is only used to install Windows. This key is not used to activate Windows. For more information, see [Work with Product Keys and Activation](#).

Using EI.cfg and PID.txt

1. Create these configuration files in a text editor such as Notepad.
2. Save the files into the `\Sources` folder on the installation media. Windows Setup will use these files automatically during installation.
3. Run Windows Setup. Setup uses these files during the Windows PE configuration pass as soon as it is launched.

Note

An answer file takes precedence over these files. If you use an answer file during installation, Windows Setup ignores the EI.cfg and PID.txt files.

EI.cfg Format

The EI.cfg file specifies the values for the edition ID, the channel, and the volume license.

The EI.cfg file has the following format:

```
[EditionID]
{Edition ID}
[Channel]
{Channel Type}
[VL]
{Volume License}
```

{Edition ID} must be a valid Windows edition ID, for example, "Enterprise". To obtain the current EditionID, use the **Dism /Get-ImageInfo** command or the **Dism /Get-CurrentEdition** command. For more information, see [Take Inventory of an Image or Component Using DISM and DISM Windows Edition-Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

{Channel Type} must be either "OEM" or "Retail"

{Volume License} must be either 1, if this is a volume license, or 0, if this is not a volume license. For example:

```
[EditionID]
Enterprise
[Channel]
OEM
[VL]
0
```

PID.txt Format

The PID.txt file contains the product key for the edition of Windows that you are installing.

The PID.txt file has the following format:

```
[PID]
Value=XXXXX-XXXXX-XXXXX-XXXXX-XXXXX
```

where XXXXX-XXXXX-XXXXX-XXXXX-XXXXX is the product key.

Troubleshooting

"The product key entered does not match any of the Windows images available for installation. Enter a different product key.": You may need to download a separate version of Windows. OEM versions are only available to OEMs, and volume licenses are only available to MSDN subscribers.

Related topics

[Work with Product Keys and Activation](#)

[Windows Setup Command-Line Options](#)

[Windows Setup States](#)

Windows Setup Log Files and Event Logs

7/13/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Windows® Setup creates log files for all actions that occur during installation. If you are experiencing problems installing Windows, consult the log files to troubleshoot the installation.

Windows Setup log files are available in the following directories:

LOG FILE LOCATION	DESCRIPTION
\$windows.~bt\Sources\Panther	Log location before Setup can access the drive.
\$windows.~bt\Sources\Rollback	Log location when Setup rolls back in the event of a fatal error.
%WINDIR%\Panther	Log location of Setup actions after disk configuration.
%WINDIR%\Inf\Setupapi.log	Used to log Plug and Play device installations.
%WINDIR%\Memory.dmp	Location of memory dump from bug checks.
%WINDIR%\Minidump\dmp	Location of log minidumps from bug checks.
%WINDIR%\System32\Sysprep\Panther	Location of Sysprep logs.

Windows Setup Event Logs

Windows Setup includes the ability to review the Windows Setup performance events in the Windows Event Log viewer. This enables you to more easily review the actions that occurred during Windows Setup and to review the performance statistics for different parts of Windows Setup. You can filter the log so as to view only relevant items that you are interested in. The Windows Setup performance events are saved into a log file that is named Setup.etl, which is available in the %WINDIR%\Panther directory of all installations. To view the logs, you must use the Event Viewer included with the Windows media that corresponds to the version of the customized image that you are building.

To view the logs on a computer that does not include the corresponding kit, you must run a script from the root of the media that installs the Event Trace for Windows (ETW) provider. From the command line, type:

```
Cscript D:\sources\etwproviders\etwproviderinstall.vbs install D:\sources\etwproviders
```

where *D* is the drive letter of the Windows DVD media.

To view the Windows Setup event logs

1. Start the Event Viewer, expand the Windows Logs node, and then click **System**.

2. In the **Actions** pane, click **Open Saved Log** and then locate the Setup.etl file. By default, this file is available in the %WINDIR%\Panther directory.
3. The log file contents appear in the Event Viewer.

To Export the log to a file

From the command line, use the **Wevtutil** or **Tracerpt** commands to save the log to an .xml or text file. For information about how to use these tools, see the command-line Help. The following commands show examples of how to use the tools:

```
Wevtutil qe /lf C:\windows\panther\setup.etl
```

-or-

```
Tracerpt /l C:\windows\panther\setup.etl
```

Related topics

[Windows Setup Command-Line Options](#)

[Windows Setup States](#)

[Windows Setup Edition Configuration and Product ID Files \(EI.cfg and PID.txt\)](#)

Windows Setup Configuration Passes

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Configuration passes are used to specify different phases of Windows® Setup. Unattended installation settings can be applied in one or more configuration passes.

In This Section

The following topics describe the configuration passes used with Windows Setup.

How Configuration Passes Work	A description of the different phases of Windows Setup, and the different configuration passes used to install and configure a Windows installation.
auditSystem	The auditSystem configuration pass is one of the configuration passes used in audit mode.
auditUser	The auditUser configuration pass is one of the configuration passes used in audit mode.
generalize	The generalize configuration pass prepares a Windows image to be deployed across many computers.
offlineServicing	The offlineServicing configuration pass is used to install packages, drivers, and other updates to an offline Windows image.
oobeSystem	The oobeSystem configuration pass, also known as Windows Welcome, can be used to preconfigure user interface pages for an end user.
specialize	The specialize configuration pass customizes a specific Windows installation to a specific computer.
windowsPE	The windowsPE configuration pass is used to configure Windows PE in addition to some aspects of Windows Setup.

Related topics

[Windows Setup Scenarios and Best Practices](#)

[Windows Setup Installation Process](#)

[Windows Setup Automation Overview](#)

[Audit Mode Overview](#)

How Configuration Passes Work

7/13/2017 • 12 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

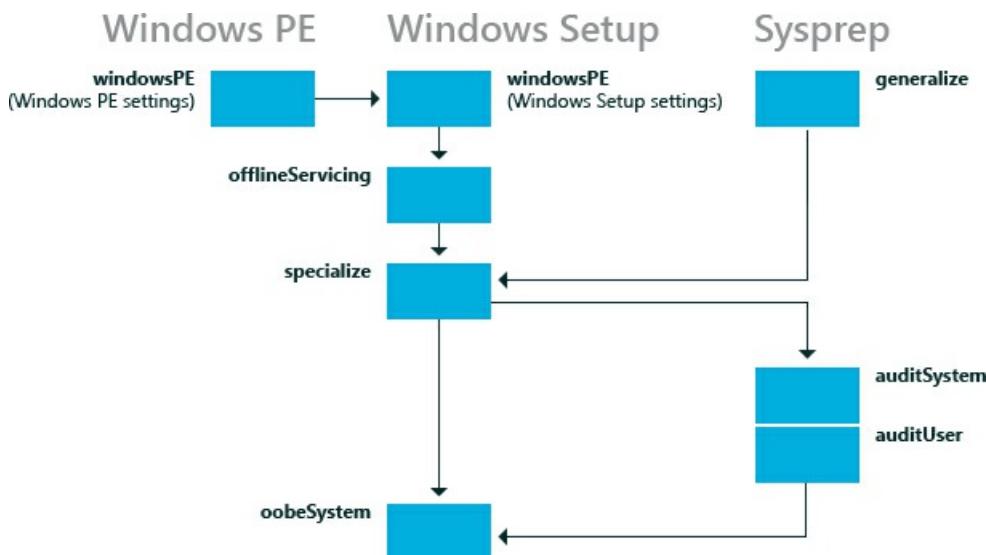
Configuration passes are the phases of a Windows® installation during which you can customize an image. Windows unattended installation settings can be applied in one or more configuration passes, depending on the setting you use. Understanding how and when configuration passes run is very important in developing a Windows deployment strategy.

In this topic:

- [Understanding Configuration Passes](#)
- [Configuring Device Drivers](#)
- [Configuring International Settings](#)
- [Examples](#)

Understanding Configuration Passes

The following diagram shows the relationship between the configuration passes relative to the different deployment tools.



Not all configuration passes run in a particular installation of Windows. Some configuration passes, such as **auditSystem** and **auditUser**, run only if you boot the computer to audit mode. Most Windows Setup unattend settings can be added to either the **specialize** or the **oobeSystem** configuration pass. The other configuration passes can also be useful in certain situations. The following table describes each of the configuration passes.

CONFIGURATION PASS	DESCRIPTION	CONFIGURATION PASS RUNS WHEN
--------------------	-------------	------------------------------

CONFIGURATION PASS	DESCRIPTION	CONFIGURATION PASS RUNS WHEN
windowsPE	<p>Many aspects of the installation process can be automated during the windowsPE configuration pass. In this pass you can configure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Windows PE options <p>These options can include specifying the location of the Windows PE log file, which enables networking or a Windows PE page file.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Windows Setup options <p>These options can include specifying the Windows image to install and configuring a disk on the destination computer.</p> <p>During this configuration pass, the Windows image is copied to the destination computer after the settings in the windowsPE configuration pass are processed.</p> <p>If your installation of Windows PE requires boot-critical drivers to access the local hard disk drive or a network, use this configuration pass to add drivers to the Windows PE driver store and to reflect the required boot-critical drivers</p>	<p>One of the following occurs:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Booting the Windows Setup media • Starting Windows Setup from a previous Windows installation <p>The Windows PE options are applied only when you are running Windows Setup from a Windows PE environment. The Windows Setup options are applied when it runs from either Windows PE or a previous Windows installation.</p>
offlineServicing	<p>This configuration pass is used to apply updates, drivers, or language packs to a Windows image.</p> <p>During Windows Setup, the Windows image is applied to a hard disk and any settings in the offlineServicing section of an answer file are then applied to that image before the computer reboots.</p> <p>During this configuration pass, you can add drivers to a Windows image before the image starts. This enables you to install and process out-of-box device drivers during Windows Setup.</p> <p>This configuration pass is also used to apply updates to a Windows image during servicing scenarios.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Automatically after the windowsPE configuration pass and before the computer reboots. • During servicing scenarios when you specify an answer file by using the Deployment Image Servicing and Management tool (Dism.exe).

CONFIGURATION PASS	DESCRIPTION	CONFIGURATION PASS RUNS WHEN
specialize	<p>This configuration pass is used to create and configure information in the Windows image, and is specific to the hardware that the Windows image is installing to.</p> <p>After the Windows image boots for the first time, the specialize configuration pass runs. During this pass, unique security IDs (SIDs) are created. Additionally, you can configure many Windows features, including network settings, international settings, and domain information.</p> <p>The answer file settings for the specialize pass appear in audit mode. When a computer boots to audit mode, the auditSystem pass runs, and the computer processes the auditUser settings.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Automatically when the Windows image boots for the first time. On the next boot after you run the sysprep command with the /generalize option.
generalize	<p>During this configuration pass, computer-specific information is removed from the Windows installation enabling you to capture and reapply the Windows image to different computers. For example, during this pass, the unique security ID (SID), unique device drivers, and other hardware-specific settings are removed from the image.</p> <p>This configuration pass enables you to minimally configure the sysprep /generalize command, in addition to configuring other Windows settings that must persist on your master image.</p> <p>After the generalize pass finishes, the next time that Windows image boots, the specialize configuration pass runs. If you want to retain the unique device drivers that are installed to your Windows installation, you can use the Microsoft-Windows-PnpSysprep PersistAllDeviceInstalls setting. If this setting is configured, unique device drivers are not removed from the installation.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The following setting is configured: Microsoft-Windows-Deployment Generalize. <p>- or -</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Run the sysprep /generalize command.

CONFIGURATION PASS	DESCRIPTION	CONFIGURATION PASS RUNS WHEN
auditSystem	<p>During this configuration pass, settings are processed when Windows is running in system context, before a user logs onto the computer in Audit mode.</p> <p>This pass is typically used to make additional configurations to an installation, such as installing out-of-box device drivers.</p> <p>This pass runs only when a computer is configured to boot to audit mode.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The following unattended Setup setting is configured: Microsoft-Windows-Deployment Reseal Mode =Audit. <p>- or -</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Run the sysprep command with the /audit option.
auditUser	<p>This pass processes unattended Setup settings, after a user logs onto the computer in audit mode.</p> <p>This pass is typically used to run custom commands or configure Windows Shell options.</p> <p>This pass runs only when a computer is configured to boot to audit mode.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The following unattended Setup setting is configured: Microsoft-Windows-Deployment Reseal Mode =Audit. <p>- or -</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Run the sysprep command with the /audit option.
oobeSystem	<p>During this configuration pass, settings are applied to Windows before Windows Welcome starts.</p> <p>This pass is typically used to configure Windows Shell options, create user accounts, and specify language and locale settings.</p> <p>The answer file settings for the oobeSystem pass appear in Windows Welcome, also known as OOBE. These settings do not appear in audit mode.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The following setting is configured: Microsoft-Windows-Deployment Reseal Mode =OOBE <p>- or -</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Run the sysprep command with the /OOBE option.

For more information about Windows components and settings that can be added to an answer file, see the Unattended Windows Setup Reference Guide. For more information about logging, see [Deployment Troubleshooting and Log Files](#) and [Windows Setup Log Files and Event Logs](#).

Configuring Device Drivers

To add out-of-box, boot-critical drivers during an unattended installation, you must make sure that the boot-critical driver is available on preinstallation media. Boot-critical drivers should be added during the **windowsPE** configuration pass. All drivers are staged in the driver store, but only boot-critical drivers are reflected or installed in the offline Windows image in addition to the Windows PE image. Non-boot-critical drivers can be added to the **offlineServicing** configuration pass. This makes sure that boot-critical drivers are available and when the computer boots, the driver will load.

For more information, see [Device Drivers and Deployment Overview](#).

Configuring International Settings

International settings are available in multiple configuration passes, to enable you to customize the Windows image based on customer requirements and different deployment scenarios.

For example, if you build a computer in the United States (which would be an en-US international setting), you might perform all your tests in English. However, if you intend to deliver the computer to France and need Windows to boot in French, you can add the fr-FR language pack, if the language pack is not already installed, and then configure the Microsoft-Windows-International-Core component to apply fr-FR settings during the **specialize** configuration pass. When the computer boots, the installation will display English text. However, after the specialize configuration pass finishes, French text will be displayed.

You can use DISM to configure the language settings of a Windows image (either online or offline). For more information, see [DISM Languages and International Servicing Command-Line Options](#).

By default, Windows Welcome displays a Regional Settings user interface (UI) page for the end user to select default language, locale, and input settings. You can preconfigure the settings on this UI page by specifying language and locale settings in the **oobeSystem** configuration pass in the Microsoft-Windows-International-Core component. If settings are set in **oobeSystem** configuration pass, the Regional Settings page is skipped. If language settings are configured during specialize, the Regional Settings page will be displayed.

For more information, see [Add Language Packs to Windows](#).

Examples

The following sections describe sample deployment scenarios and describe when configuration passes run.

To run Windows Setup

In this scenario, you install Windows to a new computer. You start with the Windows product media and an answer file.

1. Run Windows Setup and specify an answer file. Windows Setup starts.
2. The **windowsPE** configuration pass runs. Settings in the `<settings pass="windowsPE">` section of an answer file are processed. There are two different types of settings that you can configure during the **windowsPE** configuration pass: Settings that apply to the Windows PE environment, such as the display resolution and log file locations for Windows PE. You can also specify settings that apply to the Windows installation, such as configuring disk partitions or enabling dynamic updates.
 - The Windows PE-specific settings in an answer file are applied only when you are running Windows Setup from a Windows PE environment.
 - The Windows Setup options in the **windowsPE** configuration pass are applied when it runs from either Windows PE or a previous Windows installation.
3. After the Windows image is copied to the hard disk, the **offlineServicing** configuration pass runs. Any settings in the `<servicing>` and `<settings pass="offlineServicing">` section of an answer file are applied to the Windows image. Typically, the actions in this configuration pass install or remove packages, language packs, or device drivers.
4. The system restarts and Windows Setup runs the **specialize** configuration pass. At this point, settings in the `<settings pass="specialize">` section of the answer file are processed.
5. After Windows Setup completes, the computer restarts. Then, the **oobeSystem** configuration pass runs and settings in the `<settings pass="oobeSystem">` section of an answer file are processed.

Note

You can create a separate content file called Oobe.xml that you can use to customize Windows Welcome,

Getting Started, and ISP sign up. Using Oobe.xml is useful for organizing these customizations, because it enables you to maintain a single file that lists all of the branding, license terms, and signup opportunities for multiple countries, regions and/or languages. For more information, see [Configure Oobe.xml](#). Generally, Oobe.xml is used by OEMs and System Builders. However some aspects of Oobe.xml might also benefit corporate deployment scenarios.

6. Windows Welcome starts and you can begin using the computer.

To run the **Sysprep /generalize /shutdown** command

In this scenario, you will create a reference Windows image to use throughout your environment. You start with a customized Windows installation.

1. Run the **sysprep** command with the **/generalize /shutdown /oobe** options, to create a master image, configure the computer to boot to Windows Welcome, and then shut down the computer.
2. The settings in the `<settings pass="generalize">` section of an answer file are applied.
 - If you did not specify an answer file with the **Sysprep** command, the answer file cached to the computer will be used. For more information about how to use answer files, see [Windows Setup Automation Overview](#).
 - If you specified an answer file with the **sysprep** command, that answer file is cached to the `%WINDIR%\Panther` directory of the Windows installation and will be used on subsequent configuration passes.
3. The computer shuts down, enabling you to boot to Windows PE or another operating system and capture the image. The next time the Windows image boots, the **specialize** configuration pass will run and Windows will boot the computer to Windows Welcome.

Using a Script to Deploy a Windows Image

In this scenario, you boot the computer with a master image on which the **sysprep /generalize /shutdown /oobe** command was run and the image was captured. You start with a master image, Windows PE and the DISM tool.

1. Apply the master image to a computer by using the **dism** command with the **/apply-image** option.
2. Boot the computer with the master image. Windows starts.
3. The **specialize** configuration pass runs. Settings in the `<settings pass="specialize">` section of the answer file are processed.
4. The computer restarts.
5. The **oobeSystem** configuration pass runs. Settings in the `<settings pass="oobeSystem">` section of the answer file are processed.
6. Windows Welcome starts and you can begin using your computer.

To boot Windows to audit mode

In this scenario, you boot a Windows image that is configured to start in audit mode. Audit mode is useful for adding custom applications, drivers, and other updates to a master image. You can configure a Windows image to boot the computer to audit mode by configuring the following setting in an answer file: Microsoft-Windows-Deployment | Reseal | `Mode =Audit` or, run the **Sysprep** command with the **/audit** option.

1. Configure the Windows image to boot the computer to audit mode. In this scenario, run the **sysprep** command with the **/audit /reboot** options.
2. Windows reboots the computer.

3. The **auditSystem** configuration pass runs. Settings in the `<settings pass="auditSystem">` section of the answer file are processed.
4. The Built-in administrator account is enabled.
5. The **auditUser** configuration pass runs. Settings in the `<settings pass="auditUser">` section of the answer file are processed.
6. The desktop appears.

The next time that you reboot the computer, it will boot to audit mode again.

To configure the computer to boot to Windows Welcome, you must use the **sysprep** command with the **/oobe** option, or configure the Microsoft-Windows-Deployment | Reseal | `Mode` setting to **oobe** in an answer file.

To run DISM against an offline Windows image

In this scenario, you run DISM against an offline Windows image.

1. Run DISM tool against an offline Windows image and specify an answer file. For example, to list the package in an offline Windows image, use the following command:

```
Dism /image:C:\test\offline /Get-Packages
```

2. Settings in the `<servicing>` and `<settings pass="offlineServicing">` sections of an answer file are applied to the Windows image. The next time that you boot your computer, the packages and settings are processed.

For more information, see [DISM Image Management Command-Line Options](#).

To use DISM on a running Windows image

In this scenario, you run the DISM tool against a running Windows installation.

- Run DISM against an online Windows image and specify an answer file. For example, to list driver information in a Windows image, use the following command:

```
Dism /online /Get-Drivers
```

Important

When you use DISM with an answer file against an online Windows installation, the answer file should contain only the elements in the **offlineServicing** configuration pass. This is because some settings in the **specialize** configuration pass might be applied to the online Windows installation.

In some instances, you might be required to restart your computer. For example, if you add a language pack to your Windows installation, you must reboot the computer.

Related topics

[auditSystem](#)

[auditUser](#)

[generalize](#)

[offlineServicing](#)

[oobeSystem](#)

[specialize](#)

windowsPE

auditSystem

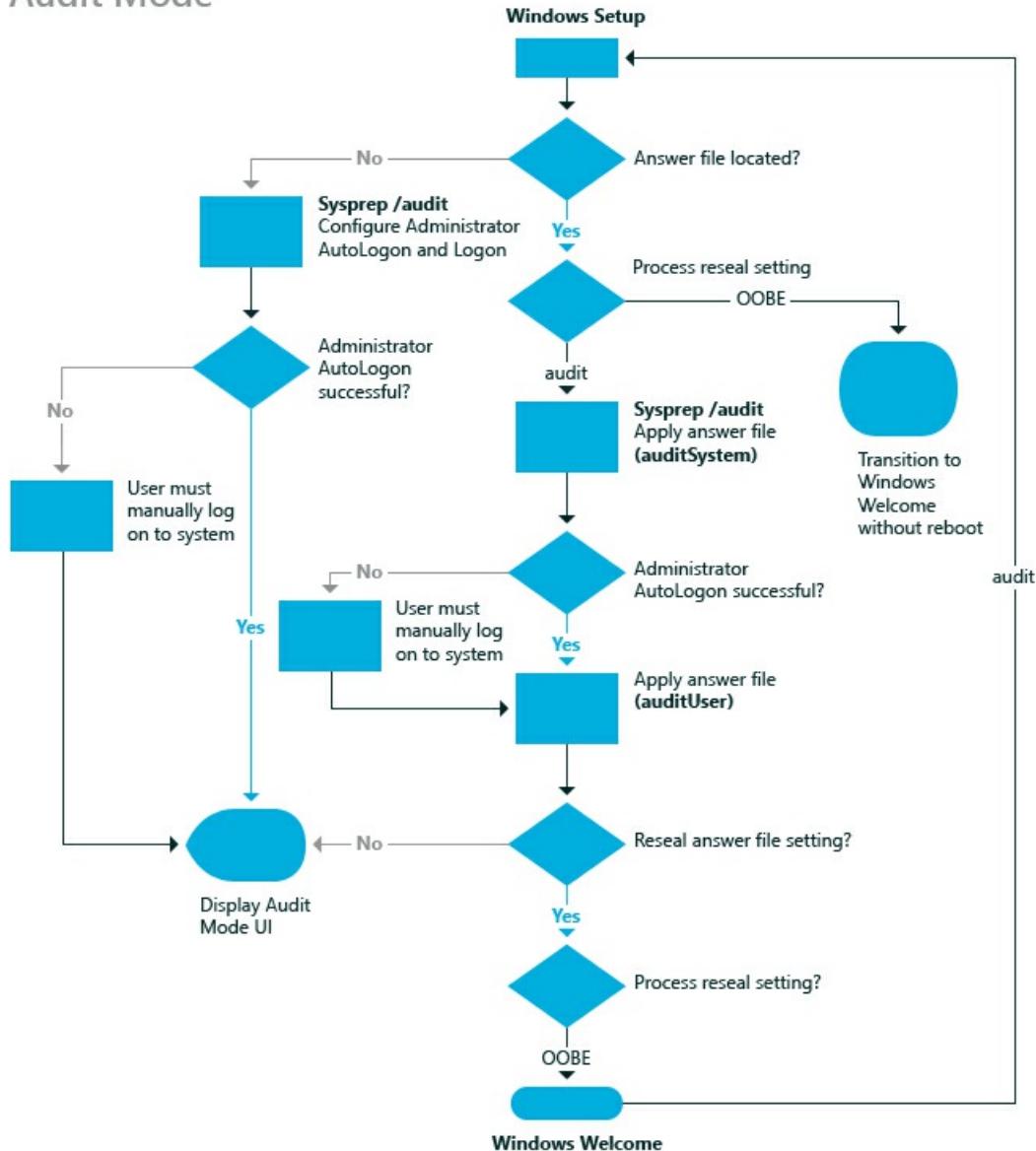
6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The **auditSystem** configuration pass processes unattended Windows® Setup settings in system context in audit mode. The **auditSystem** configuration pass runs immediately before the **auditUser** configuration pass, which is used to apply settings in user context. When Windows boots to audit mode, the **auditSystem** configuration pass and the **auditUser** unattended Windows Setup settings are processed.

Audit mode enables OEMs and corporations to install additional device drivers, applications, and other updates to a master Windows image. By using audit mode, you can maintain fewer images because you can create a reference image with a minimal set of drivers and applications. The reference image can then be updated with additional drivers during audit mode. Additionally, you can then test and resolve any issues related to malfunctioning or incorrectly installed devices on the Windows image before shipping the computer to a customer. Audit mode is optional.

The following diagram shows when the **auditSystem** configuration pass is processed in audit mode.

Audit Mode



The **auditSystem** configuration pass runs only when you configure Windows Setup to boot into audit mode. You can boot to audit mode by using the **sysprep** command with the **audit** option, or the **sysprep** command

with the **generalize** and **audit** options, or you can specify the **Reseal** setting in the Microsoft-Windows-Deployment component. For more information, see [Audit Mode Overview](#) and [Boot Windows to Audit Mode or OOBED](#).

Related topics

[How Configuration Passes Work](#)

[auditUser](#)

[generalize](#)

[offlineServicing](#)

[oobeSystem](#)

[specialize](#)

[windowsPE](#)

auditUser

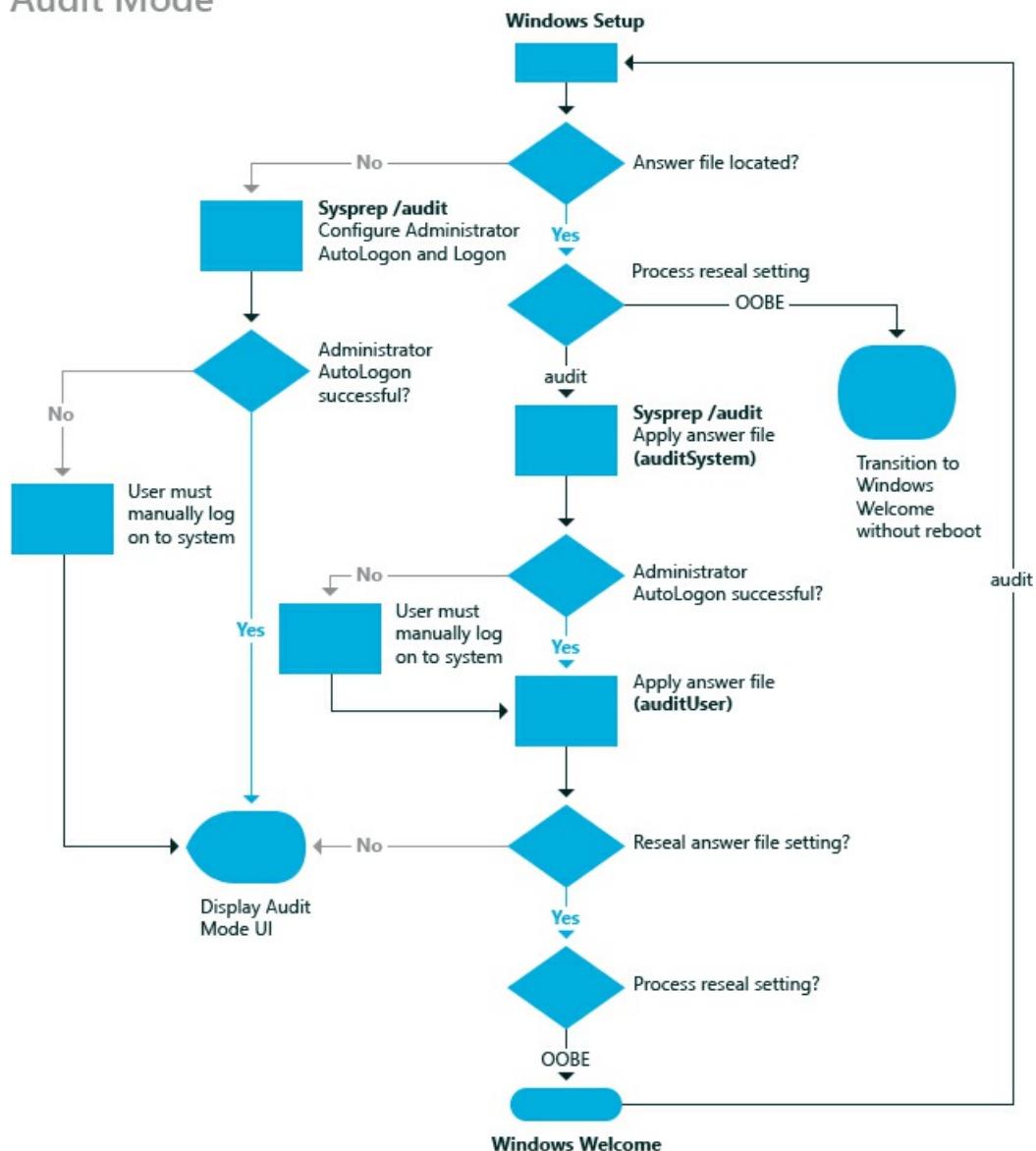
6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The **auditUser** configuration pass processes unattended Windows® Setup settings in user context in audit mode. The **auditUser** configuration pass always runs after the **auditSystem** pass, which is used to apply settings in system context. Typically, the **auditUser** configuration pass is used to execute **RunSynchronous** or **RunAsynchronous** commands. These commands are used to run scripts, applications, or other executables during audit mode. When Windows boots to audit mode, the **auditSystem** and **auditUser** settings for unattended Windows Setup are processed.

Audit mode enables OEMs and corporations to install additional device drivers, applications, and other updates to a master Windows® image. By using audit mode, you can maintain fewer images because you can create a reference image with a minimal set of drivers and applications. The reference image can then be updated with additional drivers during audit mode. Additionally, you can test and resolve any issues related to malfunctioning or incorrectly installed devices on the Windows image before shipping the computer to a customer. Audit mode is optional.

The following diagram illustrates when the **auditUser** configuration pass is processed in audit mode.

Audit Mode



The **auditUser** configuration pass runs only when you configure Windows Setup to boot into audit mode. You can boot to audit mode by using the **sysprep /audit** or **sysprep /generalize /audit** commands, or you can specify the **Reseal** setting in the Microsoft-Windows-Deployment component. For more information about audit mode, see [Audit Mode Overview](#) and [Boot Windows to Audit Mode or Oobe](#).

Related topics

[How Configuration Passes Work](#)

[auditSystem](#)

[generalize](#)

[offlineServicing](#)

[oobeSystem](#)

[specialize](#)

[windowsPE](#)

generalize

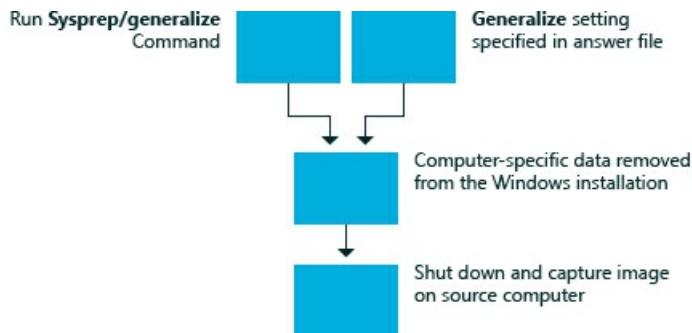
6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The **generalize** configuration pass of Windows® Setup is used to create a Windows reference image that can be used throughout an organization. Settings in the **generalize** configuration pass enable you to automate the behavior for all deployments of this reference image. In comparison, settings applied in the **specialize** configuration pass enable you to override behavior for a single, specific deployment.

When a system is generalized, specific configuration data for a given installation of Windows is removed. For example, during the **generalize** configuration pass, the unique security ID (SID) and other hardware-specific settings are removed from the image.

The **generalize** configuration pass runs only when you use the **Sysprep** command with the **/generalize** option. Answer file settings in the `<generalize>` section of an answer file are applied to the system before **Sysprep** generalization occurs. The system then shuts down.

The following diagram shows the process of the **generalize** configuration pass.



The **specialize** configuration pass runs immediately after the next time that the system boots. When you run **Sysprep**, you can decide whether Windows will boot to audit mode or Windows Welcome by specifying **/audit** or **/oobe**. The **specialize** configuration pass always runs after a computer has been generalized, regardless of whether the computer is configured to boot to audit mode or Windows Welcome.

Any method of moving or copying a Windows image to a new computer must be prepared with the **sysprep /generalize** command. For more information, see [Sysprep \(Generalize\) a Windows installation](#).

Related topics

[How Configuration Passes Work](#)

[auditSystem](#)

[auditUser](#)

[offlineServicing](#)

[oobeSystem](#)

[specialize](#)

[windowsPE](#)

offlineServicing

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Use the **offlineServicing** configuration pass to apply unattended Setup settings to an offline Microsoft® Windows® image. During this configuration pass, you can add language packs, updates, device drivers, or other packages to the offline image.

The **offlineServicing** configuration pass runs during Windows Setup. Setup extracts and installs the Windows image, and then executes the Deployment Image Servicing and Management (Dism.exe) tool. Packages listed in the `<servicing>` section and settings in the `<offlineServicing>` section of the answer file are applied to the offline Windows image.

Additionally, you can use the Deployment Image Servicing and Management tool with an answer file to apply settings in the **offlineServicing** pass. For more information, see [Service a Windows Image Using DISM](#).

Related topics

[How Configuration Passes Work](#)

[auditSystem](#)

[auditUser](#)

[generalize](#)

[oobeSystem](#)

[specialize](#)

[windowsPE](#)

oobeSystem

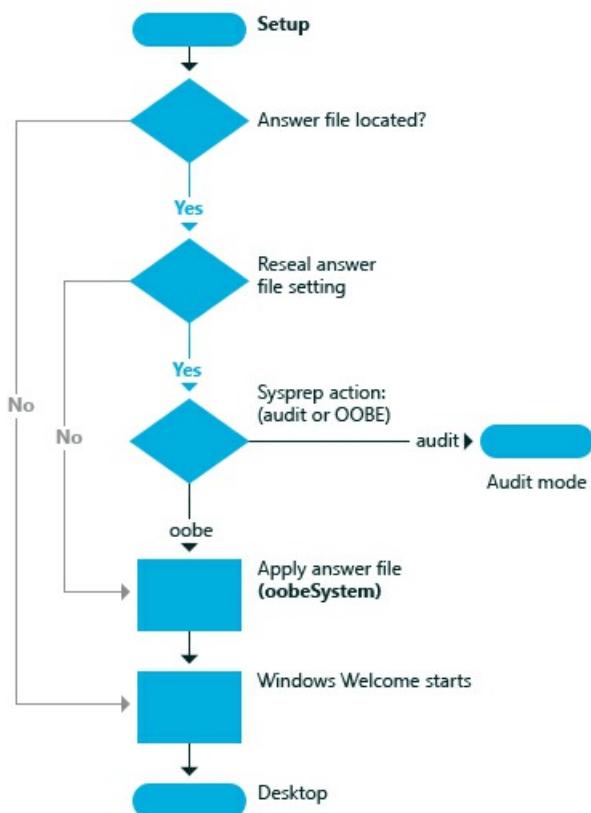
6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The **oobeSystem** configuration pass configures settings that are applied during the end-user first-boot experience, also called Out-Of-Box Experience (OOBE). The **oobeSystem** configuration pass settings are processed before a user first logs on to Windows®.

Out-of-Box-Experience (OOBE) runs the first time the user starts a newly configured computer. OOBE runs before the Windows shell or any additional software runs, and it performs a small set of tasks that are required to configure and run Windows.

The following diagram illustrates the process that occurs when an end user first boots a newly configured computer. The result is OOBE, or a user's first-boot experience.

Windows Welcome



You can configure Windows to boot to OOBE by running the **sysprep** command by using the **/oobe** option. By default, after running Windows Setup, OOBE starts.

Related topics

[How Configuration Passes Work](#)

[auditSystem](#)

[auditUser](#)

[generalize](#)

[offlineServicing](#)

[specialize](#)

windowsPE

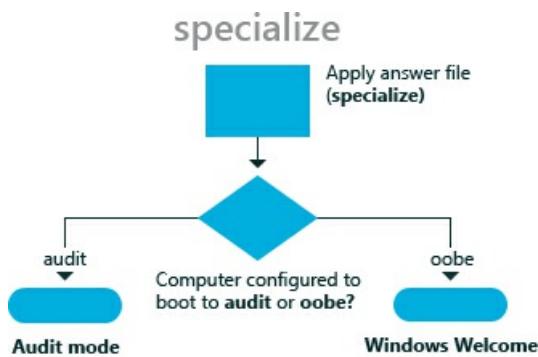
specialize

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

During the **specialize** configuration pass of Windows® Setup, computer-specific information for the image is applied. For example, you can configure network settings, international settings, and domain information.

The **specialize** configuration pass is used together with the [generalize](#) configuration pass. The [generalize](#) pass is used to create a Windows reference image that can be used throughout an organization. From this basic Windows reference image, you can add additional customizations that apply to different divisions in an organization or to different installations of Windows. Any method of moving or copying a Windows image to a new computer must be prepared with the **sysprep /generalize** command. For more information, see [Sysprep \(System Preparation\) Overview](#) and [Sysprep Command-Line Options](#).

The following diagram illustrates how the **specialize** configuration pass is used to apply these specific customizations.



For example, during the **specialize** configuration pass, you can specify different home pages in Internet Explorer® for different departments or branches in your business. This setting will then override the default home page.

Related topics

[How Configuration Passes Work](#)

[auditSystem](#)

[auditUser](#)

[generalize](#)

[offlineServicing](#)

[oobeSystem](#)

[windowsPE](#)

windowsPE

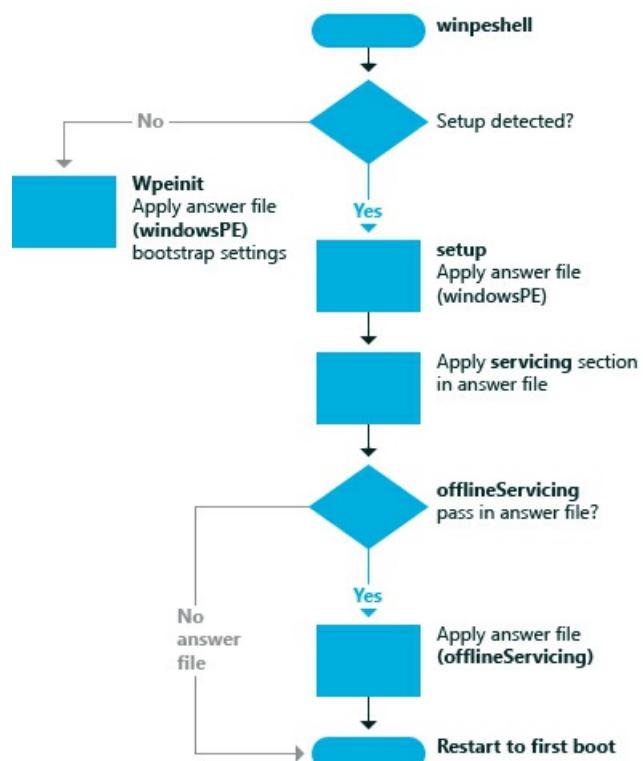
6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The **windowsPE** configuration pass is used to configure settings specific to Windows® Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE) in addition to settings that apply to installation.

For example, you can specify the display resolution of Windows PE, where to save a log file, and other Windows PE-related settings.

The following diagram illustrates the **windowsPE** configuration pass.

windowsPE



The **windowsPE** configuration pass also enables you to specify Windows Setup-related settings, including:

- Partition and format a hard disk.
- Select a specific Windows image to install, the path of that image, and any credentials required to access that image.
- Select a partition on the destination computer where you install Windows.
- Apply a product key and administrator password.
- Run specific commands during Windows Setup.

Related topics

[How Configuration Passes Work](#)

[auditSystem](#)

[auditUser](#)

generalize

offlineServicing

oobeSystem

Settings for Automating OOBЕ

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can prevent some or all of the user interface (UI) pages from appearing in Windows Out of Box Experience (OOBE).

Automating OOBЕ

To automate OOBЕ, add the following settings to your unattended Setup answer file:

SETTING	CONFIGURATION PASS	DESCRIPTION	APPLIES TO
Microsoft-Windows-International-Core settings: InputLocale , SystemLocale , UILanguage , and UserLocale .	oobeSystem	Specifies the region-specific defaults of the Windows installation.	Windows 10 for desktop editions (Home, Pro, Enterprise, and Education) and Windows Server 2016
Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup ComputerName	specialize	Specifies the computer's name to apply to the Windows installation. If ComputerName is set to an asterisk (*) or is an empty string, a random computer name will be generated.	Windows 10 for desktop editions and Windows Server 2016
Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup UserAccounts : Add an account and a password.	oobeSystem	Specifies the user accounts to create on the Windows installation. The account can be a user account, a domain account, or the default administrator account. Though you must enter a password, the password may be blank. To enter a blank password, in Windows SIM, right-click Value , and select Write Empty String .	Windows 10 for desktop editions and Windows Server 2016

SETTING	CONFIGURATION PASS	DESCRIPTION	APPLIES TO
Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup OOBE (HideEULAPage , HideOEMRegistrationScreen , HideOnlineAccountScreens , and HideWirelessSetupInOOBE)	oobeSystem	Specifies the behavior of some OOBE screens.	Windows 10 for desktop editions and Windows Server 2016
Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup OOBE HideLocalAccountScreen	oobeSystem	Specifies whether end users must set the Administrator password screen that appears during OOBE.	Windows Server 2016 only
Microsoft-Windows-Shell-Setup OOBE ProtectYourPC	oobeSystem	Specifies whether your device is configured with Express settings, such as sending data to Microsoft, letting Windows and apps request the user's localization, and turning on protection against malicious web content.	Windows 10 for desktop editions and Windows Server 2016

Related topics

[Automate Windows Setup](#)

Deployment Troubleshooting and Log Files

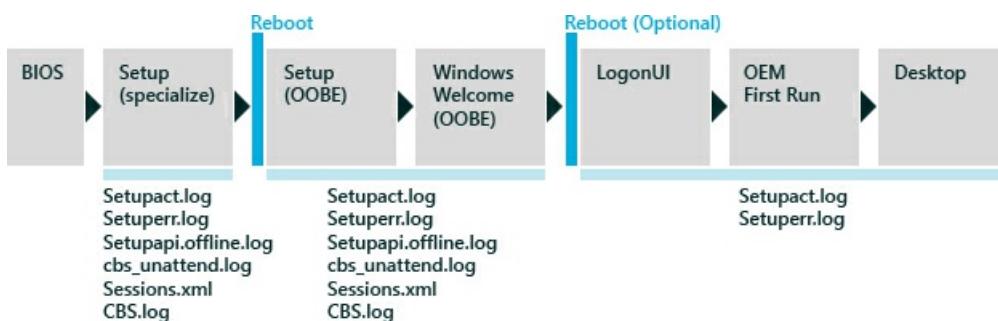
6/6/2017 • 5 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The following section describes the relationship between common deployment scenarios and their associated log files. Windows® deployment is a highly customizable process, which has the potential for many points of failure. Identifying the specific point of failure you have encountered begins with understanding how the underlying technologies work.

Windows Setup Scenario

This scenario begins with completing Windows Setup on a new computer, so that you arrive at the desktop. This scenario is most common when you are creating a reference image. This process is also known as the *first user experience*.

As shown in the following illustration, the key to solving failures is identifying where you are in the installation process and when a failure occurs. Because you are creating a new installation, the hard drive is not initially available, so Windows Setup writes logs into memory, specifically in a Windows PE session (X:\Windows). After the hard drive is formatted, Setup continues logging directly onto the new hard drive (C:\Windows). Log files created during the Windows PE session are temporary.



When a failure occurs in Windows Setup, review the entries in the Setuperr.log file first, then the Setupact.log file second, and then other log files as needed.

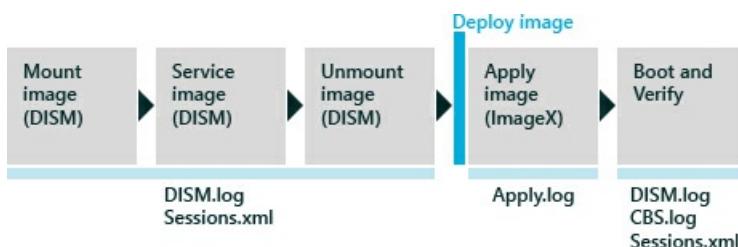
Windows Setup-Related Log Files

LOG FILE	DESCRIPTION	LOCATION
Setupact.log	Primary log file for most errors that occur during the Windows installation process. There are several instances of the Setupact.log file, depending on what point in the installation process the failure occurs. It is important to know which version of the Setupact.log file to look at, based on the phase you are in.	Setup (specialize): X:\Windows\panther Setup (OOBE), LogonUI, OEM First Run: %windir%\panther Out-Of-Box Experience (OOBE): %windir%\panther\unattendGC

LOG FILE	DESCRIPTION	LOCATION
Setuperr.log	High-level list of errors that occurred during the specialize phase of Setup. The Setuperr.log file does not provide any specific details.	Setup (specialize): %windir%\panther Setup (specialize): %windir%\panther Setup (OOBE), LogonUI, OEM First Run: %windir%\panther
Setupapi.offline.log	Driver failures during the Component Specialization sub-phase of the Setup specialize phase.	%windir%\inf
Cbs_unattend.log	Unattended-setup servicing failures.	%windir%\panther
Setupapi.dev.log	Driver failures during the oobe phase of Setup.	%windir%\inf
Sessions.xml	An XML-based transaction log file that tracks all servicing activity, based on session id, client, status, tasks, and actions. If necessary, the Sessions.log file will point to the DISM.log and CBS.log files for more details.	%windir%\servicing\sessions
CBS.log	Servicing log file that provides more details about offline-servicing failures.	%windir%\panther

Offline Servicing Scenario

This scenario involves adding and removing updates, drivers, and language packs, and configuring other settings, without booting Windows. Offline servicing is an efficient way to manage existing images that are stored on a server, because it eliminates the need for recreating updated images. You can perform offline servicing on an image that is mounted or applied to a drive or directory.



The Deployment Image Servicing and Management (DISM) tool is the primary tool for all offline-servicing tasks. DISM runs from a command prompt from Windows PE or a running Windows operating system. If a failure occurs when executing a DISM command, the tool will provide an immediate response, and log the issue in the DISM.log file. The Session.xml file is a transaction log file that captures all servicing activities on the target operating system. The Session.xml file can be used in conjunction with the DISM.log file to determine points of failures and the

required servicing activity.

When a failure occurs in offline servicing, look at the DISM.log file first for specific errors. If the DISM.log file doesn't contain any errors, review the Sessions.xml log file second, and then the CBS.log file.

Offline Servicing Related Log Files

LOG FILE	DESCRIPTION	LOCATION
DISM.log	Primary log file for all offline actions using DISM.	%windir%\logs\dism You can also create the DISM log file in a different location by using the /LogPath option. The level of data written to the log file can also be controlled by using the /LogLevel option.
Sessions.xml	An XML-based transaction log that tracks all servicing activity, based on session id, client, status, tasks, and actions. If necessary, the Sessions.log file will point to the DISM.log and CBS.log files for more details.	%windir%\servicing\sessions

To learn more about offline servicing, see [Understanding Servicing Strategies](#).

Online Servicing Scenario

This scenario is servicing a running operating system. This scenario involves booting the computer to audit mode to add drivers, applications, and other packages. Online servicing is ideal for drivers if the driver packages have co-installers or application dependencies. It is also efficient when the majority of your servicing packages have installers, the updates are in either .msi or KB.exe file formats, or the applications rely on Windows-installed services and technologies (such as the .NET Framework or full plug and play support).



Like offline servicing, all logging is captured in the DISM.log, CBS.log, and Sessions.xml files. If a failure occurs when executing a DISM command, the tool will provide immediate response as well as log the issue in the DISM.log file. The Session.xml file is a transaction log file that captures all servicing activities on the target operating system. The Session.xml file can be used in conjunction with the DISM.log file to determine points of failures and the required servicing activities.

When a failure occurs in offline servicing, look at the DISM.log file for specific errors. If the DISM.log file doesn't contain any errors, review the Sessions.xml log file and then the CBS.log file.

Online Servicing-Related Log Files

LOG FILE	DESCRIPTION	LOCATION

LOG FILE	DESCRIPTION	LOCATION
DISM.log	Primary log file for all online actions using DISM. If necessary, DISM.log will point to CBS.log for more details.	%windir%\logs\dism You can also point DISM log file to a different location by using the /LogPath command option. The log data can also be controlled by using the /LogLevel command option.
CBS.log	Secondary log file that provides more details about an online servicing failure. DISM.log will reference CBS.log for more details.	%windir%\logs\cbs
Sessions.xml	An xml based transaction log that tracks all servicing activity based on session id, client, status, tasks, and actions. If necessary, Sessions.log will point to DISM.log and CBS.log for more details.	%windir%\servicing\sessions

To learn more about offline servicing, see [Understanding Servicing Strategies](#).

Windows Deployment Command-Line Tools Reference

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

These command-line tools are often used when manufacturing Windows devices.

In This Section

BCDBoot Command-Line Options	Initializes the boot configuration data (BCD) store and copies boot environment files to the system partition during image deployment.
BCDEdit Command-Line Options	Manages Boot Configuration Data (BCD).
Bootsect Command-Line Options	Updates the master boot code for hard disk partitions to switch between Windows Boot Manager (Bootmgr.exe) and Windows NT Loader (NTLDR).
DiskPart	Manages disk partitions.
Oscdimg Command-Line Options	Creates an image (.iso) file of a customized 32-bit or 64-bit version of Windows PE.

Related topics

[Server Manager command-line tools](#)

[Windows Deployment Tools Technical Reference](#)

BCDBoot Command-Line Options

7/13/2017 • 7 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

BCDBoot is a command-line tool used to configure the boot files on a PC or device to run the Windows operating system. You can use the tool in the following scenarios:

- **Add boot files to a PC after applying a new Windows image.** In a typical image-based Windows deployment, use BCDBoot to set up the firmware and system partition to boot to your image. To learn more, see [Capture and Apply Windows, System, and Recovery Partitions](#).
- **Set up the PC to boot to a virtual hard disk (VHD) file that includes a Windows image.** To learn more, see [Boot to VHD \(Native Boot\): Add a Virtual Hard Disk to the Boot Menu](#).
- **Repair the system partition.** If the system partition has been corrupted, you can use BCDBoot to recreate the system partition files by using new copies of these files from the Windows partition.
- **Set up or repair the boot menu on a dual-boot PC.** If you've installed more than one copy of Windows on a PC, you can use BCDBoot to add or repair the boot menu.

File Locations

In Windows and Windows Preinstallation Environment (WinPE)	%WINDIR%\System32\BCDBoot.exe
In the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (Windows ADK):	C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Deployment Tools\amd64\BCDBoot\BCDBoot.exe

Supported operating systems

BCDBoot can copy boot environment files from images of Windows 10, Windows 8.1, Windows 8, Windows 7, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2016 Technical Preview, Windows Server 2012 R2, Windows Server 2012, Windows Server 2008 R2, or Windows Server 2008.

How It Works

To configure the system partition, BCDBoot copies a small set of boot-environment files from the installed Windows image to the system partition.

BCDBoot can create a Boot Configuration Data (BCD) store on the system partition using the latest version of the Windows files:

- BCDBoot creates a new BCD store and initialize the BCD boot-environment files on the system partition, including the Windows Boot Manager, using the %WINDIR%\System32\Config\BCD-Template file.
- New in Windows 10: During an upgrade, BCDBoot preserves any other existing boot entries, such as **debugsettings**, when creating the new store. Use the **/c** option to ignore the old settings and start fresh with a new BCD store.
- If there is already a boot entry for this Windows partition, by default, BCDBoot erases the old boot entry and its values. Use the **/m** option to retain the values from an existing boot entry when you update the system files.
- By default, BCDBoot moves the boot entry for the selected Windows partition to the top of the Windows

Boot Manager boot order. Use the **/d** option to preserve the existing boot order.

On UEFI PCs, BCDBoot can update the firmware entries in the device's NVRAM:

- BCDBoot adds a firmware entry in the NVRAM to point to the Windows Boot Manager. By default, this entry is placed as the first item in the boot list. Use the **/p** option to preserve the existing UEFI boot order. Use **/addlast** to add it to the bottom of the boot order list.

Command-Line Options

The following command-line options are available for BCDBoot.exe.

BCDBOOT <source> [/l <locale>] [/s <volume-letter>] [/f <firmware type>] [/v] [/m [{OS Loader GUID}]]
[/addlast or /p] [/d] [/c]

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
<source>	<p>Required. Specifies the location of the Windows directory to use as the source for copying boot-environment files.</p> <p>The following example initializes the system partition by using BCD files from the C:\Windows folder:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;">bcdboot C:\Windows</div>
/l <locale>	<p>Optional. Specifies the locale. The default is US English (en-us).</p> <p>The following example sets the default BCD locale to Japanese:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;">bcdboot C:\Windows /l ja-jp</div>

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
<p>/s <volume letter></p>	<p>Optional. Specifies the volume letter of the system partition. This option should not be used in typical deployment scenarios.</p> <p>Use this setting to specify a system partition when you are configuring a drive that will be booted on another computer, such as a USB flash drive or a secondary hard drive.</p> <p>UEFI:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> BCDBoot copies the boot files to either the EFI system partition, or the partition specified by the /s option. <p>BCDBoot creates the BCD store in the same partition.</p> <p>By default, BCDBoot creates a Windows Boot Manager entry in the NVRAM on the firmware to identify the boot files on the system partition. If the /s option is used, then this entry is not created. Instead, BCDBoot relies on the default firmware settings to identify the boot files on the system partition. By the UEFI 2.3.1 spec, the default firmware settings should open the file: \efi\boot\bootx64.efi in the EFI System Partition (ESP).</p> <p>BIOS:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> BCDBoot copies the boot files to either the active partition on the primary hard drive, or the partition specified by the /s option. BCDBoot creates the BCD store in the same partition. <p>The following example copies BCD files from the C:\Windows folder to a system partition on a secondary hard drive that will be booted on another computer. The system partition on the secondary drive was assigned the volume letter S:</p> <pre>bcdboot C:\Windows /s S:</pre> <p>The following example creates boot entries on a USB flash drive with the volume letter S, including boot files to support either a UEFI-based or a BIOS-based computer:</p> <pre>bcdboot C:\Windows /s S: /f ALL</pre>

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
<p>/f <firmware type></p>	<p>Optional. Specifies the firmware type. Valid values include UEFI, BIOS, and ALL.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On BIOS/MBR-based systems, the default value is BIOS. This option creates the \Boot directory on the system partition and copies all required boot-environment files to this directory. On UEFI/GPT-based systems, the default value is UEFI. This option creates the \Efi\Microsoft\Boot directory and copies all required boot-environment files to this directory. When you specify the ALL value, BCDBoot creates both the \Boot and the \Efi\Microsoft\Boot directories, and copies all required boot-environment files for BIOS and UEFI to these directories. <p>If you specify the /f option, you must also specify the /s option to identify the volume letter of the system partition.</p> <p>The following example copies BCD files that support booting on either a UEFI-based or a BIOS-based computer from the C:\Windows folder to a USB flash drive that was assigned the volume letter S:</p> <pre>bcdboot C:\Windows /s S: /f ALL</pre>
<p>/v</p>	<p>Optional. Enables verbose mode. Example:</p> <pre>bcdboot C:\Windows /v</pre>
<p>/m [{OS Loader GUID}]</p>	<p>Optional. Merges the values from an existing boot entry into a new boot entry.</p> <p>By default, this option merges only global objects. If you specify an <i>OS Loader GUID</i>, this option merges the loader object in the system template to produce a bootable entry.</p> <p>The following example merges the operating-system loader in the current BCD store that the specified GUID identifies in the new BCD store:</p> <pre>bcdboot c:\Windows /m {xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxx}</pre>

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
/addlast	<p>Optional. Specifies that the Windows Boot Manager firmware entry should be added last. The default behavior is to add it first. Cannot be used with /p.</p> <pre>bcdboot C:\Windows /addlast</pre>
/p	<p>Optional. Specifies that the existing Windows Boot Manager firmware entry position should be preserved in the UEFI boot order. If entry does not exist, a new entry is added in the first position. Cannot be used with /addlast.</p> <p>By default, during an upgrade BCDBoot moves the Windows Boot Manager to be the first entry in the UEFI boot order.</p> <pre>bcdboot C:\Windows /p bcdboot C:\Windows /p /d</pre>
/d	<p>Optional. Preserves the existing default operating system entry in the {bootmgr} object in Windows Boot Manager.</p> <pre>bcdboot C:\Windows /d</pre>
/c	<p>Optional. Specifies that any existing BCD elements should not be migrated.</p> <p>New for Windows 10: By default, during an upgrade, BCD elements such as debugsettings or flightsigning are preserved.</p> <pre>bcdboot C:\Windows /c</pre>

Repair the system partition

If the system partition has been corrupted, you can use BCDBoot to recreate the system partition files by using new copies of these files from the Windows partition.

1. Boot your PC to a command line. For example, boot to the Windows installation disk and press Shift+F10, or boot to Windows PE ([WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#)).
2. Use Diskpart to determine which drive letter contains your Windows partition and system partition (
`diskpart, list vol, exit`).
3. Optional: Format your system partition: `format (drive letter of your system partition) /q`
4. Add a boot entry for your Windows partition: `bcdboot D:\Windows`

5. Reboot the PC. Windows should appear.

Set up or repair the boot menu on a dual-boot PC

When setting up a PC to boot more than one operating system, you may sometimes lose the ability to boot into one of the operating systems. The BCDBoot option allows you to quickly add boot options for a Windows-based operating system. To set up a dual-boot PC:

1. Install a separate hard drive or prepare a separate partition for each operating system.
2. Install the operating systems. For example, if your PC has Windows 7, install Windows 10 onto the other hard drive or partition.
3. Reboot the PC. The boot menus should appear with both operating systems listed.

If both operating systems aren't listed:

- a. Open a command line, either as an administrator from inside Windows, or by booting to a command line using the Windows installation media and pressing Shift+F10, or by booting to Windows PE ([WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#)).
- b. Add boot options for a Windows operating system.

```
bcdboot D:\Windows
```

- c. Reboot the PC. Now, the boot menu will show both menu options.

Troubleshooting

For information about repairing the boot files on a PC with Windows XP and a more recent version of Windows such as Windows 7, see the Microsoft Knowledge Base Article [2277998](#).

Related topics

[Capture and Apply Windows, System, and Recovery Partitions](#)

[Configure BIOS/MBR-Based Hard Drive Partitions](#)

[Configure UEFI/GPT-Based Hard Drive Partitions](#)

[BCDedit](#)

[Bootsect Command-Line Options](#)

[Diskpart Command line syntax](#)

BCDEdit Command-Line Options

7/13/2017 • 5 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

BCDEdit is a command-line tool for managing Boot Configuration Data (BCD).

BCD files provide a store that is used to describe boot applications and boot application settings.

BCDEdit can be used for a variety of purposes, including creating new stores, modifying existing stores, adding boot menu options, and so on.

You'll need administrative privileges to use BCDEdit to modify BCD. Start the Command Prompt (Admin) or use Windows PE.

A normal shutdown and reboot is necessary to ensure that any modified BCDEdit settings are flushed to disk.

BCDEdit is included in the %WINDIR%\System32 folder.

BCDEdit is limited to the standard data types and is designed primarily to perform single common changes to BCD.

Related resources:

- Some common BCD operations, such as recovering a partition or setting up a new PC's system partition, may be more easily accomplished by using [BCDboot](#).
- For complex operations or nonstandard data types, consider using the BCD Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI) application programming interface (API) to create more powerful and flexible custom tools.

BCDEdit Command-Line Options

The following command-line options are available for BCDEdit.exe.

BCDEdit /Command[Argument1] [Argument2] ...

Help

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
/? [command]	<p>Displays a list of BCDEdit commands.</p> <p>To display detailed help for a particular command, run bcdedit /?command, where <i>command</i> is the name of the command you are searching for more information about.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"><code>bcdedit /? createstore</code></div>

Operating on a store

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
/createstore	Creates a new empty boot configuration data store. The created store is not a system store.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
/export	Exports the contents of the system store into a file. This file can be used later to restore the state of the system store. This command is valid only for the system store.
/import	Restores the state of the system store by using a backup data file previously generated by using the /export option. This command deletes any existing entries in the system store before the import takes place. This command is valid only for the system store.
/store	This option can be used with most BCredit commands to specify the store to be used. If this option is not specified, then BCredit operates on the system store. Running the bcredit /store command by itself is equivalent to running the bcredit /enum active command.
/sysstore	Sets the system store device. This only affects EFI-based systems. It does not persist across reboots, and is only used in cases where the system store device is ambiguous.

Operating on entries in a store

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
/copy	Makes a copy of a specified boot entry in the same system store.
/create	Creates a new entry in the boot configuration data store. If a well-known identifier is specified, then the /application, /inherit, and /device options cannot be specified. If an identifier is not specified or not well known, an /application, /inherit, or /device option must be specified.
/delete	Deletes an element from a specified entry.
/mirror	Creates mirror of entries in the store.

Changing entry options

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
/deletevalue	Deletes a specified element from a boot entry.
/set	Sets an entry option value.

For example, this command will enable the system to trust Windows Insider Preview builds that are signed with certificates that are not trusted by default:

```
Bcdedit /set {bootmgr} flightsigning on
Bcdedit /set flightsigning on
```

Reboot after running the command. To turn off flightsigning:

```
Bcdedit /set {bootmgr} flightsigning off
Bcdedit /set flightsigning off
```

Controlling output

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
/enum	Lists entries in a store. The /enum option is the default value for BCEdit, so running the bcdedit command without options is equivalent to running the bcdedit /enum active command.
/v	Verbose mode. Usually, any well-known entry identifiers are represented by their friendly shorthand form. Specifying /v as a command-line option displays all identifiers in full. Running the bcdedit /v command by itself is equivalent to running the bcdedit /enum active /v command.

Controlling the boot manager

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
/bootsequence	Specifies a one-time display order to be used for the next boot. This command is similar to the /displayorder option, except that it is used only the next time the computer starts. Afterwards, the computer reverts to the original display order.
/default	Specifies the default entry that the boot manager selects when the timeout expires.
/displayorder	Specifies the display order that the boot manager uses when displaying boot options to a user.
/timeout	Specifies the time to wait, in seconds, before the boot manager selects the default entry.
/toolsdisplayorder	Specifies the display order for the boot manager to use when displaying the Tools menu.

Emergency Management Services options

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
/bootems	Enables or disables Emergency Management Services (EMS) for the specified entry.
/ems	Enables or disables EMS for the specified operating system boot entry.
/emssettings	Sets the global EMS settings for the computer. /emssettings does not enable or disable EMS for any particular boot entry.

Debugging

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
/bootdebug	Enables or disables the boot debugger for a specified boot entry. Although this command works for any boot entry, it is effective only for boot applications.
/dbgsettings	Specifies or displays the global debugger settings for the system. This command does not enable or disable the kernel debugger; use the /debug option for that purpose. To set an individual global debugger setting, use the bcedit /setdbgsettings type value command.
/debug	Enables or disables the kernel debugger for a specified boot entry.
/hypervisorsettings	Sets the hypervisor parameters.

To troubleshoot a new installation, enable debug mode by modifying the boot configuration file (BCD). For example, use the following syntax to enable kernel or boot debug.

```
bcdeedit /set <id> debug on
```

-or-

```
bcdeedit /set <id> bootdebug on
```

where <id> is the GUID of the Loader object that is used to load the operating system. "Default" can be used if the operating system is the default option of the Boot Manager menu.

For examples of BCDEdit, see [Boot Configuration Data in Windows Vista](#).

Remote event logging

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
/eventsettings	Sets the global remote event logging parameters.
/event	Enables or disables remote event logging for an operating system entry.

Related topics

[BCDboot](#)

[BCD System Store Settings for UEFI](#)

[BCDEdit Commands for Boot Environment](#)

[4-Gigabyte Tuning: BCDEdit and Boot.ini](#)

[Boot Configuration Data in Windows Vista](#)

Bootsect Command-Line Options

6/6/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Bootsect.exe updates the master boot code for hard disk partitions to switch between Bootmgr and NT Loader (**NTLDR**). You can use this tool to restore the boot sector on your computer. This tool replaces **FixFAT** and **FixNTFS**.

Bootsect Commands

Bootsect uses the following command-line options:

bootsect {/help | /nt52 | /nt60} {SYS | ALL | <DriveLetter:>} [/force] /mbr

For example, to apply the master boot code that is compatible with NTLDR to the volume labeled E, use the following command:

bootsect /nt52 E:

COMMAND-LINE OPTIONS	DESCRIPTION
/help	Displays these usage instructions.
/nt52	Applies the master boot code that is compatible with NTLDR to SYS , ALL , or <DriveLetter>. The operating system installed on SYS , ALL , or <DriveLetter> must be older than Windows Vista.
/nt60	Applies the master boot code that is compatible with Bootmgr to SYS , ALL , or <DriveLetter>. The operating system installed on SYS , ALL , or <DriveLetter> must be Windows 8, Windows® 7, Windows Vista, Windows Server® 2012, Windows Server 2008 R2, or Windows Server 2008.
SYS	Updates the master boot code on the system partition that is used to boot Windows.
ALL	Updates the master boot code on all partitions. The ALL option does not necessarily update the boot code for each volume. Instead, this option updates the boot code on volumes that can be used as Windows boot volumes, which excludes any dynamic volumes that are not connected with an underlying disk partition. This restriction is present because boot code must be located at the beginning of a disk partition.

COMMAND-LINE OPTIONS	DESCRIPTION
<DriveLetter>	<p>Updates the master boot code on the volume associated with this drive letter. Boot code will not be updated if either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <DriveLetter> is not associated with a volume • <DriveLetter> is associated with a volume not connected to an underlying disk partition.
/force	<p>Forcibly dismounts the volumes during the boot code update. You must use this option with caution.</p> <p>If Bootsect.exe cannot gain exclusive volume access, then the file system may overwrite the boot code before the next reboot. Bootsect.exe always attempts to lock and dismount the volume before each update. When /force is specified, a forced dismount is tried if the initial lock attempt fails. A lock can fail, for example, if files on the destination volume are currently opened by other programs.</p> <p>When successful, a forced dismount enables exclusive volume access and a reliable boot code update even though the initial lock failed. At the same time, a forced dismount invalidates all open handles to files on the destination volume. This can cause unexpected behavior from the programs that opened these files. Therefore, use this option with caution.</p>
/mbr	<p>Updates the master boot record without changing the partition table on sector 0 of the disk that contains the partition specified by SYS, ALL, or <drive letter>. When used with the /nt52 option, the master boot record is compatible with operating systems older than Windows Vista. When used with the /nt60 option, the master boot record is compatible with Windows 8, Windows 7, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2012, Windows Server 2008 R2, or Windows Server 2008.</p>

Related topics

[BCDboot Command-Line Options](#)

Oscdimg Command-Line Options

7/13/2017 • 9 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Oscdimg is a command-line tool that you can use to create an image (.iso) file of a customized 32-bit or 64-bit version of Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE). You can then burn the .iso file to a CD or DVD. Oscdimg supports ISO 9660, Joliet, and Universal Disk Format (UDF) file systems.

In this topic:

- [File System Options](#)
- [CD or DVD Boot Options](#)
- [Optimization Options](#)
- [Order Options](#)
- [DVD Video and Audio Options](#)
- [Messaging Options](#)
- [General Image Creation Options](#)
- [Examples](#)

Oscdimg Command-Line Options

The following command-line options are available for Oscdimg.

Oscdimg [<options>] <sourceLocation> <destinationFile>

File System Options

The Oscdimg tool and Microsoft Windows image mastering API (IMAPI) support three file system formats: ISO 9660, Joliet, and UDF.

ISO 9660 Options

ISO 9660 options cannot be combined with Joliet or UDF options. The length of the file name combined with the length of the file name extension cannot exceed 30 characters in the ISO 9660 file system.

The **-d** and **-nt** options cannot be used together.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
-d	Permits lower case file names. Does not force lowercase file names to upper case.
-n	Permits file names longer than DOS 8.3 file names.
-nt	Permits long file names that are compatible with Windows NT 3.51.

Joliet Options

Joliet is an extension of the ISO 9660 file system. Joliet allows longer file names, Unicode characters, and directory depths larger than eight. Joliet options cannot be combined with ISO 9660 options.

The **-j2** Joliet option cannot be used with any UDF options.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
-j1	Permits both file systems to view all the data on the disk. Using this option does not duplicate all files on the image. This option encodes Joliet Unicode file names and generates DOS-compatible 8.3 file names in the ISO 9660 namespace. These file names can be read by either Joliet systems or conventional ISO 9660 systems. However, Oscdimg may change some of the file names in the ISO 9660 namespace to comply with DOS 8.3 and ISO 9660 naming restrictions.
-j2	Encodes Joliet Unicode file names without standard ISO 9660 names. This option is used to produce an image that contains only the Joliet file system. Any system that cannot read Joliet sees only a default text file that alerts the user that this image is only available on computers that support Joliet.
-js	Overrides the default text file that is used when the user specifies the -j2 option. For example:

```
-jsC:\readme.txt
```

UDF Options

UDF options cannot be combined with ISO 9660 options. The **-ue**, **-uf**, and **-us** options only apply when they are used together with the **-u2** option.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
-u1	Produces an image that has both the UDF file system and the ISO 9660 file system. The ISO 9660 file system is written by using DOS-compatible 8.3 file names. The UDF file system is written by using Unicode file names.
-u2	Produces an image that contains only the UDF file system. Any system that cannot read UDF sees only a default text file that alerts the user that this image is only available on computers that support UDF.
-udfver102	Specifies UDF file system version 1.02.
-ue	Creates embedded files.
-uf	Embeds UDF file identifier entries.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
-ur	Overrides the default text file that is used together with the -u2 option. For example: -urC:\Readme.txt
-us	Creates sparse files, when available, to make disk space usage more efficient.
-yl	Specifies long allocation descriptors instead of short allocation descriptors.

CD or DVD Boot Options

Boot options can be used to create bootable CD or DVD images. The following boot options can be used to generate single-boot entries. For more information, see [Use a single boot entry to create a bootable image](#).

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
-b <bootSectorFile>	Specifies the El Torito boot sector file that will be written in the boot sector or sectors of the disk. Do not use spaces. For example: On UEFI: -bC:\winpe_x86\Efisys.bin On BIOS: -bC:\winpe_x86\Etfsboot.com
-e	Disables floppy disk emulation in the El Torito catalog.
-p	Specifies the value to use for the platform ID in the El Torito catalog. The default ID is 0xEF to represent a Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI) system. 0x00 represents a BIOS system.
<sourceLocation>	Required. Specifies the location of the files that you intend to build into an .iso image.
<targetFile>	Specifies the name of the .iso image file.

Important

Single-boot entries and multi-boot entries cannot be combined in the same command.

The following boot options can be used to generate multi-boot entries. For more information, see [Use multi-boot entries to create an image file](#).

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
--------	-------------

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
b <bootSectorFile>	Specifies the El Torito boot sector file that will be written in the boot sector or sectors of the disk. Do not use spaces. For example: On UEFI: <code>bEfi.sys.bin</code> On BIOS: <code>bEtfsboot.com</code>
-bootdata:<number>	Specifies a multi-boot image, followed by the number of boot entries. Do not use spaces. For example: <code>-bootdata:<3>#<defaultBootEntry>#<bootEntry1>#<bootEntryN></code> where <3> is the number of boot entries that follow.
e	Disables floppy disk emulation in the El Torito catalog.
p	Specifies the value to use for the platform ID in the El Torito catalog. The default ID is 0xEF to represent a UEFI system. 0x00 represents a BIOS system.
t	Specifies the El Torito load segment. If not specified, this option defaults to 0x7C0.
<sourceLocation>	Required. Specifies the location of the files that you intend to build into an .iso image.
<targetFile>	Specifies the name of the .iso image file.

Optimization Options

Optimization options can be used to optimize storage by encoding duplicate files only once.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
-o	Uses a MD5 hashing algorithm to compare files.
-oc	Uses a binary comparison of each file, and is slower than the -o option.
-oi	Ignores Diamond compression timestamps when comparing files.

Order Options

Order options specify the file order on disk. The file order does not have to list all files. Any files that do not appear in this file are ordered as they would be ordinarily (that is, if the ordering file did not exist). For more information, see [Specify the boot order](#).

The **-yo** option takes precedence over the **-y5** option.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
-y5	Specifies file layout on disk. This option writes all files in an i386 directory first and in reverse sort order.
-yo <bootOrder.txt>	Specifies a text file that has a layout for the files to be put in the image. Do not use spaces. For example: -yoC:\temp\bootOrder.txt

DVD Video and Audio Options

The DVD video and audio disk creation options cannot be combined with ISO 9660, Joliet, or UDF options.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
-ut	Truncates the ISO 9660 section of the image during DVD video and audio disk creation. When this option is used, only the VIDEO_TS, AUDIO_TS, and JACKET_P directories are visible from the ISO 9660 file system.
-uv	Specifies UDF Video Zone compatibility during DVD video and audio disk creation. During creation, UDF 1.02 and ISO 9660 are written to the disk. All files in the VIDEO_TS, AUDIO_TS, and JACKET_P directories are written first. These directories take precedence over all other ordering rules that are used for this image.

Messaging Options

Messaging options customize how file and directory information appears.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
-a	Displays the allocation summary for files and directories.
-os	Shows duplicate files when the system creates the image.
-w1	Reports all file names or directories that are not ISO-compliant or Joliet-compliant.
-w2	Reports all file names that are not DOS-compliant.
-w3	Reports all zero-length files.
-w4	Reports each file name that is copied to the image.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
-yd	Suppresses warnings for non-identical files that have the same initial 64,000 bytes.

General Image Creation Options

General image creation options can be used together with a single-boot entry option or multi-boot entry options to create bootable CD or DVD images. For more information, see [Boot Options](#) and [Examples](#).

The **-m** and **-maxsize** options cannot be used together.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
-c	Specifies that the system must use ANSI file names instead of OEM file names.
-g	Encodes time values as Universal Coordinated Time (UCT) for all files, instead of the local time.
-h	Includes hidden files and directories in the source path of the image.
-k	Creates an image even if some of the source files cannot be opened.
-l<volumeLabel>	Specifies the volume label. Do not use spaces. For example: -l<volumeLabel>
-m	Ignores the maximum size limit of an image.
-maxsize:<limit>	Overrides the default maximum size of an image. The default value is a 74-minute CD. However, if UDF is used, the default has no maximum size. Do not use spaces. For example: -maxsize:<4096> where <4096> limits the image to 4096 MB.
-q	Scans the source files only. This option does not create an image.
-r	New for Windows 8. Resolves symbolic links to their target location.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION
-t<mm/dd/yyyy,hh:mm:ss>	Specifies the timestamp for all files and directories. Do not use spaces. You can use any delimiter between the items. For example: -t12/31/2000,15:01:00
-y6	Specifies that directory records must be exactly aligned at the end of sectors.
-yw	Opens source files that have write sharing.

Examples

These examples illustrate how to do the following:

- Create a bootable CD or DVD for a UEFI-based computer by using a single-boot entry.
- Create a bootable CD or DVD for a UEFI-based or BIOS-based computer by using a multi-boot entry.
- Specify the boot file order on a disk.

Use a single-boot entry to create a bootable image

You can use the Oscdimg tool to create a bootable CD or DVD by using a single-boot entry.

To use a single-boot entry

- Create an image file for a UEFI-based computer. For example:

```
Oscdimg -bC:\winpe_amd64\Efisys.bin -pEF -u1 -udfver102 C:\winpe_amd64\media
C:\winpe_amd64\winpeamd64.iso
```

where C:\winpe_amd64\media is the location of the source files, and C:\winpe_amd64\winpeamd64.iso is the path of the .iso file.

Use multi-boot entries to create a bootable image

You can use the Oscdimg tool to create a bootable CD or DVD by using multi-boot entries. When you do this, note the following:

- The **bootdata** option must be followed by the number of boot entries in the command (-**bootdata:<number>**).
- Each multi-boot entry must be delimited by using a hash symbol (#).
- Each option for a boot entry must be delimited by using a comma (,).
- Each boot entry must specify the platform ID.

To use multi-boot entries

- Create an image file for either a UEFI-based or BIOS-based computer by using a multi-boot command. For example:

```
Oscdimg -bootdata:2#p0,e,bEtfsboot.com#pEF,e,bEfisys.bin -u1  
-udfver102 C:\winpe_amd64\media C:\winpe_amd64\winpeamd64.iso
```

where this command starts the Etfsboot.com boot file for a BIOS image, and then starts the Efisys.bin boot file for a UEFI image.

Specify the boot order

For images larger than 4.5 GB, you must create a boot order file to make sure that boot files are located at the beginning of the image.

The rules for file ordering are as follows:

- The order file must be in ANSI.
- The order file must end in a new line.
- The order file must have one file per line.
- Each file must be specified relative to the root of the image.
- Each file must be specified as a long file name. No short names are allowed.
- Each file path cannot be longer than MAX_PATH. This includes the volume name.

For example, D:\cdimage would resemble the following (where D is the drive letter of the DVD drive):

- D:\cdimage\1\1.txt
- D:\cdimage\2\2.txt
- D:\cdimage\3\3.txt
- D:\cdimage\3\3_5.txt
- D:\cdimage\<longFileName>.txt

To create a boot order file

- Create a boot order file. For example:

```
Oscdimg -m -n -yoC:\temp\bootOrder.txt  
-bC:\winpe_amd64\Efisys.bin C:\winpe_amd64\winpeamd64.iso
```

where BootOrder.txt contains the following list of files:

```
boot\bcd  
boot\boot.sdi  
boot\bootfix.bin  
boot\bootsect.exe  
boot\etfsboot.com  
boot\memtest.efi  
boot\memtest.exe  
boot\en-us\bootsect.exe.mui  
boot\fonts\chs_boot.ttf  
boot\fonts\cht_boot.ttf  
boot\fonts\jpn_boot.ttf  
boot\fonts\kor_boot.ttf  
boot\fonts\wgl4_boot.ttf  
sources\boot.wim
```

Related topics

[WinPE: Create USB Bootable drive](#)

[Windows Deployment Command-Line Tools Reference](#)

Mobile manufacturing

6/6/2017 • 5 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

After you have completed the steps covered in the other guides to prepare the device, the focus shifts to preparing the device for the final retail configuration.

During this process, you set the final configuration values, remove debug logging, and optimize the OS for shipment. Next, you determine how the OS will be transferred to the device hardware in the manufacturing line.

Manufacturing acronyms

Here are some common acronyms that might come in handy.

ATE	automated test equipment
BER	bit error rate
BIST	built-in self-test
COT	cost of test
CIT Testing	computer interactive testing—semi-automated testing of the device. During this stage, the device is connected to a PC or workstation
DIB	device interface board
DFT	designed for test
DUT	device under test
ESD	electrostatic discharge
EVM	error vector magnitude
FA	final assembly
FQC	final quality check
NIST	National Institute of Standards and Technology

OOBT	out-of-the-box test
PIB	probe interface board
RTC	real-time clock—on-board hardware clock used to track the current time
SCM	subcontract manufacturer
SOC	system on a chip
UPH	units per hour
UUT	unit under test

General manufacturing guidance

The goal for Windows 10 Mobile is that partners are successful in establishing efficient and effective processes that span manufacturing, testing, and servicing. To that end, Microsoft will provide guidance on the tools and process that are used for manufacturing and support of a Windows 10 Mobile device. This guidance describes the tools and techniques that are available to OEMs during the manufacturing process.

- [Manufacturing workflow](#)
- [Example test area by manufacturing phase](#)
- [Using a host computer to reboot a phone to flashing mode and get version information](#)

Manufacturing security requirements

Final retail images must be configured to meet a set of security requirements. To help OEMs ensure that their retail images meet these requirements, Windows 10 Mobile automatically checks for some of these requirements during first boot. Other requirements must be verified by OEMs.

Mobile deployment and imaging

Getting ready to build and test Windows 10 for mobile editions? Here's a lab that walks through building new mobile devices and customizing them to meet your customers' needs.

- [Mobile deployment and imaging](#)

Manufacturing mode of the full operating system

Manufacturing mode is a mode of the full operating system that can be used for manufacturing-related tasks, such as component and support testing.

- [Manufacturing Mode](#)
- [Boot mode management UEFI protocol](#)

Microsoft Manufacturing OS (MMOS)

Microsoft Manufacturing OS (MMOS) is an optimized configuration of the operating system that facilitates efficient manufacturing.

- Microsoft Manufacturing OS
- MMOS image definition
- Flash MMOS to the device
- Develop MMOS test applications
- Manufacturing test environment supported APIs
- Deploy and test a user-mode test application in MMOS
- Working with WIM MMOS images

Flashing tools

You can develop a custom flashing tool to address the life cycle needs of the device

- Flashing tools
- Developing custom OEM flashing tools

Manufacturing workflow

OEMs need to determine the manufacturing process to use to implement MMOS in their manufacturing facilities.

To discuss the manufacturing process, a simplified model of the manufacturing line workflow will be used. Note that each OEM will have a unique process; this simplified model is used as a common reference point.

Simple factory flow



Board tests/SMT – Image is flashed via gang programmer.

Final assembly, Boot – Marry board with plastic; the first time the device is booted on the manufacturing floor.

Manual tests – Line worker runs device tests such as sound, vibration, camera, keyboard, and so on.

RF/Call testing – Automated testing in which the device is tethered to enable power and the recording of test data.

Final provisioning – Automated process where IMEI data is written, customizations are loaded, and labeling is completed.

Final QA/Packaging – Final manual verification of the device, then packaging.

Random sample testing – A specified number of devices are removed from packaging and tested. If failures reach a certain threshold, the entire line may be recalled.

Manufacturing process options

Each manufacturer has different techniques and tooling that they use to manufacture Windows 10 Mobile devices. Two options are described here, but the OEM is encouraged to combine approaches and innovate as needed. The best technical expertise regarding manufacturing resides with those who built the OEM manufacturing line. Select the guidance that works for your manufacturing processes and business.

A summary of two example manufacturing processes is provided here.

Manufacturing process option 1: boot from WIM MMOS image

You can temporarily copy a WIM (Windows Imaging) Microsoft Manufacturing OS (MMOS) image over to a device and then boot to that image that is running in volatile RAM memory. For more information about MMOS, see [Microsoft Manufacturing OS](#).

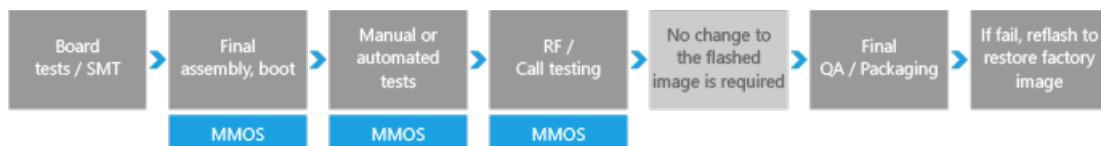
Because the test WIM MMOS image that will never ship is used on the device, this approach enables the provisioning of additional manufacturing tools (transports, extenders). Also, OEMs can use any functional native APIs in the test image. Additional factory test-only drivers or other software can be included in the WIM MMOS image.

One advantage of using this approach is that booting from a WIM Image in RAM is faster than flashing the image.

Simple factory flow



WIM MMOS factory flow



For more info, see [Working with WIM MMOS images](#).

Manufacturing process option 2: reflash the device

This process uses two images: one for factory testing, and a final golden image for the final shipping device. Like the MMOS WIM image, the test image that will never ship is used on the device. This mean that additional manufacturing tools (transports, extenders) can be included and manufacturing only native APIs can be called.

Simple factory flow



Reflash factory flow



This approach makes it possible, if appropriate, to use a different version of the operating system for testing. This

may be a useful interim measure as test applications are being migrated to Windows 10 Mobile.

One tradeoff in this approach is that the manufacturing line must be designed to accommodate the reflashing time that occurs near the end of the manufacturing process.

For more info on working with the flashing tools, see [Flashing tools](#).

Example test area by manufacturing phase

Test area by manufacturing phase is provided only as an example; each manufacturer may wish to sequence the tests differently.

Modem testing (RF / cellular testing)

Modem RF calibration

Wi-Fi RX/TX Power

Bluetooth RX/TX Power

Device testing

Display

Keypad

SIM interface

Storage card

Camera

RTC

Speaker

Microphone

Sensor – ALS

Sensor – Magnetometer

Sensor – Proximity

Sensor – Accelerometer

Handset interface

Power - stand by current

Device provisioning

IMEI

SIM Lock

Bluetooth MAC

Sensors calibration

Security provisioning

MO provisioning

Mobile deployment and imaging

6/6/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Windows 10 Mobile brings the features available in Windows 10 to mobile devices. In addition, on devices that meet the required hardware components, Windows 10 Mobile also adds features like Continuum for Phones, which allows users to connect their Windows phone to a monitor, and even to a mouse and keyboard, to make the phone work like a desktop.

Intended audience

The entirety, or sections, of this walkthrough is intended for use by:

- New or experienced Windows OEMs and ODMs who want to build and deploy a customized Windows 10 Mobile image.
- Mobile operators who want to know the process of building and deploying a customized mobile image.

Overview

This mobile deployment and imaging guide is organized based on the two ways that you can customize, build, and flash a Windows image to a mobile device:

Step 1: Prepare for Windows mobile development provides information about the prerequisites, tools, and how to set up your development environment.

Step 2: Create mobile packages provides step-by-step information on how to create a mobile package using a sample driver and when declaring an MCSF setting by using the MCSF settings schema within a .pkg.xml.

Step 3: Configure the Start layout shows how you can customize the Start layout on mobile devices to include Web links, secondary tiles, folders, and so on. Start layout uses a new unified schema in win_threshold so it doesn't matter if you are using the Start MCSF settings or the Start Windows Provisioning settings to add the layout to your image. Also note that the default layout on mobile devices can only be customized as part of the imaging process.

Step 4: Once you've done all the preparation steps, you're ready to start customizing and building your image. We recommend learning the classic mobile deployment process first because MCSF still provides a more robust set of customizations that OEMs and ODMs can configure for their image. However, Windows Provisioning offers many enterprise policies, enrollment and enterprise settings not available through MCSF so we recommend becoming familiar with the Windows Provisioning deployment process too.

- [Part 1: Classic mobile deployment](#)

Configure customizations that are only available through the Managed Centralized Settings Framework (MCSF) and use the classic Windows mobile command-line tools to build packages and a customized image, and then flash the image to a device.

- [Part 2: Mobile deployment using Windows Provisioning](#)

Use the Windows Provisioning answer file (WPAF) to configure customization settings that are only available through the Windows Provisioning framework. Use the WPAF with an MCSF CAF as inputs to the Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer (ICD) command-line interface to build a customized mobile image.

Prepare for Windows mobile development

6/6/2017 • 7 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Here's what you'll need to start customizing, testing, and deploying Windows on mobile devices.

Step 1: Meet all the prerequisites

Before you can get started on your Windows mobile development, make sure you meet these requirements:

- You have access to the Microsoft Connect site where mobile partners can download the latest mobile OS kits and packages.

If you don't have access or need more information, contact your Microsoft representative.

- A development workstation or technician computer

This PC will run the tools needed during the development process. The PC must be running one of the following operating systems:

- Windows 10 32-bit (x86) or 64-bit (x64)
- Windows 8.1 32-bit (x86) or 64-bit (x64)
- Windows 7 32-bit (x86) or 64-bit (x64)

You must install all Windows critical updates to avoid any issues when using the mobile kits.

- Uninstall earlier versions of the tools and kits

If you are using a different version of the tools and kits other than the ones listed in the *Pairing information* section of the kit release notes, you first need to uninstall all of the programs associated with these components.

- Download the kits and OS packages

Download the latest kits and tools for Windows 10 Mobile from the Microsoft Connect site. See Contents of the mobile build to learn more about the contents of the MobileOS kit for different silicon architectures.

- Reference mobile hardware

This mobile device should represent all the mobile devices in a single model line; for example, the Contoso Windows Phone. For more information about detailed hardware requirements for any device that runs Windows 10 Mobile, see *Section 2.0 - Minimum hardware requirements for Windows 10 Mobile* in [Minimum hardware requirements](#).

- Board support package (BSP) prerequisites

Make sure you have all the necessary BSP files for your reference hardware. A BSP is a set of files and drivers that Windows 10 Mobile uses to communicate with the hardware on the device, to launch the OS, and to create an OS image that can run on your reference hardware. The SoC vendor provides the BSP for your reference hardware.

Step 2: Install the tools and development kits

The following kits and tools are used for Windows mobile development:

- Visual Studio 2015, which is your primary development environment for writing apps and drivers.

- Windows 10 Mobile OS, which is contained in the MobileOS package.
- Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (ADK), which contains the tools you can use for building and customizing your image as well as several other deployment tools that you can use to help you automate a large-scale deployment of Windows.
- Windows Driver Kit (WDK) and Windows 10 Standalone SDK, which you can install separately or install the Enterprise WDK (EWDK), which contains a version of the driver kit and SDK.
- Windows Hardware Lab Kit (HLK), which is a test framework you can use to test hardware devices for Windows.

The following table specifies which development scenarios require each of the kits and tools.

DEVELOPMENT SCENARIO	MOBILEOS KIT	WINDOWS ADK	WINDOWS STANDALONE SDK	WDK	VISUAL STUDIO 2015
Compile code that runs on the mobile device (for example, drivers, services, and apps)	Required	Required	Required	Required	Required
Build packages	Not required	Required	Not required	Not required	Not required
Sign binaries and packages	Not required	Required	Not required	Not required	Not required
Build and customize mobile images on the command line using ImgGen	Required	Not required	Required	Required	Not required
Build and customize mobile images using Windows ICD	Required	Required	Not required	Not required	Not required

To install the kits and tools

1. Follow the instructions for downloading and installing [Visual Studio 2015](#), the [Windows Driver Kit \(WDK\) 10](#), and the [Windows 10 SDK](#).

Note Visual Studio 2015 is only required if you are compiling code that will run on the mobile device, such as drivers and apps.

To confirm that the Windows SDK was properly installed, make sure that the subdirectories listed in the following table exist on your technician PC. Some of these subdirectories may not appear in the kit install directory if you didn't select them from the Windows SDK install wizard.

```
<table>
<colgroup>
<col width="50%" />
<col width="50%" />
</colgroup>
<thead>
<tr class="header">
<th align="left">Windows installation directory tree</th>
<th align="left">Subdirectories within the directory tree</th>
```

```

</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr class="odd">
<td align="left"><p>For a 32-bit OS: <strong>C:\Program Files\Windows Kits\10</strong></p>
<p>For a 64-bit OS: <strong>C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10</strong></p></td>
<td align="left"><ul>
<li><strong>Bin</strong></li>
<li><strong>Catalogs</strong></li>
<li><strong>Debuggers</strong></li>
<li><strong>DesignTime</strong></li>
<li><strong>Include</strong></li>
<li><strong>Lib</strong></li>
<li><strong>Redist</strong></li>
<li><strong>References</strong></li>
<li><strong>Shortcuts</strong></li>
<li><strong>Testing</strong></li>
</ul></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```

To confirm that the WDK was properly installed, make sure that the subdirectories listed in the following table exist on your technician PC.

Windows installation directory tree	Subdirectories within the directory tree
For a 32-bit OS: C:\Program Files\Windows Kits\10 For a 64-bit OS: C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Build BuildLabSupport CodeAnalysis CrossCertificates Debug Help Remote Tools

1. Install the Windows 10 ADK.

Ensure that the **Install Path** is set to the kit install directory, **C:\Program Files\Windows Kits\10** (for a 32-bit OS) or **C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10** (for a 64-bit OS).

In the **Select the features you want to install** page, select the following:

- **Deployment Tools**
- **Windows Preinstallation Environment (Windows PE)**
- **Imaging and Configuration Designer (ICD)**

- Configuration Designer
- User State Migration Tool (USMT)

To confirm that the Windows ADK was properly installed, make sure that the **Assessment and Deployment Kit** appears under your Windows installation directory.

2. Download the latest mobile OS kits and packages from the Microsoft Connect site and copy the contents to a local directory on your development workstation.

The kits and packages contain the files and tools you need to build a Windows 10 Mobile image.

3. Extract the packages and files to the kit install location.

- a. Unzip the MobileOS-arm-fre.zip package.
- b. Open the extracted package and copy all the subfolders and their contents to the kit install directory, **C:\Program Files\Windows Kits\10** (for a 32-bit OS) or **C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10** (for a 64-bit OS). The folders should be: FieldMedic, FMFiles, MSPackages, OEMCustomization, and OEMInputSamples.

4. In the **OEM** folder, double-click **Setup.exe** to install the following mobile components:

- Windows Phone Driver Kit (WPDK)
- Debugger symbols
- Windows Hardware Lab Kit content for phone
- Test Shell (TShell)
- Core OS packages

Step 3: Install other tools

You can install some tools separately from the mobile kit. These tools, which are contained in the IHV_Tools folder, are listed below.

INSTALLER PACKAGE	DESCRIPTION
WP_CPTT_NT-x86-fre.msi	The Windows phone common packaging and test tools.

INSTALLER PACKAGE	DESCRIPTION
WP8KDCConn.msi	<p>The KDBG Connectivity package, which contains the following components:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Virtual Ethernet tool (VirtEth.exe) • Virtual network driver (the Virtual PC 2007 filter, VmNetSrv), which is required for the Virtual Ethernet tool unless Virtual PC 2007 is already installed; the user will be prompted to install two unsigned drivers. • USB serial drivers (usb2ethernet and usbcompcom) • USB debugger drivers (usb2dbg); the user will be prompted to install one signed driver. <p>The virtual network driver is installed in the %ProgramFiles%\Microsoft Virtual PC\Utility\VMNetSrv (or %ProgramFiles(x86)%\Microsoft Virtual PC\Utility\VMNetSrv for a 64-bit OS) directory. The other three components are installed in the %ProgramFiles%\Microsoft Windows Phone 8 KDBG Connectivity (or %ProgramFiles(x86)%\Microsoft Windows Phone 8 KDBG Connectivity for a 64-bit OS) directory tree, with the virtual Ethernet tool in the bin subdirectory, the USB serial drivers in the drivers\Usb2Eth subdirectory, and the USB debugger drivers in the drivers\Usb2Dbg subdirectory.</p>
TShell.msi	<p>The Test Shell, which is a set of command-line tools for use in the bring-up and testing of a mobile device. You can use TShell for tasks such as copying files to the mobile device and to view logs.</p>

Step 4: Set up environment variables

Follow the steps below to set up the environment variables that are required for a working build environment.

To set up a build environment in Visual Studio 2015

1. Open a **Developer Command Prompt for VS2015** window.
2. Set the WPDKCONTENTROOT environment variable to the location of the Windows 10 Mobile kit installation directory.
 - For computers running a 32-bit version of Windows, by default this is %ProgramFiles%\Windows Kits\10.

```
set WPDKCONTENTROOT=%ProgramFiles%\Windows Kits\10
```

- For computers running a 64-bit version of Windows, by default this is %ProgramFiles(x86)%\Windows Kits\10.

```
set WPDKCONTENTROOT=%ProgramFiles(x86)%\Windows Kits\10
```

3. Set the WDKCONTENTROOT environment variable to the location of the WDK kit installation directory.
 - For computers running a 32-bit version of Windows, by default this is %ProgramFiles%\Windows Kits\10.

```
set WDKCONTENTROOT=%ProgramFiles%\Windows Kits\10
```

- For computers running a 64-bit version of Windows, by default this is %ProgramFiles(x86)%\Windows Kits\10.

```
set WDKCONTENTROOT=%ProgramFiles(x86)%\Windows Kits\10
```

4. Add the x86 tools directory for the Windows kits and the Windows kit tools directory to the PATH environment variable.

```
set PATH=%PATH%;%WDKCONTENTROOT%\bin\x86;%WPKCONTENTROOT%\Tools\bin\i386
```

Step 5: Install OEM test certs

To sign binaries and packages, you must install the OEM test certificates.

To install OEM test certs

- After ensuring that WPKCONTENTROOT is set to the path of the kit install location, run InstallOEMCerts.cmd by using the following command:

```
%WPKCONTENTROOT%\tools\bin\i386\InstallOEMCerts.cmd
```

For more information, see [Set up the signing environment](#).

Create mobile packages

7/13/2017 • 10 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

In Windows 10 Mobile, packages make up the building blocks for the OS and they can contain all the files, libraries, registry settings, executables, and data on the mobile device. Every OS component, from device drivers to system files, must be contained in a package.

As an OEM, if you have device-specific drivers or customizations that you want to add to the OS, you need to create a package. This section shows you how to add a fictitious driver and an MCSF customization setting as part of the package.

For more detailed information about mobile packages, including specifying other components and package merging, see [Creating mobile packages](#).

Add a driver component

To learn more about drivers and get started on writing your own, see [Device and Driver Technologies](#).

In this walkthrough, we're downloading the sample echo KMDF driver, converting it to a universal Windows driver, and then using Visual Studio to create a package file.

To add a driver

1. Download the echo universal driver sample.
 - a. Download the master.zip file and save it to your local hard drive:
<https://github.com/microsoft/windows-driver-samples/archive/master.zip>.
 - b. Extract all the contents of the master.zip file. Specify a new folder, such as *C:\DriverSamples*, or browse to an existing one to store the extracted files.
 - c. After the files are extracted, go to the *general\echo\kmdf* subfolder within the folder where you saved the extracted files to find the driver solution for the echo driver sample. For example, if you created a *C:\DriverSamples* folder in the previous step, you can locate the driver solution under *C:\DriverSamples\general\echo\kmdf*.
2. Convert the existing echo driver project to a universal Windows driver project.
 - a. In Visual Studio 2015, open the existing kmdfecho driver project, *kmdfecho.sln*.
 - b. Location the Solution Explorer in Visual Studio. In the Solution Explorer pane, right-click on **Solution 'kmdfecho' (3 projects)** and choose **Configuration Manager**.
 - c. In the **Configuration Manager** window, set the target operating system to **Windows 10**.
 - d. Right-click on the driver project and then choose **Properties**. Under **Configuration Manager > Driver**, verify that the **Target Platform** is set to **Universal**.
- Other choices in **Target Platform** include **Mobile**. You may select this option if you want to build a driver that runs on Windows 10 Mobile only.
3. From Visual Studio 2015, use PkgGen to generate a package file.
 - a. Right-click on the driver project and choose **Add->New Item**.
 - b. Under **Visual C++ > Windows Driver**, choose **Package Manifest**, and then click **Add**.

Visual Studio adds a file called *Package.pkg.xml* to your driver project. You can right-click on the file

and choose **Properties** to verify that the item type is set to **PkgGen**. On the same property page, you can set **Excluded from Build** to **Yes** if you decide later that you want to build this driver project and not generate a package file.

- c. Click **OK**.
- d. Right-click on the driver project and choose **Properties**. Under **Configuration Properties**, open the **PackageGen** node and change the **Version** to a any value that you like. For example, you can set the version to *1.0.0.0*.
- e. Set the package **Owner**, **Component**, and **SubComponent** values.

4. Right-click on the driver project and choose **Properties**. Set the test certificates to one of the OEM test certificates that was installed when you ran `installoemcerts.cmd`.

For example, you can use CN=Windows Phone OEM Root 2013 (TEST ONLY).

5. Save your work and then restart Visual Studio as an administrator.
6. Build your driver. Visual Studio links against the required libraries and generates a .cat file, an .inf file, a driver binary, and an .spkg file.

Once the driver is built, you should see a new folder named *ProjectName.spkg*, which contains the .cab and the .spkg.

We will use the driver .spkg that you built in this walkthrough and combining it with the .spkg from the next walkthrough to build a mobile OS image.

To learn about how to run PkgGen.exe outside of Visual Studio, see the next section on adding a customization setting. Also see the *Run the pkgen.exe tool* section in [Creating mobile packages](#).

Add an MCSF customization setting

In Windows 10 Mobile, there are two supported customization frameworks: Managed Centralized Settings Framework (MCSF) and Windows provisioning. For more information about these frameworks, see [Customizations for mobile devices](#). When it comes to adding a custom OEM customization setting, only MCSF is extendable and available for OEMs to declare their own various mobile OS settings in a simple and consistent way that's similar to the Microsoft customization settings.

To learn how to use MCSF and the package XML schema to declare and access custom OEM settings, see the sections in [Managed Centralized Settings Framework \(MCSF\)](#).

In this walkthrough, we're extending the [Configure Quick actions](#) customization to use the MCSF schema to create a policy setting that exposes the various slots so that they can be easily configured later without having to remember the registry keys and values. To do this, we add the policy settings declarations in a .pkg.xml file and then build this file to create a package.

To add a customization setting

1. Write the MCSF policy setting that corresponds to the following registry key:

```

$(HKLM.SOFTWARE)\Microsoft\Shell\OEM\QuickActions\Slot\X
Type: REG_SZ
Possible values:
    Microsoft.QuickAction.AllSettings
    Microsoft.QuickAction.Connect
    Microsoft.QuickAction.Note
    Microsoft.QuickAction.Flashlight
    Microsoft.QuickAction.RotationLock
    Microsoft.QuickAction.BatterySaver
    Microsoft.QuickAction.Bluetooth
    Microsoft.QuickAction.WiFi
    Microsoft.QuickAction.AirplaneMode
    Microsoft.QuickAction.Vpn
    Microsoft.QuickAction.Cellular
    Microsoft.QuickAction.MobileHotspot
    Microsoft.QuickAction.Camera
    Microsoft.QuickAction.Brightness
    Microsoft.QuickAction.QuietHours
    Microsoft.QuickAction.Location

```

The X in the registry key should be replaced with the slot number being configured (beginning with 1). Slots are ordered right-to-left. There is a maximum of 5 slots on a large screen mobile device while mobile devices without a large screen have 4 slots.

The following code example shows how the MCSF policy settings for the quick actions can be declared:

```

<SettingsGroup Path="Notifications/QuickActions">
    <!-- Default Quick actions configuration -->
    <Setting Name="QuickActionSlot1" Description="App to place in quick action slot 1.">
        <RegistrySource Path="$(hkdm.software)\Microsoft\Shell\OEM\QuickActions\Slot\1" Type="REG_SZ"
Default="Microsoft.QuickAction.AllSettings" />
        <Validate>
            <!-- Shows the available options for the quick action slot -->
            <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.AllSettings" FriendlyName="All settings" />
            <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Connect" FriendlyName="Connect" />
            <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Note" FriendlyName="Note" />
            <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Flashlight" FriendlyName="Flashlight" />
            <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.RotationLock" FriendlyName="Rotation lock" />
            <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.BatterySaver" FriendlyName="Battery saver" />
            <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Bluetooth" FriendlyName="Bluetooth" />
            <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.WiFi" FriendlyName="Wi-Fi" />
            <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.AirplaneMode" FriendlyName="Airplane mode" />
            <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Vpn" FriendlyName="VPN" />
            <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Cellular" FriendlyName="Cellular" />
            <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.MobileHotspot" FriendlyName="Mobile hotspot" />
            <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Camera" FriendlyName="Camera" />
            <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Brightness" FriendlyName="Brightness" />
            <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.QuietHours" FriendlyName="Quiet hours" />
            <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Location" FriendlyName="Location" />
        </Validate>
    </Setting>
    <Setting Name="QuickActionSlot2" Description="App to place in quick action slot 2.">
        <RegistrySource Path="$(hkdm.software)\Microsoft\Shell\OEM\QuickActions\Slot\2" Type="REG_SZ"
Default="Microsoft.QuickAction.RotationLock" />
        <Validate>
            <!-- Shows the available options for the quick action slot -->
            <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.AllSettings" FriendlyName="All settings" />
            <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Connect" FriendlyName="Connect" />
            <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Note" FriendlyName="Note" />
            <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Flashlight" FriendlyName="Flashlight" />
            <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.RotationLock" FriendlyName="Rotation lock" />
            <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.BatterySaver" FriendlyName="Battery saver" />
            <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Bluetooth" FriendlyName="Bluetooth" />
            <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.WiFi" FriendlyName="Wi-Fi" />
            <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.AirplaneMode" FriendlyName="Airplane mode" />

```

```

<Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Vpn" FriendlyName="VPN" />
<Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Cellular" FriendlyName="Cellular" />
<Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.MobileHotspot" FriendlyName="Mobile hotspot" />
<Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Camera" FriendlyName="Camera" />
<Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Brightness" FriendlyName="Brightness" />
<Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.QuietHours" FriendlyName="Quiet hours" />
<Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Location" FriendlyName="Location" />
</Validate>
</Setting>
<Setting Name="QuickActionSlot3" Description="App to place in quick action slot 3.">
  <RegistrySource Path="$(hkml.software)\Microsoft\Shell\OEM\QuickActions\Slot\3" Type="REG_SZ"
Default="Microsoft.QuickAction.Bluetooth" />
  <Validate>
    <!-- Shows the available options for the quick action slot -->
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.AllSettings" FriendlyName="All settings" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Connect" FriendlyName="Connect" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Note" FriendlyName="Note" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Flashlight" FriendlyName="Flashlight" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.RotationLock" FriendlyName="Rotation lock" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.BatterySaver" FriendlyName="Battery saver" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Bluetooth" FriendlyName="Bluetooth" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.WiFi" FriendlyName="Wi-Fi" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.AirplaneMode" FriendlyName="Airplane mode" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Vpn" FriendlyName="VPN" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Cellular" FriendlyName="Cellular" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.MobileHotspot" FriendlyName="Mobile hotspot" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Camera" FriendlyName="Camera" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Brightness" FriendlyName="Brightness" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.QuietHours" FriendlyName="Quiet hours" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Location" FriendlyName="Location" />
  </Validate>
</Setting>
<Setting Name="QuickActionSlot4" Description="App to place in quick action slot 4.">
  <RegistrySource Path="$(hkml.software)\Microsoft\Shell\OEM\QuickActions\Slot\4" Type="REG_SZ"
Default="Microsoft.QuickAction.WiFi" />
  <Validate>
    <!-- Shows the available options for the quick action slot -->
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.AllSettings" FriendlyName="All settings" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Connect" FriendlyName="Connect" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Note" FriendlyName="Note" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Flashlight" FriendlyName="Flashlight" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.RotationLock" FriendlyName="Rotation lock" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.BatterySaver" FriendlyName="Battery saver" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Bluetooth" FriendlyName="Bluetooth" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.WiFi" FriendlyName="Wi-Fi" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.AirplaneMode" FriendlyName="Airplane mode" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Vpn" FriendlyName="VPN" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Cellular" FriendlyName="Cellular" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.MobileHotspot" FriendlyName="Mobile hotspot" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Camera" FriendlyName="Camera" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Brightness" FriendlyName="Brightness" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.QuietHours" FriendlyName="Quiet hours" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Location" FriendlyName="Location" />
  </Validate>
</Setting>
<Setting Name="QuickActionSlot5" Description="App to place in quick action slot 5.">
  <RegistrySource Path="$(hkml.software)\Microsoft\Shell\OEM\QuickActions\Slot\5" Type="REG_SZ"
Default="Microsoft.QuickAction.Camera" />
  <Validate>
    <!-- Shows the available options for the quick action slot -->
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.AllSettings" FriendlyName="All settings" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Connect" FriendlyName="Connect" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Note" FriendlyName="Note" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Flashlight" FriendlyName="Flashlight" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.RotationLock" FriendlyName="Rotation lock" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.BatterySaver" FriendlyName="Battery saver" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Bluetooth" FriendlyName="Bluetooth" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.WiFi" FriendlyName="Wi-Fi" />
    <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.AirplaneMode" FriendlyName="Airplane mode" />

```

```

<Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Vpn" FriendlyName="VPN" />
<Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Cellular" FriendlyName="Cellular" />
<Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.MobileHotspot" FriendlyName="Mobile hotspot" />
<Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Camera" FriendlyName="Camera" />
<Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Brightness" FriendlyName="Brightness" />
<Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.QuietHours" FriendlyName="Quiet hours" />
<Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Location" FriendlyName="Location" />
</Validate>
</Setting>
</SettingsGroup>

```

2. Create a .pkg.xml file and add the policy settings in the previous step to the .pkg.xml file. The following example shows how to do this.

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8">
<Package xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  Owner=""
  Component=""
  SubComponent=""
  OwnerType="OEM"
  ReleaseType="">
  <Components>
    <SettingsGroup Path="Notifications/QuickActions">
      <!-- Default Quick actions configuration -->
      <Setting Name="QuickActionSlot1" Description="App to place in quick action slot 1.">
        <RegistrySource Path="$(hklm.software)\Microsoft\Shell\OEM\QuickActions\Slot\1" Type="REG_SZ"
Default="Microsoft.QuickAction.AllSettings" />
        <Validate>
          <!-- Shows the available options for the quick action slot -->
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.AllSettings" FriendlyName="All settings" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Connect" FriendlyName="Connect" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Note" FriendlyName="Note" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Flashlight" FriendlyName="Flashlight" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.RotationLock" FriendlyName="Rotation lock" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.BatterySaver" FriendlyName="Battery saver" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Bluetooth" FriendlyName="Bluetooth" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.WiFi" FriendlyName="Wi-Fi" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.AirplaneMode" FriendlyName="Airplane mode" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Vpn" FriendlyName="VPN" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Cellular" FriendlyName="Cellular" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.MobileHotspot" FriendlyName="Mobile hotspot" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Camera" FriendlyName="Camera" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Brightness" FriendlyName="Brightness" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.QuietHours" FriendlyName="Quiet hours" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Location" FriendlyName="Location" />
        </Validate>
      </Setting>
      <Setting Name="QuickActionSlot2" Description="App to place in quick action slot 2.">
        <RegistrySource Path="$(hklm.software)\Microsoft\Shell\OEM\QuickActions\Slot\2" Type="REG_SZ"
Default="Microsoft.QuickAction.RotationLock" />
        <Validate>
          <!-- Shows the available options for the quick action slot -->
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.AllSettings" FriendlyName="All settings" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Connect" FriendlyName="Connect" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Note" FriendlyName="Note" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Flashlight" FriendlyName="Flashlight" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.RotationLock" FriendlyName="Rotation lock" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.BatterySaver" FriendlyName="Battery saver" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Bluetooth" FriendlyName="Bluetooth" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.WiFi" FriendlyName="Wi-Fi" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.AirplaneMode" FriendlyName="Airplane mode" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Vpn" FriendlyName="VPN" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Cellular" FriendlyName="Cellular" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.MobileHotspot" FriendlyName="Mobile hotspot" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Camera" FriendlyName="Camera" />
          <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Brightness" FriendlyName="Brightness" />
        </Validate>
      </Setting>
    </SettingsGroup>
  </Components>
</Package>

```

```

        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.QuietHours" FriendlyName="Quiet hours" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Location" FriendlyName="Location" />
    </Validate>
</Setting>
<Setting Name="QuickActionSlot3" Description="App to place in quick action slot 3.">
    <RegistrySource Path="$(hkml.software)\Microsoft\Shell\OEM\QuickActions\Slot\3" Type="REG_SZ"
Default="Microsoft.QuickAction.Bluetooth" />
    <Validate>
        <!-- Shows the available options for the quick action slot -->
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.AllSettings" FriendlyName="All settings" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Connect" FriendlyName="Connect" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Note" FriendlyName="Note" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Flashlight" FriendlyName="Flashlight" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.RotationLock" FriendlyName="Rotation lock" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.BatterySaver" FriendlyName="Battery saver" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Bluetooth" FriendlyName="Bluetooth" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.WiFi" FriendlyName="Wi-Fi" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.AirplaneMode" FriendlyName="Airplane mode" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Vpn" FriendlyName="VPN" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Cellular" FriendlyName="Cellular" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.MobileHotspot" FriendlyName="Mobile hotspot" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Camera" FriendlyName="Camera" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Brightness" FriendlyName="Brightness" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.QuietHours" FriendlyName="Quiet hours" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Location" FriendlyName="Location" />
    </Validate>
</Setting>
<Setting Name="QuickActionSlot4" Description="App to place in quick action slot 4.">
    <RegistrySource Path="$(hkml.software)\Microsoft\Shell\OEM\QuickActions\Slot\4" Type="REG_SZ"
Default="Microsoft.QuickAction.WiFi" />
    <Validate>
        <!-- Shows the available options for the quick action slot -->
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.AllSettings" FriendlyName="All settings" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Connect" FriendlyName="Connect" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Note" FriendlyName="Note" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Flashlight" FriendlyName="Flashlight" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.RotationLock" FriendlyName="Rotation lock" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.BatterySaver" FriendlyName="Battery saver" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Bluetooth" FriendlyName="Bluetooth" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.WiFi" FriendlyName="Wi-Fi" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.AirplaneMode" FriendlyName="Airplane mode" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Vpn" FriendlyName="VPN" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Cellular" FriendlyName="Cellular" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.MobileHotspot" FriendlyName="Mobile hotspot" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Camera" FriendlyName="Camera" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Brightness" FriendlyName="Brightness" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.QuietHours" FriendlyName="Quiet hours" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Location" FriendlyName="Location" />
    </Validate>
</Setting>
<Setting Name="QuickActionSlot5" Description="App to place in quick action slot 5.">
    <RegistrySource Path="$(hkml.software)\Microsoft\Shell\OEM\QuickActions\Slot\5" Type="REG_SZ"
Default="Microsoft.QuickAction.Camera" />
    <Validate>
        <!-- Shows the available options for the quick action slot -->
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.AllSettings" FriendlyName="All settings" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Connect" FriendlyName="Connect" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Note" FriendlyName="Note" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Flashlight" FriendlyName="Flashlight" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.RotationLock" FriendlyName="Rotation lock" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.BatterySaver" FriendlyName="Battery saver" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Bluetooth" FriendlyName="Bluetooth" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.WiFi" FriendlyName="Wi-Fi" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.AirplaneMode" FriendlyName="Airplane mode" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Vpn" FriendlyName="VPN" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Cellular" FriendlyName="Cellular" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.MobileHotspot" FriendlyName="Mobile hotspot" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Camera" FriendlyName="Camera" />
        <Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Brightness" FriendlyName="Brightness" />

```

```
<Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.QuietHours" FriendlyName="Quiet hours" />
<Option Value="Microsoft.QuickAction.Location" FriendlyName="Location" />
</Validate>
</Setting>
</SettingsGroup>
</Components>
</Package>
```

3. Add values for the **Owner**, **Component**, **SubComponent**, and **ReleaseType** elements. For example:

- **Owner**= "Contoso"
- **Component**= "Customization.Notifications"
- **SubComponent**= "QuickActions"
- **ReleaseType**= "Test"

To learn more about the elements and attributes, see [Primary elements and attributes of a package project file](#).

4. Name and save the .pkg.xml file as "QuickActions.pkg.xml".

5. Generate a package, or .spkg file, using the "QuickActions.pkg.xml" as input. For more information, see *Run the pkggen.exe tool* in [Creating mobile packages](#).

To generate a package using QuickActions.pkg.xml

- a. Open a command line with administrator privileges.
- b. Enter the following command to build a package from QuickActions.pkg.xml.

```
PkgGen QuickActions.pkg.xml
/config:"%WPKCONTENTROOT%\Tools\bin\i386\pkggen.cfg.xml"
```

This command will generate a package called Customization.Notifications.QuickActions.spkg. In the next section, we will use this package and add it to a feature manifest file.

Configure the Start layout

6/6/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can now easily configure the default Start layout to include Web links, secondary tiles, folders, and apps. The converged Windows 10 Start layout requires that you create a LayoutModification.xml file, which we'll create in this walkthrough.

Note The schema for the LayoutModification.xml file is different from the MCSF customization answer file schema or the Windows provisioning answer file schema. You will need to use the LayoutModification.xml to fully take advantage of the Start customization in Windows 10 and you can use the Start settings in either MCSF or Windows Provisioning to reference LayoutModification.xml.

If you are not new to Windows mobile development and were using pre-existing MCSF settings pertaining to the Start layout, we highly recommend that you switch to a LayoutModification.xml to take full advantage of the Start experience. Also note that not all pre-existing MCSF Start settings are supported in Windows 10.

In this walkthrough, we will:

- Create two versions of the Start layout, one with a folder and another without a folder.
- Configure the MCSF Start layout settings to specify that we are using the new layout modification XML for our layout, creating variants in the CAF file, and specifying which Start layout applies to the variants we've created.

Note Make sure you've read [Start layout for Windows 10 mobile editions](#) before doing this walkthrough. The topic provides more detailed information about each element in LayoutModification.xml, which is not covered in this walkthrough, as well as limitations and restrictions that you need to be aware of.

To configure the Start layout modification file

1. Create a file called LayoutModification1.xml.
2. Add the XML code to:
 - Pin a medium-sized tile on row 6, column 0. The tile is for the MSN News app.
 - Pin a medium-sized tile on row 6, column 2. The tile is a Web link for the Contoso home page.
 - Pin a small-sized folder on row 6, column 4. The folder name is "Contoso apps" and it contains the following:
 - A medium-sized tile for the MSN Apps app.
 - A medium-sized tile for the MSN Money app.

The following XML example shows what you need to add to the LayoutModification.xml file.

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<LayoutModificationTemplate
    xmlns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/Start/2014/LayoutModification"
    xmlns:defaultlayout="http://schemas.microsoft.com/Start/2014/FullDefaultLayout"
    xmlns:start="http://schemas.microsoft.com/Start/2014/StartLayout"
    Version="1">
    <DefaultLayoutOverride>
        <StartLayoutCollection>
            <defaultlayout:StartLayout>
                <start:Group>
                    <start:Tile
                        AppUserModelID="Microsoft.BingNews_8wekyb3d8bbwe!ApplicationID"
                        Size="2x2"
                        Row="6"
                        Column="0"/>
                    <start:SecondaryTile
                        AppUserModelID="Microsoft.MicrosoftEdge_8wekyb3d8bbwe!MicrosoftEdge"
                        TileID="MyWeblinkTile"
                        Arguments="http://www.contoso.com"
                        DisplayName="Contoso Homepage"
                        Square150x150LogoUri="ms-appx:///Assets/MicrosoftEdgeSquare150x150.png"
                        Wide310x150LogoUri="ms-appx:///Assets/MicrosoftEdgeWide310x150.png"
                        ShowNameOnSquare150x150Logo="true"
                        ShowNameOnWide310x150Logo="false"
                        BackgroundColor="#FF112233"
                        Size="2x2"
                        Row="6"
                        Column="2"/>
                    <start:Folder
                        Name="Contoso apps"
                        Size="2x2"
                        Row="6"
                        Column="4">
                        <start:Tile
                            AppUserModelID="Microsoft.BingMaps_8wekyb3d8bbwe!ApplicationID"
                            Size="2x2"
                            Row="0"
                            Column="0"/>
                        <start:Tile
                            AppUserModelID="Microsoft.BingFinance_8wekyb3d8bbwe!ApplicationID"
                            Size="2x2"
                            Row="0"
                            Column="2"/>
                    <!-- Remove these comments if you have an app that you can preload and want to add
                    to the folder
                        <start:Tile
                            AppUserModelID="TBD"
                            Size="2x2"
                            Row="0"
                            Column="4"/>
                    -->
                    </start:Folder>
                </start:Group>
            </defaultlayout:StartLayout>
        </StartLayoutCollection>
    </DefaultLayoutOverride>
</LayoutModificationTemplate>

```

3. Save the xml file and note the location of the file; for example,
C:\Contoso\Customizations\LayoutModification1.xml.
4. Using the same xml file, now save it as *LayoutModification2.xml*.
5. Modify the contents of the new *LayoutModification2.xml* file by deleting everything within the **start:Folder** element and replacing that folder tile location with the MSN Money app.

The contents of your XML file should look like this:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<LayoutModificationTemplate
    xmlns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/Start/2014/LayoutModification"
    xmlns:defaultlayout="http://schemas.microsoft.com/Start/2014/FullDefaultLayout"
    xmlns:start="http://schemas.microsoft.com/Start/2014/StartLayout"
    Version="1">
    <DefaultLayoutOverride>
        <StartLayoutCollection>
            <defaultlayout:StartLayout>
                <start:Group>
                    <start:Tile
                        AppUserModelID="Microsoft.BingNews_8wekyb3d8bbwe!ApplicationID"
                        Size="2x2"
                        Row="6"
                        Column="0"/>
                    <start:SecondaryTile
                        AppUserModelID="Microsoft.MicrosoftEdge_8wekyb3d8bbwe!MicrosoftEdge"
                        TileID="MyWeblinkTile"
                        Arguments="http://www.contoso.com"
                        DisplayName="Contoso Homepage"
                        Square150x150LogoUri="ms-appx:///Assets/MicrosoftEdgeSquare150x150.png"
                        Wide310x150LogoUri="ms-appx:///Assets/MicrosoftEdgeWide310x150.png"
                        ShowNameOnSquare150x150Logo="true"
                        ShowNameOnWide310x150Logo="false"
                        BackgroundColor="#FF112233"
                        Size="2x2"
                        Row="6"
                        Column="2"/>
                    <start:Tile
                        AppUserModelID="Microsoft.BingFinance_8wekyb3d8bbwe!ApplicationID"
                        Size="2x2"
                        Row="6"
                        Column="4"/>
                </start:Group>
            </defaultlayout:StartLayout>
        </StartLayoutCollection>
    </DefaultLayoutOverride>
</LayoutModificationTemplate>
```

6. Save the xml file and note the location of the file; for example,
C:\Contoso\Customizations\LayoutModification2.xml.
7. Add the layout modification files and configure the Start layout settings in the MCSF CAF or Windows Provisioning answer file (WPAF).
 - For MCSF: See *Configure the Start layout* in [Configure customization settings](#).
 - For Windows Provisioning: If you are using the Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer (ICD) UI, see *Configure the Start layout* in [Use the Windows ICD UI to customize and build a mobile image](#). If you are using the Windows ICD CLI (hybrid method), see *Configure the Start layout* in [Use the Windows ICD CLI to customize and build a mobile image](#).

Part 1: Classic mobile deployment

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

In this section, we'll go through the process of customizing and building a mobile image using the classic, or Windows Phone 8.1, tools.

- [Configure customization settings](#)
- [Add a package to an OEM manifest file](#)
- [Configure the OEMInput file](#)
- [Build a mobile image using ImgGen](#)
- [Sign a mobile image](#)
- [Flash an image to a mobile device](#)

Configure customization settings

6/6/2017 • 13 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Customizations are ways that you can modify the Windows device UI, connectivity settings, and user experience to better reflect your brand and to meet the requirements of the network and market in which the device will ship. Customizations can include adding apps, modifying the Start layout, configuring network settings using device management, changing the default values in the Settings screen, or adding new wallpapers.

Windows 10 Mobile supports two customization frameworks: MCSF and Windows provisioning. For more information about each framework, see [Customizations for mobile devices](#).

In this section, we'll focus on adding the Start layout modification file, preloading an app, and configuring some customization settings using MCSF.

For more detailed information about the various customizations you can do, see <https://msdn.microsoft.com/library/windows/hardware/dn757433>.

Create an MCSF customization answer file

You can use the MCSF [customization answer file](#) (CAF) to specify the settings and variants that you want to configure for a custom mobile OS image. Depending on the tools that you're using to build your image, you can use the MCSF CAF as input to ImgGen.cmd or the Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer (ICD) CLI. This answer file is based on the MCSF schema so if you decide to use another schema, such as the Windows provisioning schema, you need to write a different answer file that follows that schema instead.

If you don't have a pre-existing MCSF CAF, follow this walkthrough to learn how to create a basic MCSF CAF with multivariant support. Multivariant is the generic mechanism that lets you create a single image that can work for multiple markets by dynamically configuring the language, branding, apps, and networking settings during runtime based on the supported conditions, such as mobile operator and locale. If you are building a single variant image, you may skip this walkthrough.

To create the MCSF CAF with multivariant support

1. Create an XML file and add the following content.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" ?>
<ImageCustomizations xmlns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/embedded/2004/10/ImageUpdate"
    Name=""
    Description="Use to configure settings for custom mobile image."
    Owner=""
    OwnerType="OEM">

    <!-- Use to set up targets and conditions for the variants -->
    <Targets>
        <Target Id="">
            <TargetState>
                <Condition Name="" Value="" />
                <Condition Name="" Value="" />
            </TargetState>
        </Target>
        <Target Id="">
            <TargetState>
                <Condition Name="" Value="" />
                <Condition Name="" Value="" />
            </TargetState>
        </Target>
    </Targets>
</ImageCustomizations>
```

```

</!targets>

<!-- Use to specify the customizations for a single variant when used without the Variant element,
     or customizations that apply to all variants when used with the Variant element -->
<Static>
    <!-- Use to preload apps to install for all variants -->
    <Applications>
        <Application Source="" 
                      License="" 
                      ProvXML="" />
    </Applications>

    <!-- Section where you specify the settings you want to configure -->
    <Settings Path="">
        <Setting Name="" Value="" />
    </Settings>
</Static>

<!-- These settings in the Variant groups will only be applied if the associated target's
conditions are met. -->
<!-- The settings shown here will only be applied for this variant -->
<Variant Name="">
    <!-- Only one TargetRef can be used for each variant -->
    <TargetRefs>
        <TargetRef Id="" />
    </TargetRefs>

    <Settings Path="">
        <Setting Name="" Value="" />
    </Settings>

    <Settings Path="">
        <Setting Name="" Value="" />
    </Settings>
</Variant>

<!-- The settings shown here will only be applied for this variant -->
<Variant Name="">
    <!-- Only one TargetRef can be used for each variant -->
    <TargetRefs>
        <TargetRef Id="" />
    </TargetRefs>

    <Settings Path="">
        <Setting Name="" Value="" />
    </Settings>

    <Settings Path="">
        <Setting Name="" Value="" />
    </Settings>
</Variant>

</ImageCustomizations>

```

2. Specify the values for the following attributes, which determines the owner for the customizations:

- **Name** - A string that specifies the name of the customization or package. You can specify the name based on the device you're configures, such as "XDeviceCustomizations", or a generic name like "MobileCustomizations".
- **Description** - A string to help you identify the customizations defined within the CAF.
- **Owner** - A string specifying the owner, such as the OEM name.
- **OwnerType** - Set this to "OEM".

3. Specify the **Targets** to use for the variants. **Targets** describe keying for a variant and must be described or pre-declared before being referenced by the variant. To do this:

To set up a Target

- a. Name the **Target Id**.
- b. Specify the **Condition(s)** for the target by providing the **Name** and **Value**.

For example, if we creating variants for two fictitious mobile operators, The Phone Company and Fabrikam, and we have their MCC and MNC, we can create a target for each operator using the MCC and MNC.

```
<!-- Use to set up targets and conditions for the variants -->
<Targets>
  <Target Id="Id_PhoneCo">
    <TargetState>
      <Condition Name="MCC" Value="410" />
      <Condition Name="MNC" Value="510" />
    </TargetState>
  </Target>
  <Target Id="Id_Fabrikam">
    <TargetState>
      <Condition Name="MCC" Value="310" />
      <Condition Name="MNC" Value="610" />
    </TargetState>
  </Target>
</Targets>
```

To learn more about all the supported **Condition Names** that you can use, see the section *Target, TargetState, Condition, and priorities* in [Create a provisioning package with multivariant settings](#). Note that in this walkthrough we are not using a provisioning package to declare our multivariant settings; instead, we are adding this directly into the MCSF CAF.

4. Set up the variant. To do this:

To define a Variant

- a. Specify the **Variant Name**.
- b. Specify the **TargetRef Id** for the variant. This should match one of the **Target Ids** you specified in the **Targets** section of the CAF. Note that there should only be one **TargetRef Id** per variant.

Using our fictitious mobile operators, The Phone Company and Fabrikam, we can define the variants for each of these operators as shown in the following example:

```

<!-- The settings shown here will only be applied for The Phone Company -->
<Variant Name="ThePhoneCompany">
  <TargetRefs>
    <TargetRef Id="Id_PhoneCo" />
  </TargetRefs>

  <Settings Path="">
    <Setting Name="" Value="" />
  </Settings>

  <Settings Path="">
    <Setting Name="" Value="" />
  </Settings>
</Variant>

<!-- The settings shown here will only be applied for Fabrikam -->
<Variant Name="Fabrikam">
  <TargetRefs>
    <TargetRef Id="Id_Fabrikam" />
  </TargetRefs>

  <Settings Path="">
    <Setting Name="" Value="" />
  </Settings>

  <Settings Path="">
    <Setting Name="" Value="" />
  </Settings>
</Variant>

```

5. Name and save the XML file; for example, C:\Contoso\Customizations\MobileCustomizations.xml.

We'll add the static (common or variant-agnostic) and variant-specific customization settings and values in the next walkthroughs.

Configure the Start layout

In this section, we'll use the Start MCSF settings to add the Start layout modification files that you created in [Configure the Start layout](#). We'll use one of the layout modification files as the common Start layout and we'll use the other layout modification file for one of the fictitious mobile operator variants.

1. Create and edit the MCSF CAF; for example, C:\Contoso\Customizations\MobileCustomizations.xml.
2. Set C:\Contoso\Customizations\LayoutModification1.xml as the common Start layout.

Within the **Static** section of the CAF, set `LayoutModificationFilePath` to the file path to the layout modification file.

```

<Static>
  <!-- Use to preload apps to install for all variants -->
  <Applications>
    <Application Source=""
      License=""
      ProvXML="" />
  </Applications>

  <!-- Section where you specify the settings you want to configure -->
  <Settings Path="StartLayoutModificationFilePath">
    <Setting Name="LayoutModificationFilePath"
Value="C:\Contoso\Customizations\LayoutModification1.xml" />
  </Settings>
</Static>

```

By specifying a new default location for the LayoutModification.xml, you are overriding the default Start layout that's in C:\Data\ProgramData\Microsoft\Start\Layouts.

3. Set C:\Contoso\Customizations\LayoutModification2.xml as the default Start layout for the fictitious mobile operator, The Phone Company.

In the **Variant** section named ThePhoneCompany, set `LayoutModificationFilePath` to the file path for the second layout modification file.

```
<!-- The settings shown here will only be applied for The Phone Company -->
<Variant Name="ThePhoneCompany">
  <TargetRefs>
    <TargetRef Id="Id_PhoneCo" />
  </TargetRefs>

  <Settings Path="StartLayoutModificationFilePath">
    <Setting Name="LayoutModificationFilePath"
      Value="C:\Contoso\Customizations\LayoutModification2.xml" />
  </Settings>
</Variant>
```

Note `LayoutModificationFilePath` is a FirstVariationOnly setting, which means that it can only be modified during first variation, which is typically when the first valid configuration is found (such as when a SIM is inserted and a marked configuration is found for the SIM). If the configuration changes, such as during a SIM swap, the value for the FirstVariationOnly setting will not be changed again.

In this example, when the device boots after flashing a new mobile image and there is no SIM is inserted into the mobile device or a SIM for the fictitious Fabrikam mobile operator (MCC=310, MNC=610) is already in the device, LayoutModification1.xml (Start layout with a folder) will be used. If a SIM for the fictitious The Phone Company (MCC=410, MNC=510) is inserted after this, the Start layout will not change. However, if the device boots after flashing a new mobile image and there is already a SIM for The Phone Company inserted in the device, LayoutModification2.xml (Start layout with no folder) will be used instead.

Preload apps

Partners can preload apps to be packaged and configured to install on mobile devices during the initial device setup process. In addition to preloading games, lifestyle apps, and other genres of apps, partners can preload system settings apps or partner account setup apps, just to name a few. For more information about preloading apps, see [Preinstallable apps for mobile devices](#).

Important In Windows 10, if you are working with an app developer or creating your own app to preload on the device, you must now request a preinstallation package for the app. For more information about this part of the process, see [Generate preinstall packages for OEMs](#). The .zip file that's returned as part of this process should contain the app's source file (such as an .appx, .appxbundle, or .xap), a provisioning file (.provxml), and a license file (.xml). If your preinstall package does not contain all of these files, you can't successfully preload the app.

To preload an app

1. Verify that the app preinstall package contains all the files you need to preload an app: source file, provisioning file, and license file.
2. Add the app to the image. To do this, follow these steps:
 - a. Add an **Applications** section to the CAF.

```

<!-- Use to preload apps to install for all variants -->
<Applications>
    <Application Source="" 
        License="" 
        ProvXML="" />
</Applications>

```

Note You can add the **Applications** section within the **Static** section of the CAF, which means the app will be installed for all images regardless of the variant, or you can add it within a particular **Variant**, which means it will only be installed for a particular variant. If you are preloading more than one app, one can be common to all variants (or within the **Static** section), while another applies only to a particular variant (or within a **Variant** section). An example of the latter case can be when you have an app that you only need to install for one particular mobile operator, or country/region, and so on.

- b. Set **Source** to the location and name of your app source file; for example,
`C:\Contoso\Customizations\Apps\SampleApp.appx`.
- c. Set **License** to the location and name of your app's license file; for example,
`C:\Contoso\Customizations\Apps\SampleAppLicense.xml`.
- d. Set **ProvXML** to the location and name of your app's provisioning file; for example,
`C:\Contoso\Customizations\Apps\mpap_sampleapp_001.provxml`.

The provXML file follows a prescribed naming convention. See [Preinstallable apps for mobile devices](#) for more information.

3. Save the CAF when you are done adding all the apps.

In some cases, you may need to preload an app that has dependencies on other packages or components. In this case, you need to make sure that the other packages or components are preinstalled first before your app. If the dependent packages or components are not installed first, your app preload will fail. We won't walk through this scenario here, but you can find this documented in [Preload an app with a dependency](#).

Configure the DeviceTargetingInfo metadata for the device

In order to ship a mobile device, at a minimum, you must set the required settings described in [Phone metadata in DeviceTargetingInfo](#). Examples of required metadata include:

- OEM and mobile operator information, used for display strings in the UI, device update, connecting to the Windows Store, and so on.
- Hardware component versions and software versions, used for targeting updates to devices and for user support.
- The device's model name, the mobile operator's name, and the manufacturer's name, which appear in the **About** screen in **Settings**.

To configure the DeviceTargetingInfo metadata

1. Edit the MCSF CAF; for example, `C:\Contoso\Customizations\MobileCustomizations.xml`.
2. Within the **Static** section of the CAF, add a `DeviceInfo/Static` settings group.

```

<Static>
    <!-- Other settings groups may already precede the DeviceInfo/Static group -->

    <Settings Path="DeviceInfo/Static">
        <Setting Name="PhoneManufacturer" Value="" />
        <Setting Name="PhoneManufacturerDisplayName" Value="" />
        <Setting Name="PhoneROMVersion" Value="" />
        <Setting Name="PhoneHardwareRevision" Value="" />
        <Setting Name="PhoneSOCVersion" Value="" />
        <Setting Name="PhoneFirmwareRevision" Value="" />
        <Setting Name="PhoneRadioHardwareRevision" Value="" />
        <Setting Name="PhoneRadioSoftwareRevision" Value="" />
        <Setting Name="PhoneBootLoaderVersion" Value="" />
        <Setting Name="PhoneROMLanguage" Value="" />
        <Setting Name="PhoneHardwareVariant" Value="" />
    </Settings>

</Static>

```

These settings are image-time only and will be put directly into the registry hive. Note that some settings in the `DeviceInfo/Static` group are optional so you may choose not to specify any values for them or remove them from the CAF. The following table summarizes which settings are required, optional, and which ones come from the silicon vendor.

REQUIRED SETTING	OPTIONAL SETTING	SOC VENDOR SETTING
PhoneManufacturer	PhoneManufacturerDisplayName	PhoneROMVersion
PhoneFirmwareRevision	PhoneRadioHardwareRevision	PhoneHardwareRevision
PhoneROMLanguage		PhoneSOCVersion
PhoneHardwareVariant		PhoneRadioSoftwareRevision PhoneBootLoaderVersion

****Note**** You will need to contact your Microsoft representative to find out the value that you should use for `PhoneManufacturer`.

1. Within the **Variant** section of the CAF, add a `DeviceInfo/Variant` settings group.

Using our example, we'll add the settings within the variant section for ThePhoneCompany

```

<!-- The settings shown here will only be applied for The Phone Company -->
<Variant Name="ThePhoneCompany">
  <TargetRefs>
    <TargetRef Id="Id_PhoneCo" />
  </TargetRefs>

  <!-- Other settings with the Variant section not included here for simplicity -->

  <Settings Path="DeviceInfo/Variant">
    <Setting Name="PhoneMobileOperatorName" Value="" />
    <Setting Name="PhoneManufacturerModelName" Value="" />
    <Setting Name="PhoneMobileOperatorDisplayName" Value="" />
    <Setting Name="PhoneSupportPhoneNumber" Value="" />
    <Setting Name="PhoneSupportLink" Value="" />
    <Setting Name="PhoneOEMSupportLink" Value="" />
    <Setting Name="PhonemodelName" Value="" />
    <Setting Name="RoamingSupportPhoneNumber" Value="" />
  </Settings>
</Variant>
```

These settings are first variation only and can be configured at runtime, so potentially may be based on the SIM value. Note that some settings in the `DeviceInfo/Variant` group are optional so you may choose not to specify values for them or remove them from the CAF. The following table summarizes which settings are required, optional, and which ones come from the silicon vendor.

REQUIRED SETTING	OPTIONAL SETTING
PhoneMobileOperatorName	PhoneMobileOperatorDisplayName
PhoneManufacturerModelName	PhoneSupportPhoneNumber
PhonemodelName	PhoneSupportLink PhoneOEMSupportLink PhoneRoamingSupportPhoneNumber

- Save the CAF when you are done adding all the values for the required settings or any optional settings you choose to set. Follow the guidance in [Phone metadata in DeviceTargetingInfo](#) to make sure you set the correct values and their formats.

Configure other customization settings

There are a variety of other customization settings that you can configure for Windows mobile devices. For phones in particular, you'll also typically need to provision connectivity settings such as the MMS APN, MMS proxy, IMS services (if supported), and so on. For this walkthrough, we'll assume that you've already configured these settings so we won't cover how to configure these connectivity settings. The MCSF section of the partner documentation provides scenario-based documentation to help you identify the settings you need to configure based on the scenarios or areas you want to enable. For more information about these customizations, see:

- [Customizations for device management](#) for info on overriding the default CountryTable.xml, setting the UICC slot for branding configuration, and more.
- [Customizations for hardware components](#) for info on customizing the display, storage, touch, and so on.
- [Customizations for applications and Microsoft components](#) for info on adding a phone call/SMS filter app, active phone cover settings, and others.
- [Customizations for boot, initial setup, and shutdown](#) to learn about configuring the timezone confirmation page and language selection during device setup, and many more.

- [Customizations for browser](#) for info on ways you can customize Microsoft Edge.
- [Customizations for connectivity](#) to learn more about setting the custom percentages for signal strength bars, preferred data provider list, roaming filter, and so on.
- [Customizations for desktop experiences](#) to customize the device icon and default image that appears when the mobile device is connected to the desktop.
- [Customizations for email](#) to learn how to change the email app to always have a light background.
- [Customizations for maps](#) for info preloading map data in the user store or SD card, maps for phones shipped in China, and more.
- [Customizations for phone calls](#) to learn about branding for phone calls, setting up visual voicemail, enabling IMS services and RCS, and many more.
- [Customizations for photos, music, and videos](#) for info about audio volume limitation, adding OEM lens apps, and so on.
- [Customizations for Settings](#) to learn about all the many customizations you can configure for the settings that appear within the **Settings** app on mobile devices.
- [Customizations for SMS and MMS](#) for more info on adding encoding extension tables for SMS, maximum length for messages, intercept deny list, and many more.
- [Customizations for Start](#) to change the default behavior of the Windows Store live tile. Note that you may configure the Start layout too, but that's covered in [Start layout for Windows 10 mobile editions](#) and shown as an example in this walkthrough.

Add a package to an OEM manifest file

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use a feature manifest (FM) file to define specific types of image builds that contain different sets of optional packages. To learn more about FM files, see [Feature manifest file contents](#). For more information about additional logic that you can add to the build system, see [Feature groupings and constraints](#).

In this walkthrough, we will add the packages you created in [Creating mobile packages](#), to an FM file to define new OEM features that you can later include to build a mobile OS image.

To add a package to an FM file

1. Create a new FM file or modify an existing FM file to include the two packages that you created and define feature IDs for these packages. For an example of what the FM file looks like, see %WPDKCONTENTROOT%\FMFiles\arm\MSOptionalFeatures.xml in your kit installation folder.

The following example shows what your FM file may look like.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<FeatureManifest
    xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
    xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    xmlns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/embedded/2004/10/ImageUpdate">

    <!-- Other elements that you can configure
    <OEMDevicePlatformPackages>
        <PackageFile Name="Microsoft.Fake.OEMDevicePlatform.spkg"
Path="$(mspackageroot)\firmware\Fake\$(cputype)\$(buildtype)" Device="Fake"/>
    </OEMDevicePlatformPackages>

    <BasePackages>
        <PackageFile Path="$(mspackageroot)\drivers\Fake\$(cputype)\$(buildtype)"
Name="Microsoft.Fake.AX88772.spkg"/>
    </BasePackages>
    -->

    <Features>
        <OEM>
            <PackageFile Path="SourceDirectoryA" Name="MyEchoDriver.spkg">
                <FeatureIDs>
                    <FeatureID>ECHO_DRIVER</FeatureID>
                </FeatureIDs>
            </PackageFile>
            <PackageFile Path="SourceDirectoryB" Name="Contoso.Customization.Notifications.QuickActions.spkg">
                <FeatureIDs>
                    <FeatureID>QUICK_ACTIONS</FeatureID>
                </FeatureIDs>
            </PackageFile>
        </OEM>
    </Features>
</FeatureManifest>
```

The **OEMDevicePlatformPackages** element and **BasePackages** element are placeholders and are only there to show you what other options are available to configure in the FM file.

For more information about creating an FM file and other elements that you may need to fully define your

feature, see [Feature manifest file contents](#). For more information about additional logic that you can add to the build system, see [Feature groupings and constraints](#).

2. In the first **PackageFile** element within the **OEM** section, replace *SourceDirectoryA* with the location of the folder that contains the Echo driver package and replace *MyEchoDriver.spkg* with the real name of the .spkg containing the driver.
3. In the second **PackageFile** element within the **OEM** section, replace *SourceDirectoryB* with the location of the folder that contains the customization setting package and replace *Contoso.Customization.Notifications.QuickActions.spkg* with the real name of the .spkg containing the customization setting.
4. Save your FM file in the %WPDKCONTENTROOT%\FMFiles\arm folder. For this example, let's name the file as ContosoOptionalFeatures.xml.

Configure the OEMInput file

9/28/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Now that you've configured your customization settings in the MCSF CAF and added custom OEM features in the OEM manifest file, you'll need to create an OEMInput file that specifies the device platform, the feature manifest files, the release type, device model, build type, languages you want to support, boot UI language, device resolutions, and other attributes like optional features that you want to include as part of your image.

For more information about each element in the OEMInput file, see [OEMInput file contents](#).

In this walkthrough, we will add the two features we defined in [Adding a package to an OEM manifest file](#), specifying the languages that we want to support, and defining the rest of our image.

To configure the OEMInput file

1. Create a new OEMInput.xml file or modify an existing OEMInput file. For an example of what the OEMInput.xml file looks like, see %WPDKCONTENTROOT%\OEMInputSamples\Fake in your kit installation folder.

In the following example, we copied the contents of the %WPDKCONTENTROOT%\OEMInputSamples\Fake\TestOEMInput.xml file and made the following modifications:

- Added a new description.
- Added English (United Kingdom), French (France), Spanish (Spain), and Chinese (Simplified) to the list of included devices languages in addition to English (United States). We added this in the **UserInterface** section. For more information about other languages you can add to your mobile device, including how to change the default device language and regional format, see [Mobile device languages](#).
- Added the ContosoOptionalFeatures.xml feature manifest file that we created in the [Adding a package to an OEM manifest file](#) walkthrough and placed it under the **AdditionalIFMs** section of the OEMInput file by adding a new **AdditionalIFM** entry and specifying the location and name of the feature manifest file.
- Added the ECHO_DRIVER and QUICK_ACTIONS features by adding a new **OEM** subsection within the **Features** section of the OEMInput file. For each feature that we add within the **OEM** section, we add a new **Feature** entry and then specify the name of the feature that we defined in the feature manifest file.

Note If you're using a mobile reference device, make sure you update the values in the **SOC**, **SV**, and **Device** sections of the OEMInput.xml. You may also change the **ReleaseType** depending on what you're trying to do. Make sure you follow the guidance in [OEMInput file contents](#) when specifying values for these elements.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<OEMInput xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
    xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    xmlns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/embedded/2004/10/ImageUpdate">
    <Description>Windows mobile image test FFU generation</Description>
    <SOC>FAKE_SOC_Test</SOC>
    <SV>Microsoft</SV>
    <Device>FAKE</Device>
    <ReleaseType>Test</ReleaseType>
    <BuildType>fre</BuildType>
    <SupportedLanguages>
        <UserInterface>
            <Language>en-US</Language>
            <Language>en-GB</Language>
            <Language>fr-FR</Language>
            <Language>es-ES</Language>
            <Language>zh-CN</Language>
        </UserInterface>
        <Keyboard>
            <Language>en-US</Language>
        </Keyboard>
        <Speech>
            <Language>en-US</Language>
        </Speech>
    </SupportedLanguages>
    <BootUILanguage>en-US</BootUILanguage>
    <BootLocale>en-US</BootLocale>
    <Resolutions>
        <Resolution>480x800</Resolution>
    </Resolutions>
    <AdditionalFMs>
        <AdditionalFM>%WPDKROOT%\FMFiles\arm\ContosoOptionalFeatures.xml</AdditionalFM>
        <AdditionalFM>%WPDKROOT%\FMFiles\arm\MSOptionalFeatures.xml</AdditionalFM>
    </AdditionalFMs>
    <Features>
        <Microsoft>
            <Feature>IMGFAKEMODEM</Feature>
            <Feature>TEST_DISABLE_DISK_IDLE</Feature>
            <Feature>STANDARD_FEATURE_1</Feature>
            <Feature>CODEINTEGRITY_TEST</Feature>
            <Feature>SELFHOST_AUTOMATIC_DEVICE_CONFIGURATOR</Feature>
            <Feature>LOCATIONFRAMEWORKAPP</Feature>
            <Feature>FACEBOOK</Feature>
            <Feature>COMSENHANCEMENTGLOBAL</Feature>
            <Feature>KDNETUSB_TEST_ON</Feature>
            <Feature>TESTINFRASTRUCTURE</Feature>
            <Feature>TEST</Feature>
            <Feature>STARTUPOVERRIDES</Feature>
            <Feature>GWPCERTTESTPROV</Feature>
            <Feature>MOBILECORE_TEST</Feature>
            <Feature>DRIVERS_WDTFINFRA</Feature>
            <Feature>SKYPE</Feature>
            <Feature>BOOTSEQUENCE_TEST</Feature>
            <Feature>SKIPOOBEE</Feature>
            <Feature>CORTANADBG_TEST_PROTECTED</Feature>
            <Feature>TEST_PROTECTED</Feature>
            <Feature>PSEUDOLOCALES</Feature>
        </Microsoft>
        <OEM>
            <Feature>ECHO_DRIVER</Feature>
            <Feature>QUICK_ACTIONS</Feature>
        </OEM>
    </Features>
    <Product>Windows Phone</Product>
</OEMInput>
```

2. Name and save your OEMInput.xml file. For our example, we named it ContosoTestOEMInput.xml and saved it in a %WPDKCONTENTROOT%\ContosoOEMInput folder.

Build a mobile image using ImgGen

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use two different tools to build a customized mobile image (FFU image) in Windows 10:

- Using ImgGen.cmd, which is a command file that runs the classic imaging tool, ImageApp.exe. This tool was also available earlier releases of Windows 10 Mobile including Windows Phone 8.1 and the various GDRs.
- Using the Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer (ICD) command-line interface, which is new for Windows 10.

In this walkthrough, we'll show how to use ImgGen.cmd to build the custom mobile image. In another walkthrough, we'll go through how to create another mobile image that includes the customizations we've done so far in addition to other customizations available only through Windows Provisioning by using the Windows ICD CLI.

To build a customized image using ImgGen

1. Open a **Developer Command Prompt for VS2015** window as an administrator.
2. If you are running Windows 8.1, complete the following steps to set the USN journal registry size to 1 Mb on your development PC. Otherwise, skip to the next step.
 - a. Change the USN minimum size registry key by running the following command:

```
reg add HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Control\FileSystem /v NtfsAllowUsnMinSize1Mb /t REG_DWORD /d 1
```
 - b. Reboot the PC before proceeding to the next step.
3. Run ImgGen.cmd by using the following command.

```
ImgGen TestFlash.ffuContosoTestOEMInput.xml "%WPDKCONTENTROOT%\MSPackages"
MobileCustomizations.xml 10.0.0.1
```

This command will build an image that will be called TestFlash.ffu.

Note This command assumes you've gone through the rest of the walkthroughs in this section. For more information about the command-line syntax for ImgGen.cmd, see *Using ImgGen.cmd to generate the image* in [Build a mobile image using ImgGen.cmd](#).

Once the image is built, you'll need to sign it so it can be flashed to a mobile device.

Sign a mobile image

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You need to sign a mobile image before you can deploy it to a device. For more information about signing images, see [Sign a full flash update \(FFU\) image](#).

Before you start, make sure you followed the steps in *Step 5: Install OEM test certs* in [Prepare for Windows mobile development](#). If you haven't done this yet, do this first before proceeding with the steps for signing an image.

In this walkthrough, we'll focus on test signing the image manually. In addition to ImageSigner, we'll also use Sign.cmd.

To test sign an image

1. Open a developer prompt with administrator rights in the directory that contains the output from the image generation process.
2. Extract the catalog of the unsigned FFU file by running the following command:

ImageSigner GETCATALOG TestFlash.ffu TestFlash.cat

3. Sign the catalog using the /pk option. There are two parts to this step:

Set SIGN_OEM=1

Sign.cmd /pk TestFlash.cat

4. Sign the FFU with the signed catalog file using ImageSigner.

ImageSigner SIGN TestFlash.ffu TestFlash.cat

Once the image is signed, you're ready to flash the image to your mobile device.

Flash an image to a mobile device

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Flashing is the process of getting a mobile image into a mobile device. Each manufacturer has different techniques and tooling that they'll use to manufacture and service a Windows mobile device and this means that each OEM needs to determine which flashing and manufacturing process works best for them. For more information, see [Flashing tools](#).

In this walkthrough, we'll use ffutool.exe, which is installed as part of the Windows ADK, to flash the image to a mobile device. For more information about flashing and to learn more about what you need to get your device ready for flashing, see [Use the flashing tools provided by Microsoft](#).

To flash an image

1. Boot the device into FFU flashing mode while it is connected to the host computer.

If you didn't include the LABIMAGE optional feature when generating your test image, you can force the device into FFU flashing mode manually by pressing and releasing the power button to boot the device and then immediately pressing and holding the volume up button. However, note that this option is only available if an FFU has been initially flashed to the device.

2. Open a command prompt with administrator rights.
3. Run ffutool.exe from the command line to flash the image.

ffutool -flash TestFlash.ffu

It will take a few minutes for the image to be fully flashed to the device. Once flashing is done, go through device setup and verify that your customizations appear as part of the image.

Part 2: Mobile deployment using Windows Provisioning

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

In this section, we'll go through the process of customizing and building a mobile image using the Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer (ICD). Windows ICD provides a hybrid method for customizing and building a mobile image because it lets you use both a Windows Provisioning answer file (WPAF) to configure the runtime settings, enterprise policies, and enrollment settings available in Windows Provisioning, and a Managed Centralized Settings Framework (MCSF) customization answer file (CAF) to fully customize the device hardware and connectivity settings, preload apps, and add assets such as ringtones and localized strings.

- [Use the Windows ICD CLI to customize and build a mobile image](#)

This method uses the Windows ICD CLI to build a customized mobile image.

- Legacy: [Use the Windows ICD UI to customize and build a mobile image](#)

Note, this method is not supported in Windows 10, version 1607.

Requirements

Before proceeding with either of the walkthroughs, you must first complete the steps in [Prepare for Windows mobile development](#) and [Configure the Start layout](#). Windows Provisioning/Windows ICD understands MCSF CAF so if you want to learn how to create a CAF, see [Configure customization settings](#).

Use the Windows ICD UI to customize and build a mobile image

6/6/2017 • 8 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use the Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer (ICD) UI to create a new Windows 10 Mobile image and customize it by adding settings and some assets.

Note: This method is not supported in Windows 10, version 1607.

This imaging method requires a pre-installed OS kit so you must have all the necessary Microsoft OS packages and feature manifest files in your default install path. A configuration data file (BSP.config.xml), which contains information about the hardware component packages for your board support package (BSP), is also required. For the BSP.config.xml file, you can:

- Use the BSP.config.xml file you downloaded as part of the BSP kit, or,
- Generate your own BSP.config.xml by running the BSP kit configuration tools from the SoC vendor and selecting your component drivers.

Build a mobile image using the Windows ICD UI

This walkthrough shows how to use the Windows ICD UI to customize, build, and flash a mobile image.

1. From the Windows ICD Start page, select **New Windows image customization**.

Or, you can also select **New Project...** from the **File** menu.

2. In the **Enter Project Details** window, specify a **Name** and **Location** for your project. Optionally, you can also enter a brief **Description** to describe your project.

3. Click **Next**.

4. If you created the project from the Start page, skip this step.

In the **Select project workflow** window, select **Imaging** from the list of available project workflows and then click **Next**.

5. In the **Select imaging source format** window, select **The Windows image is based on Microsoft packages**, and then click **Next**.

You will be prompted to specify a BSP.config.xml file.

6. In the **Select hardware component drivers** window, click **Browse** to launch File Explorer and search for the location of your BSP.config.xml file.

7. Click **Finish**.

This loads all the customizations that you can configure based on the Windows edition that you selected. Once all the available customizations are loaded, you can see the **Customizations Page**.

8. In the **Customizations Page**, select the settings you want to customize from the **Available Customizations** pane.

For this walkthrough, see [Configure customizations in the Windows ICD UI](#) for a list of the settings we're using as examples. Once you're done configuring the settings, proceed to the next step.

9. Although optional, export a provisioning package to encapsulate the settings you just configured and allow you to reuse all or most of the customizations for another project.

To do this, click the **Export** dropdown in the main menu, select **Provisioning Package**, add the required package information.

- **Name** - Name to use for the package, for example, *Contoso_ppkg*.
- **ID** - Auto-generated package GUID.
- **Owner** - Package owner. Set to *OEM*.
- **Version** - Version info. This is pre-populated with the latest package version number or "1.0". Leave it set to the default, *1.0*, although you can set it to any version that you want.
- **Rank** - Package rank, which is a value between 0 and 99 (inclusive). Leave it set to the default, *0*.

Click **Next** until you get to the **Build the provisioning package** screen. Click **Build** to build the package and then click **Finish**.

10. Select **Create** from the main menu and then choose **FFU**.

11. In the **Select image type** screen, choose **Test** for the image type.

Although there are other image types, a Test image type is good when your image is not yet final and you are still testing various components in your image. The image is also unlocked and doesn't contain any security enforcements.

12. Click **Next**.

13. In the **Describe the image** screen, select the languages that you want to include as part of your image.

If you went through [Part 1: Classic mobile deployment](#), the settings in this step are similar to how you would set the device languages in [Configure the OEMInput file](#).

- **User Interface Languages** - These are the display language(s) to install on the device.

Select *en-gb*, *en-us*, *es-es*, *fr-fr*, and *zh-cn*.

- **Keyboard Languages** - These are additional keyboard languages to use for text correction and suggestions while typing on the device.

Select *en-us*.

- **Speech Languages** - These are the speech languages that you want to install on your device.

Select *en-us*.

14. Because we selected multiple languages in **User Interface Languages**, we need to select the default display language that the device will use when it is first turned on by the user. To do this, choose **Boot Language** and select the default device language that you want to set. For example, set this to *en-us*.

15. To set the country or region, choose **Boot Locale** and select the locale for the default region or country. Any locale can be used as the regional format, but only the country (GeOID) value is used. For example, set this to *en-us*.

16. Click **Next**.

17. To change the location where the files are saved, click **Browse...** under **Select where to save the files**.

You may change the location where the files are saved, but typically the default location is fine.

18. Optional. If you created a CAF file by following [Configure customization settings](#), you can include this by selecting **Browse...** under **Customization answer file (optional)** and specifying the location where you saved the CAF.

For example, C:\Contoso\Customizations\MobileCustomizations.xml.

19. To change the default location where you want to save the image, click **Browse...** to launch File Explorer and specify a new location.

To use the default location, click **Next**.

20. Click **Build** to start building the image. The project information is displayed in the build page and the progress bar indicates the build status.

If you need to cancel the build, click **Cancel**. This cancels the current build process, closes the wizard, and takes you back to the **Customizations Page**.

21. During the image build process, a lot of what's happening during the build process is shown in the build output window. This window shows:

- Warnings that might appear while the image is building.
- Verbose build messages to indicate the phases within the image build process.
- Error messages such as when the input files have schema errors or when the image fails to build.

If your build fails, an error message will be displayed. You can review the build log to identify the issue by clicking **View in Notepad**.

If your build is successful, the name of the image and its location will be displayed.

- If you choose, you can build the image again by picking a different image type, selecting different languages, and then starting another build. To do this, click **Back** to select what you want to change, and then click **Next** to start another build.
- Boot the device into image or FFU download mode. To force your phone into image or FFU download mode manually, press and release the power button to reboot the phone and then immediately press and hold the volume up button. Note that this option is available only after an initial FFU has been flashed to the phone.

If this doesn't work, check and follow the device flashing instructions provided by the SoC vendor.

- If you are ready to flash the built image to your device, click **Flash** and select the target device to flash the FFU. If you don't find the device listed in the list of available target device(s), click **Refresh**.

If you want to flash the image to the device later, follow the steps in [Deploy an image to a mobile device](#) when you are ready to flash the image to your device.

It will take a few minutes for the image to be fully flashed to the device. Once flashing is done, go through device setup and verify that your customizations appear as part of the image.

- If you are done, click **Finish** to close the wizard and go back to the **Customizations Page**.

Configure customizations in the Windows ICD UI

Note When configuring customizations using Windows ICD, do not use the **Image time settings**, use the **Runtime settings** instead. If you configure the image-time settings, this will cause an error due to a settings collision if the setting is configured in both WPAF and MCSF CAF.

If you haven't done so already, you must first create the LayoutModification.xml files as shown in [Configure the Start layout](#) before proceeding with the steps in this section.

To configure the Start layout

1. In the **Available customizations** pane in Windows ICD, expand **Runtime settings**, select **Start**, and then

select **StartLayout**.

2. In the middle pane, click **Browse** to open File Explorer.
3. In the File Explorer window, navigate to the location where you saved LayoutModification1.xml from step 1; for example, C:\Contoso\Customizations.
4. Select LayoutModification1.xml and then click **Open**.

This sets the value of **StartLayout** and the setting should appear in the **Selected customizations** page.

Enterprise policies and enrollment settings are some of the customizations available only through Windows Provisioning. Here, we'll configure a few of these policies to include as part of the image. For more information about the other policies that you can configure, see [Policies](#) (for the Windows Provisioning settings). Note that the Windows Provisioning settings topics do not provide a detailed description of each policy; instead, each topic links to the more detailed information in [Policy CSP](#).

To set policies

1. In the **Available customizations** pane, expand **Runtime settings**, and select **Policies**.
2. Find **Policies/DeviceLock** and set **MaxInactivityTimeDeviceLock** to "15".

This specifies that after the device has been idle for 15 minutes, the device will become PIN or password locked.

3. Find **Policies/DeviceLock** and set **ScreenTimeoutWhileLocked** to "15".

This specifies the duration, in seconds, for the screen timeout while on the lock screen. For this example, the duration is 15 seconds.

Deploy an image to a mobile device

Follow these steps if you deferred flashing the image to the device after it was built.

1. Boot the device into image or FFU download mode. To force your phone into image or FFU download mode manually, press and release the power button to reboot the phone and then immediately press and hold the volume up button. Note that this option is available only after an initial FFU has been flashed to the phone.

If this doesn't work, check and follow the device flashing instructions provided by the SoC vendor.

2. Using a USB cable, connect your phone to the host computer.
3. Click **Deploy** from the main menu and choose **To USB connected device** to deploy the FFU image to the device.
4. In the **Select an FFU image** window, click **Browse...** to launch File Explorer and select the FFU that you want to flash to your target device, and then click **Next**.
5. Choose the target device or drive from the list. If your device or drive is not listed, click **Refresh**.
6. Click **Next**.
7. In the **Deploy to device** window, choose **Flash** to start flashing the image.
8. Click **Finish** to close the **Deployment** page.

Use the Windows ICD CLI to customize and build a mobile image

7/13/2017 • 8 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use the Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer (ICD) command-line interface (CLI) to generate a new Windows 10 Mobile image.

This imaging method requires a pre-installed OS kit so you must have all the necessary Microsoft OS packages and feature manifest files in your default install path. You also need either a `BSP.config.xml` file, which contains information about the hardware component packages for your board support package (BSP) or you can use an `OEMInput.xml` file.

If you're using a `BSP.config.xml` file, you can:

- Use the `BSP.config.xml` file you downloaded as part of the BSP kit, or,
- Generate your own `BSP.config.xml` by running the BSP kit configuration tools from the SoC vendor and selecting your component drivers.

Create a WPAF with multivariant support

Multivariant provides a generic mechanism for creating a single image that can work for multiple markets. You can use it to dynamically configure language, branding, and network settings during runtime based on the mobile operator and locale/country.

Unlike the Windows ICD UI, you can use the Windows ICD CLI to create an image that has multivariant support. In order to do this, you must first edit a Windows Provisioning answer file (WPAF), `customizations.xml`, and add the **Targets** and **Variant** sections to the file. [Create a provisioning package with multivariant settings](#) provides a more information about multivariant support in Windows 10 and a list of the conditions that Windows supports along with their priorities. It also provides a step-by-step example on what you need to do.

In this section, we'll modify the `customizations.xml` file that was created from [Use the Windows ICD UI to customize and build a mobile image](#) and include **Targets** and **Variant** sections to support multivariant. If you are building a single variant image, you may skip this section.

1. Locate the provisioning package file, `customizations.xml`. If you didn't change the default project location, you can find the package in `<drive:>\Users\<user_name>\Documents\Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer (WICD)\<project_name>`.
2. Use an XML or text editor to open the `customizations.xml` file.

The following example shows the contents of the `customizations.xml` file created in [Use the Windows ICD UI to customize and build a mobile image](#).

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<WindowsCustomizations>
  <PackageConfig xmlns="urn:schemas-Microsoft-com:Windows-ICD-Package-Config.v1.0">
    <ID>{239b9121-9f26-42db-8ae2-0d62989caa66}</ID>
    <Name>Contoso_ppkg</Name>
    <Version>1.0</Version>
    <OwnerType>OEM</OwnerType>
    <Rank>0</Rank>
  </PackageConfig>
  <Settings xmlns="urn:schemas-microsoft-com:windows-provisioning">
    <Customizations>
      <Common>
        <Policies>
          <DeviceLock>
            <MaxInactivityTimeDeviceLock>15</MaxInactivityTimeDeviceLock>
            <ScreenTimeoutWhileLocked>15</ScreenTimeoutWhileLocked>
          </DeviceLock>
        </Policies>
        <Start>
          <StartLayout>C:\Contoso\Customizations\LayoutModification1.xml</StartLayout>
        </Start>
      </Common>
    </Customizations>
  </Settings>
</WindowsCustomizations>

```

3. Edit the customizations.xml file and create a **Targets** section to describe the conditions that will handle your multivariant settings.

The following example shows the customizations.xml, which has been modified to include the conditions **MCC** and **MNC**. For parity, the example uses the same fictitious IDs and conditions that were used in *Create an MCSF customization answer file* section in [Configure customization settings](#).

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<WindowsCustomizations>
    <PackageConfig xmlns="urn:schemas-Microsoft-com:Windows-ICD-Package-Config.v1.0">
        <ID>{239b9121-9f26-42db-8ae2-0d62989caa66}</ID>
        <Name>Contoso_ppkg</Name>
        <Version>1.0</Version>
        <OwnerType>OEM</OwnerType>
        <Rank>0</Rank>
    </PackageConfig>
    <Settings xmlns="urn:schemas-microsoft-com:windows-provisioning">
        <Customizations>
            <Common>
                <Policies>
                    <DeviceLock>
                        <MaxInactivityTimeDeviceLock>15</MaxInactivityTimeDeviceLock>
                        <ScreenTimeoutWhileLocked>15</ScreenTimeoutWhileLocked>
                    </DeviceLock>
                </Policies>
                <Start>
                    <StartLayout>C:\Contoso\Customizations\LayoutModification1.xml</StartLayout>
                </Start>
            </Common>
            <Targets>
                <Target Id="Id_PhoneCo">
                    <TargetState>
                        <Condition Name="MCC" Value="410" />
                        <Condition Name="MNC" Value="510" />
                    </TargetState>
                </Target>
                <Target Id="Id_Fabrikam">
                    <TargetState>
                        <Condition Name="MCC" Value="310" />
                        <Condition Name="MNC" Value="610" />
                    </TargetState>
                </Target>
            </Targets>
        </Customizations>
    </Settings>
</WindowsCustomizations>

```

4. In the customizations.xml file, create two **Variant** sections:

- Specify a **Name** for each variant.
- Add a child **TargetRefs** element.
- Within the **TargetRefs** element, add a **TargetRef** element.

The following example shows what the customizations.xml looks like after adding two variants, ThePhoneCompany and Fabrikam, and then using the two **Target IDs** we defined in the previous step to use as the **TargetRef Id** for each variant.

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<WindowsCustomizations>
    <PackageConfig xmlns="urn:schemas-Microsoft-com:Windows-ICD-Package-Config.v1.0">
        <ID>{239b9121-9f26-42db-8ae2-0d62989caa66}</ID>
        <Name>Contoso_ppkg</Name>
        <Version>1.0</Version>
        <OwnerType>OEM</OwnerType>
        <Rank>0</Rank>
    </PackageConfig>
    <Settings xmlns="urn:schemas-microsoft-com:windows-provisioning">
        <Customizations>
            <Common>
                <Policies>
                    <DeviceLock>
                        <MaxInactivityTimeDeviceLock>15</MaxInactivityTimeDeviceLock>
                        <ScreenTimeoutWhileLocked>15</ScreenTimeoutWhileLocked>
                    </DeviceLock>
                </Policies>
                <Start>
                    <StartLayout>C:\Contoso\Customizations\LayoutModification1.xml</StartLayout>
                </Start>
            </Common>
            <Targets>
                <Target Id="Id_PhoneCo">
                    <TargetState>
                        <Condition Name="MCC" Value="410" />
                        <Condition Name="MNC" Value="510" />
                    </TargetState>
                </Target>
                <Target Id="Id_Fabrikam">
                    <TargetState>
                        <Condition Name="MCC" Value="310" />
                        <Condition Name="MNC" Value="610" />
                    </TargetState>
                </Target>
            </Targets>
            <Variant Name="ThePhoneCompany">
                <TargetRefs>
                    <TargetRef Id="Id_PhoneCo" />
                </TargetRefs>
            </Variant>
            <Variant Name="Fabrikam">
                <TargetRefs>
                    <TargetRef Id="Id_Fabrikam" />
                </TargetRefs>
            </Variant>
        </Customizations>
    </Settings>
</WindowsCustomizations>

```

- Move compliant settings from the **Common** section to the **Variant** section.

Note Settings that reside in the **Common** section are applied unconditionally on every triggering event.

In the following example, we used the `DeviceLock/MaxInactivity` policy under ThePhoneCompany variant while the `DeviceLock/ScreenTimeoutWhileLocked` policy was moved under the Fabrikam variant.

```
```XML
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<WindowsCustomizations>
 <PackageConfig xmlns="urn:schemas-Microsoft-com:Windows-ICD-Package-Config.v1.0">
 <ID>{239b9121-9f26-42db-8ae2-0d62989caa66}</ID>
 <Name>Contoso_ppkg</Name>
 <Version>1.0</Version>
 <OwnerType>OEM</OwnerType>
 <Rank>0</Rank>
 </PackageConfig>
 <Settings xmlns="urn:schemas-microsoft-com:windows-provisioning">
 <Customizations>
 <Common>
 <Start>
 <StartLayout>C:\Contoso\Customizations\LayoutModification1.xml</StartLayout>
 </Start>
 </Common>
 <Targets>
 <Target Id="Id_PhoneCo">
 <TargetState>
 <Condition Name="MCC" Value="410" />
 <Condition Name="MNC" Value="510" />
 </TargetState>
 </Target>
 <Target Id="Id_Fabrikam">
 <TargetState>
 <Condition Name="MCC" Value="310" />
 <Condition Name="MNC" Value="610" />
 </TargetState>
 </Target>
 </Targets>
 <Variant Name="ThePhoneCompany">
 <TargetRefs>
 <TargetRef Id="Id_PhoneCo" />
 </TargetRefs>
 <Policies>
 <DeviceLock>
 <MaxInactivityTimeDeviceLock>15</MaxInactivityTimeDeviceLock>
 </DeviceLock>
 </Policies>
 </Variant>
 <Variant Name="Fabrikam">
 <TargetRefs>
 <TargetRef Id="Id_Fabrikam" />
 </TargetRefs>
 <Policies>
 <DeviceLock>
 <ScreenTimeoutWhileLocked>15</ScreenTimeoutWhileLocked>
 </DeviceLock>
 </Policies>
 </Variant>
 </Customizations>
 </Settings>
</WindowsCustomizations>
```

```

1. Save the updated customizations.xml file and note the path to this updated file. You will need the path as one of the values when you get ready to build the image.
2. Use the Windows ICD command-line interface (CLI) to create a provisioning package using the updated customizations.xml. For more information about how to build a provisioning package and a description of

the command switches and parameters, see **To build a provisioning package** in [Use the Windows ICD command-line interface](#).

For example:

```
icd.exe /Build-ProvisioningPackage /CustomizationXML:"C:\CustomProject\customizations.xml"
/PackagePath:"C:\CustomProject\output.ppkg" /StoreFile:C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment
and Deployment Kit\Imaging and Configuration Designer\x86\Microsoft-Common-Provisioning.dat"
```

In this example, the **StoreFile** corresponds to the location of the settings store that will be used to create the package for the required Windows edition.

Note The provisioning package created during this step will contain the multivariant settings. You can use this package either as a standalone package that you can apply to a Windows device, use it as the base when starting another project, or use it as one of the inputs (**/ProvisioningPackage**) when building either a Windows 10 for desktop editions (Home, Pro, Enterprise, and Education) image or Windows 10 Mobile image.

Build a mobile image using the Windows ICD CLI

This walkthrough shows how to use the Windows ICD CLI to build a mobile image. For more information about the Windows ICD CLI, including usage examples and parameter descriptions, see [Use the Windows ICD command-line interface](#).

1. Open a command-line window with administrator rights.
2. From the command-line, navigate to the Windows ICD install directory:
 - On an x64 computer, go to: C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Imaging and Configuration Designer\x86
 - On an x86 computer, go to: C:\Program Files\Windows Kits\10\Assessment and Deployment Kit\Imaging and Configuration Designer\x86
3. Using the updated customizations.xml (with multivariant settings) and the MCSF CAF created in [Configure customization settings](#), use the Windows ICD CLI to build a mobile image.

To do this with the example files and using a bsp.config.xml, see the following command:

```
icd.exe /Build-ImageFromPackages /ImagePath:"C:\Contoso\Customizations\TestFlash2.ffu"
/BSPConfigFile:"C:\Contoso\Device.bsp.config.xml" /ImageType:Test
/CustomizationXML:"C:\Contoso\Customizations\customizations.xml" /OEMCustomizationVer:1.0.0.0
/MCSFCustomizationXML:"C:\Contoso\Customizations\MobileCustomizations.xml"
```

Here are a few things to keep in mind:

- Replace all the placeholder values for each parameter with the values that match your assets and directory locations
- Specify /ImageType because we are using /BSPConfigFile
- Use /CustomizationXML to point to the customizations.xml
- Windows ICD requires /OEMCustomizationVer if ProvisioningPackage is defined
- Make sure the format for the /OEMCustomizationVer version number is in <Major>.<Minor>. <SubVersion>.<SubMinorVersion>, such as 1.0.0.0

To do this with the example files and using an OEMInput.xml file, see the following command:

```
icd.exe /Build-ImageFromPackages /ImagePath:"C:\Contoso\Customizations\TestFlash2.ffu"
/OEMInputXML:"C:\Contoso\OEMInput.xml"
```

/CustomizationXML:"C:\Contoso\Customizations\customizations.xml" **/OEMCustomizationVer:**1.0.0.0
/MCSFCustomizationXML:"C:\Contoso\Customizations\MobileCustomizations.xml"

Once the image (FFU) is built, you can flash it to your mobile device by using ffutool.exe or the **Deploy** option in the Windows ICD UI. See the following section for more information.

Flash an image to a mobile device

There are two ways that you can use to flash an image to a mobile device:

- Using ffutool.exe, or,
- Using the built-in flashing functionality in Windows ICD

This section shows how to do both. Choose one of these methods to flash your image to your mobile device.

Follow these steps if you are flashing the image to the device using Windows ICD.

To flash an image using Windows ICD

1. Boot the device into image or FFU download mode. To force your phone into image or FFU download mode manually, press and release the power button to reboot the phone and then immediately press and hold the volume up button. Note that this option is available only after an initial FFU has been flashed to the phone.

If this doesn't work, check and follow the device flashing instructions provided by the SoC vendor.

2. Using a USB cable, connect your phone to the host computer.
3. Launch Windows ICD.
4. Click **Deploy** from the main menu and choose **To USB connected device** to deploy the FFU image to the device.
5. In the **Select an FFU image** window, click **Browse...** to launch File Explorer and select the FFU that you want to flash to your target device, and then click **Next**.
6. Choose the target device or drive from the list. If your device or drive is not listed, click **Refresh**.
7. Click **Next**.
8. In the **Deploy to device** window, choose **Flash** to start flashing the image.
9. Click **Finish** to close the **Deployment** page.

Follow these steps if you are flashing the image to the device using ffutool.exe.

To flash an image using ffutool.exe

1. Boot the device into FFU flashing mode while it is connected to the host computer.

If you didn't include the LABIMAGE optional feature when generating your test image, you can force the device into FFU flashing mode manually by pressing and releasing the power button to boot the device and then immediate pressing and holding the volume up button. However, note that this option is only available if an FFU has been initially flashed to the device.

2. Open a command prompt with administrator rights.
3. Run ffutool.exe from the command line to flash the image.

ffutool -flash TestFlash.ffu

No matter which method you used to flash the image to the device, it will take a few minutes for the image to be fully flashed. Once flashing is done, go through device setup and verify that your customizations appear as part of

the image.

Manufacturing Mode

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Introduced in Windows 10 Mobile, manufacturing mode is a mode of the full operating system that can be used for manufacturing-related tasks, such as component and support testing.

In Windows Phone 8.1, you had to flash the Microsoft Manufacturing Operating System (MMOS) to do manufacturing tests and processes, such as test hardware, blow fuses, and provision security keys. Once the tests were completed, you had to flash the full operating system. This added extra time on the manufacturing floor.

This new feature allows you to boot into a manufacturing mode of the full operating system (and do those manufacturing steps) without having to flash an MMOS image.

Manufacturing profiles

A manufacturing profile defines settings that should be used when the operating system boots in manufacturing mode. The device can have more than one manufacturing profile. A profile named Default is included with Windows 10 Mobile. The default profile contains the settings for Microsoft components that let the device boot into a minimal environment for Manufacturing Mode.

Manufacturing profiles are stored in the registry on the device in the following location:

HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\Control\ManufacturingMode You must create a subkey for each manufacturing profile. Under the profile key, you can change the settings for some select operating system components for when the system is booting in manufacturing mode. For example, you can alter which services are started when this manufacturing profile is enabled. You can add your own services in the Services subkey, as shown below. If you want to set all services to the same start type, you can use an * for the service name. If the * wildcard is not used, all Win32 services that are not included in the manufacturing profile will use their default start type.

Note The * wildcard only applies to Win32 services, excluding kernel-mode drivers.

The following example creates a manufacturing profile named CustomProfile, causes the service named OEMFactoryTestService to automatically start, and all other Win32 services to demand start:

```
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\Control\ManufacturingMode\CustomProfile]  
  
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\Control\ManufacturingMode\CustomProfile\Services]  
  
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\Control\ManufacturingMode\CustomProfile\Services\OEMFactoryTestService]  
"Start"=dword:00000002  
  
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\Control\ManufacturingMode\CustomProfile\Services\*]  
"Start"=dword:00000003
```

The manufacturing profile name must be less than 64 characters.

You cannot use **Current** for the name of your manufacturing profile. This name is reserved for the currently active manufacturing profile.

Create a custom manufacturing profile package

7/13/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can add manufacturing profiles to your device by using a package. For more info on creating packages, see [Creating packages](#). In some cases, you may need to create a custom profile. For example, perhaps you want to fine tune what Microsoft services are running for performance or functionality reasons or perhaps you want to have more than one manufacturing profile. When creating new custom profiles, you should start by copying the provided default profile and customizing it to suit your needs.

For example, if you wanted to create a new custom profile for factory testing that is a copy of the default profile but also starts your factory test service, it may look like this:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<Package xmlns="urn:Microsoft.WindowsPhone/PackageSchema.v8.00"
    Owner="Contoso"
    Component="MfgMode"
    SubComponent="ManufacturingModeServices"
    ReleaseType="Production"
    OwnerType="OEM">

    <Macros>
        <Macro Id="MfgMode" Value="$(hkLM.control)\ManufacturingMode" />
        <Macro Id="CustomProfileServices" Value="$(MfgMode)\CustomProfile\Services" />
    </Macros>

    <Components>
        <OSComponent>
            <!-- Overrides copied from default profile -->
            <RegKeys>
                <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfileServices)\*"\>
                    <RegValue Name="Start" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000003" />
                </RegKey>
            </RegKeys>
            <RegKeys>
                <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfileServices)\AccountProvSvc"\>
                    <RegValue Name="Start" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000002" />
                </RegKey>
            </RegKeys>
            <RegKeys>
                <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfileServices)\adss"\>
                    <RegValue Name="Start" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000004" />
                </RegKey>
            </RegKeys>
            <RegKeys>
                <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfileServices)\AudioSrv"\>
                    <RegValue Name="Start" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000002" />
                </RegKey>
            </RegKeys>
            <RegKeys>
                <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfileServices)\BFE"\>
                    <RegValue Name="Start" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000002" />
                </RegKey>
            </RegKeys>
            <RegKeys>
                <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfileServices)\BrokerInfrastructure"\>
                    <RegValue Name="Start" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000002" />
                </RegKey>
            </RegKeys>
            <RegKeys>
                <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfileServices)\cellusermodeinterconnect"\>
                    <RegValue Name="Start" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000001" />
                </RegKey>
            </RegKeys>
        </OSComponent>
    </Components>

```

```
    <RegValue Name="Start" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000004" />
</RegKey>
</RegKeys>
<RegKeys>
    <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfileServices)\DcomLaunch">
        <RegValue Name="Start" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000002" />
    </RegKey>
</RegKeys>
<RegKeys>
    <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfileServices)\DHCP">
        <RegValue Name="Start" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000002" />
    </RegKey>
</RegKeys>
<RegKeys>
    <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfileServices)\Fusion">
        <RegValue Name="Start" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000004" />
    </RegKey>
</RegKeys>
<RegKeys>
    <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfileServices)\KeepWifiOnSvc">
        <RegValue Name="Start" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000003" />
    </RegKey>
</RegKeys>
<RegKeys>
    <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfileServices)\LaunchAppSvc">
        <RegValue Name="Start" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000004" />
    </RegKey>
</RegKeys>
<RegKeys>
    <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfileServices)\MPSSvc">
        <RegValue Name="Start" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000002" />
    </RegKey>
</RegKeys>
<RegKeys>
    <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfileServices)\NETACT">
        <RegValue Name="Start" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000004" />
    </RegKey>
</RegKeys>
<RegKeys>
    <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfileServices)\nsi">
        <RegValue Name="Start" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000002" />
    </RegKey>
</RegKeys>
<RegKeys>
    <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfileServices)\Power">
        <RegValue Name="Start" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000002" />
    </RegKey>
</RegKeys>
<RegKeys>
    <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfileServices)\ProfSvc">
        <RegValue Name="Start" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000002" />
    </RegKey>
</RegKeys>
<RegKeys>
    <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfileServices)\RpcEptMapper">
        <RegValue Name="Start" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000002" />
    </RegKey>
</RegKeys>
<RegKeys>
    <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfileServices)\RpcSs">
        <RegValue Name="Start" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000002" />
    </RegKey>
</RegKeys>
<RegKeys>
    <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfileServices)\SamSs">
        <RegValue Name="Start" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000002" />
    </RegKey>
</RegKeys>
<RegKeys>
```

```
<RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfileServices)\SecMgr">
    <RegValue Name="Start" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000004" />
</RegKey>
</RegKeys>
<RegKeys>
    <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfileServices)\SirepSvc">
        <RegValue Name="Start" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000004" />
    </RegKey>
</RegKeys>
<RegKeys>
    <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfileServices)\SystemEventsBroker">
        <RegValue Name="Start" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000002" />
    </RegKey>
</RegKeys>
<RegKeys>
    <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfileServices)\TestSirepSvc">
        <RegValue Name="Start" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000002" />
    </RegKey>
</RegKeys>
<!-- Custom overrides for OEM services -->
<RegKeys>
    <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfileServices)\OEMFactoryTestService">
        <RegValue Name="Start" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000002" />
    </RegKey>
</RegKeys>
</OSComponent>
</Components>
</Package>
```

You can then create the package by using pkggen.exe (included with the Windows Driver Kit):

```
pkggen.exe example.pkg.xml /config:pkggen.cfg.xml
```

Create a custom manufacturing profile package with USBFN settings

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can also specify custom USBFN settings in a manufacturing profile that are only used when the device is in manufacturing mode.

When the device is not in Manufacturing Mode, USBFN settings will still be read from the normal location. When the device is in Manufacturing Mode and Manufacturing Mode-specific settings have been provided, the settings are from a different location. If no settings have been provided in the active manufacturing profile, the settings will be read from the normal location. This allows you to use different settings when the device is in manufacturing mode versus when it is not.

Here's an example of a manufacturing profile package that specifies USBFN settings:

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='utf-8'?>
<Package
    xmlns="urn:Microsoft.WindowsPhone/PackageSchema.v8.00"
    Owner="Microsoft"
    Component="UsbFn"
    SubComponent="Settings"
    ReleaseType="Production"
    OwnerType="Microsoft"
    >
<Macros>
    <Macro
        Id="MfgMode"
        Value="$(hklm.control)\ManufacturingMode"
        />
    <Macro
        Id="MfgModeProfile"
        Value="Default"
        />
    <Macro
        Id="MfgModeUsbFn"
        Value="$(MfgMode)\$(MfgModeProfile)\USBFN"
        />
</Macros>
<Components>
    <OSComponent>
        <RegKeys>
            <RegKey
                KeyName="$(MfgModeUsbFn)\Default"
                >
                <RegValue
                    Name="bcdDevice"
                    Type="REG_DWORD"
                    Value="00000001"
                    />
                <RegValue
                    Name="bDeviceClass"
                    Type="REG_DWORD"
                    Value="00000000"
                    />
                <RegValue
                    Name="bDeviceProtocol"
                    Type="REG_DWORD"
                    Value="00000000"
                    />
            </RegKey>
        </RegKeys>
    </OSComponent>
</Components>
```



```

        />
    <RegValue
        Name="MSOSExtendedPropertyDescriptor"
        Type="REG_BINARY"

    Value="74,01,00,00,00,01,05,00,05,00,84,00,00,00,01,00,00,00,28,00,44,00,65,00,76,00,69,00,63,00,65,00,49,00,6E
    ,00,74,00,65,00,72,00,66,00,61,00,63,00,65,00,47,00,55,00,49,00,44,00,00,00,4E,00,00,00,7B,00,32,00,36,00,66,00
    ,65,00,64,00,63,00,34,00,65,00,2D,00,36,00,61,00,63,00,33,00,2D,00,34,00,32,00,34,00,31,00,2D,00,39,00,65,00,34
    ,00,64,00,2D,00,65,00,33,00,64,00,34,00,62,00,32,00,63,00,35,00,63,00,35,00,33,00,34,00,7D,00,00,00,36,00,00,00
    ,04,00,00,00,24,00,44,00,65,00,76,00,69,00,63,00,65,00,49,00,64,00,6C,00,65,00,45,00,6E,00,61,00,62,00,6C,00,65
    ,00,64,00,00,00,04,00,00,00,01,00,00,00,34,00,00,00,04,00,00,00,22,00,44,00,65,00,66,00,61,00,75,00,6C,00,74,00
    ,49,00,64,00,6C,00,65,00,53,00,74,00,61,00,74,00,65,00,00,00,04,00,00,00,01,00,00,00,38,00,00,00,04,00,00,00,26
    ,00,44,00,65,00,66,00,61,00,75,00,6C,00,74,00,49,00,64,00,6C,00,65,00,54,00,69,00,6D,00,65,00,6F,00,75,00,74,00
    ,00,00,04,00,00,00,10,27,00,00,44,00,00,00,04,00,00,00,32,00,55,00,73,00,65,00,72,00,53,00,65,00,74,00,44,00,65
    ,00,76,00,69,00,63,00,65,00,49,00,64,00,6C,00,65,00,45,00,6E,00,61,00,62,00,6C,00,65,00,64,00,00,00,04,00,00,00
    ,01,00,00,00"
        />
    </RegKey>
</RegKeys>
</OSComponent>
</Components>
</Package>
```

You can then create the package by using pkggen.exe (included with the Windows Driver Kit):

```
pkggen.exe exampleUSBFN.pkg.xml /config:pkggen.cfg.xml
```

Define a service that only runs in Manufacturing Mode

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

There may be cases where you want a service to be normally disabled but automatically run when the device is in Manufacturing Mode. For example, your factory test suite would probably run in this configuration. You would set your service start type to Disabled and then add a manufacturing profile override that makes your service auto-start when using the appropriate manufacturing mode profile.

Here's an example manufacturing profile:

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<Package xmlns="urn:Microsoft.WindowsPhone/PackageSchema.v8.00"
    Owner="Contoso"
    Component="MfgMode"
    SubComponent="FactoryTest"
    ReleaseType="Production"
    OwnerType="OEM">

    <Macros>
        <Macro Id="MfgMode" Value="$(hk1m.control)\ManufacturingMode" />
        <Macro Id="CustomProfileServices" Value="$(MfgMode)\CustomProfile\Services" />
    </Macros>

    <Components>
        <!-- Definition for the service -->
        <Service
            Name="FactoryService"
            Start="Disabled"
            Type="Win32OwnProcess"
            ErrorControl="Ignore"
            DisplayName="OEMFactoryTestService"
            Description="A Sample OEM Factory Test Service">

            <Executable Source="$(BINARY_ROOT)\bin\factory\oem_factory_test_service.exe" />

            <!-- Failure actions should reset once per day, for security reasons -->
            <FailureActions ResetPeriod="86400">
                <Action Type="RestartService" Delay="1000"/>
                <Action Type="RestartService" Delay="1000"/>
                <Action Type="RestartService" Delay="1000"/>
                <!-- if it fails to start three times, services should just stop -->
                <Action Type="None" Delay="0"/>
            </FailureActions>

            <RequiredCapabilities>
                <!-- Needed to access and create RPC endpoints -->
                <RequiredCapability CapId="ID_CAP_INTEROPSERVICES" />
            </RequiredCapabilities>
        </Service>
    </Components>
</Package>

```

Create a full operating system manufacturing profile

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

When you boot into Manufacturing Mode, can you skip OOBE and preinstall apps to run your manufacturing tests. Skipping OOBE can speed up manufacturing time.

To set this up, you add the apps that should be installed with the manufacturing profile. For more info about manufacturing profiles, see [Manufacturing Mode](#).

Add apps to a custom manufacturing profile

In a manufacturing mode profile, you must create a new registry key that lists the apps that should be installed with the manufacturing profile:

```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\ControlSet001\Control\ManufacturingMode\<Profile Name>\Apps\OobeInstall
```

Under the OobeInstall registry key, you must create registry key (with REG_DWORD type) for each app. The name of the registry key must match the filename of the app package.

For example, to add the Settings app to the manufacturing profile, you would add a registry key named **systemsettings**.

Here are some things to consider when adding apps to a manufacturing profile:

- The manufacturing profile must not disable any Windows services.
- The value of the registry key is reserved. Only the registry key name is used.
- The app can be a first or second party app, but the app package must be a part of the image.
- The * wildcard can be used in the name of the app.
- If you want the normal OOBE experience (with all apps installed), create a single registry key with the name of *.

Find the name of the app

The name of the registry key must match the filename of the app package. You can get a list of the apps that are on the device by running the following command on the device's drive root:

```
dir /S MPAP_*.provxml
```

This command returns a list of files, similar to the following:

```
MPAP_systemsettings_001.provxml
```

The part of the filename after **MPAP_** and before **_0xx.provxml** is what you should use for the registry key name.

Add the registry keys to your custom manufacturing profile package

You add the registry keys to your custom manufacturing profile package like you would with any other package. For more info about packaging, see [Creating Phone Packages](#).

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<Package xmlns="urn:Microsoft.WindowsPhone/PackageSchema.v8.00"
    Owner="Contoso"
    Component="MfgMode"
    SubComponent="Manufacturing.FactoryTestSample"
    ReleaseType="Production"
    OwnerType="OEM">

    <Macros>
        <Macro Id="MfgMode" Value="$(hk1m.control)\ManufacturingMode" />
        <Macro Id="CustomProfile" Value="$(MfgMode)\CustomProfile" />
    </Macros>

    <Components>
        <OSComponent>
            <RegKeys>
                <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfile)\"/>
                <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfile)\Services"/>
                <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfile)\Apps"/>
                <RegKey KeyName="$(CustomProfile)\Apps\OobeInstall">
                    <RegValue Name="FactoryTestOEMSample" Value="0" Type="REG_DWORD"/>
                    <RegValue Name="systemsettings" Value="0" Type="REG_DWORD"/>
                </RegKey>
            </RegKeys>
        </OSComponent>
    </Components>
</Package>
```

Detect Manufacturing Mode

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can determine whether the device is in Manufacturing Mode or not by using either a kernel mode or user mode API.

In kernel mode, a new API has been defined in wdm.h:

```
_IRQL_requires_max_(APC_LEVEL)
NTKERNELAPI
BOOLEAN
ExIsManufacturingModeEnabled (
    VOID
);
```

Here's an example of how you might use it:

```
BOOLEAN ManufacturingModeEnabled = FALSE;

NTSTATUS
DriverEntry(
    PDRIVER_OBJECT DriverObject,
    PUNICODE_STRING RegistryPath
)
{
...
    ManufacturingModeEnabled = ExIsManufacturingModeEnabled();
...
}

NTSTATUS
DoManufacturingOperation(
    VOID
)
{
    if (ManufacturingModeEnabled == FALSE) {
        return STATUS_NOT_SUPPORTED;
    }
...
    return STATUS_SUCCESS;
}
```

In user mode, the API is defined in sysinfoapi.h:

```
WINBASEAPI
BOOL
WINAPI
GetOsManufacturingMode(
    _Out_ PBOOL pbEnabled
);
```

Here's an example of how you might use it:

```
DWORD
DoManufacturingOperation(
    VOID
)
{
    DWORD Error = ERROR_SUCCESS;
    BOOL ManufacturingModeEnabled = FALSE;

    if (!GetOsManufacturingMode(&ManufacturingModeEnabled)) {
        Error = GetLastError();
    }

    if ((Error != ERROR_SUCCESS) ||
        (ManufacturingModeEnabled == FALSE)) {
        return ERROR_NOT_SUPPORTED;
    }
    ...
    return ERROR_SUCCESS;
}
```

Enable or Disable Manufacturing Mode

7/13/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

If you want to test Manufacturing Mode, you can enable it by using ffutool.exe or by using a BCD setting.

Note The recommended way to support manufacturing mode on shipping devices is to have the firmware support the Boot mode management UEFI protocol. For more info on this protocol, see [Boot mode management UEFI protocol](#).

Enable or disable Manufacturing Mode with ffutool.exe

If the device supports the boot mode UEFI protocol, you can enable or disable Manufacturing Mode with ffutool.exe by using the **setBootMode** parameter. The syntax is as follows:

```
ffutool.exe -setBootMode <boot mode> <profile name>
```

- *boot mode* -- an integer that corresponds to the boot mode documented in [EFI_BOOT_MODE_INFO enumeration](#).
- *profile name* -- the name of the manufacturing profile to enable. This is required when the boot mode is set to 1 and is ignored when the boot mode is set to 0.

The following example enables Manufacturing Mode and uses a manufacturing profile named CustomProfile:

```
ffutool.exe -setBootMode 1 CustomProfile
```

The following example disables Manufacturing Mode, allowing the operating system to boot normally:

```
ffutool.exe -setBootMode 0
```

Enable Manufacturing Mode with a BCD setting

You can use the MfgMode BCD setting to test Manufacturing Mode with your custom manufacturing profiles. MfgMode is a string value that is set to the name of your custom manufacturing profile.

For example, you can start the device in Manufacturing Mode using the default manufacturing profile by running the following command on the device:

```
bcdedit.exe /set {default} mfgmode "default"
```

Or, you could start the device in Manufacturing Mode using a custom manufacturing profile named, CustomProfile, by doing the following:

```
bcdedit.exe /set {default} mfgmode "CustomProfile"
```

You can also enable it on an offline device that is plugged in and is in USB mass storage mode. For example:

```
bcdedit.exe /store "D:\EFI\ESP\efi\Microsoft\Boot\BCD" /set {default} mfgmode "default"
```

Note If you're using an older version of bcdedit.exe, you might have to use **custom:22000140** instead of **mfgmode** as the BCD setting name.

Create a Manufacturing Mode BCD package

You can create a package that creates the MfgMode BCD entry and sets it to your custom manufacturing profile. To do this, you must first create an XML file that references the BCD entry:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<BootConfigurationDatabase xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
    xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    xmlns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/phone/2011/10/BootConfiguration">
    <Objects>

        <!-- Global Settings Group -->
        <Object SaveKeyToRegistry="false">
            <FriendlyName>Windows Loader</FriendlyName>
            <Elements>

                <Element>
                    <DataType>
                        <WellKnownType>Manufacturing Mode</WellKnownType>
                    </DataType>
                    <ValueType>
                        <StringValue>Default</StringValue>
                    </ValueType>
                </Element>

            </Elements>
        </Object>

    </Objects>
</BootConfigurationDatabase>
```

After that is created, you can reference it in a package XML file:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<Package xmlns="urn:Microsoft.WindowsPhone/PackageSchema.v8.00"
    Owner="Contoso"
    Component="MfgMode"
    SubComponent="ManufacturingModeBcd"
    ReleaseType="Production"
    Partition="EFIESP"
    OwnerType="OEM">

    <Components>
        <BCDStore Source=".\\exampleBcd.bcd.xml"/>
    </Components>
</Package>
```

Note There is a Partition attribute defining that these BCD entries need to apply to the EFIESP partition. This should be updated to be the partition where the BCD store for your device resides. If this is different from the partition where the main operating system resides, other operations such as adding files and registry keys to the main operating system partition cannot be done from the same package.

To create the package, you can use pkggen.exe (included with the Windows Driver Kit):

```
pkggen.exe exampleBcd.pkg.xml /config:pkggen.cfg.xml
```

Optional features for Manufacturing Mode

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The following features can be used with devices running in Manufacturing Mode.

Note All optional features included with Windows 10 Mobile can be used, too. For more info about the other optional features, see [Optional features for building images](#).

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
BCDEDIT	Adds bcdedit.exe to the image for development support. This should not be included in final retail images.
MFGMODEBCD	Adds the BCD entry to enable Manufacturing Mode in the full OS Image. You should remove this before the device leaves the factory floor.
MFGSTARTUP	Adds startup.bsc file to the Manufacturing Mode image and is needed whenever the MOBILECOREBOOTSH feature is used.
MFGDEVTOOLS	Adds a collection of useful developer tools to the Manufacturing Mode image, such as tlist.exe, sc.exe, shutdown.exe. This should not be included in the final Manufacturing Mode image.
MFGTELNETFTP	Adds Telnet and TFTP servers to the Manufacturing Mode image. You can leave them in the final image for servicing since they only run when the device is in Manufacturing Mode.
MFGTSHELL	Adds TShell capability to the Manufacturing Mode image. You can leave it in the final image for servicing since it only runs when the device is in Manufacturing Mode.
MOBILECOREBOOTSH	Enables the bootsh service (bootshscv) so that features in startup.bsc, such as telnet and ftp, can be used. This is required when the MFGTELNETFTP feature is specified. You can leave it in the image for servicing since it only runs when the device is in Manufacturing Mode.

Boot mode management UEFI protocol

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The boot mode management protocol is used to determine which boot mode the operating system should use when it starts.

EFI_BOOT_MODE_MGMT_PROTOCOL

This section provides a detailed description of the **EFI_BOOT_MODE_MGMT_PROTOCOL**.

GUID

```
#define EFI_BOOT_MODE_MGMT_PROTOCOL_GUID \
{ 0xBE464946, 0x9787, 0x4FEB, { 0xBD, 0x71, 0x14, 0xC1, 0xC5, 0x2D, 0x69, 0xD1 } }
```

Revision number

```
#define EFI_BOOT_MODE_MGMT_PROTOCOL_REVISION 0x00010000
```

Protocol interface structure

```
typedef struct _EFI_BOOT_MODE_MGMT_PROTOCOL {
    UINT32             Revision;
    EFI_SET_BOOT_MODE_INFO SetBootModeInfo;
    EFI_GET_BOOT_MODE_INFO GetBootModeInfo;
} EFI_BOOT_MODE_MGMT_PROTOCOL;
```

Members

Revision

The revision to which the **EFI_BOOT_MODE_MGMT_PROTOCOL** adheres. All future revisions must be backward compatible. If a future version is not backward compatible, a different GUID must be used.

GetBootModeInfo

Determines the boot mode which the operating system should use when it starts. See

[EFI_BOOT_MODE_MGMT_PROTOCOL.GetBootModeInfo](#)

SetBootModeInfo

Specifies the boot mode the operating system should use when it starts, including an optional profile name. See

[EFI_BOOT_MODE_MGMT_PROTOCOL.SetBootModeInfo](#)

Requirements

Header: User generated

Related topics

[Manufacturing Mode](#)

EFI_BOOT_MODE_INFO enumeration

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Defines the possible boot modes that the operating system can use when it starts.

Syntax

```
typedef enum _EFI_OS_BOOT_MODE {  
    EfiOsBootModeFullOs = 0,  
    EfiOsBootModeManufacturingOs = 1  
    EfiOsBootModeMax  
} EFI_OS_BOOT_MODE, *PEFI_OS_BOOT_MODE;
```

Constants

EfiOsBootModeFullOs

The device should boot normally into the operating system.

EfiOsBootModeManufacturingOs

The device is in manufacturing mode.

Related topics

[Boot mode management UEFI protocol](#)

EFI_BOOT_MODE_MGMT_PROTOCOL.GetBootModelInfo

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

This function is used to retrieve the boot mode and optional profile name from the UEFI firmware.

```
typedef EFI_STATUS  
(EFIAPI *EFI_GET_BOOT_MODE_INFO)(  
    IN struct _EFI_BOOT_MODE_MGMT_PROTOCOL *This,  
    OUT EFI_OS_BOOT_MODE *BootMode,  
    IN OUT UINT32 *ProfileNameElements,  
    OUT CHAR16 *ProfileName  
);
```

Parameters

This

[in] A pointer to the **EFI_BOOT_MODE_MGMT_PROTOCOL** instance.

BootMode

[out] A pointer to the enumeration that holds the boot mode of the device.

ProfileNameElements

[in] [out] A pointer to a UINT32 value that receives the number of characters in the profile name.

ProfileName

[out] A pointer to the name of the current profile.

Return values

Returns one of the following status codes:

RETURN CODE	DESCRIPTION
EFI_SUCCESS	Success
EFI_NOT_FOUND	The boot mode data was not found.
EFI_VOLUME_CORRUPTED	A required storage partition is not initialized or is corrupted.
EFI_INVALID_PARAM	An invalid parameter was passed to the function.
EFI_BUFFER_TOO_SMALL	Not enough space in the provided buffer.

Requirements

Header: User generated

Related topics

[Boot mode management UEFI protocol](#)

EFI_BOOT_MODE_MGMT_PROTOCOL.SetBootModelInfo

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

This function supplies a boot mode and optional profile name to the firmware to use on subsequent boots.

```
typedef EFI_STATUS  
(EFIAPI *EFI_SET_BOOT_MODE_INFO)(  
    IN struct _EFI_BOOT_MODE_MGMT_PROTOCOL *This,  
    IN EFI_OS_BOOT_MODE *BootMode,  
    IN UINT32 *ProfileNameElements OPTIONAL,  
    IN CHAR16 *ProfileName OPTIONAL  
);
```

Parameters

This

[in] A pointer to the **EFI_BOOT_MODE_MGMT_PROTOCOL** instance.

BootMode

[in] A pointer to the enumeration that holds the boot mode of the device.

ProfileNameElements

[in] A pointer to a UINT32 value of the number of characters in the profile name to set.

ProfileName

[in] A pointer to the name of the boot mode profile to set.

Return values

Returns one of the following status codes:

RETURN CODE	DESCRIPTION
EFI_SUCCESS	Success
EFI_NOT_FOUND	The boot mode data was not found.
EFI_VOLUME_CORRUPTED	A required storage partition is not initialized or is corrupted.
EFI_INVALID_PARAM	An invalid parameter was passed to the function.
EFI_BAD_BUFFER_SIZE	The ProfileName name string is too long.

Requirements

Header: User generated

Related topics

[Boot mode management UEFI protocol](#)

Microsoft Manufacturing OS

7/13/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Microsoft Manufacturing OS (MMOS), an optimized configuration of the operating system, facilitates efficient manufacturing. MMOS is intended to provide the following capabilities:

- Fast boot time resulting from a smaller image that contains only the code necessary to support manufacturing test execution. The smaller OS image can be flashed quickly, accelerating the manufacturing process.
- The ability to create an OEM-customized MMOS image that includes unique drivers and test applications.
- Support for OEM-developed component-level testing, in addition to full-function quality and calibration testing.
- Access to low-level native APIs for direct testing of phone hardware components.
- The ability to create a mechanism to remotely control the test application and retrieve test logs over a USB communication channel.
- No dependency on display or touch hardware, to allow for headless operation.
- The ability to directly boot into MMOS in a manufacturing environment.
- Automated launch of OEM test applications when MMOS is booted.
- The ability to write to the DPP partition to store unique, per-phone data.
- Battery charging is supported in both UEFI and MMOS. It is set using a feature setting, so partners can turn it on and off as desired. For more info, see [MMOS image definition](#).

Working with MMOS

This section describes how to build and flash an MMOS image.

To work with MMOS, complete the following tasks:

1. Create your test application or other manufacturing tools as packages. For more info, see [Creating packages](#).
2. Create a flashing protocol and add packages to support that functionality to MMOS. For more info, see [Flashing tools](#).
3. Create the MMOS image. For more info, see [MMOS image definition](#).
4. Flash the MMOS image to the device. For more info, see [Flash MMOS to the device](#).
5. Deploy manufacturing applications. For more info, see [Deploy and test a user-mode test application in MMOS](#).
6. Evaluate if you want to create a WIM to be able to run MMOS in RAM. For more info, see [Working with WIM MMOS images](#).

Developing user mode test applications

To create a user mode test applications to test the device in manufacturing, complete the following tasks:

1. Develop the user mode test application using the MMOS library. For more info, see [Manufacturing test environment supported APIs](#) and [Develop MMOS test applications](#).
2. A service can be used to start a user mode test application. If desired, the test application can communicate with a test controller on a PC to control the testing process and to log results.

To configure the service to start automatically when the OS boots, set the **Start** attribute to "Auto" in the service package configuration file.

```
<Components>
  <Service
    Name="SampleMMOSSvc"
    Start="Auto"
    ...
```

This capability is only available in MMOS.

3. Some apps should only be allowed to run in MMOS. You can use an API to determine if MMOS is running or not. For more info, see [Determine if MMOS is running](#).
4. To cause the device to enter the connected standby power state, call the SetScreenOff function. For more info, see [Calling SetScreenOff to enter connected standby](#).

Related topics

[Develop MMOS test applications](#)

MMOS image definition

7/13/2017 • 7 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

This section provides instructions for creating Windows 10 Mobile MMOS images. This process is similar to the process for creating the primary OS image.

Creating an MMOS image

The MMOS image created during this process requires packages from the SoC manufacturer and the OEM in addition to those provided by Microsoft. The OEM packages that are included in the sample MfgOEMInput.xml configuration file are for illustration purposes only. OEMs should remove those example packages and replace them with their own OEM packages. It is up to the OEM to determine which set to include in MMOS. OEMs can add additional OEM packages containing test applications and test controllers, etc.

Important

All the imaging and packaging tools are located in %WPDKCONTENTROOT%\Tools\bin\i386. This path must be included in your environment Path for the tools to work. You must run these tools from a Visual Studio command-line window as an Administrator with access to MakeCat.exe in the environment path.

Creating OEM packages

Adding content to an image is done by creating your own packages. OEM packages can be added to an image by modifying the MfgOEMInput.xml file before creating an image with Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer (ICD).

For instructions on creating packages, see [Creating packages](#).

Specifying features in MMOS

You can use the **Feature** element in the MfgOEMInput.xml file to include optional packages provided by Microsoft. You can modify the input XML file to support different features in MMOS for development, manufacturing, and retail service needs.

Manufacturing development and debugging environment

The following features are defined and supported in the manufacturing development and debugging environment. This environment can be used to create test applications for use in manufacturing.

Important

The following features can only be used for test-signed packages and are not to be included in Customer Care WIM Images.

General features

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
ENABLE_BOOT_KEYS_TEST	Enables a boot menu that is launched by pressing and holding the power button. Use the Volume key to navigate and the Camera key to select. This feature is mutually exclusive with ENABLE_BOOT_KEYS_RETAIL .
MOBILECOREBOOTSH	Enables the bootsh service (bootshscv) so that features in startup.bsc, such as telnet and ftp, can be used.
LABIMAGE	This feature causes the device to enter the FFU download mode automatically when the device is booted. For more info, see Use the flashing tools provided by Microsoft .
MFGTSHLL	Enables TShell in MMOS and manufacturing mode. If you use this, you need to set the TestSirepServer service to auto in your manufacturing profile.

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
OPTIMIZED_BOOT	Modifies the behavior of the OS boot process to start some system processes and services before all device drivers are started. Enabling this feature may decrease boot time, but it may also cause regressions in boot behavior in some scenarios.
BOOTKEYACTIONS_RETAIL	This feature enables a set of button actions for use in retail devices.
DISABLE_FFU_PLAT_ID_CHECK	Disables the device platform validation in the Microsoft flashing application. For more information about the platform check in flashing, see Use the flashing tools provided by Microsoft .
<p>Important The device platform validation for flashing must not be disabled in retail images.</p>	
PERF_TRACING_TOOLS	Contains tools for doing performance analysis, such as tools for stopping and merging ETL tracing.
ENABLE_BOOT_PERF_BASIC_TRACING	Enables boot performance tracing events to be generated.
ENABLE_BOOT_PERF_CPU_PROFILING_TRACING	Enables CPU profiling events on top of what ENABLE_BOOT_PERF_BASIC_TRACING enables.

Debug features

Use the following settings to specify the transport that is used for debugging. If a debugging feature is not specified, debugging will not be enabled in MMOS.

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
KDNETUSB_ON	Includes all kernel debugger transports and enables KDNET over USB.
KDUSB_ON	Includes all kernel debugger transports and enables KDUSB.
<p>Note Do not include either KDUSB_ON or KDNETUSB_ON if you need to enable MTP or IP over USB in the image. If the kernel debugger is enabled in the image and the debug transports are used to connect to the phone, the kernel debugger has exclusive use of the USB port and prevents MTP and IP over USB from working.</p>	
KDSERIAL_ON	Includes all kernel debugger transports and enables KDSERIAL with the following settings: 115200 Baud, 8 bit, no parity.
KD	Includes all kernel debugger transports in the image, but does not enable the kernel debugger.
MFGCRASHDUMPSUPPORT	This feature enables offline crash dump functionality by using the wpcrdmp method for MMOS images. When the device crashes, it activates wpcrdmp and saves a dump of the memory and SOC subsystems to the disk for an offline investigation.

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
MWDBGSRV	This feature adds support for the user mode debug server.

The previous DEBUGGERON feature has been deprecated.

Other debug features

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
	Dumpsize setting features - The following three features must only be used with the Test and Health image types. These features must not be used with retail images. Only one dumpsize setting can be selected at a time.
DUMPSIZE512MB	Specifies a pre-allocated crash dump file size of 592 MB. This is intended for a phone with 512 MB of memory.
DUMPSIZE1G	Specifies a pre-allocated crash dump file size of 1104 MB. This is intended for a phone with 1024 MB of memory.
DUMPSIZE2G	Specifies a pre-allocated crash dump file size of 2128 MB. This is intended for a phone with 2048 MB of memory.
	Dump data storage location - The next two settings control if crash dump data is stored on eMMC or if crash dump data is stored on an SD card. Only one of these settings can be selected at a time. These two features must only be used with the Test, Health and Selfhost image types. These features must not be used with retail images.
DEDICATEDDUMPONEMMC	Specifies that the DedicatedDumpFile location as c:\crashdump\dedicatedddump.sys. Note This cannot be used with DEDICATEDDUMPONSDCARD.
DEDICATEDDUMPONSD	DEDICATEDDUMPONSD – Specifies that the DedicatedDumpFile location as d:\dedicatedddump.sys When DEDICATEDDUMPONSD is used, crash dump will be disabled if the user removes the SD card or if the card is not present when the device booted. To re-enable crash dump: 1. Set this registry key <code>HKLM\System\CurrentControlSet\Control\CrashControl\CrashDumpEnabled</code> to the value of <code>HKLM\System\CurrentControlSet\Control\CrashControl\ExpectedCrashDuration</code> 2. Reboot the device. Note This cannot be used with DEDICATEDDUMPONEEMC.

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
DBGCHKDISABLE	<p>This feature disables debugger connection checking and the debugger connection status is ignored.</p> <p>The effect on the debugger behavior is different depending on the SoC that is being used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For QC8x26 and QC8974 devices, include DBGCHKDISABLE to ensure that offline dumps will be generated even if the device is connected to a debugger. Otherwise, an Offline Dump (Bug Check Code 0x14C dump) will not be created but a raw dump will still be created. For 8960 devices, include DBGCHKDISABLE to ensure that offline dumps will be generated even if the device is connected to a debugger. Otherwise, an Offline Dump (i.e. Bug Check Code 0x14C dump) will not be created.
MSVCRT_DEBUG	<p>This feature adds support for explicit linking of debug c-runtime libs by including msycop120d.dll and msocr120d.dll in the image. For more information, see this topic on MSDN: CRT Library Features.</p>
MWDBGSRV	<p>This feature adds support for the user mode debug server.</p>
NOLIVEDUMPS	<p>Disables non-fatal kernel error reports. These reports contain debugging information for OS and driver developers.</p>
TELEMETRYONSDCARD	<p>This feature enables temporary storage of debugging logs and files on the SD card. This feature is only appropriate for test/self-host images and only on devices with less than 8 GB of free space of primary storage.</p>

Customer Care WIM Images

The following features are supported in MMOS in the manufacturing production environment.

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
ENABLE_BOOT_KEYS_RETAIL	<p>Enables a set of buttons on the phone for use in retail device. This feature is mutually exclusive with ENABLE_BOOT_KEYS_TEST (see the previous table).</p>
ENABLE_IP_OVER_USB	<p>Enables IP Over USB.</p>
ENABLE_USB_COMPOSITE	<p>Enables the systems on a chip (SoC) provided composite USB stack in MMOS.</p>

Dual use features

These MMOS features can be used with either test or retail customer care images.

ENABLE_MMOS_CHARGING	Enables battery charging when running in MMOS.
----------------------	--

UEFI charging must be either disabled or enabled for MMOS to work. Only one of these options can be set at a time.

ENABLE_UEFI_CHARGING	Enables battery charging when running in UEFI.
----------------------	--

DISABLE_UEFI_CHARGING	Disables battery charging when running in UEFI.
-----------------------	---

There are additional features that are defined in other image types of the operating system that are not supported in MMOS. This list is not exhaustive, but it provides examples of features that are not supported in the manufacturing or retail environments:

- TESTINFRASTRUCTURE
- IMGFAKELED
- LABIMAGE
- LOCATIONFRAMEWORKAPP

Configuring the MMOS MfgOEMInput.xml file

1. Open the sample MfgOEMInput.xml file using a text editor. By default, this file is installed to %WPDKCONTENTROOT%\OEMInputSamples\8960Fluid.
2. Add needed MMOS features as described previously.
3. Add any required OEM packages to the file.
4. Locate the **Product** element and confirm that it is set to "Manufacturing OS".

You can optionally update the description to record information about the OS image.

```
<Description>Manufacturing OS generation for ARM.fre</Description>
<Product>Manufacturing OS</Product>
```

5. Locate the **SOC** and **Device** elements and change them as necessary.
6. Add %WPDKCONTENTROOT%\Tools\bin\i386 to your environment **Path** variable.

Flash MMOS to the device

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

After the MMOS image definition is complete, the image can be flashed to the device

1. Flashing on the host side is accomplished through a connection established with WinUSB, the Microsoft generic USB device driver. The necessary drivers are included by default in Windows 8 and Windows 10. In Windows 7, the necessary drivers can be installed from Windows Update. To configure a Windows 7 computer to install the necessary drivers, click **Start**, type “Device Installation Settings”, select **Yes, do this automatically (recommended)**, and then click **Save Changes**.
2. Put the device in flashing mode by holding the volume up button while powering up the device. After the device is in flashing mode, connect the USB cable to your computer.
3. Verify that the device is detected in Device Manager as *WinUsb Device*.
4. To be able to use the ffutool, sign, and ImageSigner tools, add %WPDKCONTENTROOT%\Tools\bin\i386 to your environment **Path** variable.
5. Prior to flashing the FFU file to the device, you must sign the FFU file using the following syntax in the command prompt. The cat file is generated with the FFU, when using the ImgGen tool.

```
c:\>sign <path to cat file>
c:\>ImageSigner SIGN <path to ffu> <path to cat file>
```

For example:

```
c:\>sign MMOS.cat
c:\>ImageSigner SIGN MMOS.ffu MMOS.cat
```

6. At a command prompt, run the ffutool command, which uses the following syntax:

```
c:\>ffutool -flash <path to ffu image file>
```

For example:

```
c:\>ffutool -flash C:\MMOS\MMOS.ffu
```

7. You should see output similar to the following.

```
Logging to ETL file: C:\Users\Nancy\AppData\Local\Temp\ffutool8276.etl
Found device:
Name: Contoso.DCD6000 Phone.DCD6000
ID: 00000045-14ca-3016-8fbe-120000000000
Flashing: MMOS.ffu
[=====] 100.00%
Transferred 157.88 MB in 50.56 seconds, overall rate 3.12 MB/s.
```

8. The device will reboot into MMOS. The display on the device will show a small rotating graphic.

Working with WIM MMOS images

7/13/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can temporarily copy a WIM (Windows Imaging) image over to a device and then boot to that image running in volatile RAM memory. This capability can be used to service the device using MMOS. For more info about MMOS, see [Microsoft Manufacturing OS](#). The advantage of using this approach for servicing is that you will not need to reserve space on the retail OS for code that is only used in servicing. Minimizing the space that is consumed by the OS is an important consideration in low cost devices.

Important

Only MMOS test images are currently supported. Retail signing is not currently supported.

Creating a WIM Image

Before you create a WIM image, you must complete the steps described in the following topics:

[MMOS image definition](#)

In addition, follow these guidelines to prepare an image so that it will operate properly when converted to a WIM image.

- The following XML shows an example of the Microsoft features that can be used in a test WIM Image.

```
<Microsoft>
  <Feature>MOBILECOREBOOTSH</Feature>
  <Feature>ENABLE_BOOT_KEYS_TEST</Feature>
  <Feature>ENABLE_IP_OVER_USB</Feature>
</Microsoft>
```

You may want to add additional features such as battery charging (ENABLE_MMOS_CHARGING) depending on your needs. For additional info about the MMOS features, see [MMOS image definition](#).

- Do not include packages that access other partitions on the device. Because the WIM is loaded and running in RAM, it is not able to access other partitions and the OS cannot contain packages that reference other partitions.

After you complete the steps in the preceding topics, use the **ImgToWIM** command to convert the signed FFU image to a WIM image. The ImgToWim executable is located in %WPDKCONTENTROOT%\Tools\bin\i386. The usage is summarized here.

```
ImgToWIM <FFUFileName> <WIMFileName>
```

When you enter the **ImgToWim** command, you should see output that is similar to the following.

```
C:\TestWIM>ImgToWim MMOS.ffu MMOSWim.wim
Reading the image file: MMOS.ffu
ETW Log Path: C:\Users\USER1\AppData\Local\Temp\storage_session_1210.etl
OS Version: Microsoft Windows NT 6.2.9200.0
OpenDiskInternal: Creating empty virtual disk.
No mounted WP disks found.
Storage Service: Created a new image in 0.7 seconds.
AddAccessPath: Mount point for volume MainOS: C:\Users\USER1\AppData\Local\Temp
\oji20cvi.mq5.mnt\.

Creating WIM at 'C:\TestWIM\MMOSWim.wim' ...

Capturing 'MainOS'...
WIM creation complete.
DismountFullFlashImage:[2.87] Cleaning up temporary paths.
CleanupTemporaryPaths: Cleaning up temporary path C:\Users\USER1\AppData\Local\
Temp\oji20cvi.mq5.mnt\.
Storage Service: Dismounting the image in 2.9 seconds.
```

Booting from a WIM Image

Use the FFUTool **WIM** option to boot from a WIM image. The usage is summarized here.

```
ffutool -WIM <WIMFileName.wim>
```

To boot the device from a WIM image, complete the following steps.

1. Set up the PC side flashing tools.
2. Put the device in flashing mode by holding the volume up button while powering up the device. After the device is in flashing mode, connect the USB cable to your computer.
3. Use the **FFUTool** command with the **-WIM** option to boot a device from a WIM image. It is located in %WPKCONTENTROOT%\Tools\bin\i386. When you enter the **FFUTool -WIM** command, you should see output that is similar to the following.

```
C:\> ffutool -wim MMOSWim.wim
Found device:
Name: Contoso.MSM8960.JD301_ATT.3.2.1
ID: 00000011-f151-a509-0000-000000000000
Booting WIM: MMOSWim.wim
WIM transfer completed in 26.550073 seconds.
```

The ffutool sends a WIM opcode to the device, along with information about the size of the image. Next a RAM buffer is allocated that will hold image. The ffutool then transfers the WIM image to the device. Once it's fully transferred, the device boots into the WIM image in memory.

Note

The current MMOS WIM images may not display the rotating disc graphic but MMOS is still functional.

Creating a secure MMOS WIM image

7/13/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use the SecWimTool to create a secure WIM image that can be used to service retail devices.

Before you can create a secure WIM, you must first create the WIM image itself. For info about how to create a WIM image, see [Working with WIM MMOS images](#).

To use the MMOS WIM in retail, it will need to be signed using retail certificates. More info will be provided in a later release of this documentation about how to work with the retail images.

For the secure WIM to run on the device, the signing certificates must match the certificates in the Platform Key (PK) that is provisioned on the device.

Installing the needed certificates on the phone

Before you run the tools, you must first provision the appropriate certificates on the device. To become familiar with SecWimTool, partners can use the secure boot *test* tool to provision test (non-retail) certificates on the device. Use the secure boot *retail* tool for retail device.

Creating a secure MMOS WIM image

To create a secure wim image, complete the following steps.

1. Open an elevated developer prompt in the directory that contains the output from the ImgToWim image generation process. For info about how to create a WIM image, see [Working with WIM MMOS images](#).

Note

The image generation executables are located in %WPKCONTENTROOT%\Tools\bin\i386. You can use the `set` command to add that path to your environment.

2. The platform ID must be used to create the WIM for a specific platform. The platform ID is set in using a device platform XML file.

You can display the platform ID using the ffutool command with the **-list** option.

```
C:\> ffutool -list
Name: Contoso.DCD9X0X.BD301_ATT.3.2.1
ID: 00000011-f151-a509-0000-FF0000000000
```

Build the unsigned secure WIM targeted for a specific platform using the **-platform** command option as shown here. No output is returned if the command completes successfully.

```
C:\> SecWimTool -build MMOSwim.wim MMOS wim.secwim -platform Contoso.DCD9X0X.BD301_ATT.3.2.1
```

3. Extract the catalog from the secure WIM image. No output is returned if the command completes successfully.

```
C:\> SecWimTool -extractcat MMOSwim.secwim MMOSwim.cat
```

4. You can sign the WIM with test certificates to test the WIM process. For a retail secure WIM, the FFU must be

signed by Microsoft.

Important

Information about signing with the final retail certificates will be provided in a later release of the documentation.

To sign the catalog using the test image certificate, use this command.

```
C:\> sign /pk MMOSwim.cat
```

This command will generate output that is similar to the following.

```
signtool.exe sign /v /u 1.3.6.1.4.1.311.76.5.10 /r "Microsoft Testing Root Certificate Authority 2010" /fd SHA256 /s my /c "1.3.6.1.4.1.311.21.8.7587021.7518 74.11030412.6202749.3702260.207.4167089.4524209" "MMOSwim.cat"
The following certificate was selected:
Issued to: User1
Issued by: MSIT Test CodeSign CA 3
Expires: Sat Jun 21 15:05:01 2014
SHA1 hash: F571C183F768638B424A59772A1AFB1168164AFC

Done Adding Additional Store
Successfully signed: MMOSwim.cat

Number of files successfully Signed: 1
Number of warnings: 0
Number of errors: 0
signed: "MMOSwim.cat"
Sign.Cmd RC=0
```

5. Replace the existing catalog with a signed catalog. No output is returned if the command completes successfully.

```
C:\> SecWimTool -replacecat flashwim.cat MMOSwim.secwim
```

6. Place the device in flashing mode.

7. Flash the WIM to the device to test it using the FFUTool.

```
C:\> ffutool -wim MMOSwim.secwim
```

The command will generate output that is similar to the following.

```
Found device:
Name: Contoso.MSM8X0X.BD301_ATT.3.2.1
ID: 00000011-f151-a509-0000-FF0000000000
Booting WIM: MMOSwim.secwim
WIM transfer completed in 26.550073 seconds.
```

Working with serial numbers

The serial number option can be used when including tools that should only be used for a specific device.

Serial Number- The serial number is a unique ID for the phone that is generated automatically. You can display the serial number using the ffutool command with the *-serial* option.

To build a secure WIM targeted for a specific device, use the `--serial` command option as shown here.

```
C:\> SecWimTool -build MMOSwim.wim MMOS wim.secwim -serial 010005000000000000000000000000001234
```

Troubleshooting

When you flash the image if the PK doesn't match, you will receive this message.

An FFU error occurred: Device returned WIM boot failure status code 0x80000004.

SecWimTool command line reference

The following summarizes the command syntax and the four command-line options for SecWimTool.

SecWimTool <command> <arguments>

-build - Packs the specified WIM into a secwim that is suitable for signing and transferring to a retail device.

- *Platform* - Includes targeting information for a specific platform type that the WIM is intended for. This option must be used to target the WIM for a specific platform.
 - *Serial* - Includes the serial number of a specific device the WIM will be used on. This option can be used when including tools that should only be used for a specific device.

```
SecWimTool -build <WIM> <output file> [-platform <ID>] [-serial <serial number>]
```

-extractcat - Retrieves the catalog from the secure WIM file, and writes it either to the output file (if specified) or stdout.

```
secwim -extractcat <path to .secwim> [<output file>]
```

-replacecat - Replaces the catalog in the specified .secwim with the contents of the new catalog.

```
secwim -replacecat <path to catalog> <path to .secwim>
```

-? - Displays command line help. Use `secwimtool -<command> -?` for command level help.

Related topics

Working with WIM MMOS images

Develop MMOS test applications

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Developing user-mode tests in MMOS is very similar to developing user-mode applications.

Test development in MMOS

Use the following steps to create, deploy, and test a MMOS test application.

1. Create an app.
2. Add code to test the desired component and display or send those results as desired. For example, this sample code can be used to display a console message in MMOS.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <Windows.h>

int main()
{
    int i = 0;
    for(;;)
    {
        wprintf(L"Test");
        Sleep(500);
        if (i == 12)
        {
            wprintf(L"Done");
            break;
        }
        i++;
    }
    return 0;
}
```

3. Build the test application in Visual Studio.
4. Locate the binaries generated when you built the app. Typically they are in a subdirectory of the projects folder, such as `\MyProject\arm\debug`.
5. Sign the executable by using the `sign.cmd` script in the `%WPDKCONTENTROOT%\Tools\bin\i386` folder, as shown in the example below.

```
sign.cmd ApplicationForDrivers.exe
```

6. To test your app, copy it to the device in the `C:\Data\test` directory by using FTP and run it via Telnet. For more info, see [Deploy and test a user-mode test application in MMOS](#).

Libraries in MMOS

Adding a lib in MMOS is similar to adding a lib in the production OS. Currently, this default lib location for the kit is configured in Visual Studio.

```
$(WPKIInstallDir)lib\$(KitOs)\wp_um\$(Platform)  
$(WPKIInstallDir)Tools\WPE\CRT\lib\$(Platform)
```

To add a lib in Visual Studio, select **Project > Properties > Configuration Properties > VC++ Directories > Include Directories**. To use the MMOS libraries, append the following directory to the path.

```
$(WPDKContentRoot)include\mmos
```

Add the arm directory. In Visual Studio, select **Project > Properties > Configuration Properties > Linker > General > Additional Library Directories**. To use the MMOS libraries, append the following directories to the path.

```
$(WPDKContentRoot)lib\win8\mmos\arm
```

Security in MMOS

In development environments, user-mode test binaries can be test signed (not production signed). Use the process described in [Sign binaries and packages](#) to test sign the binaries.

If the test binaries are not signed and code integrity checking is active as it normally is, you will receive an error message similar to the following in the debug window.

```
* This is not a failure in CI, but a problem with the failing binary.  
* Please contact the binary owner for getting the binary correctly signed.
```

Deploy and test a user-mode test application in MMOS

7/13/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

To copy files to an MMOS image and run programs, you can use FTP and Telnet over a Virtual Ethernet connection.

Important

The USB drivers and protocols described here must not be used in manufacturing or retail servicing. They are provided as a convenience for engineering bring-up.

Preparing the device

Engineering builds of the OS typically include Ping, FTP, and Telnet servers. To confirm that these are active in the OS, examine the startup configuration or establish a debug connection to MMOS to view the files that are loaded.

To configure a device to support TCP/IP over USB, you must install the necessary tools and use the BCDEdit tool to modify the device's boot options that are stored in the BCD file.

Running Virtual Ethernet and determining the IP address of the device

Virtual Ethernet creates a connection between the device's USB connection and the TCP/IP transport on the PC. connecting the device or powering it on, start Virtual Ethernet on the PC. VirtEth.exe is located in the "%ProgramFiles(x86)%\Microsoft Windows Phone 8 KDBG Connectivity\bin" folder.

A Virtual Ethernet console window will open. Leave this window open to maintain the connection to the phone; closing the window closes the connection.

- With Virtual Ethernet running, connect and power on the phone. When the device is connected, you will see lines of output that include the MAC address of the device. Virtual Ethernet reports the device's MAC address in output similar to the following:

```
NIC UP: 00-11-38-EA-88-7E : SUCCESS
```

Note the 12-digit device MAC address from the VirtEth console window and use it in the next step to determine the device's TCP/IP address.

- Open a new command-prompt window and type **arp -a**. Output similar to the following will be displayed.

```
C:\>arp -a

Interface: 10.178.1.40 --- 0xb
  Internet Address      Physical Address      Type
    10.178.0.1            cc-ef-48-a7-6f-3f    dynamic
    10.178.1.94           00-11-38-ea-88-7e    dynamic
    10.178.3.255          ff-ff-ff-ff-ff-ff    static
    ...
```

Use the IP address that is associated with the device MAC address to connect to the device via FTP and Telnet.

Establishing an FTP connection

To browse and copy files via FTP:

- Open Windows Explorer and type: **FTP:\W.X.Y.Z** in the address bar, replacing *W.X.Y.Z* with the IP address of the device.

You should see the files on the device listed. Use Windows Explorer to copy files to or from the device, such as executable test programs or logs of test results.

To close the FTP connection, unmount the phone file system by selecting **Safely Remove Hardware** in the Windows notification area.

Establishing a Telnet session

Make sure Telnet is enabled on the PC. To enable Telnet in the Windows operating system, select **Control Panel > Programs and Features > Turn Windows features on or off**. In the Windows Features list, select **Telnet Client**, and then click **OK**.

To establish a Telnet session with the device:

- Open a command-prompt window and type: **telnet W.X.Y.Z**, replacing *W.X.Y.Z* with the IP address of the device

The command prompt window that appears is cmd.exe running on the device. From that command prompt, you can run commands on the device, such as executing test applications that you included in the MMOS image.

Troubleshooting: Confirming TCP/IP connectivity

You can use **ping** to test the TCP/IP connection with the device:

- Open a command-prompt window and type: **ping W.X.Y.Z**, replacing *W.X.Y.Z* with the IP address of the device

The command should indicate that the packets were returned. If this does not work, one common issue to investigate is the firewall configuration on the PC.

Debugging in MMOS

To enable debugger support in MMOS, both communication and OS settings must be modified.

Enabling debug support

To enable debugging support in MMOS, specify the following internal optional feature in the MfgOEMInput.xml file.

```
<Microsoft>
  ...
  <Feature>KDNETUSB_ON</Feature>
  ...
</Microsoft>
```

This adds the required packages to the MMOS image. For more info about working with the MfgOEMInput.xml file, see [MMOS image definition](#).

Enabling communication settings

To enable the OS, communication settings must be changed after the image is flashed.

Establishing the debug connection

To connect to MMOS for debugging, use WinDbg to specify the key and port that you configured earlier by using BCDEdit.

```
windbg.exe -k net:Port=50000,Key=1.2.3.4
```

Determine if MMOS is running

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can check to see if MMOS is running the same way that you check when running in Manufacturing Mode. For more info, see [Detect Manufacturing Mode](#).

Note You should not query the ManufacturingOS registry setting as this key is obsolete.

Manufacturing test environment supported APIs

6/6/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The manufacturing test environment (MTE) supports APIs and techniques that are designed for use only in manufacturing. This section describes the specific libraries that are supported in MTE.

MMOS.Lib

MMOS.Lib provides a mirror interface to the Windows 8 mincore.lib. For general information about mincore.lib, see [Windows API sets](#).

The primary user-mode native APIs for use in MTE are defined in the MMOS library (.lib) files installed by the Windows Driver Kit (WDK) as %WPDKCONTENTROOT%\Lib\ folder.

Supported APIs

The following sections provide a preview of the features that the provided MMOS APIs allow for testing. Additional information about the MMOS supported APIs will be provided in a later release of this documentation. The API header sub-folders and Windows SDK headers are located in the "%ProgramFiles(x86)%\Windows Kits\10\include\" folder. These APIs can be used in user-mode applications for MMOS. For more info on creating and running MMOS applications, see the [Develop MMOS test applications](#) topic.

Micophone, audio and audio routing

The audio and audio routing APIs allow test apps to test the audio and audio routing capabilities. Some scenarios that test apps can test are playing frequencies on each of the different audio end-points. The microphone can be tested using the audio APIs. The following header files contain the audio and audio routing APIs.

- Mmos\audiotunerapi.h
- Mmos\audiotunerdef.h
- Mmos\audiotunerprop.h
- Km\ksmedia_phone.h
- Um\initguid.h
- Um\avrt.h (Windows SDK)
- ctime.h (Windows SDK)
- Um\audioclient.h (Windows SDK)
- Um\mmdeviceapi.h (Windows SDK)
- Um\functiondiscoverykeys.h (Windows SDK)

Display

You can use the Direct3D to display information. For general info, see this MSDN link [Direct3D 11 Graphics](#). The following header files contain the D3D APIs.

- Um\D3DWrapper.h
- Um\D3D11.h (Windows SDK)

Camera

You can use the Media Foundation CaptureEngine APIs to work with the camera. For general info about working with Media Foundation, see [Media Foundation Programming Reference](#) on MSDN. For information about the IMFCaptureEngine interface, see this MSDN topic, [IMFCaptureEngine interface](#). The following header files contain interfaces that may be useful for camera testing.

- Um\mfapi.h
- Um\mfobjects.h
- Um\mfidl.h
- Um\mfreadwrite.h
- Um\mfcaptureengine.h
- Um\wincodec.h

Sensors

For more information about sensors and APIs that are used for testing in MMOS, see the Sensors topic.

LED

The LED APIs allow test apps to test the notification LED by calling different IOCTLs to cause the notification LED to turn on, turn off, or blink. The following header file contains the LED APIs.

- Mmos\hwn.h

SD Card

The SD card APIs allow test apps to test the SD card driver by calling different IOCTLs to test cases such as reading and writing to the card. The following header file contains the SD card APIs.

- Um\sffdisk.h

Touch

For more info about testing the Touch controller, see the [Access the touch interface in MMOS](#) topic. The following header files contain the touch APIs.

- Um\InputDriverRawSamples.h
- Um\WinPhoneInput.h

Vibrator

The vibrator APIs allow test apps to test the vibrator on the device by calling different IOCTLs. The IOCTLs allow the apps to test various speeds and periods of the vibrator driver on the device. The following header file contains the vibrator APIs.

- Mmos\hwn.h

Hardware buttons

For more information about hardware buttons, see the Hardware buttons topic. The following header file contains the hardware button APIs.

- UM\ntddkbd.h

FM radio

The FM radio APIs allow test apps to test the FM radio tuner on the phone by calling FM IOCTLs. The IOCTLs allow apps to test various scenarios such as tuning to a frequency or seeking. The following header files contain the FM radio APIs.

- Mmos\audiotunerapi.h
- Mmos\audiotunerprop.h

Wi-Fi

For more information about Wi-Fi testing APIs, see the [Wi-Fi manufacturing API](#) topic. The following header file contains the Wi-Fi APIs.

- Um\wifimte.h

Related topics

[Calling SetScreenOff to enter connected standby](#)

Manufacturing Mode Phone Call Testing APIs

7/19/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

These APIs are used by phone manufacturers to test phone call functionality while the device is booted into Manufacturing Mode.

In this section

TOPIC	DESCRIPTION
MfgPhoneDial	Causes the phone to dial a call.
MfgPhoneEndCall	Ends a phone call.
MfgPhoneGetSimLineCount	Gets the number of currently detected SIM slots.
MfgPhoneGetSimLineDetail	Retrieves a struct that contains the current details for a given SIM-based phone line.
MfgPhoneGetSpeaker	Returns a boolean indicating whether the phone speaker is being used, as opposed to the handset earphone.
MfgPhoneInitialize	Initializes the phone system and the internal state of the API implemented by DLL.
MfgPhoneSetSimLineEventNotifyCallback	Callback-based notification mechanism for receiving events on SIM-based phone lines.
MfgPhoneSetSpeaker	Sets a value indicating whether the phone speaker should be used, as opposed to the handset earphone.
MfgPhoneUninitialize	Uninitializes the phone system and the internal state of the API implemented by DLL.
MFGPHONE_CALLSTATUS	Provides information about the status of the call.
MFGPHONE_LINESYSTEMTYPE	Provides information about the type of line system.
MFGPHONE_REGISTRATIONSTATE	Provides information about the state of the phone line? call?

TOPIC	DESCRIPTION
MFGPHONE_SIMLINEDETAIL	Provides information about a particular SIM-based phone line.
MFGPHONE_SIMSTATE	Provides information about the state of the SIM.

MfgPhoneDial function

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Causes the phone to dial a call.

MfgPhoneDial is for phone manufacturers and can only be called in Manufacturing Mode.

Syntax

```
HRESULT APIENTRY MfgPhoneDial(
    _In_     UINT      SimSlot,
    _In_     PCWSTR   DialNumber
);
```

Parameters

SimSlot [in]

The SIM-based phone line to use.

DialNumber [in]

The phone number to dial.

Return value

S_OK is returned upon success and an error code is returned otherwise.

Requirements

Header	Mfgphone.h (include Mfgphone.h)
DLL	MFGPHONE.DLL

MfgPhoneEndCall function

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Ends a phone call.

MfgPhoneEndCall is for phone manufacturers and can only be called in Manufacturing Mode.

Syntax

```
HRESULT APIENTRY MfgPhoneEndCall(
    _In_ UINT SimSlot
);
```

Parameters

SimSlot [in]

The SIM-based phone line whose call should be ended.

Return value

S_OK is returned upon success and an error code is returned otherwise.

Requirements

Header	Mfgphone.h (include Mfgphone.h)
DLL	MFGPHONE.DLL

MfgPhoneGetSimLineCount function

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Gets the number of currently detected SIM slots.

MfgPhoneGetSimLineCount is for phone manufacturers and can only be called in Manufacturing Mode.

Syntax

```
HRESULT APIENTRY MfgPhoneGetSimLineCount(
    _Out_ PUINT SimLineCount
);
```

Parameters

SimLineCount [out]

Pointer to a **UINT** that specifies the number of currently detected SIM slots. Both active and inactive SIM slots are included in the count.

Return value

S_OK is returned upon success and an error code is returned otherwise.

Requirements

Header	Mfgphone.h (include Mfgphone.h)
DLL	MFGPHONE.DLL

MfgPhoneGetSimLineDetail function

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Retrieves a struct that contains the current details for a given SIM-based phone line.

MfgPhoneGetSimLineDetail is for phone manufacturers and can only be called in Manufacturing Mode.

Syntax

```
HRESULT APIENTRY MfgPhoneGetSimLineDetail(
    _In_     UINT             SimSlot,
    _Out_    PMFGPHONE_SIMLINEDETAILED SimLineDetail,
    _In_     ULONG            SimLineDetailSize,
    _Out_    PULONG           RequiredSize
);
```

Parameters

SimSlot [in]

Specifies the SIM-based phone line.

SimLineDetail [out]

Pointer to a **MFGPHONE_SIMLINEDETAILED** struct that contains the current details for the SIM-based phone line specified by *SimSlot*.

SimLineDetailSize [in]

Specifies the size of the **SimLineDetail** parameter.

RequiredSize [out]

Specifies the required size for the **SimLineDetail** parameter.

Return value

S_OK is returned upon success and an error code is returned otherwise.

Requirements

Header	Mfgphone.h (include Mfgphone.h)
DLL	MFGPHONE.DLL

MfgPhoneGetSpeaker function

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Returns a boolean indicating whether the phone speaker is being used, as opposed to the handset earphone.

MfgPhoneGetSpeaker is for phone manufacturers and can only be called in Manufacturing Mode.

Syntax

```
HRESULT APIENTRY MfgPhoneGetSpeaker(
    _Out_ PBOOL pbSpeakerOn
);
```

Parameters

pbSpeakerOn [out]

TRUE if the speaker is being used, otherwise FALSE.

Return value

S_OK is returned upon success and an error code is returned otherwise.

Requirements

Header	Mfgphone.h (include Mfgphone.h)
DLL	MFGPHONE.DLL

MfgPhoneInitialize function

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Initializes the phone system and the internal state of the API implemented by DLL.

MfgPhoneInitialize is for phone manufacturers and can only be called in Manufacturing Mode.

Syntax

```
HRESULT APIENTRY MfgPhoneInitialize(void);
```

Parameters

This function has no parameters.

Return value

S_OK is returned upon success and an error code is returned otherwise.

Requirements

Header	Mfgphone.h (include Mfgphone.h)
DLL	MFGPHONE.DLL

MfgPhoneSetSimLineEventNotifyCallback function

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Callback-based notification mechanism for receiving events on SIM-based phone lines.

MfgPhoneSetSimLineEventNotifyCallback is for phone manufacturers and can only be called in Manufacturing Mode.

Syntax

```
HRESULT APIENTRY MfgPhoneSetSimLineEventNotifyCallback(
    _In_ MFGPHONE_SIMLINEEVENT_NOTIFY_CALLBACK  Callback,
    _In_ PVOID                         Context
);
```

Parameters

Callback [in]

The callback function to call when the event occurs.

Context [in]

The context.

Return value

S_OK is returned upon success and an error code is returned otherwise.

Requirements

Header	Mfgphone.h (include Mfgphone.h)
DLL	MFGPHONE.DLL

MfgPhoneSetSpeaker function

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Sets a value indicating whether the phone speaker should be used, as opposed to the handset earphone.

MfgPhoneSetSpeaker is for phone manufacturers and can only be called in Manufacturing Mode.

Syntax

```
HRESULT APIENTRY MfgPhoneSetSpeaker(
    _In_ BOOL bSpeakerOn
);
```

Parameters

bSpeakerOn [in]

TRUE if the speaker should be used, otherwise false.

Return value

S_OK is returned upon success and an error code is returned otherwise.

Requirements

Header	Mfgphone.h (include Mfgphone.h)
DLL	MFGPHONE.DLL

MfgPhoneUninitialize function

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Uninitializes the phone system and the internal state of the API implemented by DLL.

MfgPhoneUninitialize is for phone manufacturers and can only be called in Manufacturing Mode.

Syntax

```
HRESULT APIENTRY MfgPhoneUninitialize(void);
```

Parameters

This function has no parameters.

Return value

S_OK is returned upon success and an error code is returned otherwise.

Requirements

Header	Mfgphone.h (include Mfgphone.h)
DLL	MFGPHONE.DLL

MFGPHONE_CALLSTATUS enumeration

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Provides information about the status of the call.

MFGPHONE_CALLSTATUS is for phone manufacturers and can only be called in Manufacturing Mode.

Syntax

```
typedef enum _MFGPHONE_CALLSTATUS {
    MFGPHONE_CALLSTATUS_UNKNOWN    = 0,
    MFGPHONE_CALLSTATUS_IDLE      = 1,
    MFGPHONE_CALLSTATUS_CALLING   = 2,
    MFGPHONE_CALLSTATUS_INCOMING   = 3,
    MFGPHONE_CALLSTATUS_ACTIVE     = 4
} MFGPHONE_CALLSTATUS;
```

Constants

MFGPHONE_CALLSTATUS_UNKNOWN

The call status is unknown.

MFGPHONE_CALLSTATUS_IDLE

The call status is idle.

MFGPHONE_CALLSTATUS_CALLING

The call status is calling.

MFGPHONE_CALLSTATUS_INCOMING

The call status is incoming.

MFGPHONE_CALLSTATUS_ACTIVE

The call status is active.

Requirements

Header	Mfgphone.h (include Mfgphone.h)
--------	---------------------------------

MFGPHONE_LINESYSTEMTYPE enumeration

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Provides information about the type of line system.

MFGPHONE_LINESYSTEMTYPE is for phone manufacturers and can only be called in Manufacturing Mode.

Syntax

```
typedef enum _MFGPHONE_LINESYSTEMTYPE {  
    MFGPHONE_LINESYSTEMTYPE_UNKNOWN    = 0,  
    MFGPHONE_LINESYSTEMTYPE_GSM        = 1,  
    MFGPHONE_LINESYSTEMTYPE_CDMA       = 2,  
    MFGPHONE_LINESYSTEMTYPE_IMS        = 3  
} MFGPHONE_LINESYSTEMTYPE;
```

Constants

MFGPHONE_LINESYSTEMTYPE_UNKNOWN

The line system type is unknown.

MFGPHONE_LINESYSTEMTYPE_GSM

The type of line system is GSM.

MFGPHONE_LINESYSTEMTYPE_CDMA

The type of line system is CDMA.

MFGPHONE_LINESYSTEMTYPE_IMS

The type of line system is IMS.

Requirements

Header	Mfgphone.h (include Mfgphone.h)
--------	---------------------------------

MFGPHONE_REGISTRATIONSTATE enumeration

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Provides information about the state of the phone line? call?

MFGPHONE_REGISTRATIONSTATE is for phone manufacturers and can only be called in Manufacturing Mode.

Syntax

```
typedef enum _MFGPHONE_REGISTRATIONSTATE {  
    MFGPHONE_REGISTRATIONSTATE_UNKNOWN      = 0,  
    MFGPHONE_REGISTRATIONSTATE_NOSIGNAL     = 1,  
    MFGPHONE_REGISTRATIONSTATE_UNREGISTERED = 2,  
    MFGPHONE_REGISTRATIONSTATE_REGISTERING  = 3,  
    MFGPHONE_REGISTRATIONSTATE_REGISTERED   = 4,  
    MFGPHONE_REGISTRATIONSTATE_DENIED       = 5  
} MFGPHONE_REGISTRATIONSTATE;
```

Constants

MFGPHONE_REGISTRATIONSTATE_UNKNOWN

The registration state is not known.

MFGPHONE_REGISTRATIONSTATE_NOSIGNAL

There is no signal to detect the registration state.

MFGPHONE_REGISTRATIONSTATE_UNREGISTERED

The registration state is unregistered.

MFGPHONE_REGISTRATIONSTATE_REGISTERING

The registration state is registering.

MFGPHONE_REGISTRATIONSTATE_REGISTERED

The registration state is registered.

MFGPHONE_REGISTRATIONSTATE_DENIED

The registration state is denied.

Requirements

Header	Mfgphone.h (include Mfgphone.h)
--------	---------------------------------

MFGPHONE_SIMLINEDETAIL structure

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Provides information about a particular SIM-based phone line. This **struct** is retrieved via the [MfgPhoneGetSimLineDetail](#) function.

MFGPHONE_SIMLINEDETAIL is for phone manufacturers and can only be called in Manufacturing Mode.

Syntax

```
typedef struct _MFGPHONE_SIMLINEDETAIL {  
    UINT             SimSlot;  
    MFGPHONE_SIMSTATE   SimState;  
    MFGPHONE_REGISTRATIONSTATE RegistrationState;  
    WCHAR [64]        NetworkName;  
    MFGPHONE_LINESYSTEMTYPE LineSystemType;  
    UINT             SignalStrength;  
    MFGPHONE_CALLSTATUS   CallStatus;  
} MFGPHONE_SIMLINEDETAIL, *PMFGPHONE_SIMLINEDETAIL;
```

Members

SimSlot

The SIM-based phone line to which the details in this struct pertain.

SimState

An **enum** specifying the current state of the SIM-based phone line.

RegistrationState

An **enum** specifying the current registration state of the phone line.

NetworkName

WCHAR containing the name of the network.

LineSystemType

An **enum** specifying the line system type of the phone line.

SignalStrength

Unsigned Integer containing the signal strength of the phone line.

CallStatus

An **enum** specifying the call status of the phone line.

Requirements

Header	Mfgphone.h (include Mfgphone.h)
--------	---------------------------------

MFGPHONE_SIMSTATE enumeration

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Provides information about the state of the SIM.

MFGPHONE_SIMSTATE is for phone manufacturers and can only be called in Manufacturing Mode.

Syntax

```
typedef enum _MFGPHONE_SIMSTATE {  
    MFGPHONE_SIMSTATE_UNKNOWN      = 0,  
    MFGPHONE_SIMSTATE_NONE        = 1,  
    MFGPHONE_SIMSTATE_ACTIVE      = 2,  
    MFGPHONE_SIMSTATE_INVALID     = 3,  
    MFGPHONE_SIMSTATE_LOCKED      = 4,  
    MFGPHONE_SIMSTATE_DISABLED    = 5  
} MFGPHONE_SIMSTATE;
```

Constants

MFGPHONE_SIMSTATE_UNKNOWN

The SIM state is unknown.

MFGPHONE_SIMSTATE_NONE

The SIM state is none. There is no SIM.

MFGPHONE_SIMSTATE_ACTIVE

The SIM state is active.

MFGPHONE_SIMSTATE_INVALID

The SIM state is invalid.

MFGPHONE_SIMSTATE_LOCKED

The SIM state is locked.

MFGPHONE_SIMSTATE_DISABLED

The SIM state is disabled.

Requirements

Header	Mfgphone.h (include Mfgphone.h)
--------	---------------------------------

Access the touch interface in MMOS

7/13/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The touch controller output can be captured and used in MMOS with proper touch driver support. The touch interface sample illustrates how you can gather touch coordinates in MMOS to implement manufacturing tests.

Touch sample requirements

The sample code requires that the Microsoft.Input.TchHID.spkg package to be included in the image (either the Main OS or MMOS). The Microsoft.Input.TchHID.spkg package includes tchhid.sys, which implements the **CreateFile** and **Readfile** functions used by the sample code.

Touch sample code

This sample user-mode application displays the touch coordinates received by the touch screen driver.

The sample app uses the **CreateFile** function to open an exclusive handle to the device to receive raw touch samples. The device name "TouchRaw0" is exposed by tchhid.sys, the HID touch class driver provided by Microsoft and included in Microsoft.Input.TchHID.spkg.

```
#define TOUCH_RAW_SAMPLES_DEVICE_NAME L"\\.\\"TouchRaw0"
```

After the handle is successfully opened, the application loops until a touch contact point is received near the top-left corner of the screen. The application reads and displays the coordinates and the associated touch contact ID.

```
#include "sample.h"
#include <cfgmgr32.h>
#include <strsafe.h>

int main()
{
    HANDLE testDriver = INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE;
    BOOL exit = FALSE;
    INT32 i;
    TouchInfo touchInfo = {0};

    //
    // Open an exclusive handle to the device to get raw samples
    //
    testDriver = CreateFile(
        L"\\.\\"TouchRaw0",
        GENERIC_READ,
        0,
        NULL,
        OPEN_EXISTING,
        0,
        NULL);

    if (INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE == testDriver)
    {
        goto exit;
    }

    //
    // Loop, printing touches to the debugger.
    //
```

```

// Release in upper-left corner ends the test.
//
while (!exit)
{
    DWORD touchInfoBytesRead = 0;

    //
    // Wait for data
    //
    if (!ReadFile(
        testDriver,
        &touchInfo,
        sizeof(TouchInfo),
        &touchInfoBytesRead,
        NULL))
    {
        goto exit;
    }

    if (touchInfoBytesRead == 0)
    {
        goto exit;
    }

    //
    // Print to debugger
    //
    for (i=0; i<touchInfo.ContactCount; i++)
    {
        WCHAR infoString[MAX_PATH] = {0};

        StringCchPrintf(
            infoString,
            MAX_PATH,
            L"%d: Contact ID %d, at (%d,%d) is %s\r\n",
            GetTickCount(),
            touchInfo.ContactArray[i].ContactID,
            touchInfo.ContactArray[i].ScreenX,
            touchInfo.ContactArray[i].ScreenY,
            FLAGS_TO_STRING(touchInfo.ContactArray[i].Flags));

        OutputDebugString(infoString);
    }

    //
    // Look for program exit
    //
    for (i=0; i<touchInfo.ContactCount; i++)
    {
        if ((touchInfo.ContactArray[i].ScreenX < 50) &&
            (touchInfo.ContactArray[i].ScreenY < 50) &&
            (touchInfo.ContactArray[i].Flags & InputEventFlag_Up))
        {
            OutputDebugString(L"Touch below (50,50), quitting!\r\n");
            exit = TRUE;
        }
    }
}

exit:
if (testDriver != INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE)
{
    CloseHandle(testDriver);
}

return 0;
}

```

The application uses the TouchInfo and TouchContact data structures, which are defined in %WPKCONTENTROOT%\include\um\WinPhoneInput.h. The header code is shown here.

```
#pragma once

#include <windows.h>
#include <initguid.h>
#include <devguid.h>

//  
// This device name is used to access raw touch samples from user mode.  
//

#define TOUCH_RAW_SAMPLES_DEVICE_NAME L"\\\\.\\TouchRaw0"

enum InputEventFlag
{
    InputEventFlag_None      = 0x0000,
    InputEventFlag_Down      = 0x0001,
    InputEventFlag_Move       = 0x0002,
    InputEventFlag_Hold       = 0x0002,
    InputEventFlag_Up         = 0x0004,
    InputEventFlag_Empty      = 0x1000,
    InputEventFlag_Invalid    = 0x2000,
    InputEventFlag_TestSync   = 0x8000
};

typedef struct _TouchContact
{
    UINT16          ContactID;
    UINT16          Flags;           // See InputEventFlag_*
    INT16           ScreenX;        // Screen Space X-Position
    INT16           ScreenY;        // Screen Space Y-Position
    INT16           WindowX;        // Ignore
    INT16           WindowY;        // Ignore
} TouchContact;

typedef struct _TouchInfo
{
    UINT16          Size;           // Size, in bytes, of this structure (includes n contacts)
    UINT16          Flags;           // Ignore
    UINT32          TimeStamp;       // Driver timestamp
    HANDLE          Source;          // Ignore
    UINT32          SessionID;       // Ignore
    INT32           ContactCount;    // Count of touch contact data points
    TouchContact    ContactArray[10]; // Collection of contacts
} TouchInfo;

#define FLAGS_TO_STRING(x) \
    (x & InputEventFlag_Down) ? L"Down" : \  
\
    (x & InputEventFlag_Move) ? L"Move" : \  
\
    (x & InputEventFlag_Up)  ? L"Up"  : \  
\
    L"Unknown"
```

Building and deploying the sample application

To build the user-mode test application, complete the following steps.

1. Create a new user-mode application project in Visual Studio. For more info, see [Develop MMOS test applications](#)
2. Add the sample code and the header file to the project.

3. Build the solution, ensuring that it is generated successfully.
4. Disable code integrity in MMOS, or sign the test executable. For more info, see "Security in MMOS," in [Develop MMOS test applications](#).
5. Deploy the executable to the device and run the application. For more information, see [Deploy and test a user-mode test application in MMOS](#).

Calling SetScreenOff to enter connected standby

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Calling the **SetScreenOff** function turns the screen and backlight off, which causes the phone to enter the connected standby power state. This lower power state can be helpful for testing power usage.

Important

This function is for use only in the Microsoft Manufacturing OS.

Syntax

```
HRESULT SetScreenOff();
```

Parameters

None

Return Value

HRESULT

Remarks

There is not an equivalent function to return the device to a full power state.

Example

To use SetScreenOff, include the header and call without any parameters.

```
#include <ManufacturingConnectedStandbyControl.h>
SetScreenOff();
```

Requirements

Header: ManufacturingConnectedStandbyControl.h

Library: ManufacturingConnectedStandbyControl.lib

Resetting a device during manufacturing

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The topic provides information about resetting a device during the manufacturing process.

ResetPhoneEx

You can reset the device using the ResetPhoneEx API while preserving the following data.

- Map data.
- Runtime configuration data.
- Preinstalled apps.

Wi-Fi manufacturing API

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

As part of the manufacturing process, you must run tests to ensure that the components are integrated, functioning, and calibrated properly, and that they meet all regulatory requirements.

The API members documented in this section are interfaces defined for IHVs to use to write tests applications for the Wi-Fi chipset. This API set requires that the Wi-Fi driver conform to the driver OID specification.

This test API must only be used in manufacturing mode. For more info, see [Determine if MMOS is running](#).

In this section

The following interfaces are defined for this API.

[WlanMTEEnumAdapters](#)

Returns the list of the adapters that are recognized by the Wi-Fi stack.

[WlanMTEOpenHandle](#)

Opens a handle to the driver based on the interface GUID specified and returns the handle to the caller.

[WlanMTECloseHandle](#)

Closes a handle to the driver previously opened by [WlanMTEOpenHandle](#).

[WlanMTERegisterCallbackHandler](#)

Registers a handler that will be called whenever the driver invokes a callback for a manufacturing functionality event.

[WlanMTEDeRegisterCallbackHandler](#)

Unregisters a callback handler so that it will no longer be called when a manufacturing-related functionality event occurs.

[WlanMTEGetVendorInfo](#)

Requests vendor-specific information, such as the vendor ID and vendor description.

[WlanMTEResetAdapter](#)

Resets the Wi-Fi adapter.

[WlanMTEQueryMacAddress](#)

Queries the MAC address of the Wi-Fi adapter.

[WlanMTEQueryPhyTypes](#)

Queries the list of 802.11 PHY types configured on the adapter.

[WlanMTEStartSelfTest](#)

Starts a preconfigured set of self-tests.

[WlanMTEQuerySelfTestResult](#)

Queries the driver for the results of a previously requested self-test.

[WlanMTERxSignal](#)

Queries information about the received signal at a specific band and channel.

[WlanMTETxSignal](#)

Requests the driver to transmit a signal at the specified band and channel.

[WlanMTEQueryADC](#)

Requests the value of the transmitted signal when performed over an open loop.

[WlanMTESetData](#)

Requests that the driver write data to a specified location and offset from that location.

[WlanMTEQueryData](#)

Queries the driver for data at a specific location and offset from that location.

[WlanMTESleep](#)

Requests that the driver go to sleep either for a specified time interval or indefinitely until an awake request is sent.

[WlanMTEAwake](#)

Requests that the driver wake up from its current sleep state.

Related topics

[Adding Wi-Fi manufacturing test support to the OID interface](#)

WlanMTEEnumAdapters

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Returns the list of adapters that are recognized by the Wi-Fi stack.

Syntax

```
DWORD WlanMTEEnumAdapters(
    __out_opt    WLAN_MTE_ADAPTER_LIST  **ppWlanAdapterList
);
```

Parameters

ppWlanAdapterList

[out] A list of detected Wi-Fi adapters.

Return Value

If the function succeeds, the return value is ERROR_SUCCESS. Otherwise, the function returns a system error code.

Requirements

Header: wifimte.w

Related topics

[Wi-Fi manufacturing API](#)

WlanMTEOpenHandle

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Opens a handle on the driver based on the interface GUID specified and returns the handle to the caller.

Syntax

```
DWORD WlanMTEOpenHandle(
    __in     GUID      *pAdapterGuid,
    __out    HANDLE    *phAdapter
);
```

Parameters

pAdapterGuid

[in] A pointer to the GUID identifying the Wi-Fi adapter on which the handle is to be opened.

phAdapter

[out] A pointer to the Wi-Fi handle, if it was opened successfully.

Return Value

If the function succeeds, the return value is ERROR_SUCCESS.

If the function fails one of the system error codes is returned. The following table lists the error codes that may be returned.

ERROR CODE	DESCRIPTION
ERROR_INVALID_PARAMETER	Returned if the <i>pAdapterGuid</i> or <i>phAdapter</i> parameters are NULL.
ERROR_INVALID_STATE	Returned if the current DOT11 operation mode cannot be retrieved.

Remarks

The list of Wi-Fi interface GUIDs can be obtained by calling [WlanMTEEnumAdapters](#).

Requirements

Header: wifimte.w

Related topics

[Wi-Fi manufacturing API](#)

WlanMTECloseHandle

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Closes a handle to the driver previously opened by [WlanMTEOpenHandle](#).

Syntax

```
DWORD WlanMTECloseHandle(
    __in     HANDLE  hAdapter
);
```

Parameters

hAdapter

[in] The handle to the Wi-Fi adapter, obtained by calling [WlanMTEOpenHandle](#).

Return Value

If the function succeeds, the return value is ERROR_SUCCESS.

If the function fails, the return value is one of the system error codes. The following table lists the error codes that may be returned.

ERROR CODE	DESCRIPTION
ERROR_INVALID_PARAMETER	Returned if the library has not been initialized, or if the adapter handle specified by <i>hAdapter</i> is invalid.

Requirements

Header: wifimte.w

Related topics

[Wi-Fi manufacturing API](#)

WlanMTERegisterCallbackHandler

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Registers a handler that will be called whenever the driver invokes a callback for a manufacturing functionality event.

Syntax

```
DWORD WlanMTERegisterCallbackHandler(
    __in     HANDLE             hAdapter,
    __in     WLAN_MTE_NOTIFICATION_CALLBACK Callback
);
```

Parameters

hAdapter

[in] The handle to the Wi-Fi adapter, obtained by calling [WlanMTEOpenHandle](#).

Callback

[in] The handler function being registered by the application for manufacturing callbacks.

Return Value

If the function succeeds, the return value is ERROR_SUCCESS.

If the function fails, the return value is one of the system error codes. The following table lists the error codes that may be returned.

ERROR CODE	DESCRIPTION
ERROR_INVALID_PARAMETER	Returned if the adapter handle specified by the <i>hAdapter</i> parameter is invalid or NULL.

Remarks

The callback function has the following prototype:

```
typedef VOID (WINAPI *WLAN_MTE_NOTIFICATION_CALLBACK)(
    __in     PDOT11_MANUFACTURING_CALLBACK_PARAMETERS     pMTECallback,
    __in     PVOID                                         pvReserved
);
```

Requirements

Header: wifimte.w

Related topics

[Wi-Fi manufacturing API](#)

WlanMTEDeRegisterCallbackHandler

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Unregisters a callback handler so that it will no longer be called when a manufacturing-related functionality event occurs.

Syntax

```
DWORD WlanMTEDeRegisterCallbackHandler(
    __in     HANDLE             hAdapter
);
```

Parameters

hAdapter

[in] The handle to the Wi-Fi adapter, obtained by calling [WlanMTEOpenHandle](#).

Remarks

The calling application must have previously registered a callback by calling [WlanMTERegisterCallbackHandler](#).

Return Value

If the function succeeds, the return value is ERROR_SUCCESS.

If the function fails, the return value is one of the system error codes. The following table lists the error codes that may be returned.

ERROR CODE	DESCRIPTION
ERROR_INVALID_PARAMETER	Returned if the adapter handle specified by the <i>hAdapter</i> parameter is invalid or NULL.

Requirements

Header: wifimte.w

Related topics

[Wi-Fi manufacturing API](#)

WlanMTEGetVendorInfo

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Requests vendor-specific information, such as the vendor ID and vendor description.

Syntax

```
DWORD WlanMTEGetVendorInfo(
    __in                  HANDLE  hAdapter,
    __out                 ULONG   *puVendorId,
    __in                  ULONG   uOutBufLen,
    __out_bcount(uOutBufLen) PCHAR   pucOutBuffer
);
```

Parameters

hAdapter

[in] The handle to the Wi-Fi adapter, obtained by calling [WlanMTEOpenHandle](#).

puVendorId

[out] The vendor ID.

uOutBufLen

[in] The length of the buffer for retrieving the vendor description.

pucOutBuffer

[out] The buffer that will contain the vendor description string.

Return Value

If the function succeeds, the return value is ERROR_SUCCESS.

If the function fails, the return value is one of the system error codes. The following table lists the error codes that may be returned.

ERROR CODE	DESCRIPTION
ERROR_INVALID_PARAMETER	Returned if the <i>puVendorId</i> , <i>uOutBufLen</i> , or <i>pucOutBuffer</i> parameter is NULL.
ERROR_INVALID_HANDLE	Returned if the adapter handle specified by the <i>hAdapter</i> parameter is invalid.

Requirements

Header: wifimte.w

Related topics

[Wi-Fi manufacturing API](#)

WlanMTEResetAdapter

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Resets the Wi-Fi adapter. The application can specify an optional callback and context handle to be invoked when the operation is complete.

Syntax

```
DWORD WlanMTEResetAdapter(
    __in      HANDLE          hAdapter,
    __in      DOT11_RESET_REQUEST *pDot11ResetRequest,
    __in      WLAN_MTE_RESET_CALLBACK ResetCallback,
    __in      PVOID            pvContext
);
```

Parameters

hAdapter

[in] The handle to the Wi-Fi adapter, obtained by calling [WlanMTEOpenHandle](#).

pDot11ResetRequest

[in] Information about the reset request. If the application requires the reset in order to update the MAC address, it should specify either **dot11_reset_type_mac** or **dot11_reset_type_phy_and_mac** in order for the updated MAC address to be written to the DPP. Note that the MAC address change will only be valid when the device has booted in manufacturing mode.

ResetCallback

[in, optional] The callback handler to be invoked on reset completion.

pvContext

[in, optional] If the callback is specified, this context value is provided when the handler is called.

Remarks

The callback function for Wi-Fi reset adapter notifications has the following prototype:

```
typedef VOID (WINAPI *WLAN_MTE_RESET_CALLBACK)(
    __in      DWORD      dwError,
    __in      PVOID      pvContext
);
```

Return Value

If the function succeeds, the return value is **ERROR_SUCCESS**.

If the function fails, the return value is one of the system error codes. The following table lists the error codes that may be returned.

ERROR_CODE	DESCRIPTION
ERROR_INVALID_PARAMETER	Returned when the <i>pDot11ResetRequest</i> parameter is NULL or the <i>pDot11ResetRequest</i> type is invalid.
ERROR_INVALID_HANDLE	Returned if the <i>hAdapter</i> handle is invalid.

Requirements

Header: wifimte.w

Related topics

[Wi-Fi manufacturing API](#)

WlanMTEQueryMacAddress

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Returns the MAC address of the Wi-Fi adapter.

Syntax

```
DWORD WlanMTEQueryMacAddress(
    __in     HANDLE          hAdapter,
    __out    DOT11_MAC_ADDRESS *pDot11MacAddress
);
```

Parameters

hAdapter

[in] The handle to the Wi-Fi adapter, obtained by calling [WlanMTEOpenHandle](#).

pDot11MacAddress

[out] The current MAC address of the Wi-Fi adapter.

Return Value

If the function succeeds, the return value is ERROR_SUCCESS.

If the function fails, the return value is one of the system error codes. The following table lists the error codes that may be returned.

ERROR CODE	DESCRIPTION
ERROR_INVALID_PARAMETER	Returned when the <i>pDot11MacAddress</i> parameter is NULL.
ERROR_INVALID_HANDLE	Returned if the <i>hAdapter</i> handle is invalid.

Requirements

Header: wifimte.w

Related topics

[Wi-Fi manufacturing API](#)

WlanMTEQueryPhyTypes

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Returns the list of 802.11 PHY types configured on the adapter.

Syntax

```
DWORD WlanMTEQueryPhyTypes(
    __in     HANDLE           hAdapter,
    __out    PWLAN_MTE_PHY_LIST *ppPhyList
);
```

Parameters

hAdapter

[in] The handle to the Wi-Fi adapter, obtained by calling [WlanMTEOpenHandle](#).

ppPhyList

[out] The list of available PHY types as described in [DOT11_PHY_TYPE enumeration](#).

Return Value

If the function succeeds, the return value is ERROR_SUCCESS.

If the function fails, the return value is one of the system error codes. The following table lists the error codes that may be returned.

ERROR CODE	DESCRIPTION
ERROR_INVALID_PARAMETER	Returned if the <i>ppPhyList</i> parameter is NULL.
ERROR_INVALID_HANDLE	Returned if the <i>hAdapter</i> handle is invalid.
ERROR_OUTOFMEMORY	Returned when sufficient memory to perform the operation cannot be allocated.

Requirements

Header: wifimte.w

Related topics

[Wi-Fi manufacturing API](#)

WlanMTEStartSelfTest

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Starts a preconfigured set of self-tests.

Syntax

```
DWORD WlanMTEStartSelfTest(
    __in             HANDLE          hAdapter,
    __in             DOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_TYPE eTestType,
    __in             ULONG           uTestId,
    __in             PVOID            pvContext,
    __in             ULONG           uPinBitMask,
    __in             ULONG           uInBufLen,
    __in_bcount_opt(uInBufLen) P UCHAR          pucInBuffer
);
```

Parameters

hAdapter

[in] The handle to the Wi-Fi adapter, obtained by calling [WlanMTEOpenHandle](#).

eTestType

[in] The type of self-test requested. The values of *eTestType* are defined by the DOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_TYPE enumeration, shown below:

```
typedef enum DOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_TYPE {
    DOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_TYPE_INTERFACE = 1,
    DOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_TYPE_RF_INTERFACE,
    DOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_TYPE_BT_COEXISTENCE
} DOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_TYPE, * PDOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_TYPE;
```

uTestId

[in] The ID for the self-test requested.

pvContext

[in] The context that uniquely identifies this request in the callback and in the subsequent results query.

uPinBitMask

[in] The bit mask for adapter pins to be tested.

uInBufLen

[in] The length of the buffer for passing in any additional information about the self-test.

pucInBuffer

[in] The buffer that will contain additional information about the self-test.

Remarks

On completion of the self-test, the application's callback handler is called, if one was registered, with the **dot11ManufacturingCallbackType** set to **dot11_manufacturing_callback_self_test_complete**, and the result of the self-test is included.

Return Value

If the function succeeds, the return value is ERROR_SUCCESS.

If the function fails, the return value is one of the system error codes. The following table lists the error codes that may be returned.

ERROR CODE	DESCRIPTION
ERROR_INVALID_PARAMETER	Returned when the <i>uInBufLen</i> parameter is present but the <i>puInBuffer</i> parameter is NULL.
ERROR_INVALID_HANDLE	Returned if the adapter handle specified by the <i>hAdapter</i> parameter is invalid.
ERROR_OUTOFMEMORY	Returned when sufficient memory to perform the operation cannot be allocated.

Requirements

Header: wifimte.w

Related topics

[Wi-Fi manufacturing API](#)

WlanMTEQuerySelfTestResult

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Queries the driver for the results of a previously requested self-test.

Syntax

```
DWORD WlanMTEQuerySelfTestResult(
    __in                      HANDLE          hAdapter,
    __in                      DOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_TYPE eTestType,
    __in                      ULONG           uTestId,
    __in                      PVOID            pvContext,
    __out                     BOOLEAN          pbResult,
    __out                     ULONG           puPinFailedBitMask,
    __out                     ULONG           puBytesWrittenOut,
    __in                      ULONG           uOutBufLen,
    __out_bcount_opt(uOutBufLen) P UCHAR          pucOutBuffer
);
```

Parameters

hAdapter

[in] The handle to the Wi-Fi adapter, obtained by calling [WlanMTEOpenHandle](#).

eTestType

[in] The type of self-test requested. The values of *eTestType* are defined by the DOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_TYPE enumeration, shown below:

```
typedef enum DOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_TYPE {
    DOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_TYPE_INTERFACE = 1,
    DOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_TYPE_RF_INTERFACE,
    DOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_TYPE_BT_COEXISTENCE
} DOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_TYPE, * PDOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_TYPE;
```

uTestId

[in] The ID for the self-test requested.

pvContext

[in] The context that was specified in the original self-test request.

pbResult

[out] The final result of the self-test. **True** if passed, **False** if failed.

puPinFailedBitMask

[out] The bit mask for adapter pins that failed the test.

puBytesWrittenOut

[out] The number of bytes of optional data returned from the self-test results.

uOutBufLen

[in] The length of the buffer for returning any additional information about the self-test.

pucOutBuffer

[out] The buffer of length `\puBytesWrittenOut`* that provides additional information about the self-test. The value of `\puBytesWrittenOut`* must be less than or equal to the value of `uOutBufLen`.

Remarks

The application must have received a **dot11_manufacturing_callback_self_test_complete** callback prior to calling this command. It should also provide the same context value that was used in the original self-test request in order to get the results for the appropriate self-test request.

Return Value

If the function succeeds, the return value is `ERROR_SUCCESS`.

If the function fails, the return value is one of the system error codes. The following table lists the error codes that may be returned.

ERROR CODE	DESCRIPTION
<code>ERROR_INVALID_PARAMETER</code>	Returned if the <code>pbResult</code> , <code>puPinFailedBitMask</code> , or <code>puBytesWrittenOut</code> parameter is <code>NULL</code> , or if the test type specified by the <code>eTestType</code> parameter is invalid.
<code>ERROR_INVALID_HANDLE</code>	Returned if the <code>hAdapter</code> handle is invalid.
<code>ERROR_OUTOFMEMORY</code>	Returned if sufficient memory to perform the operation could not be allocated.

Requirements

Header: wifimte.w

Related topics

[Wi-Fi manufacturing API](#)

WlanMTERxSignal

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Queries information about the received signal at a specific band and channel.

Syntax

```
DWORD WlanMTERxSignal(
    __in     HANDLE      hAdapter,
    __out    BOOLEAN     *pbEnabled,
    __in     DOT11_BAND  Dot11Band,
    __in     ULONG       uChannel,
    __out    LONG        *pPowerLevel
);
```

Parameters

hAdapter

[in] The handle to the Wi-Fi adapter, obtained by calling [WlanMTEOpenHandle](#).

pbEnabled

[out] **True** if the driver detected a signal at the specified band and channel. **False** if no signal was detected.

Dot11Band

[in] The band on which the signal is to be detected. The values of the *Dot11Band* parameter are defined by the DOT11_BAND enum, shown below:

```
typedef enum DOT11_BAND {
    dot11_band_2p4g = 1,
    dot11_band_4p9g,
    dot11_band_5g
} DOT11_BAND, * PDOT11_BAND;
```

uChannel

[in] The channel on which the signal is to be detected. The channel range depends on the band and on the supported PHY types.

pPowerLevel

[out] The power level of the received signal detected at the antenna, returned as RSSI measured in dBm. This is valid only if *bEnabled* is **True**.

Return Value

If the function succeeds, the return value is ERROR_SUCCESS.

If the function fails, the return value is one of the system error codes. The following table lists the error codes that may be returned.

ERROR CODE	DESCRIPTION
ERROR_INVALID_PARAMETER	Returned if the <i>pbEnabled</i> , <i>Dot11Band</i> , <i>uChannel</i> , or <i>pPowerLevel</i> parameter is NULL.
ERROR_INVALID_HANDLE	Returned if the adapter handle specified by the <i>hAdapter</i> parameter is invalid.
ERROR_OUTOFMEMORY	Returned when sufficient memory to perform the operation cannot be allocated.

Requirements

Header: wifimte.w

Related topics

[Wi-Fi manufacturing API](#)

WlanMTETxSignal

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Requests the driver to transmit a signal at the specified band and channel.

Syntax

```
DWORD WlanMTETxSignal(
    __in     HANDLE      hAdapter,
    __in     BOOLEAN     bEnable,
    __in     BOOLEAN     bOpenLoop,
    __in     DOT11_BAND  Dot11Band,
    __in     ULONG       uChannel,
    __in     LONG        SetPowerLevel,
    __out    LONG        *pADCPowerLevel
);
```

Parameters

hAdapter

[in] The handle to the Wi-Fi adapter, obtained by calling [WlanMTEOpenHandle](#).

bEnable

[in] If a value is set, the transmission is enabled. Otherwise, transmission at the specified band and channel is disabled.

bOpenLoop

[in] When set to **True**, the driver must use an open loop power control and return the signal value in the *pADCPowerLevel* parameter. If this parameter is set and the hardware does not support open loop power control, an **ERROR_NOT_SUPPORTED** exception is returned.

Dot11Band

[in] The band on which the signal is to be detected. The values of the *Dot11Band* parameter are defined by the DOT11_BAND enum, shown below:

```
typedef enum DOT11_BAND {
    dot11_band_2p4g = 1,
    dot11_band_4p9g,
    dot11_band_5g
} DOT11_BAND, * PDOT11_BAND;
```

uChannel

[in] The channel on which the signal is to be transmitted. The channel range depends on the band and supported PHY types.

SetPowerLevel

[in] The power level of the transmitted signal, in dBm.

pADCPowerLevel

[out, optional] The current signal level detected at the antenna, returned as a RAW value. The interpretation of this value is implemented by the IHV. This return parameter is valid if *bOpenLoop* is **True** and the hardware supports it.

Return Value

If the function succeeds, the return value is ERROR_SUCCESS.

If the function fails, the return value is one of the system error codes. The following table lists one of the error codes that may be returned.

ERROR CODE	DESCRIPTION
ERROR_INVALID_PARAMETER	Returned when the <i>Dot11Band</i> or <i>uChannel</i> parameter is NULL, or if <i>bOpenLoop</i> is present but <i>pADCPowerLevel</i> is NULL.
ERROR_INVALID_HANDLE	Returned if the adapter handle specified by the <i>hAdapter</i> parameter is invalid.
ERROR_OUTOFMEMORY	Returned when sufficient memory to perform the operation cannot be allocated.

Requirements

Header: wifimte.w

Related topics

[Wi-Fi manufacturing API](#)

WlanMTEQueryADC

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Requests the value of the transmitted signal when performed over an open loop.

Syntax

```
DWORD WlanMTEQueryADC(
    __in     HANDLE      hAdapter,
    __in     DOT11_BAND  Band,
    __in     ULONG       uChannel,
    __out    LONG        *pADCPowerLevel
);
```

Parameters

hAdapter

[in] The handle to the Wi-Fi adapter, obtained by calling [WlanMTEOpenHandle](#).

Band

[in] The band on which the signal is to be detected. The values of the *Dot11Band* parameter are defined by the DOT11_BAND enum, shown below:

```
typedef enum DOT11_BAND {
    dot11_band_2p4g = 1,
    dot11_band_4p9g,
    dot11_band_5g
} DOT11_BAND, * PDOT11_BAND;
```

uChannel

[in] The channel on which the signal is being transmitted. The channel range will depend on the band and supported PHY types.

pADCPowerLevel

[out] The current signal level detected at the antenna returned as a RAW value. The interpretation of this value will be implemented by the IHV. This parameter is valid only if the device supports open loop power and is currently transmitting a signal on the open loop.

Return Value

If the function succeeds, the return value is ERROR_SUCCESS.

If the function fails, the return value is one of the system error codes. The following table lists the error codes that may be returned.

ERROR CODE	DESCRIPTION
ERROR_INVALID_PARAMETER	Returned if the <i>Dot11Band</i> , <i>uChannel</i> , or <i>pADCPowerLevel</i> parameter is NULL.

ERROR CODE	DESCRIPTION
ERROR_INVALID_HANDLE	Returned if the <i>hAdapter</i> handle is invalid.
ERROR_OUTOFMEMORY	Returned when sufficient memory to perform the operation cannot be allocated.

Remarks

If open loop power is not supported, the driver will return **ERROR_NOT_SUPPORTED**.

Return Value

If the function succeeds, the return value is **ERROR_SUCCESS**.

If the function fails, the return value is one of the system error codes. The following table lists one of the error codes that may be returned.

ERROR CODE	DESCRIPTION
ERROR_INVALID_PARAMETER	Returned when the <i>ulInBufLen</i> parameter is present but the <i>puclnBuffer</i> parameter is NULL.
ERROR_INVALID_HANDLE	The <i>hAdapter</i> handle is invalid.
ERROR_OUTOFMEMORY	There was insufficient memory to allocate to perform the function.

Requirements

Header: wifimte.w

Related topics

[Wi-Fi manufacturing API](#)

WlanMTESetData

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Requests that the driver write data to a specific location defined by a key and offset value.

Syntax

```
DWORD WlanMTESetData(
    _in          HANDLE  hAdapter,
    _in          ULONG   uKey,
    _in          ULONG   uOffset,
    _in          ULONG   uInBufLen,
    __in_bcount(uInBufLen) P UCHAR pucInBuffer
);
```

Parameters

hAdapter

[in] The handle to the Wi-Fi adapter, obtained by calling [WlanMTEOpenHandle](#).

uKey

[in] The key for the write request.

uOffset

[in] The offset for the write request.

uInBufLen

[in] The length of the buffer containing the data to be written.

pucInBuffer

[in] The buffer containing the data to be written.

Return Value

If the function succeeds, the return value is ERROR_SUCCESS.

If the function fails, the return value is one of the system error codes. The following table lists the error codes that may be returned.

ERROR CODE	DESCRIPTION
ERROR_INVALID_PARAMETER	Returned when the <i>uInBufLen</i> parameter is present but the <i>pucInBuffer</i> parameter is NULL.
ERROR_INVALID_HANDLE	Returned if the <i>hAdapter</i> handle is invalid.
ERROR_OUTOFMEMORY	Returned when sufficient memory to perform the operation cannot be allocated.

Requirements

Header: wifimte.w

Related topics

[Wi-Fi manufacturing API](#)

WlanMTEQueryData

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Queries the driver for data stored at a specific location defined by a key and offset value.

Syntax

```
DWORD WlanMTEQueryData(
    __in                  HANDLE  hAdapter,
    __in                  ULONG   uKey,
    __in                  ULONG   uOffset,
    __out                 ULONG   *puBytesWrittenOut,
    __in                  ULONG   uOutBufLen,
    __out_bcount(uOutBufLen) PCHAR   pucOutBuffer
);
```

Parameters

hAdapter

[in] The handle to the Wi-Fi adapter, obtained by calling [WlanMTEOpenHandle](#).

uKey

[in] The key for the query request.

uOffset

[in] The offset for the query request.

puBytesWrittenOut

[out] The number of bytes of data returned from the query request.

uOutBufLen

[in] The length of the buffer for returning the information requested.

pucOutBuffer

[out] The buffer that will contain the data returned per the query request.

Return Value

If the function succeeds, the return value is `ERROR_SUCCESS`.

If the function fails, the return value is one of the system error codes. The following table lists the error codes that may be returned.

ERROR CODE	DESCRIPTION
<code>ERROR_INVALID_PARAMETER</code>	Returned if the <i>puBytesWrittenOut</i> , <i>uOutBufLen</i> , or <i>pucOutBuffer</i> parameter is <code>NULL</code> .
<code>ERROR_INVALID_HANDLE</code>	Returned if the <i>hAdapter</i> handle is invalid.

ERROR CODE	DESCRIPTION
ERROR_OUTOFMEMORY	Returned when sufficient memory to perform the operation cannot be allocated.

Requirements

Header: wifimte.w

Related topics

[Wi-Fi manufacturing API](#)

WlanMTESleep

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Requests that the driver to go to sleep either for a specified time interval, or indefinitely until an awake request is sent.

Syntax

```
DWORD WlanMTESleep(
    __in                 HANDLE  hAdapter,
    __in                 ULONG   uSleepTime,
    __in                 PVOID   pvContext
);
```

Parameters

hAdapter

[in] The handle to the Wi-Fi adapter, obtained by calling [WlanMTEOpenHandle](#).

uSleepTime

[in] The time in milliseconds for the adapter to remain in sleep mode. If a value of –1 is specified, the adapter sleeps until a [WlanMTEAwake](#) request is sent.

pvContext

[in] The context that uniquely identifies this request in the callback.

Return Value

If the function succeeds, the return value is ERROR_SUCCESS.

If the function fails, the return value is one of the system error codes. The following table lists one of the error codes that may be returned.

ERROR CODE	DESCRIPTION
ERROR_INVALID_PARAMETER	Returned if the <i>uSleepTime</i> parameter is NULL.
ERROR_INVALID_HANDLE	Returned if the <i>hAdapter</i> handle is invalid.
ERROR_OUTOFMEMORY	Returned when sufficient memory to perform the operation cannot be allocated.

Remarks

During sleep mode, all radios are turned off and the Wi-Fi chip is powered off. When the adapter reawakens, the application's callback handler, if one was registered with [WlanMTERegisterCallbackHandler](#), is called with the **dot11ManufacturingCallbackType** set to **dot11_manufacturing_callback_sleep_complete** and the result of the sleep operation is included.

Requirements

Header: wifimte.w

Related topics

[WlanMTEAwake](#)

[Wi-Fi manufacturing API](#)

WlanMTEAwake

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Requests that the driver wake up from its current sleep state.

Syntax

```
DWORD WlanMTEAwake(
    __in                  HANDLE  hAdapter
);
```

Parameters

hAdapter

[in] The handle to the Wi-Fi adapter, obtained by calling [WlanMTEOpenHandle](#).

Return Value

If the function succeeds, the return value is `ERROR_SUCCESS`.

If the function fails, the return value is one of the system error codes. The following table lists the error codes that may be returned.

ERROR CODE	DESCRIPTION
<code>ERROR_INVALID_HANDLE</code>	Returned if the <i>hAdapter</i> handle is invalid.
<code>ERROR_OUTOFMEMORY</code>	Returned when sufficient memory to perform the operation cannot be allocated.

Remarks

The driver must have been put into the sleep state using the [WlanMTESleep](#) function before this function is called. If the driver is not in a sleep state when this function is called, it returns **STATUS_INVALID_PARAMETER**.

Requirements

Header: wifimte.w

Related topics

[Wi-Fi manufacturing API](#)

Adding Wi-Fi manufacturing test support to the OID interface

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

To ensure that all device components are integrated, functioning correctly, calibrated properly, and meet all regulatory requirements, OEMs run a number of standard ad-hoc tests to ensure that any problems are found and corrected before the device goes to retail. These tests are also occasionally run at retail outlets to check for proper component operation. The implementation of these test interfaces and mechanisms is performed by hardware vendors (IHVs).

This section describes an extension to the existing [Wi-Fi OID documentation](#) so that IHVs can implement a standard set of interfaces that OEMs can use to create test applications.

Assumptions

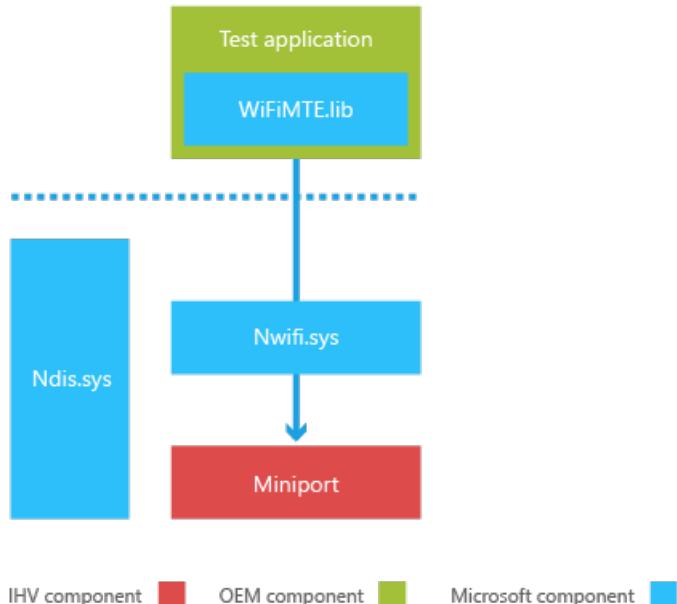
To perform these manufacturing tests, the device must be operating in a special operation mode called manufacturing mode. In manufacturing mode, only specific parts of the operating system are loaded in order to enable the proper execution of the component tests. Normal Wi-Fi operations, such as scanning and automatically connecting to networks, are disabled when the device is running in manufacturing mode.

Manufacturing mode can be entered in the manufacturing environment or during customer service. Writing to the Device Provisioning Partition (DPP) can only be performed in the manufacturing environment. If an OID that writes to the DPP is invoked in a non-manufacturing environment, the attempt to write to the DPP fails. Manufacturing operations should have only a transient effect on the system, and the state should not persist across reboots.

Driver requirements

The Wi-Fi miniport driver must be able to operate in normal mode or manufacturing test mode, and it must be able to switch between modes at any time. The driver determines the appropriate mode during initialization by querying a specific registry key.

The following illustration shows the architecture of the manufacturing test environment.



In this section

[Reporting operating mode capabilities](#)

Describes the requirements and behavior for reporting changes with drivers operating in manufacturing test mode.

[Supporting updated OID behavior in manufacturing mode](#)

Describes the updated OIDs that must be supported by the Wi-Fi miniport driver.

[Supporting existing OID commands in manufacturing mode](#)

Describes the existing OIDs that must be supported by the Wi-Fi miniport driver.

[Supporting new OID commands for manufacturing mode](#)

Describes the new OIDs that must be supported by the Wi-Fi miniport driver.

[Supporting new callbacks for manufacturing mode](#)

Describes the new OID callback that must be supported by the Wi-Fi miniport driver.

Reporting operating mode capabilities

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

If a Wi-Fi driver supports running in manufacturing mode, it should add manufacturing mode to its list of supported capabilities. You can query the supported operation mode capabilities by using the **OID_DOT11_OPERATION_MODE_CAPABILITY** command, which will return information on the operation modes supported by the driver. For more info about **OID_DOT11_OPERATION_MODE_CAPABILITY**, see [Supporting updated OID behavior in manufacturing mode](#).

To switch the driver's operation mode to manufacturing mode, use the **OID_DOT11_CURRENT_OPERATION_MODE** command to ensure that manufacturing testing will not conflict with the driver's behavior in any of its other modes. For more info about **OID_DOT11_CURRENT_OPERATION_MODE**, see [Supporting updated OID behavior in manufacturing mode](#).

Related topics

[Adding Wi-Fi manufacturing test support to the OID interface](#)

Supporting updated OID behavior in manufacturing mode

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

When running in manufacturing mode, Wi-Fi miniport drivers must add support for the following updated OIDs.

OID_DOT11_OPERATION_MODE_CAPABILITY

The **OID_DOT11_OPERATION_MODE_CAPABILITY** command is called in query mode to return the list of operation modes supported by the driver. This command functions as previously documented, but drivers are now required to support a new operation mode, **DOT11_OPERATION_MODE_MANUFACTURING**, which is the context in which manufacturing operations are performed. For complete documentation of this OID, see [OID_DOT11_OPERATION_MODE_CAPABILITY](#) on MSDN.

```
#define DOT11_OPERATION_MODE_UNKNOWN          0x00000000
#define DOT11_OPERATION_MODE_STATION           0x00000001
#define DOT11_OPERATION_MODE_AP               0x00000002
#define DOT11_OPERATION_MODE_EXTENSIBLE_STATION 0x00000004
#define DOT11_OPERATION_MODE_EXTENSIBLE_AP     0x00000008
#define DOT11_OPERATION_MODE_WFD_DEVICE       0x00000010
#define DOT11_OPERATION_MODE_WFD_GROUP_OWNER   0x00000020
#define DOT11_OPERATION_MODE_WFD_CLIENT        0x00000040
#define DOT11_OPERATION_MODE_MANUFACTURING    0x40000000
#define DOT11_OPERATION_MODE_NETWORK_MONITOR   0x80000000

typedef struct _DOT11_OPERATION_MODE_CAPABILITY {
    ULONG uReserved;
    ULONG uMajorVersion;
    ULONG uMinorVersion;
    ULONG uNumOfTxBuffers;
    ULONG uNumOfRxBuffers;
    ULONG uOpModeCapability;
} DOT11_OPERATION_MODE_CAPABILITY, * PDOT11_OPERATION_MODE_CAPABILITY;
```

OID_DOT11_CURRENT_OPERATION_MODE

The **OID_DOT11_CURRENT_OPERATION_MODE** command can be called in either set or query mode to configure or return the driver's current operation mode.

This command functions as previously documented, but the driver is now required to support the **DOT11_OPERATION_MODE_MANUFACTURING** operation mode. For complete documentation of this OID, see [OID_DOT11_CURRENT_OPERATION_MODE](#) on MSDN.

```
typedef struct _DOT11_CURRENT_OPERATION_MODE {
    ULONG uReserved;
    ULONG uCurrentOpMode;
} DOT11_CURRENT_OPERATION_MODE, * PDOT11_CURRENT_OPERATION_MODE;
```

uCurrentOpMode

[in] Specifies the driver operation mode to be set. This parameter also functions as a placeholder for the driver to return the operation mode when called in query mode. If the driver does not support the requested operation mode, it should return **NDIS_STATUS_BAD_VERSION**.

Related topics

[Adding Wi-Fi manufacturing test support to the OID interface](#)

Supporting existing OID commands in manufacturing mode

6/6/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

When running in manufacturing mode, Wi-Fi miniport drivers must add support for the following existing OIDs.

OID_GEN_SUPPORTED_GUIDS

The **OID_GEN_SUPPORTED_GUIDS** command is called in query mode to return the set of supported GUIDS. For complete documentation, see [OID_GEN_SUPPORTED_GUIDS](#) on MSDN.

Note

This OID is typically called for compatibility purposes. The driver can choose to ignore it, if desired, and return **NDIS_STATUS_NOT_SUPPORTED** instead.

OID_GEN_VENDOR_ID

The **OID_GEN_VENDOR_ID** command is called in query mode to return the 3-byte IEEE-registered vendor code followed by a single byte assigned by the vendor that identifies a particular NIC. For complete documentation, see [OID_GEN_VENDOR_ID](#) on MSDN.

OID_GEN_VENDOR_DESCRIPTION

The **OID_GEN_VENDOR_DESCRIPTION** command is called in query mode to return a NULL-terminated string that describes the NIC in ANSI format. For complete documentation, see [OID_GEN_VENDOR_DESCRIPTION](#) on MSDN.

OID_GEN_CURRENT_LOOKAHEAD

The **OID_GEN_CURRENT_LOOKAHEAD** command is called in set mode to specify the number of bytes of received packet data to be sent to the protocol driver. For complete documentation, see [OID_GEN_CURRENT_LOOKAHEAD](#) on MSDN.

Note

This OID is typically called for compatibility purposes. The driver can choose to ignore it, if desired, and return **NDIS_STATUS_NOT_SUPPORTED** instead.

OID_PM_ADD_WOL_PATTERN

The **OID_PM_ADD_WOL_PATTERN** command is called in set mode to specify the WOL pattern. For complete documentation, see [OID_PM_ADD_WOL_PATTERN](#) on MSDN.

Note

This OID is typically called for compatibility purposes. The driver can choose to ignore it, if desired, and return **NDIS_STATUS_NOT_SUPPORTED** instead.

OID_DOT11_RESET_REQUEST

The **OID_DOT11_RESET_REQUEST** command is called in query mode to return the IEEE MAC address used by the driver. For complete documentation, see [OID_DOT11_RESET_REQUEST](#) on MSDN.

OID_DOT11_CURRENT_ADDRESS

The **OID_DOT11_CURRENT_ADDRESS** command is called in query mode to return the IEEE MAC address used by the driver. For complete documentation, see [OID_DOT11_CURRENT_ADDRESS](#) on MSDN.

OID_DOT11_SUPPORTED_PHY_TYPES

The **OID_DOT11_SUPPORTED_PHY_TYPES** command is called in query mode to request the list of PHY types supported by the 802.11 station. For complete documentation, see [OID_DOT11_SUPPORTED_PHY_TYPES](#) on MSDN.

OID_DOT11_CURRENT_PHY_ID

The **OID_DOT11_CURRENT_PHY_ID** command is called in set mode to set the current PHY ID. For complete documentation, see [OID_DOT11_CURRENT_PHY_ID](#) on MSDN.

OID_DOT11_HARDWARE_PHY_STATE

The **OID_DOT11_HARDWARE_PHY_STATE** command is called in query mode to return the PHY power state. For complete documentation, see [OID_DOT11_HARDWARE_PHY_STATE](#) on MSDN.

OID_DOT11_NIC_POWER_STATE

The **OID_DOT11_NIC_POWER_STATE** command is called in query mode to return the NIC power state. For complete documentation, see [OID_DOT11_NIC_POWER_STATE](#) on MSDN.

Related topics

[Adding Wi-Fi manufacturing test support to the OID interface](#)

Supporting new OID commands for manufacturing mode

7/13/2017 • 7 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

When running in manufacturing mode, Wi-Fi miniport drivers must add support for the following new OID commands. The driver should ensure that the device is currently in manufacturing mode prior to calling any of these commands. For more info, see [Determine if MMOS is running](#). Some of the parameters specified in the API may be IHV-specific.

OID_DOT11_MANUFACTURING_TEST

OID_DOT11_MANUFACTURING_TEST is called as a method request in the driver to perform a specific test. This OID should never be used during normal operation.

```
typedef struct _DOT11_MANUFACTURING_TEST {
    DOT11_MANUFACTURING_TEST_TYPE dot11ManufacturingTestType;
    ULONG uBufferLength;
    UCHAR ucBuffer[1];
} DOT11_MANUFACTURING_TEST, * PDOT11_MANUFACTURING_TEST;
```

dot11ManufacturingTestType

[in] Specifies the manufacturing test to be run. The data type for this member is one of the values of the **DOT11_MANUFACTURING_TEST_TYPE** enumeration.

The DOT11 manufacturing test type enumeration is defined as follows:

```
typedef enum _DOT11_MANUFACTURING_TEST_TYPE {
    dot11_manufacturing_test_unknown = 0,
    dot11_manufacturing_test_self_start = 1,
    dot11_manufacturing_test_self_query_result = 2,
    dot11_manufacturing_test_rx = 3,
    dot11_manufacturing_test_tx = 4,
    dot11_manufacturing_test_set_data = 5,
    dot11_manufacturing_test_query_data = 6,
    dot11_manufacturing_test_sleep = 7,
    dot11_manufacturing_test_awake = 8,
    dot11_manufacturing_test_IHV_start = 0x80000000,
    dot11_manufacturing_test_IHV_end = 0xffffffff
} DOT11_MANUFACTURING_TEST_TYPE, * PDOT11_MANUFACTURING_TEST_TYPE;
```

uBufferLength

[in] The length, in bytes, of the **DOT11_MANUFACTURING_TEST** structure and any additional data specific to the test appended at the end.

ucBuffer

[in] The buffer containing optional data as specified by the **dot11DiagnosticsTestType** member.

dot11_manufacturing_test_self_start

The **dot11_manufacturing_test_self_start** command is called to request the driver to test WLAN IC connectivity, FEM IC connectivity, or the WLAN-BT coexistence interface.

DOT11_DIAGNOSTIC_SELF_TEST_BT_COEXISTENCE is only applicable if the WLAN and Bluetooth chips are on separate ICs. If they are on the same module, this test is not supported and the miniport should return **NDIS_STATUS_NOT_SUPPORTED**.

When called, the driver should run the requested tests as defined in the **DOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_SET_PARAMS** structure and return success when the tests have been started. On completion, whether the tests have succeeded or failed, the driver should indicate the test status by using the **NDIS_STATUS_DOT11_MANUFACTURING_CALLBACK** callback handler, with the *dot11ManufacturingCallbackType* set to **dot11_manufacturing_callback_self_test_complete** and the status describing the result of the test. The driver will then call the **OID_DOT11_MANUFACTURING_TEST** oid with the **dot11_manufacturing_test_self_query_result** command to query the detailed result of the test.

```
typedef struct _DOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_SET_PARAMS {
    DOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_TYPE SelfTestType;
    ULONG uTestId;
    ULONG uPinBitMask;
    PVOID pvContext;
    ULONG uBufferLength;
    UCHAR ucBufferIn[1];
} DOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_SET_PARAMS, *PDOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_SET_PARAMS;
```

SelfTestType

[in] Specifies the type of self-test to be run by the driver. The data type for this member is the **DOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_TYPE** enumeration with one of the following values:

DOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_INTERFACE

- Control and data interface to WLAN
- Clock request
- Sleep clock
- Interrupt and power supply lines
- All related connections

DOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_RF_INTERFACE

- Control and RF interface to FEM IC
- FEM power supply
- Transmit signal on loopback path from TX interface to RX interface and validate.

DOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_BT_COEXISTENCE

- Set line states from Bluetooth side and read line states from WLAN side
- Verify each pin's state

uTestId

[in] ID of the test to be run.

uPinBitMask

[in] Bit mask of pins to be tested.

pvContext

[in] The context value to be returned to the application by using **dot11_manufacturing_callback_self_test_complete** callback when the driver has completed the tests.

uBufferLength

[in, optional] The length of the buffer containing additional input for the self-test.

ucBufferIn

[in, optional] The buffer that contains additional input for the self-test.

dot11_manufacturing_test_self_query_result

This command gets the results of a previously requested self-test. It should only be called when the driver has indicated that the self-test is complete by using the **NDIS_STATUS_DOT11_MANUFACTURING_CALLBACK** with the *dot11ManufacturingCallbackType* set to **dot11_manufacturing_callback_self_test_complete** and the status describing the result of the test.

```
typedef struct _DOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_QUERY_RESULTS {
    DOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_TYPE SelfTestType;
    ULONG uTestId;
    BOOLEAN bResult;           // PASS/FAIL
    ULONG uPinFailedBitMask;   // Detected PIN faults
    PVOID pvContext;
    ULONG uBytesWrittenOut;
    UCHAR ucBufferOut[1];      // Additional output from self-test (optional)
} DOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_QUERY_RESULTS, *PDOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_QUERY_RESULTS;
```

SelfTestType

[in] Specifies the type of self-test whose result is being queried. The data type for this member is the **DOT11_MANUFACTURING_SELF_TEST_TYPE** enumeration.

uTestId

[in] ID of the test to be run.

bResult

[out] The result of the test. **True** if the test passed, **False** if it failed.

uPinFailedBitMask

[out] The bit mask of any detected PIN faults.

pvContext

[in] The context used when the driver indicated that the tests were complete.

uBytesWrittenOut

[out] The length of the buffer that contains any additional returned output from the self-test.

ucBufferOut

[in, out, optional] The buffer of length *uBytesWrittenOut* that contains additional output from the self-test.

dot11_manufacturing_test_rx

The **dot11_manufacturing_test_rx** read-only command tests and verifies that there is connectivity between the antenna port and WLAN IC.

To test this connectivity, a signal generator generates a non-modulated carrier wave (CW) at a certain frequency and power that will be measured and returned by the device under test (DUT). If the band and/or channel setting are inconsistent, then the driver returns **STATUS_INVALID_PARAMETER**.

```

typedef struct _DOT11_MANUFACTURING_FUNCTIONAL_TEST_RX {
    BOOLEAN bEnabled;
    DOT11_BAND Dot11Band;
    ULONG uChannel;
    LONG PowerLevel;
} DOT11_MANUFACTURING_FUNCTIONAL_TEST_RX, * PDOT11_MANUFACTURING_FUNCTIONAL_TEST_RX;

```

bEnabled

[out] **True** if the driver detected a signal at the specified band and channel. **False** if no signal was detected.

Dot11Band

[in] The band on which the signal is to be detected.

uChannel

[in] The channel on which the signal is to be detected. The channel range depends on the band and supported PHYs.

PowerLevel

[out] The power level of the received signal detected at the antenna, returned as the RSSI measured in dBm. This is valid only if *bEnabled* is **True**.

dot11_manufacturing_test_tx

The **dot11_manufacturing_test_tx** set-only command validates the connection from the chipset to the FEM output.

To perform this test, a signal analyzer is physically connected to the antenna port and the DUT is requested to transmit a CW with specific band, channel, and power level settings. The driver also measures its own ADC reading for the transmitted signal and returns it to the application.

```

typedef struct _DOT11_MANUFACTURING_FUNCTIONAL_TEST_TX {
    BOOLEAN bEnable;
    BOOLEAN bOpenLoop;
    DOT11_BAND Dot11Band;
    ULONG uChannel;
    ULONG uSetPowerLevel;
    LONG ADCPowerLevel;
} DOT11_MANUFACTURING_FUNCTIONAL_TEST_TX, * PDOT11_MANUFACTURING_FUNCTIONAL_TEST_TX;

```

bEnable

[in] If set, this command enables transmission. If not set, transmission at the specified band and channel are disabled.

bOpenLoop

[in] If set to **true**, this parameter indicates that the driver is requested to use an open loop power control and return the read signal value in *ADCPowerLevel*. If set to **false**, the driver will not use an open loop power control.

If this value is set and the hardware does not support open loop power control, the driver returns

NDIS_STATUS_NOT_SUPPORTED.

Dot11Band

[in] The band on which the signal is to be transmitted.

uChannel

[in] The channel on which the signal is to be transmitted. The channel range depends on the band and supported PHYs.

uSetPowerLevel

[in] The power level of the transmitted signal. This is returned as a percentage of the maximum possible power

level.

ADCPowerLevel

[out, optional] The current signal level detected at the antenna, returned as a RAW value. The interpretation of this value is specified by the IHV.

This must be set if *bOpenLoop* is **True** and the hardware supports it.

dot11_manufacturing_test_set_data

The **dot11_manufacturing_test_set_data** set-only command enables the application to write data at a specific location.

```
typedef struct _DOT11_MANUFACTURING_TEST_SET_DATA {  
    ULONG uKey;  
    ULONG uOffset;  
    ULONG uBufferLength;  
    UCHAR ucBufferIn[1];  
} DOT11_MANUFACTURING_TEST_SET_DATA, * PDOT11_MANUFACTURING_TEST_SET_DATA;
```

uKey

[in] The key is IHV specific and can be either a reference to a specific register or an entry from a named table.

uOffset

[in] The offset within the data.

uBufferLength

[in] The number of data bytes to be contained in the buffer of additional test data.

ucBufferIn

[in] The buffer containing the additional test data of length *uBufferLength*.

dot11_manufacturing_test_query_data

The **dot11_manufacturing_test_query_data** command enables the application to read data at a specific location.

```
typedef struct _DOT11_MANUFACTURING_TEST_QUERY_DATA {  
    ULONG uKey;  
    ULONG uOffset;  
    ULONG uBufferLength;  
    ULONG uBytesRead;  
    UCHAR ucBufferOut[1];  
} DOT11_MANUFACTURING_TEST_QUERY_DATA, * PDOT11_MANUFACTURING_TEST_QUERY_DATA;
```

uKey

[in] The key is IHV specific and can be either a reference to a specific register or an entry from a named table.

uOffset

[in] The offset within the data.

uBufferLength

[in] The number of data bytes to be read in the buffer.

uBytesRead

[out] The actual number of data bytes read by the driver.

ucBufferOut

[out] Contains the data read by the driver.

dot11_manufacturing_test_sleep

The **dot11_manufacturing_test_sleep** command instructs the Wi-Fi chipset to go into its lowest power state, for either a specified time or indefinitely.

For this test, all radios should be turned off and the Wi-Fi chipset should be powered off. The test verifies that Wi-Fi can enter the sleep state, that the current consumption is within the specified limits, and that there is no current drawn when Wi-Fi is switched off.

The driver can be awakened from the sleep state at any time by using the **dot11_manufacturing_test_awake** command. If the sleep time-out is set to –1, the driver should sleep indefinitely unless asked to wake up by using **dot11_manufacturing_test_awake**. When the driver wakes up, either due to the time-out expiring or as a result of the awake command, it should indicate its awake status by using the **NDIS_STATUS_DOT11_MANUFACTURING_CALLBACK** callback handler with the *dot11ManufacturingCallbackType* set to **dot11_manufacturing_callback_sleep_complete**.

```
typedef struct _DOT11_MANUFACTURING_TEST_SLEEP {
    ULONG uSleepTime;
    PVOID pvContext;
} DOT11_MANUFACTURING_TEST_SLEEP, * PDOT11_MANUFACTURING_TEST_SLEEP;
```

uSleepTime

[in] The amount of time for the driver to sleep, in milliseconds. If set to –1, the driver enters sleep state until awakened by using the **dot11_manufacturing_test_awake** command.

pvContext

[in] The context used when the driver returns the test completion state to the application by using **dot11_manufacturing_callback_sleep_complete**.

dot11_manufacturing_test_awake

The **dot11_manufacturing_test_awake** command causes the Wi-Fi chipset to wake up from its lowest-power sleep state. The driver returns **STATUS_INVALID_PARAMETER** if this command is sent when the chipset is already awake.

Related topics

[Adding Wi-Fi manufacturing test support to the OID interface](#)

Supporting new callbacks for manufacturing mode

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

When running in manufacturing mode, Wi-Fi miniport drivers must add support for the following new callback.

NDIS_STATUS_DOT11_MANUFACTURING_CALLBACK

The **NDIS_STATUS_DOT11_MANUFACTURING_CALLBACK** callback is used to indicate completion status for certain requests. The data structure used for this callback is defined here.

```
typedef enum _DOT11_MANUFACTURING_CALLBACK_TYPE {
    dot11_manufacturing_callback_unknown = 0,
    dot11_manufacturing_callback_self_test_complete = 1,
    dot11_manufacturing_callback_sleep_complete = 2,
    dot11_manufacturing_callback_IHV_start = 0x80000000,
    dot11_manufacturing_callback_IHV_end = 0xffffffff
} DOT11_MANUFACTURING_CALLBACK_TYPE, * PDOT11_MANUFACTURING_CALLBACK_TYPE;

typedef struct DOT11_MANUFACTURING_CALLBACK_PARAMETERS {
#define DOT11_MANUFACTURING_CALLBACK_REVISION_1 1
    NDIS_OBJECT_HEADER Header;
    DOT11_MANUFACTURING_CALLBACK_TYPE dot11ManufacturingCallbackType;
    ULONG uStatus;
    PVOID pvContext;
} DOT11_MANUFACTURING_CALLBACK_PARAMETERS, * PDOT11_MANUFACTURING_CALLBACK_PARAMETERS;
```

dot11_manufacturing_callback_self_test_complete

dot11_manufacturing_callback_self_test_complete is called by the driver when a requested self-test is completed by the driver. This callback must return the context for self-test request as well as the self-test result. The driver then calls the **OID_DOT11_MANUFACTURING_TEST** OID with the **dot11_manufacturing_test_self_query_result** command to obtain the detailed result of the test.

dot11_manufacturing_callback_sleep_complete

dot11_manufacturing_callback_sleep_complete is called when a requested sleep command is executed by the driver. This callback must return the context for the sleep request as well as the status, whether success or failure. This callback is also called by the driver when the application sends a request to wake the driver from a sleep state.

Related topics

[Adding Wi-Fi manufacturing test support to the OID interface](#)

Flashing tools

6/6/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Each manufacturer has different techniques and tooling that they will use to manufacture and service a Windows 10 Mobile device. The best technical expertise regarding manufacturing resides within those who built the OEM manufacturing line. This means that the OEM will need to determine which flashing and manufacturing process will work best for them. OEM service centers may have unique needs that will also influence the selection of flashing tools. The OEM will need to determine how to test and validate that the selected tools and processes meets their cost, quality, and other unique manufacturing objectives.

The OEM uses the Microsoft supplied imaging tools to create the FFU OS images that are flashed to the device.

Flashing tools comparison

The OEM may need to develop a custom flashing tool to address the life cycle needs of the device. Other flashing options have limitations that the OEM should understand before deciding to use them.

The following table summarizes the flashing tool options.

SCENARIO	MICROSOFT FFU ENGINEERING TOOL	OEM CUSTOM FFU TOOL	SOC PROVIDED MANUFACTURING FLASHING TOOL	GANG PROGRAMMER
Engineering and Development	Yes	Yes	Yes	N/A
Manufacturing	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Service Center	Yes	Yes	No	N/A

OEM custom flashing tool

To create a flashing tool for manufacturing, the OEM must develop their own tools customized to their manufacturing environment and equipment.

Depending on the OEMs requirements, the flashing tools may also need to address a number of scenarios described in [Field service scenarios](#).

For more info, see [Developing custom OEM flashing tools](#).

SoC provided manufacturing flashing tool

For information on the SoC provided manufacturing flashing tools, contact the SoC provider.

Gang programmer

There are a number of options available to the OEM to flash binary images. The OEM can use their unique flashing tools as well as gang programmer technologies to manufacture the device if they find that those options are more suitable to their environment.

If the OEM uses a gang programmer they will need to develop a custom tool to convert the FFU image to a raw binary image. The conversion tool will need to:

1. Open a raw binary file in the format expected by the gang programmer.
2. Read in the FFU file and parse the file data as specified in [FFU image format](#).
3. Write out the data referenced in the FFU BLOCK_DATA_ENTRY elements to the raw file.
4. When there are no more entries, write out any metadata or padding needed for the raw format and then close the raw binary file.

FFUTool support limitations

The Microsoft provided FFUTool full flash update (FFU) technology is designed for engineering development, and testing purposes; it is not supported for use in manufacturing. Each OEM must determine if the FFUTool is suitable for use in their service center environments.

FFUTool known issues

Using the FFUTool has a number of significant limitations that are summarized here.

USB hub activity may cause flashing failures

Some USB hubs have been known to cause reliability issues even when flashing devices in serial due to hardware interference to the streaming FFU data.

Multiple devices that share a single USB hub cannot be connected and disconnected while other connected device are flashing. This uncovers a known hardware issue with some USB controllers. For more info, see [KB908673](#). You should not unplug USB devices when device flashing is underway.

USB cable length is limited to 3 feet

Flashing may be less reliable when using USB cables longer than 3 feet (.91 meters), or if your flashing setup contains consecutive cables that total to more than 3 feet. This is due to hardware limitations of data transfer in longer cables.

Flashing time per phone

You will need to evaluate whether the flashing time per device meets their objectives for your manufacturing line.

Developing custom OEM flashing tools

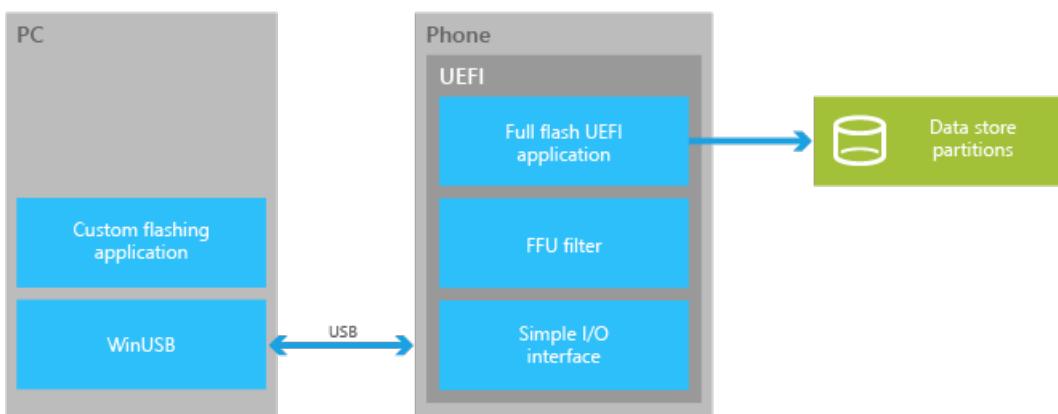
6/6/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

OEMs can use the full flash update (FFU) image format and simple UEFI USB protocols to create custom flashing tools. An OEM custom flashing tool can integrate in with existing systems and support a range of scenarios discussed in [Flashing tools](#).

UEFI flashing application

The OEM must flash the device from a UEFI application using a specific image layout that is discussed in [FFU image format](#).

This diagram summarizes the communication flow from the PC flashing tool to the device using the UEFI simple Windows Phone I/O protocol.

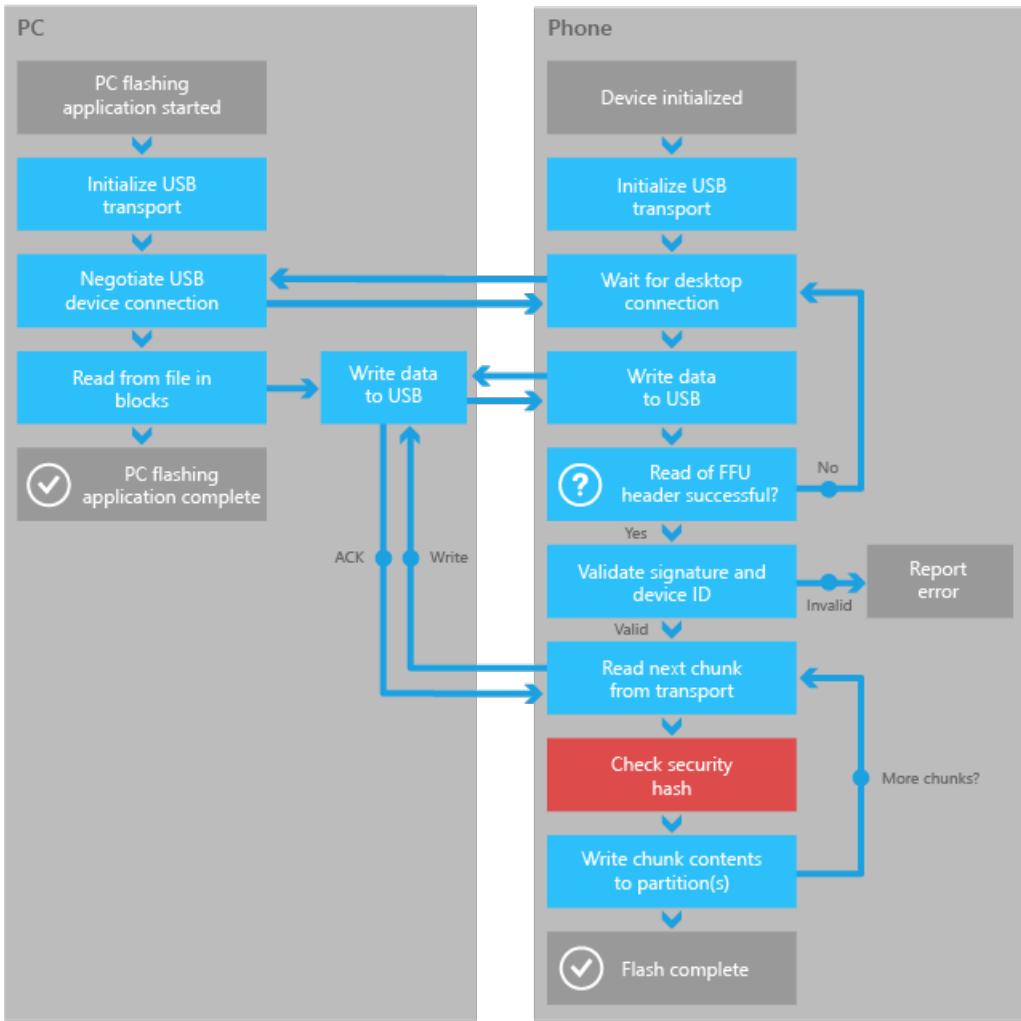


For more info on available USB APIs see, [UEFI flashing protocols](#).

PC flashing application

The image is transferred to the device that is running the UEFI flashing application using a simple PC side client program. The PC application establishes a USB connection to the device and writes the data over that connection. The validation and verification of the image occurs in the UEFI flashing application running on the device.

The following diagram summarizes the overall flow of the OEM custom flashing PC application and the UEFI application.



Note

This diagram illustrates one possible solution. The OEM is encouraged to modify this approach to create an optimal solution that best suits their needs.

Checking SMBIOS values before flashing

To ensure that the correct image is flashed to the proper device, the OEM must check the SMBIOS system information structure values on the device. The check must confirm that the device platform ID values in the image, matches the SMBIOS system information structure values on the phone. Either the **Manufacturer.Family.ProductName.Version** or **Manufacturer.Family.ProductName** from SMBIOS must match the value in the image before flashing can proceed.

The device platform ID string is shown below.

Manufacturer.Family.ProductName.Version

Engineering devices and blank device IDs

With a new engineering device, the OEM can use the SMBIOS values to determine if it is acceptable to flash an image that contains test signed certificates. The OEM may determine that test signed images may have blank system information structure values, where production signed images must have SMBIOS system information structure values that have been populated.

Implementing signed image validation

FFU images contain elements such as hashes, signatures and catalogs, which must be used to validate the image.

For more info, see [Implementing image integrity validation in custom flashing tools](#).

UEFI flashing protocols

[UEFI USB function protocol](#)

Describes the **EFI_USBFN_IO_PROTOCOL**.

[UEFI simple I/O protocol](#)

Describes the **EFI_SIMPLE_WINPHONE_IO_PROTOCOL**.

[UEFI check signature protocol](#)

Describes the **EFI_CHECKSIG_PROTOCOL**.

Related topics

[Flashing tools](#)

[Manufacturing](#)

Flashing security requirements

6/6/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Before flashing occurs, all OEM flashing mechanisms must validate cryptographic signatures in the image that chain to keys owned by the OEM. This validation of the cryptographic signature on the image must be done on the device (not on a desktop flashing tool) and must be done before the image is flashed to eMMC memory. This requirement is intended to protect devices from being compromised by users attempting to subvert the security protections in the system. Mechanisms that can flash or update the state of the device (debuggers, memory inspectors, etc.) and that are not properly secured could be used by an attacker to circumvent the device's security mechanisms.

The implemented solutions must be fully resilient even if the device is reverse engineered (that is, even if the user understands the operation of the security code in the firmware or SoC).

Flashing security requirements summary

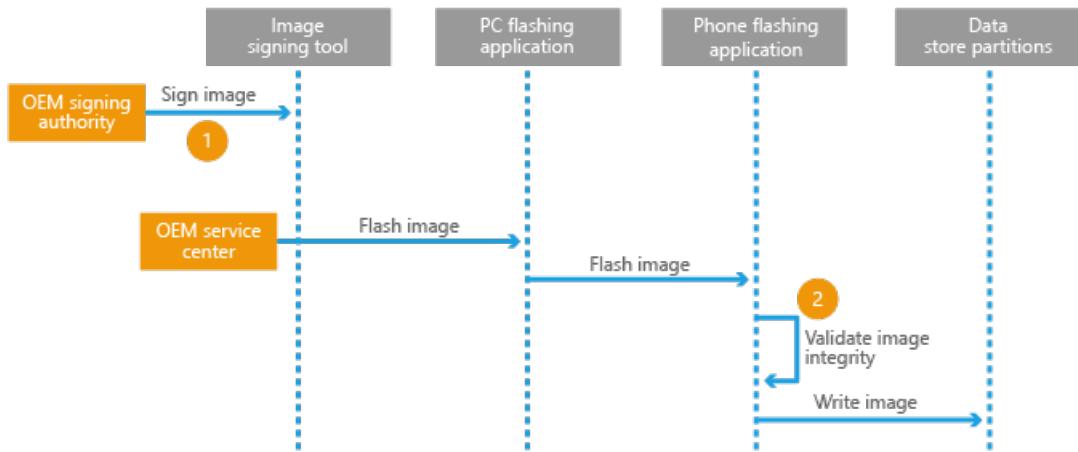
Security on retail devices must also meet the following requirements:

- Only secure flashing technologies can be included on retail devices.
- Images to be flashed must be cryptographically signed through a process that is controlled and verified by the OEM or Microsoft.
- Cryptographic signatures on images to be flashed must be verified by code on the device immediately before flashing.
- Code that verifies cryptographic signatures on the device must be tamper proof, and cryptographic key material on the device used for verification must be trustworthy at the point in time that it is used.
- Sufficiently large encryption algorithms must be used—at a minimum, RSA 2048 with SHA-256.
- The flashing tool must check the SMBIOS device identification values before flashing. For more info, see [Developing custom OEM flashing tools](#).
- The flashing tool must implement image integrity validation to protect against tampered images. For more info, see [Developing custom OEM flashing tools](#).
- Industry best practices for source code development and supply chain security must be followed.
- A threat model must be applied to identify priority risks, threats, and vulnerabilities.

Recommended flashing solution

The following diagram illustrates a flashing solution that conforms to the flashing security requirements. Images to be flashed must be signed by the OEM signing authority using documented procedures, ensuring that there is a high level of control and security throughout the process. The component that initiates the flashing operation must perform a cryptographic verification of the signature on the image to be flashed using trustworthy key material immediately before flashing.

The cryptographic key should be stored so that it is tied either to secure boot key material (OEM_PK_HASH or UEFI Variable PK) or to a public key that is embedded in a binary that is cryptographically validated by secure boot. It is not acceptable to store the public or private key in the DPP, or in any other unsigned and unvalidated file store.



Required operations

- 1 Sign the image to be flashed
- 2 Validate image integrity:
 - Catalog signature validation
 - Hash of the table of hashes validation
 - Data chunk validation by using the hash table entries

Related topics

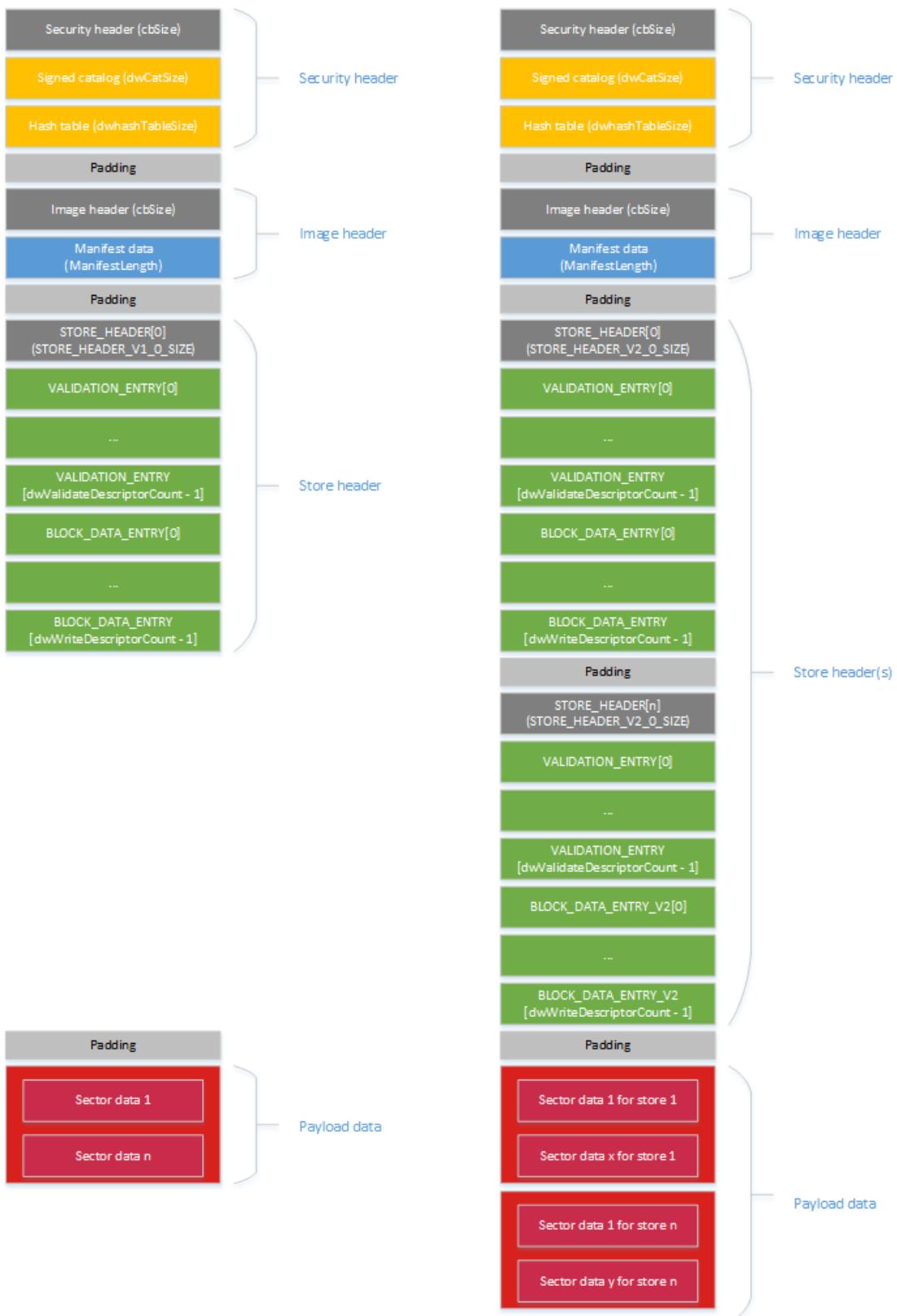
[Developing custom OEM flashing tools](#)

[Implementing image integrity validation in custom flashing tools](#)

FFU image format

7/13/2017 • 7 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The following diagram shows both V1 and V2 FFU format. A major change introduced in V2 FFU format is the support for multiple data stores – each store contains sector-based data targeting a unique physical partition.



Security header region

cbSize

The size of the SECURITY_HEADER struct. Used in conjunction with the signature string to identify the FFU security header.

Signature string

A hard-coded ASCII string of "SignedImage" that identifies this image as a secure FFU image.

Chunk size in KB

The size of chunks used to generate the hash table. Used to break the image up into hashable chunks for validation against the hash table entries and ensure the image has not been tampered with since creation.

Hash algorithm ID

Defines which hash algorithm was used to generate the hash table.

Catalog size

The size in bytes of the catalog after the security header.

Hash table size

The size in bytes of the hash table after the security header and catalog.

Security header, byte count: cbSize

```
#define SECURITY_SIGNATURE "SignedImage"

typedef struct _SECURITY_HEADER
{
    UINT32 cbSize;           // size of struct, overall
    BYTE   signature[12];    // "SignedImage"
    UINT32 dwChunkSizeInKb; // size of a hashed chunk within the image
    UINT32 dwAlgId;         // algorithm used to hash
    UINT32 dwCatalogSize;   // size of catalog to validate
    UINT32 dwHashTableSize; // size of hash table
} SECURITY_HEADER;
```

Signed Catalog, byte count: dwCatalogSize

A catalog file containing the hash of the hash table blob that will be signed and must match one of the certificates on the device. This approach allows checking for a signature up front without having the full image on the device before flashing. Streaming data is checked as it is received against the hash table entries.

Hash table data, byte count: dwHashTableSize

The actual hashes for each chunk of the base image. Chunk validation begins at the image header and ends at the end of the FFU.

Padding - next section starts on a chunk boundary, byte count: variable

After the hash table padding (blank space) is added to fill out to current chunk. This ensures that the full secure header, catalog, and hash table end at a chunk boundary and the actual image header and beyond are chunk aligned.

Image header region

cbSize

The size in bytes of the ImageHeader struc. Used in conjunction with the signature string to identify the FFU image header.

Signature string

A hard-coded string of "ImageFlash" that identifies this image as an FFU image.

Manifest Length

The size in bytes of the manifest data immediately following the image header.

Chunk size

The size of chunks used to generate the hash table. Used to break the image up into hashable chunks for validation against the hash table entries and ensure the image has not been tampered with since creation. This should match the chunk size in the secure header. Used only during image validation.

Image header, byte count: cbSize

```
#define FFU_SIGNATURE "ImageFlash"

typedef struct _IMAGE_HEADER
{
    DWORD cbSize;           // sizeof(IMAGE_HEADER)
    BYTE Signature[12];     // "ImageFlash"
    DWORD ManifestLength;   // in bytes
    DWORD dwChunkSize;      // Used only during image generation.
} IMAGE_HEADER;
```

Manifest data, byte count: ManifestLength

The manifest contains the description of the device layout and the payload included in the FFU.

Padding byte count: variable

After the manifest padding (blank space) is added to fill out to current chunk. This ensures that the data that follows begins on a chunk boundary.

Store header region

Store header

Store header, byte count: STORE_HEADER_V1_0_SIZE (248 bytes)

The store header contains metadata that describes the payload. This includes update type, validation size, data size, and versioning. Some information is redundant, but is included for convenience.

The store header contains the DWORD count/length fields that describe the validation & write descriptor sections. This allows those sections to be copied out and processed later.

In V1 FFU format, you should see only one store header. In V2 FFU format, you should expect to see a number of store headers, depending on the value defined by the NumOfStores struct.

Validation descriptor region

The validation descriptor region is a collection of VALIDATION_ENTRY structs. There are dwValidateDescriptorCount of them, and the overall byte count of the region is dwValidateDescriptorLength.

Write descriptor region

The write descriptor region is a collection of BLOCK_DATA_ENTRY structs. There are dwWriteDescriptorCount of them, and the overall size in bytes of the region is dwWriteDescriptorLength.

MajorVersion, MinorVersion

Major and minor versions of the store header.

FullFlashMajorVersion, FullFlashMinorVersion

Major and minor versions of the full flash update file format.

The following table shows the version values for V1 and V2 ffu image formats.

	V1	V2
MajorVersion	1	2
MinorVersion	0	0
FullFlashMajorVersion	2	2
FullFlashMinorVersion	0	0

Note

- The OEM should not flash the image to the device unless the version of the image matches these values.

NumOfStores (V2 only)

Number of stores and their payloads in this FFU.

StoreIndex (V2 only)

Current store index, starting from 1.

StorePayloadSize (V2 only)

Size of the store payload in bytes, excluding padding.

DevicePathLength (V2 only)

Size of the device path that follows, in characters, without including the terminating null character.

DevicePath (V2 only)

Actual device path that the store is targeted for. This should be the same as device path retrieved from UEFI protocol: DEVICE_PATH_TO_TEXT_PROTOCOL. ConvertDevicePathToText()

```
typedef struct _STORE_HEADER
{
    UINT32 dwUpdateType; // indicates partial or full flash
    UINT16 MajorVersion, MinorVersion; // used to validate struct
    UINT16 FullFlashMajorVersion, FullFlashMinorVersion; // FFU version, i.e. the image format
    char szPlatformId[192]; // string which indicates what device this FFU is intended to be written to
    UINT32 dwBlockSizeInBytes; // size of an image block in bytes - the device's actual sector size may differ
    UINT32 dwWriteDescriptorCount; // number of write descriptors to iterate through
    UINT32 dwWriteDescriptorLength; // total size of all the write descriptors, in bytes (included so they can
be read out up front and interpreted later)
    UINT32 dwValidateDescriptorCount; // number of validation descriptors to check
    UINT32 dwValidateDescriptorLength; // total size of all the validation descriptors, in bytes
    UINT32 dwInitialTableIndex; // block index in the payload of the initial (invalid) GPT
    UINT32 dwInitialTableCount; // count of blocks for the initial GPT, i.e. the GPT spans blockArray[idx..
(idx + count -1)]
    UINT32 dwFlashOnlyTableIndex; // first block index in the payload of the flash-only GPT (included so safe
flashing can be accomplished)
    UINT32 dwFlashOnlyTableCount; // count of blocks in the flash-only GPT
    UINT32 dwFinalTableIndex; // index in the table of the real GPT
    UINT32 dwFinalTableCount; // number of blocks in the real GPT
    UINT16 NumOfStores; // Total number of stores (V2 only)
    UINT16 StoreIndex; // Current store index, 1-based (V2 only)
    UINT64 StorePayloadSize; // Payload data only, excludes padding (V2 only)
    UINT16 DevicePathLength; // Length of the device path (V2 only)
    CHAR16 DevicePath[1]; // Device path has no NUL at then end (V2 only)
} STORE_HEADER;
```

Validation Entries

Validation entries, element count: dwValidateDescriptorCount, byte count: dwValidateDescriptorLength

The validation section is used only for partial updates. It contains a set of VALIDATION_ENTRY structs. Each validation entry contains a byte array and a range on disk to compare. If the data in the validation entry matches the data on disk, that validation entry is confirmed. If and only if all validation entries are confirmed, the partial update is safe to apply to the device.

Validation entry, byte count: variable

Each VALIDATION_ENTRY struct describes a location on disk that whose data should match the byte array in that entry.

```
typedef struct _VALIDATION_ENTRY
{
    UINT32 dwSectorIndex;
    UINT32 dwSectorOffset;
    UINT32 dwByteCount;
    BYTE rgCompareData[1]; // size is dwByteCount
} VALIDATION_ENTRY;
```

Block data entries

Block data entries, element count: dwWriteDescriptorCount, byte count: dwWriteDescriptorLength

The block data entries describe how to write the data to disk. It is possible to write a single area of the disk more than once or to write the same data to multiple places on the disk, allowing for a compressed payload. The write descriptor region is composed of BLOCK_DATA_ENTRY structs. Each entry has a size and a byte array, and an array of locations to write to disk.

The fields **dwFlashOnlyTableIndex** and **dwFlashOnlyTableCount** are used to determine the last block entry that is necessary to lay out all of the partitions required to re-flash the device. If all of the blocks up to and including this block are successfully flashed to the device, the device can be re-flashed without requiring any silicon vendor or OEM code.

Block data entry, byte count: variable

Each block data entry describes a block of data in the store data section. Each entry describes the number of data blocks and the locations to which they should be written on disk. The accessMethod is used like the accessMethod in SetFilePointer, meaning that it gives meaning to the blockIndex.

```
enum DISK_ACCESS_METHOD
{
    DISK_BEGIN = 0,
    DISK_END   = 2
};

typedef struct _DISK_LOCATION
{
    UINT32 dwDiskAccessMethod;
    UINT32 dwBlockIndex;
} DISK_LOCATION;

typedef struct _BLOCK_DATA_ENTRY
{
    UINT32 dwLocationCount;
    UINT32 dwBlockCount;
    DISK_LOCATION rgDiskLocations[1];
} BLOCK_DATA_ENTRY;
```

Padding

Padding – to allow the next section to start on a block boundary, byte count: variable

Image payload region

The payload of block data to be written to disk, byte count: variable.

This is an array of data blocks. Each data block consists of **BytesPerBlock** bytes, where **BytesPerBlock** is defined in the store header.

In V1 FFU format, you should see only one image payload region. in V2 FFU format, you should expect to see a number of image payload regions depending on the value defined by the NumOfStores struct.

Related topics

[Flashing tools](#)

Implementing image integrity validation in custom flashing tools

6/6/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The FFU image contains a signed catalog file, a hash within the catalog, and a table of hashes corresponding to each chunk of the image. The hash table contents are generated using the SHA256 secure hash algorithm. Three checks must be performed before the image is flashed:

- **Catalog signature validation** - Validating the signature of the signed catalog file helps to verify that the image came from a trusted source.
- **Hash of the table of hashes validation** - Validating the hash of the table of hashes in the table helps to verify that the image has not been tampered with.
- **Data chunk validation using the hash table entries** - The FFU application must check each chunk against its corresponding chunk hash before flashing the image to the device.

Checking the signature on the catalog and checking the hash of the table of hashes

The goal in signature validation is to make sure that the signature in the catalog matches the PK certificate on the phone. This approach allows checking for a signature up front without having the full image on the device before flashing. The signature check assumes that catalog contains a SHA1 hash.

Microsoft provides a UEFI protocol which exposes a function for this purpose, `EFI_CHECK_SIG_AND_HASH`. For more information, see [UEFI check signature protocol](#). This function also validates the hash of the table of hashes.

Example code flow

1. Establish pointers to catalog and hash table data.
2. Determine the size of the catalog and hash table data in bytes.
3. Use the [UEFI check signature protocol](#) to call `EFI_CHECK_SIG_AND_HASH`, passing the pointers and data sizes.
4. Based on the EFI return code either continue to process the image, or post a security message such as `EFI_SECURITY_VIOLATION`.

Note

If secure boot is not enabled on the device, a signature check is not performed.

Checking the data against the hash table entries

The OEM flashing tool must check the data against the hash table entries. For info about the flashing tool, [Developing custom OEM flashing tools](#).

Example code flow

A number of valid approaches can be used; an example is provided here to serve as a common point of reference.

1. Get the new hash data from the hash table in the image header.
2. Set up a loop to process chunks of data in the image.

3. Get a pointer to the hash of the current chunk of data.
4. Compare the hash of the current chunk of data against the hash table data using a function such as **memcmp**.
5. If the two hashes match, increment the pointer and get ready to check the next chunk of data.
6. If the two hashes do not match, stop all processing of the image and post a security message such as **EFI_SECURITY_VIOLATION**.
7. Continue processing until there is no more data in the image to process.

For info on the FFU elements discussed here, see [FFU image format](#).

Error handling

Standard error handling code techniques should be used. A few common situations to handle are listed here:

- Missing catalog data
- Insufficient resources
- Empty image

Clean up and exit

Follow standard practice and clean up any created arrays or other objects before exiting the flashing code. The exit process should return the final **EFI_STATUS** value. For example, if the image is valid, you can return a value of **EFI_SUCCESS**.

Encryption library

Locate and include an appropriate encryption library in the image to support hash validation, such as **EFI_HASH_PROTOCOL**.

Related topics

[Developing custom OEM flashing tools](#)

Field service scenarios

6/6/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Scenarios can help to identify security vulnerabilities in field service processes. Each scenario should be reviewed to verify that a secure solution has been implemented by the OEM.

Device refurbishing	<p>Mobile operators and OEMs can refurbish devices by using a variety of approaches. The first refurbishment scenario occurs when customers return phones to the mobile operator for whatever reason. In this case, the devices are typically shipped to regional OEM service centers where they are reflashed with the current OEM image.</p> <p>The second refurbishment scenario occurs when customers are experiencing problems with the operation of the device. The customer brings the device back to the mobile operator store, and the store associate runs basic diagnostics. The associate can attempt to reset the phone to factory settings or reflash the device OS by using flashing tools provided by Microsoft (FFU) or the OEM. If this fails, the store associate can decide to send the device to an OEM service center. Before the device leaves the control of the mobile operator and is returned to the OEM, some mechanism is used to remove all the customer data.</p> <p>The renewal of the device at the OEM service center is the third refurbishment scenario. The device can be reflashed using whatever tools the OEM service center is equipped with. Some OEMs will use OS-level flashing technology, meaning they cannot reflash the device if the modem-level boot loader or software is broken. Others will be able to reflash the modem and OS partitions.</p>
Phone troubleshooting	<p>Field test and diagnostics apps can be used by the mobile operator store, mobile operator service centers, and OEM service centers to perform specific tests on a phone in two different scenarios.</p> <p>The first troubleshooting scenario is when the customer is experiencing difficulties with the device and a diagnostic test is run to gather information on the reported issue.</p> <p>The second scenario is when the mobile operator or OEM service centers seek to establish quality status of a device. This scenario is the more general form of the previous troubleshooting scenario. This is because there could be more reasons than customer difficulties that would trigger the need for diagnostics and testing of retail phones. For example, to perform field quality measures, the test could be initiated to perform random-sample testing.</p>

Engineering flashing	The engineering staffs of silicon vendors and OEMs need access to flashing technologies during development of hardware and software for the phones. This scenario is typically supported by low-level technologies such as JTAG, UEFI-based flashing, or OEM-specific flashing technologies. Which technology is selected depends on issues being worked on, development processes, and the supporting tools. The granularity of flashing options varies; lower-level tools have more flexibility in choosing which partitions can be flashed.
Engineering diagnostics	The engineering staffs of silicon vendors and OEMs need access to diagnostics technologies during development of hardware and software for the phones. These scenarios are typically supported by technologies provided by the SV or OEM that will be disabled on retail devices. Some of the SV technologies provide a broad set of capabilities—including features that support reading and writing to flash memory—that must be disabled before the device is shipped.
Mobile operator trials	There may be a need to flash OS images to the device to support mobile operator trials.
Production manufacturing	The process of flashing phones during manufacturing varies per OEM. Some OEMs use gang programmers that can flash a number of units at a time; others use the flashing technology described in this documentation. For more info on the flashing process, see Flashing tools .
Rework manufacturing	Some OEMs have a process in place to rework phones that fail manufacturing quality control. Because the device is completely assembled, it may not be possible to use a gang programmer; this rework can be accomplished by using tethered flashing technologies similar to the customer return refurbishment scenario.
Remanufacturing	There can be a need to repurpose existing phone inventory for a different region or mobile operator by replacing the existing OS with one customized for the new market.

Related topics

[Manufacturing](#)

Using a host PC to reboot a device to flashing mode and get version information

7/13/2017 • 6 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

When a Windows 10 Mobile device is connected to a host PC via a USB cable, you can perform the following tasks in an application that is running on the host PC. These tasks are useful in certain manufacturing or customer care scenarios.

- Reboot the device into flashing mode.
- Retrieve version information from the device.

The host app uses the Windows Portable Devices API to accomplish these tasks.

Understanding the Windows Portable Devices API

The Windows Portable Devices (WPD) API is a COM-based API that enables computers to communicate with attached devices. To learn more about this API, refer to the following resources:

- [Windows Portable Devices](#): This section of the MSDN library provides architecture guidance and reference documentation for the Windows Portable Devices API.
- [Portable Devices COM API Sample](#): This sample demonstrates how to use the Windows Portable Devices API to perform a variety of tasks, including enumerating connected devices, reading properties of content on a connected device, and sending MTP commands to a device.
- [Portable Devices Services COM API Sample](#): This sample demonstrates how to use the Windows Portable Devices API to perform a variety of operations on device services, including enumerating services and service content.

Discovering Windows 10 Mobile devices that are connected to the host computer

Before the host app can reboot a device to flashing mode or retrieve version information from the device, the host apps must discover all devices that are connected to the computer.

1. Create an [IPortableDeviceManager](#) object and use the [IPortableDeviceManager::GetDevices](#) function to get the collection of device IDs for all connected devices.
2. Enumerate through the collection of device IDs to determine which connected device is a Windows 10 Mobile. For each device ID, create an [IPortableDevice](#) object and then use the [IPortableDevice::Content](#) and [IPortableDeviceContent::Properties](#) functions to retrieve the value of the WPD_DEVICE_MODEL_UNIQUE_ID device property for the device. If the device is a Windows 10 Mobile device, the value of the WPD_DEVICE_MODEL_UNIQUE_ID property is a GUID with the following value.

```
0x59f12ea9, 0x53ce, 0x452d, 0x97, 0x11, 0xca, 0x4e, 0xea, 0xf1, 0x80, 0x89
```

Examples and additional resources

The following code examples in the [Portable Devices COM API Sample](#) demonstrate the following related tasks:

- Creating an [IPortableDeviceManager](#) object: see the `ChooseDevice` function in `DeviceEnumeration.cpp`.

- Getting the device IDs of all connected devices: see the `EnumerateAllDevices` function in `DeviceEnumeration.cpp`.
- Retrieving device properties: see the `ReadContentProperties` function in `ContentProperties.cpp`.

For more info about enumerating devices and retrieving device properties, see the following articles:

- [Enumerating Devices](#)
- [Device Properties](#)
- [Retrieving Properties for a Single Object](#)

Rebooting a Windows 10 Mobile device into flashing mode

After you have an `IPortableDevice` object that represents a Windows 10 Mobile device, you can send an MTP command to reboot the phone into flashing mode.

1. Create an `IPortableDeviceValues` object and configure it to set up the MTP command parameters:
 - a. Call `IPortableDeviceValues::SetGuidValue`. Pass `WPD_PROPERTY_COMMON_COMMAND_CATEGORY` to the `key` parameter and pass `WPD_COMMAND_MTP_EXT_EXECUTE_COMMAND_WITHOUT_DATA_PHASE.fmtid` to the `Value` parameter.
 - b. Call `IPortableDeviceValues::SetUnsignedIntegerValue`. Pass `WPD_PROPERTY_COMMON_COMMAND_ID` to the `key` parameter and pass `WPD_COMMAND_MTP_EXT_EXECUTE_COMMAND_WITHOUT_DATA_PHASE.pid` to the `Value` parameter.
 - c. Call `IPortableDeviceValues::SetUnsignedIntegerValue` again. Pass `WPD_PROPERTY_MTP_EXT_OPERATION_CODE` to the `key` parameter and pass the value **`0x9401`** to the `Value` parameter. This value represents the MTP command that reboots the phone into flashing mode.
 - d. Create an `IPortableDevicePropVariantCollection` object.
 - e. Call `IPortableDeviceValues::SetIPortableDevicePropVariantCollectionValue`. Pass `WPD_PROPERTY_MTP_EXT_OPERATION_PARAMS` to the `key` parameter and pass the `IPortableDevicePropVariantCollection` object to the `pValue` parameter.
2. Call `IPortableDevice::SendCommand` to send the MTP command. Pass the initialized `IPortableDeviceValues` object to the `pParameters` parameter. This operation sends the MTP command to reboot the phone into flashing mode.

Examples and additional resources

The following code examples demonstrate how to set up MTP command parameters and send an MTP command:

- [Issuing the GetNumObjects Command](#): This topic in the MSDN library demonstrates how to send the standard GetNumObjects MTP command.
- The `SendhintsCommand` function in `ContentEnumeration.cpp` in the [Portable Devices COM API Sample](#).

For more information about sending MTP commands using the Windows Portable Devices API, see [Supporting MTP Extensions](#).

Retrieving version information from a Windows 10 Mobile device

After you determine the device ID for a Windows 10 Mobile device that is connected to the host computer, you can

use a Windows 10 Mobile-specific device service named MtpDuDeviceService to retrieve version information from the device.

Note

If the device is protected with a PIN, the MtpDuDeviceService is only available if the PIN has been entered and the device is unlocked.

Open the MtpDuDeviceService

First, enumerate through the device services to open an [IPortableDeviceService](#) object for the MtpDuDeviceService.

1. Get an array of IDs for all device services supported by the device. To do this, cast the existing [IPortableDeviceManager](#) object to an [IPortableDeviceServiceManager](#) and call the [IPortableDeviceServiceManager::GetDeviceServices](#) method. Pass the device ID for the Windows 10 Mobile device to the *pszPnPDeviceID* parameter and the value [GUID_DEVINTERFACE_WPD_SERVICE](#) to the *guidServiceCategory* parameter. The array of service IDs is returned in the *pServices* parameter.
2. Iterate through the array of service IDs, and perform the following tasks for each service ID:
 - a. Create an [IPortableDeviceService](#) object and call the [IPortableDeviceService::Open](#) function to open the service. Pass the current service ID to the *pszPnPServiceID* parameter.
 - b. Get the service object ID by calling the [IPortableDeviceService::GetServiceObjectID](#) function. You need the service object ID to access properties of the service.
 - c. Use the [IPortableDeviceService::Content](#) and [IPortableDeviceContent::Properties](#) functions to retrieve the collection of properties for the service (an [IPortableDeviceProperties](#) object).
 - d. Create an [IPortableDeviceKeyCollection](#) object and add the WPD-defined [WPD_OBJECT_NAME](#) property key to this collection. This property key indicates that you are retrieving the display name for the service.
 - e. Call the [IPortableDeviceProperties::GetValues](#) function to retrieve an [IPortableDeviceValues](#) object that contains the property values. Pass the service object ID to the *pszObjectID* parameter and the initialized [IPortableDeviceKeyCollection](#) object to the *pKeys* parameter.
 - f. Call the [IPortableDeviceValues::GetStringValue](#) function, and pass the WPD-defined [WPD_OBJECT_NAME](#) property key to the *key* parameter.
 - g. If the [IPortableDeviceValues::GetStringValue](#) function returns the string **MtpDuDeviceService**, you have found the service object you need to retrieve version information from the phone. Exit the loop and proceed to the next section.

If the name of the service is not **MtpDuDeviceService**, call the [IPortableDeviceService::Close](#) function, iterate to the next service ID returned by [IPortableDeviceServiceManager::GetDeviceServices](#), and return to step 2.

Retrieve version information from the device

After you have opened an [IPortableDeviceService](#) object for the MtpDuDeviceService, you can use this object to retrieve version information from the device

1. Use the [IPortableDeviceService::Content](#) and [IPortableDeviceContent::Properties](#) functions to retrieve the collection of properties for the service (an [IPortableDeviceProperties](#) object).
2. Create an [IPortableDeviceKeyCollection](#) object and add a [PROPERTYKEY](#) value to this collection that specifies the version data you want to retrieve from the device. The [PROPERTYKEY](#) value must have the following structure:
 - The *fmtid* field must have the following GUID value:

0x9BFC64C1, 0x19C9, 0x4F3D, 0xA1, 0x4D, 0xC8, 0xDB, 0xE0, 0x47, 0x5D, 0x13

- The *pid* field must have one of the values shown in the table below

DEVICE DATA TO RETRIEVE	PID VALUE
The build string for the image on the device	Use the data returned by the following pid values to construct the build string: <ul style="list-style-type: none">4 (the name of the internal Microsoft branch the OS was built from)6 (the Windows build number)7 (the Windows 10 Mobile build number)8 (the time stamp for the build) An example build string is WPMAIN.9600.12186.20130906-1624.
The OS version	12
The OEM device name	15
The firmware version	16
The SoC version	17
The radio software version	18
The radio hardware version	19
The bootloader version	20
The platform ID (from SMBIOS).	29

- Call the [IPortableDeviceProperties::GetValues](#) function to retrieve an [IPortableDeviceValues](#) object that contains the requested version information. Pass the service object ID to the *pszObjectID* parameter and the initialized [IPortableDeviceKeyCollection](#) object to the *pKeys* parameter.
- Call the [IPortableDeviceValues::GetStringValue](#) function. For the *key* parameter, pass the same [PROPERTYKEY](#) value that you used earlier. This function returns the requested version information in the *pValue* parameter.

Examples and additional resources

The following code examples in the [Portable Devices Services COM API Sample](#) demonstrate the following related tasks:

- Enumerating through device services: see the [EnumerateContactsServices](#) function in [ServiceEnumeration.cpp](#).

- Reading properties of a service: see the `ReadContentProperties` function in `ContentProperties.cpp`.

For more info about working with device services, see [Opening a service](#), [Accessing service object properties](#) and [Retrieving Object Properties](#).

Disabling the initial setup process

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

To disable the device's initial setup process (also sometimes called the *out-of-box experience* or *OOBE*) in a Test, Health, or Production image that is used during manufacturing, include the SKIPOOBE imaging feature in the OEMInput.xml file that is used to build the image.

The SKIPOOBE feature sets the **OobeHeadless** registry value (a REG_DWORD value under the HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Microsoft\Shell\OOBE entry) to 1. Alternatively, you can configure this registry value directly in one of your own packages. The following example demonstrates a package XML file that sets this registry value.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<Package xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  Owner="Contoso"
  Component="Shell"
  SubComponent="DisableOOBE"
  OwnerType="OEM"
  ReleaseType="Production" xmlns="urn:Microsoft.WindowsPhone/PackageSchema.v8.00">

  <Macros>
    <Macro Id="hk1m.shell" Value="$(hk1m.microsoft)\Shell"/>
  </Macros>

  <Components>
    <OSComponent>
      <RegKeys>
        <RegKey KeyName="$(hk1m.shell)\OOBE">
          <RegValue Name="OobeHeadless" Type="REG_DWORD" Value="00000001" />
        </RegKey>
      </RegKeys>
    </OSComponent>
  </Components>
</Package>
```

Related topics

[Specifying files and registry entries in a package project file](#)

Reset protection

7/13/2017 • 9 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Reset Protection helps you secure a device in case it is stolen. It must be enabled on the device during manufacturing time.

Reset Protection consists of the following parts:

- **Reset and reactivation protection** – The stolen device cannot be reused by resetting or flashing the device. When a user performs a factory reset on the device, they will be asked to enter the Microsoft Account credentials that are associated with that device. Additionally, if the device is flashed with a new image and Reset Protection is turned on, the Microsoft Account credentials that were associated with that device is required to finish OOBE and use the device.
- **Anti-rollback protection** – If Reset Protection is enabled, the stolen device cannot be flashed to an earlier version of the operating system that did not support Reset Protection.

To turn on Reset Protection, you must configure two secure UEFI variables:

- **ANTI_THEFT_ENABLED** –This variable needs to be set with a value that will be provided by Microsoft and indicates that the device can support Reset Protection. The operating system enables Reset Protection on the device based on this setting. This variable is in the 1A597235-6378-4910-9F8B-720FEE9357A3 namespace.
- **DBX** - This variable must contain the image hashes of the builds to which the device cannot be rolled back. These image hashes are provided by Microsoft. This variable is in the EFI_IMAGE_SECURITY_DATABASE_GUID namespace.

Turn on Reset Protection in your images

There are two ways to turn on reset protection in your images:

Option 1: Enable it by using oeminput.xml

On retail devices, you enable Reset Protection by adding the RESET_PROTECTION feature to the OEMInput.xml file. When you include this feature, the device's UEFI secure boot keys for Reset Protection are provisioned as a scheduled task that will run once at first boot into main operating system and will not run again. For more info on the optional features that are available, see [Optional features for building images](#).

Note If you're building a test image, use RESET_PROTECTION_INTERNAL instead.

Option 2: Enable when provisioning secure boot keys

Reset Protection is enabled on a device by provisioning UEFI secure boot keys and is a two-step process:

1. **Anti-Rollback provisioning** -- The DBX variable must be updated to contain the hashes for the builds that did not support Reset Protection. Specifically, the sample scripts that create PK, KEK, DB and DBX variables will be modified to add in the DBX variable the list of hashes provided by Microsoft. The list of hashes will be supplied by Microsoft in a file called **OEM_RollbackHashes.bin**. The DBX variable must be signed with the OEM certificate.

The following excerpt includes the changes to the script that creates the DBX variable:

```
write-progress -activity "Making secure boot variables" -status "Creating DBX"
# add SHA256 hashes from the supplied file to the DBX variable
$hashes = Get-Content .\OEM_RollbackHashes.bin
format-sb-hashes "dbx" $ownerGuid $hashes
```

2. **Reset and Reactivation Protection provisioning** -- After setting the DBX variable, you must also set the ANTI_THEFT_ENABLED authenticated variable. The content of this variable will be provided by Microsoft in the **OEM_ResetProtection_Enable_Resource.bin** file. The name of the variable is ANTI_THEFT_ENABLED and the namespace GUID is 1A597235-6378-4910-9F8B-720FEE9357A3. You can set this in the same way as the secure boot keys.

How do I update a retail image with Reset Protection?

When you submit an update, Reset Protection should not be included as part of the update. However, when you build image, Reset Protection should be included in the oeminput.xml file. We recommend the following steps to update a retail image with Reset Protection enabled:

1. When you're developing an image, the RESET_PROTECTION optional feature should be included in the oeminput.xml file.
2. Before you submit the packages for signing, you should remove the RESET_PROTECTION optional feature from the oeminput.xml file.
3. After you receive the packages signed by Microsoft, you must add the RESET_PROTECTION optional feature back to your oeminput.xml file.

Bootable WIM files and MMOS

When using Reset Protection on a device, the MMOS or bootable WIM files that support this device must be built on a version of the tools that support Reset Protection. We recommend that the version of the device image and the version of MMOS match.

Reverse logistics

With reverse logistics, you can get information about the status of Reset Protection on a device, such as the device IMEI, or check if Reset Protection is currently enabled on the device. You can also use this to remove Reset Protection if you have the appropriate recovery key for that device. Reverse logistics can help you in refurbishment scenarios where Reset Protection is turned on, but you don't have the Microsoft Account credentials that are required to turn it off. We've provided sample code on how to use reverse logistics in the [Portable Devices COM API Sample](#).

How to get started using reverse logistics

In order to use Microsoft's automated reverse logistics program, organizations need to sign up for an account with the [Microsoft Dashboard](#) and perform the following tasks:

- Purchase an Authenticode signing certificate.
- Install the certificate on all machines that will be used to submit requests.
- Assign an administrator(s) to manage the program.
- For each user in your company who will contribute submissions to the Dashboard, add the Microsoft account for the user and grant each user the **Reverse Logistics** permission. To grant permissions, click **Your Profile** and then click **Permissions**.

Register your company

Your company may already have an account with the Microsoft Dashboard. In that case, you will need to find the administrator of your account with the Dashboard. To find the administrator, click **Administration** and then click

My Administrators. We recommend adding a reverse logistics manager as an additional administrator so it's easier to approve users' reverse logistics requests. The administrators responsibilities include approving requests to join the company, approving request for permissions, and removing users after they leave the company. For more information, see [Manage users and permissions](#).

If your company does not yet have an account with the Dashboard, here is how to get started:

- [Get a code signing certificate](#)

- In order to use reverse logistics, you **must** purchase a standard class 3 certificate, NOT an EV certificate.
- Make sure you establish your company with the same name that you used to purchase the certificate. This is the name that will be exposed to users.

- [Establish a company](#)

Make sure you save this certificate and that it is accessible. You will need to install it on multiple computers later in this section. We recommend that you save a copy of the certificate on a thumb drive, or something easily accessible.

Add users for your company

After you register your company, add other users who need reverse logistics permission:

- The first person to register a company becomes an administrator for that company account.
- Subsequent users need to register by using a Microsoft account. On the top right-hand corner of the [Dashboard](#), click **Register** to add yourself to your company and request the **Reverse Logistics** permission under **Additional Permissions Request**.
- The administrator receives notification and approves the request.

For more information about signing in to the Dashboard, see [Before you sign in](#).

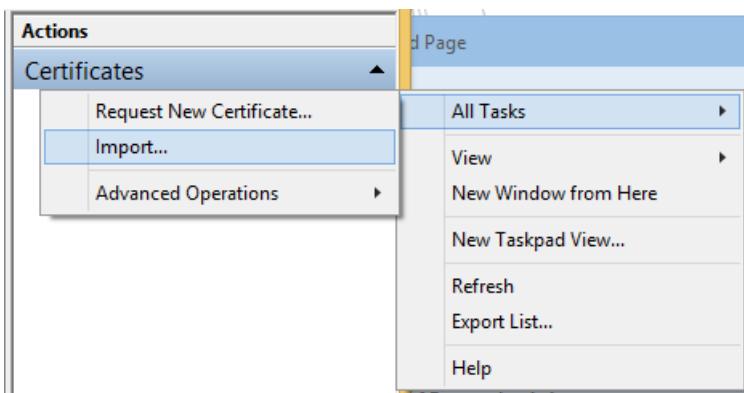
Set up your workstation for reverse logistics

Prerequisites

- You need a workstation that runs Windows 7 or later and has browser access to the internet.
- Each reverse logistics submitter must have his or her own Microsoft account; account credentials should not be shared amongst multiple people.
- Only computers that have the certificate installed locally will be able to perform reverse logistics.

Process

1. Plug in the thumb drive that contains the certificate you purchased.
2. On each computer where you plan to submit reverse logistics requests, sign in as a local Administrator and install the code signing certificate:
 - a. Open a command prompt.
 - b. Type `mmc` and press ENTER.
 - c. On the **File** menu, click **Add/Remove Snap-in**.
 - d. Click **Add**.
 - e. In the **Add Standalone Snap-in** dialog box, select **Certificates**.
 - f. Click **Add**.
 - g. In the **Certificates Snap-in** dialog box, select **Computer account** and click **Next**.
 - h. In the **Select Computer** dialog box, click **Finish**.
 - i. On the **Add/Remove Snap-in** dialog box, click **OK**.
 - j. In the **Console Root** window, click **Certificates (Local Computer)** to view the certificate stores for the computer.
 - k. In the **Actions** pane, under Certificates, select **More Actions**, then **All Tasks**, and then **Import**:

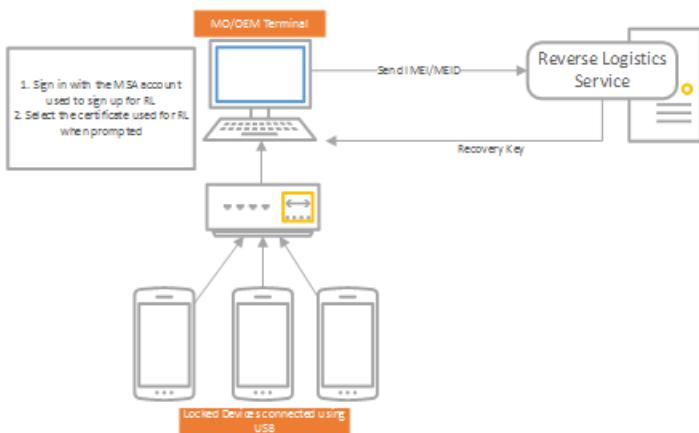


- I. Click **Browse** and find the certificate you purchased.
- m. Click **OK**. The certificate should be installed in your **Personal** certificate store.

Authentication and Use

The next step is to create a client tool on a provisioned workstation to submit reverse logistics requests. You will need to create a third-party app with Microsoft account. The app will use a browser to allow a user to enter credentials using a Microsoft account website. That will grant access to your tool to get the appropriate token to call the Reverse Logistics API. For more information about how to build the app, see [Mobile and Windows desktop apps](#), and use "dds.reverse_logistics" scope (instead of "wl.basic") to get the appropriate token.

After your tool has the token, it can call the Reverse Logistics API with that token, your client certificate, and the target IMEI in order to retrieve the recovery key for the target device.



API specification

Request

Reverse Logistics API endpoint:

POST

<https://cs.dds.microsoft.com/Command/ExternalClientCert/AdministrativeUnprotect/%7BPartnerName%7D/%7BDeviceId%7D>

{PartnerName} should be replaced with an end-user readable string that will be included in an email to the user whose Microsoft account is protecting the phone.

{DeviceId} should be replaced with a string in one of the following formats (leaving the square brackets and replacing the text inside and including the curly braces):

- ImeiOrMeid[{IMEI or MEID of the device}]
- Duid[{DUID of the device}]

Include the Microsoft account user token in the "Authorization" header of the request.

The certificate provisioned with the Dashboard for your organization must be used as the client certificate for

mutual HTTPS.

Response

```
{  
    "UnprotectResult": "{UnprotectResult}"  
    "RecoveryKey": "{RecoveryKey}"  
}  
  
UnprotectResult will be a string value of the enum specified below:  
  
/// <summary>  
/// Result of the unprotect operation  
/// </summary>  
public enum UnprotectResult  
{  
    /// <summary>  
    /// Device was not found in DDS  
    /// </summary>  
    DeviceNotFound,  
  
    /// <summary>  
    /// Device was already unprotected  
    /// </summary>  
    DeviceAlreadyUnprotected,  
  
    /// <summary>  
    /// Device has been unprotected  
    /// </summary>  
    DeviceUnprotected,  
  
    /// <summary>  
    /// IF we find more than 1 device, we don't currently have a way to resolve the conflict. So, we  
    don't unprotect.  
    /// </summary>  
    MultipleDevicesFound,  
}
```

Response codes:

- 200: Success.
- 400: The request is malformed.
- 401: The request is unauthorized. Your organization may not be provisioned properly, the user may not be provisioned with the organization, or there may be a problem or mismatch with the client certificate or the Microsoft account user token. The response may include text giving a reason for the authorization problem.
- 404: The API path or device specified was not found.
- 500: An unexpected error. If this persists, contact Microsoft for resolution of the issue.
- 503: Storage error. If this persists, contact Microsoft for resolution of the issue.

Building and flashing mobile images

7/12/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Here's information to help you build and flash images to your Windows 10 Mobile device.

1. Define, customize, and build an image

To build a customized image that can be flashed to mobile devices, you can use either the new Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer (ICD) or classic ImgGen.cmd, or a hybrid of these methods using the Windows ICD command-line interface. See [Customizations for Windows 10 Mobile](#) to help you decide which method you need to use to meet your device customization needs.

- **Using Windows ICD:** This tool walks you through the process of creating images for Windows 10 Mobile using the Windows provisioning framework. Use this tool if you are building a device that is based on a reference design from a SoC vendor. To learn more about the tool, see [Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer](#). To start building a mobile image, see [Build a mobile image using Windows ICD](#).
- **Using ImgGen.cmd:** If you're building a device based on your own hardware design or using MCSF customization answer files and other assets that were generated using the legacy tools that shipped in Windows Phone 8.1, you can generate a customized mobile image using this tool. To get started, see [Building a mobile image using ImgGen.cmd](#).
- **Using a hybrid method:** If you want to use an OEMInput.xml file to fully define the contents of your image, take advantage of all the new runtime settings, enterprise policies, and enrollment settings available in Windows provisioning and also be able to fully customize the device hardware and connectivity settings, preload apps, and add assets such as ringtones and localized strings through MCSF, you can use a hybrid approach using the Windows ICD CLI to build your image. To learn more, see [Build a mobile image using a hybrid method](#).

2. Sign an image

No matter which method you used to customize and build your image, you'll need to cryptographically sign your image before you can deploy it to a device.

- [Sign a full flash update \(FFU\) image](#)

3. Flash an image to a device

Use the information in the following topics to learn about flashing and update tools:

- [Use the flashing tools provided by Microsoft](#)
- [Update packages on a device and get package update logs](#)
- [Update packages in an .FFU image file](#)

Build a mobile image using Windows ICD

7/12/2017 • 5 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer (ICD) is a Windows provisioning tool that lets you streamline customizing and provisioning a Windows image. It offers both a GUI or command-line interface that you can use to:

- Configure settings and policies for a mobile image, including new customizations primarily focused on enterprise and education-specific scenarios such as bulk enrollment and enterprise policies, and then build the customized image.
- Create a multivariant image by creating a provisioning package that defines targets and adds conditions that specify when settings for a variant will be applied, and then using the provisioning package as input to building a mobile image.

Use Windows ICD if you are building a device that is based on a reference design from a SoC vendor or if you are looking for a simple and streamlined process for creating a mobile image.

To build a mobile image using the Windows ICD UI

The Windows ICD user interface (UI) provides an easy-to-use interface to build a customized mobile image. The UI shows all the settings that you can configure for a single variant mobile image and it then guides you through a step-by-step process to build, and even flash, the customized image.

However, be aware that there are some settings that are not available through the Windows provisioning framework and so these are not available to configure using Windows ICD. This includes [MCSF settings not supported in Windows Provisioning](#) as well as the support for data assets (such as ringtones, localized strings, and so on).

If you don't need to configure these settings or assets for your image, you can use the Windows ICD UI to build your customized, single variant mobile image by following the instructions in [Build and deploy an image for Windows 10 Mobile](#).

To build a mobile image using the Windows ICD CLI

If you want to configure the available mobile settings in the Windows provisioning framework but want more flexibility in building your image, you can use the Windows ICD command-line interface (CLI). Using the Windows ICD CLI, you can:

- Choose how you define the packages and features contained in your image—either by using an OEMInput.xml file or a BSP.config.xml file as one of the inputs.
- Build a single variant mobile image.
- Create a provisioning package with multivariant settings, which you can use as one of the inputs for creating a multivariant mobile image.

Whether you're building a multivariant or single variant image, you must choose how you want to define the contents of the image. This determines the packages or features that will be part of the image and can include hardware support, languages, market-specific apps or functionality, and so on.

Define the contents of the image

1. **Using a `BSP.config.xml` file.** You can download these as part of the BSP kit or you can generate your own `BSP.config.xml` file by running the BSP kit configuration tools from the SoC vendor and selecting your component drivers.

The BSP.config.xml file is required if you tried or want to use the Windows ICD UI to build your image. If you are building a mobile image for a hardware reference design, you should already have the BSP.config.xml file for your hardware reference design.

2. **Using an OEMInput.xml file.** An OEMInput.xml file describes the required and optional elements that are used to define the mobile image. If you are creating a mobile image for a hardware reference design or for your own hardware design, and you also want to add your own features as part of the image, the OEMInput.xml file allows you to do this.

The mobile kit includes OEMInput.xml samples that you can use as a starting point. You can find these in the Windows install folder, C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\OEMInputSamples on x64 host computers or C:\Program Files\Windows Kits\10\OEMInputSamples on x86 host computers.

To learn more about OEMInput contents and other features you can add to your image, see [OEMInput file contents](#) and [Optional features for building images](#). If you are already familiar with OEMInput.xml and want to know how to add your own feature into the image and other functionality available to you, see the other topics under [Define the image using OEMInput and feature manifest files](#).

To build a mobile image, you must also have a provisioning package or Windows provisioning answer file to use as inputs. These files specify the customization settings and assets that you want to include in your image.

- You can use the Windows ICD UI to generate a provisioning package by configuring the settings and then exporting a provisioning package.
- You can use the Windows ICD UI to quickly generate a Windows provisioning answer file. Whenever you start a new project using the UI, Windows ICD always creates a customizations.xml in your project folder. This is typically found in your Documents\Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer (WICD)\Project_Name folder. If you want to create one from scratch, see [Windows provisioning answer file](#) to understand the schema and then see [Windows Provisioning settings reference](#) to learn about the settings available for you to configure.

Note We recommend using the Windows ICD UI to easily generate either the provisioning package or the Windows provisioning answer file.

Follow these instructions to build a single variant mobile image:

Build a single variant mobile image

1. See [Getting started with Windows ICD](#) and follow the instructions on launching the Windows ICD CLI.
2. [Build an image for Windows 10 Mobile](#) using the Windows ICD CLI.

Windows supports a mechanism that allows you to create a single image that can work for multiple markets. You can dynamically configure languages, branding, apps, and settings based on conditions. Building a mobile image that contains multivariant settings is only possible through the Windows ICD CLI.

The process for building a multivariant mobile image is similar to building a single variant mobile image except that you must create a provisioning package with multivariant settings first and then you must use this package as one of the inputs when you are ready to build the image.

Follow these instructions to build multivariant mobile image:

Build a multivariant mobile image

1. Create the provisioning package. For more information, see [Create a provisioning package with multivariant settings](#).

You will use this package as one of the inputs for the next step.

2. [Build an image for Windows 10 Mobile](#) using the Windows ICD CLI.

Related topics

[Building and flashing mobile images](#)

[Build a mobile image using a hybrid method](#)

Build a mobile image using ImgGen.cmd

7/13/2017 • 17 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use ImgGen.cmd to generate an image for a Windows 10 Mobile device that is based on your own hardware design or if you're using MCSF customization answer files and other assets that were generated using the legacy tools that shipped in Windows Phone 8.1.

Here's the high-level view of the steps you'll take to build an image using ImgGen.cmd:

1. Identify the packages to include in the image. For more info, see [Getting packages for the image](#).
2. Reference the packages by adding them to one or more feature manifest files, and save those files in the root directory for Microsoft packages, for example, %WPDKCONTENTROOT%\MSPackages. For more info, see [Specifying packages to include in images by using feature manifest files](#).
3. For each device platform, do the following:
 - a. Create a *device platform package*, and save it in the root directory for Microsoft packages. For more info, see [Set device platform information](#).
 - b. Reference the device platform package in a feature manifest file by using the **OEMDevicePlatformPackages** element.

You can include several device platforms in a feature manifest file. The OEMInput file will specify which device to use by its DeviceName.

Image creation will fail unless a valid device platform package is specified for the image.

4. Create an *OEMInput file* that specifies the device platform, the feature manifest files, and other attributes used to define the image. For more info, see [Creating an OEMInput file to define the image](#).
5. Create an MCSF customization answer file. At minimum, specify the required device platform information and the information required for the mobile operator network. For more info, see [Customization answer file](#) and [Phone metadata in DeviceTargetingInfo](#).

Note If you want to support multivariant settings in the answer file, the same set of conditions are supported in MCSF as in Windows provisioning. See the section *Target*, *TargetState*, *Condition* and *priorities* in [Create a provisioning package with multivariant settings](#) for a list of supported conditions but be sure to follow the schema for a MCSF customization answer file when you specify your **Targets** in the answer file.

6. Run the ImgGen.cmd to build the image. For more info, see [Using ImgGen.cmd to generate the image](#) below.
7. Sign the image so that it can be flashed to a device. For more info, see [Sign a full flash update \(FFU\) image](#).

Getting packages for the image

Before building an image, you must first identify all the packages you need for the image. Generally, there are three categories of packages that are used to build an image:

- **Microsoft packages.** These include all OS and Microsoft-implemented driver packages required for any image, as well as additional platform-specific driver and firmware packages (for example, packages for components specific to a particular device resolution or SoC). These packages are included with the MobileOS and must be installed under %WPDKCONTENTROOT%\MSPackages. You can use the following

command to display the current value of WPDKCONTENTROOT.

```
ECHO %WPDKCONTENTROOT%
```

Feature manifest files abstract the location and groupings of packages that Microsoft provides. This allows for the specification of a group of related packages by specifying a single feature name. For example, specifying the TESTINFRASTRUCTURE feature includes multiple packages that support test execution. For more info, see [Optional features for building images](#).

- **SoC vendor packages.** These include packages for drivers and firmware components implemented by the SoC vendor. For more info about these packages, refer to documentation provided by the SoC vendor.

Note

Several UEFI packages are required from the SoC vendor to create bootable images. These packages vary depending on the layout of the device and the SoC vendor. Most of the packages populate binary partitions on the device. For more info about creating binary partition packages to populate these partitions, see [Specifying components in a package project file](#). The EFI system partition (ESP) is populated using Microsoft content and OEM content.

- **OEM packages.** These are packages created by OEMs for content such as drivers and applications. For info about creating packages, see [Creating packages](#).

Creating an OEMInput file to define the image

To define the image, you must create an *OEMInput* file. This is an XML file that specifies the following:

- The type of image to generate. For example, you specify whether the image contains only Microsoft production packages or a mixture of production and test packages in the **ReleaseType** element, and you specify what screen resolution the image will support in the **Resolution** element.

Note

OEMs have some control over what Microsoft packages are included in the image by choosing different values for the **ReleaseType** element or by referencing Microsoft-defined features under the **Features** element. For more info, see [Specifying packages to include in images by using feature manifest files](#) later in this topic.

- The OEM packages to include in the image. To specify which OEM packages are included in the image, create a *feature manifest* file and reference this in the OEMInput file. For more info, see [Specifying packages to include in images by using feature manifest files](#) later in this topic.

For a full list of the supported elements in the OEMInput file, see [OEMInput file contents](#).

OEMs should use sample OEMInput files included with the MobileOS as the starting point for their own images. These sample files provide the starting configuration for a set of standard image types, including retail, production, test, and manufacturing images. OEMs should extend each file with the packages that contain the drivers, applications, and other components needed for their specific device. These sample files are available under %WPDKCONTENTROOT%\OEMInputSamples. For guidance about how maintain an OEMInput file so that the latest changes to the Microsoft sample files can be integrated into it, see [Configuring the OEMInput file to integrate feature changes from the Microsoft samples](#) later in this topic.

OEMs should contact the SoC vendor for the feature manifest files that are used for a specific device and include these in the OEMInput file.

Note

The OEMInput XML file supports explicit paths and environment variables. If you use environment variables in paths to packages and other files, the environment variables will be expanded when the OEMInput XML file is

processed by the imaging tool. The sample files included with the MobileOS use the %WPDKCONTENTROOT% environment variable in some of the paths.

Image types

The following table lists the types of images OEMs can build and the OEMInput sample to use as the starting configuration for each image type.

IMAGE TYPE	DESCRIPTION	OEMINPUT SAMPLE
Retail	<p>Retail images are the images that are flashed to final retail phones. Retail images must use Microsoft-signed packages that are returned to OEMs after submitting production images to Microsoft by using the OEM submission tool. For more info, see Submit binaries to be retail signed.</p> <p>Retail images include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Production version of core Windows components included in Windows 10 Mobile• Production Windows 10 Mobile components.	RetailOEMInput.xml
Production	<p>Production images are similar to final retail images, but they have test signing enabled to run OEM-signed components as well as production-signed components, and they may contain test-related packages as well as production packages. Production images can be used for engineering work as well as mobile operator trials and other certification processes.</p> <p>Production images are submitted to Microsoft by using the OEM submission tool to be production signed by Microsoft before generating the final retail image. For more info, see Submit binaries to be retail signed.</p> <p>Production images include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Production version of core Windows components included in Windows 10 Mobile.• Production Windows 10 Mobile components.• Test signing enabled.	ProductionOEMInput.xml

IMAGE TYPE	DESCRIPTION	OEMINPUT SAMPLE
Test	<p>Test images can be run in offsite test labs to test the functionality of the OS and drivers on a device. Test images include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Test version of core Windows components included in Windows 10 Mobile. • Production Windows 10 Mobile components. • Test signing enabled. • Test applications, drivers, and other components to use for testing the OS in different conditions. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>To generate an image that includes OS tools such as ipconfig.exe, kill.exe, ping.exe, minshutdown.exe, reg.exe, tracelog.exe, sc.exe, and tlist.exe, build a test image.</p> </div>	TestOEMInput.xml
Health	Health images to be run in offsite test labs to test the power and performance capabilities of the device. Health images are similar to production images, with the addition of components for running tests related to power and performance.	HealthOEMInput.xml
Manufacturing	Manufacturing images to be used in the manufacturing environment. For more info, see MMOS image definition .	MfgOEMInput.xml
Customer care	Customer care images include MMOS for retail customer care scenarios. For more info, see MMOS image definition .	CustomerCareOEMInput.xml

OEMInput file example

The following example shows the contents of a sample ProductionOEMInput.xml file.

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" ?>
<OEMInput xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance" xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  xmlns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/embedded/2004/10/ImageUpdate">
  <Description>Test FFU generation for {SOC TYPE} with build number XXXXX</Description>
  <SOC>{PROCESSOR_NAME}</SOC>
  <SV>{SV_NAME}</SV>
  <Device>{DEVICE_NAME}</Device>
  <ReleaseType>Test</ReleaseType>
  <BuildType>fre</BuildType>
  <SupportedLanguages>
    <UserInterface>
      <Language>en-US</Language>
    </UserInterface>
    <Keyboard>
      <Language>en-US</Language>
    </Keyboard>
    <Speech>
      <Language>en-US</Language>
    </Speech>
  </SupportedLanguages>
  <BootUILanguage>en-US</BootUILanguage>
  <BootLocale>en-US</BootLocale>
  <Resolutions>
    <Resolution>480x800</Resolution>
  </Resolutions>
  <AdditionalFMs>
    <AdditionalFM>%WPDKCONTENTROOT%\FMFiles\MSOptionalFeatures.xml</AdditionalFM>
    <!-- Add OEM FM files here -->
  </AdditionalFMs>
  <Features>
    <Microsoft>
      <Feature>CODEINTEGRITY_TEST</Feature>
      <Feature>PRODUCTION_CORE</Feature>
      <Feature>BOOTKEYACTIONS_RETAIL</Feature>
    </Microsoft>
    <!-- Insert OEM\SOC features here
    <OEM>
      <Feature>xxx</Feature>
    </OEM>
    -->
  </Features>
</OEMInput>

```

Specifying packages to include in images by using feature manifest files

Feature manifest files specify a set of features, packages, and apps that are available when building images. The OEMInput.xml file later selects the desired features from within these feature manifests to be included in the image.

In addition to a core set of Microsoft packages that are added to every image, there are additional packages that are added only for certain types of images. For example, a test image includes a different set of Microsoft packages than a production image.

The set of packages that are included in certain types of images is controlled by using feature manifest files. Feature manifests provide an extensible infrastructure for adding sets of optional packages to different types of image builds. The WDK includes a feature manifest named MSOptionalFeaturesFM.xml, and OEMs can also create their own. Feature manifests are referenced in the **AdditionalFMs** element of the OEMInput XML file. For more info about the contents of a feature manifest, see [Feature manifest file contents](#).

When the OEMInput XML file references a feature manifest, there are several ways that additional optional packages are included in the image:

- Any packages listed under the **BasePackages** element in the feature manifest file are automatically

included in the image.

- Other packages listed in the feature manifest file under elements such as **ReleasePackages** and **DeviceSpecificPackages** are included if the image definition matches the parameters specified by the elements in the feature manifest file. For example, if the feature manifest file lists a package under the **ReleasePackages** element where the release type is **Test**, the package is included only if the OEMInput file is configured to generate a test image.
- Any optional features defined in the feature manifest can be referenced in the OEM or Microsoft **Features** elements in the OEMInput file to add additional optional packages. A feature is a string that identifies one or more optional packages that can be included in an image. Usually, a feature identifies a set of packages that are associated with a specific component or feature area. For more info about optional features provided by Microsoft for use in OEMInput files, see [Optional features for building images](#).
- Depending on who will be working with the image, it may be appropriate to exclude prerelease features using the **ExcludePrereleaseFeatures** element. For more info, see [OEMInput file contents](#).

Configuring the OEMInput file to integrate feature changes from the Microsoft samples

In any MobileOS release, the OEMInput samples provided by Microsoft may change from the previous release. For example, Microsoft-defined features may be added to a sample to incorporate new OS components that are available, or Microsoft-defined features may be removed from a sample if they are no longer supported for a certain image type. To ensure that OEMs are building the correct images for every MobileOS release, Microsoft recommends that OEMs adhere to the following process.

1. Structure the **AdditionalFMs** and feature-related elements in the OEMInput file as shown in the following example. In each section, include the feature manifests and features specified by the Microsoft sample first, and then include the OEM-specified feature manifests and features. Use comments to clearly separate each set of feature manifests and features, and to clearly explain why each OEM-specific feature is included in the file.

If the contents of the **AdditionalFMs** and **Features** elements in the OEMInput file deviate from the Microsoft samples, include detailed comments that explain why the changes were made. If any changes are introduced as a temporary workaround for an issue, the temporary workaround should be explained so that engineers using the file in the future can determine whether to keep the change or revert to the Microsoft sample when the OEM integrates a newer BSP or kit.

```
<!-- From Microsoft sample OEMInput.xml file -->
<AdditionalFMs>
    <AdditionalFM>%WDKCONTENTROOT%\FMFiles\MSOptionalFeatures.xml</AdditionalFM>
        <!-- Add OEM FM files here -->
</AdditionalFMs>

<Features>
    <Microsoft>
        <!-- Features from Microsoft OEMInput sample -->
        <!-- Additional OEM-selected features defined by Microsoft
            Include detailed comments about why each feature was chosen for this image -->
    </Microsoft>
    <OEM>
        <!-- Additional OEM-selected features defined by the OEM
            Include detailed comments about why each feature was chosen for this image -->
    </OEM>
</Features>
```

2. When the OEM integrates a new WDK and MobileOS release, compare the **Features** elements in the OEMInput sample from the latest release against the same elements in the OEMInput file created by the OEM.

3. Identify any changes to the Microsoft-specified features in the latest sample, and port the changes into the **Features** element in the OEMInput file created by the OEM.

Using ImgGen.cmd to generate the image

ImgGen.cmd is a command file that runs the imaging tool (ImageApp.exe) with the appropriate parameters to create an FFU image. ImgGen.cmd also runs a utility application, DeviceNodeCleanup, after every run of ImageApp.exe. Running DeviceNodeCleanup helps ensure that the registry on the development computer remains clean and boot time does not increase. ImgGen.cmd and other related components are located in %WPKCONTENTROOT%\Tools\bin\i386.

To use ImgGen.cmd to generate an image:

1. Configure your development computer as follows:

- Open a **Developer Command Prompt for VS2013** window (if you have installed Visual Studio 2013) or a **Command Prompt** window (if you have not installed Visual Studio 2013) as an administrator.
- Confirm that the TEMP environment variable refers to a directory that is not compressed or encrypted using the Encrypting File System (EFS) functionality. If the directory that the TEMP environment variable refers to does not meet these requirements and you do not want to modify the variable or the directory properties, you can alternatively create a BINARY_ROOT environment variable and set it to an existing directory that also meets these requirements. If neither of these locations exist, or if they exist but are compressed or encrypted, the image cannot be generated and the ImageApp.exe tool will return an error.
- If you are running Windows 8.1, complete the additional steps to set the USN journal registry size to 1 Mb on the build PC.
 - a. Change the USN minimum size registry key by running the following command from an administrator command prompt:

```
reg add HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Control\FileSystem /v NtfsAllowUsnMinSize1Mb /t REG_DWORD /d 1
```

- b. Reboot the PC before you build an image.

2. In the command prompt window, run ImgGen.cmd by using the following syntax. See the following section for more information about the parameters.

```
ImgGen.cmd outputFile OEMInputXML MSPackageRoot OEMCustomizationXML OEMCustomizationVer
```

Command-line syntax for ImgGen.cmd

The following table describes the command line parameters for ImgGen.cmd.

ARGUMENT	DESCRIPTION
<i>OutputFile</i>	The name of the FFU file to be created. If you do not include a path, the FFU file will be created in the current directory. If you include a path, the specified path must already exist. FFU files use the ffu file extension.

ARGUMENT	DESCRIPTION
<i>OEMInputXML</i>	The name of the OEMInput xml file that defines the image to be created. If this file is not in the current directory, you must include the path to the file.
<i>MSPackageRoot</i>	The path to the root directory that contains the Microsoft packages. By default, this directory is %ProgramFiles(x86)%\Windows Kits\10\MS Packages (or the corresponding path under %ProgramFiles% on computers running a 32-bit version of Windows).
<i>OEMCustomizationXML</i>	The path to the OEM customization XML file. For more info about customization answer files, see Customization answer file
<i>OEMCustomizationVer</i>	The version number that will be used for the generated OEM customization package.

Usage samples

The following sample shows the basic use of ImgGen.cmd.

```
ImgGen Flash.ffu OEMInput.xml "%WPDKCONTENTROOT%\MS Packages" OEMCustomization.XML 8.1.0.1
```

Output files

After an image is successfully generated in the folder specified by the *FFU_file* command-line argument, the imaging tools copy the following files to the folder of the output FFU file:

- <FFUName>.ImageApp.log: This file contains all the logging information about creating the image. Any failures are reported in this file as well as the Console window.
- <FFUName>.UpdateOutput.xml: This file describes each of the packages applied to the image.
- <FFUName>.UpdateHistory.xml: This file contains a list of all the update and imaging events that have occurred on the image.
- <FFUName>.UpdateInput.xml: This file lists all of the packages that are included in the image.
- <FFUName>.PackageList.xml: This is a list of the package files contained in the image.
- <FFUName>.cat: This is a code signing catalog that can be used to sign the image. For more info see, [Sign a full flash update \(FFU\) image](#).

If a customization answer file is provided, this file is generated:

- <Owner>.<DeviceName>.Customizations.<Partition>.spkg

If any of the customizations include static applications, the following file will be generated.

- <Owner>.<DeviceName>.CustomizationsApps.spkg

Generating customization packages without creating an image

To process a customization answer file without creating an image, use **CustomizationGen.cmd**.

CustomizationGen.cmd applies all of the customization rules and builds the customization packages. It skips the final step of building the ffu image. The syntax is similar to ImgGen.cmd.

For example, to process an answer file and just build customization packages, use this command.

```
CustomizationGen.cmd C:\OEMCustomization OEMInput.xml "%WPDKCONTENTROOT%\MSPackages" OEMCustomization.XML  
8.0.0.1
```

Command-line syntax for CustomizationGen.cmd

The following table describes the command line parameters for CustomizationGen.cmd. All of the arguments are required.

ARGUMENT	DESCRIPTION
<i>OutputDirectory</i>	The path to the output directory for the OEM customization packages that will be created.
<i>OEMInputXML</i>	The name of the OEMInput xml file that defines the image to be created. If this file is not in the current directory, you must include the path to the file.
<i>MSPackageRoot</i>	The path to the root directory that contains the Microsoft packages. By default, this directory is %ProgramFiles(x86)%\Windows Kits\10\MSPackages (or the corresponding path under %ProgramFiles% on computers running a 32-bit version of Windows).
<i>OEMCustomizationXML</i>	The path to the OEM customization XML file.
<i>OEMCustomizationVer</i>	This is the version number that will be used for the generated OEM customization package.

Large scale image generation recommendations

When images are repeatedly generated on a workstation, it is possible that virtual hard disk (VHD) manipulation errors can occur from time to time. If these errors occur, you can rerun the image generation process. All intermediate files should be automatically cleaned up by ImageApp. This section provides guidance for the configuration of PCs that will generate images in a large scale automated image generation environment to minimize the number of errors that may occur.

To generate a large volume of images, consider the following recommendations:

- Remove or disable the antivirus software on the image generation PC. The presence of antivirus software, and in particular file system filters often used to monitor activity, can have a major impact on the image generation process. At a minimum, virus scanning should be disabled on input and output directories and on all processes involved in the build, though this will typically not disable the file system filter of interest. Some vendors of antivirus software may offer settings to allow scanning activities to be delayed or scheduled to possibly lessen the impact on the image generation process. If additional safeguards are in place to isolate the system from viruses and other software risks, remove or disable the virus software on the image generation PC. Temporarily removing the virus software can help isolate the impact on the image generation process to determine if further investigation is warranted.

- Windows Server 2012 is used in the Microsoft labs and is recommended. The server should be configured for maximum file I/O performance.
- The image creation process should not be run on virtual machines (VMs), but on physical machines instead.
- All other services (such as print or HTTP services) that are unrelated to the file system should be disabled on the server.
- System activity traces may be able to help identify processes on build machines that are interacting with mounted VHDs. Any interactions that are not initiated by imaging tools should be avoided if possible, potentially by disabling services that take action on disk mount.
- The output drives on the PC should have write cache buffer flushing disabled. There is some risk in using this setting on a file server, but with image generation, this setting can be acceptable, as the imaging data can be re-created if a power loss occurs. If other data cannot be re-created on the server, use this setting with caution, because data can become corrupted.

Related topics

[Building and flashing mobile images](#)

[OEMInput file contents](#)

[Sign a full flash update \(FFU\) image](#)

Build a mobile image using a hybrid method

7/12/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can take advantage of the benefits offered by both the Windows provisioning framework and MCSF by using a hybrid method to build your customized mobile image. This means that:

- You can use a MCSF [customization answer file](#) to fully customize the device hardware and connectivity settings, preload apps, add assets such as ringtones and localized strings, and configure any other [MCSF settings not supported in Windows provisioning](#).
- You can use a [Windows provisioning answer file](#) to define the new runtime settings, enterprise policies, enrollment settings, and configure any other [mobile settings supported only in Windows Provisioning](#).
- You can use the Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer (ICD) CLI to build your image.

Note Only the Windows ICD CLI allows you to use both a MCSF customization answer file and a Windows provisioning answer file to create a customized mobile image.

To build a customized mobile image using a hybrid method

Here's the high-level steps you need to take to build a customized mobile image using the Windows ICD CLI:

1. Choose how you define the packages and features contained in your image.
 - You can use BSP.config.xml file - If you select this method, you should already have this as part of your BSP kit or you can generate your own using the configuration tools from the SoC vendor.
 - You can use an OEMInput.xml file and OEMDevicePlatform.xml to define your platform. To do this, follow steps 1-4 in the high-level list of steps in [Build a mobile image using ImgGen.cmd](#).
2. Create your answer files to define the settings that you want to configure for your image.
 - Create a MCSF [customization answer file](#) to customize any of the available customizations in the MCSF framework. For more information, see the *Customizations for <feature>* sections in [Customize using the mobile MCSF framework](#).
 - Create a [Windows provisioning answer file](#) to define any of the available settings in the Windows provisioning framework. For more information, see [Windows Provisioning settings reference](#).

If you are adding multivariant settings in both answer files, verify whether the multivariant rules in both answer files are consistent. See the section *Target, TargetState, Condition and priorities* in [Create a provisioning package with multivariant settings](#) for a list of supported conditions but be sure to follow the schema for the answer file you are creating when you specify your **Targets** within the answer file.

Also, make sure there are no duplicated settings in both answer files. You can use the [MCSF to Windows Provisioning settings map](#) to help you identify the settings that correspond to each framework.

3. Run the Windows ICD CLI to build the image. For more information, see [Build an image for Windows 10 Mobile](#).
4. Sign the image so that it can be flashed to a device. For more information, see [Sign a full flash update \(FFU\) image](#).

Related topics

Building and flashing mobile images

Define the image using OEMInput and feature manifest files

7/12/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Learn how to create an OEMInput and feature manifest files to fully define the contents of your mobile image.

In this section

TOPIC	DESCRIPTION
OEMInput file contents	An OEMInput.xml file contains the required and optional elements used to define a mobile image. The OS uses this file to determine the applications processor, build type, UI languages, default region format, resolution, and other properties to include in the image that will be generated. This topic provides a full listing of the XML schema for the file.
Optional features for building mobile images	You can add optional features to images by including them under the Features element in the OEMInput XML file.
Feature manifest file contents	<i>Feature manifest (FM) files</i> are used to define specific types of image builds that contain different sets of optional packages. This topic describes the required and optional elements in a FM file.
Create a feature and include it in an image	This topic shows you how to create a feature and add it to an image.
Adding a driver to a test image	This topic shows you how to create a feature and add it to a test image.
Feature groupings and constraints	Feature groups and feature constraints allow additional logic to be added to the build system to support intelligent processing of the OEMInput XML.
Set device platform information	Learn about the prerequisites for building an image that can be flashed to a mobile device, including additional device platform information such as partner names, version numbers, and device names, before the image is finalized for retail devices.

Related topics

[Building and flashing mobile images](#)

OEMInput file contents

7/13/2017 • 10 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

An OEMInput.xml file contains the required and optional elements used to define a mobile image. The OS uses this file to determine the applications processor, build type, UI languages, default region format, resolution, and other properties to include in the image that will be generated.

This topic provides a full listing of the XML schema for the file.

Required elements in the OEMInput file

The following table describes the required elements in the OEMInput file.

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION						
OEMInput	The root element for the OEMInput file.						
Description	A string that describes the image. OEMs should add a description that is particular to the device the image is built for.						
SOC	A string that identifies the SoC used on the device. The following values are currently supported: <table border="1"><thead><tr><th>APPLICATIONS PROCESSOR</th><th>SUPPORTED SOC VALUES</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>QC8974</td><td><ul style="list-style-type: none">QC8974: Creates an image without a crash dump partition. Use this value for Production images.QC8974_Test: Creates an image with a crash dump partition that is more than 2 GB in size. Use this value when generating Test images for devices with more than 4 GB of storage.</td></tr><tr><td>QC8x26</td><td><ul style="list-style-type: none">QC8x26: Creates an image without any crash dump partitions. Use this value for production images.</td></tr></tbody></table>	APPLICATIONS PROCESSOR	SUPPORTED SOC VALUES	QC8974	<ul style="list-style-type: none">QC8974: Creates an image without a crash dump partition. Use this value for Production images.QC8974_Test: Creates an image with a crash dump partition that is more than 2 GB in size. Use this value when generating Test images for devices with more than 4 GB of storage.	QC8x26	<ul style="list-style-type: none">QC8x26: Creates an image without any crash dump partitions. Use this value for production images.
APPLICATIONS PROCESSOR	SUPPORTED SOC VALUES						
QC8974	<ul style="list-style-type: none">QC8974: Creates an image without a crash dump partition. Use this value for Production images.QC8974_Test: Creates an image with a crash dump partition that is more than 2 GB in size. Use this value when generating Test images for devices with more than 4 GB of storage.						
QC8x26	<ul style="list-style-type: none">QC8x26: Creates an image without any crash dump partitions. Use this value for production images.						

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTIONS PROCESSOR	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> QC8x26 Test: SUPPORTED SOC VALUES Creates an image with two dedicated crash dump partitions on eMMC. The combined size of the two partitions is 3.5 times the size of the total RAM memory on the phone. To create a test image that supports full dumps and offline dumps on a device with at least 8GB of eMMC, use this value and include the DEDICATEDUMP ONEMMC feature. QC8x26_UseSD_Test: Creates an image without dedicated partitions for storing crash dumps on devices with less than 8 GB of eMMC. To create full, kernel, or offline crash dumps, an SD card must be present and the feature DEDICATEDUMP ONSD feature must be specified to redirect dumps to the SD card. The recommended SD card size for offline dumps is 16 or 32 GB. For more information about specifying debug features, see Optional features for building images. <p>To build a QC8x26 test image that supports full dumps and offline dumps on a device with less than 8GB of eMMC, use QC8x26_UseSD_Test. Include the DEDICATEDUMPONSD feature to redirect dumps to the SD card.</p>	

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTIONS PROCESSOR	SUPPORTED SOC VALUES
		<p>The recommended SD card size for offline dumps is 16 or 32 GB.</p> <p>To build a QC8x26 test image that supports full dumps and offline dumps on a device with at least 8GB of eMMC, use QC8x26_Test and include the DEDICATEDUMPONEM MC feature.</p> <p>To build a QC8x26 retail or production image where full dumps and offline dumps are not enabled, use QC8x26.</p>

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTIONS PROCESSOR	SUPPORTED SOC VALUES
	QC8960 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● QC8960: Creates an image without a crash dump partition. Use this value for Production images. ● QC8960_Test: Creates an image with a crash dump partition that is more than 2 GB in size. Use this value when generating Test images for phones with more than 4 GB of storage. ● QC8960_Test_4gb: Creates an image with a crash dump partition that is approximately 600 MB in size, large enough to store a single crash dump for a device with 512 MB of RAM. Use this value when generating Test images for phones with only 4 GB of storage. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p>Important The 8960 SOC options must only be used for images that are used to create updates for Windows 10 Mobile. For more information see Update.</p> </div>	
Device		A string that identifies the device model the image is being built for. Use this setting to include packages marked with the corresponding Device attribute of the DeviceSpecificPackages and the OEMDevicePlatformPackages elements in the feature manifest file.

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
ReleaseType	<p>A string that indicates the release type of the image. Use this setting to include packages marked with the corresponding ReleaseType attribute value of a ReleasePackages element in the feature manifest file. The following values are supported:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Production: This value indicates that all packages in the image are production signed, and the image only includes production packages (that is, packages where the ReleaseType attribute in the package XML is set to Production). In addition, all Microsoft-owned packages must be signed with a certificate issued by Microsoft. This value should only be used when generating the final retail image. • Test: This value indicates that the image can contain test-signed packages as well as production-signed packages, and the image contains a mixture of production and test packages (that is, packages where the ReleaseType attribute in the package XML is set to Test or Production). This value is used in production, test, health, and manufacturing images. For more information about the different image types, see Building a phone image using ImgGen.cmd.
BuildType	<p>A string that specifies whether to use checked build or free packages when creating the image. To generate a checked build with debug code, specify chk. To generate a free build without debug code, specify fre.</p>
SupportedLanguages	<p>Contains the following child elements that specify the language support in the generated image:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • UserInterface: A string that contains the language codes for the display languages to include in the image. If multiple language codes are listed, they must each be included in their own <code><language></code> block. • Keyboard: A string that contains the language codes for the keyboard languages to include in the image (that is, languages in which text correction and suggestions are supported). If multiple language codes are listed, they must each be included in their own <code><language></code> block. • Speech: A string that contains the language codes for the speech languages to include in the image. If multiple language codes are listed, they must each be included in their own <code><language></code> block.
BootUILanguage	<p>A string that specifies the language code for the default display language to include in the image.</p>

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
BootLocale	A string that specifies the language code for the default region format for the image.
Resolutions	<p>Contains one Resolution element. The Resolution element contains a string that represents a display resolution supported by the image. The following values are supported: 480x800, 540x960, 720x1280, 768x1280, and 1080x1920. The build will include the corresponding resolution packages in the image for the specified resolution.</p> <p>Note that some resolutions are supported only with certain applications processors.</p>

Optional elements in the OEMInput file

The following table describes the optional elements that OEMs can include in the OEMInput file.

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
SV	A string that identifies the manufacturer of the SoC used on the device. Use this setting to include packages marked with the corresponding SVPackages element in the feature manifest file.
Product	<p>A string that specifies what OS variant to build. Specify the value Manufacturing OS to build an MMOS (Microsoft Manufacturing OS) image, which includes the minimal set of OS packages required by MMOS. To build a full OS image, omit this element.</p> <p>For more information about building an MMOS image, see MMOS image definition.</p>
FormatDPP	A string that indicates whether to include an empty formatted device provisioning partition (DPP) in the image. Specify the value true to generate an image that includes an empty formatted DPP. Specify the value false or omit this element to prevent the DPP from being overwritten.

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
ExcludePrereleaseFeatures	<p>A string that indicates if features considered to be prerelease are excluded from the build. Specify the value true to generate an image that excludes the prerelease features, specify false to include them. Builds that are created with ExcludePrereleaseFeatures set to true, may be referred to as "limited" builds. If this entry is not included in the OEMInput file, the prerelease features will be included in the image.</p> <p>When this option is set to true some replacement features may be present in the image. If there are no replacement features configured, then they will not be present in the build.</p>
Features	<p>Contains one or more child elements that specify the names of optional features to reference when building the image. Each feature corresponds to one or more packages that will be included in the image. In order to use a feature, the feature must be defined in a feature manifest that is listed under the AdditionalFMs element. For more information about features and feature manifests, see Building a phone image using ImgGen.cmd and Feature manifest file contents.</p> <p>The Features element contains one or more of the following child elements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Microsoft Contains one or more Feature elements that specify the names of optional Microsoft features to include in the image. For more info about Microsoft features, see Optional features for building images. • OEM Contains one or more Feature elements that specify the names of optional OEM features to include in the image. For more information about adding OEM features, see Feature manifest file contents.
AdditionalFMs	<p>Contains one or more AdditionalFM elements. Each AdditionalFM element contains a string value that specifies the full path of a feature manifest file to reference when building the image.</p> <p>Feature manifests define the set of packages that are automatically included in certain types of images, and they also define feature names that can be referenced under the Features element to include additional packages in the image. For more information about feature manifest files, see Feature manifest file contents.</p>

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
PackageFiles	<p>Contains a set of PackageFile elements that specify additional packages to include in the image.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p>Important</p> <p>The PackageFiles element can only be used in pre-retail images such as Test and Health images. It is only intended to be used in scenarios you need to quickly add an ad-hoc package to a pre-retail image. In retail images, all packages must be referenced using a feature that is listed under the Features element or listed in a feature manifest that is referenced under the AdditionalFMs element. For more information about features and feature manifests, see Building a phone image using ImgGen.cmd and Feature manifest file contents.</p> </div> <p>Each PackageFile element contains a text value that specifies the path and name of a single package. If no additional packages are being added to the image, the PackageFiles element must be omitted from the file. The packages can be in any location on the development computer. An environment variable can be used in the path to each package in the PackageFile element.</p>

XML schema for the OEMInput file

The OEMInput file is validated against the following XML schema. You can use this schema to validate the OEMInput XML files that you create. To do this in Visual Studio, first save this in a file with an XSD extension. In Visual Studio select **XML > Schemas** and select the file that you created. Any deviations in your XML from the schema will be highlighted. Hover over the highlighted items to see additional information.

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<xss:schema targetNamespace="http://schemas.microsoft.com/embedded/2004/10/ImageUpdate"
    elementFormDefault="qualified"
    xmlns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/embedded/2004/10/ImageUpdate"
    xmlns:mstns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/embedded/2004/10/ImageUpdate"
    xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">
<xss:element name="OEMInput">
<xss:complexType>
<xss:all>
    <xss:element name="Product" type="xs:string" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
    <xss:element name="Description" type="xs:string" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1" />
    <xss:element name="SV" type="xs:string" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
    <xss:element name="SOC" type="xs:string" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
    <xss:element name="Device" type="xs:string" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>

    <xss:element name="ReleaseType" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
        <xss:simpleType>
            <xss:restriction base="xs:string">
                <xss:enumeration value="Test"/>
                <xss:enumeration value="Production"/>
            </xss:restriction>
        </xss:simpleType>
    </xss:element>
</xss:all>
</xss:complexType>
</xss:element>

```

```

        </xs:restriction>
    </xs:simpleType>
</xs:element>

<xs:element name="BuildType" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <xs:simpleType>
        <xs:restriction base="xs:string">
            <xs:enumeration value="fre"/>
            <xs:enumeration value="chk"/>
            <xs:enumeration value="%BUILDTYPE%"/>
        </xs:restriction>
    </xs:simpleType>
</xs:element>

<xs:element name="FormatDPP" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
    <xs:simpleType>
        <xs:restriction base="xs:string">
            <xs:enumeration value="true"/>
            <xs:enumeration value="false"/>
        </xs:restriction>
    </xs:simpleType>
</xs:element>

<xs:element name="ExcludePrereleaseFeatures" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
    <xs:simpleType>
        <xs:restriction base="xs:string">
            <xs:enumeration value="true"/>
            <xs:enumeration value="false"/>
        </xs:restriction>
    </xs:simpleType>
</xs:element>

<xs:element name="OEMDevicePlatform" type="xs:string" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>

<xs:element name="SupportedLanguages" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <xs:complexType>
        <xs:all>
            <xs:element name="UserInterface" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
                <xs:complexType>
                    <xs:sequence>
                        <xs:element name="Language" type="xs:string"
                            minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded" />
                    </xs:sequence>
                </xs:complexType>
            </xs:element>
            <xs:element name="Keyboard" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
                <xs:complexType>
                    <xs:sequence>
                        <xs:element name="Language" type="xs:string"
                            minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
                    </xs:sequence>
                </xs:complexType>
            </xs:element>
            <xs:element name="Speech" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
                <xs:complexType>
                    <xs:sequence>
                        <xs:element name="Language" type="xs:string"
                            minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
                    </xs:sequence>
                </xs:complexType>
            </xs:element>
        </xs:all>
    </xs:complexType>
</xs:element>

<xs:element name="BootUILanguage" type="xs:string" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>

<xs:element name="BootLocale" type="xs:string" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>

```

```

<xs:element name="Resolutions" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
    <xs:complexType>
        <xs:sequence>
            <xs:element name="Resolution" type="xs:string" minOccurs="1"
                maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        </xs:sequence>
    </xs:complexType>
</xs:element>

<xs:element name="Features" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
    <xs:complexType>
        <xs:sequence>
            <xs:element name="Microsoft" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
                <xs:complexType>
                    <xs:sequence>
                        <xs:element name="Feature" type="xs:string"
                            minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
                    </xs:sequence>
                </xs:complexType>
            </xs:element>
            <xs:element name="OEM" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
                <xs:complexType>
                    <xs:sequence>
                        <xs:element name="Feature" type="xs:string"
                            minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
                    </xs:sequence>
                </xs:complexType>
            </xs:element>
        </xs:sequence>
    </xs:complexType>
</xs:element>

<xs:element name="AdditionalFMs" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
    <xs:complexType>
        <xs:sequence>
            <xs:element name="AdditionalFM" type="xs:string"
                minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        </xs:sequence>
    </xs:complexType>
</xs:element>
<!--This element is only for use with Windows 8 Phone device update images -->
<xs:element name="UserStoreMapData" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
    <xs:complexType>
        <xs:attribute name="SourceDir" type="xs:string" />
        <xs:attribute name="UserStoreDir" type="xs:string" />
    </xs:complexType>
</xs:element>

<xs:element name="PackageFiles" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
    <xs:complexType>
        <xs:sequence>
            <xs:element name="PackageFile" type="xs:string"
                minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        </xs:sequence>
    </xs:complexType>
</xs:element>
</xs:all>
</xs:complexType>
</xs:element>
</xs:schema>

```

Related topics

[Building an image using ImgGen.cmd](#)

Optional features for building mobile images

7/12/2017 • 17 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can add optional features to images by including them under the **Features** element in the OEMInput XML file. Adding a feature will add the packages associated with the feature to the image. Some features can only be used with certain types of images. For more information about using optional features, see [Building an image using ImgGen.cmd](#).

Updates should be tested by submitting OS update requests using the Ingestion Client and verifying successful OS updates.

Conditional features

If a device meets the installation conditions listed for a feature in the following table, then the update path for the device will fail unless the feature is installed. For example, if there's an update for Rich Communications Suite Platform support for Windows 10 Mobile, and you removed that feature from a device that's otherwise capable of using it, then that entire update package (and all subsequent updates) will fail to install. To get updates again, you need to deliver an image that includes the feature to customers, and have them re-flash the device.

FEATURE NAME AND ID	UPDATE PATH	CONDITION
Rich Communications Suite Platform support (RCS_FEATURE_PACK)	Windows 8.1 to Windows 10	Install if PhoneManufacturer=NOKIA Update if installed
Nearby Numbers/Block and Filter (MS_COMMSENHANCEMENT* apps)	Windows 8.1 to Windows 10	Install MS_COMMSENHANCEMENTCHINA if HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\Platform\DeviceTargetingInfo\phoneromlanguage = 0804. Update if it's already installed. Install MS_COMMSENHANCEMENTGLOBAL if HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\Platform\DeviceTargetingInfo\phoneromlanguage <> 0804. Update if it's already installed.

Retail features defined by Microsoft

The following table describes the Microsoft-defined features that can be used by OEMs in the **Features** element in the OEMInput file for retail devices.

Refer to the Mobile Operator guides for any additional retail features that are used for specific mobile operators.

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
OPTIMIZED_BOOT	Modifies the behavior of the OS boot process to start some system processes and services before all device drivers are started. Enabling this feature may decrease boot time, but it may also cause regressions in boot behavior in some scenarios.
STANDARD_FEATURE_1	This feature includes standard features that must be included in all images.
NETLOG_RETAIL	This feature adds network capture logging to assist in troubleshooting network connectivity issues. This feature is used to gather network diagnostic information by Field Medic.

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
NAVIGATIONBAR	This feature adds a phone setting that enables users to configure the color of the software buttons.
FACEBOOK	This feature includes Facebook in the image.
SKYPE	This feature includes the Skype Windows Phone Silverlight app in the image.
BINGAPPS	This feature adds Bing News, Finance, Sports and Weather.
BINGFOOD	This feature adds Bing Food & Drink.
BINGHEALTH	This feature adds Bing Health & Fitness.
BINGTRAVEL	This feature adds Bing Travel.
WIFI_FEATURE_PACK	This feature removes all cellular-related functionality from the operating system and is intended only for devices that will not be connected to a cellular network. It removes all cellular related tiles, icons, and settings from the user interface. Including this feature reduces memory usage and improves the user experience by not displaying nonfunctional cellular settings and icons.
RELEASE_PRODUCTION	Deprecated, no longer in use.
COMMSENHANCEMENTGLOBAL	The feature includes message and call filtering application in image.
COMMSENHANCEMENTCHINA	The feature includes message&call filter, call location, and category application in the image. It's used for China only.
4GBFEATURESONDATA	On devices with 4GB of storage, provisioned packages are stored on the data partition.
8GBFEATURESONDATA	On devices with 8GB of storage, provisioned packages are stored on the data partition.
<p>Note We strongly recommend that you also use 8GBFEATURESONSYSTEM when you specify this feature.</p>	
8GBFEATURESONSYSTEM	On devices with 8GB of storage, provisioned packages are stored on the OS partition.
16GBFEATURESONDATA	On devices with 16GB of storage, provisioned packages are stored on the data partition.
<p>Note We strongly recommend that you also use 16GBFEATURESONSYSTEM when you specify this feature.</p>	

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
16GBFEATURESONSYSTEM	On devices with 16GB of storage, provisioned packages are stored on the OS partition.
SPATIALSOUND_FILTERDATA	Contains all the data files and registry keys necessary to enable Spatial Audio functionality on a mobile device. Spatial audio is used to make audio sound like it is coming from a specific direction, and to make the audio sound like it exists naturally inside a specific type of room.
TAIWAN_ENABLEMENT	Remove Taiwan references from the image.
MYANMAR_ZAWGYI_ENABLEMENT	Enable this image to use the Zawgyi encoding in Myanmar. You should also add the Zawgyi keyboard when adding this feature.
SOCProdTest_HSTI	<p>This feature installs the correct driver for the security watermark checks and is required for Windows 10 Mobile. If this package is not installed, you will see the Not For Retail watermark.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Important This feature must be included in your OS image. If this feature is not included, the device might not boot.</p> </div>
ATTWIFI	This feature installs a third-party plugin that allows devices with an AT&T SIM to automatically connect to AT&T hotspots.
DISABLE_ABNORMAL_RESET	This feature disables abnormal resets and does not report it to Watson.
Docking	This feature enables Continuum for Windows 10 Mobile.
RESET_PROTECTION	This feature enables Reset Protection on a retail image. When the device boots for the first time, the appropriate secure UEFI variable are written.
PERF_TRACING_TOOLS	Contains tools for doing performance analysis, such as tools for stopping and merging ETL tracing.
ENABLE_BOOT_PERF_BASIC_TRACING	Enables boot performance tracing events to be generated.
ENABLE_BOOT_PERF_CPU_PROFILING_TRACING	Enables CPU profiling events. in addition to the boot performance tracing events that are enabled with ENABLE_BOOT_PERF_BASIC_TRACING.
MESSAGINGGLOBAL	This feature installs the Messaging package that includes Skype integration. It must be used for any devices except those being submitted for NAL certification in China.
MESSAGINGLITE	This feature installs the Messaging package without Skype integration. It must be used for any phone or other device that is submitted for NAL certification in China (excluding Hong Kong SAR and Macau).

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
SPATIALSOUND_FILTERDATA	This feature installs Spatial sound .

Retail boot sequence settings

The next two settings control the phone start up. Only one can be selected.

BOOTSEQUENCE_RETAIL	This feature enables the standard retail boot sequence.
---------------------	---

Microsoft internal retail features

The following components are reserved for Microsoft internal use only, but are documented here for completeness.

SELFHOST	This feature adds components used exclusively for self-hosting scenarios in Microsoft.
FieldMedicCustomProfiles	This feature adds additional tracing profiles used by Field Medic.
RESET_PROTECTION_INTERNAL	This feature enables Reset Protection on a test image. When the device boots for the first time, the appropriate secure UEFI variable are written.

Retail Demo Experience features

The Retail Demo Experience FOD contains offline retail demo content that is critical to a great retail demo experience. This offline content contains Windows and Office content that is shown along with any OEM or Retailer retail demo content. Adding of this Retail Demo Experience FOD is required and necessary for any OEMs participating in enabling a Retail Demo Experience on their Windows 10 devices.

- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_AR-SA
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_BG-BG
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_CS-CZ
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_DA-DK
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_DE-DE
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_EL-GR
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_EN-GB
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_EN-US
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_ES-ES
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_ES-MX
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_ET-EE
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_FI-FI
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_FR-CA
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_FR-FR
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_HE-IL
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_HR-HR
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_HU-HU
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_ID-ID
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_IT-IT
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_JA-JP
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_KO-KR
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_LT-LT
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_LV-LV
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_NB-NO
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_NEUTRAL
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_NL-NL

- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_PL-PL
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_PT-BR
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_PT-PT
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_RO-RO
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_RU-RU
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_SK-SK
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_SL-SI
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_SR-LATN-RS
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_SV-SE
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_TH-TH
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_TR-TR
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_UK-UA
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_VI-VN
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_ZH-CN
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_ZH-HK
- MS_RETAILDEMOCONTENT_ZH-TW

Test features defined by Microsoft

The following table describes the Microsoft-defined test features that can be used by OEMs in the **Features** element in the OEMInput file. These features are defined in MSOptionalFeatures.xml, which is included with the MobileOS under %WPDKCONTENTROOT%\FMFiles.

Boot option features

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
BOOTSEQUENCE_TEST	<p>This feature includes the BCD boot sequence configuration for booting into the full OS in a test image. This feature also includes a pre-boot crash dump application and a pre-boot crash dump entry.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>The following features are mutually exclusive; only one of them can be referenced in an OEMInput file: BOOTSEQUENCE_TEST, MMOSLOADER_TEST.</p> </div>
MMOSLOADER_TEST	<p>This feature includes the BCD boot sequence configuration to support booting into MMOS in a test image. This feature also includes a pre-boot crash dump application and a pre-boot crash dump entry. For more information about MMOS, see MMOS image definition.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>The following features are mutually exclusive; only one of them can be referenced in an OEMInput file: BOOTSEQUENCE_TEST, MMOSLOADER_TEST.</p> </div>
MOBILECOREBOOTSH	Enables the bootsh service (bootshscv) so that startup.bsc features, such as telnet and ftp, can be used.
MOBILECORE_TEST	Information on this feature will be provided in a later release of this documentation.
PRODUCTION	Includes core OS files that are used to support base OS functionality for production builds in the main OS, UEFI and the update OS. This feature is used for PRODUCTION Image types.

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
PRODUCTION_CORE	<p>This feature adds production boot and main OS binaries to the image. PRODUCTION_CORE automatically includes the following features:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CODEINTEGRITY_PROD <p>Because these features are already included, they should not be manually included in PRODUCTION_CORE builds.</p>
DISABLE_FFU_PLAT_ID_CHECK	<p>Disables the device platform validation in the Microsoft flashing application. For more information about the platform check in flashing, see Use the flashing tools provided by Microsoft.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Important</p> <p>The device platform validation for flashing must not be disabled in retail images.</p> </div>
RESET_PROTECTION_INTERNAL	<p>This feature enables Reset Protection on the device. When the device boots for the first time, the appropriate secure UEFI variable are written.</p>

Boot option feature constraints

You can specify feature constraints to avoid illogical or inappropriate build configurations.

Some settings are mutually exclusive and only one setting should be specified at a time. For example, consider the features, RELEASE_PRODUCTION and RELEASE_TEST. These features are mutually exclusive. This means that if RELEASE_TEST is set, RELEASE_PRODUCTION must not be set. For more information about how constraints are specified in XML see, [Feature groupings and constraints](#).

When <ReleaseType>Production</ReleaseType> is set in the OEMInput file, this maps to RELEASE_PRODUCTION. When <ReleaseType>Test</ReleaseType> is set in the OEMInput file, this maps to RELEASE_TEST. For more information about the release type, see [OEMInput file contents](#).

The release constraints for RELEASE_PRODUCTION can be summarized as follows.

- Either RELEASE_PRODUCTION or CODEINTEGRITY_PROD can be selected. This is because production code integrity is automatically enabled when RELEASE_PRODUCTION is selected and therefore can't be manually enabled.

These feature constraints can be used to prevent incorrect build option configurations. These feature constraints specify that PRODUCTION_CORE is mutually exclusive with RELEASE_PRODUCTION and TEST but is not mutually exclusive with HEALTH, PRODUCTION, or SELFHOST.

This table provides a summary of build options and indicates if the option is exclusive to any other option.

	RELEASE_PRODUCTION	TEST	HEALTH	PRODUCTION	SELFHOST	PRODUCTION_CORE
RELEASE_PRODUCTION	NA	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
TEST	Yes	NA	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
HEALTH	Yes	Yes	NA	Yes	Yes	No
PRODUCTION	Yes	Yes	Yes	NA	Yes	No

	RELEASE_PRODUCTION	TEST	HEALTH	PRODUCTION	SELFHOST	PRODUCTION_CORE
SELFHOST	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	NA	No
PRODUCTION_CORE	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	NA

Other boot related features

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
STARTUPOVERRIDES	This feature starts the FTP service (ftpd.exe) and Telnet service (telnetd.exe) automatically on startup.
LABIMAGE	This feature causes the device to enter the FFU download mode automatically when the device is booted. For more information, see Use the flashing tools provided by Microsoft .
BOOTKEYACTIONS_RETAIL	This feature enables a set of button actions for use in retail devices.
SKIPOOBE	This feature disables the initial setup process wizard. This feature is supported in Test, Health and Production image types. This feature must not be used in Retail images.

Security related features

There are two code signing modes on a Windows 10 Mobile device, retail and test. With retail, all code must be production signed to be able to run on the device. For test signing, all code must be signed with test certificates. For more information about code signing, see [Code signing](#).

The two code signing modes are automatically managed in the build system. The previous DISABLETESTSIGNING and ENABLETESTSIGNING feature settings are no longer used. Instead test code signing is automatically enabled in the following build types:

- TEST
- HEALTH
- PRODUCTION
- SELFHOST

Test code signing cannot be enabled in the RELEASE_PRODUCTION build type that is used for retail devices

The following table summarizes the security related features.

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
CODEINTEGRITY_PROD	This feature includes code integrity binaries that are used for signature verification on production images. Code integrity verifies the integrity of binary files as they are loaded into memory by the operating system. This feature is automatically included when PRODUCTION_CORE is selected. Because of this, CODEINTEGRITY_PROD should not be manually added when PRODUCTION_CORE is selected.
CODEINTEGRITY_TEST	This feature includes code integrity binaries that are used for signature verification on test images. Code integrity verifies the integrity of binary files as they are loaded into memory by the operating system.

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
GWPCERTTESTPROV	This feature provisions a set of test Genuine Windows Phone Certificates (GWPC) certificates in the image.

Test related features

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
TEST	This feature adds many test drivers, applications, and other components to be used for testing the OS in different conditions.
TESTINFRASTRUCTURE	<p>This feature adds the following components to the image:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MinTE.exe and other components that support a minimal test harness environment for Test Authoring and Execution Framework (TAEF) tests. • The Verifier.cmd script, which is used to configure Driver Verifier. • Tux.exe and other components related to the Tux test harness for native code. • TuxNet.exe and other components related to the TuxNet test harness for managed code.
HEALTH	This feature adds components for running tests related to power and performance.
DRIVERS_WDTFINFRA	Information on this feature will be provided in a later release of this documentation.
DRIVERS_WDTFPPOWER	Information on this feature will be provided in a later release of this documentation.
DRIVERS_WDTFPLUGINS	Information on this feature will be provided in a later release of this documentation.
DRIVERS_WDTFDRVCOV	Information on this feature will be provided in a later release of this documentation.
DRIVERS_WDTFIOSPY	Information on this feature will be provided in a later release of this documentation.

Debug related features

Use the following settings to specify the transport that is used for debugging. The previous DEBUGGERON feature has been deprecated.

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
	Debug transport settings

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
KDNETUSB_ON	<p>Includes all kernel debugger transports and enables KDNET over USB.</p> <p>The default debug transport settings for this feature are an IP address of "1.2.3.4", a port address of "50000", and a debugger key of "4.3.2.1". To use the default IP address of 1.2.3.4, run VirtEth.exe with the /autodebug flag. To establish a kernel debugger connection to the phone, use the following command.</p> <pre>Windbg -k net:port=50000,key=4.3.2.1</pre>
KDUSB_ON	<p>Includes all kernel debugger transports and enables KDUSB.</p> <p>The default debug transport target name for this feature is WOATARGET. To establish a kernel debugger connection to the phone, use the following command.</p> <pre>Windbg -k usb:targetname=WOATARGET</pre> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>Do not include either KDUSB_ON or KDNETUSB_ON if you need to enable MTP or IP over USB in the image. If the kernel debugger is enabled in the image and the debug transports are used to connect to the device, the kernel debugger has exclusive use of the USB port and prevents MTP and IP over USB from working.</p> </div>
KDSERIAL_ON	Includes all kernel debugger transports and enables KDSERIAL with the following settings: 115200 Baud, 8 bit, no parity.
KD	Includes all kernel debugger transports in the image, but does not enable the kernel debugger.
KD_TEST	Includes all kernel debugger transports in the image, but does not enable the kernel debugger.
KDNETUSB_TEST_ON	Includes all kernel debugger transports and enables KDNET over USB in test images. This option must only be used with test images.

Other debug settings

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
	Dumpsize setting features - The following three features must only be used with the Test and Health image types. These features must not be used with retail images. Only one dumpsize setting can be selected at a time.
DUMPSIZE512MB	Specifies a pre-allocated crash dump file size of 592 MB. This is intended for a phone with 512 MB of memory.
DUMPSIZE1G	Specifies a pre-allocated crash dump file size of 1104 MB. This is intended for a phone with 1024 MB of memory.
DUMPSIZE2G	Specifies a pre-allocated crash dump file size of 2128 MB. This is intended for a phone with 2048 MB of memory.

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
DUMPSIZE4G	Specifies a pre-allocated crash dump file size of 4 GB. This is intended for a phone with 4096 MB of memory.
	Dump data storage location - The next two settings control if crash dump data is stored on eMMC or if crash dump data is stored on an SD card. Only one of these settings can be selected at a time. These two features must only be used with the Test, Health and Selfhost image types. These features must not be used with retail images.
DEDICATEDDUMPONEMMC	Specifies that the DedicatedDumpFile location as c:\crashdump\dedicateddump.sys.
DEDICATEDDUMPONSD	<p>DEDICATEDDUMPONSD – Specifies that the DedicatedDumpFile location as d:\dedicateddump.sys</p> <p>When DEDICATEDDUMPONSD is used, crash dump will be disabled if the user removes the SD card or if the card is not present when the device booted. To re-enable crash dump:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Set this registry key <code>HKLM\System\CurrentControlSet\Control\CrashControl\CrashDumpEnabled</code> to the value of <code>HKLM\System\CurrentControlSet\Control\CrashControl\ExpectedCrashDur</code> 2. Reboot the phone.
	Test disk idle power behavior - The next two settings determine if storage devices (internal and SD card) can enter into a low power state after they become idle. They must not be used with retail images.
TEST_ENABLE_DISK_IDLE	This feature will allow the storage devices (internal and SD card) to go into a low power state shortly after they become idle. This setting may prevent the collection of crashdumps on the MSM8960 processor devices. If crashdumps need to be gathered from an MSM8960 device, use the TEST_DISABLE_DISK_IDLE feature instead.
TEST_DISABLE_DISK_IDLE	This feature will prevent the storage devices (internal and SD card) from going into a low power state after they become idle. This setting should be used if crashdumps need to be gathered from MSM8960 devices.
DRVRF_SIPLAT	<p>Sets driver verifier parameters for OEM and SoC drivers. This feature sets the VerifyDriverLevel to a value of 002209BB and VerifierOptions to 00000009. Windows drivers provided by Microsoft are excluded using the VerifyDrivers key. You can use the following debug command to list the drivers that are being verified in your environment.</p> <pre>!Verifier 1</pre>

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
DBGCHKDISABLE	<p>This feature disables debugger connection checking and the debugger connection status is ignored.</p> <p>The effect on the debugger behavior is different depending on the SoC that is being used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For QC8x26 and QC8974 devices, include DBGCHKDISABLE to ensure that offline dumps will be generated even if the device is connected to a debugger. Otherwise, an Offline Dump (Bug Check Code 0x14C dump) will not be created but a raw dump will still be created. For 8960 devices, include DBGCHKDISABLE to ensure that offline dumps will be generated even if the device is connected to a debugger. Otherwise, an Offline Dump (i.e. Bug Check Code 0x14C dump) will not be created.
MSVCRT_DEBUG	<p>This feature adds support for explicit linking of debug c-runtime libs by including msycop120d.dll and msocr120d.dll in the image. For more information, see this topic on MSDN: CRT Library Features.</p>
MWDBGSRV	<p>This feature adds support for the user mode debug server.</p>
NOLIVEDUMPS	<p>Disables non-fatal kernel error reports. These reports contain debugging information for OS and driver developers.</p>
TELEMETRYONSDCARD	<p>This feature enables temporary storage of debugging logs and files on the SD card. This feature is only appropriate for test/self-host images and only on devices with less than 8 GB of free space of primary storage.</p>

Non-production features

The following are some features that can be used for development and testing support.

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
POWERTRACINGTOOL	<p>This feature adds PowerTracingTool.exe, which is used to collect power-related ETW logs, to the image.</p>
TASKSCHEDULERTOOL	<p>This feature adds TaskSchTestUtil.exe, which is used to do task scheduling-related operations, to the image.</p>
DISABLEPREBOOTCRASHDUMP	<p>This feature adds a registry setting that disables offline crash dumps.</p>
ALWAYSKEEPMEMORYDUMP	<p>This feature adds a registry setting that tells the device to keep kernel dump files.</p>
AUTOREBOOT	<p>This feature adds a registry setting that restarts the device immediately after a crash dump is complete.</p>
DISABLEDEBUGCHECKSCREEN	<p>This feature adds a registry setting that suppresses the bug check screen.</p>

Other features

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
FAKEVIBRA	This feature adds a test hardware notification driver for controlling the vibration feedback mechanism.
IMGFAKELED	This feature adds a test hardware notification driver for controlling LEDs to the image.
LOCATIONFRAMEWORKAPP	This feature adds LFApp, a test and debug application for the location framework.
PSEUDOLOCALES	This feature enables the use of pseudo-locales for localization testing. For more information, see Using Psuedo-Locales for Localization Testing on MSDN.
GRAPHICSSOFTWAREDRIVERS	This feature adds BasicDisplay and WARP graphics drivers. This feature is normally used by the SoC vendor in early device bring-up.

Microsoft internal features

The following components are reserved for Microsoft internal use only, but are documented here for completeness.

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
SELFHOST	This feature adds components used exclusively for self-hosting scenarios in Microsoft.
IMGUPD_POWERTOYS	This feature includes several utility applications related to updating packages on devices.
INSTRUMENT_FOR_COVERAGE	Information on this feature will be provided in a later release of this documentation.
IMGFAKEMODEM	Information on this feature will be provided in a later release of this documentation.
USE_WMC	This feature is used for Microsoft testing.
CORTANADBG_TEST_PROTECTED	This feature is for Microsoft use only.
LIMITED	This feature is for Microsoft use only.
TEST_PROTECTED	This feature is for Microsoft use only.
SELFHOST_PROTECTED	This feature is for Microsoft use only.

Related topics

[Building and flashing images](#)

Feature manifest file contents

7/13/2017 • 24 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Feature manifest (FM) files are used to define specific types of image builds that contain different sets of optional packages. This topic describes the required and optional elements in a FM file. For more information about how FM files are used while generating images, see [Building a phone image using ImgGen.cmd](#).

Note

Most of the elements in a FM file include a path to a package. If the package is under the root directory for Microsoft packages (%WPKCONTENTROOT%\MSPackages), this path can use the \$(mspackageroot) macro in the path name. If the package is in some other location, you can use an environment variable, such as %oempackageroot%, and set this environment variable in the command-line window.

Example FM file

The following example shows a sample OEM FM file.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<FeatureManifest xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
    xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    xmlns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/embedded/2004/10/ImageUpdate">
    <BasePackages>
        <PackageFile Path="%oempackageroot%\common\
            Name="Contoso.Phone.Test.BaseOs.EnvPath.spkg" />
    </BasePackages>
    <Features>
        <OEM>
            <PackageFile Path="%oempackageroot%\test\
                Name="Contoso.Test.MinTE.spkg">
                <FeatureIDs>
                    <FeatureID>TEST_FEATURE1</FeatureID>
                </FeatureIDs>
            </PackageFile>
        </OEM>
    </Features>
    <ReleasePackages>
        <PackageFile FeatureIdentifierPackage="true" Name="Contoso.BaseOS.BootApplications_Test.spkg"
        Path="%oempackageroot%\test" ReleaseType="Test"/>
    </ReleasePackages>
    <PrereleasePackages>
        <PackageFile ID="Contoso.MainOS.Protected_Replacement_Production" FeatureIdentifierPackage="true"
        Name="Contoso.MainOS.Protected_Replacement_Production.spkg" Path="%oempackageroot%\Merged\" Resolution="*"
        Type="replacement" Language="*"/>
    </PrereleasePackages>
    <OEMDevicePlatformPackages>
        <PackageFile Name="SoCVendor.DCD6000.OEMDevicePlatform.spkg" Path="%oempackageroot%\DCD6000\
        Device="DCD6000"/>
    </OEMDevicePlatformPackages>
    </FeatureManifest>
```

You may wish to examine MSOptionalFeaturesFM.xml that is included with the mobileOS packages under %WPKCONTENTROOT%\FMFiles to see additional FM XML files.

Elements in a FM file

The following sections describe the supported elements in a FM file.

FeatureManifest

The **FeatureManifest** element is the root XML element in the FM file. This element is the base container element for all other elements in the file. It must occur only once.

BasePackages

The **BasePackages** element specifies packages that are always included in the image if the FM file is referenced in the **AdditionalIFMs** element of the OEMInput XML file. The **BasePackages** element has no supported attributes.

The following table describes the child elements of the **BasePackages** element.

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
---------	-------------

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
PackageFile	<p>Optional. This element describes a package that will be included in the image. This element supports the following attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Path – Required. The path to the package. • Name – Required. The file name of the package. • Resolution – Optional. A string that contains the display resolutions supported by the package. This attribute can be specified with the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ "": The "" character means that the package supports every resolution. ◦ "(720x1280;768x1280)": This syntax indicates the set of resolutions that the package supports. The package is included only in images that are built for one of the resolutions in this list. ◦ "!(720x1280;768x1280)": A '!' in front of the resolution list specifies that the package supports all resolutions except for those in the list. The package is included only in images that are not built for one of the resolutions in this list. • Language – Optional. A string that contains the display language codes supported by the package. This attribute can be specified with the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ "": The "" character means that the package supports every language. ◦ "(en-US;zh-CN)": This syntax indicates the set of languages that the package supports. The package is included only in images that contain one of the display languages in this list. ◦ "!(en-US;zh-CN)": A '!' in front of the language list specifies that the package supports all languages except or those in the list. The package is included only in images that do not contain one of the display languages in this list. • Partition – Optional. A string that specifies the target partition for the package. By default, packages are installed to the MainOS partition unless another is explicitly specified. <p>These elements are for Microsoft internal use only.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ID – Optional. String value. The ID is the package name. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • NoBasePackage – Optional. Boolean value. Set to true for Language and\or Resolution packages that do not contain base packages. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • FeatureIdentifierPackage – Optional. Boolean value. This attribute should not be used by OEMs.

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
Features	
<p>There are both Microsoft and OEM elements, each of which can contain Features. The OEM should only add their features to the <OEM> element. This provides multiple benefits, including the easier integration of newer versions of the OEMInput.xml files into the OEM's build system.</p>	

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
	<p>target partition for the package. By default, packages are installed to the MainOS partition unless another is explicitly specified.</p> <p>This element supports the following child elements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FeatureIDs – Required. Contains one or more FeatureID elements. Each FeatureID element contains a string value that specifies the name of a feature that will be associated with the package specified by the parent PackageFile element. <p>These elements are for Microsoft internal use only.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CPUType – Required. String value. Sets the CPU type. Can be set to either <i>x86</i> or <i>arm</i>. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • ID – Optional. String value. The ID is the package name. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • NoBasePackage – Optional. Boolean value. Set to true for Language and\or Resolution packages that do not contain base packages. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • FeatureIdentifierPackage – Optional. Boolean value. This attribute should not be used by OEMs.

Feature groupings and constraints

Feature groupings and constraints can be used to manage features. For more information, see [Feature groupings and constraints](#).

ReleasePackages

The **ReleasePackages** element specifies packages that are included in images of a specific release type, as specified by the **ReleaseType** element in the OEMInput file. The **ReleasePackages** element have no supported attributes.

The following table describes the child elements of the **ReleasePackages** element.

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
PackageFile	<p>Optional. This element describes a package.</p> <p>This element supports the following attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ReleaseType – Required. The type of release supported by the package, either Production or Test. The package will only be included in images of the specified release type. • Path – Required. The path to the package. • Name – Required. The file name of the package. • Resolution – Optional. A string that contains the display resolutions supported by the package. This attribute can be specified with the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ "": The "" character means that the package supports every resolution. ◦ "(720x1280;768x1280)": This syntax indicates the set of resolutions that the package supports. The package is included

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
	<p>only in images that are built for one of the resolutions in this list.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ "!(720x1280;768x1280)": A '!' in front of the resolution list specifies that the package supports all resolutions except for those in the list. The package is included only in images that are not built for one of the resolutions in this list. • Language – Optional. A string that contains the display language codes supported by the package. This attribute can be specified with the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ "": The "" character means that the package supports every language. ◦ "(en-US;zh-CN)": This syntax indicates the set of languages that the package supports. The package is included only in images that contain one of the display languages in this list. ◦ "!(en-US;zh-CN)": A '!' in front of the language list specifies that the package supports all languages except for those in the list. The package is included only in images that do not contain one of the display languages in this list. • Partition – Optional. A string that specifies the target partition for the package. By default, packages are installed to the MainOS partition unless another is explicitly specified. <p>These elements are for Microsoft internal use only.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ID – Optional. String value. The ID is the package name. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • NoBasePackage – Optional. Boolean value. Set to true for Language and/or Resolution packages that do not contain base packages. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • FeatureIdentifierPackage – Optional. Boolean value. This attribute should not be used by OEMs.

Prerelease Packages

Describes packages that can be excluded using the **ExcludePrereleaseFeatures** element in the OEMInput file. For more information, see [OEMInput file contents](#).

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
PackageFile	<p>Optional. This element describes a prelease package.</p> <p>This element supports the following attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Type – Required. Can be either protected or replacement. <p>The protected packages are excluded when ExcludePrereleaseFeatures is set to Yes and the replacement packages will instead be included. For example a replacement feature can</p>

ELEMENT

DESCRIPTION
be created by the OEM to enable scenarios such as mobile operator testing, while not distributing builds with sensitive functionality. This approach is one of many, and is not required, but is one option to consider, to help manage feature disclosure. For more information see [OEMInput file contents](#).

Important

No replacement packages should be included in a retail image.

- **Path** – Required. The path to the package.
- **Name** – Required. The file name of the package.
- **Resolution** – Optional. A string that contains the display resolutions supported by the package. This attribute can be specified with the following values:
 - "": The "" character means that the package supports every resolution.
 - "(720x1280;768x1280)": This syntax indicates the set of resolutions that the package supports. The package is included only in images that are built for one of the resolutions in this list.
 - "!(720x1280;768x1280)": A '!' in front of the resolution list specifies that the package supports all resolutions except for those in the list. The package is included only in images that are not built for one of the resolutions in this list.
- **Language** – Optional. A string that contains the display language codes supported by the package. This attribute can be specified with the following values:
 - "": The "" character means that the package supports every language.
 - "(en-US;zh-CN)": This syntax indicates the set of languages that the package supports. The package is included only in images that contain one of the display languages in this list.
 - "!(en-US;zh-CN)": A '!' in front of the language list specifies that the package supports all languages except for those in the list. The package is included only in images that do not contain one of the display languages in this list.
- **Partition** – Optional. A string that specifies the target partition for the package. By default, packages are installed to the MainOS partition unless another is explicitly specified.

These elements are for Microsoft internal use only.

- **ID** – Optional. String value. The ID is the package name. This attribute should not be used by OEMs.

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● NoBasePackage – Optional. Boolean value. Set to true for Language and/or Resolution packages that do not contain base packages. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. ● FeatureIdentifierPackage – Optional. Boolean value. This attribute should not be used by OEMs.

SOC Packages

The **SOC Packages** element specifies packages that are included in images that are generated for a specific SoC, as specified by the **SOC** element in the OEMInput file. The **SOC Packages** element has no supported attributes.

The following table describes the child elements of the **SOC Packages** element.

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
PackageFile	<p>Optional. This element describes a package.</p> <p>This element supports the following attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● SOC – Required. The type of SoC supported by the package. For a list of the supported values, see the description of the SOC element in OEMInput file contents. The package will only be included in images generated for the specified SoC. ● Path – Required. The path to the package. ● Name – Required. The file name of the package. ● Resolution – Optional. A string that contains the display resolutions supported by the package. This attribute can be specified with the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ "": The "" character means that the package supports every resolution. ○ "(720x1280;768x1280)": This syntax indicates the set of resolutions that the package supports. The package is included only in images that are built for one of the resolutions in this list. ○ "!"(720x1280;768x1280)": A '!' in front of the resolution list specifies that the package supports all resolutions except for those in the list. The package is included only in images that are not built for one of the resolutions in this list. ● Language – Optional. A string that contains the display language codes supported by the package. This attribute can be specified with the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ "": The "" character means that the package supports every language. ○ "(en-US;zh-CN)": This syntax indicates the set of languages that the package supports. The package is included only in images that contain one of the display languages in this list. ○ "!"(en-US;zh-CN)": A '!' in front of the

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
	<p>language list specifies that the package supports all languages except for those in the list. The package is included only in images that do not contain one of the display languages in this list.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Partition – Optional. A string that specifies the target partition for the package. By default, packages are installed to the MainOS partition unless another is explicitly specified. <p>These elements are for Microsoft internal use only.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CPUType– Required. String value. Sets the CPU type. Can be set to either <i>x86</i> or <i>arm</i>. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • ID – Optional. String value. The ID is the package name. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • NoBasePackage – Optional. Boolean value. Set to true for Language and\or Resolution packages that do not contain base packages. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • FeatureIdentifierPackage – Optional. Boolean value. This attribute should not be used by OEMs.

SVPackages

The **SVPackages** element specifies packages that are included in images that are generated for a specific SoC manufacturer, as specified by the **SV** element in the OEMInput file. The **SVPackages** element has no supported attributes.

The following table describes the child elements of the **SVPackages** element.

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
PackageFile	<p>Optional. This element describes a package.</p> <p>This element supports the following attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SV – Required. The vendor for the SoC that is supported by the package. The package will only be included in images generated for the specified SoC vendor. • Path – Required. The path to the package. • Name – Optional. • Resolution – Optional. A string that contains the display resolutions supported by the package. This attribute can be specified with the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ "": The "" character means that the package supports every resolution. ◦ "(720x1280;768x1280)": This syntax indicates the set of resolutions that the package supports. The package is included only in images that are built for one of the resolutions in this list. ◦ "! (720x1280;768x1280)": A '!' in front of

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
	<p>the resolution list specifies that the package supports all resolutions except for those in the list. The package is included only in images that are not built for one of the resolutions in this list.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Language – Optional. A string that contains the display language codes supported by the package. This attribute can be specified with the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ "": The "" character means that the package supports every language. ○ "(en-US;zh-CN)": This syntax indicates the set of languages that the package supports. The package is included only in images that contain one of the display languages in this list. ○ "!"(en-US;zh-CN)": A '!' in front of the language list specifies that the package supports all languages except for those in the list. The package is included only in images that do not contain one of the display languages in this list. ● Partition – Optional. A string that specifies the target partition for the package. By default, packages are installed to the MainOS partition unless another is explicitly specified. <p>These elements are for Microsoft internal use only.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● CPUType – Required. String value. Sets the CPU type. Can be set to either <i>x86</i> or <i>arm</i>. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. ● ID – Optional. String value. The ID is the package name. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. ● NoBasePackage – Optional. Boolean value. Set to true for Language and\or Resolution packages that do not contain base packages. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. ● FeatureIdentifierPackage – Optional. Boolean value. This attribute should not be used by OEMs.

OEMDevicePlatformPackages

The **OEMDevicePlatformPackages** element specifies the device platform package to include in an image for a specific device type. OEMs must specify the device platform package by using this element in a FM file. For more information about device platform packages, see [Set device platform information](#). The **OEMDevicePlatformPackages** element has no supported attributes.

The following table describes the child elements of the **OEMDevicePlatformPackages** element.

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
PackageFile	<p>Optional. This element describes a device platform package to include in the image for a specific device type.</p> <p>This element supports the following attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Device – Required. The device type that is supported by the device platform package. The package will only be included in images generated for the specified device type. • Path – Required. The path to the package. • Name – Required. The file name of the package. <p>These elements are for Microsoft internal use only.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CPUType– Required. String value. Sets the CPU type. Can be set to either <i>x86</i> or <i>arm</i>. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • ID – Optional. String value. The ID is the package name. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • NoBasePackage – Optional. Boolean value. Set to true for Language and/or Resolution packages that do not contain base packages. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • FeatureIdentifierPackage – Optional. Boolean value. This attribute should not be used by OEMs.

DeviceSpecificPackages

The **DeviceSpecificPackages** element specifies packages to include in images that are generated for a specific device type, as specified by the **Device** element in the OEMInput file. The **DeviceSpecificPackages** element has no supported attributes.

The following table describes the child elements of the **DeviceSpecificPackages** element.

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
PackageFile	<p>Optional. This element describes a package to include in the image for a specific device type.</p> <p>This element supports the following attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Device – Required. The device type that is supported by the device platform package. The package will only be included in images generated for the specified device type. • Path – Required. The path to the package. • Name – Required. The file name of the package. • Resolution – Optional. A string that contains the display resolutions supported by the package. This attribute can be specified with the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ "": The "" character means that the package supports every resolution. ◦ "(720x1280;768x1280)": This syntax indicates the set of resolutions that the

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
	<p>package supports. The package is included only in images that are built for one of the resolutions in this list.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ "!(720x1280;768x1280)": A '!' in front of the resolution list specifies that the package supports all resolutions except for those in the list. The package is included only in images that are not built for one of the resolutions in this list. • Language – Optional. A string that contains the display language codes supported by the package. This attribute can be specified with the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ "": The "" character means that the package supports every language. ◦ "(en-US;zh-CN)": This syntax indicates the set of languages that the package supports. The package is included only in images that contain one of the display languages in this list. ◦ "!(en-US;zh-CN)": A '!' in front of the language list specifies that the package supports all languages except for those in the list. The package is included only in images that do not contain one of the display languages in this list. • Partition – Optional. A string that specifies the target partition for the package. By default, packages are installed to the MainOS partition unless another is explicitly specified. <p>These elements are for Microsoft internal use only.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CPUType – Required. String value. Sets the CPU type. Can be set to either <i>x86</i> or <i>arm</i>. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • ID – Optional. String value. The ID is the package name. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • NoBasePackage – Optional. Boolean value. Set to true for Language and\or Resolution packages that do not contain base packages. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • FeatureIdentifierPackage – Optional. Boolean value. This attribute should not be used by OEMs.

Microsoft internal use only

The following components are reserved for Microsoft internal use only, but are documented here for completeness.

CPUPackages

Reserved for internal Microsoft use. This element should not be used by OEMs.

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
---------	-------------

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
PackageFile	<p>Optional. This element describes a package.</p> <p>This element supports the following attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CPUType – Required. String value. Sets the CPU type. Can be set to either <i>x86</i> or <i>arm</i>. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • Path – Required. The path to the package. • Name – Required. The file name of the package. • ID – Optional. String value. The ID is the package name. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • NoBasePackage – Optional. Boolean value. Set to true for Language and\or Resolution packages that do not contain base packages. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • FeatureIdentifierPackage – Optional. Boolean value. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • Resolution – Optional. A string that contains the display resolutions supported by the package. This attribute can be specified with the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ "": The "" character means that the package supports every resolution. ◦ "(720x1280;768x1280)": This syntax indicates the set of resolutions that the package supports. The package is included only in images that are built for one of the resolutions in this list. ◦ "!"(720x1280;768x1280)": A '!' in front of the resolution list specifies that the package supports all resolutions except for those in the list. The package is included only in images that are not built for one of the resolutions in this list. • Language – Optional. A string that contains the display language codes supported by the package. This attribute can be specified with the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ "": The "" character means that the package supports every language. ◦ "(en-US;zh-CN)": This syntax indicates the set of languages that the package supports. The package is included only in images that contain one of the display languages in this list. ◦ "!"(en-US;zh-CN)": A '!' in front of the language list specifies that that package supports all languages except for those in the list. The package is included only in images that do not contain one of the display languages in this list. • Partition – Optional. A string that specifies the target partition for the package.

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
	<p>Reserved for internal Microsoft use. This element should not be used by OEMs.</p>
ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
BootUILanguagePackageFile	<p>Optional. This element supports the following attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Path – Required. The path to the package. • Name – Required. The file name of the package. • ID – Optional. String value. The ID is the package name. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • NoBasePackage – Optional. Boolean value. Set to true for Language and\or Resolution packages that do not contain base packages. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • FeatureIdentifierPackage – Optional. Boolean value. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • Partition – Optional. A string that specifies the target partition for the package.

BootLocalePackageFile

Reserved for internal Microsoft use. This element should not be used by OEMs.

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
BootLocalePackageFile	<p>Optional. This element supports the following attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Path – Required. The path to the package. • Name – Required. The file name of the package. • ID – Optional. String value. The ID is the package name. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • NoBasePackage – Optional. Boolean value. Set to true for Language and\or Resolution packages that do not contain base packages. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • FeatureIdentifierPackage – Optional. Boolean value. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • Partition – Optional. A string that specifies the target partition for the package.

DeviceLayoutPackages

Reserved for internal Microsoft use. This element should not be used by OEMs.

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
PackageFile	<p>Optional. This element describes a package.</p> <p>This element supports the following attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SOC – Required. • Path – Required. The path to the package. • Name – Required. The file name of the package. • Partition – Optional. A string that specifies the target partition for the package. By default, packages are installed to the MainOS partition unless another is explicitly specified. • ID – Optional. String value. The ID is the package name. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • NoBasePackage – Optional. Boolean value. Set to true for Language and\or Resolution packages that do not contain base packages. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • FeatureIdentifierPackage – Optional. Boolean value. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • CPUType – Required. String value. Sets the CPU type. Can be set to either <i>x86</i> or <i>arm</i>. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • Partition – Optional. A string that specifies the target partition for the package.

KeyboardPackages

Reserved for internal Microsoft use. This element should not be used by OEMs.

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
PackageFile	<p>Optional. This element describes a package.</p> <p>This element supports the following attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Path – Required. The path to the package. • Name – Required. The file name of the package. • ID – Optional. String value. The ID is the package name. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • NoBasePackage – Optional. Boolean value. Set to true for Language and\or Resolution packages that do not contain base packages. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • FeatureIdentifierPackage – Optional. Boolean value. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • Language – Optional. A string that contains the display language codes supported by the package. This attribute can be specified with the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ "": The "" character means that the package supports every language. ◦ "(en-US;zh-CN)": This syntax indicates the set of languages that the package supports. The package is included only in images that contain one of the display languages in this list. ◦ "!(en-US;zh-CN)": A '!' in front of the language list specifies that the package supports all languages except for those in the list. The package is included only in images that do not contain one of the display languages in this list. • Partition – Optional. A string that specifies the target partition for the package. By default, packages are installed to the MainOS partition unless another is explicitly specified.

SpeechPackages

Reserved for internal Microsoft use. This element should not be used by OEMs.

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
---------	-------------

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
PackageFile	<p>Optional. This element describes a package.</p> <p>This element supports the following attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Path – Required. The path to the package. • Name – Required. The file name of the package. • ID – Optional. String value. The ID is the package name. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • NoBasePackage – Optional. Boolean value. Set to true for Language and\or Resolution packages that do not contain base packages. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • FeatureIdentifierPackage – Optional. Boolean value. This attribute should not be used by OEMs. • Language – Optional. A string that contains the display language codes supported by the package. This attribute can be specified with the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ "": The "" character means that the package supports every language. ◦ "(en-US;zh-CN)": This syntax indicates the set of languages that the package supports. The package is included only in images that contain one of the display languages in this list. ◦ "!(en-US;zh-CN)": A '!' in front of the language list specifies that the package supports all languages except for those in the list. The package is included only in images that do not contain one of the display languages in this list. • Partition – Optional. A string that specifies the target partition for the package. By default, packages are installed to the MainOS partition unless another is explicitly specified.

Related topics

[Building a phone image using ImgGen.cmd](#)

Create a feature and include it in an image

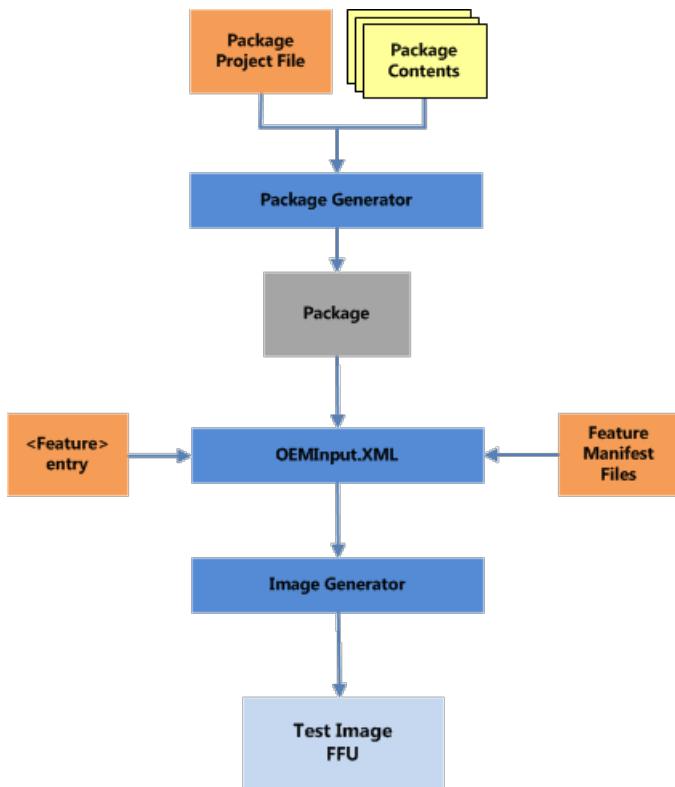
7/13/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

This topic shows you how to create a feature and add it to an image.

Process overview – adding a test app feature

To create a feature and add it to an image, you must complete the following steps.

1. Generate the package that contains the test app.
2. Create the feature manifest file that references the package.
3. Add the feature manifest file and the test app feature to the OEMInput.xml file.
4. Generate the image, sign the image, and flash it to the device.
5. Verify that the feature works as expected.



Walkthrough – adding a test app to a test image

This section reviews the steps that you need to perform to add a test app to a test image. Before you can start this walkthrough, you must first create a simple test app. After the app is created, you can continue with this walkthrough.

Generate the test app package

This walkthrough assumes that you have already created a test app named *TestApplication.exe*. Generate a package that contains this app by completing the following steps.

1. Create a directory called *TestApplication* and copy the *TestApplication.exe* file that you created in Visual Studio, to that directory.

2. Create a text file named *TestApplication.pkg.xml* that contains the following package definition XML.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" ?>
<Package xmlns="urn:Microsoft.WindowsPhone/PackageSchema.v8.00" Owner="Contoso"
OwnerType="OEM"
ReleaseType="Test"
Platform="DCD600"
Component="TestApps"
SubComponent="TestApplication"
Partition="Data">

<Macros>
<Macro Id="testDir" Value="\test" />
</Macros>

<Components>
<OSComponent>
<Files>
<File Source="TestApplication.exe" DestinationDir="$(testDir)" />
</Files>
</OSComponent>
</Components>
</Package>
```

You can update the owner and platform attributes to match the name of your organization name and the name of your device. These attribute changes will modify the name of the generated package.

The `<Macro>` element is used to specify the `\data\test` destination directory on the device.

3. Open an administrator command prompt window to build the package.
4. Display the environment variables by typing **SET** in the command prompt window. Look for `WPDKCONTENTROOT` to confirm that the build environment is properly configured. On a Windows 64-bit PC, the path should look similar to the following.

```
...
WPDKCONTENTROOT=C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Phone Kits\10
```

5. Generate the package using PkgGen. Provide the version number of 1.0.0.0. The `/config` parameter points to the location of the `pkggen.cfg.xml` file.

```
C:\TestApplication>PkgGen TestApplication.pkg.xml /version:1.0.0.0 /config:"%WPDKCONTENTROOT%
\Tools\bin\i386\pkggen.cfg.xml"
```

6. If PkgGen creates the package successfully, it should return output that is similar to the following.

```
Microsoft (C) pkggen 8.0.12134.0

info: Using external macro file: 'C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Phone Kits\10\
Tools\bin\i386\pkggen.cfg.xml'
info: Building project file C:\TestApplication\TestApplication.
pkg.xml
info: Building package '.\Contoso.TestApps.TestApplication.spkg'
info: Adding file 'TestApplication.exe' to package '.\Contoso.TestApps.TestApplication.spkg' as
'\test\TestApplication.exe'
info: Done package ".\Contoso.TestApps.TestApplication.spkg"
info: Packages are generated to . successfully
```

For more information about working with packages, see [Creating packages](#).

Create the feature manifest file

Create a feature manifest file that will define a TEST_APP OEM feature by completing the following steps.

1. Create a feature manifest file named *OEMCustomAppFM.xml* in the following directory:

```
%WPDKCONTENTROOT%\FMFiles
```

2. Define the TEST_APP feature by adding the following XML to the *OEMCustomAppFM.xml* file.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<FeatureManifest xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  xmlns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/embedded/2004/10/ImageUpdate">
  <!-- TEST_APP FM File 4/30/2015 -->
  <Features>
    <OEM>
      <PackageFile Path="C:\TestApplication\" Name="Contoso.TestApps.TestApplication.spkg">
        <FeatureIDs>
          <FeatureID>TEST_APP</FeatureID>
        </FeatureIDs>
      </PackageFile>
    </OEM>
  </Features>
</FeatureManifest>
```

For more info about feature manifests, see [Feature manifest file contents](#).

Add the feature to the OEMInput file

Add the TEST_APP OEM feature to the OEMInput.xml file by completing the following steps.

1. This walkthrough assumes that you have an existing, functional test OEMInput file that enables TShell. For more information about creating test images, see [Building and flashing images](#). For more information about specifying optional features, see [Optional features for building images](#).
2. Edit the OEMInput.xml file to include the *OEMCustomAppFM.xml* feature manifest file that you created in the previous step. The XML will be similar to the following.

```
...
<AdditionalFMs>
  ...
  <AdditionalFM>%WPDKCONTENTROOT%\FMFiles\OEMCustomAppFM.xml</AdditionalFM>
</AdditionalFMs>
```

3. Later in the <Features> section of the OEMInput.xml file add the new TEST_APP feature to the list of existing features.

```
<Features>
  <Microsoft>
    ...
  </Microsoft>
  <OEM>
    ...
    <Feature>TEST_APP</Feature>
  </OEM>
</Features>
```

Generate, sign, and flash the image

Complete the following steps to generate, sign, and flash the image.

1. Generate the image using ImgGen and the OEMInput.xml file that you customized in the previous step.

```
C:\>ImgGen Flash.ffu OEMInput.xml "%WPDKCONTENTROOT%\10\MSPackages"
```

2. Before you can sign images, you must first install the test OEM certificates on the PC by following the steps in [Set up the signing environment](#).

3. Sign the generated catalog using the /pk option.

```
C:\> Set SIGN_OEM=1  
C:\> Sign.cmd /pk TestSigned.cat
```

4. Sign the FFU with the signed catalog file using ImageSigner.

```
C:\> ImageSigner Sign Flash.FFU Flash.Cat
```

5. Flash the image to the phone using FFUTool.

```
C:\> FFUTool -Flash Flash.ffu
```

For more information about generating and flashing images, see [Building and flashing images](#).

Verify that the TestApplication executes as expected

Verify that the TestApplication executes as expected by completing the following steps.

1. Configure a TShell connection to test the image.
2. Establish a connection to the device using the **Open-device** TShell command. Provide the MAC address of the device.

```
PS C:\> Open-device 001122334455
```

3. Confirm that the TestApplication is on the device by using the TShell **Dir-Device** command. The short form of the command, DirD, is shown.

```
PS C:\> DirD \TestApplication.exe /s
```

4. Execute the application by entering the **Exec-Device** cmdlet in the TShell window. The **Exec-Device** cmdlet starts a process on the connected device. By default, the **Exec-Device** cmdlet waits for the process to exit before returning. Use the -Async switch to return immediately. Use the -displayoutput parameter to echo the output.

```
PS C:\> ExecD -displayoutput -filename \Data\Test\TestApplication.exe
```

5. Output similar to the following should be displayed.

```
Output      : Testing console output  
Error       :  
Exit Code   : 0
```

Related topics

[Creating packages](#)

[Building and flashing images](#)

Adding a driver to a test image

7/13/2017 • 11 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

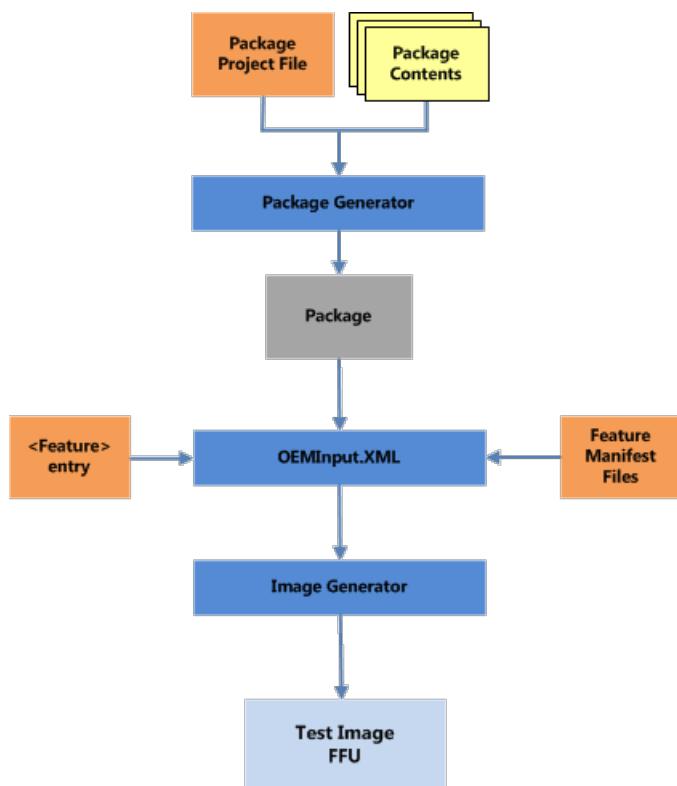
This topic shows you how to create a feature and add it to a test image.

Process overview – adding a driver feature to a test image

To create a feature that contains a driver and add it to a test image, complete the following steps.

1. [Create a test KMDF driver](#)
2. [Generate the driver package](#)
3. [Create a feature manifest file that references the package](#)
4. [Add the feature to the OEMInput.xml file](#)
5. [Generate, sign, and flash the image to the device](#)
6. [Verify that the KMDFDriver1 is on the device](#)
7. [Verify that the driver loads using Windows debug](#)

The following diagram summarizes the packaging and image generation elements that are used to add the driver to the device.



Walkthrough – adding a driver to a test image

This topic describes the steps that you need to perform to add a driver to a test image. Before you can start this walkthrough, you must first create a simple KMDF driver.

This walkthrough assumes that you named the project *KmdfDriver1*.

Create a test KMDF driver

To create a test KMDF driver, complete the following steps.

1. In the **Solution Explorer** window, expand **KmdfDriver1** and then expand the **Source Files Folder**.
2. Edit the "Driver.c" file by clicking it.
3. Right after the variable declaration section, add the **IoReportRootDevice** routine as show below. The **IoReportRootDevice** routine reports a device that cannot be detected by a PnP bus driver to the PnP Manager. This allows the software-only driver to remain loaded.

```
...
{
    WDF_DRIVER_CONFIG config;
    NTSTATUS status;
    WDF_OBJECT_ATTRIBUTES attributes;

    //
    // IoReportRootDevice routine reports a device that cannot be detected by
    // a PnP bus driver to the PnP Manager. This allows our software-only
    // driver to remain loaded.
    IoReportRootDevice(DriverObject);

    //
    // Initialize WPP tracing.
    //
    WPP_INIT_TRACING( DriverObject, RegistryPath );
    TraceEvents(TRACE_LEVEL_INFORMATION, TRACE_DRIVER, "%!FUNC! Entry");

...
}
```

4. Save Driver.c.
5. To build your driver and create a driver package, choose **Build Solution** from the **Build** menu. Visual Studio displays the build progress in the **Output** window. (If the *Output* window is not visible, choose **Output** from the **View** menu.)
6. To view the built driver package, navigate in Windows Explorer to your **KmdfDriver1** folder, and then to **ARM\Win8.1Debug**. This directory contains the following files:
 - KmfdDriver1.sys - A kernel-mode driver file.
 - KmfdDriver1.inf - An information file that Windows uses to install the driver.
 - KmfdDriver1.pdb – A file that contains the debug symbols that will be used for debugging.
 - KmfdDriver1.cat - A catalog file that is not used in this walkthrough.There are also co-installer files for the Windows Driver Frameworks (WDF) that will not be used with Windows Phone.
7. Because of the differences in Windows 10 Mobile INF files, we will not use the desktop INF file that is generated by Visual Studio.

```
;  
; KmddfDriver1.inf  
;  
[Version]  
Signature="$WINDOWS NT$"  
Class=System  
ClassGuid={4d36e97d-e325-11ce-bfc1-08002be10318}  
Provider=%MSFT%  
DriverVer=11/01/2012,1.00.00.00  
BootCritical=1  
  
[DestinationDirs]  
DefaultDestDir = 12  
  
[Manufacturer]  
%StdMfg%=KMDFDriver1_DevDesc, NTARM, NTx86  
  
;*****  
;** models section (required) **  
;*****  
; For ARM platforms  
[KMDFDriver1_DevDesc.NTARM]  
; DisplayName Section DeviceId  
; ----- ----- -----  
%KMDFDriver1_DevDesc%=KMDFDriver1, Root\KMDFDriver1  
  
; For Win2K+  
[KMDFDriver1_DevDesc.NTx86]  
; DisplayName Section DeviceId  
; ----- ----- -----  
%KMDFDriver1_DevDesc%=KMDFDriver1, Root\KMDFDriver1  
  
;*****  
;* ddinstall section (required) *  
;*****  
[KMDFDriver1.NT]  
CopyFiles=KMDFDriver1.NT.Copy  
  
[KMDFDriver1.NT.Copy]  
KMDFDriver1.sys  
  
;----- Service installation  
  
[KMDFDriver1.NT.Services]  
AddService = KMDFDriver1, %SPSVCINST_ASSOCSERVICE%, KMDFDriver1_Service_Inst  
  
[KMDFDriver1_Service_Inst]  
DisplayName = %KMDFDriver1_DevDesc%  
ServiceType = %SERVICE_KERNEL_DRIVER%  
StartType = %SERVICE_SYSTEM_START%  
ErrorControl = %SERVICE_ERROR_NORMAL%  
ServiceBinary = %12%\KMDFDriver1.sys
```

```
[Strings]
SPSVCINST_ASSOCSERVICE= 0x00000002
MSFT = "Microsoft"
KMDFDriver1_DevDesc = "KMDF Driver 1"
SERVICE_KERNEL_DRIVER = 1
SERVICE_AUTO_START = 2
SERVICE_SYSTEM_START = 1
SERVICE_BOOT_START = 0
SERVICE_ERROR_NORMAL = 1
```
```

1. Sign the driver using the following commands:

```
C:>set SIGN_OEM=1
sign KMDFDriver1.sys
```

### Generate a package that contains the driver

Generate a package that contains this driver by completing the following steps.

1. Create a directory called *KMDFDriver1* and copy the *KMDFDriver1.sys* and *KMDFDriver1.inf* files that you created in Visual Studio, to that directory.
2. Create a text file named *KmdfDriver1.pkg.xml* that contains the following package definition XML.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<Package xmlns="urn:Microsoft.WindowsPhone/PackageSchema.v8.00"
 Owner="Contoso"
 OwnerType="OEM"
 ReleaseType="Test"
 Platform="DCD6000"
 Component="Phone.Test.BaseOS"
 SubComponent="KmdfDriver1"
 Partition="MainOS"
 BinaryPartition="false">
 <Components>
 <OSComponent>
 <Files>
 <File Source="KmdfDriver1.sys" DestinationDir="$(runtime.system32)\drivers"/>
 </Files>
 </OSComponent>
 <Driver InfSource="KmdfDriver1.inf">
 <Reference Source="KmdfDriver1.sys"/>
 </Driver>
 </Components>
</Package>
```

You can update the owner and platform attributes to match the name of your organization name and the name of your device. These attribute changes will modify the name of the generated package.

Specify the *Windows\System32\Drivers* directory on the device using the *\$(runtime.system32)* macro.

3. The next step is to generate the package by opening an administrator command prompt window.
4. Display the environment variables by typing **SET** in the administrator command prompt window. Look for **WPKCONTENTROOT** to confirm that the build environment is properly configured. You should see that **WPKCONTENTROOT** is set. On a Windows 64-bit PC, the path should look similar to the following.

```
...
WPKCONTENTROOT=C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10
```

5. Generate the package using PkgGen. Provide the version number of 1.0.0.0. The /config parameter points to the location of the pkggen.cfg.xml file provided with the Windows DriverKit. The /hive parameter points to the location of the hive root.

```
C:\KmdfDriver1>PkgGen KmdfDriver1.pkg.xml /version:1.0.0.0
/variables:"HIVE_ROOT=%WPDKCONTENTROOT%\CoreSystem"
/config:"%WPDKCONTENTROOT%\Tools\bin\i386\pkggen.cfg.xml"
```

6. If PkgGen creates the package successfully, it will display many lines of information as the registry entries are created based on the provided INF file. The last part of the output will be similar to the following.

```
...
info: Import Log: : sto: Unloaded hive key '{bf1a281b-ad7b-4476-ac95-f47682
990ce7}C:/Users/User1/AppData/Local/Temp/gs5gvfgc.pou/windows/system32/config/S
OFTWARE'. Time = 0 ms
info: Import Log: : <<< Section end 2015/08/06 13:10:22.413
info: Import Log: : <<< [Exit status: SUCCESS]
info: Import Log: :
info: Import Log: :
info: Import Log: : >>> [Unload Offline Registry Hive - DRIVERS]
info: Import Log: : >>> Section start 2014/08/06 13:10:22.413
info: Import Log: : os: Version = 6.3.9600, Service Pack = 0.0, Suite = 0
x0100, ProductType = 1, Architecture = x86
info: Import Log: : cmd: PkgGen KmdfDriver1.pkg.xml /version:1.0.0.0 /var
iables:"HIVE_ROOT=C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\CoreSystem" /con
fig:"C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Tools\bin\i386\pkggen.cfg.xml
"
info: Import Log: : sto: Closed hive key '{bf1a281b-ad7b-4476-ac95-f4768299
0ce7}C:/Users/User1/AppData/Local/Temp/gs5gvfgc.pou/windows/system32/config/DRI
VERS'.
info: Import Log: : sto: Unloaded hive key '{bf1a281b-ad7b-4476-ac95-f47682
990ce7}C:/Users/User1/AppData/Local/Temp/gs5gvfgc.pou/windows/system32/config/D
RIVERS'. Time = 0 ms
info: Import Log: : <<< Section end 2014/08/06 13:10:22.513
info: Import Log: : <<< [Exit status: SUCCESS]
info: Import Log: :
info: Building package '.\Contoso.Phone.Test.BaseOS.KmdfDriver1.spkg'
info: Adding file 'KmdfDriver1.sys' to package '.\Contoso.Phone.Test.BaseOS.Kmdf
Driver1.spkg' as '\windows\System32\drivers\KmdfDriver1.sys'
info: Adding file 'C:\Users\User1\AppData\Local\Temp\5bgjkx3p.j01\reg.reg' to p
ackage '.\Contoso.Phone.Test.BaseOS.KmdfDriver1.spkg' as '\Windows\Packages\Regi
stryFiles\Contoso.Phone.Test.BaseOS.KmdfDriver1.reg'
info: Adding file 'C:\Users\User1\AppData\Local\Temp\5bgjkx3p.j01\regMultiSz.rg
a' to package '.\Contoso.Phone.Test.BaseOS.KmdfDriver1.spkg' as '\Windows\Packag
es\RegistryFiles\Contoso.Phone.Test.BaseOS.KmdfDriver1.rrga'
info: Done package ".\Contoso.Phone.Test.BaseOS.KmdfDriver1.spkg"
info: Packages are generated to . successfully
```

For more information about working with packages, see [Creating packages](#).

### Create a feature manifest file that references the package

Create a feature manifest file that will define a DRIVER1 OEM feature by completing the following steps.

1. Create a feature manifest file named *OEMCustomAppFM.xml* in the following directory.

```
%WPDKCONTENTROOT%\FMFiles
```

2. Define the DRIVER1 feature by adding the following XML to the *OEMCustomDriverFM.xml* file. Update the package name to match the name of the package file generated in the previous step.

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<FeatureManifest xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
 xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
 xmlns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/embedded/2004/10/ImageUpdate">
 <!-- DRIVER1 FM File 7/31/2014 -->
 <Features>
 <OEM>
 <PackageFile Path="C:\KmdfDriver1\" Name="Contoso.Phone.Test.BaseOS.KmdfDriver1">
 <FeatureIDs>
 <FeatureID>DRIVER1</FeatureID>
 </FeatureIDs>
 </PackageFile>
 </OEM>
 </Features>
</FeatureManifest>

```

For more information about feature manifests, see [Feature manifest file contents](#).

### Add the feature to the OEMInput.xml file

Add the DRIVER1 feature to the OEMInput.xml file by completing the following steps.

1. This walkthrough assumes that you have an existing, functional test OEMInput file that enables TShell. For more information about creating test images, see [Building and flashing images](#). For more information about specifying optional features, see [Optional features for building images](#).

Confirm that that you are using a test image that has debugging enabled. For more information, see [Optional features for building images](#).

2. Edit the OEMInput.xml file to include the *OEMCustomAppFM.xml* feature manifest file that you created in the previous step. The XML will be similar to the following.

```

...
<AdditionalFMs>
 ...
 <AdditionalFM>%WPDKCONTENTROOT%\FMFiles\OEMCustomDriverFM.xml</AdditionalFM>
</AdditionalFMs>

```

3. In the <Features> section of the OEMInput.xml file, add the new DRIVER1 feature to the list of existing features.

```

<Features>
 <Microsoft>
 ...
 </Microsoft>
 <OEM>
 ...
 <Feature>DRIVER1</Feature>
 </OEM>
</Features>

```

### Generate, sign, and flash the image to the device

Complete the following steps to generate, sign, and flash the image.

1. Generate the image using ImgGen and the OEMInput.xml file that you customized in the previous step.

```
C:\>ImgGen Flash.ffu OEMInput.xml "%WPDKCONTENTROOT%\10\MSPackages"
```

2. Before you can sign images, you must first install the test OEM certificates on the PC by following the steps

in [Set up the signing environment](#).

3. Sign the generated catalog using the Sign.cmd with the **/pk** option.

```
C:\> Set SIGN_OEM=1
C:\> Sign.cmd /pk TestSigned.cat
```

4. Sign the FFU with the signed catalog file using ImageSigner.

```
C:\> ImageSigner Sign Flash.FFU Flash.Cat
```

5. Flash the image to the phone using FFUTool.

```
C:\> FFUTool -Flash Flash.ffd
```

For more information about generating and flashing images, see [Building and flashing images](#).

### Verify that the KMDFDriver1 is on the device

Verify that the KMDFDriver1 is present on the device by using TShell.

1. Configure a TShell connection to test the image.
2. Establish a connection to the device using the **Open-device** TShell command. Provide the MAC address of the device.

```
PS C:\> Open-device 001122334455
```

3. Confirm that the KMDFDriver1 is on the device by using the **Dir-Device** TShell command. The short form of the command, DirD, is shown.

```
PS C:\> DirD \KMDFDriver1.sys /s
```

4. You should see output similar to the following.

```
Volume in drive C is MainOS
Volume Serial Number is 965E-2180
Directory of C:\windows\system32\DRIVERS
04/21/2014 05:23 PM 8864 KMDFDriver1.sys
 1 File(s) 8864 bytes
Total Files Listed:
 1 File(s) 8864 bytes
 0 Dir(s) 409976832 bytes free
```

5. Enable debug output for KdPrint(), KdPrintEx(), and DbgPrint() messages by setting a registry key. Set the registry key so that it is persistent across reboots (for non-retail images) by using the **RegD Add** TShell command.

```
DEVICE C:\
PS C:\Windows\system32> RegD Add "HKLM\SYSTEM\ControlSet001\Control\Session Manager\Debug Print Filter"
/v DEFAULT /t REG_DWORD /d 0xFFFFFFFF

The operation completed successfully.
```

6. Confirm that registry key was set by using the **RegD Query** TShell command.

```
DEVICE C:\
PS C:\Windows\system32> RegD Query "HKLM\SYSTEM\ControlSet001\Control\Session Manager\Debug Print Filter"

HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\ControlSet001\Control\Session Manager\Debug Print Filter
 DEFAULT REG_DWORD 0xffffffff
```

### Verify that the driver loads using Windows debug

To view the driver load process, complete the following steps to set a debug statement in the driver and connect the device to the kernel debugger.

1. Open the driver project in Visual Studio.
2. Add a debug break statement in Driver.c right after the variable declaration section of the DriverEntry routine.

```
...
WDF_DRIVER_CONFIG config;
NTSTATUS status;
WDF_OBJECT_ATTRIBUTES attributes;

// Debug break statement to stop loading of OS
// Debugger must be attached to allow the device to boot
__debugbreak();
...
```

### Warning

The debug break statement will stop the phone from booting unless a debugger is attached to the device.

3. Rebuild the project in Visual Studio.
4. If necessary, copy the updated .sys file to the directory that you will use to create to generate the package.
5. Then, repeat the steps described above to:
  - a. Generate an updated driver package.
  - b. Generate, sign, and flash the image.

### Note

It is also possible to update the version of the driver by including the driver version in the INF file and then using the IUTool to deploy the updated driver to the phone. For more information about using IUTool, see [IUTool.exe: Update packages on a phone](#). This process is similar to the process that is used to create a driver update. For more information about that, see [Update a KMDF device driver](#).

6. Set up a KDNET over USB connection to the phone for debugging.

7. Start the Windows debugger.

```
windbg -k net:port=5000,key=1.2.3.4
```

8. After the device has booted, it will hit the break point and code execution will stop. The debugger will indicate that break point has been hit.
9. Set the symbol path to the location of the Windows Driver Kit symbols and reload the symbols.

```
.SYMPATH+ C:\SYMBOLS
.reload /f
```

10. Set the source path to the location of your .c source code that you created earlier in Visual Studio.

```
.srcpath+ C:\KMDFDriver1\Source\
```

11. List the call stack by using the **k** command.

```
0: kd> k
Child-SP RetAddr Call Site
00 85679c68 90fd2abe KMDFDriver1!DriverEntry+0xa
01 85679ce0 90fd2b38 KMDFDriver1!FxDriverEntryWorker+0x6a
02 85679d00 81770990 KMDFDriver1!FxDriverEntry+0x18
*** ERROR: Symbol file could not be found. Defaulted to export symbols for ntkrnlmp.exe -
03 85679d10 818f8004 nt!SeTokenIsAdmin+0x1790
04 85679e10 8190d630 nt!KeFindConfigurationNextEntry+0x7c48
05 85679e68 8185719e nt!KeHwPolicyLocateResource+0x4698
06 85679e70 814c5e0c nt!IoReplacePartitionUnit+0x192
07 85679e80 81460172 nt!IoAllocateIrp+0x57c
08 85679ec8 00000000 nt!KiDispatchInterrupt+0x234a
```

The call stack is the chain of function calls that have led to the current location of the program counter. The top function on the call stack is the current function, and the next function is the function that called the current function, and so on.

12. Display symbol information associated with KMDFDriver1 using the **x** command.

```
0: kd> x KMDFDriver1!*
90fd4750 KMDFDriver1!WdfDriverGlobals = 0x88ff4de8
90fd4754 KMDFDriver1!WdfDriverStubDriverObject = 0x88fed768
90fd4004 KMDFDriver1!__security_cookie_complement = 0x568f867
90fd336c KMDFDriver1!__gsfailure_xdata_end = <unknown base type 80000013>
90fd33b4 KMDFDriver1!__memcpy_reverse_large_neon_xdata = <unknown base type 80000013>
90fd30c0 KMDFDriver1!WPP_c0dfc8e231dc218098dc0c2ed20d6e73_Traceguids = struct _GUID [1]
90fd30a0 KMDFDriver1!GUID_DEVINTERFACE_KmdfDriver1 = struct _GUID {e7a4cfb0-56d4-4234-bf60-
fe627cb5e981}
90fd474c KMDFDriver1!WdfDriverStubDisplacedDriverUnload = 0x00000000
90fd3370 KMDFDriver1!memcpy_xdata_prolog = <unknown base type 80000013>
90fd3388 KMDFDriver1!__memcpy_forward_large_neon_xdata = <unknown base type 80000013>
90fd4758 KMDFDriver1!WdfDriverStubOriginalWdfDriverMiniportUnload = 0x00000000
```

13. List information about the modules on KMDFDriver1 by using the **lm m** command.

```
0: kd> lm m KMDFDriver1 v
Browse full module list
start end module name
90fd1000 90fd9000 KMDFDriver1 (private pdb symbols) c:\kmfdfdriver1\KmddfDriver1.pdb
Loaded symbol image file: KMDFDriver1.sys
Image path: KMDFDriver1.sys
Image name: KMDFDriver1.sys
Browse all global symbols functions data
Timestamp: Thu Jul 31 14:39:34 2014 (53DAB796)
CheckSum: 000037D2
ImageSize: 00008000
Translations: 0000.04b0 0000.04e4 0409.04b0 0409.04e
```

14. Load the WDF driver extensions using the **.load** command.

```
.load C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Debuggers\x86\winext\Wdfkd.dll
```

15. Confirm that the WDF debug extension is loaded by using the **!wdfkd.help** WDK driver extension help command.

```
!wdfkd.help
```

16. Display information about the driver using the **!wdfkd.wdfdriverinfo** command.

```
0: kd> !wdfkd.wdfdriverinfo KMDFDriver1

Default driver image name: KMDFDriver1
WDF library image name: Wdf01000
FxDriverGlobals 0x90584008
WdfBindInfo 0x913d8008
Version v1.11
Library module 0x8283b528
ServiceName \Registry\Machine\System\CurrentControlSet\Services\Wdf01000
ImageName Wdf01000

Driver Handles is NULL
```

17. End the debugging session using the **qd** quit and detach command.

```
0: kd> qd
```

# Feature groupings and constraints

7/13/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Feature groups and feature constraints allow additional logic to be added to the build system to support intelligent processing of the OEMInput XML.

## Feature groupings

Feature groupings allow for better management of optional features and allow the organization of packages for easier management. Feature grouping is used to implement feature constraints by Microsoft and optionally, by the OEM.

## Feature constraints

Feature constraints can be specified to avoid illogical or inappropriate build configurations.

Some settings are mutually exclusive and only one setting should be specified at a time. For example, consider the features, RELEASE\_PRODUCTION and RELEASE\_TEST. These features are mutually exclusive. This means that if RELEASE\_TEST is set, RELEASE\_PRODUCTION must not be set.

Constraints are grouped at the Microsoft and OEM level of features. OEMs cannot override Microsoft constraints. The following constraints are supported:

| ELEMENT       | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                             | AT LEAST ONE FEATURE IS REQUIRED | FEATURES ARE MUTUALLY EXCLUSIVE |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| OneOrMore     | One or more features must be specified.                                                                                                                                 | true                             | false                           |
| ZeroOrOne     | Either one feature or no features can be specified.                                                                                                                     | false                            | true                            |
| OneAndOnlyOne | One feature is required and only one feature can be specified.                                                                                                          | true                             | true                            |
| ZeroOrMore    | This is the default and indicates that there are no constraints. This option is only used to group features for publishing purposes and will be ignored during imaging. | false                            | false                           |

The following XML sample illustrates the use of constraints to appropriately restrain the fake modem feature.

```

<Features>
 <Microsoft>
 <FeatureGroup Constraint="OneAndOnlyOne">
 <FeatureIDs>
 <FeatureID>MS_IMGFAKEMODEM</FeatureID>
 <FeatureID>MS_IMGNFAKEMODEM</FeatureID>
 </FeatureIDs>
 </FeatureGroups >
 </Microsoft>
</Features>

```

The constraints in the sample specify that either IMGFAKEMODEM or IMGNFAKEMODEM must be selected. Both values cannot be set at the same time. One and only one value must be set at a time. This constraint is required because the fake modem test feature must either be enabled or disabled.

The following XML sample illustrates the use of constraints to appropriately restrain the production build settings. This sample shows how multiple constraints can be associated with a single feature.

```

<Features>
 <Microsoft>
 <FeatureGroups>
 <FeatureGroup Constraint="ZeroOrOne">
 <FeatureIDs>
 <FeatureID>RELEASE_PRODUCTION</FeatureID>
 <FeatureID>MS_CODEINTEGRITY_PROD</FeatureID>
 </FeatureIDs>
 </FeatureGroup>
 <FeatureGroup Constraint="ZeroOrOne">
 <FeatureIDs>
 <FeatureID>RELEASE_PRODUCTION</FeatureID>
 <FeatureID>MS_DISABLETESTSIGNING</FeatureID>
 </FeatureIDs>
 </FeatureGroup>
 </Microsoft>
</Features>

```

When <ReleaseType>Production</ReleaseType> is set in the OEMInput file, this maps to RELEASE\_PRODUCTION. For more information about release type, see [OEMInput file contents](#).

The constraints in the sample specify that:

- Either RELEASE\_PRODUCTION or MS\_CODEINTEGRITY\_PROD can be selected, but they both may not be selected at the same time. This is because production code integrity is automatically enabled when RELEASE\_PRODUCTION is selected and therefore can't be manually enabled.
- Either RELEASE\_PRODUCTION or MS\_DISABLETESTSIGNING can be selected, but they both may not be selected at the same time. This is because test signing is automatically disabled when RELEASE\_PRODUCTION is selected and therefore can't be manually disabled.

The build options are more complex and are expressed in the following XML.

```

<FeatureGroup Constraint="OneAndOnlyOne">
 <FeatureIDs>
 <FeatureID>RELEASE_PRODUCTION</FeatureID>
 <FeatureID>MS_TEST</FeatureID>
 <FeatureID>MS_HEALTH</FeatureID>
 <FeatureID>MS_PRODUCTION</FeatureID>
 <FeatureID>MS_SELFHOST</FeatureID>
 </FeatureIDs>
</FeatureGroup>
<FeatureGroup Constraint="OneAndOnlyOne">
 <FeatureIDs>
 <FeatureID>RELEASE_PRODUCTION</FeatureID>
 <FeatureID>MS_PRODUCTION_CORE</FeatureID>
 <FeatureID>MS_TEST</FeatureID>
 </FeatureIDs>
</FeatureGroup>

```

These settings in the sample specify that PRODUCTION\_CORE is mutually exclusive with RELEASE\_PRODUCTION and TEST, but is not mutually exclusive with HEALTH, PRODUCTION, or SELFHOST.

For additional information about the build features, see [Optional features for building images](#).

## Implicit feature IDs

Implicit feature IDs are generated based on the XML input that is used to define features in feature manifest files. Feature constraints must use the implicit feature IDs. This section provides the mapping between the XML input values and the generated implicit feature IDs.

### Pre-defined release type implicit feature IDs

There are two pre-defined implicit feature IDs that can be used for feature constraints.

- RELEASE\_TEST
- RELEASE\_PRODUCTION

For more information on release types, see [Optional features for building images](#).

### OEM and Microsoft implicit feature IDs

For each OEM and Microsoft feature, implicit feature IDs are automatically created. This is done by pre-appending either *MS\_* for Microsoft or *OEM\_* for OEM defined features.

For example if an OEM creates a feature called TEST\_FEATURE1 using the XML shown below, the implicit Feature ID will be *OEM\_TEST\_FEATURE1*.

```

<Features>
 <OEM>
 <PackageFile Path="%oempackageroot%\test\" Name="Contoso.Test.MinTE.spkg">
 <FeatureIDs>
 <FeatureID>TEST_FEATURE1</FeatureID>
 </FeatureIDs>
 </PackageFile>
 </OEM>
</Features>

```

To create a feature constraint to make sure this test feature is only shipped with test release types, use the following XML.

```
<FeatureGroup Constraint="ZeroOrOne">
 <FeatureIDs>
 <FeatureID>RELEASE_PRODUCTION</FeatureID>
 <FeatureID>OEM_TEST_FEATURE1</FeatureID>
 </FeatureIDs>
</FeatureGroup>
```

## SOC implicit feature IDs

SOC features are pre-appended with SOC\_. For example if *DCD6000* is specified in the feature manifest XML, the implicit feature ID would be *SOC\_DCD6000*.

## SV implicit feature IDs

SV features are pre-appended with SV\_. For example if *CONTOSO* is specified in the feature manifest XML, the implicit feature ID would be *SV\_CONTOSO*.

## DEVICE implicit feature IDs

Device features are pre-appended with Device\_. For example if *BETA* is specified in the feature manifest XML, the implicit feature ID would be *DEVICE\_BETA*.

For more information about working with the SOC, SV and DEVICE attributes, see [Feature manifest file contents](#).

## Related topics

[Optional features for building images](#)

# Set device platform information

7/13/2017 • 6 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

To prepare for building an image, OEMs must perform the following tasks to specify required information for the targeted device platform:

- Set several device platform values in the SMBIOS system information structure on the devices.
- Build a *device platform* package.

The engineering flashing tool set provided by Microsoft compares the values in the SMBIOS system information structure with corresponding values in the device platform package before flashing an image. This check helps to ensure that an image can be flashed to a particular device only if it was built for the corresponding device platform. It is recommended that the flashing tools that OEMs create for their manufacturing environments do the same verification. For more information, see [Validating the device platform information before flashing an image to a device](#) in this topic.

## Note

This topic describes prerequisites for building an image that can be flashed to a device. OEMs must set additional device platform information including partner names, version numbers, and device names before an image is finalized for retail devices.

## Setting SMBIOS system information values

On each device platform, OEMs must ensure that the following values in the SMBIOS system information structure are set:

- PhoneManufacturer
- Family
- Product Name
- Version

These values may be set to defaults by the SoC vendor; OEMs must replace these with values for their device platform. OEMs may also need to set other SMBIOS values as specified by the SoC vendor. For more information about how to set or read these values, refer to documentation provided by the SoC vendor.

For more information about the expected sizes and data types for these values, refer to section 7.2 in the [System Management BIOS \(SMBIOS\) Reference Specification](#) (PDF).

## Important

The PhoneManufacturer setting must contain a code specified by Microsoft that corresponds to the OEM. This setting is used for targeting device updates, for connecting to the store-within-a-store in the Windows Store, and for Watson reports. The value must be a valid OEM ID. To get the valid OEM ID that applies to you, contact your Microsoft representative.

## Creating the device platform package

The device platform package contains just one file: an XML file named **OEMDevicePlatform.xml** that includes information specific to the device platform for which the image is being built. Every image must include a device platform package. OEMs must specify the device platform package by using the **OEMDevicePlatformPackages**

element in a FM file that is included in the image.

To create the device platform package, first create an OEMDevicePlatform.xml file that contains the device platform information in the required schema format. Then, create a package that includes this XML file.

## Creating the XML file

The OEMDevicePlatform.xml file contains a single **OEMDevicePlatform** element with the following child elements.

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
<b>MinSectorCount</b>	<p>This value specifies the minimum sectors that are expected on a device store. The imaging tool uses this value to ensure that the content will fit on the device. The actual sector count may be more than this minimum. The sector size is 512 bytes, as defined in the device layout package provided by Microsoft.</p>
<b>DevicePlatformID</b>	<p>This is one of the following strings that consists of values from the SMBIOS system information structure concatenated together, with each value separated by a period (.):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <i>PhoneManufacturer.Family.Product Name</i></li><li>• <i>PhoneManufacturer.Family.Product Name.Version</i></li></ul> <p>OEMs can choose whether or not to include the <i>Version</i> value in this string.</p> <p>When device platform validation is enabled in the Microsoft flashing application, the values specified in this string will be compared with the corresponding values in the SMBIOS system information structure. For more information, see <a href="#">Use the flashing tools provided by Microsoft</a>.</p> <p>The device platform XML file can have only a <b>DevicePlatformID</b> or <b>DevicePlatformIDs</b> element, but not both.</p>
<b>DevicePlatformIDs</b>	<p>OEMs can set multiple device platform IDs using the following XML syntax, where each string has the same format as described for the <b>DevicePlatformID</b> element.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"><pre>&lt;DevicePlatformIDs&gt;     &lt;ID&gt;Contoso.ContosoPhoneFamily.Z101._012&lt;/ID&gt;     &lt;ID&gt;Contoso.ContosoPhoneFamily.Z101._013&lt;/ID&gt;     &lt;ID&gt;Contoso.ContosoPhoneFamily.Z102&lt;/ID&gt; &lt;/DevicePlatformIDs&gt;</pre></div> <p>Device platform validation will succeed if any of the IDs match either the <i>PhoneManufacturer.Family.Product.Version</i> or the <i>PhoneManufacturer.Family.Product</i> specified.</p> <p>The device platform XML file can have only a <b>DevicePlatformID</b> or <b>DevicePlatformIDs</b> element, but not both.</p>

ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
<b>AdditionalMainOSFreeSectorsRequest</b>	<p>Optional. This value specifies the number of sectors to add to the pool of storage reserved by the OS for future updates. There is no guarantee that the sectors specified by using the <b>AdditionalMainOSFreeSectorsRequest</b> element will always be available for OEM-specific updates; the sectors are instead added to a single pool of storage that is reserved for all updates from Microsoft and OEMs.</p>
<b>MainOSRTCDataReservedSectors</b>	<p>Optional. This value specifies the number of sectors to add to the pool of storage reserved by the OS for use by runtime configuration data during backup and restore operations. Up to 100 MB can be reserved.</p> <p>This following example demonstrates how to reserve 50 MB.</p> <pre>&lt;MainOSRTCDataReservedSectors&gt;102400&lt;/MainOSRTCDataReservedSectors&gt;</pre>
<b>CompressedPartitions</b>	<p>Optional. Use this element to enable CompactOS in your mobile image.</p> <p>This element contains one or more child <b>Name</b> elements that specify which partitions to compress. Currently, the only supported partition is the Main OS partition, and the only supported value under this element is <b>MainOS</b>, as shown in the example below.</p> <pre>&lt;CompressedPartitions&gt;   &lt;Name&gt;MainOS&lt;/Name&gt; &lt;/CompressedPartitions&gt;</pre> <p><b>Important</b> The host computer where the image is created must be running Windows 10. You can also create the image on a host computer running Windows 8.1 or Windows Server 2012 R2 with <a href="#">KB3066427</a> installed.</p>

The following example demonstrates an OEMDevicePlatform.xml file.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<OEMDevicePlatform xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
 xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
 xmlns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/embedded/2004/10/ImageUpdate">
 <MinSectorCount>20971520</MinSectorCount>
 <DevicePlatformID>Contoso.ContosoFamily.ContosoDevice.V1</DevicePlatformID>
 <AdditionalMainOSFreeSectorsRequest>204800</AdditionalMainOSFreeSectorsRequest>
</OEMDevicePlatform>
```

## Creating the package

To create a package that includes the OEMDevicePlatform.xml file, follow the guidance in [Creating packages](#). The following example demonstrates a device platform XML file that specifies a single device platform ID.

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<Package xmlns="urn:Microsoft.WindowsPhone/PackageSchema.v8.00"
 Owner="OEMName" OwnerType="OEM" Component="OEMDevicePlatform"
 ReleaseType="Production" Platform="DeviceName">
 <Components>
 <OSComponent>
 <Files>
 <File Source="OEMDevicePlatform.xml" DestinationDir="$(runtime.windows)\ImageUpdate"
 Name="OEMDevicePlatform.xml"/>
 </Files>
 </OSComponent>
 </Components>
</Package>

```

Note the following details concerning this example:

- Be sure to replace the "OEMName" and "DeviceName" entries with appropriate values.
- The `$(runtime.windows)` string in the path for the **DestinationDir** attribute is a globally defined macro. The **DestinationDir** path must start with a globally defined macro for a directory. For more information about the **DestinationDir** attribute, see [Specifying files and registry entries in a package project file](#). For more information about macros, see [Primary elements and attributes of a package project file](#).

### Including the device platform package in the image

After the device platform package is created, it must be specified using the OEMDevicePlatformPackages element in a feature manifest file. For more information, see [Feature manifest file contents](#).

## Validating the device platform information before flashing an image to a device

To help ensure that an image about to be flashed to a device was actually designed for that device, the flashing tool set created by OEMs should check the *Manufacturer*, *Family*, and *Product Name* SMBIOS system information structure values on the device and compare these values against the *Manufacturer.Family.Product Name* portion of the **DevicePlatformID** string in the device platform package. The flashing tool should proceed with the flashing process only if these values match. The flashing tool can optionally verify that the *Version* value also matches, but this is not required. For more information, see [Developing custom OEM flashing tools](#).

By default, the device-side UEFI flashing application provided by Microsoft validates that the device platform information in SMBIOS matches the device platform information in the image. For more information, see [Use the flashing tools provided by Microsoft](#).

When it is necessary to migrate a phone to a new set of device platform values, Microsoft recommends the following process:

- Build a transition image that contains the new SMBIOS values but still references the old **DevicePlatformID** string in the device platform package.
- Flash this image to the phone. This process overwrites the SMBIOS values on the phone with the new SMBIOS values.
- In the image definition, update the **DevicePlatformID** string in the device platform package to match the new SMBIOS values. This enables the image to be flashed to the phone.

## Related topics

[Developing custom OEM flashing tools](#)

Use the flashing tools provided by Microsoft

# Sign a full flash update (FFU) image

7/13/2017 • 5 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You must cryptographically sign an FFU image before you can deploy it to a device. This step is required to help prevent tampering and malicious attacks. You can only flash images to a Windows 10 Mobile device after they are properly signed.

The OEM must sign the FFU image using a certificate that chains to the UEFI PK boot key that an OEM provisions.

During development and testing, a test certificate is used to sign the FFU image instead of a retail certificate. Use the secure boot test tool to provision the appropriate test certificates to the device

For retail phones, retail certificates are provisioned on the device using retail secure boot tools.

## Test signing images using Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer (ICD)

After you use the secure boot test tool to provision the appropriate test certificates to a phone, you can use the Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer (ICD) to generate test signed images. Windows ICD will automatically sign images using the correct test certificates. This is the recommended process, as it is the easiest method to prepare properly signed images. For more information, see [Windows ICD](#).

## Retail signing FFU images

Before images can be shipped on a retail device, they must be signed by Microsoft. Use the process described in this section to create a retail signed image FFU file that can be flashed to retail devices.

1. Before you can sign binaries, you must first install the test OEM certificates on the PC by following the steps in [Set up the signing environment](#).
2. Add the directory for the sign.cmd script that is located in %WPDKCONTENTROOT%\tools\bin\i386 to your path using the path command.

```
C:\> PATH = %PATH%;%WPDKCONTENTROOT%\Tools\bin\I386
```

3. Open a developer prompt with administrator rights in the directory that contains the output from the image generation process.
4. Confirm that you have the latest version of the kit that includes updated versions of imagesigner.exe and imagecommon.dll by typing the following command. Confirm that the truncate option is displayed.

```
C:\> ImageSigner /?
Usage:
 imagesigner sign <FFU> <catalog file>
 imagesigner getcatalog <FFU> <catalog file>
 imagesigner truncate <FFU> <truncated FFU>
```

If you do not have a recent version of the kit that includes the updated ImageSigner, download and install the latest kit.

5. Extract the first one MB of the FFU image which contains the FFU catalog and associated metadata using the truncate option.

```
C:\> ImageSigner TRUNCATE OEM.ffu OEM.trunc
```

6. Extract the catalog from the truncated FFU image in Step 5.

```
C:\> ImageSigner GETCATALOG OEM.trunc OEM.cat
Platform ID: <OEMID>.QC8960.P728
Successfully extracted catalog.
C:\>
```

7. Validate that the <OEMID> returned in Step 6 is identical to the OEMID assigned to you by Microsoft.
8. Create and submit a TFS ticket to the Microsoft Service Desk to sign the FFU catalog. Ensure that you attach the truncated FFU image that you created in Step 4.
  - a. Open an *Update* type ticket.
  - b. For the ticket title, enter *FFU Catalog Signing Request from <OEMID>*. Specify your OEM ID in the ticket tile where <OEMID> is shown.
  - c. Set the **Category** to *Ingestion and Publishing*.
  - d. Set the **Issue Type** to *New*.
9. Microsoft will process the request and resolve the ticket back to the OEM. Within the resolved ticket, Microsoft will include a retail signed version of the FFU catalog extracted from the FFU truncated image attached to the original ticket. For this example, assume that Microsoft returns the signed FFU catalog named OEM.cat.
10. Sign the FFU with the retail Microsoft signed catalog file using ImageSigner.

```
C:\> ImageSigner SIGN OEM.ffu OEM.cat
```

11. Flash the retail signed retail image on to a device and verify that it behaves as expected.

```
C:\> FFUTool -flash OEM.ffu
```

12. After the retail signed image has been tested it can be used to flash to retail devices. For more information see [Flashing tools](#) and [Use the flashing tools provided by Microsoft](#).

**Important**

Secure all of the retail signed binaries using industry best practices.

## Test signing images manually

If your development environment includes work outside of Windows ICD, you can manually sign images using sign.cmd. After the test certificate has been provisioned on the device using the secure boot test tool, you can use the /pk option of the sign.cmd tool to sign images, by completing the following steps.

1. Before you can sign binaries, you must first install the test OEM certificates on the PC by following the steps in [Set up the signing environment](#).
2. Add the directory for the sign.cmd script that is located in %WSDKCONTENTROOT%\tools\bin\i386 to your path using the path command.

```
C:\> PATH = %PATH%;%WPDKCONTENTROOT%\Tools\bin\I386
```

3. Open a developer prompt with administrator rights in the directory that contains the output from the image generation process.
4. Extract the catalog of the unsigned FFU file.

```
C:\> ImageSigner GETCATALOG TestSigned.FFU TestSigned.Cat
```

5. Sign the catalog using the /pk option.

```
C:\> Set SIGN_OEM=1
C:\> Sign.cmd /pk TestSigned.cat
```

6. Sign the FFU with the signed catalog file using ImageSigner.

```
C:\> ImageSigner SIGN TestSigned.FFU TestSigned.Cat
```

## Creating custom signed images

### Note

Some OEMs may want to use custom keys to manage images. This option is more complex and is not recommended.

When an image is created, an associated catalog file is also created. This catalog file is signed and then used by the ImageSigner tool to sign the FFU image. Sign the .cat file with a certificate that chains to the UEFI boot keys that are provisioned by the OEM. Different certificates are used for test and retail signing.

Sign the catalog file using an appropriate certificate by performing the following steps.

1. Open a developer prompt with administrator rights in the directory that contains the output from the image generation process. For more information, see [Building an image using ImgGen.cmd](#).
2. Test sign a catalog file named `TestRetailSigned.cat` using a certificate named `TestCertName.pfx` by typing the following command.

```
C:\> SignTool sign /f TestCertName.pfx TestRetailSigned.cat
```

### Important

You should only use the signtool.exe with the local file `/f` option internally in a development test environment. When a hardware security modules (HSM) is used, the `/csp` option is used to specify the cryptographic service provider (CSP) that contains the private key container. You should follow industry best practices when signing image update packages for final distribution.

3. Create a signed .ffu file from the unsigned .ffu file and the matching signed .cat file using ImageSigner.exe tool.

```
C:\> ImageSigner SIGN TestRetailSigned.FFU TestRetailSigned.Cat
```

## ImageSigner syntax reference

```
ImageSigner {SIGN|GETCATALOG|TRUNCATE} FFUfile CatalogFile|TruncatedFFU
```

- **SIGN** – The **SIGN** action is used for signing an FFU file.
- **GETCATALOG** – The **GETCATALOG** action extracts a catalog from an FFU file and writes it to a catalog file. This option can be used to determine if an FFU was prepared properly, by examining the extracted catalog file by using file properties or tools such as SignTool.
- **TRUNCATE** – The truncate action is used to create a truncated FFU.
- *FFUfile* – The path to the FFU image file.
- *CatalogFile* – The path to the catalog file.
- *TruncatedFFU* – The path to the truncated FFU file.

## Related topics

[Building a phone image using ImgGen.cmd](#)

# Use the flashing tools provided by Microsoft

7/13/2017 • 7 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Microsoft provides a tool set for flashing images to devices. This tool set includes ffutool.exe, a command-line tool that runs on the development computer, and ffuloader.efi, a device-side UEFI flashing application. This topic describes how to set up your device and development computer to use this tool set, and provides usage instructions.

## Important

- In Windows 10, version 1607, ffutool.exe is installed by the Assessment and Deployment Kit (ADK). In earlier versions of Windows 10, ffutool.exe is installed by the Windows Driver Kit (WDK), Enterprise WDK (EWDK), or Windows Hardware Lab Kit (HLK).
- The device-side UEFI flashing application from Microsoft is automatically included in all images. This application must be included in all retail devices.
- For flashing images to devices during manufacturing, OEMs can build their own flashing tools by using the information provided in [Developing custom OEM flashing tools](#) or by using ffutool.exe. If you use ffutool to flash your image, it might be slower than other flashing tools.

## Initial device-side setup

To prepare a device for flashing with a Windows 10 Mobile image, perform the following steps:

1. Use tools provided by the SoC vendor to get a UEFI onto any device that needs to be flashed. Devices must be bootable at least to the UEFI for flashing to work.

Typically, this is performed with the eMMC software downloader. This UEFI should be the same UEFI that is included in device images.

2. After a bootable UEFI is in place, the flashing application (ffuloader.efi) and supporting simple I/O driver (efisimpleio.dll) must be added to the device and run on boot. To do this, run the apply-ffubinaries.bat script while the device is connected to the development computer. All of these files are provided in the kit in %ProgramFiles(x86)%\Windows Kits\10\Tools\bin\i386.

The apply-ffubinaries.bat script copies ffuloader.efi and efisimpleio.dll to the root of the ESP directory on the device and sets up the boot configuration database to immediately enter flashing mode on boot. This script requires bcdedit.exe in the path.

## Note

These steps only need to be performed once on each device. After these steps are completed, you will be able to flash different images to the device.

## Host-side setup

Flashing on the host side is performed by using a connection established with WinUSB, the Microsoft generic USB device driver. The necessary drivers are included by default in Windows 8 and later.

In Windows 7, the necessary drivers can be installed from Windows Update. To configure a Windows 7 computer to install the necessary drivers:

1. Click Start.

2. Type **Device Installation Settings**.
3. Select **Yes, do this automatically (recommended)**.
4. Click **Save Changes**.

## Flashing procedure

After the device-side and host-side setup is complete, perform the following steps to flash a device:

1. Boot the device into the FFU download mode while it is connected to the host computer. There are several ways to force the device into the FFU download mode during boot:
  - Include the Microsoft.BCD.Lab.spkg package in your image by specifying the **LABIMAGE** optional feature when generating the test image. When this package is included in the test image, the device automatically enters the FFU download mode when it is booted. For more information about generating an image, see [Building a phone image using ImgGen.cmd](#).
  - To force the device into the FFU download mode manually, press and release the power button to boot the device, and then immediately press and hold the volume up button. This option is available only after an initial FFU has been flashed to the device.
2. Run ffutool.exe from the command line to flash an image. This program is in %ProgramFiles(x86)%\Windows Kits\10\Tools\bin\i386. The following is a usage example.

```
ffutool -flash <FFU file>
```

The following table describes the command-line parameters for ffutool.exe.

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
<b>-flash FFU file</b>	Specifies the path to the FFU file to be flashed to the device.
<b>-skip</b>	For devices that include the <b>LABIMAGE</b> optional feature to automatically boot into the FFU download mode, this parameter boots into the main OS (skipping the FFU download mode).

You can flash more than one device at a time by using ffutool.exe. To do this, make sure that all devices are connecting before running ffutool.exe. Also, we recommend that you use a USB card that contains a dedicated root hub per port so an issue flashing one device does not affect all devices.

### Note

Flashing speed will decrease as you add devices.

## Validations performed by the Microsoft flashing tool

Before flashing an image, the device-side UEFI flashing application provided by Microsoft performs the following validations on the image:

- The application validates the image signatures against the Platform Key (PK) certificate and the Microsoft Windows Phone Production PCA 2012 certificate (for retail images) or Microsoft Test Root Authority certificate (for non-retail images).
- The application validates the hashes of each chunk of data in the image against the table of hashes signed

by the catalog file.

- The application validates that the image supports the current device platform. To perform this validation, the application compares several values in the SMBIOS system information structure with corresponding values in the device platform package. These checks help to ensure that an image can be flashed to a particular device only if it was built for the corresponding device platform. More details about these checks are provided below.

### Device platform validation checks

To validate that the image supports the current device platform before flashing, the application performs the following tasks:

1. It retrieves the **DevicePlatformID** string from the device platform package in the image that is being flashed. For more information about this string, see [Set device platform information](#).
2. If the string has the format *Manufacturer.Family.Product Name.Version* and all four values in the string match the corresponding *Manufacturer*, *Family*, *Product Name*, and *Version* SMBIOS values on the device, the platform validation succeeds and the flashing operation continues.
3. If the string has the format *Manufacturer.Family.Product Name* and all three values in the string match the corresponding *Manufacturer*, *Family*, and *Product Name* SMBIOS values on the device, the platform validation succeeds and the flashing operation continues.
4. Otherwise, the platform validation fails and the image is not flashed to the device.

In a non-retail image, OEMs can disable the device platform validation for flashing by adding the DISABLE\_FFU\_PLAT\_ID\_CHECK feature to the OEMInput file that is used to generate the image.

#### Important

The device platform validation for flashing must not be disabled in retail images.

## FFU tool error codes

When using the FFU tool to flash an image to your device, you may encounter an error as shown below.

```
Error: Failed to flash with device error { 0x18, 0x0, 0x0, 0x2, 0xa, 0x5 }
```

The first hexadecimal number is an event code that indicates the type of flashing failure. The following table provides a description of the FFU tool flashing errors.

#### Common errors

ERROR CODE	DESCRIPTION
0xC	<p>While applying the image to disk, a read failed to return all of the blocks specified in the current data descriptor.</p> <p>This error is typically caused by a corrupted image. The image will normally need to be rebuilt. For more information, see <a href="#">Building a phone image using ImgGen.cmd</a>.</p>

ERROR CODE	DESCRIPTION
0x18	<p>While initializing hash checks, a catalog signature check failed.</p> <p>When this error occurs, it is typically related to the signing of the image. For more information, see <a href="#">Sign a full flash update (FFU) image</a>.</p>
0x1C	<p>One or more write descriptors refer to invalid disk locations.</p> <p>This error typically indicates that the image was built for a phone with more storage than the current phone actually has. Either locate the proper image or update the image that you have by reducing the MinSectorCount specified in OEMDevicePlatform.xml. For more information, see <a href="#">Set device platform information</a>.</p>

## Additional errors

ERROR CODE	DESCRIPTION
0x8	An invalid binary manifest header was read while preparing to flash the device.
0x9	The application failed to allocate enough memory to copy the disk write descriptor table.
0xB	Before writing data, the flashing application failed to read all the disk write descriptors.
0xD	While applying the image to disk, a block write operation failed.
0xE	A packet read by the flashing application contained an invalid checksum.
0xF	While preparing to flash the image, the flashing application was unable to read the full security header.
0x10	While preparing to flash the image, the flashing application read an invalid security header.
0x11	While preparing to flash the image, the flashing application failed to read the expected amount of padding after the security header.
0x12	While preparing to flash the image, the flashing application read an invalid image header.

ERROR CODE	DESCRIPTION
0x13	While preparing to flash the image, the flashing application failed to read the expected amount of padding after the image header.
0x14	While preparing to apply the image to disk, the block flasher failed to buffer enough bytes in the stream to flash safely.
0x15	While applying the image to disk, the block flasher reached the end of the data stream unexpectedly. This indicates an image was built incorrectly.
0x16	The platform ID specified in the image does not match the ID of the device to be flashed.
0x17	While reading image data, a hash check failed.
0x1A	Failed to acquire a handle to the UEFI firmware de-synchronization event.
0x1B	Failed to query the BCD for the platform ID check settings.
0x1D	The image does not have Reset Protection enabled or an unsupported Reset Protection image was used.
0x20	The image cannot be flashed on removable media.
0x21	Cannot use an optimized flashing method.

## Related topics

[Building and flashing images](#)

# IUTool.exe: Update packages on a device

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The Windows Driver Kit (WDK) includes a tool for updating packages on a device or to add a new package to a device. (IUTool.exe). This tool is available under %WPDKCONTENTROOT%\Tools\bin\i386.

## Using IUTool.exe to update packages on a device

IUTool.exe must be used in a command-line window that is opened as an administrator. The command-line syntax for IUTool.exe is the following.

```
IUTool -p <path to packages>
```

The following table describes the command-line parameters for IUTool.exe.

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
<i>-p path to packages</i>	<p>Specifies one or more packages to update on the device or to add to the device. The path to packages parameter can have the following formats:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• To update or add a single package, specify the full path to the package on the development computer.</li><li>• To update or add multiple packages, specify a semicolon-delimited list of packages on the development computer. For example:</li></ul> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-left: 20px;"><pre>IUTool -p C:\ContosoPackages\Contoso.Device.SampleDriver.spkg;C:\ContosoPackages\Contoso.Device.SampleApplication.spkg</pre></div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• To update or add an entire directory of packages, specify the path to the directory. For example:</li></ul> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-left: 20px;"><pre>IUTool -p C:\ContosoPackages</pre></div>

### Package versioning

If the specified package already exists on the device, the new version of the package must have a higher version than the package currently on the device or the update will fail. To specify the version for a package, use the /version command-line parameter for PkgGen.exe when generating the package. For more information, see [Command-line arguments for package generator](#).

### Using GetDULogs.exe to get package update logs from a device

Use GetDULogs.exe to get package update logs from a device.

```
GetDULogs -o <output file path>
```

For more info, see [GetDULogs: Get package update logs](#).

# IUTool error codes

7/12/2017 • 8 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The following are error codes from IUTool.exe. For more info, see [IUTool.exe: Update packages on a device](#).

ERROR CODE	ERROR NAME	ADDITIONAL NOTES
0x00000000	SUCCESS	Success (no error)
0x80004001	E_NOTIMPL	
0x80004002	E_NOINTERFACE	
0x80004003	E_POINTER	
0x80004004	E_ABORT	
0x80004005	E_FAIL	
0x8000FFFF	E_UNEXPECTED	
0x80040154	E_CLASSNOTREG	Class not registered
0x80070002	ERROR_FILE_NOT_FOUND	
0x80070003	E_PATH_NOT_FOUND	
0x80070005	E_ACCESSDENIED	
0x80070006	E_HANDLE	
0x80070008	ERROR_NOT_ENOUGH_MEMORY	
0x80070009	ERROR_INVALID_BLOCK	
0x8007000B	ERROR_BAD_FORMAT	
0x8007000D	ERROR_INVALID_DATA	

ERROR CODE	ERROR NAME	ADDITIONAL NOTES
0x8007000E	ERROR_OUTOFMEMORY	
0x80070013	ERROR_WRITE_PROTECT	
0x80070015	ERROR_NOT_READY	
0x80070017	ERROR_CRC	
0x80070019	ERROR_SEEK	
0x8007001F	ERROR_GEN_FAILURE	
0x80070020	ERROR_SHARING_VIOLATION	
0x80070021	ERROR_LOCK_VIOLATION	
0x80070026	ERROR_HANDLE_EOF	
0x80070032	ERROR_NOT_SUPPORTED	
0x80070057	E_INVALIDARG	An argument does not meet the contract of the method
0x80070070	ERROR_DISK_FULL	Free more space
0x80070076	ERROR_INVALID_VERIFY_SWITCH	
0x8007007A	ERROR_INSUFFICIENT_BUFFER	
0x8007007B	ERROR_INVALID_NAME	
0x8007007E	ERROR_MOD_NOT_FOUND	
0x8007007F	ERROR_PROC_NOT_FOUND	
0x80070098	ERROR_TOO_MANY_MUXWAITERS	
0x800700B7	ERROR_ALREADY_EXISTS	

ERROR CODE	ERROR NAME	ADDITIONAL NOTES
0x800700C1	ERROR_BAD_EXE_FORMAT	Normally an incorrect USS detection.dll
0x800700CE	ERROR_FILENAME_EXCED_RANGE	
0x80070160	ERROR_FAIL_RESTART	
0x800701e3	ERROR_DEVICE_HARDWARE_ERROR	Free up eMMC space for update. There is something wrong with SD Card, or Timed out waiting for SD Card.
0x80070216	ERROR_ARITHMETIC_OVERFLOW	
0x80070241	ERROR_INVALID_IMAGE_HASH	
0x800703E5	ERROR_IO_PENDING	
0x800703FA	ERROR_KEY_DELETED	
0x80070422	ERROR_SERVICE_DISABLED	
0x80070423	ERROR_CIRCULAR_DEPENDENCY	
0x80070424	ERROR_SERVICE_DOES_NOT_EXIST	
0x80070426	ERROR_SERVICE_NOT_ACTIVE	
0x80070428	ERROR_EXCEPTION_IN_SERVICE	
0x8007042B	ERROR_PROCESS_ABORTED	
0x8007042E	ERROR_SERVICE_START_HANG	
0x80070435	ERROR_SERVICE_NEVER_STARTED	No attempts to start the service have been made since the last boot
0x80070459	ERROR_NO_UNICODE_TRANSLATION	

ERROR CODE	ERROR NAME	ADDITIONAL NOTES
0x80070486	ERROR_NO_MORE_USER_HANDLES	
0x80070490	ERROR_NOT_FOUND	This can happen if there is leftover registration information on the PC. To resolve this issue, remove all registered mobile devices from the Devices and Printers control panel.
0x800704C7	ERROR_CANCELLED	
0x800704EC	ERROR_ACCESS_DISABLED_BY_POLICY	
0x80070522	ERROR_PRIVILEGE_NOT_HELD	
0x80070525	ERROR_NO_SUCH_USER	
0x8007053C	ERROR_BAD_INHERITANCE_ACL	
0x8007054E	ERROR_INTERNAL_DB_CORRUPTION	
0x80070570	ERROR_FILE_CORRUPT	
0x80070571	ERROR_DISK_CORRUPT	
0x800705AA	ERROR_NO_SYSTEM_RESOURCES	
0x800705B4	E_TIMEOUT	This operation returned because the timeout period expired.
0x8007065D	ERROR_DATATYPE_MISMATCH	
0x800706B5	RPC_S_UNKNOWN_IF	
0x800706BA	RPC_S_SERVER_UNAVAILABLE	
0x800706BE	RPC_S_CALL_FAILED	
0x800706BF	RPC_S_CALL_FAILED_DNE	

ERROR CODE	ERROR NAME	ADDITIONAL NOTES
0x800706D9	EPT_S_NOT_REGISTERED	
0x80072EE2	ERROR_WINHTTP_TIMEOUT	
0x80072EE4	ERROR_WINHTTP_INTERNAL_ERROR	
0x80072EE5	ERROR_WINHTTP_INVALID_URL	
0x80072EE6	ERROR_WINHTTP_UNRECOGNIZED_SCHEME	
0x80072EE7	ERROR_WINHTTP_NAME_NOT_RESOLVED	
0x80072EE9	ERROR_WINHTTP_INVALID_OPTION	
0x80072EEC	ERROR_WINHTTP_SHUTDOWN	
0x80072EEF	ERROR_WINHTTP_LOGIN_FAILURE	
0x80072EF1	ERROR_WINHTTP_OPERATION_CAN_CELLED	
0x80072EF3	ERROR_WINHTTP_INCORRECT_HANDLE_STATE	
0x80072EFD	ERROR_WINHTTP_CANNOT_CONNECT	
0x80072EFE	ERROR_WINHTTP_CONNECTION_ABORTED	
0x80072EFF	ERROR_WINHTTP_CONNECTION_RESET	
0x80072F05	ERROR_WINHTTP_SEC_CERT_DATE_INVALID	
0x80072F06	ERROR_WINHTTP_SEC_CERT_CN_INVALID	

ERROR CODE	ERROR NAME	ADDITIONAL NOTES
0x80072F0C	ERROR_WINHTTP_CLIENT_AUTH_CONTEXT_NEEDED	
0x80072F0D	ERROR_WINHTTP_INVALID_CA	
0x80072F30	ERROR_WINHTTP_NO_CM_CONNECTION	
0x80072F76	ERROR_WINHTTP_HEADER_NOT_FOUND	
0x80072F78	ERROR_WINHTTP_INVALID_SERVER_RESPONSE	
0x80072F7A	ERROR_WINHTTP_INVALID_QUERY_REQUEST	
0x80072F7C	ERROR_WINHTTP_REDIRECT_FAILED	
0x80072F7D	ERROR_WINHTTP_SECURE_CHANNEL_ERROR	
0x80072F89	ERROR_WINHTTP_SECURE_INVALID_CERT	
0x80072F8F	ERROR_WINHTTP_SECURE_FAILURE	
0x80072F98	ERROR_WINHTTP_RESPONSE_DRAIN_OVERFLOW	
0x80073B01	ERROR_MUI_FILE_NOT_LOADED	
0x80090305	ERROR_BAD_ACCESSOR_FLAGS	
0x80092002	CRYPT_E_BAD_ENCODE	
0x80092003	CRYPT_E_FILE_ERROR	
0x80096004	TRUST_E_CERT_SIGNATURE	

ERROR CODE	ERROR NAME	ADDITIONAL NOTES
0x80096005	TRUST_E_TIME_STAMP	
0x80096010	TRUST_E_BAD_DIGEST	
0x800B0003	TRUST_E SUBJECT FORM UNKNOWN	Most certificate issues can be fixed in server publishing, unless the user has changed anything on the device side.
0x800B0100	TRUST_E_NOSIGNATURE	
0x800B0101	CERT_E_EXPIRED	
0x800B010A	CERT_E_CHAINING	
0x800B010B	TRUST_E_FAIL	
0x801881C0	DUA_ERR_BASE	This is a DUA error base and not a real error code.
0x801881C3	DUA_E_NEWER_UPDATE_EXISTS	An update with a higher revision number exists.
0x801881C4	DUA_E_UPDATE_ALREADY_IN_EVALUATION	An update is being updated while asking for evaluation.
0x801881C5	DUA_E_DEPENDENT_UPDATE_MISSING	A dependent update is missing.
0x801881C6	DUA_E_DUPLICATE_ATTRIBUTE	An attribute is specified more than once.
0x801881C7	DUA_E_MISSING_ATTRIBUTE	A required attribute is not found.
0x801881C9	DUA_E_INVALIDATTRIBUTEVALUE	Attribute value is invalid.
0x801881CA	DUA_E_XMLSTRINGTOOLONG	String/text is too long
0x801881CB	DUA_E_ATTRIBUTE_MISMATCH	Attribute mismatch

ERROR CODE	ERROR NAME	ADDITIONAL NOTES
0x801881CD	DUA_E_OUT_OF_DISK_SPACE	Not enough disk space for the operation.
0x801881CF	DUA_E_CONNECTION_MANAGER	Call to Connection Manager API failed.
0x801881D0	DUA_E_INVALID_HASH	Given hash is not match to the hash generated from file.
0x801881D1	DUA_E_INVALID_EULA	An invalid or missing EULA was detected.
0x801881D2	DUA_E_INVALID_EXTENDED_UPDA TE_INFO	Invalid extended update info was detected.
0x801881D3	DUA_E_MAX_SYNCUPDATES_CALLS	SyncUpdate call reaches the maximum scan limit.
0x801881D4	DUA_E_AUTO_SCAN_OFF	Scan cannot run because auto scan is turned off.
0x801881D5	DUA_E_XML_CONTENT_TOO_LARG E	XML content in string is larger than maximum allowed.
0x801881D6	DUA_E_SDCARD_REMOVED	An SD card was removed during update after the download was started to the SD card.
0x801881D7	DUA_E_SDCARD_DISABLED	The SD card is disabled by policy.
0x801881D8	DUA_E_SDCARD_HWFAILURE	The SD card hardware failed.
0x801881E1	DUA_E_SOAPFAULT_UNKNOWN	Unknown SOAP fault
0x801881E2	DUA_E_SOAPFAULT_COOKIEEXPIRE D	CookieExpired SOAP fault
0x801881E3	DUA_E_SOAPFAULT_INVALIDCOOK IE	InvalidCookie SOAP fault
0x801881E4	DUA_E_SOAPFAULT_CONFIGCHAN GED	ConfigChanged SOAP fault

ERROR CODE	ERROR NAME	ADDITIONAL NOTES
0x801881E5	DUA_E_SOAPFAULT_SERVERCHANNEL	ServerChanged SOAP fault
0x801881E6	DUA_E_SOAPFAULT_INVALIDAUTHORIZATIONCOOKIE	InvalidAuthorizationCookie SOAP fault
0x801881E7	DUA_E_SOAPFAULT_REGISTRATIONREQUIRED	RegistrationRequired SOAP fault
0x801881E8	DUA_E_SOAPFAULT_INTERNALSERVERERROR	InternalServerError SOAP fault
0x801881E9	DUA_E_SOAPFAULT_INVALIDpMETERS	Invalidpmeters SOAP fault
0x801881EA	DUA_E_SOAPFAULT_REGISTRATIONNOTREQUIRED	RegistrationNotRequired SOAP fault
0x801881EB	DUA_E_SOAPFAULT_SERVERBUSY	ServerBusy SOAP fault
0x801881EC	DUA_E_SOAPFAULT_FILELOCATIONCHANGED	FileLocationChanged SOAP fault
0x801881EE	DUA_E_SOAPFAULT_MALFORMEDMESSAGE	Malformed SOAP message
0x801881EF	DUA_E_CABDOWNLOAD_HTTPSTATUSFAILED	Failed to download content from the server.
0x80188200	DUA_ERR_REPORTINGERROR_BASE	Definition. The error code itself actually not used.
0x80188201	DUA_E_REPORTINGFAILED	ReportEventBatch web service call returned FALSE
0x80188203	DUA_E_INVALIDSAMPLINGRATE	Sampling rate in redirect cab is zero.
0x80188210	DUA_ERR_CLIENTERROR_BASE	Definition; the error code itself actually not used.
0x80188215	DUA_E_CLIENT_INVALIDBUTTONID	The invalid button ID is used.

ERROR CODE	ERROR NAME	ADDITIONAL NOTES
0x80188216	DUA_E_CLIENT_REGKEY_INVALID	Registry key value is not valid.
0x80188217	DUA_E_CLIENT_PLUGINID_NOT_FOUND	The plugin ID was not found.
0x80188220	DUA_ERR_INSTALLATION_BASE	Definition; the error code itself actually not used.
0x80188226	DUA_E_BATTERY_LOW	Cannot stage update because battery is low.
0x80188227	DUA_E_UPDATE_NOT_STAGED	Update not staged.
0x80188228	DUA_E_USS_UPDATE_FOUND	A USS update was detected
0x8018822A	DUA_E_INSTALL_INVALIDUPDATESSTATE	Update was not committed
0x8018822B	DUA_E_INSTALL_UNEXPECTED_COMMIT_RETURN	Image Update Commit API unexpectedly returned S_OK.
0x8018822C	DUA_E_UPDATE_NOT_COMMITED	Device rebooted before IU Commit was called.
0x8018822D	DUA_E_USS_UPDATE_FOUND_RESET_REQUIRED	A USS update was installed and a reboot is required for it to take effect.
0x80188230	DUA_ERR_DATA_MIGRATION_BASE	Definition; the error code itself actually not used.
0x80188231	DUA_E_COLD_BOOT_REQUIRED	A data migrator failed and requested a cold boot.
0x80188240	DUA_ERR_UPDATE_STORE_BASE	Definition; the error code itself actually not used.
0x80188241	DUA_E_UPDATE_NOT_FOUND	Update not found.
0x80188242	DUA_E_UPDATE_PROPERTY_NOT_FOUND	Update property not found.

ERROR CODE	ERROR NAME	ADDITIONAL NOTES
0x80188243	DUA_E_UPDATE_ALREADY_EXISTS	Update already exists.
0x80188244	DUA_E_EULA_ALREADY_EXISTS	EULA already exists
0x80188245	DUA_E_EULA_NOT_FOUND	EULA not found.
0x80188246	DUA_E_BUNDLE_NOT_FOUND	Bundle not found.
0x80188247	DUA_E_EXTENDED_PROPERTY_NOT_FOUND	Extended property not found.
0x80188248	DUA_E_GETEULA	GetEULAs call failed.
0x80188250	DUA_ERR_SESSION_BASE	Definition; the error code itself actually not used.
0x80188251	DUA_E_INVALID_SESSIONID	The specified DuaSessionID is not valid.
0x80188252	DUA_E_DIFF_SESSION_IN_PROGRESS	There is a DUA session already in progress with a different DuaSessionID.
0x80188253	DUA_E_NO_SESSION_IN_PROGRESS	There is no DUA session in progress.
0x80188254	DUA_E_CANNOT_CLOSE_SESSION	We cannot close this session because a client has successfully joined the current session.
0x80188255	DUA_E_ALL_RETRY_CONSUMED	All retries are consumed.
0x80188256	DUA_E_SERVICE_IS_SHUTTING_DOWN	Service is shutting down and requested operation can't be performed.
0x80188257	DUA_E_SESSION_TIMEDOUT	The active session has timed out.
0x80188260	DUA_E_DOWNLOAD_BASE	Definition; the error code itself actually not used.

ERROR CODE	ERROR NAME	ADDITIONAL NOTES
0x80188261	DUA_E_DOWNLOAD_NOT_CREATED	The download request has not been created.
0x80188262	DUA_E_DOWNLOAD_NOT_IDLE	Update Download Manager is not ready yet.
0x80188263	DUA_E_DOWNLOAD_USER_CANCELLED	Update Download is cancelled by user.
0x80188264	DUA_E_DOWNLOAD_NEEDUSERAGREE	Need user to agree to proceed with download.
0x80188265	DUA_E_DOWNLOAD_NEEDOVERCELLULAR	Need user agreement to download updates via cellular.
0x80188266	DUA_E_DOWNLOAD_USERPOSTPONE	User postponed download
0x80188267	DUA_E_DOWNLOAD_ENGINEEXIT	Download handler is stopped to wait for BTS status due to engine exit.
0x80188269	DUA_E_DOWNLOAD_OUT_OF_DISK_SPACE_NEED_SDCARD	Not enough internal space for download and the SD slot is empty.
0x8018826A	DUA_E_DOWNLOAD_OUT_OF_DISK_SPACE_BOTH_STORAGE	Not enough space for download on both internal storage and SD slot.
0x80188270	DUA_E_CONNECTION_BASE	Definition; the error code itself actually not used.
0x80188271	DUA_E_NO_CONNECTIONS	Connection Manager could not find a candidate connection.
0x80188272	DUA_E_CONNECTION_NOT_RELEASED	Connection Manager failed because an acquired connection was not released.
0x80188273	DUA_E_CONNECTION_ACQUIRE_FAILED	Connection Manager failed to acquire a connection.
0x80188288	DUA_E_DUAAPI_BASE	Definition; the error code itself actually not used.

ERROR CODE	ERROR NAME	ADDITIONAL NOTES
0x80188289	DUA_E_DUAAPISHELLNOTREADY	WNF_SHL_START_READY is not ready yet.
0x801882C0	CABAPI_ERR_BASE; BTS_ERR_BASE	Base for CAPAPI; BTS errors.
0x801882C1	E_CABAPI_NOT_CABINET	BTS_E_PER_APP_REQUEST_LIMIT_REACHED
0x801882C2	E_CABAPI_UNKNOWN_FILE	BTS_E_UNABLE_TO_ENQUEUE_REQUEST
0x801882CB	BTS_E_HTTP_PROVIDER_ERROR	BTS_E_HTTP_PROVIDER_ERROR
0x801882CC	BTS_E_HTTP_PROVIDER_ERROR_RANGE RELATED .	BTS_E_HTTP_PROVIDER_ERROR_RANGE RELATED .
0x801882D1	E_CABAPI_FCI_OPEN_SRC	BTS_E_HTTP_PROVIDER_ERROR_NETWORK
0x801882D2	E_CABAPI_FCI_READ_SRC	BTS_E_HTTP_PROVIDER_ERROR_DOWNLOAD_TRANSFER
0x801882D3	E_CABAPI_FCI_ALLOC_FAIL	BTS_E_HTTP_PROVIDER_ERROR_INVALIDID_pMETER.
0x801882D4	E_CABAPI_FCI_TEMP_FILE	BTS_W_TRANSFER_WAITING_BATTERY_SAVER_MODE
0x801882D5	E_CABAPI_FCI_BAD_COMPRESSION_TYPE	BTS_W_SHUTTING_DOWN
0x801882D6	E_CABAPI_FCI_CAB_FILE	BTS_E_API_FAILED_DUE_TO_SHUTDOWN
0x801882D7	E_CABAPI_FCI_USER_ABORT	FCI: aborted
0x801882D8	E_CABAPI_FCI_MCI_FAIL	FCI: Failure compressing data
0x801882D9	E_CABAPI_FCI_CAB_FORMAT_LIMIT	FCI: Data-size or file-count exceeded CAB format limits.
0x801882DA	E_CABAPI_FCI_INVALID_FILE_PATH	FCI: File path is empty or invalid

ERROR CODE	ERROR NAME	ADDITIONAL NOTES
0x801882DB	E_CABAPI_FCI_DUPLICATE_FILE	FCI: Either a file is being added twice to the CAB; or two source files have the same target path
0x801882DF	E_CABAPI_FCI_UNKNOWN	FCI: An unknown error.
0x801882E0	CABAPI_ERR_FDI_BASE	Definition; the error code itself actually not used.
0x801882E1	E_CABAPI_FDI_CABINET_NOT_FOUND	FDI: the cabinet file was not found.
0x801882E2	E_CABAPI_FDI_NOT_A_CABINET	FDI: The cabinet file does not have the correct format.
0x801882E3	E_CABAPI_FDI_UNKNOWN_CABINET_VERSION	FDI: The cabinet file has an unknown version number.
0x801882E4	E_CABAPI_FDI_CORRUPT_CABINET	FDI: The cabinet file is corrupt.
0x801882E5	E_CABAPI_FDI_ALLOC_FAIL	FDI: Insufficient memory.
0x801882E6	E_CABAPI_FDI_BAD_COMPR_TYPE	FDI: Unknown compression type used in the cabinet folder.
0x801882E7	E_CABAPI_FDI_MDI_FAIL	FDI: Failure decompressing data from the cabinet file.
0x801882E8	E_CABAPI_FDI_TARGET_FILE	Failure writing to the target file. This could be that the device is out of space.
0x801882E9	E_CABAPI_FDI_RESERVE_MISMATCH	FDI: The cabinets within a set do not have the same RESERVE sizes.
0x801882EA	E_CABAPI_FDI_WRONG_CABINET	FDI: The cabinet returned by fdintNEXT_CABINET is incorrect.
0x801882EB	E_CABAPI_FDI_USER_ABORT	FDI: FDI aborted.
0x801882EF	E_CABAPI_FDI_UNKNOWN	FDI: An unknown error.

ERROR CODE	ERROR NAME	ADDITIONAL NOTES
0x80188300	IMGUPD_ERROR_BASE	Definition; the error code itself actually not used.
0x80188301	E_BASE_PACKAGE_NOT_INSTALLED	The base package DSM file was not found in the DSM files store.
0x80188302	E_PACKAGE_ALREADY_INSTALLED	Package cannot be installed because it is already present on the image
0x80188303	E_NO_UPDATE_PATH_TO_TARGET	An update path to highest target version could not be found.
0x80188304	E_MULTIPLE_UPDATE_PATHS_FOUND	Multiple update paths to highest target version exist.
0x80188305	E_DUPLICATE_UPDATE_PACKAGE	Duplicate packages found in update set.
0x80188306	E_FILE_COLLISION	More than one package targeted for the same partition contained the same file
0x80188307	E_INVALID_PACKAGE	Package DSM; or contents are invalid
0x80188308	E_INSUFFICIENT_SPACE_FOR_UPDATE	Not enough space available in one or more partitions to complete update
0x80188309	E_REGISTRY_COLLISION	Two or more packages have registry settings that conflict
0x8018830A	E_INVALID_REGISTRY_FILE	A registry file included in the package is invalid
0x8018830B	E_DEPCRECATED1	Deprecated
0x8018830C	E_TARGET_NOT_APPLICABLE	This package has the target field set but this device is not part of any groups specified in the target.

ERROR CODE	ERROR NAME	ADDITIONAL NOTES
0x8018830D	E_PACKAGE_HIGHER_VERSION_INSTALLED	This package cannot be installed because a newer version is already installed on the device.
0x8018830E	E_REMOVAL_PACKAGE_CANNOT_TARGET_BINARY_PARTITION	This package is a removal package targeted to a binary partition Binary partition packages cannot be deleted.
0x8018830F	E_DIFF_SOURCEVERSION_DOES_NOT_MATCH	This package is a diff that targets a source version that is not the one on the device.
0x80188310	E_STAGED_FILE_NOT_FOUND	A file that was expected to be staged is missing from the staging area.
0x80188311	E_PACKAGE_TARGETS_WRONG_CPU	The device's CPU type does not match the package's targeted CPU.
0x80190190	HTTP_E_STATUS_BAD_REQUEST	BG_E_HTTP_ERROR_400
0x80190191	HTTP_E_STATUS_DENIED	BG_E_HTTP_ERROR_401
0x80190192	HTTP_E_STATUS_PAYMENT_REQ	BG_E_HTTP_ERROR_402
0x80190193	HTTP_E_STATUS_FORBIDDEN	BG_E_HTTP_ERROR_403
0x80190194	HTTP_E_STATUS_NOT_FOUND	BG_E_HTTP_ERROR_404
0x80190195	HTTP_E_STATUS_BAD_METHOD	BG_E_HTTP_ERROR_405
0x80190196	HTTP_E_STATUS_NONE_ACCEPTABLE	BG_E_HTTP_ERROR_406
0x80190197	HTTP_E_STATUS_PROXY_AUTH_REQ	BG_E_HTTP_ERROR_407
0x80190198	HTTP_E_STATUS_REQUEST_TIMEOUT	BG_E_HTTP_ERROR_408
0x80190199	HTTP_E_STATUS_CONFLICT	BG_E_HTTP_ERROR_409

ERROR CODE	ERROR NAME	ADDITIONAL NOTES
0x801901F4	HTTP_E_STATUS_SERVER_ERROR	BG_E_HTTP_ERROR_500
0x801901F5	HTTP_E_STATUS_NOT_SUPPORTED	BG_E_HTTP_ERROR_501
0x801901F6	HTTP_E_STATUS_BAD_GATEWAY	BG_E_HTTP_ERROR_502
0x801901F7	HTTP_E_STATUS_SERVICE_UNAVAIL	BG_E_HTTP_ERROR_503
0x801901F8	HTTP_E_STATUS_GATEWAY_TIMEOUT	BG_E_HTTP_ERROR_504
0x801901F9	HTTP_E_STATUS_VERSION_NOT_SUP	BG_E_HTTP_ERROR_505
0xC00CE01D	XML_E_INVALID_DECIMAL	
0xC00CE01E	XML_E_INVALID_HEXADECIMAL	
0xC00CE01F	XML_E_INVALID_UNICODE	
0xC00CE06E	XML_E_INVALIDENCODING	
0xC00CEE00	MX_E_MX	DUA_E_MALFORMEDXML
0xC00CEE01	MX_E_INPUTEND	
0xC00CEE02	MX_E_ENCODING	
0xC00CEE03	MX_E_ENCODINGSWITCH	
0xC00CEE04	MX_E_ENCODINGSIGNATURE	
0xC00CEE20	WC_E_WC	
0xC00CEE21	WC_E_WHITESPACE	
0xC00CEE22	WC_E_SEMICOLON	

ERROR CODE	ERROR NAME	ADDITIONAL NOTES
0xC00CEE23	WC_E_GREATERTHAN	
0xC00CEE24	WC_E_QUOTE	
0xC00CEE25	WC_E_EQUAL	
0xC00CEE26	WC_E_LESS THAN	
0xC00CEE27	WC_E_HEXDIGIT	
0xC00CEE28	WC_E_DIGIT	
0xC00CEE29	WC_E_LEFTBRACKET	
0xC00CEE2A	WC_E_LEFTPAREN	
0xC00CEE2B	WC_E_XMLCHARACTER	
0xC00CEE2C	WC_E_NAMECHARACTER	
0xC00CEE2D	WC_E_SYNTAX	
0xC00CEE2E	WC_E_CDSECT	
0xC00CEE2F	WC_E_COMMENT	
0xC00CEE30	WC_E_CONDSECT	
0xC00CEE31	WC_E_DECLATTLIST	
0xC00CEE32	WC_EDECLDOCTYPE	
0xC00CEE33	WC_E_DECLEMENT	
0xC00CEE34	WC_E_DECLEMENT	
0xC00CEE35	WC_E_DECLNOTATION	

ERROR CODE	ERROR NAME	ADDITIONAL NOTES
0xC00CEE36	WC_E_NDATA	
0xC00CEE37	WC_E_PUBLIC	
0xC00CEE38	WC_E_SYSTEM	
0xC00CEE39	WC_E_NAME	
0xC00CEE3A	WC_E_ROOTELEMENT	
0xC00CEE3B	WC_E_ELEMENTMATCH	
0xC00CEE3C	WC_E_UNIQUEATTRIBUTE	
0xC00CEE3D	WC_E_TEXTXMLDECL	
0xC00CEE3E	WC_E.LEADINGXML	
0xC00CEE3F	WC_E_TEXTDECL	
0xC00CEE40	WC_E_XMLDECL	
0xC00CEE41	WC_E_ENCNAME	
0xC00CEE42	WC_E_PUBLICID	
0xC00CEE43	WC_E_PESINTERNALSUBSET	
0xC00CEE44	WC_E_PESBETWEENDECLS	
0xC00CEE45	WC_E_NORECURSION	
0xC00CEE46	WC_E_ENTITYCONTENT	
0xC00CEE47	WC_E_UNDECLAREDENTITY	
0xC00CEE48	WC_E_PARSEDENTITY	

ERROR CODE	ERROR NAME	ADDITIONAL NOTES
0xC00CEE49	WC_E_NOEXTERNALENTITYREF	
0xC00CEE4A	WC_E_PI	
0xC00CEE4B	WC_E_SYSTEMID	
0xC00CEE4C	WC_E_QUESTIONMARK	
0xC00CEE4D	WC_E_CDSECTEND	
0xC00CEE4E	WC_EMOREDATA	
0xC00CEE4F	WC_E_DTDPROHIBITED	
0xC00CEE50	WC_E_INVALIDXMLSPACE	
0xC00CEE60	NC_E_NC	
0xC00CEE61	NC_E_QNAMECHARACTER	
0xC00CEE62	NC_E_QNAMECOLON	
0xC00CEE63	NC_E_NAMECOLON	
0xC00CEE64	NC_E_DECLAREDPREFIX	
0xC00CEE65	NC_E_UNDECLAREDPREFIX	
0xC00CEE66	NC_E_EMPTYURI	
0xC00CEE67	NC_E_XMLPREFIXRESERVED	
0xC00CEE68	NC_E_XMLNSPREFIXRESERVED	
0xC00CEE69	NC_E_XMLURIRESERVED	
0xC00CEE6A	NC_E_XMLNSURIRESERVED	

ERROR CODE	ERROR NAME	ADDITIONAL NOTES
0xC00CEE80	SC_E_SC	
0xC00CEE81	SC_E_MAXELEMENTDEPTH	
0xC00CEE82	SC_E_MAXENTITYEXPANSION	
0xC00CEF00	WR_E_WR	
0xC00CEF01	WR_E_NONWHITESPACE	
0xC00CEF02	WR_E_NS PREFIX DECLARED	
0xC00CEF03	WR_E_NS PREFIX WITH EMPTY NSURI	
0xC00CEF04	WR_E_DUPLICATEATTRIBUTE	
0xC00CEF05	WR_E_XMLNS PREFIX DECLARATION	
0xC00CEF06	WR_E_XMLPREFIXDECLARATION	
0xC00CEF07	WR_E_XMLURIDECLARATION	
0xC00CEF08	WR_E_XMLNSURIDICTION	
0xC00CEF09	WR_E_NAMESPACEUNDECLARED	
0xC00CEF0A	WR_E_INVALIDXMLSPACE	
0xC00CEF0B	WR_E_INVALIDACTION	
0xC00CEF0C	WR_E_INVALIDSURROGATEPAIR	

# Update packages on a device and get package update logs

7/13/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The Windows Driver Kit (WDK) includes a tool for updating packages on a device (IUTool.exe) and a tool for getting package update logs from a device (GetDULogs.exe). These tools are available under %WPDKCONTENTROOT%\Tools\bin\i386.

## Using IUTool.exe to update packages on a device

IUTool.exe is a command-line tool that can be used to update an existing package on a device or to add a new package to a device. IUTool.exe must be used in a command-line window that is opened as an administrator. The command-line syntax for IUTool.exe is the following.

```
IUTool -p <path to packages>
```

The following table describes the command-line parameters for IUTool.exe.

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
<b>-p</b> <i>path to packages</i>	<p>Specifies one or more packages to update on the device or to add to the device. The <i>path to packages</i> parameter can have the following formats:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>To update or add a single package, specify the full path to the package on the development computer.</li><li>To update or add multiple packages, specify a semicolon-delimited list of packages on the development computer. For example:</li></ul> <pre>IUTool -p C:\ContosoPackages\Contoso.Device.SampleDriver.spkg;C:\ContosoPackages\Contoso.Device.SampleApplication.spkg</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>To update or add an entire directory of packages, specify the path to the directory. For example:</li></ul> <pre>IUTool -p C:\ContosoPackages</pre>

### Package versioning

If the specified package already exists on the device, the new version of the package must have a higher version than the package currently on the device or the update will fail. To specify the version for a package, use the **/version** command-line parameter for PkgGen.exe when generating the package. For more information, see [Command-line arguments for package generator](#).

## Using GetDULogs.exe to get package update logs from a device

GetDULogs.exe is a command-line tool that can be used to get package update logs from a device. GetDULogs.exe must be used in a command-line window that is opened as an administrator. The command-line syntax for GetDULogs.exe is the following.

```
GetDULogs -o <output file path>
```

The following table describes the command-line parameters for GetDULogs.exe.

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
<b>-o</b> <i>output file path</i>	The full path of the file on the development computer to write the log information to.

# Update packages in an .FFU image file

7/13/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can use ImageApp.exe to add a new or updated package to an existing .FFU image file for production, health and test images.

ImageApp has the following important limitations:

- ImageApp should only be used for adding packages to production, test and health images. Do not use ImageApp to modify retail images, as it may negatively impact update reliability and the security of the device. ImageApp cannot be used to change the partition layout of an existing image. If a different partition layout is needed, the image will need to be rebuilt. For more information, see [Building a device image using ImgGen.cmd](#).
- ImageApp cannot be used to remove packages from an image.
- To prepare a device platform to use compressed partitions with CompactOS, you'll need a PC with the Windows 10 version of DISM. If your technician PC is running a previous version of Windows, you can get this by installing the Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (ADK) for Windows 10, or by copying and installing the DISM driver. This process is the same as the one used to install DISM on Windows PE. To learn more, see [Install Windows 10 using a previous version of Windows PE: To add DISM into your Windows PE image](#).

When updating an existing package, be sure to increment the version number. For more information, see [Update requirements](#). When adding a package that does not already exist in the image, any version number can be used.

Specify the packages to be added in an input XML file similar to the one shown here.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<UpdateOSInput xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
 xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
 xmlns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/embedded/2004/10/ImageUpdate">
 <Description>Add Debugger On package</Description>
 <PackageFiles>
 <PackageFile>C:\Program Files\Windows Kits\10\Packages\Microsoft.BCD.DebuggerOn.spkg</PackageFile>
 </PackageFiles>
</UpdateOSInput>
```

For example, if the `updateInput.xml` file is in the C:\temp folder, use this command to add the specified packages to the existing `flash.ffd` image file.

```
ImageApp flash.ffd /UpdateInputXML:C:\temp\updateInput.xml
```

## Command-line syntax for ImageApp.exe

```
ImageApp.exe <imageFile.ffd> </UpdateInputXML:>updateInputfile.xml
```

The following table describes the command-line parameters for ImageApp.exe.

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
<code>imageFile.ffd</code>	The name of the FFU file to be updated.

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
/UpdateInputXML: <i>updateInputfile.xml</i>	The name of the XML file that identifies the package to be added to the image. If this file is not in the current directory, you must include the path to the file.

## Troubleshooting

**"STATUS\_FILE\_IS\_A\_DIRECTORY"**: This error message appears when building an image with CompactOS from a PC that doesn't have the Windows 10 version of DISM. You can get this by installing the Windows ADK for Windows 10, or by just installing the DISM driver from another PC with the Windows ADK for Windows 10 installed. To learn more, see [Install Windows 10 using a previous version of Windows PE](#).

## Related topics

[Building an image using ImgGen.cmd](#)

# IoT Core manufacturing

9/29/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Windows 10 IoT Core (IoT Core) is a version of Windows 10 that is optimized for smaller devices with or without a display. IoT Core uses the rich, extensible Universal Windows Platform (UWP) API for building great solutions.

OEMs can manufacture and deploy IoT Core using existing or custom-built hardware. To see existing recommended hardware, see [device options](#) and the [Hardware Compatibility List](#).

When developing your own board, see the [Minimum hardware requirements for IoT Core](#).

## In this section

TOPIC	DESCRIPTION
<a href="#">What's new in IoT Manufacturing</a>	Find out what we've been working on.
<a href="#">IoT Core manufacturing guides</a>	This guide walks you through creating IoT Core images that can be flashed to retail devices and maintained after they have been delivered to your customers.
<a href="#">IoT Core feature list</a>	Here's the features you can add to IoT Core images.
<a href="#">Windows ADK IoT Core Add-ons contents</a>	The <a href="#">IoT Core ADK Add-Ons</a> include tools to help you customize and create new images for your devices with the apps, board support packages (BSPs), drivers, and Windows features that you choose, and a sample structure you can use to quickly create new images.
<a href="#">IoT Core Add-ons command-line options</a>	These tools are part of the <a href="#">IoT Core ADK Add-Ons</a> , in the \Tools folder. To learn more about these tools, see <a href="#">Windows ADK IoT Core Add-ons</a> .

## Related topics

[Learn about Windows 10 IoT Core](#)

[IoT Core Developer Resources](#)

# IoT Core manufacturing guide

10/5/2017 • 5 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Thinking about mass-producing devices running Windows 10 IoT Core? Use the [Windows ADK IoT Core Add-ons](#) to create images that you can quickly flash onto new devices.

You can create **test images**, which include tools for quickly accessing and modifying devices. Test images are great for:

- Developers, hardware vendors, and manufacturers (OEMs) who are trying out new device designs.
- Hobbyists and organizations that are creating devices designed to run in non-networked or controlled network environments.

You can create **retail images**, which can be made more secure for public or corporate networks while still receiving updates.

You can add customizations, including apps, settings, hardware configurations, and board support packages (BSPs).

For OEM-style images, you'll wrap your customizations into package (.cab) files. Packages let OEMs, ODMs, developers, and Microsoft work together to help deliver security and feature updates to your devices without stomping on each other's work.

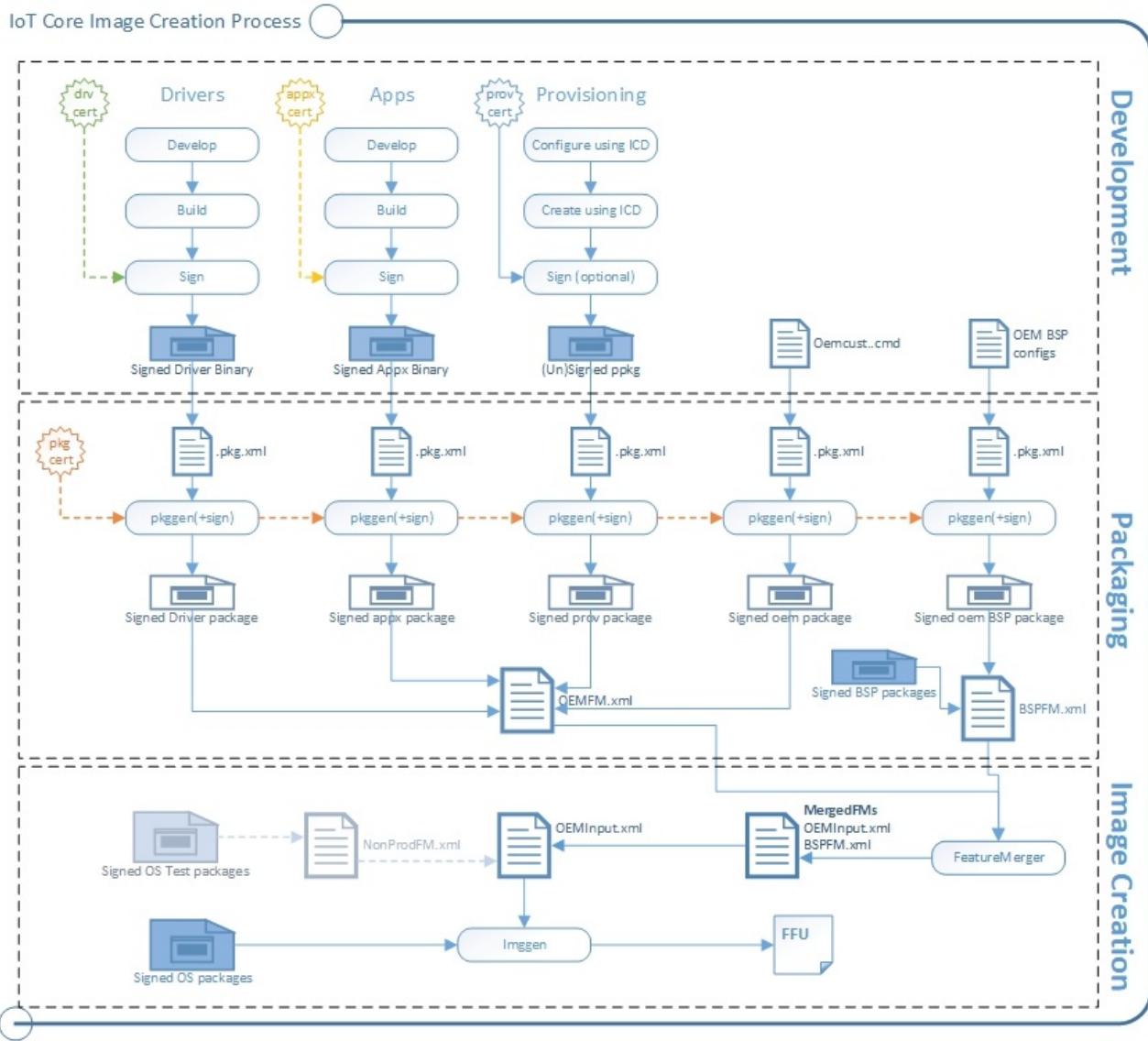
## Scenarios

- [Get the tools needed to customize Windows IoT Core](#)
- [Lab 1a: Create a basic image](#)
- [Lab 1b: Add an app to your image](#)
- [Lab 1c: Add a file and a registry setting to an image](#)
- [Lab 1d: Add networking and other provisioning package settings to an image](#)
- [Lab 1e: Add a driver to an image](#)
- [Lab 1f: Build a retail image](#)
- [Lab 2: Creating your own board support package](#)
- [Lab 3: Update your apps](#)

## Concepts

You can use the walkthrough as a guide to build both your test and retail images. In general terms:

1. Test your customizations, including apps, settings, drivers, and BSPs, to make sure they work.
2. Install test certificates on your PC, and package your customizations into .cab files.
3. Create a test image that includes your customizations, along with the IoT Core package, and any updates from your hardware manufacturer.
4. Flash the image to a device and test it. Use the test tools built into the test images to troubleshoot any new issues.
5. If it works, sign your customizations, and repackage them into new .cab files.
6. Create a retail image with your signed files, and use it to manufacture new devices.



## Packages

Packages are the logical building blocks of IoT Core. They contain all the files, libraries, registry settings, executables, and data on the device. From device drivers to system files, every component must be contained in a package. This modular architecture allows for precise control of updates: a package is the smallest serviceable unit on the device.

Each package contains:

- The contents of the package, such as a signed driver binary or a signed appx binary.
- A package definition (.pkg.xml) file specifies the contents of the package and where they should be placed in the final image. See %SRC\_DIR%\Packages\ directory for various samples of package files.
- A signature. This can be a test or retail certificate.

The `pkgen` tool combines these items into signed packages. Our samples include scripts: `createpkg`, and `createprovpkg`, which call `pkgen` to create packages for our drivers, apps, and settings.

The process is similar to that used by Windows 10 Mobile. To learn more about creating packages, see [Creating mobile packages](#).

## Feature manifests (FMs)

After you've put everything into packages, you'll use FM files to list which of your packages belong in the final image.

You can use as many FMs into an image as you want. In this guide, we refer to the following FMs:

- **OEMFM.xml** includes features an OEM might add to a device, such as the app and a provisioning package.
- **BSPFM.xml** includes features that a hardware manufacturer might use to define a board. For example, OEM\_RPi2FM.xml includes all of the features used for the Raspberry Pi 2.

The process is similar to that used by Windows 10 Mobile. To learn more, see [Feature manifest file contents](#).

You'll list which of the features to add by using these tags:

- <BasePackages>: Packages that you always included in your images, for example, your base app.
- <Features>\<OEM>: Other individual packages that might be specific to a particular product design.

The Feature Merger tool generates the required feature identifier packages that are required for servicing the device. Run this tool whenever any changes are made to the FM files. After you change OEM FM or OEM COMMON FM files, run `Buildfm oem`. After you change bspfm files, run `buildfm bsp <bspname>`.

### **Creating the image: ImgGen and the image configuration file (OEMInput.xml)**

To create the final image, you'll use the `imggen` tool with an image configuration file, **OEMInput.xml file**.

These are the same tools used to create Windows 10 Mobile images. To learn more, see [OEMInput file contents](#).

The image configuration file lists:

- The feature manifests (FMs) and the packages that you want to install from each one.
- An **Soc** chip identifier, which is used to help set up the device partitions. The supported values for **soc** are defined in the corresponding bspfm.xml, under <devicelayoutpackages>.
- A **Device** identifier, which is used to select the device layout. The supported values for **device** are defined in the corresponding bspfm.xml, under <oemdeviceplatformpackages>.
- The ReleaseType (either **Production** or **Test**).

**Retail builds:** We recommend creating retail images early on in your development process to verify that everything will work when you are ready to ship.

These builds contain all of the security features enabled.

To use this build type, all of your code must be signed using retail (not test) code signing certificates.

For a sample, see %SRC\_DIR%\Products\SampleA\RetaiLOEMInput.xml.

**Test builds:** Use these to try out new versions of your apps and drivers created by you and your hardware manufacturer partners.

These builds have some security features disabled, which allows you to use either test-signed or production-signed packages.

These builds also include developer tools such as debug transport, SSH, and PowerShell, that you can use to help troubleshoot issues.

For a sample, see %SRC\_DIR%\Products\SampleA\TestOEMInput.xml.

	<b>RETAIL BUILDS</b>	<b>TEST BUILDS</b>
Image release type	ReleaseType: <b>Production</b>	ReleaseType: <b>Test</b>
Package release type	Only Production Type packages are supported	Both Production Type or Test Type are supported

	RETAIL BUILD	TEST BUILD
Test-signed packages	Not supported	Supported IOT_ENABLE_TESTSIGNING feature must be included.
Code integrity check	Supported. By default, this is enabled.	Not supported IOT_DISABLE_UMCI feature must be included

## Board Support Packages (BSPs)

Board Support Packages contain a set of software, drivers, and boot configurations for a particular board, typically supplied by a board manufacturer. The board manufacturer may periodically provide updates for the board, which your devices can receive and apply.

## OK, let's try it!

Start here: [Get the tools needed to customize Windows IoT Core.](#)

## Related topics

[Learn about Windows 10 IoT Core](#)

[IoT Core Developer Resources](#)

[What's in the Windows ADK IoT Core Add-ons](#)

[IoT Core feature list](#)

[IoT Core Add-ons command-line options](#)

# Get the tools needed to customize Windows IoT Core

10/18/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Here's the software you'll need to create OEM images using the Windows 10 IoT Core (IoT Core) ADK Add-Ons:

## PCs and devices

Here's how we'll refer to them:

- **Technician PC:** Your work PC. This PC should have at least 15GB of free space for installing the software and for modifying IoT Core images.

We recommend either Windows 10 or Windows 8.1 with the latest updates. The minimum requirement is Windows 7 SP1, though this may require additional tools or workarounds for tasks such as mounting .ISO images.

- **IoT device:** A test device or board that represents all of the devices in a single model line.

For our examples, you'll need a Raspberry Pi 3. To see more options, see [Suggested Boards and SoCs](#).

- An **HDMI cable**, and a **monitor or TV** with a dedicated HDMI input. We'll use this to verify that the image is loaded and that our sample apps are running.

## Storage

- A **Micro SD card**. (Note, we just use this for our guide. You can build devices with other drives. Learn more about existing [supported storage](#) options.)

If your technician PC doesn't include a Micro SD slot, you may also need an adapter.

## Software

### Install the following tools on your technician PC

1. [Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit \(Windows ADK\)](#) including at least the **Deployment Tools** and **Imaging and Configuration Designer (ICD)** features. You'll use these tools to create images and provisioning packages.
2. [Windows Driver Kit \(WDK\) 10](#)
3. [Windows 10 IoT Core Packages](#). The .iso package adds the IoT Core packages and feature manifests used to create IoT Core images. By default, these packages are installed to **C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\MSPackages\Retail**.
4. [IoT Core ADK Add-Ons](#). Click **Clone or Download > Download ZIP**, and extract it to a folder, for example, **C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit**. This kit includes the sample scripts and base structures you'll use to create your image. To learn about the contents, see [What's in the Windows ADK IoT Core Add-ons](#)).
5. [Windows 10 IoT Core Dashboard](#).
6. [The Raspberry Pi BSP](#). Since this lab uses a Raspberry Pi, you'll need to download the Raspberry Pi BSP. If you're working with a device other than Raspberry Pi, visit the [Windows 10 IoT Core BSP](#) page to download

other BSPs.

Other helpful software:

- **A text editor such as Notepad++.** You can also use the Notepad tool, though for some files, you won't see the line breaks unless you open each file as a UTF-8 file.
- **A compression program such as 7-Zip,** which can uncompress Windows app packages.
- [Visual Studio 2017](#), used to create an app in [Lab 1b: Add an app to your image](#).

## Other software

- **An app built for IoT Core.** Our samples use the [IoT Core Default](#) app, though you can use your own.
- **A driver built for IoT Core.** Our samples use the [Hello, Blinky](#) driver, though you can use your own.

## Next steps

[Lab 1a: Create a basic image](#)

# Lab 1a: Create a basic image

10/17/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

To get started, we'll create a basic Windows 10 IoT Core (IoT Core) image, flash it to a micro SD card, and put it into a device to make sure that everything's working properly.

We'll create a product folder that represents our first design. For our first product design, we'll customize just enough for the IoT core device to boot up and run the built-in OOBE app, which we should be able to see on an HDMI-compatible monitor.

To make running these commands easier, we'll install and use the IoT Core shell, which presets several frequently-used paths and variables.

## Prerequisites

See [Get the tools needed to customize Windows IoT Core](#) to get your technician PC ready.

## Create a basic image

### Set your OEM name (one-time only)

- Open the file **C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Tools\setOEM.cmd** in Notepad, and modify it with your company name. We've added this variable to help you create packages with names that are easy to differentiate from those provided from other manufacturers you're working with. Only alphanumeric characters are supported in the OEM\_NAME as this is used as a prefix for various generated file names.

```
set OEM_NAME=Fabrikam
```

### Start the IoT Core shell, choose your architecture, and install test certificates

- In Windows Explorer, go to the folder where you installed the IoT Core ADK Add-Ons, for example, **C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit**, and open **IoTCoreShell.cmd**. It should prompt you to run as an administrator.

The new value for OEM\_NAME should appear when you start the tool.

Troubleshooting: Error: "The system cannot find the path specified". If you get this, right-click the icon and modify the path in "Target" to the location you've chosen to install the tools.

- At the **Set Environment for Architecture** prompt, select 1 for ARM, 2 for x86, or 3 for x64, based on the architecture for the boards that you'll be developing. For example, press **1** to create an image that's compatible with the Raspberry Pi 2 or Raspberry Pi 3, or press **2** to create an image that's compatible with the Minnowboard Max.

The launch tool sets the default architecture, and sets a version number for the design, which you can use for future updates. The first version number defaults to 10.0.0.0.

(Why a four-part version number? Learn about versioning schemes in [Update requirements](#))

### Install certificates

From the IoT Core Shell, install the test certificates, which you'll use to sign your test binaries. You'll only need to do this the first time you install the IoT ADK Add-on Kit.

```
installoemcerts
```

The certificates are added to the root. To learn more, see [Set up the signing environment](#)

## Build a Raspberry Pi BSP (New for Windows 10, Version 1703)

1. Extract [rpibsp.zip](#) to a folder on your hard drive, for example C:\BSP
2. From the IOT Core Shell, navigate to C:\BSP, and run `build.cmd`. This will add the packages necessary to create a project with the RPi2 BSP

```
cd c:\BSP
build.cmd
```

For more information on available bsp's, see [Windows 10 IoT Core BSPs](#).

## Build packages

From the IoT Core Shell, get your environment ready to create products by building all of the packages in the working folders.

```
buildpkg All
```

## Create a test project

From the IoT Core Shell, create a new product folder that uses the Rpi2 BSP. This folder represents a new device we want to build, and contains sample customization files that we can use to start our project.

```
newproduct ProductA rpi2
```

The BSP name is the same as the folder name for the BSP. You can see which BSPs are available by looking in the `C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Source-<arch>\BSP` folders.

This creates the folder: `C:\\\\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\\\\Source-&lt;arch&gt;\\\\Products\\\\ProductA`.

## Build an image

1. Eject any removable storage drives, including the Micro SD card and any USB flash drives.
2. From the IoT Core Shell, build a flashable test image using the default files. Test images include additional tools, and you can create test images using either signed or unsigned test packages.

```
buildimage ProductA test
```

This builds an FFU file with your basic image at `C:\\\\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\\\\Build\\\\&lt;arch&gt;\\\\ProductA\\\\Test`

Troubleshooting:

- ERROR CODES: 0x80070005 or 0x800705b4: Unplug all external drives (including micro SD cards and USB thumb drives), and try again.

If this doesn't work, go back to [Set up your PC and download the samples](#) and make sure everything's installed.

## Flash the image to a memory card

1. Start the [Windows IoT Core Dashboard](#).

2. Plug your micro SD card into your technician PC, and select it in the tool.
3. From **Setup a new device**, select Device Type: **Custom**.
4. From **Flash the pre-downloaded file (Flash.ffu) to the SD card**, click **Browse**, browse to your FFU file (C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Build\<arch>\ProductA\Test\Flash.ffu), then click **Next**.
5. Optional: Change the default device name (Default is minwinpc.)
6. Enter your device password.
7. Accept the license terms, and then click **Install**. The Windows IoT Core Dashboard formats the micro SD card and installs the new image.

#### Try it out

1. Connect your IoT device, such as a Raspberry Pi 3, into a monitor using an HDMI cable. **Note** When possible, use a direct connection to an HDMI port. The display may not appear when using DVI/VGA adapters or hubs.
2. Put in the micro SD card with your image.
3. Power it on.

After a short while, the device should start automatically, and you should see the [IoT Core Default app](#) (code-named "Bertha"), which shows basic info about the image.

**Note** Some devices may be extremely slow to boot up on the first boot when using some 8GB class 10 SD cards. Slow boot times may be over 15 minutes. Subsequent boots will be much quicker on the affected cards.

## Next steps

Leave the device on for now, and continue to [Lab 1b: Add an app to your image](#).

# Lab 1b: Add an app to your image

10/5/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

We're now going to take an app (like the sample [IoT Core Default](#) app), package it up, and create a new image you can load onto new devices.

For background apps, use the same method to install and run them. Note, only one app can be selected as the startup app, all other apps installed using this method run as background apps.

**Note** As we go through this manufacturing guide, ProjectA will start to resemble the SampleA image that's in C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Source-arm\Products\SampleA.

## Prerequisites

We'll use the ProjectA image we created from [Lab 1a: Create a basic image](#).

## Create an appx package

You can skip these steps if you've already created and tested your app.

1. Create a UWP app. This can be any app designed for IoT Core, saved as an Appx Package. For our example, we use the [IoT Core Default](#) app.
2. In Visual Studio, to save the IoT Core Default app as an Appx package, click **Project > Store > Create App Packages > No > Next**.
3. Select **Output location: C:\DefaultApp** (or any other path that doesn't include spaces.)
4. Select **Generate app bundle: Never**
5. Click **Create**.

Visual Studio creates the Appx file into C:\DefaultApp\IoTCOREDefaultApp\_1.2.0.0\_ARM\_Debug\_Test

6. Optional: [Test the app](#). Note, you may have already tested the app as part of building the project.

## Package the app

### Create a package for an app

1. Open the IoT Core Shell: run **C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\IoTCoreShell** as an administrator.
2. Create a new package for the app, for example:

```
newAppxPkg
"C:\DefaultApp\IoTCOREDefaultApp_1.2.0.0_ARM_Debug_Test\IoTCOREDefaultApp_1.2.0.0_ARM_Debug_Test.appx"
fga Appx.MyUWPApp
```

This creates a new folder at C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Source-<arch>\Packages\Appx.MyUWPApp, and generates a customizations.xml file as well as a package xml file that is used to build the package.

3. From the IoT Core Shell, build the package.

```
buildpkg Appx.MyUWPApp
```

The package is built, appearing as **C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Build\<arch>\pkgs\<your OEM name>.Appx.MyUWPApp.cab**.

## Update the feature manifest

### Add your app package to the feature manifest

1. Open your feature manifest file, **C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Source-<arch>\Packages\OEMFM.xml**
2. Create a new PackageFile section in the XML, with your package file listed, and give it a new FeatureID, such as "OEM\_MyUWPApp".

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<FeatureManifest
 xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
 xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
 xmlns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/embedded/2004/10/ImageUpdate">
 <BasePackages/>
 <Features>
 <OEM>
 <!-- Feature definitions below -->
 <PackageFile Path="%PKGBLD_DIR%" Name="%OEM_NAME%.Appx.IoTCoreDefaultApp.cab">
 <FeatureIDs>
 <FeatureID>OEM_IoTCoreDefaultApp</FeatureID>
 </FeatureIDs>
 </PackageFile>
 <PackageFile Path="%PKGBLD_DIR%" Name="%OEM_NAME%.Appx.IoTOnboardingTask.cab">
 <FeatureIDs>
 <FeatureID>OEM_IoTOnboardingTask</FeatureID>
 </FeatureIDs>
 </PackageFile>
 <PackageFile Path="%PKGBLD_DIR%" Name="%OEM_NAME%.Appx.MyUWPApp.cab">
 <FeatureIDs>
 <FeatureID>OEM_MyUWPApp</FeatureID>
 </FeatureIDs>
 </PackageFile>
 </OEM>
 <OEMFeatureGroups/>
 </Features>
</FeatureManifest>
```

3. Run **buildfm oem** to generate updated files in the MergedFMs folder. This has to be done every time any time an FM file is modified.

You'll now be able to add your app to any of your products by adding a reference to this feature manifest and Feature ID.

## Update the project's configuration files

### Replace your product's default app with your own

1. Open your product's test configuration file: **C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Source-<arch>\Products\ProductA\TestOEMInput.xml**.
2. Make sure both your feature manifest, OEMFM.xml, and the feature manifest: OEMCommonFM.xml, are both listed in the AdditionalFMs section.

```

<AdditionalFMs>
 <!-- Including BSP feature manifest -->
 <AdditionalFM>%BLD_DIR%\MergedFMs\RPi2FM.xml</AdditionalFM>
 <!-- Including OEM feature manifest -->
 <AdditionalFM>%BLD_DIR%\MergedFMs\OEMCommonFM.xml</AdditionalFM>
 <AdditionalFM>%BLD_DIR%\MergedFMs\OEMFM.xml</AdditionalFM>
 <!-- Including the test features -->
 <AdditionalFM>%AKROOT%\FMFiles\arm\IoTUAPNonProductionPartnerShareFM.xml</AdditionalFM>
</AdditionalFMs>

```

### 3. Change the features included in the product:

- Remove the sample test apps by adding comment tags: <!-- -->. (We'll use these apps again in later labs.)
- Confirm that the OEM features: OEM\_CustomCmd, and OEM\_ProvAuto are present.
- Add the FeatureID for your app package, example: OEM\_MyUWPApp.

```

<Features>
 <Microsoft>

 ...

 <!-- Sample Apps, remove this when you introduce OEM Apps
 <Feature>IOT_BERTHA</Feature> -->
 <Feature>IOT_ALLJOYN_APP</Feature>
 <Feature>IOT_NANORDPSSERVER</Feature>
 <Feature>IOT_SHELL_HOTKEY_SUPPORT</Feature>
 <Feature>IOT_APPLICATIONS</Feature>

 </Microsoft>
 <OEM>
 <!-- Include BSP Features -->
 <Feature>RPI2_DRIVERS</Feature>
 <Feature>RPI3_DRIVERS</Feature>
 <!-- Include OEM features -->
 <Feature>OEM_CustomCmd</Feature>
 <Feature>OEM_ProvAuto</Feature>
 <Feature>OEM_MyUWPApp</Feature>
 </OEM>

```

## Build and test the image

Build and flash the image using the same procedures from [Lab 1a: Create a basic image](#). Short version:

- From the IoT Core Shell, build the image (`buildimage ProductA Test`).
- Install the image: Start **Windows IoT Core Dashboard** > Click the **Setup a new device** tab > select **Device Type: Custom** >
- From **Flash the pre-downloaded file (Flash.ffu) to the SD card**: click **Browse**, browse to your FFU file (`C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Build\<arch>\ProductA\Test\Flash.ffu`), then click **Next**.
- Enter the device name and password. Put the Micro SD card in the device, select it, accept the license terms, and click **Install**.
- Put the card into the IoT device and start it up.

After a short while, the device should start automatically, and you should see your app.

## Next steps

[Lab 1c: Add a file and a registry setting to an image](#)

## Related topics

[Update apps on your IoT Core devices](#)

# Test an appx file on an IoT device

10/17/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Connect to the device from another PC\*\*

1. Connect a network cable.
2. Note the IP address that shows up on the device.
3. On your technician PC, open Internet Explorer, and type in the address with an http:// prefix and :8080 suffix:

```
http://100.100.0.100:8080
```

This opens the [Windows Device Portal](#). From here, you can upload app packages, see what apps are installed, and switch between them.

4. If you've added the IOT\_ENABLE\_ADMIN feature in your package, log in using Administrator/p@ssw0rd. If you created a custom username and password, use that now. To learn more, see [Lab 1b: Add an app to your image](#).

Test the app by installing it\*\*

1. Click on **Apps**.
2. Under **Install app**, under **App package**, click **Browse**, and select your .appx file. **Note** If you built your app as a bundle, you may need to use a tool such as 7-Zip to extract these files from the bundle.
3. Add your app's **Certificate** the same way.
4. Click **Add Dependency** and add each of your app's dependency files.
5. Under **Deploy**, click **Go**. The app installs.
6. Under **Installed apps**, click the drop-down box and select your app. Your app should start on the device.

Great, your app works! Now let's package it up so you can maintain your app even after it's been delivered to your customers.

# Lab 1c: Add a file and a registry setting to an image

10/18/2017 • 4 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Files and registry keys that you add to your image often won't be specific to an architecture. For these, we recommend creating a common package that you can use across all of your device architectures.

We'll create some test files and registry keys to the image, and again package them up so that they can be serviced after they reach your customers.

We'll add these to the common feature manifest (OEMCommonFM.xml), which is used in x86, x64, and ARM builds, and give it a new feature ID, OEM\_FilesAndRegKeys.

For this lab, we'll start an new product, ProductB, so that later we can use the IoT sample app to get the IP address of our device and verify that our files and reg keys have made it.

## Prerequisites

See [Get the tools needed to customize Windows IoT Core](#) to get your technician PC ready.

## Create your test files

- Create a few sample text files using Notepad, title them TestFile1.txt and TestFile2.txt.

## Build a package for your test files

1. Open the IoT Core Shell: run **C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\IoTCoreShell** as an administrator.
2. Create a working folder for the registry key and test files, for example:

```
newcommonpkg Registry.FilesAndRegKeys
```

The new folder at **C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Common\Packages\Registry.FilesAndRegKeys\**.

### Add sample files to the package

1. Copy your sample files (TestFile1.txt and TestFile2.txt), into the new folder at **C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Common\Packages\Registry.FilesAndRegKeys\**.
2. Update the package definition file, **C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Common\Packages\Registry.FilesAndRegKeys\Registry.FilesAndRegKeys.wm.xml**:
  - a. Remove the comment marks and instructions.
  - b. Update the values of RegKey to include a new KeyName, Name, and Value.
  - c. Update the File Source names to TestFile1.txt and TestFile2.txt. By default, files land in C:\Windows\System. To change the destination location, add a DestinationDir and Name.

Variables like \$(runtime.root) are defined in C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\Tools\bin\i386\pkggen.cfg.xml.

```

<onecorePackageInfo
 targetPartition="MainOS"
 releaseType="Production"
 ownerType="OEM" />
<regKeys>
 <regKey
 keyName="$(hkml.software)\$(OEMNAME)\Test">
 <regValue name="StringValue" type="REG_SZ" value="Test string" />
 <regValue name="DWordValue" type="REG_DWORD" value="0x12AB34CD" />
 <regValue name="BinaryValue" type="REG_BINARY" value="12ABCDEF" />
 </regKey>
 <regKey
 keyName="$(hkml.software)\$(OEMNAME)\EmptyKey" />
</regKeys>
<files>
 <file destinationDir="$(runtime.system32)" source="filename.txt" />
 <file
 destinationDir="$(runtime.bootDrive)\OEMInstall" source="filename2.txt"
 name="filename2.txt" />
</files>

```

- From the IoT Core Shell, build the package. (The `BuildPkg All` command builds everything in the source folders.)

```
buildpkg Registry.FilesAndRegKeys
```

The package is built, appearing as **C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Build\<arch>\pkgs\<your OEM name>.Registry.FilesAndRegKeys.cab**.

All packages that you build appear in your architecture-specific folder. Tip: to quickly rebuild for another architecture, use `setenv <arch>`, then `BuildPkg All` to rebuild everything for your other architecture.

**Troubleshooting:** If you get an error: "The elementRegKeys in namespace 'urn:Microsoft.WindowsPhone/PackageSchema.v8.00' has incomplete content", remove the comments and instructions. If you don't want to include a reg key or a file, then remove these XML elements.

## Update your feature manifest

- Open the common feature manifest file, **C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Common\Packages\OEMCommonFM.xml**
- Create a new PackageFile section in the XML, with your package file listed, and give it a new FeatureID, such as "OEM\_FilesAndRegKeys".

```

<Features>
 <OEM>
 <!-- Feature definitions below -->
 <PackageFile Path="%PKGBLD_DIR%" Name="%OEM_NAME%.Registry.FilesAndRegKeys.cab">
 <FeatureIDs>
 <FeatureID>OEM_FilesAndRegKeys</FeatureID>
 </FeatureIDs>
 </PackageFile>

```

- Run `buildfm oem` to generate updated files in the MergedFMs folder. This has to be done every time any time an FM file is modified.

You'll now be able to add your files and registry keys to any of your products by adding a reference to this feature manifest and Feature ID.

# Create a new product

1. Create a new product folder.

```
newproduct ProductB rpi2
```

# Update your product configuration file

1. Update the test configuration file C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Source-<arch>\Products\ProductB\TestOEMInput.xml:

Make sure the feature manifest: **OEMCommonFM.xml** is included, removing comment marks if necessary.

```
<AdditionalFMs>
 <!-- Including BSP feature manifest -->
 <AdditionalFM>%BLD_DIR%\MergedFMs\RPI2FM.xml</AdditionalFM>
 <!-- Including OEM feature manifest -->
 <AdditionalFM>%BLD_DIR%\MergedFMs\OEMCommonFM.xml</AdditionalFM>
 <AdditionalFM>%BLD_DIR%\MergedFMs\OEMFM.xml</AdditionalFM>
 <!-- Including the test features -->
 <AdditionalFM>%AKROOT%\FMFiles\arm\IoTUAPNonProductionPartnerShareFM.xml</AdditionalFM>
</AdditionalFMs>
```

2. Update the features included in the product:

- a. Make sure the sample apps are included (especially the IOT\_BERTHA app).
- b. Verify that the OEM features: OEM\_CustomCmd and OEM\_ProvAuto are present.
- c. Add the FeatureID for your registry package, example: OEM\_FilesAndRegKeys.

```
<Features>
 <Microsoft>

 ...

 <!-- Sample Apps, remove this when you introduce OEM Apps -->
 <Feature>IOT_BERTHA</Feature>
 <Feature>IOT_ALLJOYN_APP</Feature>
 <Feature>IOT_NANORDP SERVER</Feature>
 <Feature>IOT_SHELL_HOTKEY_SUPPORT</Feature>
 <Feature>IOT_APPLICATIONS</Feature>
 <Feature>IOT_ENABLE_ADMIN</Feature>
 </Microsoft>
 <OEM>
 <!-- Include BSP Features -->
 <Feature>RPI2_DRIVERS</Feature>
 <Feature>RPI3_DRIVERS</Feature>
 <!-- Include OEM features -->
 <Feature>OEM_CustomCmd</Feature>
 <Feature>OEM_ProvAuto</Feature>
 <Feature>OEM_FilesAndRegKeys</Feature>
 </OEM>
</Features>
```

# Build and test the image

Build and flash the image using the same procedures from [Lab 1a: Create a basic image](#). Short version:

1. From the IoT Core Shell, build the image (`buildimage ProductB Test`).

2. Install the image: Start **Windows IoT Core Dashboard** > Click the **Setup a new device** tab > select **Device Type: Custom** >
3. From **Flash the pre-downloaded file (Flash.ffu) to the SD card**: click **Browse**, browse to your FFU file (C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Build\<arch>\ProductB\Test\Flash.ffu), then click **Next**.
4. Enter device name and password.Put the Micro SD card in the device, select it, accept the license terms, and click **Install**.
5. Put the card into the IoT device and start it up.

After a short while, you should see the [IoT test \(Bertha\) app](#) which shows basic info about the image.

## See if your files made it

1. Connect both your technician PC and the device to the same ethernet network.  
For example, to connect over a wired network, plug in a ethernet cable. To connect directly to the device, plug a network cable directly from your technician PC to the device.
2. On the test app, note the IP address, for example, 10.100.0.100.
3. On your technician PC, open File Explorer, and type in the IP address of the device with a \\ prefix and \c\$ suffix:

```
\\"10.100.0.100\c$
```

Use the devicename, the default Administrator account, and password to log on. (Default is:  
minwinpc\Administrator / p@ssw0rd)

4. Check to see if the files exist. Look for:

```
\\"10.100.0.100\c$\Windows\system32\TestFile1.txt
```

```
\\"10.100.0.100\c$\OEMInstall\TestFile2.txt
```

## See if your registry keys exist

1. On your technician PC, connect to your device using an SSH client, such as [PuTTY](#). For example, use the IP address and port 22 to connect to the device, then log in using the Administrator account and password. (To learn more, see [SSH](#).)
2. From the command line in the SSH client, query the system for the registry key.

```
reg query HKLM\Software\Fabrikam\Test
```

Where Fabrikam is your OEM name. The registry tool should return your test values.

## Next steps

[Lab 1d: Add a provisioning package to an image](#)

# Lab 1d: Add networking and other provisioning package settings to an image

10/18/2017 • 5 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

We'll create a provisioning package that contains some sample Wi-Fi settings. You can use Windows Configuration Designer to create provisioning packages that add apps, drivers, features, or modify many common settings, such as IT device management and policy settings.

Note, to test Wi-Fi, your board will need Wi-Fi support. You can use a Wi-Fi adapter/dongle, or use a board like the Raspberry Pi 3 that has Wi-Fi built-in.

For this lab, we'll use the ProductB, that includes the default app (Bertha), which shows network status.

## Prerequisites

- See [Get the tools needed to customize Windows IoT Core](#) to get your technician PC ready.
- Use ProductB that you created in [Lab 1c: Add a file and a registry setting to an image](#).

## Create your provisioning package in Windows Configuration Designer

1. Start **Windows Imaging and Configuration Designer**.
2. Click **File > New project**.
3. For this example, use the name "**ProductBProv**" for the product name, accept the defaults, and click **Next**.
4. Select **Provisioning package > Windows 10 IoT Core**.
5. At the **Import a provisioning package (optional)** page, click **Finish**.
6. Add a sample setting:
  - a. Expand **Runtime settings > Connectivity Profiles > WLAN > WLANSetting > SSID**.
  - b. Type in the name of a Wi-Fi network name, for example, ContosoWiFi, and click **Add**.
  - c. Expand the **SSID > WLANXmlSettings > SecurityType** and choose a setting such as **Open**.
  - d. Expand the **SSID > WLANXmlSettings > AutoConnect** and choose a setting such as **TRUE**.
  - e. Optional: to add more than one WLAN network, go back to WLANSetting, and repeat the process.
7. Optional: add other apps, drivers, and settings through the UI. To learn more, see [Configure customizations using Windows ICD](#).
8. Export the provisioning package. For example, click **Export > Provisioning Package > Next > (Uncheck the Encrypt Package box) > Next > Build**. (To learn more, see [Export a provisioning package](#).)

## IMPORTANT

When you make any changes to a provisioning package, Windows Configuration Designer increments the version number in the provisioning file (customizations.xml). Starting with **Windows 10 release 1709**, the version number for provisioning package is also a four part number, same as the regular packaging version. In previous releases (prior to release 1709), the version number is not major.minor, it is a number with a decimal point. For example, 1.19 is a lower version than 1.2.

- At the **All done!** page, click the link to the **Output location**.

### Copy `customizations.xml` into your product's `prov` folder

- Copy `customizations.xml` to `C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Source-<arch>\Products\ProductB\prov`.
- Optional: update `customizations.xml` with any desired changes. Make sure you increment the version number if you make changes. See [Windows provisioning answer file](#) for more info.

### Add the auto-provisioning scripts to the feature manifest and product configuration file

- Review the package definition file: `Provisioning.Auto.pkg.xml`: `C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Common\Packages\Provisioning.Auto\Provisioning.Auto.pkg.xml`.

Make sure the file source resolves correctly. `$(PROD)Prov.ppkg` resolves to `C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Source-<arch>\Products\ProductB\prov\ProductBProv.ppkg`, this should match your provisioning package's file name.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<identity xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema" xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
 name="Auto" namespace="Provisioning" owner="$(OEMNAME)"
 legacyName="$(OEMNAME).Provisioning.Auto" xmlns="urn:Microsoft.CompPlat/ManifestSchema.v1.00">
 <onecorePackageInfo
 targetPartition="MainOS"
 releaseType="Production"
 ownerType="OEM" />
 <files>
 <file
 destinationDir="$(runtime.windows)\Provisioning\Packages"
 source="$(PRJDIR)\Products\$(PROD)\prov\$(PROD)Prov.ppkg"
 name="ProvAuto.ppkg" />
 </files>
</identity>
```

- Make sure that the package definition file `%OEM_NAME%.Provisioning.Auto.cab` and the feature ID: `OEM_ProvAuto` are referenced in the common feature manifest, `C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Common\Packages\OEMCommonFM.xml`:

```
<PackageFile Path="%PKGBLD_DIR%" Name="%OEM_NAME%.Provisioning.Auto.cab">
 <FeatureIDs>
 <FeatureID>OEM_ProvAuto</FeatureID>
 </FeatureIDs>
</PackageFile>
```

- Update the test configuration file `C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Source-<arch>\Products\ProductB\TestOEMInput.xml`:
  - Make sure the common feature manifest: `OEMCommonFM.xml` is included. (Remove comment marks if necessary.)

```

<AdditionalFMs>
 <!-- Including BSP feature manifest -->
 <AdditionalFM>%BLD_DIR%\MergedFMs\RPi2FM.xml</AdditionalFM>
 <!-- Including OEM feature manifest -->
 <AdditionalFM>%BLD_DIR%\MergedFMs\OEMCommonFM.xml</AdditionalFM>
 <AdditionalFM>%BLD_DIR%\MergedFMs\OEMFM.xml</AdditionalFM>
 <!-- Including the test features -->
 <AdditionalFM>%AKROOT%\FMFiles\arm\IoTUAPNonProductionPartnerShareFM.xml</AdditionalFM>
</AdditionalFMs>

```

- b. Make sure the Feature: OEM\_ProvAuto is included.

```

<OEM>
 <!-- Include BSP Features -->
 <Feature>RPI2_DRIVERS</Feature>
 <Feature>RPI3_DRIVERS</Feature>
 <!-- Include OEM features-->
 <Feature>OEM_CustomCmd</Feature>
 <Feature>OEM_ProvAuto</Feature>
 <Feature>OEM_FilesAndRegKeys</Feature>
</OEM>

```

## Build and test the image

Build and flash the image using the same procedures from [Lab 1a: Create a basic image](#). Short version:

1. From the IoT Core Shell, build the image (`buildimage ProductB Test`).
2. Install the image: Start **Windows IoT Core Dashboard** > Click the **Setup a new device** tab > select **Device Type: Custom** >
3. From **Flash the pre-downloaded file (Flash.ffu) to the SD card**: click **Browse**, browse to your FFU file (`C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Build\<arch>\ProductB\Test\Flash.ffu`), then click **Next**.
4. Enter device name and password.

**Note: We recommend using a different device name for each device to help prevent network conflicts.**

5. Put the Micro SD card in the device, select it, accept the license terms, and click *Install\**.
6. Put the card into the IoT device and start it up.

Note: Ignore the settings for "Wi-Fi Network Connection" in these menus, these settings are not used.

After a short while, you should see the [IoT test \(Bertha\) app](#) which shows basic info about the image.

### Test to see if your provisioning settings were applied

1. Unplug any network cables from your IoT device.
2. Select the defaults. At the **Let's get connected** screen, select **Skip this step**.
3. If your wireless network is in range, this screen should show the network successfully connected, and show an IP address for the network.

## Test network connections and upload apps

You can connect to your device's portal page to troubleshoot network connections, upload apps, or see more details about your device.

1. Connect both your technician PC and the device to the same network.

For example, to connect over a wired network, plug in a ethernet cable. To connect over wireless, make sure both your technician computer and IoT Core device are connected to the same wireless network.

2. On your technician PC, open Internet Explorer, and type in the device's IP address with an http:// prefix and :8080 suffix.

```
http://10.123.45.67:8080
```

3. When prompted, enter your device's default username and password. (Default is: Administrator \ p@ssw0rd)

This opens the [Windows Device Portal](#). From here, you can upload app packages, see what apps are installed, and switch between them.

4. Click **Networking > Profiles**. You should see the Wi-Fi profile you created.

If the device is able to automatically connect to the WiFi network, then under **Available Networks**, you should see a checkmark next to the network you configured.

If your network requires steps such as accepting license terms, the device may not auto-connect.

## Troubleshooting

**Check your Wi-Fi broadcast frequency (2.4GHz vs 5GHz).** Some Wi-Fi adapters, such as the built-in Wi-Fi adapter on the Raspberry Pi 3, only support 2.4GHz Wi-Fi networks. While this is the most common Wi-Fi broadcast frequency, many Wi-Fi networks broadcast at frequencies of 5GHz. Either change the broadcast frequency or use a different adapter.

**Confirm that the provisioning package settings work on your network.** Use a laptop PC to test:

1. Disconnect the laptop from the network: Click on the network icon in the system tray, select the wireless network, and click **Disconnect**.
2. Confirm that the network is no longer connected.
3. Install the provisioning package by double-clicking ProductAProv.ppkg. The wireless network should connect automatically.

### Check to see if the profile has been added to the device

1. Connect using an ethernet connection to the device.
2. Connect using an SSH client, such as [PuTTY](#).
3. When connected, check to see what profiles have been installed:

```
netsh wlan show profiles
```

The network should appear in the list of User profiles.

**Use a different device name for each device.** This can help prevent network conflicts. Set this name while creating media for the device.

## Next steps

[Lab 1e: Add a driver to an image](#)

# Lab 1e: Add a driver to an image

10/18/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

In this lab, we'll add the sample driver: [Hello, Blinky!](#), package it up, and deploy it to the to a Windows 10 IoT Core device.

## Prerequisites

- Create a product folder (ProductB) that's set up to boot to the default (Bertha) app, as shown in [Lab 1a: Create a basic image](#) or [Lab 1c: Add a file and a registry setting to an image](#).

## Check for similar drivers

Before adding drivers, you may want to review your pre-built Board Support Package (BSP) to make sure there's not already a similar driver.

For example, review the list of drivers in the file: \IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Source-arm\BSP\Rpi2\Packages\RPi2FM.xml.

- If there's not an existing driver, you can usually just add one.
- If there is a driver, but it doesn't meet your needs, you'll need to replace the driver by creating a new BSP. We'll cover that in [Lab 2](#).

## Create your test files

- Complete the exercises in [Installing The Sample Driver](#) to build the Hello, Blinky app. You'll create three files: ACPITABL.dat, gpiokmdfdemo.inf, and gpiokmdfdemo.sys, which you'll use to install the driver.

You can also use your own IoT Core driver, so long as it doesn't conflict with the existing Board Support Package (BSP).

- Copy each of the files: gpiokmdfdemo.sys, gpiokmdfdemo.inf, and ACPITABL.dat into a test folder, for example, C:\gpiokmdfdemo.

## Build a package for your driver

1. Run **C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\IoTCoreShell** as an administrator.
2. Create the driver package using the .inf file as the base:

```
newdrvpkg C:\gpiokmdfdemo\gpiokmdfdemo.inf Drivers.HelloBlinky
```

The new folder at **C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Source-<arch>\Packages\Drivers.HelloBlinky\**.

3. Copy the file: ACPITABL.dat to the new folder, **C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Source-<arch>\Packages\Drivers.HelloBlinky\**.

## Verify that the sample files are in the package

1. Update the driver's package definition file, **C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Source-<arch>\Packages\Drivers.HelloBlinky\Drivers.HelloBlinky.wm.xml**.

The default package definition file includes sample XML that you can modify to add your own driver files.

If necessary, update the value of File Source to point to your .SYS file, and the ACPITABL.dat file. (You don't need to add the .INF file.) Add the DestinationDir of "\$(runtime.drivers)".

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<identity xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema" xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
 name="HelloBlinky"
 namespace="Drivers"
 owner="$(OEMNAME)"
 legacyName="$(OEMNAME).Drivers.HelloBlinky" xmlns="urn:Microsoft.CompPlat/ManifestSchema.v1.00">
 <onecorePackageInfo
 targetPartition="MainOS"
 releaseType="Production"
 ownerType="OEM" />
 <drivers>
 <driver>
 <inf source="iaiogpio.inf" />
 <files>
 <file source="iaiogpio.sys" destinationDir="$(runtime.drivers)" name="iaiogpio.sys" />
 <file source="ACPITABL.dat" destinationDir="$(runtime.system32)" name="ACPITABL.dat" />
 </files>
 </driver>
 </drivers>
</identity>
```

- From the IoT Core Shell, build the package.

```
buildpkg Drivers.HelloBlinky
```

The package is built, appearing as **C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Build\<arch>\pkgs\<your OEM name>.Drivers.HelloBlinky.cab**.

## Update your feature manifest

### Add your driver package to the feature manifest

- Open the architecture-specific feature manifest file, **C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Source-<arch>\Packages\OEMFM.xml**
- Create a new PackageFile section in the XML, with your package file listed, and give it a new FeatureID, such as "OEM\_DriverHelloBlinky".

```
<PackageFile Path="%PKGBLD_DIR%" Name="%OEM_NAME%.Drivers.HelloBlinky.cab">
 <FeatureIDs>
 <FeatureID>OEM_DriverHelloBlinky</FeatureID>
 </FeatureIDs>
</PackageFile>
```

- Generate feature identifier packages and merged FM files. This has to be done every time any time an FM file is modified.

```
buildfm bsp rpi2
```

You'll now be able to add your driver to your product by adding a reference to this feature manifest.

## Update the project's configuration files

1. Open your product's test configuration file: **C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Source-<arch>\Products\ProductA\TestOEMInput.xml**.
2. Make sure your feature manifest, Rpi2FM.xml, is in the list of AdditionalFMs. Add it if it isn't there already there:

```
<AdditionalFMs>
 <!-- Including BSP feature manifest -->
 <AdditionalFM>%BLD_DIR%\MergedFMs\RPi2FM.xml</AdditionalFM>
 <!-- Including OEM feature manifest -->
 <AdditionalFM>%BLD_DIR%\MergedFMs\OEMCommonFM.xml</AdditionalFM>
 <AdditionalFM>%BLD_DIR%\MergedFMs\OEMFM.xml</AdditionalFM>
 <!-- Including the test features -->
 <AdditionalFM>%AKROOT%\FMFiles\arm\IoTAPNonProductionPartnerShareFM.xml</AdditionalFM>
</AdditionalFMs>
```

3. Add the FeatureID for your driver:

```
<OEM>
 <!-- Include BSP Features -->
 <Feature>RPI2_DRIVERS</Feature>
 <Feature>RPI3_DRIVERS</Feature>
 <!-- Include OEM features-->
 <Feature>OEM_CustomCmd</Feature>
 <Feature>OEM_ProvAuto</Feature>
 <Feature>OEM_FilesAndRegKeys</Feature>
 <Feature>OEM_DriverHelloBlinky</Feature>
</OEM>
```

## Build and test the image

Build and flash the image using the same procedures from [Lab 1a: Create a basic image](#). Short version:

1. From the IoT Core Shell, build the image (`buildimage ProductB Test`).
2. Install the image: Start **Windows IoT Core Dashboard** > Click the **Setup a new device** tab > select **Device Type: Custom** >
3. From **Flash the pre-downloaded file (Flash.ffu) to the SD card**: click **Browse**, browse to your FFU file (`C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Build\<arch>\ProductB\Test\Flash.ffu`), then click **Next**.
4. Enter device name and password. Put the Micro SD card in the device, select it, accept the license terms, and click *Install*\*
5. Put the card into the IoT device and start it up.

### Check to see if your driver works

1. Use the procedures in the [Hello, Blinky! lab](#) to test your driver.

## Next steps

[Lab 1f: Build a retail image](#)

# Lab 1f: Build a retail image

10/18/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

We'll take our customizations, put them together, and test them in a retail build.

## Prerequisites

- [Lab 1a: Create a basic image](#)
- [Lab 1b: Add an app to your image](#)
- [Lab 1c: Add a file and a registry setting to an image](#)
- [Lab 1d: Add networking and other provisioning package settings to an image](#)
- [Lab 1e: Add a driver to an image](#)

## Add your app to the retail configuration file

1. Open your product's retail configuration file: **C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Source-<arch>\Products\ProductA\RetailOEMInput.xml**.
2. Add your feature manifest, OEMFM.xml, into the list of AdditionalFMs. At the same time, add the feature manifest: OEMCommonFM.xml, which contains the OEM\_CustomCmd package that configures your app on the first boot:

```
<AdditionalFMs>
 <!-- Including BSP feature manifest -->
 <AdditionalFM>%BLD_DIR%\MergedFMs\RPi2FM.xml</AdditionalFM>
 <!-- Including OEM feature manifest -->
 <AdditionalFM>%BLD_DIR%\MergedFMs\OEMCommonFM.xml</AdditionalFM>
 <AdditionalFM>%BLD_DIR%\MergedFMs\OEMFM.xml</AdditionalFM>
</AdditionalFMs>
```

3. Add the FeatureIDs for the your app package, and the OEM\_CustomCmd package.

```
<OEM>
 <!-- Include BSP Features -->
 <Feature>RPI2_DRIVERS</Feature>
 <Feature>RPI3_DRIVERS</Feature>
 <!-- Include OEM features -->
 <Feature>OEM_CustomCmd</Feature>
 <Feature>OEM_ProvAuto</Feature>
 <Feature>OEM_MyUWPApp</Feature>
 <Feature>OEM_FilesAndRegKeys</Feature>
 <Feature>OEM_DriverHelloBlinky</Feature>
</OEM>
```

OEM\_ProvAuto is required to pull in the provisioning package.

OEM\_FilesAndRegKeys, OEM\_MyUWPApp, and OEM\_DriverHelloBlinky were sample packages added in previous labs.

## Copy in the provisioning package from ProductB into ProductA.

1. Copy the customizations.xml file from C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Products\ProductB\prov to C:\IoT-ADK-

AddonKit\Products\ProductA\prov.

2. Delete ProductAProv.ppkg file if present.

## Build and create the image

### Build the image

1. [Get a code-signing certificate.](#)
2. Configure the cross-signing certificate to be used for retail signing. Edit setsignature.cmd file to set SIGNTOOL\_OEM\_SIGN:

```
set SIGNTOOL_OEM_SIGN=/s my /i "Issuer" /n "Subject" /ac "CrossCertRoot" /fd SHA256
```

- Issuer : Issuer of the Certificate ( see Certificate -> Details -> Issuer )
- Subject : Subject in the certificate ( see Certificate -> Details -> Subject)
- CrossCertRoot : Microsoft-supplied Cross Certificate Root. See Cross-Certificate List in [Cross-Certificates for Kernel Mode Code Signing](#).

3. From the IoT Core Shell, enable retail signing.

```
retailsign On
```

4. Rebuild all the packages so that they are retail signed.

```
buildpkg all
```

If the BSP drivers/packages are test signed, you need to rebuild them to have retail signature. You can re-sign the cabs and its contents using

```
re-signcabs.cmd <srccabdir> <dstdcabdir>
```

5. From the IoT Core Shell, create the image:

```
buildimage ProductA Retail
```

This creates the product binaries at C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Build\<arch>\ProductA\Retail\Flash.FFU.

6. Start **Windows IoT Core Dashboard** > **Setup a new device** > **Custom**, and browse to your image. Put the Micro SD card in the device, select it, accept the license terms, and click **Install**. This replaces the previous image with our new image.
7. Put the card into the IoT device and start it up.

After a short while, the device should start automatically, and you should see your app.

### Check to see if everything is working

With retail builds, you won't be able to log into the device using the SSH clients or by using the web interface. However, any files and reg keys that your app relies on should still work.

## Next steps

- Lab 2: Creating your own board support package

# Lab 2: Creating your own board support package (BSP)

10/18/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

A BSP includes a set of device drivers that are specific to the components/silicon used in the board. These are provided by the component vendors / silicon vendors, mostly in the form of .inf and associated .sys/.dll files.

Create a new Board Support Package (BSP) when:

- Creating a new hardware design
- Replacing a driver or component on an existing hardware design

Whether you're creating a new BSP or modifying an existing BSP, you become the owner. This lets you decide whether to allow updates to install on your boards.

In our lab, we'll create a new BSP based on the Raspberry Pi 2, removing the existing GPIO driver and replacing it with the sample GPIO driver: [Hello, Blinky!](#).

## Create a new BSP working folder

1. From the IoT Core Shell, create a BSP working folder that you'd like to modify.

```
newbsp MyRpi2
```

## Add packages into the feature manifest

1. Open the feature manifest file for your new BSP, \IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Source-<arch>\BSP\MyRpi2\MyRpi2FM.xml.

In another window, open the Raspberry Pi 2 feature manifest to use as a template.

2. Add your base packages (BasePackages).

- UEFI drivers for the boot partition (RASPBERRYPI.RPi2.BootFirmware.cab)
- Drivers required for UpdateOS (SV.PlatExtensions.UpdateOS.cab)
- Mandatory device drivers (bcm2836sdhc.cab, dwcUsbOtg.cab, rpiq.cab)

When creating your own BSP, it's typical to require a display driver and a storage driver, and sometimes a network driver.

- Device-specific customizations

3. Copy in the device layout and platform packages (DeviceLayoutPackages, OEMDevicePlatformPackages).

Note that both the OEMDevicePlatform.xml and devicelayout.xml can be packaged into one package, for example, DeviceLayout.MBR4GB. The same package can then be specified as input in both the sections (for example, under and ). To learn more, see [Device layout](#).

4. Copy in features (Features).

Copy in features you want. Exclude any that don't apply to your project.

For example, copy in each of the drivers **except** the existing GPIO driver:

```
<PackageFile Path="$(mspackageroot)\Retail\$(cputype)\$(buildtype)" Name="RASPBERRYPI.RPi2.GPIO.cab">
 <FeatureIDs>
 <FeatureID>RPI2_DRIVERS</FeatureID>
 </FeatureIDs>
</PackageFile>
```

Note: To make grouping packages easier, you can combine them into one or more Feature IDs. For example, all of the Raspberry Pi 2 optional drivers use the Feature ID: RPI2\_DRIVERS.

## 5. Add the HelloBlinky driver:

```
<PackageFile Path="%PKGBLD_DIR%" Name="%OEM_NAME%.Drivers.HelloBlinky.cab">
 <FeatureIDs>
 <FeatureID>RPI2_DRIVERS</FeatureID>
 </FeatureIDs>
</PackageFile>
```

## Create a new product folder

### 1. Create a new working product folder, adding your BSP name to the end.

```
newproduct ProductB MyRpi2
```

This creates the folder: C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Source-<arch>\Products\ProductB, which is linked to the new BSP.

## Update the project's configuration files

### 1. Open your product's test configuration file: **C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Source-arm\Products\ProductB\TestOEMInput.xml**.

#### 2. Add FeatureIDs:

- Add the FeatureID: IOT\_GENERIC\_POP to get OS-only updates.
- Add the FeatureIDs: IOT\_DISABLE\_UMCI and IOT\_ENABLE\_TESTSIGNING to enable test binaries and packages to work.
- Optional: add the FeatureID for the other apps and test packages: OEM\_AppxHelloWorld, OEM\_CustomCmd, OEM\_FileAndRegKey, that you created in Lab 1.

```
<Microsoft>
 <Feature>IOT_GENERIC_POP</Feature>
 ...
</Microsoft>

<OEM>
 <Feature>RPI2_DRIVERS</Feature>
 <Feature>IOT_DISABLE_UMCI</Feature>
 <Feature>IOT_ENABLE_TESTSIGNING</Feature>
 <Feature>OEM_CustomCmd</Feature>
 <Feature>OEM_AppxHelloWorld</Feature>
 <Feature>OEM_FileAndRegKey</Feature>
</OEM>
```

# Build and test the image

## Build the image

1. From the IoT Core Shell, create the image:

```
createimage ProductB Test
```

This creates the product binaries at C:\IoT-ADK-AddonKit\Build\<arch>\ProductB\Flash.FFU.

2. Start **Windows IoT Core Dashboard** > **Setup a new device** > **Custom**, and browse to your image.

Put the Micro SD card in the device, select it, accept the license terms, and click **Install**. This replaces the previous image with our new image.

3. Put the card into the IoT device and start it up.

After a short while, the device should start automatically, and you should see your app.

## Check to see if your driver works

1. Use the [testing procedures in the Hello, Blinky! lab](#) to test your driver.

## Next steps

Congratulations, you've completed Lab 2.

[Lab 3: Update apps](#)

## Related topics

[Device layout](#)

# IoT Device Layout

10/17/2017 • 2 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

When modifying an IoT Core board support package (BSP), you can change the drive partitions and layout by modifying the `DeviceLayout` files.

## Partition layout

IoT Core supports UEFI (GPT) and legacy BIOS (MBR) partition layouts. Most IoT Core devices use UEFI and GPT-style partitions, though Raspberry Pi 2 uses MBR-style partitions. To learn more about UEFI, read [Boot and UEFI](#) and the [Windows and GPT FAQ](#).

Sample partition layouts included in the ADK Add-Ons:

- \iot-adk-addonkit\Common\Packages\DeviceLayout.GPT4GB\devicelayout.xml
- \iot-adk-addonkit\Common\Packages\DeviceLayout.GPT4GB-R\devicelayout.xml
- \iot-adk-addonkit\Common\Packages\DeviceLayout.MBR4GB\devicelayout.xml
- \iot-adk-addonkit\Common\Packages\DeviceLayout.MBR4GB-R\devicelayout.xml

These files use three component files:

- \*\*DeviceLayout..pkg.xml\*\*: Package file, creates packages for `DeviceLayout` and `OEMDevicePlatform.xml`.
- **DeviceLayout.xml**: Specifies the device partition layout
- **OEMDevicePlatform.xml**: Specifies the amount of free blocks available in the device and which partitions are compressed.

### Partition layout (`DeviceLayout.xml`)

IoT Core requires 3 mandatory partitions (EFIESP, MainOS and Data). You can optionally include other partitions, for example, a CrashDump partition. Sizes are calculated in sectors, the default sector is 512 bytes.

Supported properties:

**EFI**: Fixed-size partition with the boot manager, boot configuration database. This partition is required for both MBR/GPT-style devices.

- Name: `EFIESP`
- Type: For MBR, use `0x0c`. For GPT, use `{c12a7328-f81f-11d2-ba4b-00a0c93ec93b}`
- FileSystem: `FAT`
- TotalSectors: `65536` (= 32MB)
- Bootable: `true`
- RequiredToFlash: `true`

**MainOS**: OS and OEM-preloaded apps. This partition requires a minimum number of free sectors (MinFreeSectors) for normal operations.

- Name: `MainOS`
- Type: For MBR, use `0x07`. For GPT, use `{ebd0a0a2-b9e5-4433-87c0-68b6b72699c7}`
- FileSystem: `NTFS`

- MinFreeSectors: `1048576` (= 512MB)
- ByteAlignment: `0x800000`
- ClusterSize: `0x1000` (This size is recommended to keep the partition size manageable.)

**Data:** User data partition, user registry hives, apps, apps data. This partition is typically set to use the remainder of the storage space on the device. (UseAllSpace: True)

- Name: `Data`
- Type: For MBR, use `0x07`. For GPT, use `{ebd0a0a2-b9e5-4433-87c0-68b6b72699c7}`
- FileSystem: `NTFS`
- UseAllSpace: `true`
- ByteAlignment: `0x800000`
- ClusterSize: `0x4000` (This partition tends to be larger, so 0x4000 is recommended. 0x1000 is also OK.)

**Crash dump partition:** Optional partition, used to collect data from crash dumps. When used, size is given in total sectors.

- Name: `CrashDump`
- Type: For MBR, use `0x07`. For GPT, use `{ebd0a0a2-b9e5-4433-87c0-68b6b72699c7}`
- FileSystem: `FAT32`
- TotalSectors: `1228800` (= 600 MB)

## Required fields

These fields are required, the following values are supported for IoTCore:

- Version: `IoTUP`
- SectorSize: `512`
- ChunkSize: `128`
- DefaultPartitionByteAlignment: `0x200000`

## Storage Size Estimations

The following diagrams provide an overview of two configurations.

### 2GB Configuration (2048MB, typically has 1843MB for storage)

#### 2GB partition layout



PARTITION	CONTENTS	MB	SECTORS	REMARKS
EFIESP	EFIESP	32	65536	EFIESP size
Main OS	Main OS	800	1638400	MainOS (estimate)
Main OS	Free space	128	262144	MainOS Headroom

PARTITION	CONTENTS	MB	SECTORS	REMARKS
Data	Data	883	1808384	Expands to fill free space
<b>TOTAL</b>		<b>1843</b>	<b>3774464</b>	

**4GB Configuration:** (4096MB, typically has 3600MB available for storage)

#### 4GB partition layout



PARTITION	CONTENTS	MB	SECTORS	REMARKS
EFIESP	EFIESP	32	65536	EFIESP size
Main OS	Main OS	800	1638400	MainOS (estimate)
Main OS	Free space	512	1048576	MainOS Headroom
CrashDump	Crash Dump	600	1228800	CrashDump Size
Data	Data	1656	3391488	Expands to fill free space
<b>TOTAL</b>		<b>3600</b>	<b>7372800</b>	

#### Device platform layout (OEMDevicePlatform.xml)

OEMDevicePlatform.xml specifies the amount of free blocks available in the device and which partitions are compressed. Example:

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<OEMDevicePlatform xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
xmlns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/embedded/2004/10/ImageUpdate">
 <MinSectorCount>7372800</MinSectorCount>
 <DevicePlatformIDs>
 <ID>*</ID>
 </DevicePlatformIDs>
 <CompressedPartitions>
 <Name>MainOS</Name>
 </CompressedPartitions>
</OEMDevicePlatform>

```

## Related topics

[Windows 10 IoT Core BSPs](#)

[Creating your own board support package \(BSP\)](#)

[Boot and UEFI Windows and GPT FAQ.](#)

# IoT Core feature list

10/17/2017 • 5 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

Here's the features you can add to Windows 10 IoT Core (IoT Core) images.

Add features using the **OEMInput** XML file. To learn more, see the [IoT Core manufacturing guide](#).

## Retail features defined by Microsoft

The following table describes the Microsoft-defined features that can be used by OEMs in the Features element in the **OEMInput** file for **Retail** build.

When creating images for your device, determine which features are required and which features are optional.

### Required features

The following features must be included in all images, though they may be customized.

FEATURES	DESCRIPTION
<b>IOT_EFIESP</b>	Boots the device using UEFI
<b>IOT_UAP_OOBE</b>	Includes the inbox OOBE app that is launched during the first boot and also during installation of apps

### Features

FEATURES	DESCRIPTION
<b>IOT_CORTANA</b>	Adds Cortana feature. Requires <b>IOT_APPLICATIONS</b> feature. This is new in Windows 10, version 1703.
<b>IOT_UNIFIED_WRITE_FILTER</b>	Adds <a href="#">Unified Write Filter (UWF)</a> to protect physical storage media from data writes. Supported starting with Windows 10, version 1607.
<b>IOT_NANORDPSERVER</b>	Adds <a href="#">Remote Display packages</a> . Supported starting with Windows 10, version 1607.
<b>IOT_USBFN_CLASS_EXTENSION</b>	Adds USB function WDF class extension for USB function mode support. This is new in Windows 10, version 1703.
<b>IOT_HWN_CLASS_EXTENSION</b>	Adds hardware notification WDF class extension for vibration API support. This is new in Windows 10, version 1703.

### Apps and related features

FEATURES	DESCRIPTION
<b>IOT_APPLICATIONS</b>	Adds Account Management host application, enables MSA sign-in. Required for Cortana. This is new in Windows 10, version 1703.

FEATURES	DESCRIPTION
<b>IOT_BERTHA</b>	Adds a sample app: "Bertha". This app provides basic version info and connectivity status.
<b>IOT_ALLJOYN_APP</b>	Adds the AllJoyn application, used for Headless ZwaveAdapterAppx.
<b>IOT_UAP_DEFAULTAPP</b>	Adds a sample app, "Chucky". This app is similar to "Bertha".
<b>IOT_FONTS_CHINESE_EXTENDED</b>	Adds additional Chinese fonts. This is new in Windows 10, version 1703.
<b>IOT_APP_TOOLKIT</b>	Adds tools required for Appx installation and management

## Drivers

FEATURES	DESCRIPTION
<b>IOT_FTSER2K_MAKERDRIVER</b>	Adds the FTDI USB-to-Serial driver.
<b>IOT_CP210x_MAKERDRIVER</b>	Adds drivers for SiliconLabs CP210x-based USB to Serial adapters. This is new in Windows 10, version 1703.
<b>IOT_DMAP_DRIVER</b>	Adds DMAP drivers.

## Settings

FEATURES	DESCRIPTION
<b>IOT_GENERIC_POP</b>	Adds the Generic device targeting info for OS only Updates. Supported starting with Windows 10, version 1607.
<b>IOT_POWER_SETTINGS</b>	Prevents the device from going to sleep due to inactivity. Required for x86/amd64 platforms. This feature supports ARM starting with Windows 10, Version 1703.
<b>IOT_EFIESP_BCD</b>	Sets boot configuration data (BCD) for GPT-based drives. Required for x86/amd64. MBR devices should use <b>IOT_EFIESP_BCD_MBR</b>
<b>IOT_EFIESP_BCD_MBR</b>	Sets boot configuration data (BCD) for MBR-based drives. This is new in Windows 10, version 1703.
<b>IOT_SHELL_HOTKEY_SUPPORT</b>	Adds support to launch default app using a hotkey: <a href="#">VK_LWIN</a> ( <a href="#">Left Windows key</a> ). Supported starting with Windows 10, version 1607.
<b>IOT_SHELL_ONSCREEN_KEYBOARD</b>	Adds available on-screen keyboard. This is new in Windows 10, version 1703.
<b>IOT_SHELL_ONSCREEN_KEYBOARD_FOLLOWFOCUS</b>	Enables on-screen keyboard to automatically appear when input field is focused. Requires <b>IOT_SHELL_ONSCREEN_KEYBOARD</b> . This is new in Windows 10, version 1703.

FEATURES	DESCRIPTION
<b>IOT_CORTANA_OBSCURELAUNCH</b>	Enables running Cortana application on boot. This add-on causes Cortana to run in the background resulting in better response time for Cortana. This is new in Windows 10, version 1703.
<b>IOT_DISABLEBASICDISPLAYFALLBACK</b>	Disables the inbox basic render driver. This feature should only be used with the Qualcomm DragonBoard (DB).

## Developer Tools

### IMPORTANT

Aside from net.exe and PowerShell, we do not recommend including the other features in a retail image.

FEATURES	DESCRIPTION
<b>IOT_NETCMD</b>	Adds the command-line tool: net.exe, used for configuring network connectivity
<b>IOT_POWERSHELL</b>	Adds PowerShell
<b>IOT_SIREP</b>	Enables SIREP service for TShell connectivity
<b>IOT_SSH</b>	Enables Secure Shell (SSH) connectivity
<b>IOT_TOOLKIT</b>	Includes developer tools such as: Kernel Debug components, FTP, Network Diagnostics, basic device portal, and XPerf. This also relaxes the firewall rules and enables various ports.
<b>IOT_WEBB_EXTN</b>	Enables IOTCore-specific extensions to the Windows Device Portal. The basic device portal is included in the IoT Toolkit.

## Speech Data

FEATURES	DESCRIPTION
<b>IOT_SPEECHDATA_EN_US</b>	Deprecated in Windows 10, version 1607. Do not add this feature. The default image includes speech data for US English.
<b>IOT_SPEECHDATA_DE_DE</b>	Adds speech data for German.
<b>IOT_SPEECHDATA_EN_CA</b>	Adds speech data for en-CA. This is new in Windows 10, version 1703.
<b>IOT_SPEECHDATA_EN_GB</b>	Adds speech data for UK English.
<b>IOT_SPEECHDATA_ES_ES</b>	Adds speech data for Spanish.
<b>IOT_SPEECHDATA_ES_MX</b>	Adds speech data for Mexico. This is new in Windows 10, version 1703.
<b>IOT_SPEECHDATA_FR_FR</b>	Adds speech data for French.

FEATURES	DESCRIPTION
<b>IOT_SPEECHDATA_FR_CA</b>	Adds speech data for French Canadian. This is new in Windows 10, version 1703.
<b>IOT_SPEECHDATA_IT_IT</b>	Adds speech data for Italian.
<b>IOT_SPEECHDATA_JA_JP</b>	Adds speech data for Japanese. Supported starting with Windows 10, version 1607.
<b>IOT_SPEECHDATA_ZH_CN</b>	Adds speech data for Chinese (PRC).
<b>IOT_SPEECHDATA_ZH_HK</b>	Adds speech data for Chinese (Hong Kong S.A.R.). Supported starting with Windows 10, version 1607.
<b>IOT_SPEECHDATA_ZH_TW</b>	Adds speech data for Chinese (Taiwan). Supported starting with Windows 10, version 1607.

### Features in the IoT Core Add-Ons

FEATURES	DESCRIPTION
<b>OEM_CustomCmd</b>	Adds scripts which support adding OEM Apps using the ADK Add-Ons.
<b>OEM_ProvAuto</b>	Includes provisioning package corresponding to the product.

### Test features

The following table describes the Microsoft-defined test features that can be used by OEMs in the Features element in the **OEMInput** file for **Test** builds ONLY.

FEATURES	DESCRIPTION
<b>IOT_DISABLE_TESTSIGNING</b>	Disables runtime-installation of test-signed packages
<b>IOT_DISABLE_UMCI</b>	Disables the code integrity check
<b>IOT_EFIESP_TEST</b>	UEFI packages required for booting test images. Should not be used with IOT_EFIESP
<b>IOT_ENABLE_ADMIN</b>	New in Windows 10, version 1607
<b>IOT_ENABLE_TESTSIGNING</b>	Enables run-time installation of test-signed packages. Allows test-signed drivers and (.appx) apps to run
<b>IOT_KD_ON</b>	Enables Kernel Debugger

FEATURES	DESCRIPTION
<b>IOT_KDNETUSB_SETTINGS</b>	<p>Includes all kernel debugger transports and enables KDNET over USB. The default debug transport settings for this feature are an IP address of "1.2.3.4", a port address of "50000", and a debugger key of "4.3.2.1". To use the default IP address of 1.2.3.4, run VirtEth.exe with the /autodebug flag. For example, to establish a kernel debugger connection to the phone, use the command: <code>Windbg -k net:port=50000,key=4.3.2.1</code></p> <p><b>Note</b> Do not include either <b>IOT_KDUSB_SETTINGS</b> or <b>IOT_KDNETUSB_SETTINGS</b> if you need to enable MTP or IP over USB in the image. If the kernel debugger is enabled in the image and the debug transports are used to connect to the device, the kernel debugger has exclusive use of the USB port and prevents MTP and IP over USB from working.</p>
<b>IOT_KDSERIAL_SETTINGS</b>	<p>Includes all kernel debugger transports and enables KDSERIAL with the following settings: 115200 Baud, 8 bit, no parity. These settings apply to x86 and amd64 platforms. ARM platforms use UEFI-defined serial transport settings.</p>
<b>IOT_KDUSB_SETTINGS</b>	<p>Includes all kernel debugger transports and enables KDUSB. The default debug transport target name for this feature is <b>WOATARGET</b>. To establish a kernel debugger connection to the phone, use the command: <code>Windbg -k usb:targetname=WOATARGET</code></p> <p><b>Note</b> Do not include either <b>IOT_KDUSB_SETTINGS</b> or <b>IOT_KDNETUSB_SETTINGS</b> if you need to enable MTP or IP over USB in the image. If the kernel debugger is enabled in the image and the debug transports are used to connect to the device, the kernel debugger has exclusive use of the USB port and prevents MTP and IP over USB from working.</p>
<b>IOT_WDTF</b>	<p>Includes components for Windows Driver Test Framework, required for HLK validation</p>
<b>IOT_CRT140</b>	<p>Adds CRT binaries</p>
<b>IOT_DIRECTX_TOOLS</b>	<p>Adds DirectX tools</p>
<b>IOT_UMDFDBG_SETTINGS</b>	<p>Includes user-mode driver framework debug settings</p>

## Related topics

[What's in the Windows ADK IoT Core Add-ons](#)

[IoT Core manufacturing guides](#)

# Windows ADK IoT Core Add-ons: contents

10/18/2017 • 3 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The [Windows 10 IoT Core ADK Add-Ons](#) include OEM-specific tools to create images for your IoT Core devices with your apps, board support packages (BSPs), settings, drivers, and features.

This kit

- makes IoT Core image creation process easy and simple
- enables creation of multiple images/image variants easily
- provides automation support for nightly builds

The [IoT Core manufacturing guide](#) walks you through building images with these tools.

## Key XML definitions

- Package definitions (\*.wm.xml) : defines a component package
- Provisioning definitions (customizations.xml) : source file for provisioning settings
- Feature manifests (\*.FM.xml) : defines feature composition and feature IDs
- Feature manifest List (\*.FMList.xml) : enumerates the FM files
- Product definitions (\*.OEMInputFile.xml) : specifies the product composition with the Microsoft features and OEM features included in the product

NAME	FILENAME.EXT	ADK TOOL	BUILD COMMAND	OUTPUT
Package	*.wm.xml	pkggen.exe	buildpkg.cmd	*.cab
Provisioning	customizations.xml	icd.exe	buildprovpkg.cmd	*.ppkg
Feature manifest	*FM.xml	featuremerger.exe imageapp.exe	-	-
Feature manifest list	*FMList.xml	featuremerger.exe	buildfm.cmd	MergedFM/*FM.xml , *FIP.cab
Product	*OEMInputFile.xml	imageapp.exe	buildimage.cmd	*.ffu

## Code Architecture

- Root folder
  - IoTCoreShell.cmd: Launches the [IoT Core Shell command-line](#)
  - README.md: Version info, links to documentation
- Build
  - This is the output directory where the build contents are stored. It starts as empty.
- Common/Packages
  - Architecture *independent*, platform *independent* packages
  - OEMCommonFM.xml - feature manifest file that enumerates common packages and defines common features.

- Source-<arch>
  - Packages
    - Architecture *specific*, platform *independent* packages
    - versioninfo.txt: Current version number.
    - OEMFM.xml - the feature manifest file that enumerates arch specific packages and defines arch specific features.
    - OEMFMLIST.xml - enumeration of OEM FM files.
  - BSP
    - <bspname>/Packages
      - Architecture *specific*, platform *specific* packages
      - <bspname>FM.xml - feature manifest that enumerates the bsp packages and defines supported device layouts and features
      - <bspname>FMLIST.xml - enumeration of BSP FM files.
        - <bspname>/OemInputSamples
      - sample oeminput files demonstrating how to use the bsp, these files are used as templates in `newproduct.cmd`
  - Products
    - architecture specific named products
- Templates
  - Templates used by tools to create new bsp/product
- Tools
  - Includes the [IoT Core Add-ons command-line tools](#)

## Sample packages

Sample packages are provided in the iot-adk-addonkit that can be used as a reference or as is in your image, if it meets your needs. Few of such packages are listed here.

### Common Packages

PACKAGE NAME	DESCRIPTION
Custom.Cmd	Package to include the oemcustomization cmd. This is product-specific and picks up the input file from product directory. This also makes an registry entry with the product name.
Provisioning.Auto	Package used to <a href="#">add a provisioning package to an image</a> . This is product specific and picks up the input ppkg file from the product directory.
Registry.Version	Package containing registry settings with product and version information.
DeviceLayout.GPT4GB	Package with GPT <a href="#">drive/partition layout</a> for UEFI-based devices with 4GB drives.
DeviceLayout.GPT8GB-R	Package with GPT <a href="#">drive/partition layout</a> for UEFI-based devices with 8GB drives with recovery partition.
DeviceLayout.MBR4GB	Package with MBR <a href="#">drive/partition layout</a> for legacy BIOS-based devices with 4GB drives.

PACKAGE NAME	DESCRIPTION
DeviceLayout.MBR8GB-R	Package with MBR <a href="#">drive/partition layout</a> for legacy BIOS-based devices with 8GB drives with recovery partition.
Settings.HotKey	Sample package to demonstrate how to <a href="#">add a registry setting to an image</a> . Read <a href="#">Switching between apps</a> for more details.
Security.SecureBoot	Sample package to include secure boot functionality.
Security.Bitlocker	Sample package to include bitlocker functionality.
Security.DeviceGuard	Sample package to include deviceguard policies.

#### NOTE

The security packages contain test contents and you should replace them with your own device specific content when creating your final image. See [Security](#), [BitLocker](#) and [Deviceguard](#) for more details.

## Applications and Services packages

PACKAGE NAME	DESCRIPTION
Appx.IoTCoreDefaultApp	Foreground apps package containing <a href="#">IoTCoreDefaultApp</a> , see <a href="#">description</a> .
Appx.DigitalSign	Foreground apps package containing <a href="#">DigitalSign</a> , see <a href="#">description</a> .
Appx.IOTOnboardingTask	Background apps package containing <a href="#">IOTOnboardingTask</a> , see <a href="#">description</a> .
AzureDM.Services	Service package containing Azure Device Management

## BSP

Source files to create board support packages (BSPs).

Some BSPs are included in each folder as a start. You can [create your own BSPs](#) based on these packages.

## Driver packages

PACKAGE NAME	DESCRIPTION
Drivers.GPIO	Sample package for adding a driver.

## Products

Source file for product configurations. Use our samples (SampleA, SampleB) or [create your own](#).

PRODUCT	DESCRIPTION
SampleA	Product with Microsoft provided features / apps
SampleB	Product using OEM Apps and OEM drivers

PRODUCT	DESCRIPTION
SingleLang	Product with single non english language support
MultiLang	Product with multiple language support
SecureSample	Product using security features
RecoverySample	Product using recovery mechanism
DigitalSign	Sample real life product using various features Cortana, recovery mechanism, security features, multi languages support

## Related topics

[IoT Core manufacturing guides](#)

[IoT Core feature list](#)

# IoT Core Add-ons command-line options

10/18/2017 • 7 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

These tools are part of the [Windows 10 IoT Core \(IoT Core\) ADK Add-Ons](#), in the [\Tools folder](#). To learn more about these tools, see [What's in the Windows ADK IoT Core Add-ons](#).

## appx2pkg.cmd

Creates the folder structure and copies the template files for a new package.

## BuildAgent.cmd

Builds FFUs for all OEMInputSamples under the Addon Kit directory. Can be used to automate nightly builds.

## buildbsp.cmd

Builds BSP packages after signing all the required binaries.

### Usage:

```
buildbsp {bspname/all} [version]
```

PARAMETERS	DESCRIPTION
BSPName	Name of the build BSP directory.
All	Builds all BSP directories.
Version	Optional. Specifies package version. If not specified, it uses bsp_version.

### Examples

```
buildbsp rpi2
buildbsp rpi2 10.0.1.0
buildbsp all
buildbsp all 10.0.2.0
```

## buildfm.cmd

Builds feature merger files.

### Usage:

```
buildfm {oem/bsp/all} [bspname] [version]
```

PARAMETERS	DESCRIPTION
OEM	Builds OEMFM/OEMCommonFM files
BSP	Builds BSP files
All	Builds both OEM and BSP files
BSPName	Required for BSP. Name of the BSP. Not required with OEM or All
Version	Optional. Specifies package version. If not specified, it uses version defined in the variable %BSP_VERSION%.

## Examples

```
buildfm oem
buildfm bsp Rpi2
buildfm all
```

## buildimage.cmd

Builds an image file (FFU), using the product-specific packages. Uses createimage.cmd, includes additional options.

### Usage:

```
buildimage [ProductName]/[All]/[Clean] [BuildType] [Version]
```

PARAMETERS	DESCRIPTION
ProductName	Required, Name of the product to be built.
All	All Products under the \Products directory are built.
Clean	Cleans the output directory. One of the above should be specified.
BuildType	Optional, Retail/Test, if not specified both types are built.
Version	Optional, Package version. If not specified, it uses version defined in the variable %BSP_VERSION%
/?	Displays this usage string.

### Examples:

```
buildimage SampleA Test
buildimage SampleA Retail
buildimage SampleA
buildimage All Test
buildimage All
buildimage Clean
```

## buildpkg.cmd

Builds a package from \Sources-<arch>\Packages.

Buildpkg saves the package in the \Build\<arch>\pkgs folder as a .cab file (example: Contoso.Provisioning.Auto.cab).

For troubleshooting, Buildpkg saves logs at \Build\<arch>\pkgs\logs.

### Usage:

```
buildpkg [CompName.SubCompName]/[packagefile.wm.xml]/[All]/[Clean] [version]
```

PARAMETERS	DESCRIPTION
CompName.SubCompName	Use this to refer to the package by its ComponentName.SubComponent Name.
packagefile.wm.xml	Use this to refer to the package by its package definition XML file.
All	Builds all packages in the \Sources-<arch>\Packages folder. This is the same as the <code>BuildPkg All</code> command.
Clean	Use this to erase everything in the \Build\<arch>\pkgs folder. Recommended before building all packages.
version	Optional, used to specify a version number. If you don't specify one, the default is to use the version defined in the variable %BSP_VERSION%.

### Examples:

```
buildpkg Appx.Main
buildpkg Appx.Main 10.0.1.0
buildpkg sample.wm.xml
buildpkg sample.wm.xml 10.0.1.0
buildpkg All
buildpkg All 10.0.2.0
buildpkg Clean
```

## buildrecovery.cmd

Creates a recovery image by adding required wim files to the recovery partition. See [Add a recovery mechanism to your image](#). This command also invokes newwinpe.cmd and buildimage.cmd if the winpe.wim and Flash.ffu files are not present.

### Usage:

```
buildrecovery <ProductName> [BuildType] [WimMode] [WimDir]
```

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
ProductName	Required, Name of the product to be built.

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
BuildType	Optional, Retail/Test, if not specified both types are built.
WimMode	Optional, Import/Export, if import is specified, the wim files from WimDir are used, if export is specified, the extracted wim files are copied to WimDir.
WimDir	Optional, directory to import or export wim files. Mandatory when WimMode is specified

**Example:**

```
buildrecovery RecoverySample Test
```

## exportpkgs.cmd

Exports all the packages used in a product configuration to a directory.

**Usage:**

```
exportpkgs DestDir Product BuildType [OwnerType]
```

PARAMETERS	DESCRIPTION
DestDir	Required. Destination directory to export.
Product	Required. Name of the product.
Buildtype	Required. Can be Retail or Test.
Owner	Optional. Can be MS, OEM, or All. Default value is All.

**Examples:**

```
exportpkgs C:\Temp SampleA Test OEM
exportpkgs C:\Temp SampleA Retail ALL
```

## flashsd.cmd

Flashes an image to a specified SD card. FlashSD.cmd requires you to specify a physical drive number. Connect your SD card to your PC, and then open diskmgr.msc to see the physical drive number of the SD card.

**Usage:**

```
flashsd product buildtype drivernr
```

PARAMETERS	DESCRIPTION
product	Name of the product.

PARAMETERS	DESCRIPTION
buildtype	Retail or Test. Specifies the buildtype.
drivenr	Physical drive number of the SD card.

**Example:**

```
flashSD SampleA test 2
```

## GetAppXInfo.exe

Extracts appx package-related information for a given .appx or .appbundle package.

**Usage:**

```
GetAppXInfo.exe appxfile
```

**Example:**

```
GetAppXInfo.exe IOTCoreDefaultApp_1.1.0.0_ARM.appx
```

## inf2cab.cmd

Converts a .inf driver package to a .cab file.

Inf2cab saves the package in the \Build\<arch>\pkgs folder (example: Drivers.GPIO.cab).

**Usage**

```
inf2cab filename.inf [CompName.SubCompName]
```

PARAMETERS	DESCRIPTION
filename.inf	Required, input file for the driver.
CompName.SubCompName	Optional, refers to the driver package by its ComponentName.SubComponent Name.

**Examples:**

```
inf2cab C:\test\gpiodriver.inf
inf2cab C:\test\gpiodriver.inf Drivers.GPIO
```

## inf2pkg.cmd

Creates the folder structure and copies the template files for a new package

**Usage:**

```
inf2pkg input.inf [CompName.SubCompName]
```

PARAMETERS	DESCRIPTION
input.inf	Required, input .inf file
CompName.SubCompName	Optional, default is Drivers.input
/?	Displays this usage string.

**Example:**

```
inf2pkg C:\test\testdriver.inf
```

## IoTCoreShell.cmd

Opens the IoT Core Shell as an administrator. (This file is in the root folder, and uses LaunchTool.cmd)

After you open IoTCoreShell, you'll be prompted to choose a default architecture (ARM or x86) for the devices you'll be building. This sets your default starting set of system variables.

## LaunchTool.cmd

Configures the command shell with required settings.

## newappxpkg.cmd

Creates a new package folder to help you convert Appx packages to .cab files.

This command creates the working folder in the \Source-<arch>\Packages\ folder.

If you run this command without any variables, you'll also see the other working folders in the \Source-<arch>\Packages\ folder.

**Usage:**

```
newappxpkg filename.appx [fga]/[bgt]/[none] [CompName.SubCompName] [skipcert]
```

PARAMETERS	DESCRIPTION
filename.appx	Required, input file for the Appx package.
fga/bgt/none	Required, chooses the app's behavior on startup. <b>fga</b> -App will be foreground app. <b>bgt</b> -App will start in background. <b>none</b> -App will not run on startup.
CompName.SubCompName	Optional, creates the working folder using the name: ComponentName.SubComponent.
skipcert	Optional, specify this to skip adding cert information.

**Example:**

```
newappxpkg C:\test\MainAppx_1.0.0.0_arm.appx fga AppX.Main
```

To learn more, see [Lab 1b: Add an app to your image](#).

## newbsp.cmd

Creates the folder structure and copies the template files for [creating a new board support package \(BSP\)](#).

### Usage:

```
newbsp BSPName
```

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
BSPName	Required, Name of the BSP to be used.

### Example:

```
newbsp CustomRPi2
```

## newcommonpkg.cmd

Creates a new working folder to help you [add files, folders, registry keys, and provisioning packages](#) as .cab files. After using this command, use the buildpkg command to create your final .cab file.

This command creates the working folder in the \Common\Packages\ folder.

If you run this command without any variables, you'll also see the other working folders in the \Common\Packages\ folder.

### Usage:

```
newcommonpkg CompName.SubCompName
```

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
CompName.SubCompName	Required, creates the working folder using the name ComponentName.SubComponent.

### Example:

```
newcommonpkg Registry.FilesAndRegKeys
```

To learn more, see [Lab 1c: Add a file and a registry setting to an image](#).

## newdrvpkg.cmd

Used to [add a driver to an image](#). Creates a new working folder to help you convert driver packages to .cab files.

After using this command, use the buildpkg command to create your final .cab file.

This command creates the working folder in the \Source-<arch>\Packages\ folder.

If you run this command without any variables, you'll also see the other working folders in the \Source-<arch>\Packages\ folder.

**Usage:**

```
newdrvpkg filename.inf [CompName.SubCompName]
```

PARAMETERS	DESCRIPTION
filename.inf	Required, input .inf file for the driver package.
CompName.SubCompName	Optional, creates the working folder using the name: ComponentName.SubComponent. The default is Drivers. <filename>.

**Example:**

```
newdrvpkg C:\test\GPIO.inf Drivers.GPIO
```

## newproduct.cmd

Used to [create new product configuration](#). Creates a new working product directory under \Products and copies the contents from the template file.

**Usage:**

```
newproduct <productname> bsp
```

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
productname	Name of the product to be created.
bsp	Name of the BSP to be used.

**Example:**

```
newproduct ProductA rpi2
```

## newwinpe.cmd

Creates a WinPE image for a specified bsp and a device layout (identified by the socname). See [Add a recovery mechanism to your image](#).

**Usage:**

```
newwinpe <bspname> <socname>
```

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
bspname	Name of the bsp to be used.

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
socname	Identifier for the device layout, specified in the bspfm.xml under devicelayout section.

**Example:**

```
newwinpe QCDB410C QC8016_R
```

## retailsign.cmd

Toggles between using OEM cross-certificate and test certificates for signing

**Usage:**

```
retailsign {On/Off}
```

PARAMETERS	DESCRIPTION
On	Enables Cross Cert for signing.
Off	Disables Cross Cert for signing and enables OEM Test Signing.

**Examples:**

```
retailsign On
retailsign Off
```

## setenv.cmd

Resets your environment variables, including **IOTADK\_ROOT**, **COMMON\_DIR**, **SRC\_DIR**, **BLD\_DIR**, **PKGBLD\_DIR**, **TOOLS\_DIR**, and more.

Open setenv.cmd in a text editor to see the full list of variables set.

**Usage:**

```
setenv {arm|x86|x64}
```

PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
arch	Architecture to be set ( <code>arm</code> , <code>x86</code> , or <code>x64</code> ).

**Example:**

```
setenv.cmd arm
```

## setOEM.cmd

Sets your OEM company name. Edit this file with a text editor.

**Example:**

```
set OEM_NAME=Fabrikam
```

Where *Fabrikam* is the OEM company name. Only alphanumeric characters are supported in the OEM\_NAME as this is used as a prefix for various generated file names.

## setsignature.cmd

Sets the [Cross-Certificates for kernel-mode code signing](#)

## setversion.cmd

Sets the [version numbers](#) used when creating a package with **createpkg.cmd** or a provisioning package with **createprovpkg.cmd**.

This version information is stored in **%PRJ\_DIR%\versioninfo.txt** and loaded back when the IoT Core Shell is launched again. Whenever the package contents are changed, the version has to be updated and all packages need to be recreated.

**Usage:**

```
setversion x.y.z.a
```

PARAMETERS	DESCRIPTION
x.y.z.a	Four-part version number to be used for packages.

**Example:**

```
setversion 10.0.0.1
```

## signbinaries.cmd

Signs different file types in a directory

**Usage:**

```
signbinaries {bsp/all/file extension} dir
```

PARAMETERS	DESCRIPTION
bsp	Signs all .sys/.dll files.
all	Signs all .dll, .sys, and .ppkg files.
file extension	Signs all files of a specified type. For example, .cab, .dll, .sys,etc.
dir	Directory with files to be signed.

**Example:**

```
signbinaries bsp %BSPSRC_DIR%
signbinaries all %BSPSRC_DIR%
signbinaries exe %BSPSRC_DIR%
```

## Related topics

[IoT Core Add-ons](#)

[IoT Core manufacturing guides](#)

# Update the time server

9/29/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

By default, IoT Core devices are setup to synchronize time from time.windows.com. If you don't have internet connectivity or behind a firewall, then you'll need to synchronize the system time for your IoT Core devices to a time server reachable in your network. You can change the time server or add multiple time servers using the information below.

## Update the server from a command line (for example, using a tool like PuTTY):

1. Identify the required NTP server(s) and make sure you can reach them from your network. For example, if time.windows.com, NTPServer1, NTPServer2 are the three desired NTP servers, make sure the following commands succeed when run on a Windows computer on the network before using in an IoT device:

```
W32tm.exe /stripchart /computer:time.windows.com /samples:5
W32tm.exe /stripchart /computer:NtpServer1 /samples:5
W32tm.exe /stripchart /computer:NtpServer2 /samples:5
```

2. Modify the W32Time service configuration on the IoT device to use your NTP time server(s).

```
reg add HKLM\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\w32time\Parameters /v NtpServer /t REG_SZ /d
"time.windows.com,0x9 NtpServer1,0x9 NtpServer2,0x9" /f >nul 2>&1
```

3. Restart the time service

```
net stop w32time
net start w32time
```

4. Verify the time servers from which the device is currently receiving time. If you restarted the time service, allow a minute or so before verifying the time service.

```
W32tm.exe /query /peers
```

## Update the server in an IoT Core image

1. Create a package definition file, and add it to the image. To learn more, see [Lab 1c: Add a file and a registry setting to an image](#). Sample script:

```
<OSComponent>
 <RegKeys>
 <RegKey KeyName="$(hk1m.system)\CurrentControlSet\Services\w32time\Parameters">
 <RegValue Name="NtpServer" Value="time.windows.com,0x9 NtpServer1,0x9 NtpServer2,0x9"
 Type="REG_SZ"/>
 </RegKey>
 </RegKeys>
</OSComponent>
```

# Create Windows Universal OEM Packages

10/18/2017 • 6 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

The Windows Universal OEM packaging standard is supported on Windows IoT Core, version 1709.

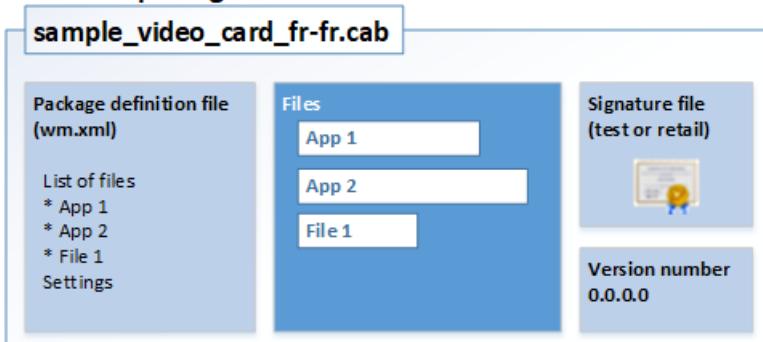
This new packaging schema is built to be compatible with more types of devices in the future. If you've built packages for IoT Core devices using the legacy packaging standard (pkg.xml), and you'd like to use them on IoT devices, you can [convert them to the new packaging standard](#).

## Packages

Packages are the logical building blocks used to create IoT Core images.

- **Everything you add is packaged.** Every driver, library, registry setting, system file, and customization that you add to the device is included in a package. The contents and location of each item are listed in a package definition file (\*.wm.xml).
- **Packages can be updated by trusted partners.** Every package on your device is signed by you or a trusted partner. This allows OEMs, ODMs, developers, and Microsoft work together to help deliver security and feature updates to your devices without stomping on each other's work.
- **Packages are versioned.** This helps make updates easier and makes system restores more reliable.

### Windows package



Packages fall into three main categories:

- **OS kit packages** contain the core Windows operating system
- **SoC vendor prebuilt packages** contain drivers and firmware that support the chipset
- **OEM packages** contain device-specific drivers and customizations

[Learn about how to combine these packages into images for devices.](#)

## Start by creating a new empty package

1. Install Windows ADK for Windows 10, version 1709, as well as the other tools and test certificates described in [Get the tools needed to customize Windows IoT Core](#) and [Lab 1a: Create a basic image](#).
2. Use a text editor to create a new package definition file (also called a Windows Manifest file) based on the following template. Save the file using the **wm.xml** extension.

```

<?xml version='1.0' encoding='utf-8' standalone='yes'?>
<identity
 xmlns="urn:Microsoft.CompPlat/ManifestSchema.v1.00"
 xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
 xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
 name="MediaService"
 namespace="Media"
 owner="OEM"
 >
</identity>

```

3. Create the empty package file (\*.cab). The filename created is based on the owner, namespace, and name from the file.

```

c:\oemsample>pkggen myPackage.wm.xml /universalbsp

Directory of c:\oemsample

04/03/2017 05:56 PM <DIR> .
04/03/2017 05:56 PM <DIR> ..
04/03/2017 05:43 PM 333 myPackage.wm.xml
04/03/2017 05:56 PM 8,239 OEM-Media-MediaService.cab

```

## Add content to a package

The contents of a package are organized as a list of XML elements in the package definition file.

The following example demonstrates how to add some files and registry settings to a package. This example defines a variable (\_RELEASEDIR) that can be updated each time you generate the package.

```

<?xml version='1.0' encoding='utf-8' standalone='yes'?>
<identity
 xmlns="urn:Microsoft.CompPlat/ManifestSchema.v1.00"
 xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
 xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
 name="MediaService"
 namespace="Media"
 owner="OEM"
 >
<files>
 <file source="$(_RELEASEDIR)\MediaService.dll"/>
</files>
<regKeys>
 <regKey keyName="$(hk1m.software)\OEMName\MediaService">
 <regValue
 name="StringValue"
 type="REG_SZ"
 value="MediaService"
 />
 <regValue
 name="DWordValue"
 type="REG_DWORD"
 value="0x00000020"
 />
 </regKey>
</regKeys>
</identity>

```

## Run the pkggen.exe tool

PkgGen.exe [project] /universalbsp ...

```
[project]..... Full path to input file : .wm.xml, .pkg.xml, .man
Values:<Free Text> Default=NULL

[universalbsp]..... Convert wm.xml BSP package to cab
Values:<true | false> Default=False

[variables]..... Additional variables used in the project file,syntax:<name>=<value>;<name>=<value>;....
Values:<Free Text> Default=NULL

[cpu]..... CPU type. Values: (x86|arm|arm64|amd64)
Values:<Free Text> Default="arm"

[languages]..... Supported language identifier list, separated by ';'
Values:<Free Text> Default=NULL

[version]..... Version string in the form of <major>.<minor>.<qfe>.<build>
Values:<Free Text> Default="1.0.0.0"

[output]..... Output directory for the CAB(s).
Values:<Free Text> Default="CurrentDir"
```

Example:

```
c:\oemsample>pkggen myPackage.wm.xml /universalbsp /variables:"_RELEASEDIR=c:\release"
```

## View the contents of a package

Packages use Windows cabinet file technology to store a set of files. Double-click the CAB file to view and extract its contents. Use notepad.exe to view update.mum, this describes how the files are installed onto the device.

Sample contents of **OEM-Media-MediaService.cab**:

```
arm_dual_media.inf_31bf3856ad364e35_1.0.0.0_none_75dfa724a55b489d
arm_dual_media.inf_31bf3856ad364e35_1.0.0.0_none_75dfa724a55b489d.manifest
arm_dual_sample.inf_31bf3856ad364e35_1.0.0.0_none_a7012ffdafd1caf1
arm_oem-featurearea-feature_31bf3856ad364e35_1.0.0.0_none_9e7ea37811ad5588
arm_oem-media-mediaserv..ploymnt-deployment_31bf3856ad364e35_1.0.0.0_none_6127250c45e77506.manifest
arm_oem-media-mediaservice_31bf3856ad364e35_1.0.0.0_none_7307c54952eeb87a
arm_oem-media-mediaservice_31bf3856ad364e35_1.0.0.0_none_7307c54952eeb87a.manifest
update.cat
update.mum
```

**Sample contents of update.mum:**

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" standalone="yes"?>
<assembly manifestVersion="1.0" xmlns="urn:schemas-microsoft-com:asm.v3">
 <assemblyIdentity name="OEM-Media-MediaService" version="1.0.0.0" processorArchitecture="arm"
language="neutral" publicKeyToken="31bf3856ad364e35" buildType="release" versionScope="nonSxS" />
 <package identifier="OEM-Media-MediaService" releaseType="Feature Pack" binaryPartition="false"
targetPartition="MainOS">
 <customInformation>
 <phoneInformation phoneRelease="Production" phoneOwner="OEM" phoneOwnerType="OEM" phoneComponent="OEM-
Media-MediaService" phoneSubComponent="" phoneGroupingKey="" />
 <file name="update.mum" size="823" staged="600" compressed="" cabpath="update.mum" />
 <file name="$(runtime.system32)\catroot\{F750E6C3-38EE-11D1-85E5-00C04FC295EE}\update.cat" size="910"
staged="713" compressed="713" sourcePackage="" cabpath="update.cat" />
 <file name="arm_oem-media-mediaserv..ploymen-
deployment_31bf3856ad364e35_1.0.0.0_none_6127250c45e77506.manifest" size="689" staged="560" compressed="560"
sourcePackage="" cabpath="arm_oem-media-mediaserv..ploymen-
deployment_31bf3856ad364e35_1.0.0.0_none_6127250c45e77506.manifest" />
 <file name="arm_oem-media-mediaservice_31bf3856ad364e35_1.0.0.0.0_none_7307c54952eeb87a.manifest"
size="423" staged="423" compressed="423" sourcePackage="" cabpath="arm_oem-media-
mediaservice_31bf3856ad364e35_1.0.0.0.0_none_7307c54952eeb87a.manifest" />
 </customInformation>
 <update name="OEM-Media-MediaService-Deployment-Deployment">
 <component>
 <assemblyIdentity name="OEM-Media-MediaService-Deployment-Deployment" version="1.0.0.0"
processorArchitecture="arm" language="neutral" publicKeyToken="31bf3856ad364e35" buildType="release"
versionScope="nonSxS" />
 </component>
 </update>
 </package>
</assembly>

```

## Add a driver component

In the package definition file, use the **driver** element to inject drivers. We recommend using relative paths, as it's typically the simplest way to describe the INF source path.

```

<drivers>
 <driver>
 <inf source="$_RELEASEDIR)\Media.inf"/>
 </driver>
</drivers>

```

If the default file import path is not equal to the INF source path, you can use the defaultImportPath attribute. In the following example, the INF is in the current directory, but the files to be imported are relative to `$_RELEASEDIR`.

```

<drivers>
 <driver defaultImportPath="$_RELEASEDIR">
 <inf source="Media.inf"/>
 </driver>
</drivers>

```

If files to be imported are not relative to how they are defined in the INF, file overrides can be applied. This is not recommended, but is available for special cases.

```

<drivers>
 <driver>
 <inf source="Media.inf"/>
 <files>
 <file name="mdr.sys" source="$_RELEASEDIR\path1\mdr.sys" />
 <file name="mdr.dll" source="$_RELEASEDIR\path2\mdr.dll" />
 </files>
 </driver>
</drivers>

```

## Add a service component

In the package definition file, use the **service** element (and its child elements and attributes) to define and package a system service.

```

<service
 dependOnService="AudioSrv;AccountProvSvc"
 description="@%SystemRoot%\system32\MediaService.dll,-201"
 displayName="@%SystemRoot%\system32\MediaService.dll,-200"
 errorControl="normal"
 imagePath="%SystemRoot%\system32\svchost.exe -k netsvcs"
 name="MediaService"
 objectName="LocalSystem"
 requiredPrivileges="SeChangeNotifyPrivilege,SeCreateGlobalPrivilege"
 sidType="unrestricted"
 start="delayedAuto"
 startAfterInstall="none"
 type="win32UserShareProcess"
>

```

## Build and Filter WOW Packages

To build Guest or WOW packages (32 bit packages to run on 64 bit devices) add the **buildWow="true"** attribute to myPackage.wm.wml

```

<identity
 xmlns="urn:Microsoft.CompPlat/ManifestSchema.v1.00"
 xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
 xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
 name="MediaService"
 namespace="Media"
 owner="OEM"
 buildWow="true"
>

```

Running PkgGen.exe will now generate one WOW package for each host package.

04/05/2017 07:59 AM	11,870 OEM-Media-MediaService.cab
04/05/2017 07:59 AM	10,021 OEM-Media-MediaService_Wow_arm64.arm.cab

Typically, the 64 bit device will get its Host 64 bit package and either its Guest 32 bit or WOW package, both generated from myPackage.wm.xml. To avoid resource conflicts between the two packages, use **build filters**:

```
<regKeys buildFilter="not build.isWow and build.arch = arm" >
 <regKey keyName="$(hk1m.software)\OEMName\MediaService">
 <regValue
 name="StringValue"
 type="REG_SZ"
 value="MediaService"
 />
 </regKey>
```

In this case, the registry keys are exclusive to the Host 32 bit ARM package. The CPU switch is used to set build.arch, and build.isWow is set by PkgGen to false when building the 32 bit Host Package, then true when building the 32 bit Guest or WOW package.

```
[cpu]..... CPU type. Values: (x86|arm|arm64|amd64)
Values:<Free Text> Default="arm"
```

## Converting Windows Universal OEM Packages

If you've created packages using the pkg.xml packaging model, and you want to use them on Windows IoT Core, version 1709, you'll need to either recreate your packages, or convert them using the pkggen.exe tool.

After you convert the packages, you may need to modify the wm.xml file to make sure that it follows the [schema](#).

IoT Core Add-ons v4.x support the new [Windows Universal OEM Packages standard \(wm.xml\)](#). This new packaging schema is built to be compatible with more types of devices in the future.

### Convert your package files

To convert your existing packages created in the legacy phone packaging format (pkg.xml) to the new wm.xml format:

```
pkggen.exe "filename.pkg.xml" /convert:pkg2wm
```

Or, from the IoTCoreShell prompt, convert using either convertpkg or buildpkg. The output wm.xml files are saved to the same folder.

```
convertpkg.cmd MyPackage.pkg.xml
buildpkg.cmd MyPackage.pkg.xml
```

Review and test the wm.xml packages with buildpkg.

```
buildpkg.cmd MyPackage.wm.xml
```

After you've converted the files to wm.xml format, it's safe to delete the pkg.xml files.

### Regenerate your app packages

Use the newAppxPkg with the same component name. This regenerates the customizations.xml file. The version number of the appx is retained as the version number for ppkg.

```
newAppxPkg
"C:\DefaultApp\IoTCoreDefaultApp_1.2.0.0_ARM_Debug_Test\IoTCoreDefaultApp_1.2.0.0_ARM_Debug_Test.appx" fga
Appx.MyUWPApp
```

Learn more: [Add apps](#).

## **Adding files: watch out for zero-sized files, relative paths**

Zero-sized files are not supported in `wm.xml`. To work around this, add an empty space in the file, making it non-zero size file.

Paths: When you're adding files that are in the current directory, you'll need to explicitly add the `.\` prefix to the file name.

```
<BinaryPartition ImageSource=".\\uefi.mbn" />
```

Learn more: [Add files](#)

## **Update your provisioning package `customization.xml` file**

In ADK version 1709, you'll need to update the `customizations.xml` file:

In your `product\\prov` folder, manually move `Common/ApplicationManagement` to `Common/Policies/ApplicationManagement`

```
<Customizations>
 <Common>
 <Policies>
 <ApplicationManagement>
 <AllowAppStoreAutoUpdate>Allowed</AllowAppStoreAutoUpdate>
 <AllowAllTrustedApps>Yes</AllowAllTrustedApps>
 </ApplicationManagement>
 </Policies>
 </Common>
</Customizations>
```

Provisioning packages (PPKG) now support four-part versioning similar to the package versioning. So with this change, `version 1.19 > 1.2`. Previous versions used character-based sorting, so `version 1.19` was considered earlier than `1.2`.

Learn more: [Add provisioning files](#)

# Windows Universal OEM Package Schema

10/5/2017 • 1 min to read • [Edit Online](#)

You can manually edit your packages using the Universal OEM Package Schema.

## [Creating Windows Universal OEM Packages](#)

## Schema

Only the common elements and attributes are documented here.

To get the full schema run "pkggen /universalbsp /wmxsd:", then open **WM0.XSD** with Visual Studio.

### **identity**

ATTRIBUTE	TYPE	REQUIRED	MACRO	NOTES
owner	string	*		
name	string	*	*	
namespace	string		*	
buildWow	boolean			Default = false, set to true to generate WOW packages
legacyName	string		*	Uses the specified name as the package name overriding the default name (owner-namespace-name.cab).

```
<identity name="FeatureName" namespace="FeatureArea" owner="OEM" buildWow="false"/>
```

### **onecorePackageInfo**

ATTRIBUTE	TYPE	REQUIRED	MACRO	NOTES
targetPartition	MainOS Data UpdateOS EFIESP PLAT	*		If onecorePackageInfo is not specified, Default = MainOS
releaseType	Production Test			If onecorePackageInfo is not specified, Default = Production

```
<onecorePackageInfo targetPartition="MainOS" releaseType="Production"/>
```

## file

ATTRIBUTE	TYPE	REQUIRED	MACRO	NOTES
source	string	*	*	
destinationDir	string		*	destinationDir must start with one of the following built in runtime macros below.
name	string			used to rename the source file
buildFilter	string			

destinationDir must start with:

- \$(runtime.bootDrive)
- \$(runtime.systemDrive)
- \$(runtime.systemRoot)
- \$(runtime.windows)
- \$(runtime.system32)
- \$(runtime.system)
- \$(runtime.drivers)
- \$(runtime.help)
- \$(runtime.inf)
- \$(runtime.fonts)
- \$(runtime.wbem)
- \$(runtime.appPatch)
- \$(runtime.sysWow64)
- \$(runtime.mui)
- \$(runtime.commonFiles)
- \$(runtime.commonFilesX86)
- \$(runtime.programFiles)
- \$(runtime.programFilesX86)
- \$(runtime.programData)
- \$(runtime.userProfile)
- \$(runtime.startMenu)
- \$(runtime.documentSettings)
- \$(runtime.sharedData)
- \$(runtime.apps)
- \$(runtime.clipAppLicenseInstall)
- If not specified, the default is \$(runtime.system32)

To see the directories that map to these locations, see C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\tools\bin\i386\pkgen.cfg.xml.

```
<file buildFilter="(not build.isWow) and (build.arch = arm)" name="output.dll"
source="$_RELEASEDIR)\input.dll" destinationDir="$(runtime.system32)"/>
```

## regKey

ATTRIBUTE	TYPE	REQUIRED	MACRO	NOTES
keyName	string	*	*	keyName must start with \$(hklm.system), \$(hklm.software), \$(hklm.hardware), \$(hklm.sam), \$(hklm.security), \$(hklm.bcd), \$(hklm.drivers), \$(hklm.svchost), \$(hklm.policies), \$(hklm.microsoft), \$(hklm.windows), \$(hklm.windowsnt), \$(hklm.currentcontrolset), \$(hklm.services), \$(hklm.control), \$(hklm.autologger), \$(hklm.enum), \$(hkcr.root), \$(hkcr.classes), \$(hkcu.root), \$(hkuser.default)
buildFilter	string			

To see the registry keys that map to these locations, see C:\Program Files (x86)\Windows Kits\10\tools\bin\i386\pkgen.cfg.xml.

```
<regKey buildFilter="buildFilter1" keyName="keyName1">
 <regValue buildFilter="buildFilter1" name="name1" value="value1" type="REG_SZ" />
</regKey>
```

## regValue

ATTRIBUTE	TYPE	REQUIRED	MACRO	NOTES
name	string			Name of the value you are specifying. If not specified, the Default value in the key will be overwritten
type	string	*		type must be one of these: REG_SZ, REG_MULTI_SZ, REG_DWORD, REG_QWORD, REG_BINARY, REG_EXPAND_SZ
value	string			
buildFilter	string			

```
<regKey buildFilter="buildFilter1" keyName="keyName1">
 <regValue buildFilter="buildFilter1" name="name1" value="value1" type="REG_SZ" />
 <regValue buildFilter="buildFilter2" name="name2" value="value1,value2" type="REG_MULTI_SZ" />
 <regValue buildFilter="buildFilter3" name="name3" value="00000000FFFFFFFF" type="REG_QWORD" />
 <regValue buildFilter="buildFilter4" name="name4" value="FFFFFFFF" type="REG_DWORD" />
 <regValue buildFilter="buildFilter5" name="name5" value="0AFB2" type="REG_BINARY" />
 <regValue buildFilter="buildFilter6" name="name6" value=""%ProgramFiles%\MediaPlayer\wmplayer.exe"" type="REG_EXPAND_SZ" />
</regKey>
```